Phlebotomy Essentials

Fifth Edition

Ruth E. McCall • Cathee M. Tankersley

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins

Phlebotomy Essentials

Fifth Edition

Ruth E. McCall, BS, MT (ASCP)
Retired Program Director and Instructor
Central New Mexico Community College
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Cathee M. Tankersley, BS, MT (ASCP)
President, NuHealth Educators, LLC
Faculty, Emeritus
Phoenix College
Phoenix, Arizona

Wolters Kluwer Health | Lippincott Williams & Wilkins
Philadelphia • Baltimore • New York • London
Buenos Aires • Hong Kong • Sydney • Tokyo

Acquisitions Editor: Peter Sabatini
Product Manager: Meredith L. Brittain
Marketing Manager: Shauna Kelley
Designer: Holly McLaughlin
Production Services: Aptara, Inc.

Fifth Edition

Copyright © 2012, 2008 by Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, a Wolters Kluwer business.

351 West Camden Street
Baltimore, MD 21201

Two Commerce Square
2001 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103

Printed in China

All rights reserved. This book is protected by copyright. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, including as photocopies or scanned-in or other electronic copies, or utilized by any information storage and retrieval system without written permission from the copyright owner, except for brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews. Materials appearing in this book prepared by individuals as part of their official duties as U.S. government employees are not covered by the above-mentioned copyright. To request permission, please contact Lippincott Williams & Wilkins at Two Commerce Square, 2001 Market Street, Philadelphia, PA 19103, via email at permissions@lww.com, or via website at lww.com (products and services).

9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

McCall, Ruth E., author.
Phlebotomy essentials / Ruth E. McCall, Retired Director of Phlebotomy and Clinical Laboratory Assistant Programs, Central New Mexico Community College, Albuquerque, New Mexico, Cathee M. Tankersley, MT(ASCP), President, NuHealth Educators, LLC, Faculty, Emeritus, Phoenix College, Phoenix, Arizona. — Fifth Edition.
p. ; cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
Summary: "Thoroughly updated and enhanced by new print and electronic ancillaries, this full-color text provides accurate, practical information and instruction on phlebotomy procedures with a comprehensive background in theory and principles. Reflecting current CLSI guidelines, NAACLS competencies, and federal regulations, this Fifth Edition includes updated information on safety issues and equipment, laboratory information systems and instrumentation, legal issues, and diagnostic tests. This edition also includes caution notes identifying dangerous practices and problem areas"—Provided by publisher.
ISBN 978-1-60547-637-7 (pbk.)
1. Phlebotomy. I. Tankersley, Cathee M., author. II. Title.
[DNLM: 1. Phlebotomy. WB 381]
RB45.15.M33 2011
616.07'561—dc22 2010044277

DISCLAIMER

Care has been taken to confirm the accuracy of the information present and to describe generally accepted practices. However, the authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this book and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. Application of this information in a particular situation remains the professional responsibility of the practitioner; the clinical treatments described and recommended may not be considered absolute and universal recommendations.

The authors, editors, and publisher have exerted every effort to ensure that drug selection and dosage set forth in this text are in accordance with the current recommendations and practice at the time of publication. However, in view of ongoing research, changes in government regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to drug therapy and drug reactions, the reader is urged to check the package insert for each drug for any change in indications and dosage and for added warnings and precautions. This is particularly important when the recommended agent is a new or infrequently employed drug.

Some drugs and medical devices presented in this publication have Food and Drug Administration (FDA) clearance for limited use in restricted research settings. It is the responsibility of the healthcare provider to ascertain the FDA status of each drug or device planned for use in their clinical practice.

To purchase additional copies of this book, call our customer service department at **(800) 638-3030** or fax orders to **(301) 223-2320**. International customers should call **(301) 223-2300**.

Visit Lippincott Williams & Wilkins on the Internet: http://www.lww.com. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins customer service representatives are available from 8:30 am to 6:00 pm, EST.

To the memory of my parents Charles and Marie Ruppert, whose love and encouragement is missed immensely.

RUTH E. McCALL

To my daughter, Jaime, my son, Todd, and my daughter-in-law, Christina, for their continuing support and encouragement, and to my everlasting love, Earl, my husband for 45 years.

CATHEE M. TANKERSLEY

About the Authors

Ruth McCall received her bachelor's degree from the University of Iowa and her medical technology certificate after a year's internship at Saint Joseph's School of Medical Technology in Phoenix, Arizona, and has worked or taught in the area of Clinical Laboratory Sciences and Health Care Education since 1969. Ruth recently retired as Director of the Phlebotomy and Clinical Laboratory Assistant Programs after 18 years of teaching in the Health, Wellness and Public Safety Department at Central New Mexico (CNM) Community College (formerly TVI Community College). While at CNM, Ruth proposed creation of the Clinical Laboratory Assistant Program, was instrumental in its development, and was responsible for its becoming one of the first programs at CNM offered entirely through distance education. Ruth participated with science instructors from a local high school in a program that introduced the students to health careers and was the first CNM phlebotomy instructor to teach phlebotomy to high school students through concurrent enrollment. She has lectured on phlebotomy at conferences throughout the United States, served as an expert witness in phlebotomy injury cases, and especially enjoyed participating in a medical technology exchange trip to China. Most recently Ruth had the privilege of being a member of the CLSI Working Group on Venipuncture charged with the sixth revision of the H3 Venipuncture Standard and the CLSI Working Group on Skin Puncture charged with the sixth revision of the H4 Capillary Puncture Standard.

Ruth loves the outdoors. She enjoys hiking in the beautiful Southwest and downhill skiing in the mountains of Colorado and New Mexico. She has even tried her hand at paragliding. She has been married for over 40 years to her husband, John, and has two sons, Christopher and Scott. Christopher and his wife Tracy are parents of her fantastic grandchildren, Katie and Ryan.

Cathee Tankersley recently retired as Faculty Emeritus after 27 years of teaching at Phoenix College in the Health Enhancement Department. She has worked or taught in the area of Clinical Laboratory Sciences and Health Care Education since graduating in Medical Technology from New Mexico State University in 1964. Since she became a medical technologist, Cathee has been active in many professional organizations. She has served on many committees at the state and national levels. While at St. Joseph's Hospital and Medical Center, she was the Director of the Medical Technology Program during her last two years at that facility. Her tenure at Phoenix College has been as Clinical Coordinator for the MLT Program, Director of the EKG and EEG Programs, and as the Phlebotomy Program Director from 1982 until 2006. While at PC, she established one of the first accredited phlebotomy programs in the United States. In 2000, she developed and directed the first and only college-based Law Enforcement Phlebotomy Program in the United States.

Cathee served on the initial National Credentialing Agency for Laboratory Personnel (NCA) Phlebotomy Certification Committee as chair from 1983 to 1985. She was one of the original six members of the National Accrediting gency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (NAACLS) Approval Committee for Phlebotomy Programs in 1985. She went on to serve as the chair of that committee from 1993 to 1995. Since 1997, when she established her company, NuHealth Educators, LLC, she has been a healthcare educator and consultant for several organizations.

She has served as an expert witness in the area of phlebotomy techniques and has lectured at numerous conferences across the United States.

Cathee continues to teach part time at Phoenix College in healthcare education and the Law Enforcement Phlebotomy (LEP) program. She works with the Arizona Governor's Office of Highway Safety to maintain current curricular materials for law enforcement phlebotomy. Ruth and Cathee have collaborated for over 20 years on textbook writing and as presenters at natonal and state conferences.

Family is very important to Cathee. Her husband of 45 years, Earl; their two children, Todd and Jaime; daughter-in-law, Chris; and two wonderful grandsons, Trevor and Connor, help her keep everything in perspective.

Preface

Phlebotomy Essentials, fifth edition, was written for all who want to correctly and safely practice phlebotomy. The authors have over 70 years of combined experience in laboratory sciences, phlebotomy program direction, and teaching many different levels and diverse populations of phlebotomy students. As with previous editions, the goal of Phlebotomy Essentials, fifth edition, is to provide accurate, up-to-date, and practical information and instruction in phlebotomy procedures and techniques along with a comprehensive background in phlebotomy theory and principles. It is appropriate for use as an instructional text or as a reference for those who wish to update their skills or study for national certification.

Organization

Much care has been taken to present the material in a clear and concise manner that encourages learning and promotes comprehension. A good deal of time was spent organizing and formatting the information into a logical and student-friendly reading style in an order that allows the reader to build on information from previous chapters.

The book is divided into four units. Unit I, The Healthcare Setting, presents a basic description of the healthcare system and the role of the phlebotomist within it. Major topics include communication skills, healthcare financing and delivery with an emphasis on clinical laboratory services, quality assurance and legal issues and their relationship to the standard of care, and comprehensive instruction in infection control and safety.

Unit II, Overview of the Human Body, provides a foundation in medical terminology and a basic understanding of each of the body systems, including associated disorders and diagnostic tests. An entire chapter is devoted to the circulatory system, with special emphasis on the vascular system, including blood vessel structure, vascular anatomy of the arm, and blood composition.

Unit III, Blood Collection Procedures, describes phlebotomy equipment (including the latest safety equipment and order of draw) and proper procedures and techniques for collecting venipuncture and capillary specimens based upon the latest CLSI standards. Also included is an extensive explanation of preanalytical variables, complications, and procedural errors associated with blood collection.

Unit IV, Special Procedures, offers information and instruction on how to handle special blood and nonblood specimen collections and the latest in point-of care instruments and testing. Routine and special handling and processing of specimens, with an emphasis on the latest rules of safety, are included in this section. Covered in this unit is an overview of the Laboratory Information System (LIS)—how it supports the laboratory process and is used by the phlebotomist in specimen collection. Also included is a discussion of nonblood specimens and testing information, which can be an important part of the phlebotomist's responsibilities, as well as arterial puncture for those phlebotomists who do ABGs or who anticipate advancing beyond venous collection.

The appendices give readers ready access to helpful supplementary information as they progress through the text.

- Appendix A is an alphabetical list of laboratory tests including specimen type, handling considerations, and the department that does the testing. Not only does this help readers categorize the many different tests performed by a laboratory, but it also provides practice in using a reference manual.
- Appendix B, Laboratory Math, provides a quick review and reference for certain calculations that may be needed but are not always used enough to have been committed to memory.
- English to Spanish translation of conversational phrases, including phonetic Spanish pronunciation guidelines, found in Appendix C can help non–Spanish-speaking phlebotomists provide safe and appropriate directions to patients who speak only Spanish.
- Appendix D identifies conditions that require work restrictions for healthcare workers, a quick reference that can help phlebotomists learn when and how to protect themselves and others from infection.
- Appendix E, Answers to Study and Review Questions and Case Studies, allows readers to check their answers, reinforcing the material and assuring that they have learned it correctly.
- Appendix F gives the reader immediate access to tube guides from two leading manufacturers for a quick reference and colorful way to learn by association.

There are many technical and specialized terms associated with healthcare in general and phlebotomy in particular. The extensive updated and alphabetically arranged glossary makes the meanings of unfamiliar terms within easy reach.

Features

The fifth edition includes various features meant to help the reader learn and retain the information in Phlebotomy Essentials.

- **Key Terms** and **Objectives** open each chapter and help students recognize the important terms and concepts that they will come across in reading the chapter.
- Consistently organized step-by-step **Procedures,** with an explanation or rationale for each step, assist the student in learning and understanding phlebotomy techniques.
- **Key Points** emphasize important concepts to enhance student learning.
- **Cautions** highlight critical information to help students identify and avoid dangerous practices.
- **FYI**s are interesting notes and fun facts that will enhance practical application of the information.
- **Memory Joggers** offer a proven way to help students remember important information.
- **Study and Review Questions** at the end of each chapter provide a review of each chapter's content.
- **Case studies** at the end of each chapter bring concepts to life and enhance critical thinking skills.
- A **Media Menu** at the end of each chapter points out online student resources available for that chapter.
- **Book Icons** throughout the text refer readers to the *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials* and the *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* for further opportunities to enrich their learning (available for separate purchase).
- **Online Icons** throughout the text refer readers to corresponding videos and animations on the book's companion Web site, which bring the content to life (see "Additional Resources," below, for more information).

The content of this new edition of *Phlebotomy Essentials* was designed in accordance with applicable National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Science (NAACLS) competencies.

Procedures have been written to conform to the latest OSHA safety regulations and, wherever applicable, standards developed by the CLSI.

Additional Resources

Phlebotomy Essentials, fifth edition, includes additional resources for both instructors and students that are available on the book's companion Web site at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

INSTRUCTORS

Approved adopting instructors will be given access to the following additional resources:

- Lesson Plans
- Critical Thinking Questions
- Brownstone Test Generator
- Image Collection
- All the appendixes from the book
- PowerPoint Slides with Images and Tables
- WebCT-/Blackboard-Ready Cartridges
- Signature Papers (i.e., HIPAA/confidentiality forms, blood-borne pathogen statements, assumption-of-risk form, health declaration form)
- Log Examples
- Lab Skills Evaluation Checklists (i.e., venipuncture, skin puncture, special test procedures)
- Phlebotomy Program Pre-test and Post-test and their answer keys

STUDENTS

Students who have purchased Phlebotomy Essentials, fifth edition, have access to the following additional resources:

- New to the fifth edition, interactive games and exercises offer a fun way to study and review. Exercise types include Look and Label, Zooming In, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Interactive Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration.
- 23 videos, including 10 that are new to the fifth edition
- 17 animations, including 12 that are new to the fifth edition
- Audio flash cards and, new to the fifth edition, a flash card generator
- An audio glossary, new to the fifth edition

In addition, purchasers of the text can access the searchable Full Text On-line by going to the *Phlebotomy Essentials,* fifth edition Web site at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e. See the inside front cover of this text for more details, including the passcode you will need to gain access to the Web site.

Related Titles

The authors of this textbook have created the following two titles, available for separate purchase, that correspond to Phlebotomy Essentials, fifth edition, to create an ideal study package for phlebotomy training programs. Each corresponds to this main textbook in chapter sequence.

- The companion workbook (McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed., available for separate purchase) provides students with chapter-by-chapter exercises to reinforce text material, assessment tools to evaluate their skills, realistic scenarios to gauge their grasp of key concepts, and skills logs to chart their progress. The workbook includes key terms matching exercises, chapter review questions,

crossword puzzles, skill and knowledge drills, requisition activities, case studies, and procedure evaluation forms.

- The companion exam review book (McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed., available for separate purchase) prepares students for all the national certification exams in phlebotomy.

Acknowledgments

The authors wish to express their gratitude to the many individuals who gave of their time, talent, and expertise to make this edition of Phlebotomy Essentials current and accurate. In particular, we would like to thank Jane Adrian, David Berg, Theresa McGillvray-Dodd, Joyce Hall, Maureane Hoffman, Glenda Hiddessen, Bob Kaplanis, Scott Leece, Jeri Litteral, Charez Norris, Mary Robitaille, Phil Tate, and Janet Vittori.

In addition we would like to thank animator Mark Flanders, illustrator Christine Vernon, photographer Bruce Knapus, videographer Michael Norde, and all who played a role in the latest videos, including Jim Gregory, Lynette Hales, Nancy Jefferys, Bruce Knaphus, Patty Lewis, April Meyers, Flavia Pradolin, Donald Pryor, and Maura Smith.

Finally, we would like to thank Acquisitions Editor Pete Sabatini and the production and editorial staff at Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, especially those with whom we worked most closely, with an extra special thank you to Senior Product Manager Meredith Brittain for her patience, support, and dedication to this endeavor.

RUTH E. McCALL

CATHEE M. TANKERSLEY

User's Guide

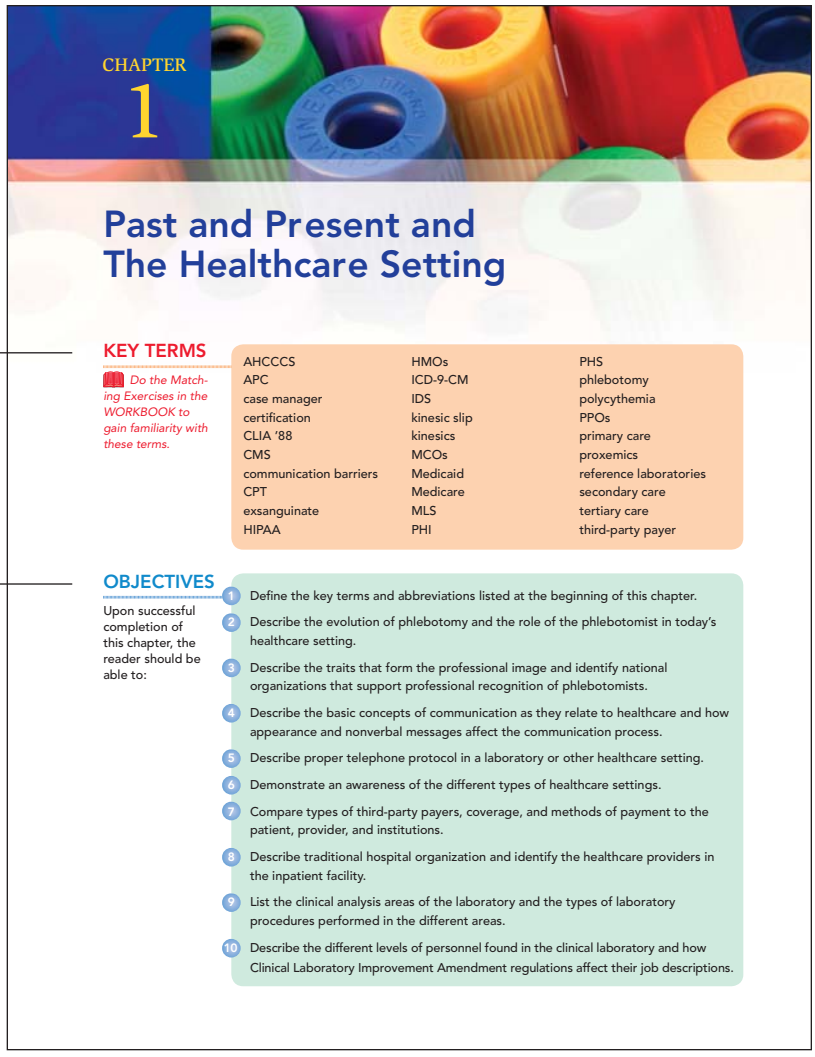
Phlebotomy Essentials **is designed for anyone wanting to correctly and safely practice phlebotomy. This User's Guide shows you how to put the features of this book to work for you.**

Chapter Opening Elements

Each chapter begins with the following elements to introduce the material and help make your experience consistent!

KEY TERMS are listed at the beginning of each chapter and defined in the glossary.

OBJECTIVES provide a quick overview of content to be covered.



CHAPTER 1

Past and Present and The Healthcare Setting

KEY TERMS

Do the Matching Exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

AHCCCS	HMOs	PHS
APC	ICD-9-CM	phlebotomy
case manager	IDS	polycythemia
certification	kinesic slip	PPOs
CLIA '88	kinesics	primary care
CMS	MCOs	proxemics
communication barriers	Medicaid	reference laboratories
CPT	Medicare	secondary care
exsanguinate	MLS	tertiary care
HIPAA	PHI	third-party payer

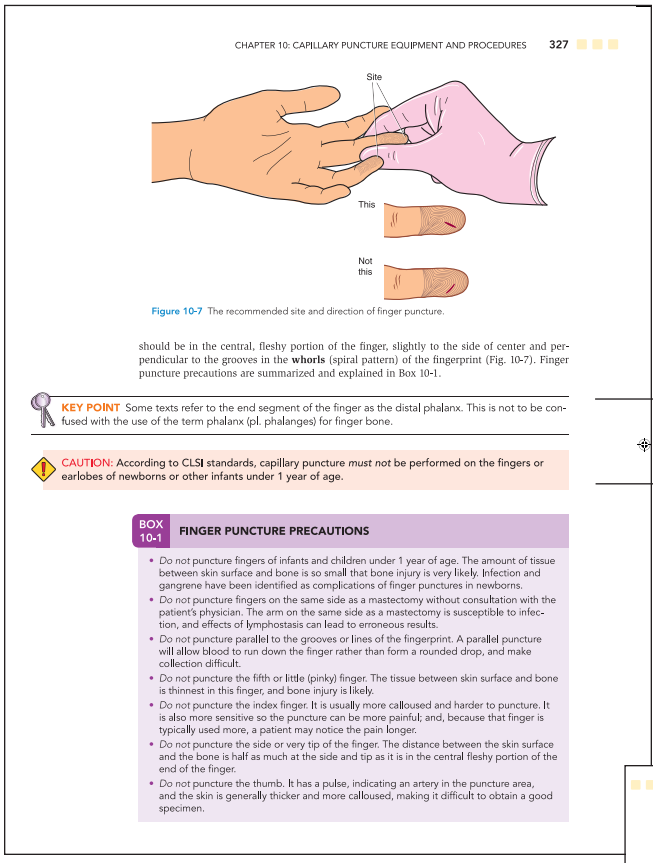
OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Describe the evolution of phlebotomy and the role of the phlebotomist in today's healthcare setting.
3. Describe the traits that form the professional image and identify national organizations that support professional recognition of phlebotomists.
4. Describe the basic concepts of communication as they relate to healthcare and how appearance and nonverbal messages affect the communication process.
5. Describe proper telephone protocol in a laboratory or other healthcare setting.
6. Demonstrate an awareness of the different types of healthcare settings.
7. Compare types of third-party payers, coverage, and methods of payment to the patient, provider, and institutions.
8. Describe traditional hospital organization and identify the healthcare providers in the inpatient facility.
9. List the clinical analysis areas of the laboratory and the types of laboratory procedures performed in the different areas.
10. Describe the different levels of personnel found in the clinical laboratory and how Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendment regulations affect their job descriptions.

Special Features

Unique chapter features draw your attention to crucial material and heighten your comprehension and retention of information.



CHAPTER 10: CAPILLARY PUNCTURE EQUIPMENT AND PROCEDURES 327

Figure 10-7 The recommended site and direction of finger puncture.

should be in the central, fleshy portion of the finger, slightly to the side of center and perpendicular to the grooves in the **whorls** (spiral pattern) of the fingerprint (Fig. 10-7). Finger puncture precautions are summarized and explained in Box 10-1.

KEY POINT Some texts refer to the end segment of the finger as the distal phalanx. This is not to be confused with the use of the term phalanx (pl. phalanges) for finger bone.

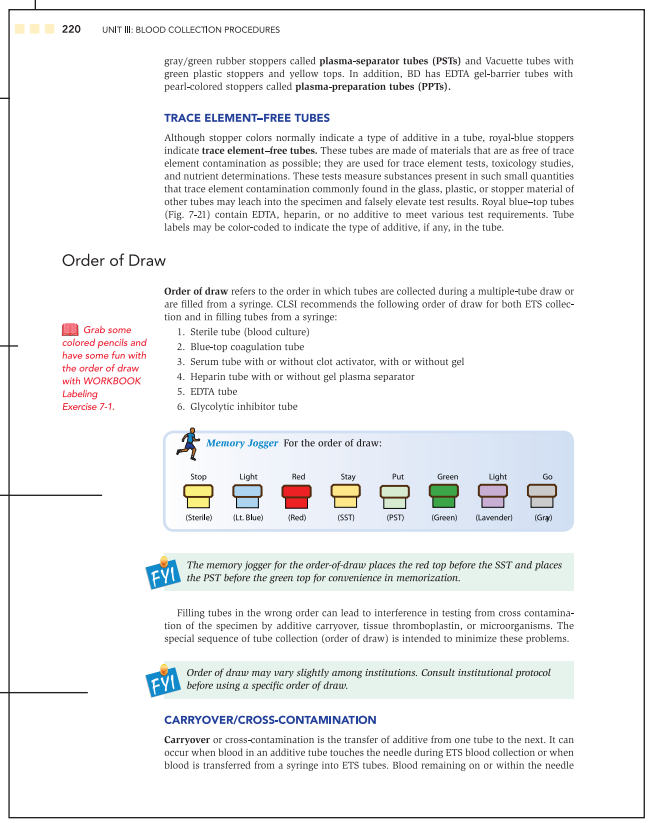
CAUTION: According to CLSI standards, capillary puncture *must not* be performed on the fingers or earlobes of newborns or other infants under 1 year of age.

BOX 10-1 FINGER PUNCTURE PRECAUTIONS

- *Do not* puncture fingers of infants and children under 1 year of age. The amount of tissue between skin surface and bone is so small that bone injury is very likely. Infection and gangrene have been identified as complications of finger punctures in newborns.
- *Do not* puncture fingers on the same side as a mastectomy without consultation with the patient's physician. The arm on the same side as a mastectomy is susceptible to infection, and effects of lymphostasis can lead to erroneous results.
- *Do not* puncture parallel to the grooves or lines of the fingerprint. A parallel puncture will allow blood to run down the finger rather than form a rounded drop, and make collection difficult.
- *Do not* puncture the fifth or little (pinky) finger. The tissue between skin surface and bone is thinnest in this finger, and bone injury is likely.
- *Do not* puncture the index finger. It is usually more calloused and harder to puncture. It is also more sensitive so the puncture can be more painful; and, because that finger is typically used more, a patient may notice the pain longer.
- *Do not* puncture the side or very tip of the finger. The distance between the skin surface and the bone is half as much at the side and tip as it is in the central fleshy portion of the end of the finger.
- *Do not* puncture the thumb. It has a pulse, indicating an artery in the puncture area, and the skin is generally thicker and more calloused, making it difficult to obtain a good specimen.

KEY POINTS help you to identify and retain important concepts.

CAUTION BOXES alert you to potential mistakes and problems so you can avoid them!



220 UNIT III: BLOOD COLLECTION PROCEDURES

gray/green rubber stoppers called **plasma-separator tubes (PSTs)** and Vacuette tubes with green plastic stoppers and yellow tops. In addition, BD has EDTA gel-barrier tubes with pearl-colored stoppers called **plasma-preparation tubes (PPTs).**

TRACE ELEMENT–FREE TUBES

Although stopper colors normally indicate a type of additive in a tube, royal-blue stoppers indicate **trace element–free tubes.** These tubes are made of materials that are as free of trace element contamination as possible; they are used for trace element tests, toxicology studies, and nutrient determinations. These tests measure substances present in such small quantities that trace element contamination commonly found in the glass, plastic, or stopper material of other tubes may leach into the specimen and falsely elevate test results. Royal blue–top tubes (Fig. 7-21) contain EDTA, heparin, or no additive to meet various test requirements. Tube labels may be color-coded to indicate the type of additive, if any, in the tube.

Order of Draw

Grab some colored pencils and have some fun with the order of draw with WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 7-1.

Order of draw refers to the order in which tubes are collected during a multiple-tube draw or are filled from a syringe. CLSI recommends the following order of draw for both ETS collection and in filling tubes from a syringe:

1. Sterile tube (blood culture)
2. Blue-top coagulation tube
3. Serum tube with or without clot activator, with or without gel
4. Heparin tube with or without gel plasma separator
5. EDTA tube
6. Glycolytic inhibitor tube

Memory Jogger For the order of draw:

FYI *The memory jogger for the order-of-draw places the red top before the SST and places the PST before the green top for convenience in memorization.*

Filling tubes in the wrong order can lead to interference in testing from cross contamination of the specimen by additive carryover, tissue thromboplastin, or microorganisms. The special sequence of tube collection (order of draw) is intended to minimize these problems.

FYI *Order of draw may vary slightly among institutions. Consult institutional protocol before using a specific order of draw.*

CARRYOVER/CROSS-CONTAMINATION

Carryover or cross-contamination is the transfer of additive from one tube to the next. It can occur when blood in an additive tube touches the needle during ETS blood collection or when blood is transferred from a syringe into ETS tubes. Blood remaining on or within the needle

ICONS THROUGHOUT THE TEXT refer readers to the McCall/Tankersley workbook and exam review texts for further opportunities to enrich their learning.

MEMORY JOGGERS help you to learn and recall key tips and facts long into your practice.

FYI BOXES offer interesting and relevant information.

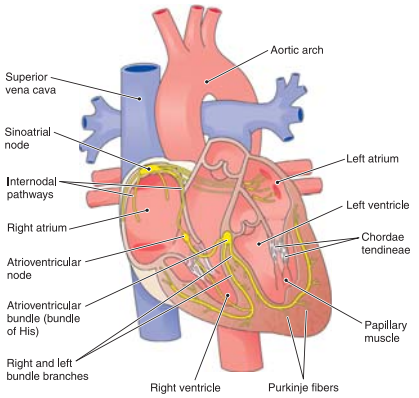


Figure 6-2 The electrical conduction system of the heart. The sinoatrial (SA) node, the atrioventricular (AV) node, and specialized fibers conduct electrical energy that stimulates the heart muscle to contract. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease*, 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:309.)

TABLE 6-4 The Electrical Conduction System Pathway

Structure	Location	Function
Sinoatrial (SA) node	Upper wall of the right atrium	Begins the heartbeat by generating the electrical pulse that travels through the muscles of both atria, causing them to contract simultaneously and push blood through the atrioventricular valves into the ventricles
Internodal pathway fibers	Wall of the right atrium	Relay the impulse to the **atrioventricular (AV) node**
Atrioventricular (AV) node	Bottom of the right atrium in the interatrial septum	Picks up the impulse, slows it down while the atria finish contracting, and then relays it through the **AV bundle (bundle of His)**
AV bundle (bundle of His)	Top of the interventricular septum	Relays impulse throughout the ventricular walls by means of bundle branches and **Purkinje fibers.** This causes the ventricles to contract, forcing blood through the semilunar valves. Both atria and ventricles relax briefly before the entire cycle starts again

TABLES give you important information in an easy-to-understand format.

ONLINE ICONS direct you to informative videos and animations on the book's companion website at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e that bring material to life.

PROCEDURES present you with easy-to-follow steps with explanations.

View the Donning and Removal of Protective Equipment video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Personal Protective Equipment

Protective clothing and other items worn by an individual to protect mucous membranes, airways, skin and clothing from contact with infectious substances is called **personal protective equipment (PPE).** PPE provides a barrier against infection. Used properly, it protects those wearing it. Disposed of properly, it prevents spread of infection to others. PPE includes the following.

View the Hand Washing/Hand Antisepsis video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

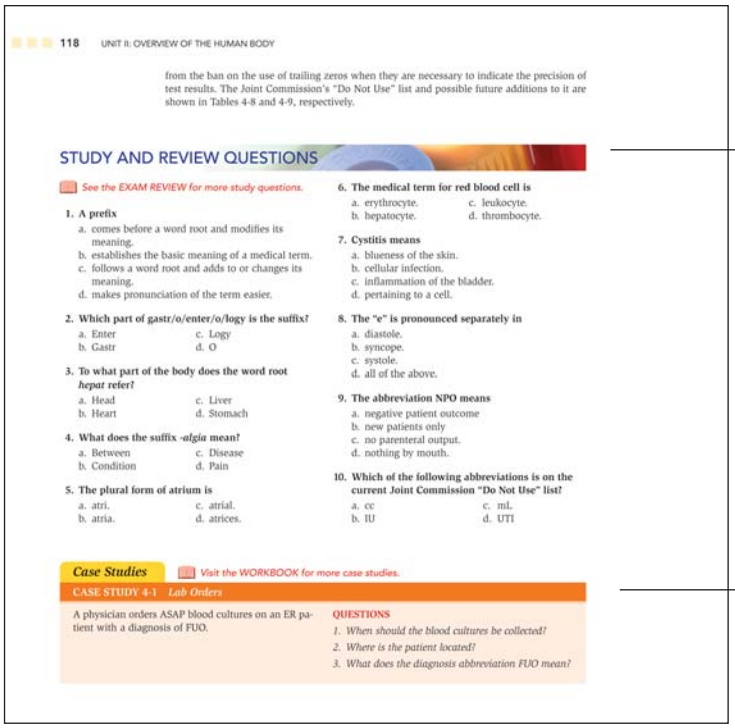
PROCEDURE 3-1 Hand-Washing Technique

PURPOSE: Decontaminate hands to prevent the spread of infection
EQUIPMENT: Liquid soap, disposable towels, trash can

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Stand back so that you do not touch the sink.	The sink may be contaminated.
2. Turn on the faucet and wet hands under warm running water.	Water should not be too hot or too cold and hands should be wet before applying soap to minimize drying, chapping, or cracking of hands from frequent hand washing.
3. Apply soap and work up a lather.	A good lather is needed to reach all surfaces.
4. Scrub all surfaces, including between the fingers and around the knuckles.	Scrubbing is necessary to dislodge micro-organisms from surfaces, especially between fingers and around knuckles.
5. Rub your hands together vigorously.	Friction helps loosen dead skin, dirt, debris, and microorganisms. (Steps 4 and 5 should take at least 15 seconds, about the time it takes to sing the ABCs).

Chapter Closing Elements

Each chapter closes with the following elements to help you study and test your knowledge of what you've learned:



118 UNIT II: OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN BODY

from the ban on the use of trailing zeros when they are necessary to indicate the precision of test results. The Joint Commission's "Do Not Use" list and possible future additions to it are shown in Tables 4-8 and 4-9, respectively.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. A prefix
   a. comes before a word root and modifies its meaning.
   b. establishes the basic meaning of a medical term.
   c. follows a word root and adds to or changes its meaning.
   d. makes pronunciation of the term easier.
2. Which part of gastr/o/enter/o/logy is the suffix?
   a. Enter c. Logy
   b. Gastr d. O
3. To what part of the body does the word root *hepat* refer?
   a. Head c. Liver
   b. Heart d. Stomach
4. What does the suffix *-algia* mean?
   a. Between c. Disease
   b. Condition d. Pain
5. The plural form of atrium is
   a. atri. c. atrial.
   b. atria. d. atrices.
6. The medical term for red blood cell is
   a. erythrocyte. c. leukocyte.
   b. hepatocyte. d. thrombocyte.
7. Cystitis means
   a. blueness of the skin.
   b. cellular infection.
   c. inflammation of the bladder.
   d. pertaining to a cell.
8. The "e" is pronounced separately in
   a. diastole.
   b. syncope.
   c. systole.
   d. all of the above.
9. The abbreviation NPO means
   a. negative patient outcome
   b. new patients only
   c. no parenteral output.
   d. nothing by mouth.
10. Which of the following abbreviations is on the current Joint Commission "Do Not Use" list?
    a. cc c. mL
    b. IU d. UTI

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 4-1 *Lab Orders*

A physician orders ASAP blood cultures on an ER patient with a diagnosis of FUO.

QUESTIONS
1. *When should the blood cultures be collected?*
2. *Where is the patient located?*
3. *What does the diagnosis abbreviation FUO mean?*

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS provoke thought and help test your comprehension of each chapter's major concepts.

CASE STUDIES Enhance critical thinking skills and show how to apply concepts in the real world.

282 UNIT III: BLOOD COLLECTION PROCEDURES

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

BD™ Blood Transfer Device product literature. Franklin Lakes, NJ: BD Vacutainer Systems.
Bishop ML, Fody EP, Schoeff LE. *Clinical Chemistry: Principles, Procedures, Correlations*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.
Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, GP33-A. *Accuracy in Patient and Sample Identification*. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2010.
Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H3–A6. *Procedures for the Collection of Diagnostic Blood Specimens by Venipuncture*, 6th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2007.
College of American Pathologists (CAP) Publications Committee, Phlebotomy Subgroup. *So You're Going to Collect a Blood Specimen: An Introduction to Phlebotomy*. 11th ed. Northfield, IL: CAP, 2005.
Ernst DJ. *Applied Phlebotomy*. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.
Ernst DJ. *Blood Specimen Collection FAQs*. Corydon, IN: Center for Phlebotomy Education, 2008.
Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Allergic reactions to latex-containing medical devices. *FDA Med Alert*, March 29, 1991.
Graden M, et al. Pain reduction at venipuncture in newborns: Oral glucose compared with local anesthetic cream. *Pediatrics* 2002;110:1053–1057.
Kronberger J, Woodson, D. *Clinical Medical Assisting*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.
Lindh V, Wiklund U, Hakansson S. Assessment of the effect of EMLA during venipuncture in newborn by analysis of heart rate variability. *Pain* 2000;86:247–254.
Mitchell A, Waltman PA. Oral sucrose and pain relief for preterm infants. *Pain Management Nursing* 2003;4(2):62–69.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos:
  - Blood Collection from a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder
  - Collecting a Blood Specimen by Venipuncture Using the Evacuated Tube System
  - Collecting Blood from an Antecubital Vein Using a Needle and Syringe
  - Hand Washing/Hand Antisepsis
  - Introductory and Identification Processes Required Prior to Blood Specimen Collection
  - Poor and Good Workplace Ergonomics for Phlebotomy
  - Proper Tourniquet Application for Venipuncture
  - Specimen Labeling and Venipuncture Follow-up Procedures
  - Transferring Blood from a Syringe into ETS Tubes
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- Advance magazine for medical laboratory personnel: http://laboratorian.advanceweb.com/
- American Academy of Pediatricians: http://www.aap.org
- Center for Phlebotomy Education: http://www.phlebotomy.com
- National Institute for Safety and Health: http://www.cdc.gov/niosh

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review*, 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

MEDIA MENUS point out online student resources available for that chapter.

Additional Learning Resources

In addition to the helpful tools outlined here, you also have access to a variety of free resources at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e designed to help make learning exciting and effective. These include:

- Interactive games and exercises that offer a fun way to study and review. Exercise types include Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Interactive Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration.
- 23 videos and 17 animations that illustrate important procedures and concepts
- Audio flash cards, flash card generator, and audio glossary
- Fully searchable Full Text Online

Reviewers

Carol Abshire, MLT, BGS
Laboratory Manager/Coordinator
Arts & Science
Lamar State College—Orange
Orange, Texas

Diana Alagna, RN, RMA
Program Director
Medical Assisting
Branford Hall Career Institute
Southington, Connecticut

David E. Berg, MS, FAHA
Director, Arizona Research Foundation
Phoenix, Arizona

Judith Blaney, AMT, MCLS
Phlebotomy Internship Coordinator
Allied Health Department
Manchester Community College
Manchester, New Hampshire

Gerry Brasin, AS, CMA (AAMA), CPC
Coordinator
Education/Compliance
Premier Education Group
Springfield, Massachusetts

Marilyn Braswell, BA, MT (ASCP), SBB
Phlebotomy Instructor
Healthcare Continuing Education
Central Piedmont Community College
Charlotte, North Carolina

Lou Brown, BS, MT (ASCP), CMA (AAMA)
Program Director
Medical Assisting and Phlebotomy
Wayne Community College
Goldsboro, North Carolina

Mary Ellen Brown, CMA (AAMA), PBT (ASCP)
Instructor
Medical Assisting Department
Lincoln Technical Institute
Hamden, Connecticut

Susen Edwards, MA
Program Coordinator
Allied Health
Middlesex County College
Edison, New Jersey

Nancy Feulner, MS Ed
Program Coordinator
Health Science
College of DuPage
Glen Ellyn, Illinois

Tammy Gallagher, BS, MT
Medical Technologist
Butler County Community College
Butler, Pennsylvania

Kathi Gilmore, AS
Master Instructor
Medical Assisting
Remington College, Nashville Campus
Nashville, Tennessee

Joyce Hall, C (ASCP)
Laboratory Administrative Manager
John C. Lincoln—North Mountain
Phoenix, Arizona

Andrea T. Harper, MS, MLS (ASCP)
Adjunct Faculty Phlebotomy Instructor
Manchester Community College
Manchester, New Hampshire

Nancy Heldt, MS, MT (ASCP)
Professor of Medical Laboratory Technology
Division of Science and Health Careers
Oakton Community College
Des Plaines, Illinois

Claudia N. Hewlett, AS
Senior MA Lead Instructor
Allied Health
Remington College
Memphis, Tennessee

Maureane Hoffman, MD, PhD
Professor
Pathology
Duke University Medical Center
Durham, North Carolina

Carol Itatani, PhD, MS, MT (ASCP)
Professor
Department of Biological Sciences
California State University, Long Beach
Long Beach, California

Cherika de Jesus, CMA/AAMA
Lead Medical Assistant Chair
Medical Assistant
Globe University Minnesota School of Business
Brooklyn Center, Minnesota

Paula Furlan Kimball, MS, MLT, AHI
Assistant Master Technical Instructor
Department of Allied Health—MLT Program
University of Texas at Brownsville and Texas Southmost College
Brownsville, Texas

Robin Gaynor Krefetz, M.Ed MLS (ASCP) PBT
CLT and Phlebotomy Program Director
Community College of Philadelphia
Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Tanya O. Mace, MSN, RN, PBT (ASCP)
Program Director
Nursing and Phlebotomy
Brunswick Community College
Supply, North Carolina

James R. McGee, MA, MT (ASCP)
Instructor, Phlebotomy Training and Exploring Medical Language
Retired, Part Time Instructor
Healthcare Continuing Education
Central Piedmont Community College
Charlotte, North Carolina

D. Gayle Melberg, MS, MT (ASCP)
Adjunct Faculty
Medical Laboratory Technician
J. Sargeant Reynolds Community College
Richmond, Virginia

Cheryl Milish, AAS
Instructor
Allied Health
Southwestern College
Florence, Kentucky

Judith Miller, BS, MT (ASCP)
Clinical Coordinator
Medical Laboratory Technician Program
Barton County Community College
Great Bend, Kansas

Lane Miller, MBA/HCM
Director
Continuing Education
Medical Careers Institute
Virginia Beach, Virginia

Michael Murphy, CMA (AAMA)
Program Coordinator
Berdan Institute at The Summit Medical Group
Union, New Jersey

Sonja Nehr-Kanet, MS, MLS (ASCP)
CLS Program Director/Clinical Associate Professor
Clinical/Medical Laboratory Science Program
Idaho State University
Meridian, Idaho

Charez Norris, RRT
Clinical Educator, Respiratory Services
John C. Lincoln—North Mountain
Phoenix, Arizona

Robert Plick, RMA, RPT, CET, BS
American Heart Association CPR Instructor
9 Health Fair Phlebotomy Task Force
Externship and Community Affairs Coordinator, Medical Instructor
Medical Instructor, Medical Lab Assistant/Phlebotomist and Associate Minister Church of Christ
Education Department
Alta/Westwood College
Denver, Colorado

Pamela B. Primrose, PhD, MT (ASCP)
Professor and Program Chair Medical Laboratory Technology/Phlebotomy
School of Health Sciences
Ivy Tech Community College
South Bend, Indiana

Debbie Reasoner, (NHA)-CPT-CHI
Director and Instructor
Phlebotomy/Lab Assistant
West Coast Phlebotomy, Inc.
Oregon City, Oregon

Mary Robitaille, BS, MT (ASCP)
Phlebotomy Instructor
CNM Community College
Albuquerque, New Mexico

Mary E. Stassi, RN-BC
Health Occupations Coordinator
St. Charles Community College
Cottleville, Missouri

Philip Tate, DA
Author, *Seeley's Principles of Anatomy and Physiology, 2010*
Lubbock, Texas

Scott Tharpe, CLS (CA), MT
Program Director, Clinical Laboratory Sciences
Health Science
Saddleback College
Mission Viejo, California

Marie Thomas, CLT, CMA
Clinical Instructor/Lead
Medical Assisting
Berdan Institute
Wayne, New Jersey

Barbara Vaiden, BS, MT (ASCP)
Supervisor
Phlebotomy
OSF Saint Anthony Medical Center
Rockford, Illinois

Janet Vittori, BS, MT (ASCP)
Point-of-Care Testing Coordinator
Laboratory Supervisor
John C Lincoln Hospital—North Mountain
Phoenix, Arizona

Brief Contents

UNIT I THE HEALTHCARE SETTING 1

1 Past and Present and The Healthcare Setting 3

2 Quality Assurance and Legal Issues 39

3 Infection Control, Safety, First Aid, and Personal Wellness 63

UNIT II OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN BODY 105

4 Medical Terminology 107

5 Human Anatomy and Physiology Review 121

6 The Circulatory System 153

UNIT III BLOOD COLLECTION PROCEDURES 189

7 Blood Collection Equipment, Additives, and Order of Draw 191

8 Venipuncture Procedures 225

9 Preanalytical Considerations 283

10 Capillary Puncture Equipment and Procedures 319

UNIT IV SPECIAL PROCEDURES 355

11 Special Collections and Point-of-Care Testing 357

12 Computers and Specimen Handling and Processing 411

13 Nonblood Specimens and Tests 435

14 Arterial Puncture Procedures 455

APPENDIX A
Laboratory Tests 477

APPENDIX B
Laboratory Mathematics 487

APPENDIX C
Conversational Phrases in English and Spanish 493

APPENDIX D
Work Restrictions for Healthcare Employees 495

APPENDIX E
Answers to Study & Review Questions and Case Studies 497

APPENDIX F
Tube Guides 503

GLOSSARY 507

Index 523

Detailed Contents

About the Authors iv
Preface vi
User's Guide x
Reviewers xiv
Brief Contents xvi
List of Procedures xxviii

UNIT I THE HEALTHCARE SETTING 1

1 Past and Present and The Healthcare Setting 3
KEY TERMS 3
OBJECTIVES 3
PHLEBOTOMY: A HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE 4
PHLEBOTOMY TODAY 6
The Changing Role of the Phlebotomist in the Emerging Healthcare Environment 6
Official Recognition 7
Patient–Client Interaction 8
Communication Skills 12
THE HEALTHCARE SETTING 16
Healthcare Delivery 16
Healthcare Financing 18
The Changing Healthcare System 20
Organization of Hospital Services 21
Clinical Laboratory Services 23
Clinical Laboratory Personnel 33
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Act 34
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 35
CASE STUDIES 36
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 36
MEDIA MENU 37

2 Quality Assurance and Legal Issues 39
KEY TERMS 39
OBJECTIVES 39
QUALITY ASSURANCE IN HEALTHCARE 40
National Standard and Regulatory Agencies 40
Quality Assurance in Phlebotomy 43
Areas of Phlebotomy Subject to Quality Assessment 46
Documentation 49
Risk Management 52
LEGAL ISSUES 54
Tort 55
Malpractice Insurance 57

Avoiding Lawsuits 57
Patient Consent 57
The Litigation Process 59
Legal Cases Involving Phlebotomy Procedures 59
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 60
CASE STUDIES 61
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 62
MEDIA MENU 62

3 Infection Control, Safety, First Aid, and Personal Wellness 63
KEY TERMS 63
OBJECTIVES 63
INFECTION CONTROL 64
Infection 64
The Chain of Infection 65
Breaking the Chain of Infection 69
Infection-Control Programs 69
Infection Control Methods 70
Isolation Procedures 75
SAFETY 80
Biosafety 81
Electrical Safety 88
Radiation Safety 92
Chemical Safety 93
FIRST AID 98
External Hemorrhage 98
Shock 98
Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care 99
PERSONAL WELLNESS 99
Personal Hygiene 100
Proper Nutrition 100
Rest and Exercise 100
Back Protection 101
Stress Management 102
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 102
CASE STUDIES 103
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 103
MEDIA MENU 104

UNIT II OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN BODY 105

4 Medical Terminology 107
KEY TERMS 107
OBJECTIVES 107
WORD ROOTS 108
PREFIXES 108
SUFFIXES 109
COMBINING VOWELS/FORMS 110
DISCREPANCIES IN THE CLASSIFICATION OF WORD ELEMENTS 111
UNIQUE PLURAL ENDINGS 112
PRONUNCIATION 112
ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS 112
THE JOINT COMMISSION'S "DO NOT USE" LIST 112
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 118
CASE STUDIES 118
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 119
MEDIA MENU 119

5 Human Anatomy and Physiology Review 121
KEY TERMS 121
OBJECTIVES 121
BODY POSITIONS 122
Anatomic Position 122
Other Positions 122
BODY PLANES 122
BODY DIRECTIONAL TERMS 123
BODY CAVITIES 123
BODY FUNCTIONS 125
Homeostasis 125
Metabolism 125
BODY ORGANIZATION 126
Cells 126
Tissues 127
Organs 128
BODY SYSTEMS 128
Skeletal System 128
Muscular System 129
Integumentary System 131
Nervous System 135
Endocrine System 137
Digestive System 141
Reproductive System 143
Urinary System 144
Respiratory System 146
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 151
CASE STUDIES 151
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 152
MEDIA MENU 152

6 The Circulatory System 153
KEY TERMS 153
OBJECTIVES 153
THE HEART 154
Heart Structure 154
Heart Function 157
Heart Disorders and Diagnostic Tests 160
THE VASCULAR SYSTEM 161
Functions 161
Structures 161
Blood Vessel Structure 163
The Flow of Blood 166
Phlebotomy-Related Vascular Anatomy 166
Vascular System Disorders and Diagnostic Tests 170
THE BLOOD 170
Blood Composition 170
Blood Type 174
Blood Specimens 175
Blood Disorders and Diagnostic Tests 177
HEMOSTASIS AND COAGULATION 177
Coagulation Factors and Pathways 177
The Role of Thrombin 180
The Hemostatic Process In Vivo 181
The Role of the Liver in Hemostasis 184
Hemostatic Disorders and Diagnostic Tests 184
THE LYMPHATIC SYSTEM 184
Functions 184
Structures 185

Lymph Flow 185
Lymphatic System Disorders and Diagnostic Tests 186
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 187
CASE STUDIES 188
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 188
MEDIA MENU 188

UNIT III BLOOD COLLECTION PROCEDURES 189

7 Blood Collection Equipment, Additives, and Order of Draw 191
KEY TERMS 191
OBJECTIVES 191
GENERAL BLOOD COLLECTION EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES 192
Blood-Drawing Station 192
Phlebotomy Chairs 192
Equipment Carriers 193
Gloves and Glove Liners 194
Antiseptics 194
Disinfectants 195
Hand Sanitizers 195
Gauze Pads/Cotton Balls 196
Bandages 196
Needle and Sharps Disposal Containers 197
Biohazard Bags 197
Slides 197
Pen 197
Watch 197
VENIPUNCTURE EQUIPMENT 198
Vein-Locating Devices 198
Tourniquet 198
Needles 200
Evacuated Tube System 202
NEEDLE AND HOLDER UNITS 205
Syringe System 210
Winged Infusion Set 212
Combination Systems 213
BLOOD COLLECTION ADDITIVES 213
Anticoagulants 215
Special-Use Anticoagulants 218
Antiglycolytic Agents 218
Clot Activators 219
Thixotropic Gel Separator 219
Trace Element–Free Tubes 220
ORDER OF DRAW 220
Carryover/Cross-Contamination 220
Tissue Thromboplastin Contamination 222
Microbial Contamination 222
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 223
CASE STUDIES 223
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 224
MEDIA MENU 224

8 Venipuncture Procedures 225
KEY TERMS 225
OBJECTIVES 225
VENIPUNCTURE STEPS 226
Step 1: Review and Accession Test Request 226
Receipt of the Test Request 228

Reviewing the Requisition 229
Step 2: Approach, Identify, and Prepare Patient 229
Step 3: Verify Diet Restrictions and Latex Sensitivity 237
Step 4: Sanitize Hands 238
Step 5: Position Patient, Apply Tourniquet, and Ask Patient to Make a Fist 239
Step 6: Select Vein, Release Tourniquet, and Ask Patient to Open Fist 240
Step 7: Clean and Air-Dry the Site 244
Step 8: Prepare Equipment and Put on Gloves 246
Step 9: Reapply Tourniquet, Uncap and Inspect Needle 247
Step 10: Ask Patient to Remake a Fist, Anchor Vein, and Insert Needle 247
Step 11: Establish Blood Flow, Release Tourniquet, and Ask Patient to Open Fist 249
Step 12: Fill, Remove, and Mix Tubes in Order of Draw or Fill Syringe 250
Step 13: Place Gauze, Remove Needle, Activate Safety Feature, and Apply Pressure 251
Step 14: Discard Collection Unit, Syringe Needle, or Transfer Device 252
Step 15: Label Tubes 252
Step 16: Observe Special Handling Instructions 253
Step 17: Check Patient's Arm and Apply Bandage 253
Step 18: Dispose of Contaminated Materials 253
Step 19: Thank Patient, Remove Gloves, and Sanitize Hands 253
Step 20: Transport Specimen to the Lab 254
ROUTINE ETS VENIPUNCTURE 254
BUTTERFLY PROCEDURE 262
SYRINGE VENIPUNCTURE PROCEDURE 265
PROCEDURE FOR INABILITY TO COLLECT SPECIMEN 265
PEDIATRIC VENIPUNCTURE 270
Challenges 270
Dealing With Parents or Guardians 271
Dealing With the Child 271
Pain Interventions 272
Selecting a Method of Restraint 272
Equipment Selection 273
Procedures 273
GERIATRIC VENIPUNCTURE 273
Challenges 273
Safety Issues 276
Patients in Wheelchairs 276
Blood-Collection Procedures 277
DIALYSIS PATIENTS 278
LONG-TERM CARE PATIENTS 278
HOME CARE PATIENTS 279
HOSPICE PATIENTS 279
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 279
CASE STUDIES 281
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 282
MEDIA MENU 282

9 Preanalytical Considerations 283
KEY TERMS 283
OBJECTIVES 283
REFERENCE RANGES/INTERVALS 284
BASAL STATE 284
PHYSIOLOGICAL VARIABLES 284
Altitude 285
Dehydration 285
Diet 285
Diurnal/Circadian Variations 287
Drug Therapy 287
Exercise 288
Fever 288

Gender 288
Intramuscular Injection 288
Jaundice 289
Position 289
Pregnancy 290
Smoking 290
Stress 290
Temperature and Humidity 290
PROBLEM SITES 291
Burns, Scars, and Tattoos 291
Damaged Veins 291
Edema 291
Hematoma 291
Mastectomy 291
Obesity 292
VASCULAR ACCESS DEVICES (VADs) AND SITES 293
Arterial Line 293
Arteriovenous Shunt, Fistula, or Graft 293
Blood Sampling Device 293
Heparin or Saline Lock 296
Intravenous Sites 296
Previously Active IV Sites 297
Central Vascular Access Devices 297
PATIENT COMPLICATIONS AND CONDITIONS 300
Allergies to Equipment and Supplies 300
Excessive Bleeding 301
Fainting 301
Nausea and Vomiting 303
Pain 303
Petechiae 303
Seizures/Convulsion 304
PROCEDURAL ERROR RISKS 304
Hematoma Formation 304
Iatrogenic Anemia 305
Inadvertent Arterial Puncture 305
Infection 306
Nerve Injury 306
Reflux of Additive 306
Vein Damage 307
SPECIMEN QUALITY CONCERNS 307
Hemoconcentration 307
Hemolysis 308
Partially Filled Tubes 309
Specimen Contamination 311
Wrong or Expired Collection Tube 311
TROUBLESHOOTING FAILED VENIPUNCTURE 311
Tube Position 311
Needle Position 311
Collapsed Vein 314
Tube Vacuum 315
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 315
CASE STUDIES 316
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 317
MEDIA MENU 317

10 Capillary Puncture Equipment and Procedures 319

KEY TERMS 319
OBJECTIVES 319
CAPILLARY PUNCTURE EQUIPMENT 320

Lancets/Incision Devices 320
Laser Lancets 320
Microcollection Containers 320
Microhematocrit Tubes and Sealants 322
Capillary Blood Gas Equipment 323
Microscope Slides 324
Warming Devices 324
CAPILLARY PUNCTURE PRINCIPLES 324
Composition of Capillary Specimens 324
Reference Values 325
Indications for Capillary Puncture 325
Tests That Cannot Be Collected by Capillary Puncture 325
Order of Draw 326
CAPILLARY PUNCTURE STEPS 326
Step 1: Review and Accession Test Request 326
Step 2: Approach, Identify, and Prepare Patient 326
Step 3: Verify Diet Restrictions and Latex Sensitivity 326
Step 4: Sanitize Hands and Put on Gloves 326
Step 5: Position Patient 326
Step 6: Select the Puncture/Incision Site 326
Step 7: Warm the Site if Applicable 329
Step 8: Clean and Air-Dry Site 330
Step 9: Prepare Equipment 330
Step 10: Puncture the Site and Discard Lancet 330
Step 11: Wipe Away the First Blood Drop 331
Step 12: Fill and Mix Tubes/Containers in Order of Draw 331
Step 13: Place Gauze and Apply Pressure 332
Step 14: Label Specimen and Observe Special Handling Instructions 332
Step 15: Check the Site and Apply Bandage 332
Step 16: Dispose of Used and Contaminated Materials 333
Step 17: Thank Patient, Remove Gloves, and Sanitize Hands 333
Step 18: Transport Specimen to the Lab 333
CAPILLARY PUNCTURE PROCEDURES 333
SPECIAL CAPILLARY PUNCTURE PROCEDURES 340
Capillary Blood Gases 340
Neonatal Bilirubin Collection 341
Newborn/Neonatal Screening 343
Routine Blood Film/Smear Preparation 348
Thick Blood Smear Preparation 351
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 352
CASE STUDIES 353
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 353
MEDIA MENU 354

UNIT IV SPECIAL PROCEDURES 355

11 Special Collections and Point-of-Care Testing 357
KEY TERMS 357
OBJECTIVES 357
SPECIAL PROCEDURES 358
Blood Bank Specimens 358
Type, Screen, and Cross-Match 360
Blood Donor Collection 360
Blood Cultures 362
Antimicrobial Neutralization Products 371
Coagulation Specimens 372
2-Hour Postprandial Glucose 372
Glucose Tolerance Test 372

Lactose Tolerance Test 375
Paternity/Parentage Testing 375
Therapeutic Drug Monitoring 376
Therapeutic Phlebotomy 377
Toxicology Specimens 378
Trace Elements 380
POINT-OF-CARE TESTING 381
Quality and Safety in Point-of-Care Testing 381
Coagulation Monitoring by POCT 383
Arterial Blood Gases and Electrolytes 389
Multiple-Test-Panel Monitoring by POCT 390
Other Tests Performed by POCT 392
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 407
CASE STUDIES 407
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 408
MEDIA MENU 409

12 Computers and Specimen Handling and Processing 411
KEY TERMS 411
OBJECTIVES 411
COMPUTERIZATION IN HEALTHCARE 412
Computer Networks 413
Computer Components 413
Elements of the Computer 414
Laboratory Information System (LIS) 415
General Laboratory Computer Skills 420
Computerized Analyzers 420
Interfacing 420
Connectivity Industry Consortium (CIC) 421
Computerization Trends 421
SPECIMEN HANDLING 421
Routine Handling 422
Special Handling 425
SPECIMEN PROCESSING 426
Specimen Suitability 427
Centrifugation 428
Aliquot Preparation 431
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 432
CASE STUDY 433
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 434
MEDIA MENU 434

13 Nonblood Specimens and Tests 435
KEY TERMS 435
OBJECTIVES 435
NONBLOOD SPECIMEN LABELING AND HANDLING 436
NONBLOOD BODY-FLUID SPECIMENS 436
Urine 436
Amniotic Fluid 444
Cerebrospinal Fluid 444
Gastric Fluid/Gastric Analysis 445
Nasopharyngeal Secretions 445
Saliva 445
Semen 445
Serous Fluid 445
Sputum 446
Sweat 446
Synovial Fluid 447

OTHER NONBLOOD SPECIMENS 447
Buccal Swabs 447
Bone Marrow 447
Breath Samples 448
Feces (Stool) 449
Hair 449
Throat Swabs 450
Tissue Specimens 450
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 451
CASE STUDY 452
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 452
MEDIA MENU 453

14 Arterial Puncture Procedures 455
KEY TERMS 455
OBJECTIVES 455
ABGs 456
PERSONNEL WHO PERFORM ARTERIAL PUNCTURE 457
SITE-SELECTION CRITERIA 457
ARTERIAL PUNCTURE SITES 458
The Radial Artery 458
The Brachial Artery 460
The Femoral Artery 460
Other Sites 461
ABG SPECIMEN COLLECTION 461
Test Requisition 461
Equipment and Supplies 462
Patient Preparation 464
Radial ABG Procedure 467
ABG Collection from Other Sites 472
HAZARDS AND COMPLICATIONS OF ARTERIAL PUNCTURE 472
Arteriospasm 472
Artery Damage 473
Discomfort 473
Infection 473
Hematoma 473
Numbness 473
Thrombus Formation 473
Vasovagal Response 473
SAMPLING ERRORS 474
Air Bubbles 474
Delay in Analysis 474
Improper Mixing 474
Improper Syringe 474
Obtaining Venous Blood by Mistake 474
Use of Improper Anticoagulant 474
Use of Too Much or Too Little Heparin 475
CRITERIA FOR ABG SPECIMEN REJECTION 475
STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS 475
CASE STUDIES 476
BIBLIOGRAPHY AND SUGGESTED READINGS 476
MEDIA MENU 476

APPENDIX A
Laboratory Tests 477

APPENDIX B
Laboratory Mathematics 487

APPENDIX C
Conversational Phrases in English and Spanish 493

APPENDIX D
Work Restrictions for Healthcare Employees 495

APPENDIX E
Answers to Study & Review Questions and Case Studies 497

APPENDIX F
Tube Guides 503

GLOSSARY 507

Index 523

List of Procedures

PROCEDURE 3-1 Hand-Washing Technique 71

PROCEDURE 3-2 Cleanup Procedures for Blood and Other Body Fluid Spills 88

PROCEDURE 8-1 Tourniquet Application 241

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture 254

PROCEDURE 8-3 Venipuncture of a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder 262

PROCEDURE 8-4 Needle-and-Syringe Venipuncture 265

PROCEDURE 8-5 Using a Syringe Transfer Device 268

PROCEDURE 9-1 Performing Venipuncture Below an IV 297

PROCEDURE 9-2 Steps to Follow if a Patient Starts to Faint During Venipuncture 302

PROCEDURE 10-1 Fingerstick Procedure 333

PROCEDURE 10-2 Heelstick Procedure 336

PROCEDURE 10-3 Collection of a Capillary Blood Gas (CBG) Specimen by Heel Puncture 340

PROCEDURE 10-4 Newborn Screening Blood Spot Collection 346

PROCEDURE 10-5 Preparing a Blood Smear from a Capillary Puncture 348

PROCEDURE 11-1 Blood Culture Specimen Collection 365

PROCEDURE 11-2 GTT Procedure 374

PROCEDURE 11-3 Bleeding-Time Test 387

PROCEDURE 11-4 Pregnancy Testing 400

PROCEDURE 11-5 TB Test Administration 404

PROCEDURE 13-1 24-Hour Urine Collection Procedure 441

PROCEDURE 13-2 Clean-Catch Urine Collection Procedure for Women 442

PROCEDURE 13-3 Clean-Catch Urine Collection Procedure for Men 443

PROCEDURE 13-4 Throat Culture Specimen Collection 450

PROCEDURE 14-1 Modified Allen Test 465

PROCEDURE 14-2 Preparing and Administering Local Anesthetic 466

PROCEDURE 14-3 Radial ABG Procedure 470

UNIT I

THE HEALTHCARE SETTING

1 Past and Present and The Healthcare Setting 3

2 Quality Assurance and Legal Issues 39

3 Infection Control, Safety, First Aid, and Personal Wellness 63

CHAPTER

1

Past and Present and The Healthcare Setting

KEY TERMS

Do the Matching Exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

AHCCCS	HMOs	PHS
APC	ICD-9-CM	phlebotomy
case manager	IDS	polycythemia
certification	kinesic slip	PPOs
CLIA '88	kinesics	primary care
CMS	MCOs	proxemics
communication barriers	Medicaid	reference laboratories
CPT	Medicare	secondary care
exsanguinate	MLS	tertiary care
HIPAA	PHI	third-party payer

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Describe the evolution of phlebotomy and the role of the phlebotomist in today's healthcare setting.
3. Describe the traits that form the professional image and identify national organizations that support professional recognition of phlebotomists.
4. Describe the basic concepts of communication as they relate to healthcare and how appearance and nonverbal messages affect the communication process.
5. Describe proper telephone protocol in a laboratory or other healthcare setting.
6. Demonstrate an awareness of the different types of healthcare settings.
7. Compare types of third-party payers, coverage, and methods of payment to the patient, provider, and institutions.
8. Describe traditional hospital organization and identify the healthcare providers in the inpatient facility.
9. List the clinical analysis areas of the laboratory and the types of laboratory procedures performed in the different areas.
10. Describe the different levels of personnel found in the clinical laboratory and how Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendment regulations affect their job descriptions.

OVERVIEW

Healthcare today has evolved into an integrated delivery system offering a full range of services intended to ensure that the patient gets what is needed at the right time and in the right way. In addition to physicians, nurses, and patient support personnel, allied health professionals such as clinical laboratory personnel play a role in the delivery of patient care. The clinical laboratory serves a vital role in the healthcare system, providing physicians with some of medicine's most powerful diagnostic tests. Before patient test results can be reported to the physician, specimens must be collected and analyzed. The phlebotomist has been a key player in this process for some time. In addition to blood collection skills, successful specimen collection requires the phlebotomist to demonstrate competence, professionalism, good communication and public relations skills, thorough knowledge of the healthcare delivery system, and familiarity with clinical laboratory services. An understanding of phlebotomy from a historical perspective helps the phlebotomist appreciate the significance of his or her role in healthcare today.

Phlebotomy: A Historical Perspective

Since very early times, people have been fascinated by blood and have believed in some connection between the blood racing through their veins and their well-being. From this belief, certain medical principles and procedures dealing with blood evolved, some surviving to the present day.

An early medical theory developed by Hippocrates (460–377 B.C.) stated that disease was the result of excess substance—such as blood, phlegm, black bile, and yellow bile—within the body. It was thought that removal of the excess would restore balance. The process of removal and extraction became the treatment and could be done either by expelling disease materials through the use of drugs or by direct removal during surgery. One important surgical technique was venesection (cutting a vein), used in the process of bloodletting. Venesection—which comes from the Latin words *vena,* "vein," and *sectio,* "cutting"—was the most common method of general bloodletting. It involved cutting into a vein with a sharp instrument and releasing blood in an effort to rid the body of evil spirits, cleanse the body of impurities, or, as in Hippocrates' time, bring the body into proper balance. It often meant withdrawing large quantities of blood from a patient to cure or prevent illness and disease. *Venesection* is another word for *phlebotomy*, which comes from the Greek words *phlebos,* "vein," and *tome,* "incision."

Some authorities believe phlebotomy dates back to the last period of the Stone Age, when crude tools were used to puncture vessels and allow excess blood to drain out of the body. A painting in a tomb showing the application of a leech to a patient evidences bloodletting in Egypt in about 1400 B.C. Early in the Middle Ages, barber–surgeons flourished. By 1210, the Guild of Barber–Surgeons had been formed; it divided the surgeons into Surgeons of the Long Robe and Surgeons of the Short Robe. Soon the Short Robe surgeons were forbidden by law to do any surgery except bloodletting, wound surgery, cupping, leeching, shaving, tooth extraction, and enema administration.

To distinguish their profession from that of the Long Robe surgeon, barber–surgeons placed a striped pole, from which a bleeding bowl was suspended, outside their doors. The pole represented the rod squeezed by the patient to promote bleeding and the white stripe on the pole corresponded to the bandages, which were also used as tourniquets. Soon, handsomely decorated ceramic bleeding bowls (Fig. 1-1) came into fashion and were passed down from one generation to the next. These bowls, which often doubled as shaving bowls, usually had a semicircular area cut out on one side to facilitate placement of the bowl under the chin.

During the 17th and early 18th centuries, phlebotomy was considered a major therapeutic (treatment) process, and anyone willing to claim medical training could perform phlebotomy. The lancet, a tool used for cutting the vein during venesection, was perhaps the most prevalent medical instrument of the times. The usual amount of blood withdrawn was approximately 10 mL, but excessive phlebotomy was common.

Figure 1-1 A bleeding bowl.

Excessive phlebotomy is thought to have contributed to George Washington's death in 1799, when he was diagnosed with a throat infection and the physician bled him four times in 2 days. It was because of Washington's request to be allowed to die without further medical intervention that the physician did not completely ***exsanguinate*** *him, or remove all his blood.*

During this same period, phlebotomy was also accomplished by cupping and leeching. The art of cupping required a great deal of practice to maintain the high degree of dexterity necessary to avoid appearing clumsy and thus frighten the patient away. Cupping involved the application of a heated suction apparatus, called the "cup," to the skin to draw the blood to the surface. Then the capillaries in that area were severed by making a series of parallel incisions with a lancet or fleam. The typical fleam was a wide double-edged blade at right angles to the handle. Eventually, multiple fleams (Fig. 1-2) were attached and folded into a brass case for easy carrying. The blades were wiped clean with only a rag; therefore, they readily transmitted a host of blood-borne infections from patient to patient.

Fleams were used for general phlebotomy to open an artery or, more commonly, a vein to remove large amounts of blood. For more localized bloodletting, leeches were used. This procedure involved enticing the *Hirudo medicinalis,* a European medicinal leech, to the spot needing bloodletting with a drop of milk or blood on the patient's skin. After the leech engorged itself with blood, which took about an hour, it was allowed to drop off. By the mid-18th century, leeching was widely practiced in Europe, especially in France. Leeches were kept in special vessels that were filled with water and had perforated tops, so that the leeches could breathe. Early leech jars were glass and later ones ceramic (Fig. 1-3). Within the last decade, leeches have made a comeback as defenders from the complications of microsurgical replantation. The value of leech therapy (Fig. 1-4) lies in the components of the worm's saliva, which contains a local vasodilator (substance that increases the diameter of blood vessels), a local anesthetic, and hirudin, an anticoagulant (a substance that prevents clotting).

Figure 1-2 Typical fleams. (Courtesy Robert Kravetz, MD, Chairman, Archives Committee, American College of Gastroenterology.)

Figure 1-3 A leech jar.

Phlebotomy Today

The practice of phlebotomy continues to this day; however, principles and methods have improved dramatically. Today, phlebotomy is performed to:

- Obtain blood for diagnostic purposes and to monitor prescribed treatment
- Remove blood for transfusions at a donor center
- Remove blood for therapeutic purposes, such as treatment for **polycythemia,** a disorder involving the overproduction of red blood cells

Phlebotomy is primarily accomplished by one of two procedures:

- Venipuncture, which involves collecting blood by penetrating a vein with a needle and syringe or other collection apparatus
- Capillary puncture, which involves collecting blood after puncturing the skin with a lancet

THE CHANGING ROLE OF THE PHLEBOTOMIST IN THE EMERGING HEALTHCARE ENVIRONMENT

Healthcare delivery systems are constantly changing. Advances in laboratory technology are making point-of-care testing (POCT) commonplace, and services that were once unique to the laboratory are now being provided at other locations. The development of teams and the

Figure 1-4 A toe with leech.

BOX 1-1 DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF A PHLEBOTOMIST

- Prepare patients for collection procedures associated with laboratory samples.
- Collect routine skin puncture and venous specimens for testing as required.
- Prepare specimens for transport to ensure stability of sample.
- Maintain patient confidentiality.
- Perform quality-control checks while carrying out clerical, clinical, and technical duties.
- Transport specimens to the laboratory.
- Comply with all procedures instituted in the procedure manual.
- Promote good relations with patients and hospital personnel.
- Assist in collecting and documenting monthly workload and recording data.
- Maintain safe working conditions.
- Perform appropriate laboratory computer operations.
- Participate in continuing education programs.
- Collect and perform point-of-care testing (POCT).
- Perform quality-control checks on POCT instruments.
- Perform skin tests.
- Prepare and process specimens.
- Collect urine drug screen specimens.
- Perform electrocardiography.
- Perform front-office duties, current procedural terminology coding, and paperwork.

sharing of tasks have become necessary as healthcare organizations attempt to find the balance between cost-effective treatment and high-quality care. Work responsibilities have been revised, so that many types of healthcare professionals are cross-trained in a number of techniques and skills, including phlebotomy. Consequently the term *phlebotomist* is applied to any individual who has been trained in the various techniques used to obtain blood for laboratory testing or blood donations. A competent clinical phlebotomist must have good manual dexterity, special communication skills, good organizational skills, and a thorough knowledge of laboratory specimen requirements and departmental policies. A selection of common duties and responsibilities associated with the role of phlebotomist are listed in Box 1-1.

Regardless of which member of the healthcare team performs phlebotomy techniques, quality assurance demands that the highest standards be maintained and approved procedures followed. Consequently there is a standardized educational curriculum with a recognized body of knowledge, skills, and standards of practice for the phlebotomy profession. Many hospitals, vocational schools, and colleges offer structured phlebotomy programs that not only train students in phlebotomy procedures, but also prepare them for national certification or state licensure. These programs, which can apply for approval by the National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (NAACLS), typically include classroom instruction and clinical practice.

According to Laboratory Medicine: A National Status Report – 2007, ***phlebotomy training programs have increased sixfold from 1987 to 2003.***

OFFICIAL RECOGNITION

Certification

Certification is a voluntary process by which an agency grants recognition to an individual who has met certain prerequisites in a particular technical area. Certification indicates the completion of defined academic and training requirements and the attainment of a satisfactory score on an examination. This is confirmed by the awarding of a title or designation. Phlebotomist certification is signified by initials that the individual is allowed to display after

TABLE 1-1 Phlebotomist Title and Initials Awarded by Certification Agency*

Certification Agency	Certification Title	Certification Initials
American Medical Technologists	Registered Phlebotomy Technician	RPT(AMT)
American Certification Agency	Certified Phlebotomy Technician	CPT(ACA)
American Society for Clinical Pathology	Phlebotomy Technician	PBT(ASCP)
National Center for Competency Testing	National Certified Phlebotomy	NCPT(NCCT)
National Healthcareer Association	Certified Phlebotomy Technician	CPT(NHA)

Mailing and e-mail addresses and telephone numbers for the Certification Agencies listed can be found in R. McCall, *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2012.

his or her name. Examples of national agencies that certify phlebotomists, along with the title and corresponding initials awarded, are listed in Table 1-1.

Licensure

Licensure is the act of granting a license. A license in healthcare is an official document or permit granted by a state agency that gives legal permission for a person to work in a particular health profession. Without a license, it would be against the law for a person to practice that profession in that state. Typically, the individual must meet specific education and experience requirements and pass an examination before the license is granted. The license indicates competency only at the time of examination. As a demonstration of continued competency, states normally require periodic license renewal, by either reexamination or proof of continuing education.

Some states have several levels of licensure for certain professions. For example, California offers three levels of phlebotomy licensure: Limited Phlebotomy Technician (LPT), Certified Phlebotomy Technician I (CPT I), and Certified Phlebotomy Technician II (CPT II).

Continuing Education

Continuing education is designed to update the knowledge or skills of participants and is generally geared to a learning activity or course of study for a specific group of health professionals, such as phlebotomists. Many organizations, such as the American Society for Clinical Pathology (ASCP), the American Society for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (ASCLS), and the American Medical Technologists (AMT), sponsor workshops, seminars, and self-study programs that award continuing education units (CEUs) to those who participate. The most widely accepted CEU standard, developed by the International Association for Continuing Education and Training (IACET), is that 10 contact hours equal one CEU. (International Association for Continuing Education and Training. Retrieved April 14, 2010, from http://www.iacet.org/content/continuing-education-units.html.)

Most certifying and licensing agencies require CEUs or other proof of continuing education for renewal of credentials. These requirements are intended to encourage professionals to expand their knowledge base and stay up to date. It is important for phlebotomists to participate in continuing education to be aware of new developments in specimen collection and personal safety.

PATIENT–CLIENT INTERACTION

As a member of the clinical laboratory team, the phlebotomist plays an important role in how the laboratory is portrayed to the public. The phlebotomist is often the only real contact the patient has with the laboratory. In many cases, patients equate this encounter with the caliber of care they receive while in the hospital. Positive "customer relations" involves promoting goodwill and a harmonious relationship with fellow employees, visitors, and especially

patients. A competent phlebotomist with a professional manner and a neat appearance helps to put the patient at ease and establish a positive relationship.

Recognizing Diversity

Despite similarities, fundamental differences among people arise from nationality, ethnicity, and culture as well as from family background, life experiences, and individual challenges. These differences affect the health beliefs and behaviors of both patients and providers.

Culturally aware healthcare providers enhance the potential for more rewarding interpersonal experiences. This can lead to increased job satisfaction for them and increased patient satisfaction with the healthcare services they provide.

Critical factors in providing healthcare services that meet the needs of diverse populations include understanding the:

- Beliefs and values that shape a person's approach to health and illness
- Health-related needs of patients and their families according to the environments in which they live
- Knowledge of customs and traditions related to health and healing
- Attitudes toward seeking help from healthcare providers

KEY POINT By recognizing diversity, the phlebotomist promotes goodwill and harmonious relationships that directly improve health outcomes, the quality of services, and public relations.

State how each quality contributes to professional attitude in the Knowledge Drill 1-6 activity in the WORKBOOK.

Professionalism

Professionalism is defined as the conduct and qualities that characterize a professional person. As part of a service-oriented industry, persons performing phlebotomy must practice professionalism.

The public's perception of the phlebotomy profession is based on the image created by the phlebotomist's conduct and appearance. In fact, general appearance and grooming directly influence whether the phlebotomist is perceived as a professional. It has been said that people form opinions of a person within the first 3 seconds of meeting, and this judgment on the superficial aspect of a person sets an image in the observer's mind that can affect the interaction.

Conservative clothing, proper personal hygiene, and physical well-being contribute to a professional appearance. It should be noted that healthcare institutional policies for attire are influenced by a federal standard that requires employers to provide protective clothing for laboratory workers, including phlebotomists.

Besides displaying a professional appearance, a person performing phlebotomy is required to display attitudes, personal characteristics, and behaviors consistent with accepted standards of professional conduct. Some of the personal behaviors and characteristics that make up this professional image, are as follows:

Self-Confidence

A phlebotomists who exhibit self-confidence has the ability to trust his or her own personal judgment. Your perception of yourself has an enormous impact on how others perceive you, and "perception is reality." The more self-confidence you have, the more professional you appear. Many factors affect being perceived as self-confident; for example, erect posture, professional appearance, courage, and tactfulness in communication.

Integrity

Integrity as a concept has to do with a personal feeling of "wholeness" deriving from honesty and consistency of character; this can be seen in the person's actions, values, and beliefs. Professional standards of integrity or honesty require a person to do what is right regardless of the circumstances and in all situations and interactions. For example, a phlebotomist often functions independently and may be tempted to take procedural shortcuts when pressed for time. A phlebotomist with integrity understands that following the rules for collection is essential to the quality of test results; therefore, he or she respects those rules without fail.

Compassion

Compassion is a human emotion prompted by others' experiences and concerns; it is considered to be one of the greatest of virtues by major religious traditions. It is differentiated from empathy only by the level of emotion, as it tends to be more intense. Compassion means being sensitive to a person's needs and willing to offer reassurance in a caring and humane way. A phlebotomist may show compassion by appreciating the fear that illness or the unknown generates, by using empathy to sense others' experiences, and by demonstrating a calm and helpful demeanor toward those in need.

Self-Motivation

A person with motivation finds the workplace stimulating no matter what the tasks may entail. Motivation is a direct reflection of a person's attitude toward life. A phlebotomist who exhibits self-motivation takes initiative to follow through on tasks, consistently strives to improve and correct behavior, and takes advantage of every learning opportunity that may come along. A phlebotomist who is motivated makes every effort to provide excellence in all aspects of patient care in which he or she is involved.

Dependability

Dependability and work ethic go hand in hand. An individual who is dependable and takes personal responsibility for his or her actions is extremely refreshing in today's environment. A phlebotomist who works hard and shows constant, reliable effort and perseverance is a valuable asset to a healthcare organization. This set of values makes a person a desirable candidate for new job opportunities and ultimately promotions in the healthcare setting or anywhere.

Ethical Behavior

A phlebotomist should know that there are policies designed to regulate what should or should not be done by those who work in the healthcare setting. This system of policies or principles is called a code of ethics. Ethics are centered on an individual's conduct. Ethical behavior means making the right personal choices that help to maintain a high level of respect for you, the phlebotomist, and for the profession in which you work.

In healthcare, ethical behavior requires conforming to a standard of right and wrong conduct so as to avoid harming patients in any way. A code of ethics, although not enforceable by law, leads to uniformity and defined expectations for the members of that profession. Professional organizations, such as ASCP, have developed codes of ethics for laboratory professionals.

The Hippocratic oath includes the phrase *primum non nocere*, which means "first do no harm." The primary objective in any healthcare professional's code of ethics must always be to safeguard the patient's welfare. A guide to working with that principle in mind is a document of accepted quality-care principles developed by the American Hospital Association and the related patient rights.

Patients' Rights

A patient has rights and must be informed of these rights when care is initiated. The patient must sign a statement that these rights have been explained, and the signed statement must be made a part of the patient's health record. It has been found that patients who are informed about their treatments and prognoses and are considered in the decision-making process are more satisfied with their care.

A decade ago, the federal government recognized the need to strengthen consumer confidence in the fairness and responsiveness of the healthcare system. The result was *The Patient Bill of Rights in Medicare and Medicaid.* Medicare now requires that patients be informed of their rights, including the right to know what treatment they can expect, who will be treating them, the right to refuse treatment, and the right to confidentiality.

To affirm the importance of a strong relationship between patients and their healthcare providers, the American Hospital Association (AHA) publishes and disseminates a statement of patient rights and responsibilities. The AHA brochure with this statement or a similar pamphlet is often provided to consumers during inpatient admission procedures as evidence of patient advocacy or support.

BOX 1-2 THE PATIENT CARE PARTNERSHIP

What to Expect during Your Hospital Stay

- High-quality hospital care
- A clean and safe environment
- Involvement in your care
- Protection of your privacy
- Help when leaving the hospital
- Help with your billing claims

Reprinted from American Hospital Association, *The Patient Care Partnership*, retrieved April 14, 2010 from http://www.aha.org/aha/content/2003/pdf/pcp_english_030730.pdf. See that document for more details.

The latest revision approved by the AHA Board in 2003 is entitled *The Patient Care Partnership*. This easy-to-read brochure replaces the AHA's *Patient Bill of Rights* and is designed to help patients understand their expectations during their hospital stay with regard to their rights and responsibilities. It states that the first priority of all healthcare professionals, including phlebotomists, is to provide high-quality patient care in a clean and safe environment, while also maintaining the patient's personal rights and dignity by being sensitive to differences in culture, race, religion, gender, and age. Expectations listed in the brochure are summarized in Box 1-2.

Confidentiality

Patient confidentiality is seen by many as the ethical cornerstone of professional behavior in the healthcare field. It serves to protect both the patient and the practitioner. The healthcare provider must recognize that all patient information is absolutely private and confidential. Healthcare providers are bound by ethical standards and various laws to maintain the confidentiality of each person's health information.

KEY POINT The maintenance of confidentiality is such an important issue in testing for HIV that the patient must sign a consent form before the specimen for the test can be collected.

Any questions relating to patient information should be referred to the proper authority. Unauthorized release of information concerning a patient is considered an invasion of privacy. In 1996, a federal law was passed requiring all healthcare providers to obtain a patient's consent in writing before disclosing medical information such as a patient's test results, treatment, or condition to any unauthorized person. That law is the **Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act** (HIPAA) of 1996.

HIPAA

As a person's health information has become more easily transferable from one facility or entity to the next through electronic exchange, a growing problem with a person's rights and confidentiality has arisen. The HIPAA law was enacted in order to more closely secure this information and regulate patient privacy. HIPAA provisions protect a broad range of health information. Safeguarding the confidentiality of protected health information (PHI) is one of the primary aims of the HIPAA privacy rule. The law defines PHI as "individually identifiable health information that is transmitted by electronic media; maintained in any medium described in the definition of electronic media or transmitted or maintained in any other form or medium." The law established national standards for the electronic exchange of PHI and states that patients must be informed of their rights concerning the release of PHI and how it will be used. Penalties for HIPAA violations include disciplinary action, fines, and possible jail time.

The law states that **healthcare workers** (HCWs) must obtain the patient's written authorization for any use or disclosure of PHI unless the use or disclosure is for treatment, payment,

or healthcare operations. To avoid litigation in this area, all HCWs and students must sign a confidentiality and nondisclosure agreement affirming that they understand HIPAA and will keep all patients' information confidential.

COMMUNICATION SKILLS

Phlebotomy is both a technical and a people-oriented profession. Many different types of people or customers interact with phlebotomists. Often, the customer's perception of the healthcare facility is based on the employees they deal with on a one-to-one basis, such as a phlebotomist. Customers expect high-quality service. A phlebotomist who lacks a good bedside manner (the ability to communicate empathically with the patient) increases the chances of becoming part of a legal action should any difficulty arise while a specimen is being obtained. Favorable impressions result when healthcare workers respond properly to patient needs, and this occurs when there is good communication between the healthcare provider and the patient.

Communication Defined

Communication is a skill. Defined as the means by which information is exchanged or transmitted, communication is one of the most important processes that takes place in the healthcare system. This dynamic and constantly changing process involves three components: verbal skills, nonverbal skills, and the ability to listen.

Test your knowledge of communication components in Labeling Exercise 1-1 in the WORKBOOK.

Communication Components

Verbal Communication

Expression through the spoken word is the most obvious form of communication. Effective healthcare communication should be an interaction in which both participants play a role. It involves a *sender* (speaker), a *receiver* (listener), and, when complete, a process called *feedback*, creating what is referred to as the *communication feedback loop* (Fig. 1-5). Accurate verbal exchange depends upon feedback, as it is through feedback that the listener or receiver is given the chance to clarify ideas or correct miscommunication, which may be due to preformed biases.

Normal human behavior sets up many **communication barriers** (biases or personalized filters) that become obstructions to hearing and understanding what has been said and are frequent causes of miscommunication. Examples of communication barriers are language limitations, cultural diversity, emotions, age, and physical disabilities such as hearing loss.

To encourage good verbal communication, the phlebotomist should use a vocabulary that is easily understood by his or her clients. To avoid creating suspicion and distrust in

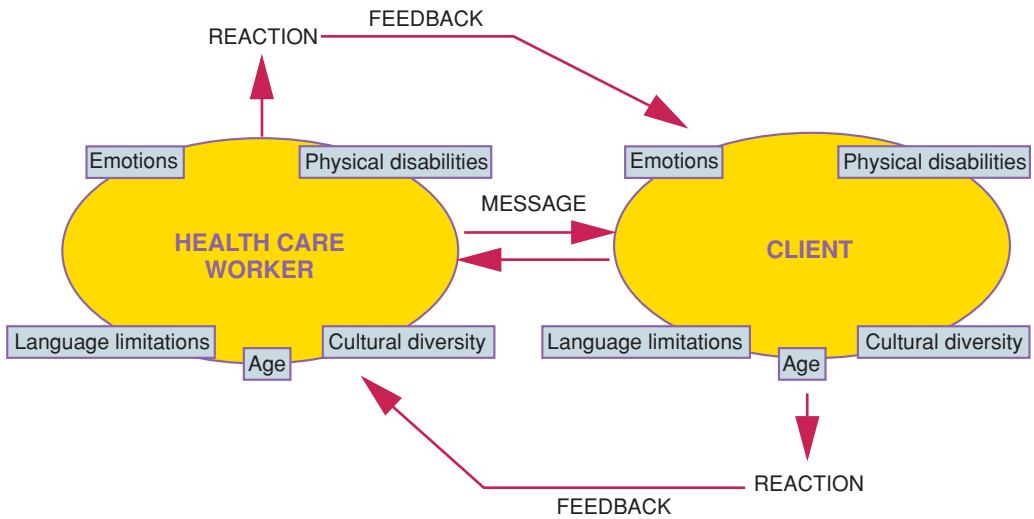


Figure 1-5 The verbal communication feedback loop.

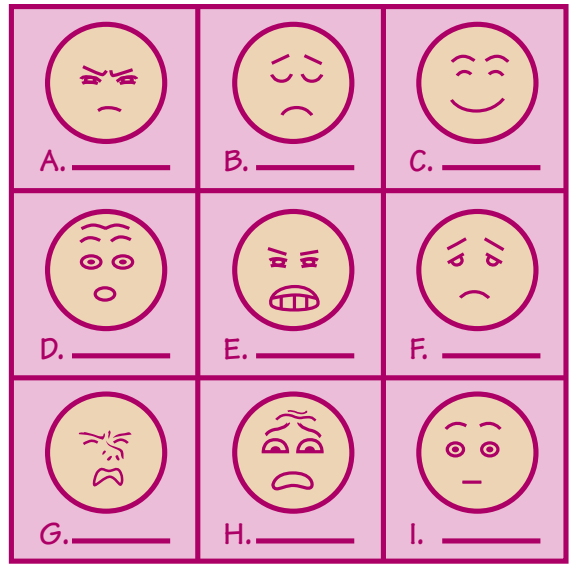


Figure 1-6 Nonverbal facial cues. Can you match the sketches with the correct affects? (1) happy, (2) sad, (3) surprise, (4) fear, (5) anger, (6) disgust.

Answers: A-5 B-2 C-1
D-3 E-5 F-2
G-6 H-4 I-3

individuals from other countries, the phlebotomist should be aware of cultural differences and avoid clichés and nonverbal cues that could be misunderstood; he or she should practice active listening to what has been said.

Active Listening

True communication is not just about speaking. It is more difficult to communicate than just to speak, because effective communication requires that the listener participate. It is always a two-way process. The ordinary person can absorb verbal messages at about 500 to 600 words per minute, and the average speaking rate is only 125 to 150 words per minute. Therefore, to avoid distraction, the listener must use the extra time for active listening. Active listening means taking positive steps through feedback to ensure that the listener is interpreting what the speaker is saying exactly as the speaker intended. Listening is the foundation of good interpersonal communication. The phlebotomist will find that listening carefully to what is being said is particularly valuable in building rapport with patients.

Nonverbal Communication

It has been stated that 80% of language is unspoken. Unlike verbal communication, formed from words that are one-dimensional, nonverbal communication is multidimensional and involves the following elements.

Kinesics

The study of nonverbal communication is also called **kinesics;** it includes characteristics of body motion and language such as facial expression, gestures, and eye contact. Figure 1-6 illustrates an exaggerated and simplified form of the six emotions that are most easily read by nonverbal facial cues. Body language, which most often is conveyed unintentionally, plays a major role in communication because it is continuous and more reliable than verbal communication. In fact, if the verbal and nonverbal messages do not match, it is called a **kinesic slip.** When this happens, people tend to trust what they see rather than what they hear.

As health professionals, phlebotomists can learn much about patients' feelings by observing nonverbal communication, which seldom lies. The patient's face often tells the health professional what the patient will not reveal verbally. For instance, when a patient is anxious, nonverbal signs may include tight eyebrows, an intense frown, narrowed eyes, or a downcast mouth (Fig. 1-6). Researchers have found that certain facial appearances, such as a smile, are universal expressions of emotion. Worldwide, we all recognize the meaning of a smile; however, strong cultural customs often dictate when it is used.

TABLE 1-2 Territorial Zones and Corresponding Radii

Territorial Zone	Zone Radius
Intimate	1 to 18 inches
Personal	1½ to 4 feet
Social	4 to 12 feet
Public	More than 12 feet

KEY POINT To communicate effectively with someone, it is important to establish good eye contact. A patient or client may be made to feel unimportant and more like an object rather than a human being if eye contact is not established.

Proxemics

Proxemics is the study of an individual's concept and use of space. This subtle but powerful part of nonverbal communication plays a major role in patient relations. Every individual is surrounded by an invisible "bubble" of personal territory in which he or she feels most comfortable. The size of the bubble or territorial "zone of comfort" depends on the individual's needs at the time. Four categories of naturally occurring territorial zones and the radius of each are listed in Table 1-2. These zones are very obvious in human interaction. It is often necessary, in the healthcare setting, to enter personal or intimate zones; if this is not carefully handled, the patient may feel threatened, insecure, or out of control.

Appearance

Most healthcare facilities have dress codes because it is understood that appearance makes a statement. The impression the phlebotomist makes as he or she approaches the patient sets the stage for future interaction. The right image portrays a trustworthy professional. A phlebotomist's physical appearance should communicate cleanliness and confidence. Lab coats, when worn, should completely cover the clothing underneath and should be clean and pressed. Shoes should be conservative and polished. Close attention should be paid to personal hygiene. Bathing and deodorant use should be a daily routine. Strong perfumes or colognes should be avoided. Hair and nails should be clean and natural-looking. Long hair must be pulled back and fingernails kept short for safety's sake. In addition, according to current CDC hand hygiene guidelines, healthcare workers with direct patient contact cannot wear artificial nails or extenders.

KEY POINT Phlebotomists will find that when dealing with patients who are ill or irritable, a confident and professional appearance will be most helpful to them in doing their job.

Touch

Touching can take a variety of forms and convey many different meanings. For example, accidental touching may happen in a crowded elevator. Social touching takes place when a person grabs the arm of another while giving advice. Today, therapeutic touch that is designed to aid in healing has found a new place in medical practice. This special type of nonverbal communication is very important to the well-being of human beings and even more so to those suffering from dis-ease.

Because medicine is a contact profession, touching privileges are granted to and expected of healthcare workers under certain circumstances. Whether a patient or healthcare provider is comfortable with touching is based on his or her cultural background. Because touch is a necessary part of the phlebotomy procedure, it is important for the phlebotomist to realize that, patients are often much more aware of your touch than you are of theirs; there may even be a risk of the patient questioning the appropriateness of touching. Generally speaking, patients respond favorably when touch conveys a thoughtful expression of caring.

Effective Communication in Healthcare

It is not easy for the patient or the health professional to face disease and suffering every day. For many patients, being ill is a fearful and even terrifying experience; having blood drawn only contributes to their anxiety. Patients reach out for comfort and reassurance through conversation. Consequently, the phlebotomist must understand the unusual aspects of healthcare communication and its importance in comforting the patient.

Communication between the health professional and patient is more complicated than normal interaction. Not only is it often emotionally charged, but it also involves, in many instances, other people who are close to the patient and who may tend to be critical of the way the patient is handled. Recognizing the elements in healthcare communication—such as empathy, control, trust, and confirmation—will help the phlebotomist to interact with the patient successfully.

Elements in Healthcare Communication

Empathy

Defined as identifying with the feelings or thoughts of another person, empathy is an essential factor in interpersonal relations. It involves putting yourself in the place of another and attempting to feel like that person. Thoughtful and sensitive people generally have a high degree of empathy. Empathic health professionals help patients handle the stress of being in a healthcare institution. A health professional who recognizes the needs of the patient and allows the patient to express his or her emotions helps to validate the patient's feelings and gives the patient a very necessary sense of control.

Control

Feeling in control is essential to an individual's sense of well-being. People like to think that they can influence the way things happen in their lives. An important element relating to communication in the healthcare setting is recognizing fear in patients, which stems from a perceived lack of control. A hospital is one of the few places where individuals give up control over most of the personal tasks they normally perform. Many patients perceive themselves as unable to cope physically or mentally with events in a hospital because they feel fearful and powerless owing to this loss of control. Consequently, the typical response of the patient is to act angry, which characterizes him or her as a "bad patient," or to act extremely dependent and agreeable, which characterizes him or her as a "good patient."

If a patient refuses to have blood drawn, the phlebotomist should allow that statement of control to be expressed and even agree with the patient. Patients who are allowed to assert that right will often change their minds and agree to the procedure because then it is their decision. Sharing control with the patient may be difficult and often time-consuming, but awareness of the patient's need is important.

Respect and Confirmation

Respect is shown in both a positive feeling for a person and in specific action demonstrating that positive feeling. It is an attitude that conveys an understanding of the importance of that person as an individual. Believing that all people are worthy of respect at some level is extremely important in healthcare communication. The effect of honoring and respecting the person as a unique individual is confirmation of the patient's presence and needs.

If a healthcare worker shows disrespect for a patient, it cannot help but be noticed by the patient and may affect the patient's condition in a negative way. Too often, busy healthcare workers resort to labeling patients when communicating with coworkers and even with patients themselves. They may say, for example, "Oh, you're the one with no veins" or "You're the bleeder, right?" Such communication is dehumanizing and is a subtle way of "disconfirming" patients. A confirming exchange with the patient in the first example could be, "Mrs. Jones, I seem to remember that we had a hard time finding a suitable vein last time we drew your blood." Or, in the second case, "Mr. Smith, wasn't there a problem getting the site to stop bleeding after the draw last time?"

Trust

Another variable in the process of communication is trust. Trust, as defined in the healthcare setting, is the unquestioning belief by the patient that health professionals are performing their job responsibilities as well as they possibly can. As is true with most professionals, healthcare providers tend to emphasize their technical expertise while sometimes completely ignoring the elements of interpersonal communication that are essential in a trusting relationship with the patient. Having blood drawn is just one of the situations in which the consumer must trust the health professional. Developing trust takes time, and phlebotomists spend very little time with each patient. Consequently, during this limited interaction, the phlebotomist must do everything possible to win the patient's confidence by consistently appearing knowledgeable, honest, and sincere.

In summary, by recognizing the elements of empathy, control, trust, respect, and confirmation, the phlebotomist can enhance communication with patients and assist in their recovery. Understanding these communication elements will help when they are used with other means of communication, such as using the telephone.

Telephone Communication

At present, the telephone is a fundamental part of communication. It is used 24 hours a day in the laboratory. To phlebotomists or laboratory clerks, it becomes just another source of stress, bringing additional work and uninvited demands on their time. The constant ringing and interruption of the workflow often cause laboratory personnel to overlook the effect their style of telephone communication has on the caller. To maintain a professional image, every person given the responsibility of answering the phone should review proper protocol. Each one should be taught how to answer, put someone on hold, and transfer calls properly. To promote good communication, proper telephone etiquette (see Table 1-3) should be followed.

The Healthcare Setting

Virtually everyone in the United States becomes a healthcare consumer at some time. For many, working through the bureaucracy involved in receiving healthcare can be confusing. Healthcare personnel who understand how healthcare is organized and financed and their role in the system can help consumers negotiate the system successfully, with minimal repetition of services and consequently at lower cost.

HEALTHCARE DELIVERY

Two general categories of facilities, inpatient (nonambulatory) and outpatient (ambulatory), support all three (**primary, secondary,** and **tertiary**) levels of healthcare currently offered in the United States. See Box 1-3 for a listing of services and practitioners associated with the two categories.

Ambulatory Care and Homebound Services

Changes in healthcare practices that have significantly decreased the amount of time a patient spends in the hospital have led to innovative ways to provide healthcare, including a wide range of ambulatory services defined as medical care delivered on an *outpatient* basis. These services meet the needs of patients who may still require nursing care, lab tests, or other follow-up procedures after discharge from the hospital.

Ambulatory care is generally classified into two types: (a) freestanding medical care settings and hospital-owned clinics and (b) outpatient departments and urgent care facilities. In recent times, outpatient demands have fallen heavily on hospital emergency departments, which is a very costly way of delivering care and distracts the staff from true emergencies.

New ambulatory health services are being developed for the fastest-growing segment of the population—the elderly. Many homebound elderly require nursing care and physical therapy to be given and specimens for laboratory tests to be collected where they reside, either in their homes or in long-term care facilities. A number of agencies employ nurses, respiratory therapists, phlebotomists, and other healthcare workers to provide these services.

TABLE 1-3 Proper Telephone Etiquette

Proper Etiquette	Communication Tips	Rationale
Answer promptly.		• If the phone is allowed to ring too many times, the caller may assume that the people working in the laboratory are inefficient or insensitive.
State your name and department.		• The caller has a right to know to whom he or she is speaking.
Be helpful.	Ask how you can be of help to the caller and facilitate the conversation. Keep your statements and answers simple and to the point so as to avoid confusion.	• When a phone rings, it is because someone needs something. Because of the nature of the healthcare business, the caller may be emotional and may benefit from hearing calm, pleasant voice at the other end.
Prioritize calls.	Inform a caller whose call is interrupting one from someone else. Always ask permission before putting a caller on hold in case it is an emergency that must be handled immediately.	• It takes an organized person to coordinate several calls. • The caller should be informed if he or she is interrupting another call.

Transfer and put on hold properly.	Tell a caller when you are going to transfer the call or put it on hold and learn how to do this properly.
	Note: Do not leave the line open, and do not keep the caller waiting too long.
		• Disconnecting callers while transferring or putting them on hold irritates them.
		• Leaving the line open so that other conversations can be heard by the person on hold is discourteous and can compromise confidentiality.
		  • Check back with the caller when on hold for longer than expected; this keeps him or her informed of the circumstance.
		  • If a caller is waiting on hold too long, ask if he or she would like to leave a message.

Be prepared to record information.	Have a pencil and paper close to the phone. Listen carefully, which means clarifying, restating, and summarizing the information received.	• Documentation is necessary when answering the phone at work to ensure that accurate information is transmitted to the necessary person. • Reading back the information when complete is one of the best ways to ensure it is correct.
Know the laboratory's policies.	Make answers consistent by learning the laboratory's policies.	• People who answer the telephone must know the laboratory policies to avoid giving the wrong information. • Consistent answers help establish the laboratory's credibility, because a caller's perception of the lab involves more than just accurate test results.
Defuse hostile situations.	When a caller is hostile, you might say "I can see why you are upset. Let me see what I can do."	• Some callers become angry because of lost results or errors in billing. • Validating a hostile caller's feelings will often defuse the situation. • After the caller has calmed down, the issue can be addressed.
Try to assist everyone.	If you are uncertain, refer the caller to someone who can address the caller's issue. Remind yourself to keep your attention on one person at a time.	• It is possible to assist callers and show concern even if you are not actually answering their questions. • Validate callers' requests by giving a response that tells them something can be done. • Sincere interest in the caller will enhance communication and contribute to the good reputation of the laboratory.

BOX 1-3 TWO CATEGORIES OF HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

Outpatient

- Principal source of healthcare services for most people.
- Offer routine care in physician's office to specialized care in a freestanding ambulatory setting.
- Serve **primary care** physicians who assume ongoing responsibility for maintaining patients' health.
- Serve **secondary care** physicians (specialists) who perform routine surgery, emergency treatments, therapeutic radiology, and so on in same-day service centers.

Inpatient

- The key resource and center of the American healthcare system.
- Offer specialized instrumentation and technology to assist in unusual diagnoses and treatments.
- Serve **tertiary care** (highly complex services and therapy) practitioners. Usually requires that patients stay overnight or longer.
- Examples are acute care hospitals, nursing homes, extended care facilities, hospices, and rehabilitation centers.

Public Health Service

One of the principal units under the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) is the **Public Health Service (PHS).** Its mission is to promote the protection and advancement of the nation's physical and mental health. It does so by sponsoring and administering programs for the development of health resources, prevention and control of diseases, and dealing with drug abuse. PHS agencies at the local or state level offer defense against infectious diseases that might spread among the populace. These agencies are constantly monitoring, screening, protecting, and educating the public (see Table 1-4 for examples of services provided by local health departments). Public health departments provide their services for little or no charge to the entire population of a region, with no distinction between rich or poor, simple or sophisticated, interested or disinterested. Public health facilities offer ambulatory care services through clinics, much like those in hospital outpatient areas, military bases, and Veterans Administration and Indian Health Service facilities.

As the country moves into managed care, integration between primary prevention and primary/ambulatory care is necessary. Because containment of healthcare costs is the driving force behind managed care and major changes to healthcare coverage, proactive public health programs are increasing as a way to significantly reduce overall healthcare costs.

HEALTHCARE FINANCING

Healthcare is expensive, and the cost continues to escalate. Paying for healthcare services involves multiple payers and numerous mechanisms of payment. The consumer must make choices based on financial considerations as well as medical need and can no longer afford to be passive in the process. The healthcare provider, such as the phlebotomist, in addition to being a consumer, is also an employee of an institution that relies on third-party payers (health insurers) for a major portion of its income.

Third-Party Payers

Payment methods used may be either direct or indirect. Payments to the provider by the patient are referred to as direct pay, self-pay, or out-of-pocket pay. Indirect pay involves a

TABLE 1-4 Examples of Services Provided by Local Health Departments

Vital statistics collection	Tuberculosis screening
Health education	Immunization and vaccination
Cancer, hypertension, and diabetes screening	Operation of health centers
Public health nursing services	Venereal disease clinics

TABLE 1-5 Methods of Payment and Diagnosis Coding

Method of Payment	Abbreviation	Description
Prospective payment system	PPS	Begun in 1983 to limit and standardize the Medicare/Medicaid payments made to hospitals
Diagnosis-related groups	DRGs	Originally designed by the American Hospital Association, hospitals are reimbursed a set amount for each patient procedure using established disease categories
Ambulatory patient classification	APC	A classification system implemented in 2000 for determining payment to hospitals for outpatient service
Diagnosis Codes	**Abbreviation**	**Description**
International Classification of Diseases, 9th rev., Clinical Modification	ICD-9-CM	For coding of diagnoses. In the past, all major payers used this coding system, which groups together similar diseases and operations for reimbursement.
International Classification of Diseases, 10th rev., Clinical Modification	ICD-10-CM	For coding of diagnoses; contains more codes and covers more content than ICD-9
International Classification of Diseases, 10th rev., Procedural Coding System	ICD-10-PSC	For coding of diagnoses; more adequately represents services provided in an inpatient hospital setting. It is a much broader range of codes with room for expansion and greater specificity.

third party. A **third-party payer** can be an insurance company, the federal government, a managed care program, or a self-insured company that pays for healthcare services on behalf of its employees. Some healthcare providers are even beginning to contract directly with the employers to provide healthcare, thus eliminating insurance carriers. Third-party payers have greatly influenced the direction of medicine. In the past decade, major changes have come about in healthcare payments and third-party reimbursements. Table 1-5 shows methods of payment and coding that have been used to standardize healthcare expenses.

Diagnosis and Billing Codes

Managed care systems face major challenges in remaining fiscally strong in the coming years. For that reason, it is imperative that all services be billed correctly and as quickly as possible. But with the advent of new technologies and electronic transfer of data, billing has become even more challenging. The lack of standardization and confusion in the diagnostic and procedural coding led to the passage in 1996 of HIPAA. This bill was designed to improve the efficiency of the healthcare system by establishing standards for electronic data exchange, including coding systems. The goal of HIPAA regulations is to move to one universal procedural coding system as the future standard. The Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) contracted with 3M Health Information Systems to develop the Procedural Coding System (PCS) to replace the list of procedure codes found in ICD-9-CM. It is called *International Classification of Diseases–Tenth Revision, Procedural Coding System,* or ICD-10-PCS. It contains nearly 198,000 procedure codes.

The **current procedural terminology** (CPT) codes were originally developed in the 1960s by the American Medical Association to provide a terminology and coding system for physician billing. Physicians' offices have continued to use it to report their services. Now all types of healthcare providers use CPT to classify, report, and bill for a variety of healthcare services. In 2013, ICD-10-PCS procedure codes will be available for use in inpatient settings and CPT procedure codes will continue to be used for patients seen in ambulatory settings and for professional services in inpatient settings.

Reimbursement

The history of institutional reimbursement is tied to **entitlement programs** such as Medicare and public welfare in the form of Medicaid. Before 1983, hospitals were paid retrospectively and reimbursed for all services performed on Medicare and Medicaid patients. A comparison of Medicare and Medicaid Programs is listed in Box 1-4.

BOX 1-4 MEDICARE AND MEDICAID PROGRAM COMPARISON

Medicare	Medicaid
First enacted in 1965.	First enacted in 1965.
Federally funded program for providing healthcare to persons over the age of 65, regardless of their financial status, and to the disabled.	Federal and state program that provides medical assistance for low-income Americans.
An entitlement program because it is a right earned by individuals through employment.	No entitlement feature; recipients must prove their eligibility.
Financed through Social Security payroll deductions and copayments.	Funds come from federal grants and state and local governments and are administered by the state.
Benefits divided into two categories; Part A, called hospital services, and Part B, called supplementary medical insurance (SMI), which is optional.	Benefits cover inpatient care, outpatient and diagnostic services, skilled nursing facilities, and home health and physician services.

Arizona is the only state that has devised its own system outside of Medicaid, called the **Arizona Health Care Cost Containment System** (AHCCCS). It differs in that the providers (private physician groups) must bid annually for contracts to serve this population and patients are able to choose their healthcare provider through annual open enrollment.

THE CHANGING HEALTHCARE SYSTEM

Healthcare systems are currently undergoing major revisions. The driving force behind these changes is the perceived need to control costs. Government social programs and other managed healthcare plans continually negotiate discounts on the amount they will reimburse healthcare facilities, forcing the facilities to cut costs and downsize operations. It has become the goal of all healthcare organizations to deliver high-quality, cost-effective care in the most appropriate setting or, in other words, strictly through the management of care.

Managed Care

Managed care is a generic term for a payment system that attempts to manage cost, quality, and access to healthcare by:

- Detecting illnesses or risk factors early in the disease process
- Putting into practice various financial incentives for providers
- Offering patient education
- Encouraging healthy lifestyles

Most managed care systems do not provide healthcare to enrollees; instead, they enter into contracts with healthcare facilities, physicians, and other healthcare providers who supply medical services to the enrollees/clients in the plan.

Benefits or payments paid to the provider are made according to a set fee schedule, and enrollees must comply with managed care policies such as preauthorization for certain medical procedures and approved referral to specialists for claims to be paid. Because the association of provider, payer, and consumer is the foundation of managed care systems, several concepts have been developed to control this relationship, including gatekeepers and large services networks.

Case Management

One of the most important concepts in managed care is that of the designated case manager (primary care physician , gatekeeper), whose responsibility it is to coordinate all of a patient's

healthcare. The case manager is an experienced healthcare professional, not necessarily a physician, who knows the patient's condition and needs and where available resources for support and treatment can be found. As the patient's advocate, this person has the responsibility to advise the patient on healthcare needs and coordinate responses to those needs. The case manager's responsibilities also include providing early detection and treatment for disease, which can reduce the total cost of care.

Network Service Systems

Today's large **managed care organizations** (MCOs) evolved from prepaid healthcare plans such as **health maintenance organizations** (HMOs) and **preferred provider organizations** (PPOs). HMOs are group practices reimbursed on a prepaid, negotiated, and discounted basis of admission. PPOs are independent groups of physicians or hospitals that offer services to employers at discounted rates in exchange for a steady supply of patients. MCOs contract with local providers to establish a complete network of services. Providers are reimbursed on the basis of the number of enrollees served—not on the number of services delivered. The goal of the MCO is to reduce the total cost of care while maintaining patient satisfaction, and this can best be done if the patient can get the right care from the right provider at the right time. To accomplish this, **integrated healthcare delivery systems** (IDSs) have been developed. An IDS is a healthcare provider made up of a number of associated medical facilities that furnish coordinated healthcare services from prebirth to death. Some of the institutions through which the services are offered along this continuum of care are acute care hospitals, subacute care facilities, ambulatory surgery centers, physician office practices, outpatient clinics, and skilled nursing facilities (SNFs). This approach provides more cost-effective care than that of an array of separate healthcare organizations. The focus of an IDS arrangement is holistic, coordinated care rather than fragmented care performed by many medical specialists.

Medical Specialties

In managed care, the primary physician is most often a family practitioner, pediatrician, or internist. As a manager of a person's care, he or she is expected to refer to the appropriate specialist as needed. Some of the many healthcare areas in which a doctor of medicine (MD) or doctor of osteopathy (DO) can specialize are listed in Table 1-6.

ORGANIZATION OF HOSPITAL SERVICES

Hospitals are often large organizations with a complex internal structure required to provide acute care to patients who need it. Actually the term *hospital* can be applied to any healthcare facility that has these four main characteristics:

- Permanent inpatient beds
- 24-hour nursing service
- Therapeutic and diagnostic services
- Organized medical staff

The healthcare delivery system in hospitals has traditionally been arranged by departments or medical specialties. People who do similar tasks are grouped into departments, the goal being to perform each task as efficiently and accurately as possible. The following flowsheet of organizational structure (Fig. 1-7) illustrates the formal roles and relationships within a hospital. The ranks in the lines of authority are structured so that functions and services are clustered under similar areas with an executive, such as a vice president, administering each area. This grouping allows for efficient management of the departments and a clear understanding of the chain of command. The physicians practicing at the hospital have been granted clinical privileges (i.e., permission to provide patient care at that facility) by a hospital governing board. Many other members of the medical team are not actual employees of the facility. However, many hospitals do directly employ radiologists, critical care specialists, and hospitalists (a relatively new position). The hospitalist is a general physician who assumes the care (admission and ongoing treatment) of inpatients in the place of a primary care physician.

TABLE 1-6 Medical Specialties

Specialty	Area of Interest	Specialist Title
Anesthesiology	Partial or complete loss of sensation, usually by injection or inhalation	Anesthesiologist
Cardiology	Diseases of the heart and blood vessels and cardiovascular surgery, a subspecialty of internal medicine	Cardiologist
Dermatology	Diseases and injuries of the skin; more recently, concerned with skin cancer prevention	Dermatologist
Endocrinology	Disorders of the endocrine glands, such as, sterility, diabetes, and thyroid problems	Endocrinologist
Family medicine	Individual and family care by integrating biological, behavioral, and clinical sciences for treatment	General or family practitioner
Gastroenterology	Digestive tract and related structural diseases, a subspecialty of internal medicine	Gastroenterologist
Gerontology	Effects of aging and age-related disorders	Gerontologist
Hematology	Disorders of the blood and blood-forming organs	Hematologist
Infectious Diseases	Contagious and noncontagious infections caused by pathogenic microorganisms	ID Specialist
Internal medicine	Diseases of internal organs and general medical conditions; uses nonsurgical therapy	Internist
Nephrology	Diseases related to the structure and function of the kidney	Nephrologist
Neurology	Disorders of the brain, spinal cord, and nerves	Neurologist
Obstetrics and gynecology	Sees women through pregnancy, childbirth, disorders of the reproductive system, and menopause	Gynecologist
Oncology	Tumors, including benign and malignant conditions	Oncologist
Ophthalmology	Eye examinations, eye diseases, and surgery	Ophthalmologist
Orthopedics	Disorders of the musculoskeletal system, including preventing disorders and restoring function	Orthopedist
Otorhinolaryngology	Disorders of the eye, ear, nose, and throat	Otorhinolaryngologist
Pediatrics	Diseases of children from birth to adolescence, including wellness checks and vaccinations	Pediatrician
Psychiatry	Mental illness, clinical depression, and other behavioral and emotional disorders	Psychiatrist
Pulmonary medicine	Function of the lungs; treatment of disorders of the respiratory system	Pulmonologist
Rheumatology	Rheumatic diseases (acute and chronic conditions characterized by inflammation and joint disease)	Rheumatologist
Urology	Urinary tract disease and disorders of the male reproductive system	Urologist

Managed care has led to a reduction in the number of healthcare personnel, whereas the number of services remains the same. This has resulted in the formation of teams of cross-trained personnel and the consolidation of services. Such reengineering, as it is called, is designed to make the healthcare delivery system more process-oriented by combining related groups of tasks into a system that is customer-focused. This management of process is reflected in a new type of hospital organization that blends former distinct departments into service or process areas. The intent is to create a "gentle handoff" for patients between service areas instead of the abrupt "toss and catch" approach, which can occur in traditional settings with distinct and separate departments. Although the lines between former departments are becoming blurred, Table 1-7 shows the services areas that are identified as essential.

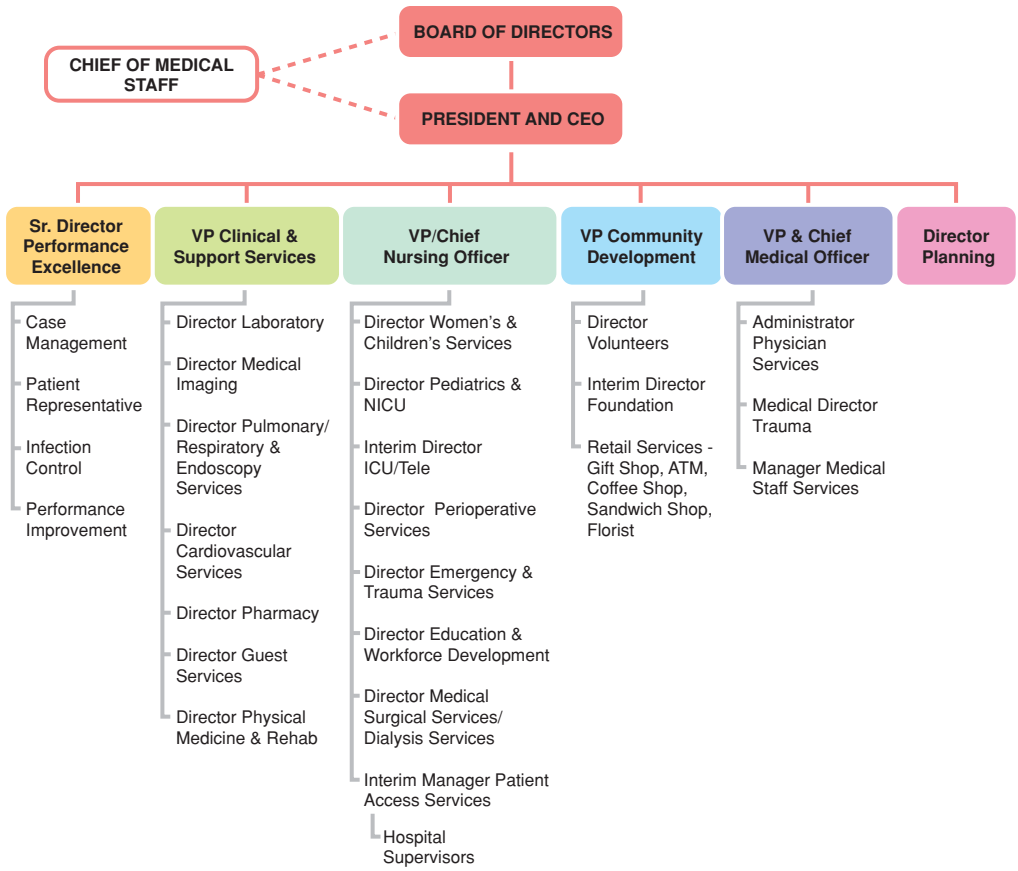


Figure 1-7 An example of a hospital organizational chart.

CLINICAL LABORATORY SERVICES

Clinical laboratory (lab) services perform tests on patient specimens. Results of testing are primarily used by physicians to confirm health or aid in the diagnosis, evaluation, and monitoring of patient medical conditions. Clinical labs are typically located in hospitals, outpatient clinics, physicians' offices, and large reference laboratories.

Traditional Laboratories

There are two major divisions in the clinical laboratory, the clinical analysis area and the anatomical and surgical pathology area. All laboratory testing is associated with one of these two areas (see Box 1-5). Laboratories in large hospitals have organizational structures similar to the facility organizational chart based on management structure or hierarchy. People who do similar tasks are grouped into departments, the goal being to perform each task as efficiently and accurately as possible.

Match laboratory departments with laboratory tests in the Matching 1-4 Activity in the WORKBOOK.

Clinical Analysis Areas

Hematology

The hematology department performs laboratory tests that identify diseases associated with blood and the blood-forming tissues. The most commonly ordered hematology test is the complete blood count (CBC). The CBC is performed using automated instruments, such as the Coulter counter (Fig. 1-8), that electronically count the cells and calculate results. A CBC is actually a multipart assay reported on a form called a hemogram (Tables 1-8 and 1-9).

Coagulation

Coagulation is the study of the ability of blood to form and dissolve clots. Coagulation tests are closely related to hematology tests and are used to discover, identify, and monitor defects in the

TABLE 1-7 Essential Service Areas of a Hospital

Service Area	Departments Within Area	Services Performed
Patient care services	Nursing care	Direct patient care. Includes careful observation to assess conditions, administering medications and treatments prescribed by a physician, evaluation of patient care, and documentation in the health record that reflects this. Staffed by many types of nursing personnel including registered nurses (RNs), licensed practical nurses (LPNs), and certified nursing assistants (CNAs).
	Emergency services	Around-the-clock service designed to handle medical emergencies that call for immediate assessment and management of injured or acutely ill patients. Staffed by specialists such as emergency medical technicians (EMTs) and MDs who specialize in emergency medicine.
	Intensive care units (ICUs)	Designed for increased bedside care of patients in fragile condition. Found in many areas of the hospital and named for the type of patient care they provide (e.g., trauma ICU, pediatric ICU, medical ICU).
	Surgery	Concerned with operative procedures to correct deformities and defects, repair injuries, and cure certain diseases. All work is performed by licensed medical practitioners who specialize in surgery.
Support services	Central supply	Prepares and dispenses all the necessary supplies required for patient care, including surgical packs for the operating room, intravenous pumps, bandages, syringes, and other inventory controlled by computer for close accounting.
	Dietary services	Selects foods and supervises food services to coordinate diet with medical treatment.
	Environmental services	Includes housekeeping and groundskeepers whose services maintain a clean, healthy, and attractive facility.
	Health information technology	Maintains accurate and orderly records for inpatient medical history, test results and reports, and treatment plans and notes from doctors and nurses to be used for insurance claims, legal actions, and utilization reviews.
Professional services	Cardiodiagnostics (EKG or ECG)	Performs electrocardiograms (EKGs/ECGs, or actual recordings of the electrical currents detectable from the heart), Holter monitoring, and stress testing for diagnosis and monitoring of therapy in cardiovascular patients.
	Pathology and clinical laboratory	Performs highly automated and often complicated testing on blood and other body fluids to detect and diagnose disease, monitor treatments, and, more recently, assess health. There are several specialized areas of the laboratory called departments or clinical laboratory areas (see Box 1-5).
	Electroneurodiagnostic technology (ENT) or electroencephalography (EEG)	Performs electroencephalograms (EEGs), tracings that measure electrical activity of the brain. Uses techniques such as ambulatory EEG monitoring, evoked potentials, polysomnography (sleep studies), and brain-wave mapping to diagnose and monitor neurophysiological disorders.
Professional services	Occupational therapy (OT)	Uses techniques designed to develop or assist mentally, physically, or emotionally disabled patients to maintain daily living skills.
	Pharmacy	Prepares and dispenses drugs ordered by physicians; advises the medical staff on selection and harmful side effects of drugs, therapeutic drug monitoring, and drug use evaluation.
	Physical therapy (PT)	Diagnoses physical impairment to determine the extent of disability and provides therapy to restore mobility through individually designed treatment plans.
	Respiratory therapy (RT)	Diagnoses, treats, and manages patients' lung deficiencies (e.g., analyzes arterial blood gases [ABGs], tests lung capacity, administers oxygen therapy).
	Diagnostic radiology services	Diagnoses medical conditions by taking x-ray films of various parts of the body. Uses latest procedures, including powerful forms of imaging, that do not involve radiation hazards, such as ultrasound machines, magnetic resonance (MR) scanners, and positron emission tomography (PET) scanners.

BOX 1-5 TWO MAJOR DIVISIONS IN THE CLINICAL LABORATORY

Clinical Analysis Areas

Specimen processing, hematology, chemistry, microbiology, blood bank/immunohematology, immunology/serology, and urinalysis

Anatomical and Surgical Pathology

Tissue analysis, cytologic examination, surgical biopsy, frozen sections, and performance of autopsies

Figure 1-8 A medical technologist checks CBC results on the Coulter LH780 automated hematology analyzer.

TABLE 1-8 Hemogram for Complete Blood Count (CBC) Assay

Name of Test	Abbreviation	Examples of Clinical Significance
Hematocrit	Hct	Values correspond to the red cell count and hemoglobin level; when decreased, indicate anemic conditions.
Hemoglobin	Hgb	Decreased values indicate anemic conditions; values normally differ with age, sex, altitude, and hydration.
Red blood cell count	RBC count	Measure of erythropoietic activity; decreases in numbers are related to anemic conditions.
White blood cell count	WBC count	Abnormal leukocyte response indicative of various conditions, such as infections and malignancies; when accompanied by low WBCs, differential test becomes more specific.
Platelet count	Plt Ct	Decreased numbers are indicative of hemorrhagic diseases; values may be used to monitor chemotherapy or radiation treatments.
Differential white count	Diff	Changes in the appearance or number of specific cell types signify specific disease conditions; values are also used to monitor chemotherapy or radiation treatments.
Indices		Changes in RBC size, weight, and Hgb content indicate certain types of anemias.
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin	MCH	Reveals the weight of the hemoglobin in the cell, regardless of size. Decreased hemoglobin content is indicative of iron-deficiency anemia, increased hemoglobin content is found in macrocytic anemia.
Mean corpuscular volume	MCV	Reveals the size of the cell. Decreased MCV is associated with thalassemia and iron-deficiency anemia; increased MCV suggests folic acid or vitamin B12 deficiency and chronic emphysema.
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration	MCHC	Reveals the hemoglobin concentration per unit volume of RBCs. Below-normal range means that RBCs are deficient in hemoglobin, as in thalassemia, overhydration, or iron-deficiency anemia; above-normal range is seen in severe burns, prolonged dehydration, and hereditary spherocytosis.
Red blood cell distribution width	RDW	Reveals the size differences of the RBCs. An early predictor of anemia before other signs and symptoms appear.

TABLE 1-9 Other Common Hematology Tests

Test	Examples of Clinical Significance
Bone marrow	Detects abnormal blood cells and evaluates blood cell formation and function.
Cerebrospinal (CSF) and other body fluids	Presence or absence, number and type of cells. Hematocrit on fluid indirectly measures fluid volume.
Eosinophil count	Increased numbers in direct count indicate parasitic infections and allergies.
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	Increased rate at which red blood cells settle out is indicative of inflammatory conditions or necrosis of tissue.
Lupus erythematosus (LE cells)	Presence of typical LE cells is diagnostic of systemic LE.
Osmotic fragility	Increased red cell fragility is indicative of hemolytic and autoimmune anemias; decreased fragility is indicative of sickle cell disease and thalassemia.
Reticulocyte (retic) count	Increased number of retics in circulating blood attest to bone marrow hyperactivity.
Sickle cell screen	Sickling of red cells indicates presence of Hgb S, an abnormal hemoglobin variant.

blood-clotting mechanism. They are also used to monitor patients who are taking medications called anticoagulants (chemicals that inhibit blood clotting) or "blood thinners." The two most common coagulation tests are the prothrombin time, used to monitor warfarin therapy, and the activated partial thromboplastin time, for evaluating heparin therapy (Table 1-10).

Chemistry

The chemistry department performs most laboratory tests. This department often has subsections such as toxicology and radioimmunoassay. Computerized instruments (Fig. 1-9) used in this area are capable of performing discrete (individualized) tests or metabolic panels (multiple tests) from a single sample. Examples of panels frequently ordered to evaluate a single organ or specific body system are given in Table 1-11.

The most common chemistry specimen is serum; however, other types of specimens tested include plasma, whole blood, urine, and various other body fluids. Examples of tests normally performed in the automated clinical laboratory section are provided in Table 1-12.

Serology or Immunology

The term *serology* means the study of serum. Serology tests deal with the body's response to the presence of bacterial, viral, fungal, or parasitic diseases stimulating antigen–antibody reactions that can easily be demonstrated in the laboratory (Table 1-13). Autoimmune reactions, in which autoantibodies produced by B lymphocytes attack normal cells, are becoming more prevalent and can be detected by serologic tests. Testing is done by enzyme immunoassay (EIA), agglutination, complement fixation, or precipitation to determine the antibody or antigen present and to assess its concentration or titer.

TABLE 1-10 Common Coagulation Tests

Test	Examples of Clinical Significance
Activated partial thromboplastin time (APPT)	Prolonged times may indicate stage 1 defects; values reflect adequacy of heparin therapy.
D-dimer	Evaluates thrombin and plasmin activity and is very useful in testing for disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC); also used in monitoring thrombolytic therapy.
Fibrin split products (FSP)	High levels result in FDP fragments that interfere with platelet function and clotting.
Fibrinogen	Fibrinogen deficiency suggests hemorrhagic disorders and is used most frequently in obstetrics.
Prothrombin time (PT) or International normalized ratio (INR)	Prolonged times may indicate stage 2 and 3 defects; values are used to monitor warfarin therapy and to evaluate liver disease and vitamin K deficiency.

Figure 1-9 A clinical chemist reviews stat chemistry results from Dade Behring's Dimension® Xpand Plus Basic automated chemistry analyzer.

Urinalysis

The urinalysis (UA) department may be housed in the hematology or chemistry area or may be a completely separate section. Urine specimens may be analyzed manually or using automated instruments (Fig. 1-10). UA is a routine urine test that includes physical, chemical, and microscopic evaluations (Table 1-14). The physical examination assesses the color, clarity, and specific gravity of the specimen. The chemical evaluation, performed using chemical reagent strips, screens for substances such as sugar and protein and can be read by hand, visually, or with a urine analyzer. A microscopic examination establishes the presence or absence of blood cells, bacteria, crystals, and other substances.

Microbiology

The microbiology department analyzes body fluids and tissues for the presence of microorganisms, primarily by means of culture and sensitivity (C&S) testing (Fig. 1-11). Results of a C&S tell the physician the type of organisms present and the particular antibiotics that would be most effective for treatment. It is very important to collect, transport, and handle microbiology specimens properly in order to determine the presence of microorganisms and identify them appropriately. An instrument used only for blood cultures makes it easy to identify and review the specimens for microbial growth, as shown in Figure 1-12. Subsections of microbiology are bacteriology (the study of bacteria), parasitology (the study of parasites), mycology (the study of fungi), and virology (the study of viruses) (Table 1-15).

Blood Bank or Immunohematology

The blood bank or immunohematology department of the laboratory prepares blood products to be used for patient transfusions. Blood components dispensed include whole blood, platelets, packed cells, fresh frozen plasma, and cryoprecipitates. Blood samples from all donors and the

TABLE 1-11 Disease- and Organ-Specific Chemistry Panels (CMS-Approved)

Panel Grouping	Battery of Selected Diagnostic Tests
Basic metabolic panel (BMP)	Glucose, BUN, creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, CO_2, calcium
Comprehensive metabolic panel (CMP)	Glucose, BUN, creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, CO_2, AST, ALT, alkaline phosphatase total protein, albumin, total bilirubin, calcium
Hepatic function panel A	AST, ALT, alkaline phosphatase, total protein, albumin, total bilirubin, direct bilirubin
Renal function panel	Glucose, BUN, creatinine, sodium, potassium, chloride, CO_2, calcium, albumin, phosphorus

ALT, alanine aminotransferase; AST, aspartate aminotransferase; BUN, blood urea nitrogen; CO_2, carbon dioxide.

TABLE 1-12 Common Chemistry Tests

Test	Associated Body System	Examples of Clinical Significance
Alanine amino-transferase (ALT)	Liver	Marked elevations point to liver disease; used for monitoring liver treatment.
Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP)	Liver	Increased values in hepatic carcinoma; elevation of AFP in prenatal screening indicates neural tube disorder.
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)	Liver or bone	Elevated ALP levels because of biliary obstruction and bone disease.
Ammonia	Liver	Increased blood levels indicate cirrhosis and hepatitis.
Amylase	Pancreas and liver	Increased levels of this enzyme diagnostic of acute pancreatitis; decreased values associated with liver disease, cholecystitis, and advanced cystic fibrosis.
Aspartate amino-transferase (AST)	Liver or heart	Increase in enzyme indicative of liver dysfunction; significant increase following myocardial infarction.
Bilirubin	Liver	Increased levels in the bloodstream point to red cell destruction and liver dysfunction.
Blood gases (ABG)	Kidneys, lungs	Measures pH, partial pressure of carbon dioxide (PCO_2), and partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2) to evaluate the acid–base balance.
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	Kidney	Elevated values because of impaired renal function from toxins, inflammation, or obstruction
B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP)	Heart	A cardiac marker. Brain natriuretic peptide increases in response to ventricular systolic and diastolic dysfunction and is diagnostic of congestive heart failure.
C-reactive protein High sensitivity (hs-CRP)	Heart	A cardiac marker. Detects low level of CRP for assessment of risk for developing myocardial infarction when acute coronary symptoms are present.
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)	Nonspecific	Increased in the cases of malignancy, effective for the early detection of colorectal cancer.
Calcium	Bone	Increased levels associated with diseases of the bone; used in monitoring effects of renal failure.
Cholesterol (total)	Heart	Indicative of high risk for cardiovascular disease.
Cortisol	Adrenals	Elevated levels signify adrenal hyperfunction (Cushing syndrome); decreased levels indicate adrenal hypofunction (Addison's disease).
Creatine kinase (CK)	Heart or muscle	Elevated values point to muscle damage (i.e., myocardial infarction, muscular dystrophy, or strenuous exercise).
Creatinine	Kidney	Increased levels indicate renal impairment; decreased levels associated with muscular dystrophy.
Drug analysis		Values monitored to maintain therapeutic range and avoid toxic levels for drugs such as barbiturates, digoxin, gentamicin, lithium, primidone, phenytoin, salicylates, theophylline, or tobramycin.
Electrolytes (sodium, potassium, chloride, CO_2)	Kidney, adrenals, heart	Sodium values, increased in disorders of the kidney and adrenals; decreased values of potassium seen in irregular heartbeat; chloride values are increased in kidney and adrenal disorders and decreased in diarrhea.
Glucose	Pancreas	Elevated levels signify diabetic problems; decreased values support liver disease and malnutrition.
Gamma-glutamyl transferase (GGT)	Liver	Elevated values assist in the diagnosis of liver problems specific for hepatobiliary problems.
Hemoglobin A1C	Pancreas	Glycohemoglobin level shows what type of diabetic control has occurred over the past several months.

(*continued*)

TABLE 1-12 Common Chemistry Tests (Continued)

Test	Associated Body System	Examples of Clinical Significance
Lactate dehydrogenase (LD)		Increased lung, kidney, and liver dysfunction.
Lipase	Pancreas	Increased levels in acute pancreatitis, pancreatic carcinoma, and obstruction.
Prostate specific antigen (PSA)	Prostate	Performed to screen patients for the presence of prostate cancer, monitor progression of disease and the response of the patient to treatment.
Total protein	Liver or kidney	Low levels point to liver and kidney disorders; elevated levels may occur with multiple myeloma and dehydration.
Triglycerides	Heart	Increased values indicate lipid metabolism disorders and serve as an index for evaluating the possibility of atherosclerosis.
Troponin-I	Heart	Serves a cardiac marker. Used in early diagnosis of small myocardial infarcts that are not detectable by conventional diagnostic methods.
Uric acid	Kidney	Elevated values found in renal disorders and gout.
Vitamin B12 and folate	Liver	Decreased levels indicate anemias and disease of the small intestine.

recipient must be carefully tested before transfusions can be administered so that incompatibility and transfusion reactions can be avoided (Table 1-16). Transfusion services offered by the blood bank department collect, prepare, and store units of blood from donors or patients who wish to donate their own units for autologous transfusion should that be needed.

Anatomical and Surgical Pathology

Histology

Histology is defined as the study of the microscopic structure of tissues. In this department, pathologists evaluate samples of tissue from surgeries and autopsies under a microscope to determine if they are normal or pathological (diseased). Histological techniques include two

TABLE 1-13 Common Serology and Immunology Tests

Test	Examples of Clinical Significance
Bacterial Studies	
Antinuclear antibody (ANA)	Positive results indicate autoimmune disorders, specifically systemic lupus erythematosus
Antistreptolysin O (ASO) titer	Can demonstrate streptococcal infection
Cold agglutinins	Present in cases of atypical pneumonia
Febrile agglutinins	Presence of antibodies to specific organisms indicates disease condition (i.e., tularemia)
FTA-ABS	Fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption test, confirmatory test for syphilis
Rapid plasma reagin (RPR)	Positive screen indicates syphilis; positives must be confirmed
Rheumatoid factor (RF)	Presence of antibody indicates rheumatoid arthritis
Viral Studies	
Anti-HIV	Human immunodeficiency virus is screened
Cytomegalovirus antibody (CMV)	Confirmation test
Epstein–Barr virus (EBV)	Presence of this heterophil antibody indicates infectious mononucleosis
Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg)	Demonstrates the presence of hepatitis antigen on the surface of the red cells
General Studies	
C-reactive protein (CRP)	Increased levels in inflammatory conditions
Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG)	Present in pregnancy (serum and urine)

Figure 1-10 A Siemens Clinitek Advantus Analyzer urine strip reader.

of the most common diagnostic techniques found in the laboratory: (1) biopsy, obtaining samples by removal of a plug (small piece) of tissue from an organ and examining it microscopically, and (2) frozen section, obtaining tissue from surgery and freezing it, then examining it immediately to determine whether more extensive surgery is needed. Before tissues can be evaluated, they must be processed and stained. This is the role of a person called a histologist.

Cytology

Cytology and histology are often confused. Whereas histology tests are concerned with the structure of tissue, cytology tests are concerned with the structure of cells. In this department,

TABLE 1-14 Common Urinalysis Tests

Test	Examples of Clinical Significance
Physical Evaluation	
Color	Abnormal colors that are clinically significant result from blood melanin, bilirubin, or urobilin in the sample
Clarity	Turbidity may be the result of chyle, fat, bacteria, RBCs, WBCs, or precipitated crystals
Specific gravity	Variation in this indicator of dissolved solids in the urine is normal; inconsistencies suggest renal tubular involvement or ADH deficiency
Chemical Evaluation	
Blood	Hematuria may be the result of hemorrhage, infection, or trauma
Bilirubin	Aids in differentiating obstructive jaundice from hemolytic jaundice, which will not cause increased bilirubin in the urine
Glucose	Glucosuria could be the result of diabetes mellitus, renal impairment, or ingestion of a large amount of carbohydrates
Ketones	Elevated ketones occur in uncontrolled diabetes mellitus and starvation
Leukocyte esterase	Certain white cells (neutrophils) in abundance indicate urinary tract infection
pH	Variations in pH indicate changes in acid–base balance, which is normal; loss of ability to vary pH is indicative of tissue breakdown
Protein	Proteinuria is an indicator of renal disorder, such as injury and renal tube dysfunction
Nitrite	Positive result suggests bacterial infection but is significant only on first-morning specimen or urine incubated in bladder for at least 4 hours
Urobilinogen	Occurs in increased amounts when patient has hepatic problems or hemolytic disorders
Microscopic Evaluation	Analysis of urinary sediment reveals status of the urinary tract, hematuria, or pyuria; the presence of casts and tissue cells is a pathologic indicator

Figure 1-11 A microbiologist prepares to review antibiotic sensitivities from the Siemens Micro Scan Walk Away 96 Plus.

Figure 1-12 A microbiologist reviews blood cultures processed by the BactALERT 3D microbiology system.

TABLE 1-15 Common Microbiology Tests

Test	Examples of Clinical Significance
Acid-fast bacilli (AFB)	Positive stain means pulmonary tuberculosis; used to monitor the treatment of TB
Blood culture	Positive culture results (bacterial growth in media) indicate bacteremia or septicemia
CLOtest	Presence of *Helicobacter pylori*
Culture and sensitivity (C&S)	Growth of a pathogenic microorganism indicates infection (culture); in vitro inhibition by an antibiotic (sensitivity) allows the physician to select the correct treatment
Fungus culture and identification	Positive culture detects the presence of fungi and determines the type.
Gram stain	Positive stain for specific types of pathogenic microorganisms permits antimicrobial therapy to begin before culture results are known
Occult blood	Positive test indicates blood in the stool, which is associated with gastrointestinal bleeding from carcinoma.
Ova and parasites	Microscopic examination of stool sample showing ova and parasites solves many "etiology unknown" intestinal disorders.

TABLE 1-16 Common Blood Bank and Immunohematology Tests

Test	Examples of Clinical Significance
Antibody (Ab) screen	Agglutination indicates abnormal antibodies present in patient's blood
Direct antihuman globulin test (DAT)	Positive results point to autoimmune hemolytic anemia, hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN), and transfusion incompability
Type and Rh	Determines blood group (ABO) and type (Rh) by identifying agglutinins present or absent
Type and crossmatch	Determines blood group and serves as a general screen for antibodies of recipent's blood; then recipient and donor blood are checked against each other for compatibility
Compatibility testing	Detection of unsuspected antibodies and antigens in recipient's and donor's blood, which could cause a severe reaction if transfused

cells in body tissues and fluids are identified, counted, and studied to diagnose malignant and premalignant conditions. Histologists often process and prepare the specimens for evaluation by a pathologist or cytotechnologist. The Pap smear, a test for early detection of cancer cells, primarily of the cervix and vagina, is one of the most common examinations performed by this department.

The Pap test is named after Dr. George N. Papanicolaou, who developed a staining technique used to detect malignant cells.

Cytogenetics

An area found in larger labs is cytogenetics. In this section, samples are examined for chromosomal deficiencies that relate to genetic disease. Specimens used for chromosomal studies include tissue, blood, and amniotic fluid. The DNA histogram is the latest such test for genetic and malignant disorders. DNA fingerprinting and molecular genotyping have become the prevalent form of scientific testing in forensic medicine.

Stat Labs

In today's healthcare environment, laboratory services in some tertiary care facilities have had to set up STAT labs in the emergency department (ED), also known as the emergency room (ER). STAT means "immediately." Ideally, procedures and tests performed in the ED are those needed to respond to medical emergencies, such as the urinalysis as shown in Figure 1-13. Because the American Hospital Association (AHA) along with the medical profession have committed to saving lives by saving time in the ED, diagnostic laboratory tests must be available on site. For example, both the American College of Cardiology (ACC) and the AHA are working to reduce the time between a heart attack patient's arrival and his or her treatment with percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI). The campaign is called "door-to-balloon time" (D2B) and is designed to get the patient from the ED to the cardiac catheterization (cath) lab within 90 minutes.

Reference Laboratories

Reference laboratories are large independent laboratories that receive specimens from many different facilities located in the same city, other cities in the same state, or even cities that are out of state. They provide routine and more specialized analysis of blood, urine, tissue, and other patient specimens. These laboratories offer fast **turnaround times** (TATs) and reduced costs because of the high volume of tests they perform. Specimens sent to off-site laboratories must be carefully packaged in special containers designed to protect the specimens and meet federal safety regulations for the transportation of human specimens.

Figure 1-13 A medical technologist performs a complete urinalysis in the ER.

CLINICAL LABORATORY PERSONNEL

Laboratory Director/Pathologist

The pathologist is a physician who specializes in diagnosing disease, through the use of laboratory tests results, in tissues removed at operations and from postmortem examinations. It is his or her duty to direct laboratory services so they that benefit both the physician and patient. The laboratory director may be a pathologist or a clinical laboratory scientist with a doctorate. The laboratory director and the laboratory administrator share responsibilities for managing the laboratory.

Laboratory Administrator/Laboratory Manager

The lab administrator is usually a technologist with an advanced degree and several years of experience. Duties of the administrator include overseeing all operations involving physician and patient services. Today, the laboratory administrator may supervise several ancillary services, such as radiology and respiratory therapy, or all the laboratory functions in a healthcare system consisting of separate lab facilities across a large geographic area.

Technical Supervisor

For each laboratory section or subsection, there is a technical supervisor who is responsible for the administration of the area and who reports to the laboratory administrator. This person usually has additional education and experience in one or more of the clinical laboratory areas.

Medical Technologist/Medical Laboratory Scientist

The medical technologist (MT) or medical laboratory scientist (MLS) generally has a bachelor's (BS) degree plus additional studies and experience in the clinical laboratory setting. Some states require licensing for this level of personnel. The responsibilities of the MT/MLS include performing all levels of testing in any area of the laboratory, reporting results, performing quality control, evaluating new procedures, and conducting preventive maintenance and troubleshooting on instruments.

Effective October 23, 2009, the ASCP Board of Registry and the National Certification Agency for Clinical Laboratory Personnel (NCA) was unified into a single certifying agency. All individuals with an active NCA credential were transitioned over to the ASCP Board of Certification (BOC) without further requirements until recertification is due. All CLS (NCA) certificants who had an active credential with NCA were transferred to the BOC as MLS (ASCP).

Medical Laboratory Technician

The medical laboratory technician (MLT) is most often an individual with an associate degree from a 2-year program or certification from a military or proprietary (private) school. As with the MT/MLS, some states may require licensing for medical laboratory technicians. The technician is responsible for performing routine testing, operating all equipment, performing basic instrument maintenance, recognizing instrument problems, and assisting in problem solving.

All CLT (NCA) certificants who had an active credential with NCA on October 23, 2009, were transferred to the BOC as MLT (ASCP).

Clinical Laboratory Assistant

Before the arrival of computerized instrumentation in the laboratory, the clinical laboratory assistant (CLA) was a recognized position. Today, because of reductions in laboratory staff, this category of personnel has been revived. A clinical laboratory assistant is a person with phlebotomy experience who has skills in specimen processing and basic laboratory testing. Clinical laboratory assistants are generalists, responsible for assisting the MLS or MLT with workloads in any area.

Phlebotomist

The phlebotomist is trained to collect blood for laboratory tests that are necessary for the diagnosis and care of patients. A number of facilities use phlebotomists as laboratory assistants or specimen processors (see Box 1-1 for duties). Formal phlebotomy programs in colleges and private schools usually require a high school diploma or the equivalent to enroll. After completing the program or acquiring 1 year of work experience, a phlebotomist can become certified by passing a national examination. A few states require licensing for this level of personnel.

Other Laboratory Personnel

Other laboratory personnel include programmers and laboratory information systems (LIS) managers, quality-assurance managers, and point-of-care coordinators. Computer programmers and LIS managers are often laboratorians who, through additional training, have become experts in laboratory computer software. A quality-assurance (QA) manager is a detail-oriented MT/MLS who collects statistics for QA purposes. A point-of-care coordinator is an MT/MLS who works closely with the nursing staff to ensure the quality of point-of-care testing results. In some hospital settings, maintenance and QA checks on the POCT instruments have become the responsibility of the phlebotomy staff.

CLINICAL LABORATORY IMPROVEMENT ACT

The **Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988** (CLIA '88) is a federal law that allows the Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) in the Department of Health and Human Services to regulate all sites performing laboratory testing in the United States. CLIA regulations mandate that all laboratories use the same standards regardless of their location, type, or size. This includes standards for personnel in laboratories performing moderate- and high-complexity testing. Requirements are set for laboratory director, technical consultant, supervisors, and testing personnel. Detailed information may be found at *www.cdc.gov/clia/regs/subpart_m.aspx*.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Early equipment used for bloodletting included all of the following *except* the:**
   a. fleam.
   b. hemostat.
   c. lancet.
   d. leech.

2. **A factor that contributes to the phlebotomist's professional image is:**
   a. age.
   b. attitude.
   c. health.
   d. heritage.

3. **The initials for the title granted after successful completion of the American Society for Clinical Pathology phlebotomy examination are:**
   a. CLPlb.
   b. CLT.
   c. CPT.
   d. PBT.

4. **The principles of right and wrong conduct as they apply to professional problems are called:**
   a. certification.
   b. esteem.
   c. ethics.
   d. torts.

5. **The law that established national standards for the electronic exchange of protected health information is:**
   a. CLIA.
   b. HIPAA.
   c. OSHA.
   d. PHS.

6. **Which of the following is a duty of the phlebotomist?**
   a. Analyze specimens
   b. Chart patient results
   c. Collect drug screens
   d. Process billing

7. **Which of the following is an example of proxemics?**
   a. Eye contact
   b. Facial expressions
   c. Personal hygiene
   d. Zone of comfort

8. **Which of the following is proper telephone technique?**
   a. Be careful of the tone of voice used and keep answers simple.
   b. Do not identify yourself in case there are problems later.
   c. Listen carefully; do not take notes because it takes too much time.
   d. Wait for the phone to ring three or four times so as not to appear anxious.

9. **An institution that provides inpatient services is a:**
   a. clinic.
   b. day surgery.
   c. doctor's office.
   d. hospital.

10. **State and federally funded insurance is called:**
    a. APC
    b. HIPAA
    c. Medicaid
    d. Medicare

11. **The specialty that treats disorders of old age is called:**
    a. cardiology.
    b. gerontology.
    c. pathology.
    d. psychiatry.

12. **The department in the hospital that prepares and dispenses drugs is:**
    a. central supply.
    b. pharmacy.
    c. physical therapy.
    d. radiology.

13. **The microbiology department in the laboratory performs:**
    a. compatibility testing.
    b. culture and sensitivity testing.
    c. electrolyte monitoring.
    d. enzyme-linked immunoassay.

14. **The abbreviation for the routine hematology test that includes hemoglobin, hematocrit, red blood count, and white blood count determinations is:**
    a. CBC.
    b. CDC.
    c. CPK.
    d. CRP.

15. **Which of the following laboratory professionals is specified by CLIA'88 as responsible for the administration of a clinical area?**
    a. Laboratory manager
    b. Medical laboratory scientist
    c. Medical laboratory technician
    d. Technical supervisor

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 1-1 *Telephone Etiquette and the Irate Caller*

Sally is a new phlebotomist working for a small hospital in the suburbs of Chicago. As she finds out in a very short time, her coworkers have many different job responsibilities and are required to cover for one another. Today it is Sally's turn to cover the reception area of the lab while the regular person takes a few days off. This is Sally's first time, and she is rather hesitant to answer the first call because she is afraid that she does not know enough to answer all inquiries. Consequently, she lets the phone ring more than 10 times. She finally answers it. The caller, a nurse, sounds irritated. He has been very anxious to obtain certain results on a patient. He tells Sally that they were to be faxed 2 days earlier and he has not yet received them. Sally tells him she will transfer him to the technician in the back. Being unfamiliar with this phone, she loses his call in the process. The nurse calls back in a few minutes and wants to speak to "someone who knows what she is doing." The other line starts ringing. This time, rather than lose the caller, Sally keeps the line open, puts the phone down on the counter, and calls out "someone please take this call. I have a call on the other line."

QUESTIONS

1. *Name three telephone etiquette errors that Sally made.*
2. *Which error creates the chance for a HIPAA violation to occur? Explain why.*
3. *What should Sally have done differently that would have prevented all three errors?*
4. *What responsibility does the laboratory administrator have?*

CASE STUDY 1-2 *Phlebotomy and PHI*

The phlebotomist, Matt, is doing the morning blood collections on the surgery floor of the hospital. As he begins to put the last tube in his cart and head for the clinical lab, the nurse asks him to draw blood from one more patient. She quickly points in the direction of the patient's room and turns to get the requisition. Matt did not see the exact room, so he shouts across the common area, "Do you mean the young, Hispanic man in room 412 who just had an appendectomy?" The nurse put her finger to her mouth and says "shhh" as she hands him the lab requisition.

QUESTIONS

1. *Why did the nurse indicate Matt needed to be quiet?*
2. *What policy had the phlebotomist ignored?*
3. *What law governs Matt's actions?*
4. *What should Matt have done?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Abdelhak M, Grostick S, Hanken M, Jacobs E. *Health Information: Management of a Strategic Resource,* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier; 2007.

Bishop M, Fody E, Schoeff L. *Clinical Chemistry: Techniques, Principles, Correlations,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Wolters Kluwer/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.

CLIA. www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfCLIA/clia.cfm

Cmiel P. Postoperative management of the replant patient: monitoring, complications, and education. *Crit Care Nurs Q* 1990;13(1):47.

Davis A, Appel T. *Bloodletting Instruments in the National Museum of History and Technology.* Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press; 1979.

Fischbach F. *A Manual of Laboratory and Diagnostic Tests,* 7th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2004.

Johns ML. *Health Information Management Technology: An Applied Approach,* 2nd ed. Chicago: American Health Information Management Association; 2006.

LaTour K, Eichenwald S. *Health Information Management, Concepts, Principles and Practice.* Chicago: AHIMA; 2002.

Mitchell J, Haroun L. *Introduction to Health Care.* Albany, NY: Delmar Publishers; 2002.

National Center for Cultural Competence. *Policy Brief 1: Rationale for Culture Competence in Primary Healthcare.* Washington, DC: Georgetown University Child Development Center; 2002.

Williams SJ. *Essentials of Health Services.* New York: Delmar Publishers; 2005.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e):

- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flashcard generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **MedicineNet.com:** http://medicinenet.com
- **Museum of Quackery:** http://museumofquackery.com
- **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments:** http://wwwn.cdc.gov/clia/
- **U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Food and Drug Administration, CLIA (Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments) database:** http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cdrh/cfdocs/cfCLIA/clia.cfm

Other Resources

- Ruth McCall and Cathee Tankersley. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- Ruth McCall and Cathee Tankersley. *Phlebotomy Exam Review*, 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

CHAPTER

2

Quality Assurance and Legal Issues

KEY TERMS

Do the Matching Exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

assault	discovery	QA
battery	due care	QC
breach of confidentiality	fraud	QSE
civil actions	GLPs	quality indicators
CLSI	informed consent	respondeat superior
CMS	invasion of privacy	standard of care
CQI	malpractice	statute of limitations
defendant	negligence	threshold values
delta check	NSPGs	tort
deposition	plaintiff	vicarious liability

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Identify national organizations, agencies, and regulations that support quality assurance in healthcare.
3. Define quality and performance improvement measurements as they relate to phlebotomy.
4. List and describe the components of a quality assurance (QA) program and identify areas in phlebotomy subject to quality control (QC).
5. List areas in phlebotomy subject to QC and identify QC procedures associated with each.
6. Demonstrate knowledge of the legal aspects associated with phlebotomy procedures by defining legal terminology and describing situations that may have legal ramifications.

OVERVIEW

This chapter focuses on quality assurance (QA) and legal issues in healthcare, including the relationship of both to the practice of phlebotomy. Consumer awareness has increased lawsuits in all areas of society. This is especially true in the healthcare industry. Consequently, it is essential for phlebotomists to recognize the importance of following QA guidelines and understand the legal implications of not doing so.

Quality Assurance in Healthcare

Healthcare institutions search for ways to guarantee quality patient care by identifying and minimizing situations that pose risks to patients and employees. Guidelines are developed for all processes used and all personnel involved; when formally adopted, they become the institution's **continuous quality improvement** (CQI) program. Measurement of performance and quality improvement projects are now part of the accreditation requirements for all types of healthcare facilities and are found in every aspect of healthcare, including phlebotomy. One of the ways to improve quality is through compliance with and use of national standards and regulations.

NATIONAL STANDARD AND REGULATORY AGENCIES

Do Knowledge Drill 2-3 in the WORKBOOK to reinforce your understanding of regulatory agencies and their purpose.

The Joint Commission

One of the key players in bringing quality assessment review techniques to healthcare is **The Joint Commission,** formerly referred to as the Joint Commission on Accreditation of Health Care Organizations. This is a voluntary, nongovernmental agency charged with, among other things, establishing standards for the operation of hospitals and other health-related facilities and services. Its mission is *to continuously improve healthcare for the public, in collaboration with other stakeholders, by evaluating healthcare organizations and inspiring them to excel in providing safe and effective care of the highest quality and value.*

The Joint Commission is the oldest and largest healthcare standards-setting body in the nation, presently accrediting more than 17,000 healthcare organizations. To receive and maintain its Gold Seal of Approval™, an organization must undergo an on-site evaluation by a survey team at least every 3 years; every 2 years for laboratories.

In 2009, the Joint Commission implemented key changes that strengthen the focus on quality care and patient safety. The traditional thresholds used in the past for accreditation measurements have been eliminated and, instead, program-specific screening criteria are being used in evaluations and on-site surveys. The new model for the clinical laboratory incorporates activities intended to reduce total analytical error by improving the pre- and postanalytical processes and more oversight of point-of-care testing. The new decision criteria used by an accreditation team have the following four scoring categories:

1. **Direct Impact Standards Requirements**. These critical care process-related requirements are likely to create an immediate risk to patient safety if not met. An example of jeopardizing a patient's care is the lack of a quality-control program for each area or specialty in the clinical laboratory services.
2. **Indirect Impact Standards Requirements**. These planning and evaluation requirements are less of an immediate threat to the patient's safety and quality care but, over time, may put the patient at risk. An example of an indirect impact on the patient would be the lack of documentation for ongoing education of the staff.
3. **Situational Decision Rules**. An example of failure to meet these situational rules would be finding unlicensed personnel working in the facility in a state where licensure is required by law.
4. **Immediate Threat to Health and Safety**. An example of noncompliance with this requirement would include a blood bank refrigerator temperature out of range or serious problems with specimen labeling. Owing to the severity of this category, the Preliminary Denial of Accreditation (PDA) would be issued until corrective action was validated.

Current Joint Commission standards stress performance improvement by requiring the facility to be directly accountable to the customer. This means that all departments of a healthcare facility should be aware of their customers' expectations and complaints.

To evaluate and track complaints about healthcare organizations relating to quality of care, the Joint Commission's Office of Quality Monitoring was created. The office has a toll-free line that can help people to register their complaints. Information and concerns often come from patients, their families, and healthcare employees. A complaint may be submitted online, by e-mail, or by regular mail. When a report is submitted, the Joint Commission reviews any past reports and the organization's most recent accreditation decision. Depending on the nature of the reported concern, the Joint Commission will:

- Request from the organization a written response to the reported concern
- Incorporate the concern into a quality monitoring database that is used to identify trends or patterns in performance
- Conduct an on-site, unannounced assessment of the organization if the report raises serious concerns about a continuing threat to patient safety or a continuing failure to comply with standards
- Review the reported concern and compliance at the organization's next accreditation survey

Patient Safety and Sentinel Events

Part of the Joint Commission's CQI program is their commitment to improving safety for patients and residents in healthcare organizations. One of the ways this is demonstrated is through its sentinel (early warning) event policy. The intent of this policy is to help healthcare organizations identify significant safety issues and take steps to prevent them from happening again. A sentinel event signals the need for immediate investigation and response. It includes any unfavorable event that is unexpected and results in death or serious physical or psychological injury. An early warning of an undesirable outcome could be any deviation from an acceptable practice that continues to risk patient safety. Loss of a limb or any of its function is specifically included as a sentinel event. According to the policy, if a sentinel event occurs, the healthcare organization is required to:

- Perform a thorough and credible analysis of the root cause
- Put improvements to reduce risk into practice
- Monitor improvements to determine if they are effective

As reported to the Joint Commission for the years 1995 through 2005, communication is listed as the leading factor in the root causes of sentinel events. In 2008, the Joint Commission created a new National Patient Safety Goal (NPSG), which states that HCOs must "Implement a standardized approach to 'hand off' communications, including an opportunity to ask and respond to questions."

National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs)

The Joint Commission's National Patient Safety Goals program is part of the overall CQI requirements for accreditation. Established in 2002, the review and annual updates are overseen by a safety expert panel as well as physicians, nurses, risk managers, and other healthcare professionals. These safety practices play a significant role in advancing quality care and patient safety. The goals have specific requirements for protecting patients. The annually updated goals address several critical areas of concern that contribute to patient safety and describe expert-based solutions. Examples of areas the goals address are: patient identification, communication, healthcare-associated infections, medication safety, and patient involvement.

The 2010 NPSGs for the clinical laboratory are:

- **Identify patients correctly.** Use at least two ways to identify patients when providing laboratory services. For example, use the patient's name, an assigned identification number, telephone number, or other person-specific information, such as date of birth.
- **Improve staff communication.** Quickly get important test results to the right staff person. Reporting critical results to the responsible caregiver will mean that the patient can be treated more promptly.

- **Prevent infection.** Use the hand-cleaning guidelines from the Centers for Disease Control or current World Health Organization hand hygiene guidelines. This will reduce the transmission of infectious agents by staff to patients.

The exact language of the Goals can be found at www.jointcommission.org.

College of American Pathologists

Another agency that influences quality improvement in phlebotomy through standards is the **College of American Pathologists** (CAP). This national organization is an outgrowth of the **American Society for Clinical Pathology** (ASCP), a not-for-profit organization for professionals in the field of laboratory medicine. The membership in this specialty organization is composed entirely of board-certified pathologists. CAP offers **proficiency testing** and a continuous form of laboratory inspection by a team made up of pathologists and laboratory managers. The CAP Inspection and Accreditation Program does not compete with the Joint Commission accreditation for healthcare facilities because CAP is designed for pathology/laboratory services only. A CAP-certified laboratory also meets Medicare/Medicaid standards because the Joint Commission grants reciprocity (mutual exchange) to CAP in the area of laboratory inspection.

KEY POINT Beginning in 2009, the inspection added a new evaluation process for laboratory personnel, including phlebotomists. Documentation in an employee's personnel file will be required to confirm that the employee is qualified to perform the responsibilities for which he or she is assigned.

Do the WORKBOOK Case Study 2-1 exercise to reinforce your understanding of CLIA and CLIAC.

Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988

The **Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988** (CLIA '88) are federal regulations passed by Congress and administered by the **Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS)**, an agency that manages federal healthcare programs of Medicare and Medicaid. These regulations establish quality standards that apply to all facilities, including clinics and physicians' office laboratories that test human specimens for the purpose of providing information used to diagnose, prevent, or treat disease and assess health status. The standards address quality assurance, quality control, proficiency testing, laboratory records, and personnel qualifications.

The aim of the standards is to ensure the accuracy, reliability, and timeliness of patient test results regardless of the location, type, or size of the laboratory. To assist in administering these regulations, the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Advisory Committee (CLIAC) was formed. Its purpose is to provide technical and scientific guidance to the appropriate people in CMS who are administering the regulations. CLIAC advises on the need for revisions to the standards under which clinical laboratories are regulated and the impact the proposed revisions will have on laboratory practice.

All laboratory facilities subject to CLIA'88 regulations are required to obtain a certificate from the CMS according to the complexity of testing performed there. Three categories of testing are recognized: waived (simple, with a low risk of error), moderate (including provider-performed microscopy), and high complexity. Complexity of testing is based on the difficulty involved in performing the test and the degree of risk of harm to a patient if the test is performed incorrectly. CLIA requirements are more stringent for labs that perform moderate- and high-complexity testing than waived testing, and their facilities are subject to routine inspections. Specimen collection is an important part of CLIA inspections, and laboratories that are of moderate or high complexity are required to have written protocols for patient preparation, specimen collection, labeling, preservation, and transportation.

After discovering significant gaps in the quality of waived testing practices, CMS began on-site visits to approximately 2% of **Certificate of Waiver** (COW) labs across the country. The on-site visits were known in advance and were intended for education and the gathering of information. CMS has now conducted visits in all 50 states and will continue to visit 2% of the COW laboratories throughout the United States each year.

BOX 2-1 GOOD LABORATORY PRACTICES

1. Keep the manufacturer's current product insert for the laboratory test in use and be sure it is available to the testing personnel. Use the manufacturer's product insert for the kit currently in use; do not use old product inserts.
2. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for specimen collection and handling.
3. Be sure to properly identify the patient.
4. Be sure to label the patient's specimen for testing with an identifier unique to each patient.
5. Inform the patient of any test preparation such as fasting, clean-catch urines, etc.
6. Read the product insert prior to performing the test and achieve the optimal result.
7. Follow the storage requirements for the test kit. If the kit can be stored at room temperature but this changes the expiration date, write the new expiration date on the kit.
8. Do not mix components of different kits.
9. Record the patient's test results in the proper place, such as the laboratory test log or the patient's chart, but not on unidentified Post-it notes or pieces of scrap paper that can be misplaced.
10. Perform any instrument maintenance as directed by the manufacturer.

Adapted from U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments, Good Laboratory Practices. Retrieved April 14, 2010 from http://www.cms.hhs.gov/clia/downloads/wgoodlab.pdf. See that document for more information. www.clsi.org

In addition, the CLIAC has developed 10 QA recommendations for COW labs called **Good Laboratory Practices (GLPs).** The GLPs emphasize quality assurance in collecting and performing blood work using waived testing kits. They are intended as an educational tool and are not mandatory. See Box 2-1 for an abbreviated form of the GLPs.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute

The **Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI)** is a global, nonprofit, standards-developing organization with representatives from the profession, industry, and government. Its mission is *to develop best practices in clinical and laboratory testing and promote their use throughout the world, using a consensus-driven process that balances the viewpoints of industry, government, and the healthcare professions.* The organization uses a widespread agreement process to develop voluntary guidelines and standards for all areas of the laboratory. CLSI has grown into a global association of over 2,000 member organizations and more than 2,000 volunteers who are working to improve the quality of medical care through standardization. Phlebotomy program approval, certification examination questions, and the standard of care are based on these important guidelines and standards.

National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences

The **National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (NAACLS)** is recognized by the U.S. Department of Education as an authority on educational quality and is committed to serving the international healthcare community through the involvement of volunteer experts dedicated to maintaining quality standards in education. It is an autonomous nonprofit organization that provides accreditation and approval of clinical laboratory sciences and related health professions educational programs. The accreditation process involves an external peer review of the program, including an on-site evaluation, to determine whether the program meets certain established educational standards. The NAACLS approval process for phlebotomy programs requires that the program meet educational standards called "competencies" designed to improve student outcomes and maintain quality education.

QUALITY ASSURANCE IN PHLEBOTOMY

As members of the healthcare team, phlebotomists must understand the significance of their role in providing quality patient care. Laboratory testing is an important part of patient

diagnosis and consequently a major part of patient care. Doctors rely on the validity of test results. Preanalytical (before analysis) factors such as patient preparation, specimen collection procedures, and specimen handling can affect specimen quality and in turn affect the validity of test results. Many of these factors fall under the responsibility of the phlebotomist. To ensure consistent quality, specimen collection and handling policies and procedures should be based on specific guidelines such as those established by the Joint Commission, CAP, CLIA, and CLSI. Phlebotomists should strictly adhere to them. Established polices and procedures fall under an overall process called **quality assurance** (QA).

QA Defined

QA is defined as a program that guarantees quality patient care by tracking outcomes through scheduled reviews in which areas of the healthcare organization look at the appropriateness, applicability, and timeliness of patient care. Guidelines are developed for all processes used and play a part in meeting the Joint Commission's commitment to continuously improve healthcare for the pubic.

QA Indicators

One of the most important aspects of setting up a QA identification and evaluation process is establishing indicators or guides to monitor all aspects of patient care. **QA indicators** must be measurable, well defined, objective, specific, and clearly related to an important aspect of care. Indicators can measure quality, adequacy, accuracy, timeliness, effectiveness of patient care, customer satisfaction, and so on. They are designed to look at areas of care that tend to cause problems. For example, an indicator on the QA form shown in Figure 2-1 states: "Blood culture contamination rate will not exceed 3%." A contamination rate that increased

HOSPITAL & HEALTH CENTER

QUALITY ASSESSMENT AND IMPROVEMENT TRACKING

CONFIDENTIAL A.R.S. 36-445 et. seq.

STANDARD OF CARE/SERVICE:

IMPORTANT ASPECT OF CARE/SERVICE:
LABORATORY SERVICES
COLLECTION/TRANSPORT

SIGNATURES:

_____
DIRECTOR

_____
MEDICAL DIRECTOR

_____
VICE PRESIDENT/ADMINISTRATOR

DEPARTMENTS:
DATA SOURCE(S):
METHODOLOGY: [X] RETROSPECTIVE [ ] CONCURRENT
TYPE: [ ] STRUCTURE [ ] PROCESS [X] OUTCOME
PERSON RESPONSIBLE FOR:
- DATA COLLECTION: J. HERRIG
- DATA ORGANIZATION: J. HERRIG
- ACTION PLAN: J. HERRIG
- FOLLOW-UP: J. HERRIG

DATE MONITORING BEGAN: 1990
TIME PERIOD THIS MONITOR: 2ND QUARTER 2009
MONITOR DISCONTINUED BECAUSE:
FOLLOW-UP:

INDICATORS	THLD	ACT	PREV	CRITICAL ANALYSIS/EVALUATION	ACTION PLAN
Blood Culture contamination rate will not exceed 3%				**Population: All patients** **All monthly indicators were under threshold, 3%**	**Share results and analysis with Lab staff and ER staff.**
APR - # of Draws: 713 **# Contaminated: 13**	**3.00%**	**1.8%**	**1.2%**	**% Contamination from draws other than Line draws, by unit:**	
MAY - # of Draws: 710 **# Contaminated: 23**	**3.00%**	**2.8%**	**2.3%**	**APR: ER = 4.7% Lab = 0.7%** **MAY: ER = 11.5% Lab = 1.0%** **JUN: ER = 8.6% Lab = 1.1%**	
JUN - # of Draws: 702 **# Contaminated: 17**	**3.00%**	**2.4%**	**1.9%**	**ER was over threshold for each month of quarter.**	
Total for 1st Quarter - **# of Draws: 2125** **# Contaminated: 50**	**3.00%**	**2.4%**	**1.9%**		

Figure 2-1 A microbiology quality assessment form.

BOX 2-2 QUALITY SYSTEM ESSENTIALS (QSEs)

- Documents and records
- Organization
- Personnel
- Equipment
- Purchasing and inventory
- Process control
- Information management
- Occurrence management
- Assessments—external and internal
- Process improvement
- Customer service and satisfaction
- Facilities and safety

Adapted with permission from CLSI, HS1-A2 A Quality Management System Model for Health Care: Approved Guideline–Second Edition. http://www.clsi.com.

beyond the preestablished threshold listed on the form would signify unacceptable performance, in which case action should be taken. Quality indicators should be identified and monitored for all operations in any healthcare service.

See the Microbiology Quality Assessment Form: Labeling Exercise 2-1, in the WORKBOOK to build more knowledge in this area.

CLSI has developed a quality management system for all well-defined workflow operations in the laboratory. The 12 fundamental components identified by CLSI as Quality System Essentials (QSEs) can be used in any order desired to develop a quality management process. QSEs are universal and can be applied to simple or complex operations. Each of the QSEs requires that processes, policies, and procedures be written and monitored, See the fundamental components of a system as listed in Box 2-2.

CLSI's HS1—*A Quality System Model for Health Care*—is a prototype to assist in identifying a core set of **"quality system essentials" (QSEs)** that can be applied to steps necessary to deliver a product or service called a "path of workflow." A clinical laboratory path of workflow consists of three processes: preanalytical, analytical, and postanalytical. All clinical laboratories follow this path to deliver quality lab information. For example, in monitoring laboratory performance for arterial blood gas collection, all operations across the path of workflow should be listed and quality indicators that monitor the workflow noted (Table 2-1).

Thresholds and Data

Threshold values must be established for all quality indicators. A threshold value is a level of acceptable practice beyond which quality patient care cannot be assured. Exceeding this level of acceptable practice may trigger intensive evaluation to see if there is a problem that needs to be corrected. During the evaluation process, data are collected and organized. Data sources include such information as patient records, laboratory results, incident reports, patient satisfaction reports, and direct patient observation. A corrective action plan is established if the data identify a problem or opportunity for improvement. An action plan defines what will change and when that change is expected. Even when the problem appears to be corrected, monitoring and evaluation continue to ensure that care is consistent and that quality continually improves.

Process and Outcomes

QA has traditionally looked at outcomes. Outcomes are in numbers only. For example, an outcome measurement may give the number of times that patient specimens were redrawn because the improper tube was used for collection. It is important to know how often this occurs, but it does not explain why it happened. To improve an outcome, the process must be reviewed. This entails following the process from start to finish. As the Joint Commission suggests, it means standardizing the way performance is measured and activities are evaluated. In the previous example, it would mean looking at what the requester did at the time he or she decided the test

TABLE 2-1 Published Laboratory Quality Indicators for ABG Collection

Quality System Essentials (QSEs)	Quality Indicators
Patient assessment	• Practice guideline implementation • Duplicate test ordering
Test request	• Ordering accuracy • Accuracy of order transmission • Verbal order evaluation
Specimen collection/labeling	• Wristband evaluation
Specimen transport	• Transit time • Stat transit time
Specimen receiving/processing	• Blood gas sample acceptability • Chemistry sample acceptability
QSE: Personnel	• Competence evaluation • Employee retention
QSE: Process control	• Safety
QSE: Occurrence management	• Incidents
QSE: Internal assessment	• On-site assessments • Self-assessments

Adapted with permission from CLSI/NCCLS (Electronic Document) H11-A4, *Procedures for the Collection of Arterial Blood Specimens; Approved Standard*, 4th ed.

was needed, how it was ordered, and how the laboratory processed the request until the time the results were on the patient's chart and in the hands of the person who ordered them. To ensure that the same process is always followed, there must be checks and controls on quality along the way. The use of checks and controls is called **quality control** (QC).

QC Defined

QC is a component of a QA program and a form of procedure control. Consistently following national standards for phlebotomy procedures is a means of controlling the quality of results. Phlebotomy QC involves using all available quality control checks on every operational procedure to make certain it is performed correctly. In phlebotomy, it is the responsibility of the person who supervises the phlebotomist to oversee QA and ensure that checks are being done and standards are being met. It is the responsibility of the phlebotomist to meet those standards at all times.

AREAS OF PHLEBOTOMY SUBJECT TO QUALITY ASSESSMENT

Patient Preparation Procedures

Quality assurance in laboratory testing actually starts before the specimen is collected, in the preanalytical stage. To obtain a quality specimen, the patient must be prepared properly. In a hospital setting, the patient's nurse can find instructions on how to prepare a patient for testing by checking the laboratory's section of ***The Nursing Services Manual*** (Fig. 2-2), which is electronically sent to the nursing station from the lab. This document describes patient preparation and other special instructions for specimen collection. The phlebotomist and others involved in specimen collection must stay current concerning testing in order to answer inquiries correctly.

Specimen Collection Procedures

Identification

Patient identification (as described in Chapter 8) is the most important aspect of specimen collection. Methods are being continually improved to ensure correct patient identification. An example is the use of bar code readers and accompanying labels (Fig. 2-3), which can substantially reduce human error.

TEST PROCEDURE:	**ANTI THROMBIN III ACTIVITY – PLASMA ACTIVITY**
TEST MNEMONIC:	**AT3**
BILLING NUMBER:	3000070
MANNER OF COLLECTION:	Drawn by Lab
SPECIMEN REQUIRED:	Citrated plasma, 1 Blue Top with Black Insert or 2 Blue Top with White Insert
SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:	2, 1 ml citrated plasma aliquots place in plastic tubes. Centrifuge, separate and freeze plasma immediately.
PATIENT PREPARATION:	None
AVAILABILITY:	At all times.
ROUTINE TURN-AROUND-TIME:	Dependent on Reference Laboratory's testing schedule
STAT TURN-AROUND-TIME:	N/A
LIMITATIONS:	None
NORMAL RANGE:	See Reference Laboratory Report
TEST PROCEDURE:	**APTT**
TEST MNEMONIC:	**APTT (ALSO SEE PTT)**
BILLING NUMBER:	3000030
MANNER OF COLLECTION:	Drawn by Lab
SPECIMEN REQUIRED:	Citrated plasma, Blue Top Tube
SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:	If the patient is on heparin, APTT's should be timed so that the blood is not drawn immediately after the dose is given. Draw a red tube before drawing the blue top tube. TESTING CANNOT BE PERFORMED ON OVERFILLED OR UNDERFILLED BLUE TOP TUBES. CORRECT BLOOD VOLUME IN BLUE TOP TUBE IS CRITICAL.
PATIENT PREPARATION:	None
AVAILABILITY:	At all times.
ROUTINE TURN-AROUND-TIME:	1-2 Hours
STAT TURN-AROUND-TIME:	60 Minutes
LIMITATIONS:	None
NORMAL RANGE:	Normal Range: 21.5 – 34.0 seconds
TEST PROCEDURE:	**ARSENIC, URINE**
TEST MNEMONIC:	**ARSENUR**
BILLING NUMBER:	
MANNER OF COLLECTION:	Urine collected by nurse
SPECIMEN REQUIRED:	Random urine
SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:	10 ml random urine in acid-washed container, refrigerate
PATIENT PREPARATION:	None
AVAILABILITY:	At all times.
ROUTINE TURN-AROUND-TIME:	Dependent on Reference Laboratory's testing schedule
STAT TURN-AROUND-TIME:	N/A
LIMITATIONS:	None
NORMAL RANGE:	See Reference Laboratory Report
TEST PROCEDURE:	**ASPERGILLUS SEROLOGY**
TEST MNEMONIC:	**ASPTER**
BILLING NUMBER:	3020090
MANNER OF COLLECTION:	Drawn by Lab
SPECIMEN REQUIRED:	1 Red Top Tube
SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:	Refrigerate 1 ml serum
PATIENT PREPARATION:	None
AVAILABILITY:	At all times.
ROUTINE TURN-AROUND-TIME:	Dependent on Reference Laboratory's testing schedule
STAT TURN-AROUND-TIME:	N/A
LIMITATIONS:	None
NORMAL RANGE:	See Reference Laboratory Report
TEST PROCEDURE:	**AST (SGOT)**
TEST MNEMONIC:	**AST**
BILLING NUMBER:	3011070
MANNER OF COLLECTION:	Drawn by Lab
SPECIMEN REQUIRED:	Plasma or Serum, 1 Green Top, Red Top, or SST Tube
SPECIAL INSTRUCTIONS:	None
PATIENT PREPARATION:	None
AVAILABILITY:	At all times.
ROUTINE TURN-AROUND-TIME:	4 Hours
STAT TURN-AROUND-TIME:	60 Minutes
LIMITATIONS:	None
NORMAL RANGE:	15-37 U/L

Figure 2-2 A page from a nursing services manual.

KEY POINT Most recently, the Joint Commission moved toward stricter patient ID requirements by their revision of NPSGs in regard to patient identification. Laboratories must now "actively involve" patients in their identification prior to any specimen collection. This is the first time the commission requires those who draw blood specimens from inpatients to go beyond an arm bracelet. For outpatients without ID bands, the agency requirements are met when the patients speak their names and provide a second verbal identifier such as their birth dates.

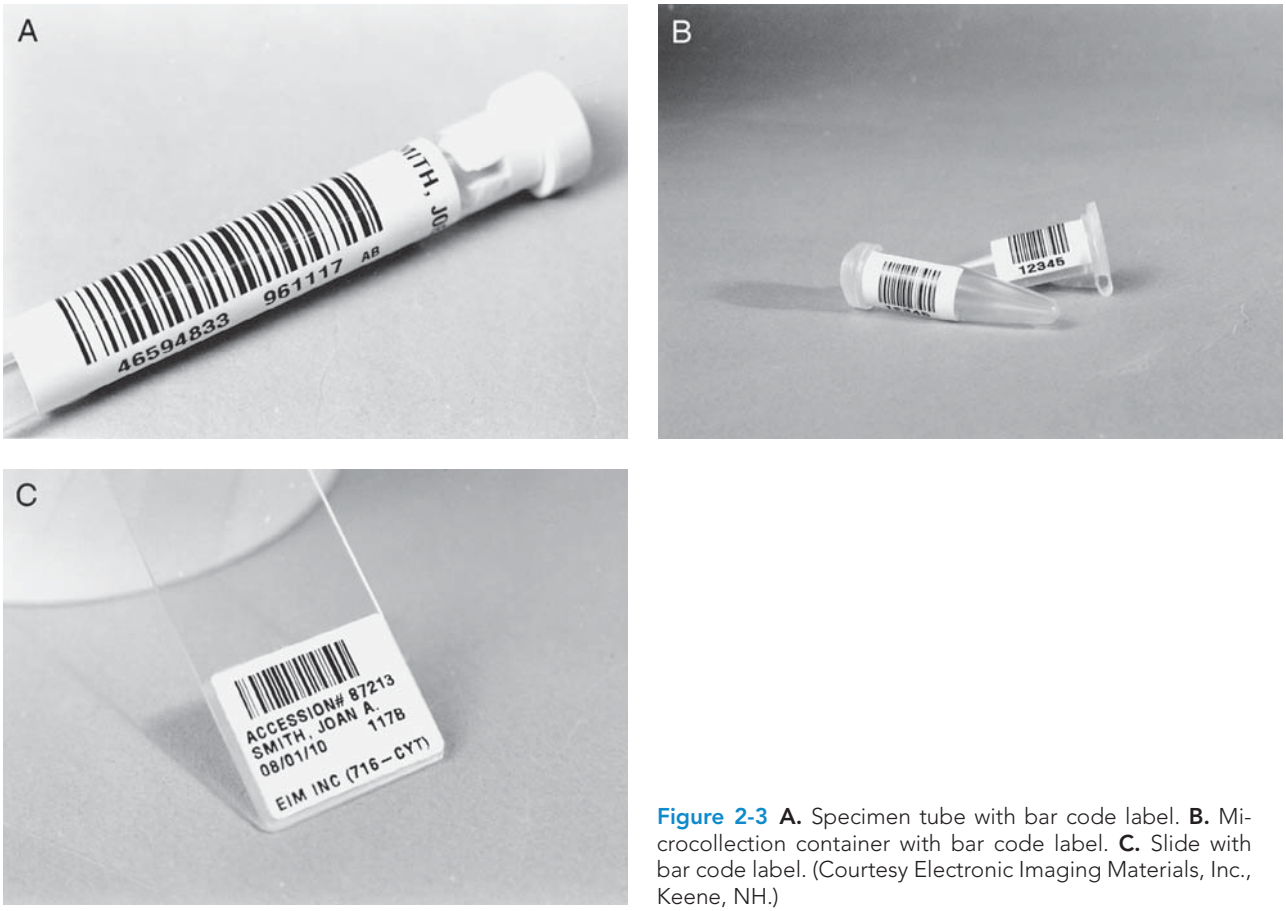


Figure 2-3 **A.** Specimen tube with bar code label. **B.** Microcollection container with bar code label. **C.** Slide with bar code label. (Courtesy Electronic Imaging Materials, Inc., Keene, NH.)

Equipment

Puncture Devices

Ensuring the quality and sterility of every needle and lancet is essential for patient safety. All puncture devices come in sealed, sterile containers and should be used only once. If the seal has been broken, the device should be put in a sharps container and a new one obtained. Manufacturing defects in needles, such as barbs and blunt tips, can be avoided before use by quickly inspecting the needle after unsheathing.

Evacuated Tubes

CLSI has established standards for evacuated tubes to help ensure specimen integrity. Manufacturers print expiration dates on each tube for quality assurance (see Fig. 7-22). Outdated tubes should not be used because they may not fill completely, causing dilution of the sample, distortion of the cell components, and erroneous results. In addition, anticoagulants in expired tubes may not work effectively, instead allowing small clots to form and thereby invalidating hematology and immunohematology test results. As part of QC, all new lots of evacuated tubes should be checked for adequate vacuum and additive, integrity of the stopper, ease of stopper removal, and tube strength during centrifugation. Results of these and other QC checks should be documented.

Labeling

Labeling must be exact. Labeling requirements as outlined in Chapter 8 should be strictly followed. Inaccuracies, such as transposed letters or missing information, will result in the specimen being discarded. With computer labels (see Fig. 2-3), the phlebotomist may be assured of correctly printed patient information. However, this correct label must still be placed on the correct patient's specimen, and the date, time of draw, and ID of the person collecting the sample must be noted.

Technique

Proper phlebotomy technique must be carefully taught by a professional who understands the importance of following national standards and the reasons for using certain equipment or techniques. When a phlebotomist understands the rationale for maintaining the standards, high-quality specimens are ensured.

KEY POINT No matter how experienced phlebotomists may be, a periodic review of their techniques is necessary for quality assurance and performance improvement.

Collection Priorities

Specimen collection priorities must be stressed. The importance of knowing how to recognize which specimen request is the most critical or when a specimen involves special collection criteria (e.g., renins or therapeutic drug monitoring [TDM]) can save the patient unnecessary medication or additional testing. It may even shorten the patient's stay in the hospital because, in many instances, therapy is based on test values from specimens assumed to have been collected at the right time and in the proper manner.

Delta Checks

Delta checks help ensure quality in testing. A **delta check** compares current results of a lab test with previous results for the same test on the same patient. Although some variation is to be expected, a major difference in results could indicate error and requires investigation.

DOCUMENTATION

Documentation is a major part of a QA program. Different types of QA documents, paper-based or electronically provided, have been developed to standardize procedures, to inform nursing and other personnel of the importance of patient preparation (Fig. 2-4), and to record problems for evaluation. Documentation can be used for legal purposes as long as it is legible and includes only standard abbreviations. Most records kept in the process of providing healthcare will supply information for evaluating and monitoring outcomes used in institutional CQI. Easily the most important of these is the patient's record.

The Patient's Record

The patient's record is a chronologic documentation of the medical care given. The law requires that medical records be kept on hospital patients, but it does not require physicians in private practice to keep such records, although most do so in the form of a clinical record. Every notation in the patient's medical or clinical record should be legible, precise, and complete. The basic reasons for maintaining accurate, up-to-date medical records are as follows:

- To provide an aid to the practice of medicine. Through the use of a patient record, the physician can document treatment and give a written plan for continuing the suggested care plan.
- To provide an aid to communications between the physician and others involved with the patient's care. It can also serve as a communications tool between past, present, and future physicians who care for the patient.
- To serve as a legal document that may be used in a court of law. It must be a factual, legible, and objective account of the patient, past and present.
- To serve as a very valuable tool for helping the hospital to evaluate performance outcomes. The patient's records include such information as a history of examinations, medical testing and laboratory reports, prescriptions written, and supplies used; these are all very informative for utilization review.

CAUTION: For confidentiality reasons, access to a patient's medical record is restricted to those who have a verifiable need to review the information.

Any Hospital
AND HEALTH NETWORK

North Mountain Clinical Laboratory

MEMO

Date: October 16, 2010
To: Physicians, Ordering Units, Unit Directors
From: Clinical Laboratory, Chemistry Department
Re: **Compliance Form for Sendout Tests to Reference Laboratories**

Effective immediately, Miscellaneous Laboratory tests not performed at AHHN-NM (Send Out tests) **may** require a completed Compliance Form prior to the sending of the procedure to the Reference Lab. The form requires diagnosis and ordering physician signature.

The laboratory will send the Compliance Form to the ordering unit (via tube system) or Physicians office (for outpatient orders only) when it is required. The completed form must be returned to the lab prior to processing of the order.

Situations in which this form **may** be required include:

1. Specimen and pricing are not available and Laboratory needs to research for information in order for specimen to be processed.
2. Test not performed by AHHN-NM Reference Lab (Quest) and will be sent elsewhere.
3. Test price exceeds $200.00
4. Pathologist Request

Thank you for your cooperation
Please contact D. Sazdoff CIS
Systems Manager if you have any questions.

Figure 2-4 A procedure manual update.

See Labeling Exercise 2-2 in the WORKBOOK for practice in reading a collection manual.

Collection Manuals

The Nursing Services Manual (Fig. 2-2) and **Specimen Collection Manual,** a similar reference for outpatient settings, are examples of QA documents made available to blood collectors at all specimen collection sites. These manuals detail how to prepare the patient and collect a high-quality sample. They typically contain, in chart form, the type and minimum amount of specimen needed for testing, special handling required, reference values for the test, the days testing is available, and the normal turnaround time (TAT). The manuals also include updates and a copy of the notification of these changes to the persons who will be affected (Fig. 2-4). Both documents describe patient preparation and other special instructions for specimen collection. It is important for the phlebotomist and others involved in specimen collection to stay informed and current concerning testing protocol to be better able to answer inquiries.

The Procedure Manual

The **Procedure Manual** (Fig. 2-5) states the policies and procedures that apply to each test or practice performed in the laboratory. The Procedure Manual, a QA document, must be

SECTION: LABORATORY SERVICES

TOPIC: VENIPUNCTURE

REVIEWED: 7/08, 2/10

LAST REVISION: 7/06, 4/08, 1/10

APPROVAL:

1.0 PURPOSE

1.1 To provide our laboratory with quality blood specimens for testing.

2.0 POLICY

2.1 Blood collection by laboratory and hospital personnel will be performed according to our laboratory procedure.

3.0 PROCEDURE

3.1 Obtain computer labels generated by orders for tests requested. For registered outpatients, use faxed order from the Outpatient Order Log or prescription.

3.2 Upon entering the patient's room, identify yourself. State that you will be drawing blood for laboratory testing and gain the patient's confidence by behaving in a professional manner.

3.3 Ensure positive patient identification.

Inpatients

3.3.1 Identify the patient to be drawn by matching each label with the patient's hospital identification armband.

3.3.2 Check for the correct match of the patient's full name and hospital medical record number and account number.

3.3.3 In the case that there is no armband present, contact the patient's nurse or charge nurse for a armband to be placed on the patient.

3.3.4 Inpatient's will **NOT** be drawn without a hospital armband.

Outpatients

3.3.5 For recurring outpatients without armbands, ask the patient for the spelling of their last name and their birth date.

Figure 2-5 A procedure manual page.

made available to all employees of the laboratory for standardization purposes. Accrediting agencies such as CAP and the Joint Commission demand that this manual be updated annually at a minimum. Box 2-3 lists typical information found in a procedure manual.

The Safety Manual

The **Safety Manual** contains procedures related to chemical, electrical, fire, and radiation safety; exposure control; and disaster plans as well as complete details on how to handle hazardous materials.

The Infection Control Procedure Manual

The **Infection Control Procedure Manual** outlines hand washing and other decontamination procedures, precautions to take when dealing with patients or handling specimens, and how to handle accidental contamination, including procedures to be implemented following exposure incidents.

BOX 2-3 INFORMATION FOUND IN A PROCEDURE MANUAL

- Purpose of the procedure
- Policy
- Specimen type and collection method
- Equipment and supplies required
- Detailed step-by-step procedure
- Limitations and variables of the method
- Corrective actions
- Method validation
- Normal values and references
- Review and revision dates
- Approval signatures and dates

QA Forms

Accreditation standards for agencies such as the Joint Commission require the facility to show documentation on all QC checks and other quality assessment activities. These forms include equipment check forms and incident/occurrence report forms.

Equipment Check Forms

Special forms for recording equipment checks on tube additives, vacuum strength, and expiration dates are available for verification of new lot numbers. Refrigerator temperatures, which must be recorded daily, are often the responsibility of the phlebotomist. Control checks on the centrifuge require periodic documentation of the tachometer readings and maintenance performed.

Internal Reports

Confidential incident/occurrence reports must be filled out when a problem occurs. These forms identify the problem, state the consequence, and describe the corrective action. Incident reports are not limited to situations in which an injury occurred. For example, an incident form will be filled out when a tube of blood is mislabeled.

An example of a QC tool used to document occurrences out of the ordinary is the form shown in Figure 2-6. This **Near Miss/Occurrence Report Form** is used when an error is made in specimen identification, labeling, collection, or reporting of the results. This form would be used, for example, if a CBC result was reported out and then platelet clumps were found on the slide, causing the result to be inaccurate, or when an RN calls to say she incorrectly labeled the tube sent to the lab for chemistry tests. Basically this form is an audit trail and documentation for any errors made in the specimen collection and handling process. It is then reviewed by a supervisor to decide whether counseling is required, if the process is flawed, or other action is necessary.

Incident reports should state facts and not feelings. The function of an incident report is not to place blame but only to identify what took place and the corrective action taken so that such an event does not happen again. **Performance Improvement Plan** documents (Fig. 2-7) are used when counseling or suspension is necessary. The document states the deficiency, describes a specific action plan for improvement, and the next step if necessary.

RISK MANAGEMENT

Risk, defined as "the chance of loss or injury," is inherent in the healthcare environment. **Risk management** is an internal process focused on identifying and minimizing situations that pose risk to patients and employees. Risk is managed in two ways: controlling risk to avoid incidents and paying for occurrences after they have happened. Generic steps in risk management involve identification of the risk, treatment of the risk using policies and procedures already in place, education of employees and patients, and evaluation of what should be done in the future.

Clinical Laboratory
Near Miss/Occurrence Report Form

Patient Name: _____ Patient Location: _____
Medical Rec. #: _____ Occurrence Date: _____ Occurrence Time: _____
Accession #: _____
Test (s): _____
Type of Spec.: _____
Problem Description: _____

Initial steps performed. Mark all that apply:

SPECIMEN INTEGRITY	RESULT (Process/Equipment/Environment)
____ Hemolysis ____ Clotted ____ QNS ____ Incorrect container ____ Leaking/contaminated ____ Transport time exceeded ____ Collected above IV ____ Fluid contaminated from line draw ____ Lipemia ____ Other	____ Repeat – same specimen, new specimen, previous specimen ____ Check patient history ____ Verify QC/instrument ____ Dilution error ____ Wrong cup/specimen/accession ____ Check ABO Acc# _____ ABO/RH_____ Acc# _____ ABO/RH_____ ____ Other:
SPECIMEN IDENTIFICATION	**DISPOSITION**
____ Unlabeled ____ Mislabeled (wrong) ____ Improperly labeled (alignment) ____ Transposed letters/numbers ____ Incomplete label ____ Incorrect collection time ____ Other:	____ Incorrect result ____ Procedure cancelled ____ Erroneous results corrected ____ Procedure credited ____ Notification to _____date/time_____ _____date/time_____ ____ Specimen recollected ____ Unlabeled/leaking specimen discarded ____ Mislabeled specimen in ERROR rack
PATIENT ORDER/INFORMATION	**LABORATORY USE ONLY**
____ Ordered on wrong patient ____ Wrong procedure ordered ____ Wrong encounter ____ Wrong date/time ____ Missing or incorrect requisition ____ Wrong therapy	Date:_____ Employee Name: _____ Counseled By: _____ Repeat Error: Yes No Other Corrective Action Needed: Yes No ____ Written PIP ____ Final Written
Other Departments affected by Near Miss Occurrence: ☐No ☐Yes	
	OFFICE USE ONLY
Occurrence by (username): _____ Report completed by: _____Date: _____ Report Reviewed by: _____Date: _____	Midas NMOR: _____Date: _____ Midas Follow up: _____Date: _____ Spec Mislabel: _____Date: _____ FDA Report: _____Date: _____

Figure 2-6 Near miss/occurrence report form.

Risk factors can sometimes be identified by looking at trends in reporting tools such as incident or occurrence reports (Fig. 2-6). Proper investigation is initiated if a situation is identified that deviates from the normal. If new procedures that reduce risk are instituted, employees are informed immediately and instructed in what to do. Evaluation of occurrences, trends, and outcomes is essential throughout the operation of a risk management program, so that risks can be identified and the appropriate changes made. Risk management procedures and other QA measures demonstrate the intent of a healthcare facility to adhere to national standards of good practice that can result in a noticeable reduction of legal issues concerning consumers of healthcare.

HOSPITAL & HEALTH CENTER

PERFORMANCE IMPROVEMENT PLAN

Employee Name:	Facility	Department	Job Title
Previous Action:	Type	Reason	Date

Current Action: (please check one)
☐ Verbal Counseling ☐ Written Warning ☐ Final Written Warning
☐ Suspension – Date ☐ Termination (check reason below)

Termination Reason: ☐ Unexcused Absence/Tardiness ☐ Job Performance ☐ Conduct ☐ Other

I. **Describe the performance deficiency giving rise to the counseling (include specific dates, times and policies violated, etc.):**

II. **Describe specific job performance expectations and areas for improvement:**

III. **Describe the agreed upon action plan for improvement including date of follow-up to review progress, if applicable:**

IV. **State the next step if job performance does not improve (warning, discharge, etc.):**

V. **Department director/supervisor Comments:**

Department Director/Supervisor Signature:	Date

VI. **Employee Comments:**

I understand that all corrective action notices other than a verbal counseling will be placed in my personnel file. My signature below does not indicate agreement regarding the contents of the document; only that I have received a copy for my records.

Employee	Date	Witness	Date
Human Resources	Date	Reason	

Figure 2-7 Performance improvement form.

Legal Issues

Technology, such as the Internet, has led to increased awareness and concern by the healthcare consumer. Today, litigation is common practice in the healthcare industry, where physicians and other healthcare providers were once considered above reproach. As healthcare providers go about their daily work, there are many activities that, if performed without reasonable care and skill, could result in a lawsuit. It has been proven in past lawsuits that persons performing phlebotomy can and will be held legally accountable for their actions. Although most legal actions against healthcare workers are **civil actions** in which the alleged injured party sues for monetary damages, willful actions by healthcare workers with the intent to produce harm or death can result in criminal charges. See Table 2-2 for a description of criminal and civil actions.

TABLE 2-2 Criminal and Civil Actions

Action	Definition	Punishment
Criminal	Concerned with laws designed to protect all members of society from unlawful acts by others; i.e., felonies and misdemeanors.	• A felony is a crime (i.e., murder, assault, and rape) punishable by death or imprisonment. • Misdemeanors are considered lesser offenses and usually carry a penalty of a fine or less than 1 year in jail.
Civil	Concerned with actions between two private parties, such as individuals or organizations; constitute the bulk of the legal actions dealt with in the medical office or other healthcare facilities.	• Damages may be awarded in a court of law and result in monetary penalties.

The same act may lead to both criminal and civil actions. For example, in assault and battery cases, a guilty defendant can face imprisonment by the state and also civil action in which the injured party tries to collect monetary damages.

TORT

The most common civil actions in healthcare are based on **tort law**. A tort is a wrongful act other than breach of contract committed against someone's person, property, reputation, or other legally protected right, for which the individual is entitled to damages awarded by the court. It is an act that is committed without just cause and may be intentional (willful) or unintentional (accidental). The following list includes definitions of tort actions and related legal terminology.

- **Assault:** An act or threat causing another to be in fear of immediate battery (harmful touching). Battery does not necessarily have to follow an assault; however, the victim must believe the ability to carry out the threat is there.
- **Battery:** An intentional harmful or offensive touching of, or use of force on, another person without consent or legal justification. Legal justification would be, for example, when a mother gives permission to have blood drawn from her child. Intentional harm may range from permanent disfigurement to merely grabbing something out of another person's hand without permission. Battery is usually both a tort and a criminal offense.

CAUTION: A phlebotomist who attempts to collect a blood specimen without the patient's consent can face a criminal charge of assault and battery as well as a civil suit for damages.

- **Fraud:** A deceitful practice or false portrayal of facts either by words or by conduct, often done to obtain money or property. An example includes billing for services that have not been provided.
- **Invasion of privacy:** The violation of one's right to be left alone. It can involve a physical intrusion or the unauthorized publishing or release of private information, which can also be considered a breach of confidentiality.

KEY POINT Invasion of privacy by physical intrusion may be no more than opening the door and walking into a patient's room without asking permission to enter.

- **Breach of confidentiality:** The failure to keep privileged medical information private. An example is the unauthorized release of patient information such as laboratory results. This could lead to a lawsuit if it caused great embarrassment to the patient or even greater consequences, such as the loss of his or her job.

- **Malpractice:** A type of negligence (described below) committed by a professional. The training and experience of the accused individual is taken into consideration when deciding whether an act resulting in injury should be labeled negligence or malpractice. A claim of malpractice implies that a greater standard of care was owed to the injured person than the "reasonable person" standard associated with negligence.
- **Negligence:** The failure to exercise **due care,** the level of care that a person of ordinary intelligence and good sense would exercise under the given circumstances. In other words, negligence is doing something that a *reasonable* person would *not* do, or *not* doing something that a *reasonable* person *would* do. If a medical procedure results in injury and there is no intent to injure, it is called negligence, and the injured person has the right to sue for damages. To claim negligence, the following must be present:
  1. A legal duty or obligation owed by one person to another
  2. A breaking or breach of that duty or obligation
  3. Harm done as a direct result of the action
- ***Res ipsa loquitur*:** A Latin phrase meaning "the thing speaks for itself," which applies to the rule of evidence in a case of negligence. When a breach of duty is so obvious that it does not need further explanation, it is said that the situation speaks for itself. For example, a homebound patient sitting on a kitchen barstool faints while having blood drawn and falls, hitting his head. A head injury develops that was obviously due to the fall. If a lawsuit results, the burden of proof is shifted to the phlebotomist, who must prove that he or she was not negligent.
- ***Respondeat superior*:** A Latin phrase that means "let the master respond." An employer is liable (legally responsible) for the actions of an employee, even though the employee is the one at fault. Thus, a tort action may be filed if a neglectful or intentional act of an employee results in some type of physical injury to a client. The key points in a claim of *respondeat superior* are that the employee is working within the scope of employment and has had the proper training to perform the required duties.

KEY POINT If a neglectful act occurs while an employee is doing something that is not within his or her duties or training, the employee may be held solely responsible for that act.

- **Standard of care:** The normal level of skill and care that a healthcare practitioner would be expected to adhere to in order to provide due care for patients. This duty is established by standards of the profession and the expectations of society. It is the standard of care expected of everyone at all times; a failure to exercise due care is negligence. Employers are responsible for providing employees who possess the qualifications and training necessary to meet the standard of care and are ultimately liable if they do not.
- **Statute of limitations:** A law setting the length of time after an alleged injury in which the injured person is permitted to file a lawsuit. The time limit is specified in each state's medical malpractice law. The question for all parties involved is when does the clock start? The statute of limitations period typically begins when one of the following circumstances occurs:
  1. The day the alleged negligent act was committed
  2. When the injury resulting from the alleged negligence was actually discovered or should have been discovered by a reasonably alert patient
  3. The day the physician–patient relationship ended or the day of the last medical treatment in a series
  4. In the case of minors, often not until the minor reaches the age of majority
- **Vicarious liability:** Liability imposed by law on one person for acts committed by another. One example is employer liability under *respondeat superior*, explained above. Another example is employer liability for negligence by an independent contractor or consultant who was hired. This is based on the principle that the contractor or consultant is acting on behalf of the employer by virtue of the contract between them.

KEY POINT A hospital, as an employer, cannot escape liability for a patient's injury simply by subcontracting out various services to other persons and claiming it is not responsible because the party that caused the injury is not on its payroll.

MALPRACTICE INSURANCE

Malpractice insurance compensates the insured in the event of malpractice liability. Individual workers are not typically targets of lawsuits because of *respondeat superior* or vicarious liability, both of which involve the "deep pockets" theory (let the one with the most money pay). They can, however, be named as codefendants, in which case the employer's malpractice insurance may not cover them. It is important for healthcare personnel to examine the possibility of a civil suit being brought against them and to consider carrying malpractice insurance. The decision to purchase this insurance should be based on financial considerations as well as legal ones. From the legal point of view, it may be desirable to be covered by a separate professional liability policy because the employer may give his or her insurer the right to recover damages from an employee who is found to be negligent. Healthcare personnel may be able to purchase malpractice insurance from their professional organizations.

AVOIDING LAWSUITS

The best insurance against lawsuits is to take steps to avoid them. A good way to avoid lawsuits is to consistently follow the guidelines listed in Box 2-4. Above all, always remember to respect the rights of patients. This gives them control over the situation and makes them less likely to feel that they have been treated poorly.

PATIENT CONSENT

Obtaining the patient's consent before initiating a procedure is critical. There are a number of different types of patient consent including **informed consent, expressed consent, implied consent, HIV consent**, and **consent for minors.** It is important to be familiar with them all and **refusal of consent** as well.

Informed Consent

- Implies voluntary and competent permission for a medical procedure, test, or medication.
- Requires that a patient be given adequate information regarding the method, risks, and consequences of a procedure before consenting to it.
- Information must be given to the patient in nontechnical terms and in his or her own language, if possible, meaning an interpreter may be necessary.
- The patient's permission or consent must be obtained before initiating any medical procedure.
- Minors require consent of their parents or legal guardians.

BOX 2-4 GUIDELINES TO AVOID LAWSUITS

- Acquire informed consent before collecting specimens.
- Respect a patient's right to confidentiality.
- Strictly adhere to accepted procedures and practices.
- Use proper safety containers and devices.
- Listen and respond appropriately to the patient's requests.
- Accurately and legibly record all information concerning patients.
- Document incidents or occurrences.
- Participate in continuing education to maintain proficiency.
- Perform at the prevailing standard of care.
- Never perform procedures that you are not trained to do.

Expressed Consent

- Required for treatment that involves surgery, experimental drugs, or high-risk procedures.
- May be given verbally or in writing.
- Written consent gives the best possible protection for both the treatment provider and the patient, must be signed by both, and must be witnessed by a third party.
- Verbal consent for treatment should be followed by an entry in the patient's chart covering what was discussed with the patient.
- Consent should cover what procedures are going to be performed and should not be in a general form that allows the physician full authority to do whatever he or she wants to do.

When a general consent issue goes to court, the court typically takes the word of the patient as to what he or she understood was to take place.

Implied Consent

- The patient's actions imply consent without a verbal or written expression of consent.
- Implied consent may be necessary in emergency procedures, such as CPR to save a person's life.
- Laws involving implied consent are enacted at the state level and may differ greatly from state to state.

KEY POINT If a phlebotomist tells a patient that he or she is going to collect a blood specimen and the patient holds out an arm, it is considered implied consent.

HIV Consent

- Legislation governing informed consent for HIV tests has been enacted in most states.
- Laws specify exactly what type of information must be given to inform the client properly.
- Generally speaking, the client must be advised on (a) the test and its purpose, (b) how the test might be used, and (c) the meaning of the test and its limitations.

Consent for Minors

- As a general rule, a minor cannot give consent for the administration of medical treatment.
- Parental or guardian consent is required.
- Healthcare personnel who violate this rule are liable for assault and battery.

A minor is anyone who has not reached the age of majority as determined by state law.

Refusal of Consent

- An individual has a constitutional right to refuse a medical procedure such as venipuncture.
- The refusal may be based on religious or personal beliefs and preferences.
- A patient who refuses medical treatment is normally required to verify the refusal in writing on a special form.

Test yourself on this process with the WORKBOOK exercise Knowledge Drill 2-5.

THE LITIGATION PROCESS

Litigation is the process used to settle legal disputes. Approximately 10% of malpractice lawsuits actually go to court. The rest are settled out of court, which can happen at any time prior to the final court decision. Malpractice litigation involves the following four phases:

- **Phase one** begins when an alleged patient incident occurs or the patient becomes aware of a prior possible injury.
- **Phase two** begins when the injured party or a family member consults an attorney. The attorney requests, obtains, and reviews copies of the medical records involved and decides whether to take the case. If the attorney thinks that malpractice has occurred and takes the case, an attempt to negotiate a settlement is made. If the case is not resolved by negotiation, a complaint is filed by the patient's attorney. Once a complaint is filed, the injured party becomes the **plaintiff** and the person or persons against whom the complaint is filed becomes the **defendant.** Both sides now conduct formal **discovery**, which involves taking depositions and interrogating parties involved. Giving a **deposition** is a process in which one party questions another under oath while a court reporter records every word. The plaintiff, the defendant, and expert witnesses for both sides may give depositions. Expert witnesses are persons who are asked to review medical records and give their opinion of whether or not the standard of care was met. A person who lies under oath while giving a deposition can be charged with perjury.
- **Phase three** is the trial phase, the process designed to settle a dispute before a jury. Both sides present their versions of the facts and the jury determines which version appears to be correct. If the jury decides in the plaintiff's favor, damages may be awarded. At this point, the lawsuit may proceed to phase four.
- **Phase four** begins with an appeal of the jury's decision. Although either side has the right to an appeal, the losing party is usually the one to choose this option.

Phlebotomists concerned with continuous quality improvement and safe practice reduce their exposure to malpractice litigation. With the rapid evolution of medicine and, more specifically, laboratory testing, safe practice includes the phlebotomist's responsibility to stay abreast of all changes to ensure the safe collection of quality specimens. This, in turn, directly affects the quality of clinical laboratory services.

LEGAL CASES INVOLVING PHLEBOTOMY PROCEDURES

The following are examples of actual legal cases involving phlebotomy procedures. They serve as a reminder that phlebotomy is not an innocuous procedure and that failure to exercise due care can result in injury to the patient and legal consequences.

Case 1: A Negligence Case Settled through Binding Arbitration

A patient had a blood specimen collected at a physician's office. Blood had been collected from him at the same office on several prior occasions with no problem. The phlebotomist, who was new to the patient and seemed to be in a hurry, inserted the needle deeper into the arm and at a much steeper angle than the patient was used to. She redirected the needle several times before hitting the vein. A hematoma began to form. Meanwhile, the patient told the phlebotomist that he felt great pain, but the phlebotomist told him it would be over soon and continued the draw. The pain continued after the draw and the patient's arm later became bruised and swollen. The patient suffered permanent injury to a nerve from compression by the hematoma. The patient sued and was awarded unknown damages.

Case 2: A Negligence Case Settled through Binding Arbitration

A phlebotomist was sent to a woman's home to draw blood for insurance purposes. After missing twice, she made a third attempt, which was also unsuccessful. The phlebotomist commented that she thought "she hit a muscle." The client complained of pain and suffered immediate swelling and bruising in the form of a hematoma. For up to a year after the failed venipuncture attempts, the client had restricted use of her right arm and hand because of

tingling and shocking sensations. It was determined that the client had suffered permanent damage to her arm because the phlebotomist was not sufficiently trained and failed to adhere to the standard of care. The client sued and was awarded $1 million in damages.

Case 3: A Negligence Case Settled through Binding Arbitration

A college student who had been studying for final exams and had not eaten or slept well for 2 days went to an outpatient lab to have blood drawn. The phlebotomist failed to observe the student's anxiety and pallor or to listen to the student's concerns. Following the blood collection, the phlebotomist did not ask the patient how she was feeling or if she would like to lie down. As the student walked alone from the blood collection area, she fainted and fell against a stone threshold at the building's exit. She suffered multiple facial fractures as well as permanent scarring to her face; she also lost three front teeth. She was hospitalized for 2 weeks and missed her college exams. The outpatient lab had not provided a bed for patients to use when feeling faint, nor had it set aside a separate room for emergency situations. The supervisor was not available on site at the time of the accident. The first aid administered to the student before the ambulance arrived was incorrect and resulted in additional harm. At arbitration, the student was awarded $1.5 million in damages.

Case 4: Congelton versus Baton Rouge General Hospital

The plaintiff went to donate blood at a hospital. She complained of pain during the procedure and the technician repositioned the needle twice. The technician offered to remove the needle but the plaintiff chose to complete the procedure. After completing the donation, she complained of numbness in her arm. Later evaluation by a neurologist indicated injury to the antebrachial cutaneous nerve. The plaintiff sued and was awarded unknown damages.

Case 5: Jury Verdict Affirmed on Appeal by Kentucky Supreme Court

The plaintiff went to the hospital to have her blood drawn. The phlebotomist placed a tourniquet on the plaintiff's arm and then left the room to answer a phone call. When she returned approximately 10 minutes later, the plaintiff's arm was swollen and had changed color. The plaintiff experienced medical complications and sought treatment. After medical consultation, three physicians concluded that the plaintiff was experiencing nerve problems with her right arm that were related to the tourniquet incident. The plaintiff sued and was awarded $100,000 in damages.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. The_____ is the oldest and largest healthcare standards–setting body in the nation.

a. American Medical Society
b. Center for Medicare and Medicaid
c. College of American Pathologists
d. Joint Commission

2. The CLIA federal regulations are administered by:

a. CAP.
b. CLSI.
c. CMS.
d. COW.

3. _____ are set up to monitor all aspects of laboratory work.

a. Quality indicators
b. Quality System Essentials
c. Sentinel events
d. Threshold values

4. A QA program monitors:

a. indicators.
b. outcomes.
c. procedures.
d. threshold values.

5. What book describes the necessary steps to follow in patient preparation?

a. The Infection Control Manual
b. The Procedure Manual
c. The Safety Manual
d. The Specimen Collection Manual

6. Which of the following is a necessary element of risk management?

a. Education
b. Evaluation
c. Identification
d. All of the above

7. Informed consent means that a:

a. nurse has the right to perform a procedure on a patient even if the patient refuses.
b. patient agrees to a procedure after being told of the consequences associated with it.
c. patient has the right to look at all his or her medical records and test results.
d. phlebotomist tells the patient what is ordered and the implications of the test results.

8. A national organization that develops guidelines and sets standards for laboratory procedures is the:

a. CAP.
b. CLIAC.
c. CLSI.
d. NAACLS.

9. The physician employer of a phlebotomist who injures a patient during a blood draw is sued for negligence. This is an example of:

a. assault and battery.
b. *res ipsa loquitur*.
c. the statue of limitations.
d. vicarious liability.

10. A young adult comes to an outpatient lab to have his blood drawn. What should the phlebotomist know before drawing this patient's blood?

a. Age of majority in the state
b. Date of birth of the patient
c. Name of the patient
d. All of the above

11. The NPSGs are the:

a. CLSI's voluntary standards and guidelines.
b. Commission's annual safety requirement goals.
c. NAACLS national educational guidelines.
d. safety rules set down by CDC and OSHA.

12. A delta check refers to:

a. checking the wristband with the requisition.
b. comparing current test results with previous one.
c. documenting all of the results of the QC checks.
d. reporting new infection control precautions.

13. Which one of the following is used as a monitor or quality indicator for the process of "test requesting"?

a. Employee safety
b. Ordering accuracy
c. Stat transit time
d. Wristband evaluation

14. Failure to exercise "due care" is:

a. assault and battery.
b. invasion of privacy.
c. negligence.
d. *res ipsa loquitur.*

15. The statute of limitations timing can begin:

a. on the day the negligent act took place.
b. the first day in a series of medical treatments.
c. the first day of consulting with a lawyer.
d. a month after the injury was discovered.

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 2-1 *Scope of Duty*

A newly trained phlebotomist is sent to collect a blood specimen from a patient. The phlebotomist is an employee of a laboratory that contracts with the hospital to perform laboratory services, including specimen collection. The phlebotomist collects the specimen with no problems. Before the phlebotomist has a chance to leave the room, the patient asks for help to walk to the bathroom. The patient is a very large woman, but the phlebotomist lends an arm to help her. On the way to the bathroom, the patient slips on some liquid on the floor. The phlebotomist tries but is unable to prevent her from falling. The patient fractures her arm in the fall.

QUESTIONS

1. *Was it wrong of the phlebotomist to try to help the patient? Explain why or why not.*
2. *Is the hospital liable for the patient's injury? Explain why or why not.*
3. *Can the phlebotomist be held liable for the patient's injuries? Explain why or why not.*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Abdelhak M, Grostick S, Hanken M, Jacobs E. *Health Information: Management of a Strategic Resource,* 3rd ed. St. Louis: Saunders Elsevier; 2007.

American Hospital Association (AHA). http://www.aha.org/aha/resource_center

Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA): http://www.cms.hhs.gov/clia/

Fremgen BF. *Medical Law and Ethics.* Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall; 2005.

The Joint Commission. http://www.jointcommission.org

Kentucky Supreme Court, case #2003-SC-471-DG, *Baptist Healthcare Systems, Inc. D/B/A Central Baptist Hospital* v *Golda H. Miller et al.*, opinion rendered August 25, 2005.

Peck M. The Joint Commission. Merion Publications, Advance Newsmagazines, 2009.

National Committee for Clinical Standards H11-A4. Procedures for the collection of arterial blood specimens: approved standard, 4th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2004.

Phillips LD. *Manual of I.V. Therapeutics*, 4th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005.

Veatch R, Flack H. *Case Studies in Allied Health Ethics*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall; 1997.

Williams SJ. *Essentials of Health Services*. New York: Delmar Publishers, 2005.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e):

- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **American Hospital Association (AHA):** http://www.aha.org/aha/resource_center
- **Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI):** http://www.clsi.org/
- **Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA):** http://www.cms.hhs.gov/clia/
- **College of American Pathologists:** http://www.cap.org/apps/cap.portal
- **The Joint Commission:** http://www.jointcommission.org
- **National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (NAACLS):** http://www.naacls.org/

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review*, 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

CHAPTER

3

Infection Control, Safety, First Aid, and Personal Wellness

KEY TERMS

Drill yourself on key term meanings with WORKBOOK Matching Exercise 3-1

BBP
Biohazard
CDC
chain of infection
engineering controls
EPA
fire tetrahedron
fomites
HAI
HazCom
HBV
HCV
HICPAC
HIV
immune
infectious/causative agent
isolation procedures
microbe
MSDS
neutropenic
NIOSH
nosocomial infection
OSHA
parenteral
pathogenic
pathogens
percutaneous
permucosal
PPE
reservoir
reverse isolation
standard precautions
susceptible host
transmission-based precautions
vector transmission
vehicle transmission
work practice controls

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Identify the components of the chain of infection and give examples of each, describe infection-control procedures used to break the chain, and identify four functions of infection-control programs.
3. Describe proper procedures for hand hygiene, putting on and removing protective clothing, and entering the nursery or neonatal ICU.
4. Describe standard and transmission-based precautions and identify the organizations that developed them.
5. State safety rules to follow when working in the laboratory and in patient areas.
6. List examples of blood-borne pathogens and describe their means of transmission in a healthcare setting.

7. Discuss the major points of the blood-borne pathogens (BBP) standard, including changes required by the Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act, and identify key elements of a BBP exposure control plan.
8. Describe hazards, identify warning symbols, list actions to take if incidents occur, and specify rules to follow for proper biological, electrical, fire, radiation, and chemical safety.
9. Identify symptoms of shock, state first aid procedures for treating external hemorrhage and shock, identify the main points of the American Heart Association (AHA) CPR and ECC guidelines, and identify the links in the AHA chain of survival.
10. Describe the role of personal hygiene, proper nutrition, rest, exercise, back protection, and stress management in personal wellness.

OVERVIEW

This chapter tests knowledge of infection control, safety, first aid, and personal wellness. A thorough knowledge in these areas is necessary for phlebotomists to protect themselves, patients, coworkers, and others from infection or injury, react quickly and skillfully in emergency situations, and stay healthy both physically and emotionally, all without compromising the quality of patient care. Questions in this chapter assess the ability to describe the process of infection, and identify the components of the chain of infection, required safety equipment, and infection-control procedures. They also test the ability to recognize biological, electrical, radiation, and chemical hazards and identify the safety precautions, rules, and procedures necessary to eliminate or minimize them. First aid issues tested include control of external hemorrhage and how to recognize and treat shock victims. Wellness issues addressed include the prevention of back injury, benefits of exercise, and dealing with stress.

Infection Control

Although important advances have been made in understanding and treating infection, the threat of infection looms as large as ever. New enemies in the battle against infection emerge, such as **human immunodeficiency virus** (HIV) and **hepatitis C virus** (HCV). Enemies that had once been conquered may become resistant to treatment, as in the case of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus.* Blood collection personnel typically encounter numerous patients every day, and many of these may be harboring various infectious microorganisms. Measures to prevent the spread of infection must be taken in the course of all patient encounters. This portion of the chapter explains the infection process and describes infection-control measures needed to protect blood collection personnel, patients, staff, visitors, and those doing business within healthcare facilities. Infection control involves implementing procedures and policies that prevent infection; it starts with an understanding of the process of infection.

INFECTION

Infection is a condition that results when a microorganism (**microbe** for short) is able to invade the body, multiply, and cause injury or disease. Microbes include bacteria, fungi, protozoa, and viruses. Most microbes are nonpathogenic, meaning that they do not cause disease under normal conditions. Microbes that are **pathogenic** (causing or productive of disease) are called **pathogens.** We normally have many nonpathogenic microbes on our skin and in other areas such as the gastrointestinal (GI) tract. These microbes can become pathogens if they enter and

BOX 3-1 CDC LIST OF INFECTIOUS DISEASES THAT MAY BE ACQUIRED IN HEALTHCARE FACILITIES

- *Acinetobacter*
- Bloodborne pathogens
- *Burkholderia cepacia*
- Chickenpox (varicella)
- *Clostridium difficile*
- *Clostridium sordellii*
- Ebola (viral hemorrhagic fever)
- Gastrointestinal (GI) infections
- Hepatitis A
- Hepatitis B
- Hepatitis C
- HIV/AIDS
- Influenza
- Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA)
- Mumps
- Norovirus
- Pneumonia
- Rubella
- SARS
- Tuberculosis
- Varicella (chickenpox)
- Viral hemorrhagic fever (Ebola)
- Vancomycin intermediate *Staphylococcus aureus* (VISA)
- Vancomycin-resistant enterococci (VRE)

Reprinted from U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *List of Infectious Diseases That May Be Acquired in Healthcare Facilities.* Accessed April 14, 2010, from http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/id.html

multiply in areas of the body where they do not exist normally. Some microbes are pathogenic regardless of where they are found. Infections caused by pathogens can be local (restricted to a small area of the body) or systemic (sis-tem'ik), in which case the entire body is affected.

Communicable Infections

Some pathogenic microbes cause infections that are **communicable** (able to spread from person to person); the diseases that result are called communicable diseases. An agency of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services called the **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention** (CDC) is charged with the investigation and control of various diseases, especially those that are communicable and have epidemic potential. The CDC develops guidelines and recommends safety precautions to protect healthcare workers and others from infection.

Nosocomial and Healthcare-Associated Infections

Approximately 5% of patients in the United States are exposed to and contract some sort of infection after admission to a hospital or other healthcare facility. The term **nosocomial infection** applies to infections acquired in hospitals. The term **healthcare-associated infection** (HAI) applies to infections associated with healthcare delivery in any healthcare setting, including home care. According to the CDC, HAIs account for an estimated 1.7 million infections and 99,000 associated deaths each year. Healthcare facility–acquired or associated infections can result from contact with various sources, including infected personnel, other patients, visitors, and contaminated food, drugs, or equipment. The **Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee** (HICPAC) advises the CDC on updating guidelines regarding the prevention of infections in hospitals and other healthcare facilities. See Box 3-1 for CDC-listed of infectious diseases that may be acquired in healthcare facilities.

KEY POINT According to the CDC, urinary tract infection (UTI) is the most common nosocomial infection in the United States, accounting for 32% of all healthcare-associated infections.

THE CHAIN OF INFECTION

Infection transmission requires the presence of a number of components, which make up what is referred to as the **chain of infection** (Fig. 3-1). Six key components, or "links" in the chain are an **infectious agent, a reservoir, an exit pathway, a means of transmission, an entry pathway,** and **a susceptible host.** The chain must be complete for an infection to occur.

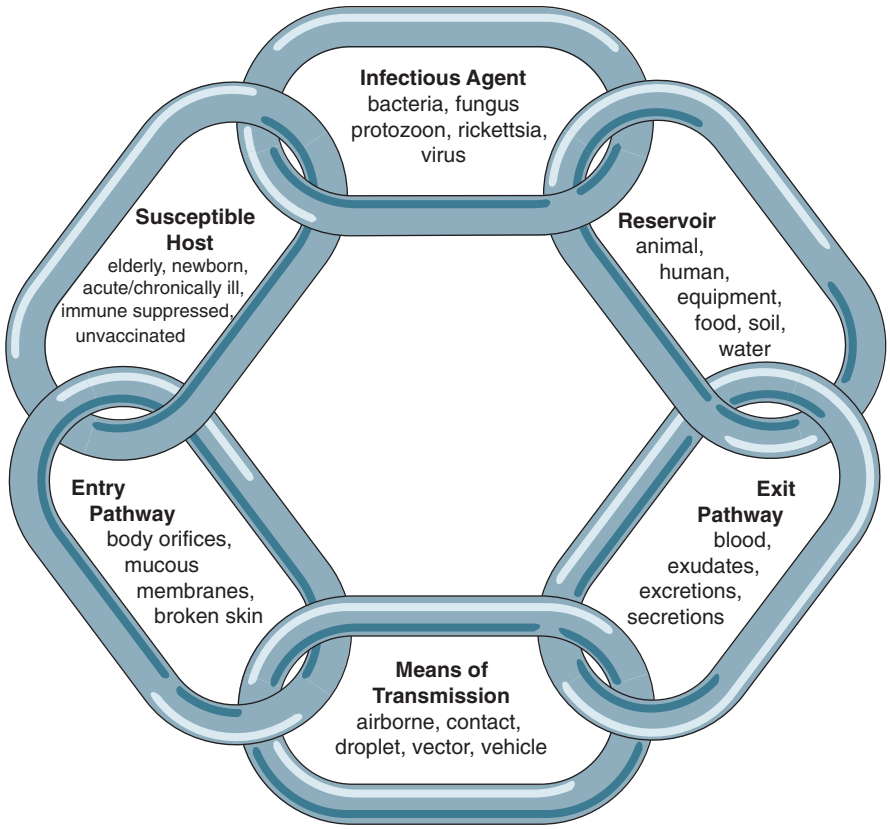


Figure 3-1 The chain of infection.

If the process of infection is stopped at any component or link in the chain, an infection is prevented. If a pathogen successfully enters a susceptible host, the chain is completed, the host becomes a new source of infectious microorganisms, and the process of infection continues.

KEY POINT A phlebotomist, whose duties involve contact with many patients, must be fully aware of the infection process and take precautions to prevent the spread of infection.

Infectious Agent

The infectious agent, also called the **causative agent,** is the pathogenic microbe responsible for causing an infection.

Reservoir

The source of an infectious agent is called a reservoir. It is a place where the microbe can survive and grow or multiply. Reservoirs include humans, animals, food, water, soil, and contaminated articles and equipment. An individual or animal infected with a pathogenic microbe is called a reservoir host. Human reservoir hosts can be patients, personnel, or visitors and include those with an active disease, those incubating a disease, and chronic carriers of a disease. Another reservoir for potentially infectious microbes is a person's own normal flora (microorganisms that normally live on the skin and other areas of the human body).

Contaminated articles and equipment can be a major source of infectious agents. The ability of these inanimate objects to transmit infectious agents depends upon the amount of contamination, the **viability** or ability of the microbe to survive on the object, the **virulence** or degree to which the microbe is capable of causing disease, and the amount of time that has passed since the item was contaminated. For example, HBV, the virus that causes hepatitis B, is much more virulent than human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), the virus that causes AIDS, because a smaller amount of infective material is capable of causing disease. It is also more viable because it is capable of surviving longer on surfaces than HIV. However, if enough time

Figure 3-2 N95 respirator. (Courtesy of 3M Occupational Health and Environmental Safety Division. St. Paul, MN.)

elapses from the time of contamination until contact by a susceptible host, it is no longer alive and therefore unable to transmit disease.

Exit Pathway

An exit pathway is a way an infectious agent is able to leave a reservoir host. Infectious agents can exit a reservoir host in secretions from the eyes, nose, or mouth; exudates from wounds; tissue specimens; blood from venipuncture and skin puncture sites; and excretions of feces and urine.

Means of Transmission

The means of transmission is the method an infectious agent uses to travel from a reservoir to a susceptible individual. Means of infection transmission include **airborne, contact, droplet, vector,** and **vehicle.** The same microbe can be transmitted by more than one route.

Airborne Transmission

Airborne transmission involves dispersal of infectious agents that can remain infective for long periods of time in particles that are typically less than 5 μm in diameter and can be inhaled, such as droplet nuclei (residue of evaporated droplets). The particles, generated by sneezing, coughing, talking and activities that produce aerosols, can remain suspended in the air or in dust particles and become widely dispersed and eventually inhaled by susceptible individuals. Patients with airborne infections require **airborne infection isolation rooms (AIIRs)** that have special air handling and ventilation. Anyone who enters an AIIR should wear a **National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH)** certified N95 (N category, 95% efficiency) or higher-level respirator (Fig. 3-2).

Test your knowledge of Key Points with WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 3-1.

KEY POINT *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* rubeola virus, and varicella virus are examples of infectious agents spread by airborne transmission.

Contact Transmission

Contact transmission is the most common means of transmitting infection. There are two types of contact transmission: direct and indirect. **Direct contact transmission** is the physical transfer of an infectious agent to a susceptible host through close or intimate contact such as touching or kissing. **Indirect contact transmission** can occur when a susceptible host touches contaminated objects such as patient bed linens, clothing, dressings, and eating utensils. It includes contact with phlebotomy equipment such as gloves, needles, specimen tubes, testing equipment, and trays. It also includes less obvious contaminated objects such as countertops,

computer keyboards, phones, pens, pencils, doorknobs, and faucet handles. The transfer of infectious agents from contaminated hands to a susceptible host is also considered indirect contact transmission.

Inanimate objects that can harbor material containing infectious agents are called ***fomites*** *(fo'mi-tez).*

Droplet Transmission

Droplet transmission is the transfer of an infectious agent to the mucous membranes of the mouth, nose, or conjunctiva of the eyes of a susceptible individual via infectious droplets (particles 5 μm in diameter or larger) generated by coughing, sneezing, or talking or through procedures such as suctioning or throat swab collection.

KEY POINT Droplet transmission differs from airborne transmission in that droplets normally travel less than 10 feet and do not remain suspended in the air.

Vector Transmission

Vector transmission is the transfer of an infectious agent carried by an insect, arthropod, or animal. Examples of vector transmission include the transmission of West Nile virus by mosquitoes and bubonic plague (*Yersinia pestis*) by rodent fleas.

Vehicle Transmission

Vehicle transmission is the transmission of an infectious agent through contaminated food, water, or drugs. Examples of vehicle transmission are *Salmonella* infection from handling contaminated chicken and *Shigella* infection from drinking contaminated water.

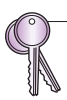
KEY POINT The transmission of hepatitis viruses and HIV through blood transfusion is also considered vehicle transmission.

Entry Pathway

The entry pathway is the way an infectious agent is able to enter a susceptible host. Entry pathways include body orifices; mucous membranes of the eyes, nose, or mouth; and breaks in the skin. Patients' entry pathways can be exposed during invasive procedures such as catheterization, venipuncture, fingersticks, and heel puncture. Entry pathways of healthcare personnel can be exposed during spills and splashes of infectious specimens or created by needlesticks and injuries from other sharp objects.

Susceptible Host

A **susceptible host** is someone with a decreased ability to resist infection. Factors that affect susceptibility include age, health, and immune status. For example, newborns are more susceptible to infection because their immune systems are still forming, and the elderly are more susceptible because their immune systems weaken with age. Disease, antibiotic treatment, immunosuppressive drugs, and procedures such as surgery, anesthesia, and insertion of catheters can all leave a patient more susceptible to infection. A healthy person who has received a vaccination against an infection with a particular virus or recovered from one has developed antibodies against that virus and is considered to be **immune,** or unlikely to develop the disease.



KEY POINT Individuals who are exposed to the hepatitis B virus (HBV) are less likely to contract the disease if they have previously completed an HBV vaccination series.

BOX 3-2 EXAMPLES OF WAYS TO BREAK THE CHAIN OF INFECTION

- Effective hand hygiene procedures
- Good nutrition, adequate rest, and reduction of stress
- Immunization against common pathogens
- Insect and rodent control
- Isolation procedures
- Proper decontamination of surfaces and instruments
- Proper disposal of sharps and infectious waste
- Use of gloves, gowns, masks, respirators, and other personal protective equipment (PPE) when indicated
- Use of needle safety devices during blood collection

A microorganism that primarily infects individuals with weakened immune systems is called an opportunist. One classic opportunist that is becoming more and more of a threat is a type of bacterium called Acinetobacter baumannii. *It is found most commonly in hospitals, infecting the chronically ill, the elderly, patients with HIV, and transplant patients.*

BREAKING THE CHAIN OF INFECTION

Breaking the chain of infection involves stopping infections at the source, preventing contact with substances from exit pathways, eliminating means of transmission, blocking exposure to entry pathways, and reducing or eliminating the susceptibility of potential hosts. Examples of ways to break the chain and prevent infections are shown in Box 3-2.

INFECTION-CONTROL PROGRAMS

The **Joint Commission** requires every healthcare institution to have an infection-control program responsible for protecting patients, employees, visitors, and anyone doing business within healthcare institutions from infection. A typical infection-control program implements procedures aimed at breaking the chain of infection, monitors and collects data on all infections occurring within the institution, and institutes special precautions in the event of outbreaks of specific infections.

Employee Screening and Immunization

An important way in which infection-control programs prevent infection is through employee screening and immunization programs. Screening for infectious diseases typically takes place prior to or upon employment and on a regular basis throughout employment. Screening commonly includes tuberculosis (TB) testing, also called purified protein derivative (PPD) testing. Employees with positive TB test results receive chest x-ray evaluations to determine their status. Screening may also include rapid plasma reagin (RPR) testing for syphilis and screening for diarrhea and skin diseases. Employees with certain conditions or infections may be subject to work restrictions. (Conditions requiring work restrictions are listed in Appendix D.) Immunizations typically required include current hepatitis B virus (HBV); measles, mumps, rubella (MMR); diphtheria; and tetanus vaccinations or proof of immunity. Most employers provide vaccinations free of charge.

KEY POINT OSHA regulations require employers to offer HBV vaccine free of charge to employees whose duties involve risk of exposure.

Evaluation and Treatment

An infection-control program also provides for the evaluation and treatment of employees who are exposed to infections on the job. This includes OSHA-mandated confidential medical evaluation, treatment, counseling, and follow-up as a result of exposure to blood-borne pathogens.

BOX 3-3 SITUATIONS THAT REQUIRE HAND HYGIENE PROCEDURES

- Before and after each patient contact
- Between unrelated procedures on a patient such as wound care and drawing blood
- Before putting on gloves and after taking them off
- Before leaving the laboratory
- Before going to lunch or on break
- Before and after going to the restroom
- Whenever hands become visibly or knowingly contaminated

Surveillance

Another major function of an infection-control program is surveillance, or monitoring. This involves monitoring patients and employees at risk of acquiring infections as well as collecting and evaluating data on infections contracted by patients and employees. Infection-control measures are updated and new policies instituted based on this information.

The CDC has developed the National Surveillance System for Healthcare Workers (NASH) to collaborate with healthcare facilities in the collection of information important in preventing occupational exposure and infection among healthcare workers.

INFECTION CONTROL METHODS

Hand Hygiene

Hand hygiene is one of the most important means of preventing the spread of infection provided that it is achieved properly and when required. Hand hygiene measures include the frequent use of antiseptic hand cleaners or hand washing, depending upon the degree of contamination. It is important that all healthcare personnel learn proper hand hygiene procedures and recognize situations when they should be performed. Box 3-3 lists situations that require hand hygiene procedures.

KEY POINT As part of the CDC Guidelines for Hand Hygiene in Health Care Settings, it is recommended that artificial fingernails or extenders not be worn when having direct contact with high-risk patients, such as infants or those in ICU. Natural nails should preferably be less than 1/4 inch long.

Use of Alcohol-Based Antiseptic Hand Cleaners

CDC/HICPAC guidelines recommend the use of alcohol-based antiseptic hand cleaners (gels, foams, and rinses) in place of hand washing as long as the hands are not visibly soiled. These products have been shown to have superior **microbiocidal** (destructive to microbes) activity. Sufficient cleaner must be used to cover all surfaces of the hands, including between the fingers, and the alcohol must be allowed to evaporate to achieve proper antisepsis.

KEY POINT If hands are heavily contaminated with organic material and hand-washing facilities are not available, it is recommended that hands be cleaned with detergent-containing wipes, followed by the use of an alcohol-based antiseptic hand cleaner.

Test your knowledge of proper hand-washing procedure with WORKBOOK Skills Drill 3-3.

Hand Washing

There are different methods of hand washing, depending on the degree of contamination and the level of antimicrobial activity required. A routine hand-washing procedure uses plain soap and water to mechanically remove soil and transient bacteria. Hand antisepsis requires the use of an antimicrobial soap to remove, kill, or inhibit transient microorganisms. A 2-minute surgical hand scrub uses an antimicrobial soap or equivalent to remove or destroy transient microorganisms and reduce levels of normal flora prior to surgical procedures. Proper routine hand-washing procedure is described in Procedure 3-1.

Personal Protective Equipment

View the Donning and Removal of Protective Equipment video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Protective clothing and other items worn by an individual to protect mucous membranes, airways, skin and clothing from contact with infectious substances is called **personal protective equipment (PPE).** PPE provides a barrier against infection. Used properly, it protects those wearing it. Disposed of properly, it prevents spread of infection to others. PPE includes the following.

View the Hand Washing/Hand Antisepsis video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 3-1 Hand-Washing Technique

PURPOSE: Decontaminate hands to prevent the spread of infection

EQUIPMENT: Liquid soap, disposable towels, trash can

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Stand back so that you do not touch the sink.	The sink may be contaminated.
2. Turn on the faucet and wet hands under warm running water.	Water should not be too hot or too cold and hands should be wet before applying soap to minimize drying, chapping, or cracking of hands from frequent hand washing.
3. Apply soap and work up a lather.	A good lather is needed to reach all surfaces.
4. Scrub all surfaces, including between the fingers and around the knuckles.	Scrubbing is necessary to dislodge micro-organisms from surfaces, especially between fingers and around knuckles.
5. Rub your hands together vigorously.	Friction helps loosen dead skin, dirt, debris, and microorganisms. (Steps 4 and 5 should take at least 15 seconds, about the time it takes to sing the ABCs).

PROCEDURE 3-1 Hand-Washing Technique (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
6. Rinse your hands in a downward motion from wrists to fingertips.	Rinsing with the hands downward allows contaminants to be flushed from the hands and fingers into the sink rather than flowing back up the arm or wrist.
7. Dry hands with a clean paper towel.	Hands must be dried thoroughly and gently to prevent chapping or cracking. Reusable towels can be a source of contamination.
8. Use a clean paper towel to turn off the faucet unless it is foot or motion activated.	Clean hands should not touch contaminated faucet handles.

Images from Molle EA, Kronenberger J, West-Stack C. *Lippincott Williams & Wilkins Clinical Medical Assisting*, 2nd ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.

Gloves

Clean, nonsterile gloves are worn when collecting or handling blood and other body fluids, handling contaminated items, and touching nonintact skin or mucous membranes. Gloves should be pulled over the cuffs of gowns or lab coats to provide adequate protection. Three main reasons for wearing gloves are as follows:

- To prevent contamination of the hands when handling blood or body fluids or when touching mucous membranes or nonintact skin
- To reduce the chance of transmitting organisms on the hands of personnel to patients during invasive or other procedures that involve touching a patient's skin or mucous membranes
- To minimize the possibility of transmitting infectious microorganisms from one patient to another

KEY POINT Wearing gloves during phlebotomy procedures is mandated by the OSHA blood-borne pathogens standard.

Proper Glove Removal

After use, gloves should be removed promptly in an aseptic manner and discarded. To remove gloves properly (Fig. 3-3), grasp one glove at the wrist and pull it inside out and off the hand, ending up with it in the palm of the still-gloved hand. Slip fingers of the ungloved hand under the second glove at the wrist and pull it off the hand, ending with one glove inside the other with the contaminated surfaces inside. Hands should be sanitized immediately after glove removal and before going to another patient.

Gowns

Clean, nonsterile, fluid-resistant gowns are worn by healthcare personnel to protect the skin and prevent soiling of clothing during patient-care activities in which splashes or sprays of blood or body fluids are possible or when entering isolation rooms (see Isolation Procedures, below). Sterile gowns are also worn to protect certain patients (such as newborns and patients with compromised immune systems) from contaminants on the healthcare worker's clothing. Most gowns are made of disposable cloth or paper, are generous in size to adequately cover clothing, have long sleeves with knit cuffs, and fasten in the back.

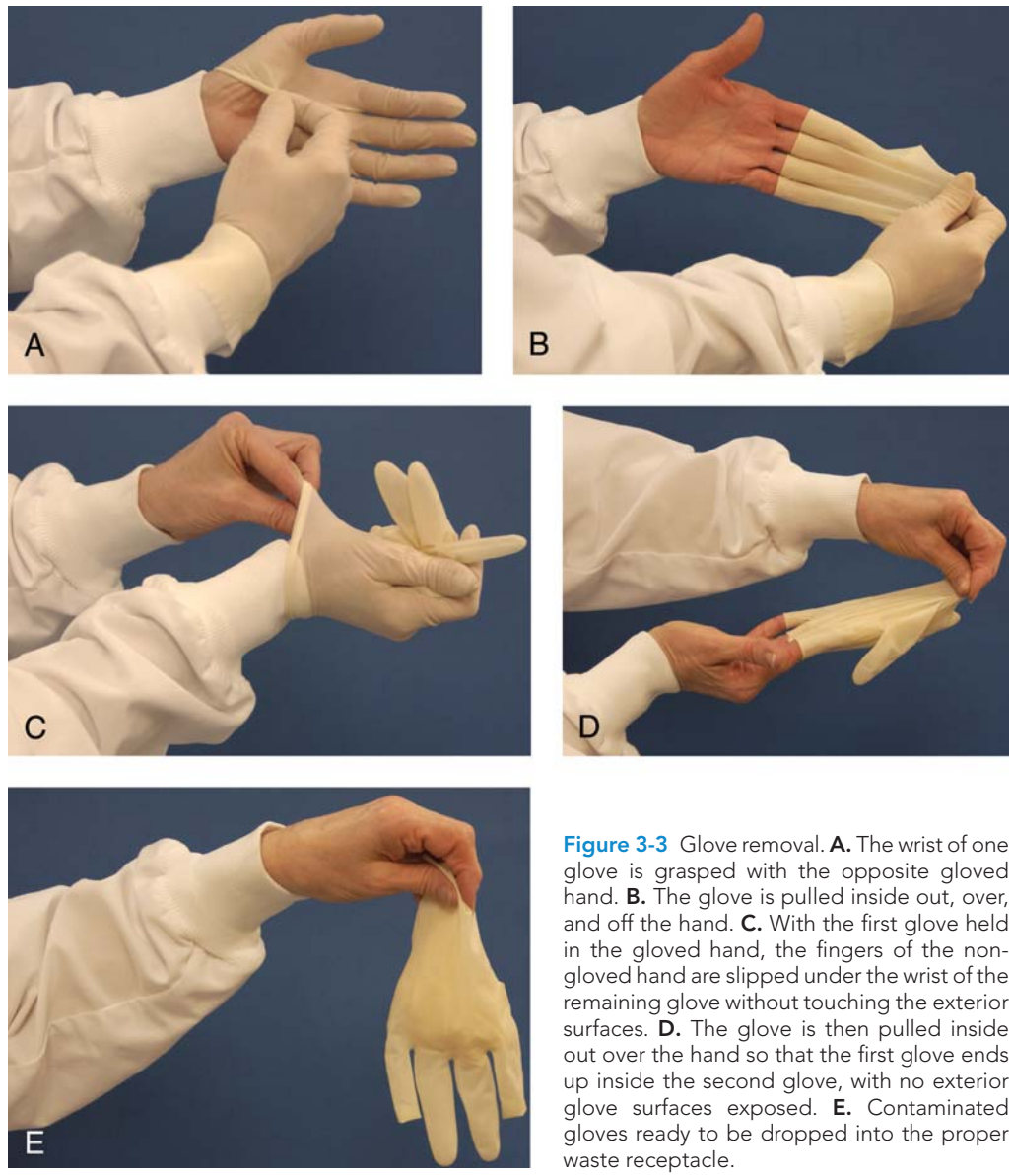


Figure 3-3 Glove removal. **A.** The wrist of one glove is grasped with the opposite gloved hand. **B.** The glove is pulled inside out, over, and off the hand. **C.** With the first glove held in the gloved hand, the fingers of the non-gloved hand are slipped under the wrist of the remaining glove without touching the exterior surfaces. **D.** The glove is then pulled inside out over the hand so that the first glove ends up inside the second glove, with no exterior glove surfaces exposed. **E.** Contaminated gloves ready to be dropped into the proper waste receptacle.

Putting On and Removing Gowns

When putting on a gown, only inside surfaces of the gown should be touched. A properly worn gown has the sleeves pulled all the way to the wrist, the belt tied, and the gown overlapped, completely closed, and securely fastened. A gown is removed from the inside by sliding the arms out of the sleeves. The gown is then held away from the body, folded with the contaminated outside surface on the inside, and rolled into a bundle for disposal.

Lab Coats

Lab coats, like gowns, are worn to protect skin and prevent soiling of healthcare workers' clothing during patient-care activities in which splashes or sprays of blood or body fluids are possible. They are required attire for most phlebotomy situations. Lab coats used for specimen collection and handling are generally made of fluid-resistant cotton or synthetic material, have long sleeves with knit cuffs, and come in both reusable and disposable styles.

Masks, Face Shields, and Goggles

A mask is worn to protect against droplets generated by coughing or sneezing. To put on a mask, place it over your nose and mouth. Adjust the metal band (if applicable) to fit snugly over your nose. For masks with ties, fasten the top ties around the upper portion of your head; then tie the lower ones at the back of your neck. If the mask has elastic fasteners, slip them around your ears. A face shield or a mask and goggles are worn to protect the eyes, nose, and mouth from splashes or sprays of body fluids. If an activity requires goggles, it also requires a mask. Some masks have plastic eye shields attached.

Respirators

NIOSH-approved N95 respirators are required when entering rooms of patients with pulmonary tuberculosis and other diseases with airborne transmission. Respirators must fit snugly with no air leaks (see Airborne Transmission, below).

Putting On and Removing Protective Clothing

See the Donning and Removal of Protective Equipment video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

When putting on complete protective clothing such as gown, mask, and gloves, the gown is put on first (Fig. 3-4A). The mask is put on next, making certain it covers the nose and mouth (Fig. 3-4B). Gloves are put on last and pulled over the cuffs of the gown (Fig. 3-4C).

Protective clothing is removed at the door before leaving the patient room or anteroom. It must be removed in an aseptic (sterile or pathogen free) manner to prevent contamination of the wearer. Gloves are removed first, being careful not to touch contaminated surfaces with

Figure 3-4 Protective clothing. **A.** Phlebotomist slips arms into a protective gown. **B.** A mask is applied by slipping the elastic band over the ears. **C.** Gloves are put on last and pulled over the gown cuffs.

ungloved hands. The gown is removed next, pulling it from the shoulders toward the hands so that it turns inside out. It must be held away from the body and rolled into a bundle before discarding. The mask is removed last touching only the strings. Hands must then be immediately decontaminated.

Nursery and Neonatal ICU Infection-Control Technique

Newborns are more susceptible to infections than healthy older children and adults because their immune systems are not yet fully developed. Consequently, anyone who enters the nursery or other neonatal unit should use special infection-control techniques. Most neonatal units have a separate anteroom where hand washing, gowning, and so forth are performed before entering. Typical nursery and neonatal ICU infection-control technique includes the following:

- Wash hands and put on clean gloves, gown, and mask.
- Gather only those items necessary to perform the specimen collection.
- Leave the blood collection tray in the anteroom outside the nursery.
- Remove gloves, decontaminate hands, and put on new gloves between each patient.

ISOLATION PROCEDURES

One way in which an infection-control program minimizes the spread of infection is through the establishment of **isolation procedures.** Isolation procedures separate patients with certain transmissible infections from contact with other patients and limit their contact with hospital personnel and visitors. Isolating a patient requires a doctor's order and is implemented either to prevent the spread of infection from a patient who has or is suspected of having a contagious disease or to protect a patient whose immune system is compromised. Patients are most commonly isolated in a private room. A card or sign indicating the type of isolation along with a description of required precautions is typically posted on the patient's door. A cart containing supplies needed to enter the room or care for the patient is typically placed in the hall outside the door.

CAUTION: Different types of isolation require the use of different types of personal protective equipment. The best thing to do before entering an isolation room is to follow the directions on the precaution sign on the door or check with the patient's nurse if instructed to do so.

Protective/Reverse Isolation

Protective or **reverse isolation** is used for patients who are highly susceptible to infections. In this type of isolation, protective measures are taken to keep healthcare workers and others from transmitting infection to the patient rather than vice versa. Patients who may require protective isolation include those with suppressed or compromised immune function, such as burn patients, organ transplant patients, AIDS patients, and neutropenic (having a low neutrophil count) chemotherapy patients.

FYI *A neutrophil is a type of white blood cell.*

Traditional Isolation Systems

At one time, the CDC recommended either of two types of isolation systems: the category-specific system and the disease-specific system. The category-specific system had seven different isolation categories covering many diseases and often resulted in overisolation of patients and needless extra costs. The disease-specific system was based on the modes of transmission of common diseases. A chart listed the diseases and identified specific isolation precautions recommended for each. A diagnosis or suspicion of the presence of a transmissible disease was needed to institute either system.

Universal Precautions

Isolation practices were altered dramatically in 1985, when the CDC introduced a strategy called **universal precautions** (UP) after reports of healthcare workers being infected with HIV through needlesticks and other exposures to HIV-contaminated blood. UP replaced blood/body fluid precautions and were followed for all isolation categories. Under UP, the blood and certain body fluids of *all* individuals were considered potentially infectious. The introduction of UP changed the focus of infection control from prevention of patient-to-patient infection transmission, to prevention of patient-to-personnel transmission, and was a required part of an overall infection control plan.

Body Substance Isolation

Because infection transmission can occur before a diagnosis is made or even suspected, another system called **body substance isolation** (BSI) gained acceptance. BSI incorporated elements of disease-specific and category-specific precautions and was followed for *every* patient without need for a diagnosis or suspicion of a transmissible disease. BSI went beyond universal precautions by requiring that gloves be worn when contacting *any* moist body substance.

Guideline for Isolation Precautions

Widespread variation in the use of UP or BSI, confusion over which body fluids required precautions, lack of agreement on the importance of hand washing after glove use, and the need for additional precautions to prevent transmission of infectious agents in addition to blood-borne pathogens led to a new guideline issued jointly by the CDC and HICPAC.

This guideline, which is still in effect, but has since been updated and expanded to include precautions for preventing transmission of infectious agents in all healthcare settings, contains two tiers of precautions. The first tier, **standard precautions,** specifies precautions to use in caring for all patients regardless of diagnosis or presumed infection status. The second tier, **transmission-based precautions,** specifies precautions to use for patients either suspected or known to be infected with certain pathogens transmitted by airborne, droplet, or contact routes. The guideline also lists specific clinical conditions that are highly suspicious for infection and specifies appropriate transmission-based precautions to use for each, in addition to standard precautions, until a diagnosis can be made.

Standard Precautions

Standard precautions (Fig. 3-5) are to be used in the care of all patients and are meant to be the number-one strategy for successful nosocomial infection control. They combine the major features of UP and BSI to minimize the risk of infection transmission from both recognized and unrecognized sources. Standard precautions apply to blood, *all* body fluids (including all secretions and excretions except sweat, whether or not they contain visible blood), nonintact skin, and mucous membranes.

KEY POINT The updated isolation precaution guideline added respiratory hygiene/cough etiquette as a new standard precaution. This precaution applies to all who enter a healthcare setting and includes covering the mouth and nose with tissue when coughing, prompt disposal of used tissues, hand hygiene after contact with respiratory secretions, and 3 feet of separation from persons with respiratory infections.

Transmission-Based Precautions

Transmission-based precautions are to be used for patients known or suspected to be infected or colonized with highly transmissible or epidemiologically (related to the study of epidemics) significant pathogens that require special precautions in addition to standard precautions. Table 3-1 lists clinical conditions that warrant transmission-based precautions pending diagnosis. Common diseases and conditions that require transmission-based precautions are listed in Table 3-2. Precautions may be combined for diseases that have more than one means of transmission. There are three types of transmission-based precautions:

- **Airborne precautions** (Fig. 3-6) or the equivalent, which must be used in addition to standard precautions for patients known or suspected to be infected with microorganisms transmitted by airborne droplet nuclei (particles smaller than 5 μm)

STANDARD PRECAUTIONS
FOR INFECTION CONTROL
Assume that every person is potentially infected or colonized with an organism that could be transmitted in the healthcare setting.
Hand Hygiene
Avoid unnecessary touching of surfaces in close proximity to the patient.
When hands are visibly dirty, contaminated with proteinaceous material, or visibly soiled with blood or body fluids, wash hands with soap and water.
If hands are not visibly soiled, or after removing visible material with soap and water, decontaminate hands with an alcohol-based hand rub. Alternatively, hands may be washed with an antimicrobial soap and water.
Perform hand hygiene:
Before having direct contact with patients.
After contact with blood, body fluids or excretions, mucous membranes, nonintact skin, or wound dressings.
After contact with a patient's intact skin (e.g., when taking a pulse or blood pressure or lifting a patient).
If hands will be moving from a contaminated body site to a clean body site during patient care.
After contact with inanimate objects (including medical equipment) in the immediate vicinity of the patient.
After removing gloves.
Personal protective equipment (PPE)
Wear PPE when the nature of the anticipated patient interaction indicates that contact with blood or body fluids may occur.
Before leaving the patient's room or cubicle, remove and discard PPE.
Gloves
Wear gloves when contact with blood or other potentially infectious materials, mucous membranes, nonintact skin, or potentially contaminated intact skin (e.g., of a patient incontinent of stool or urine) could occur.
Remove gloves after contact with a patient and/or the surrounding environment using proper technique to prevent hand contamination. Do not wear the same pair of gloves for the care of more than one patient.
Change gloves during patient care if the hands will move from a contaminated body site (e.g., perineal area) to a clean body site (e.g., face).
Gowns
Wear a gown to protect skin and prevent soiling or contamination of clothing during procedures and patient-care activities when contact with blood, body fluids, secretions, or excretions is anticipated.
Wear a gown for direct patient contact if the patient has uncontained secretions or excretions.
Remove gown and perform hand hygiene before leaving patient's environment.
Mouth, nose, eye protection
Use PPE to protect the mucous membranes of the eyes, nose and mouth during procedures and patient-care activities that are likely to generate splashes or sprays of blood, body fluids, secretions and excretions.
During aerosol-generating procedures wear one of the following: a face shield that fully covers the front and sides of the face, a mask with attached shield, or a mask and goggles.
Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette
Educate healthcare personnel to contain respiratory secretions to prevent droplet and fomite transmission of respiratory pathogens, especially during seasonal outbreaks of viral respiratory tract infections.
Offer masks to coughing patients and other symptomatic persons (e.g., persons who accompany ill patients) upon entry into the facility.
Patient-Care equipment and instruments/devices
Wear PPE (e.g., gloves, gown), according to the level of anticipated contamination, when handling patient-care equipment and instruments/devices that are visibly soiled or may have been in contact with blood or body fluids.
Care of the environment
Include multi-use electronic equipment in policies and procedures for preventing contamination and for cleaning and disinfection, especially those items that are used by patients, those used during delivery of patient care, and mobile devices that are moved in and out of patient rooms frequently (e.g., daily).
Textiles and laundry
Handle used textiles and fabrics with minimum agitation to avoid contamination of air, surfaces and persons.
SPR7 · ©2007 Brevis Corporation · www.brevis.com

Figure 3-5 Standard precautions sign. (Courtesy Brevis Corp., Salt Lake City, UT.)

TABLE 3-1 Clinical Conditions Warranting Transmission-Based Precautions Pending Confirmation of Diagnosis

Condition	Potential Pathogen	Precaution
Diarrhea		
Acute diarrhea with a likely infectious cause in an incontinent or diapered patient	Enteric pathogen	Contact
Diarrhea in an adult with a history of broad-spectrum or long-term antibiotics	*Clostridium Difficile*	Contact
Meningitis	*Neisseria meningitidis*	Droplet
Rash for Inflamed Skin Eruptions		
Petechial/ecchymotic with fever	*Neisseria meningitidis*	Droplet
Vesicular	Varicella	Airborne and contact
Maculopapular	Rubeola (measles)	Airborne
Respiratory Infections		
Cough/fever/upper lobe pulmonary infiltrate in an HIV-negative patient and a patient at low risk for HIV infection	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	Airborne
Cough/fever/pulmonary infiltrate in any lung location in an HIV-infected patient and at high risk for HIV infection	*M. tuberculosis*	Airborne
Paroxysmal or severe persistent cough during periods of pertussis activity	*Bordetella pertussis*	Droplet
Respiratory infections, particularly bronchiolitis and croup, in infants and young children	Respiratory syncytial virus or parainfluenza virus	Contact
Risk of Multidrug-Resistant Microorganisms		
History of infection or colonization with multidrug-resistant organisms	Resistant bacteria	Contact
Skin, wound, or urinary tract infection in a patient with a recent hospital or nursing home stay in a facility where multidrug-resistant organisms are prevalent	Resistant bacteria	Contact
Skin or Wound Infection		
Abscess or draining wound that cannot be covered	*Staphylococcus aureus* Group A streptococcus	Contact

TABLE 3-2 Transmission-Based Precautions for Common Diseases and Conditions

Airborne Precautions	Droplet Precautions	Contact Precautions
Herpes zoster (shingles)*	Adenovirus infection**	Adenovirus infection**
Measles (rubeola)	Diphtheria (pharyngeal)	Cellulitis (uncontrolled drainage)
Pulmonary tuberculosis	*Haemophilus influenzae meningitis*	*Clostridium difficile*
Varicella (chickenpox)	Influenza Meningococcal pneumonia Meningococcal sepsis Mumps (infectious parotitis) *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* *Neisseria meningitidis* Parvovirus B19 Pertussis (whooping cough) Pneumonic plague Rubella (German measles) Scarlet fever**	Conjunctivitis (acute viral) Decubitus ulcer (infected, major) Diphtheria (cutaneous) Enteroviral infections* Herpes zoster (shingles)* Impetigo Parainfluenza virus Pediculosis (lice) Respiratory syncytial virus Rubella (congenital) Scabies Varicella (chickenpox)

*Widely disseminated or in immunocompromised patients.
**Infants and children only.

AIRBORNE PRECAUTIONS
(in addition to Standard Precautions)
STOP VISITORS: Report to nurse before entering.
Use Airborne Precautions as recommended for patients known or suspected to be infected with infectious agents transmitted person-to-person by the airborne route (e.g., M. tuberculosis, measles, chickenpox, disseminated herpes zoster).
Patient Placement
Place patients in an AIIR (Airborne Infection isolation Room).
Monitor air pressure daily with visual indicators (e.g., flutter strips).
Keep door closed when not required for entry and exit.
In ambulatory settings, instruct patients with a known or suspected airborne infection to wear a surgical mask and observe Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette.
Once in an AIIR, the mask may be removed.
Patient Transport
Limit transport and movement of patients to medically necessary purposes.
If transport or movement outside an AIIR is necessary, instruct patients to wear a surgical mask, if possible, and observe Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette.
Hand Hygiene
according to Standard Precautions
Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)
Wear a fit-tested NIOSH-approved N95 or higher level respirator for respiratory protection when entering the room of a patient when the following diseases are suspected or confirmed: Listed on back.
APR7 · ©2007 Brevis Corporation · www.brevis.com

Figure 3-6 Airborne precautions sign. (Courtesy Brevis Corp., Salt Lake City, UT.)

- **Droplet precautions** (Fig. 3-7) or the equivalent, which must be used in addition to standard precautions for patients known or suspected to be infected with microorganisms transmitted by droplets (particles larger than 5 μm), generated when a patient talks, coughs, or sneezes and during certain procedures such as suctioning
- **Contact precautions** (Fig. 3-8) or the equivalent, which must be used in addition to standard precautions when a patient is known or suspected to be infected or colonized with epidemiologically important microorganisms that can be transmitted by direct contact with the patient or indirect contact with surfaces or patient-care items.

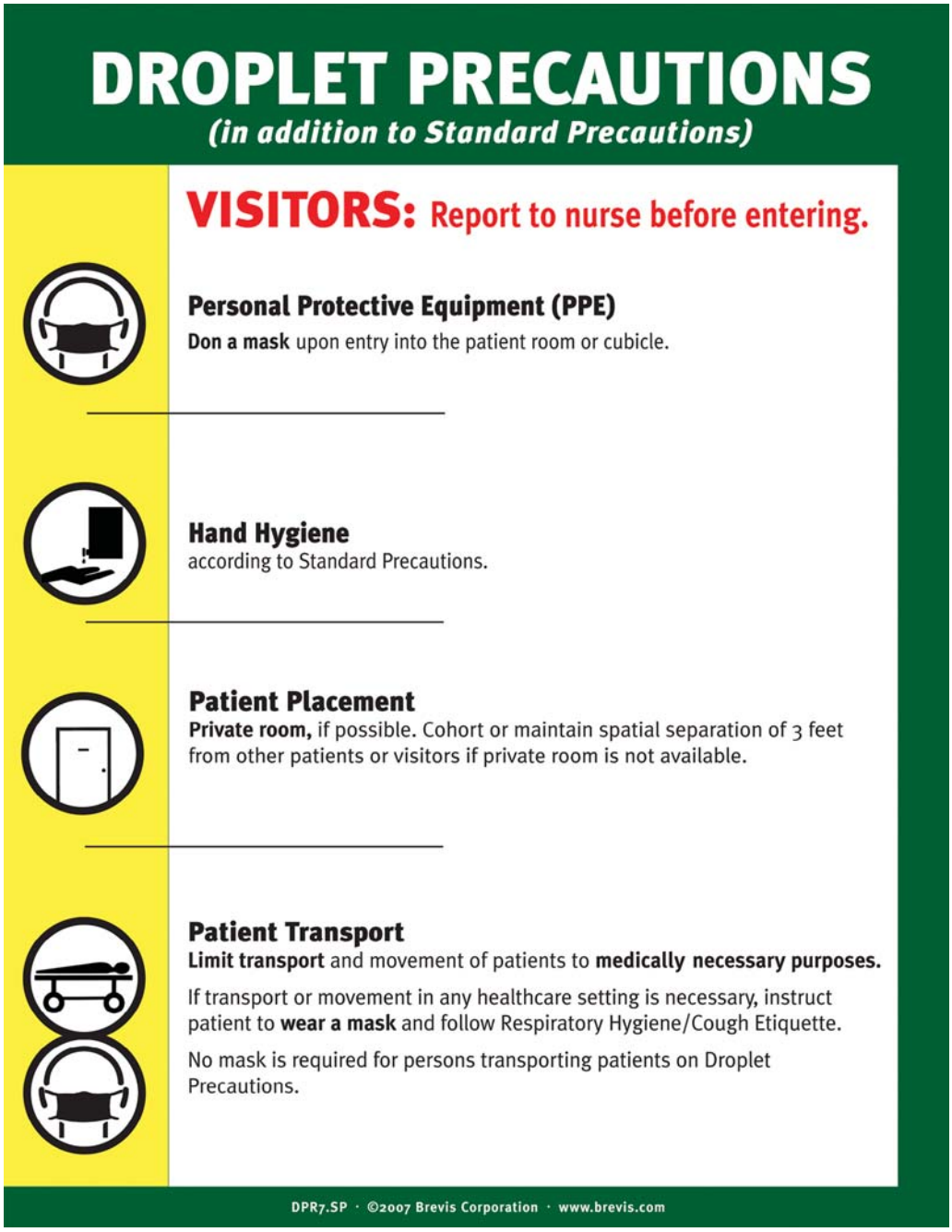

DROPLET PRECAUTIONS
(in addition to Standard Precautions)
VISITORS: Report to nurse before entering.
Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)
Don a mask upon entry into the patient room or cubicle.
Hand Hygiene
according to Standard Precautions.
Patient Placement
Private room, if possible. Cohort or maintain spatial separation of 3 feet from other patients or visitors if private room is not available.
Patient Transport
Limit transport and movement of patients to medically necessary purposes.
If transport or movement in any healthcare setting is necessary, instruct patient to wear a mask and follow Respiratory Hygiene/Cough Etiquette.
No mask is required for persons transporting patients on Droplet Precautions.
DPR7.SP · ©2007 Brevis Corporation · www.brevis.com

Figure 3-7 Droplet precautions sign. (Courtesy Brevis Corp., Salt Lake City, UT.)

Safety

Providing quality care in an environment that is safe for employees as well as patients is a concern that is foremost in the minds of healthcare providers. Safe working conditions must be ensured by employers as mandated by the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and enforced by the **Occupational Safety and Health Administration** (**OSHA**). Even so, biological, electrical, radiation, and chemical hazards are encountered in a healthcare setting, often on a daily basis. It is important for the phlebotomist to be aware of the existence of hazards and know the safety precautions and rules necessary to eliminate or minimize them. General lab safety rules are listed in Box 3-4. Safety rules to follow when in patient rooms and other patient areas are listed in Box 3-5.

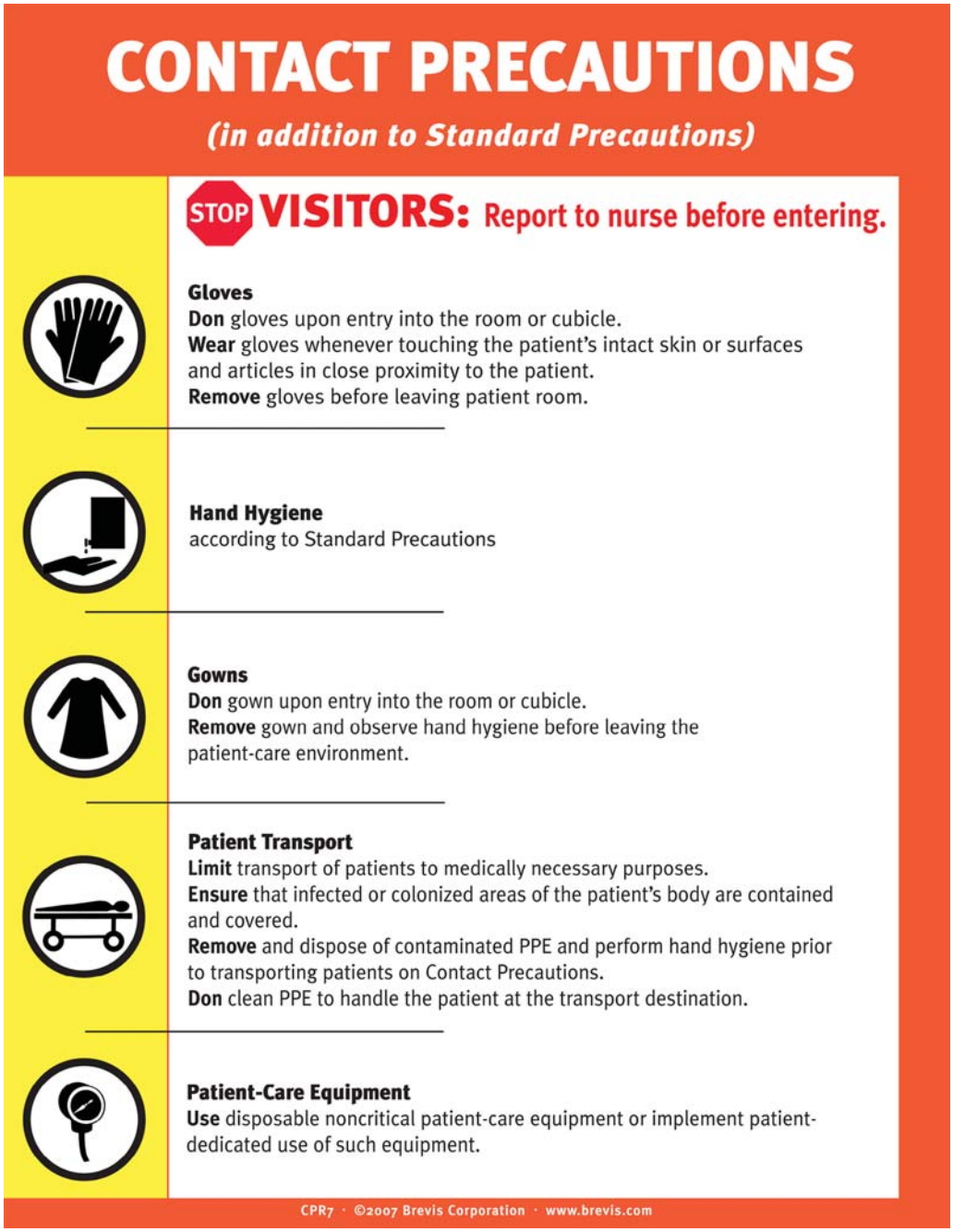

CONTACT PRECAUTIONS
(in addition to Standard Precautions)
STOP VISITORS: Report to nurse before entering.
Gloves
Don gloves upon entry into the room or cubicle.
Wear gloves whenever touching the patient's intact skin or surfaces and articles in close proximity to the patient.
Remove gloves before leaving patient room.
Hand Hygiene
according to Standard Precautions
Gowns
Don gown upon entry into the room or cubicle.
Remove gown and observe hand hygiene before leaving the patient-care environment.
Patient Transport
Limit transport of patients to medically necessary purposes.
Ensure that infected or colonized areas of the patient's body are contained and covered.
Remove and dispose of contaminated PPE and perform hand hygiene prior to transporting patients on Contact Precautions.
Don clean PPE to handle the patient at the transport destination.
Patient-Care Equipment
Use disposable noncritical patient-care equipment or implement patient-dedicated use of such equipment.
CPR7 · ©2007 Brevis Corporation · www.brevis.com

Figure 3-8 Contact precautions sign. (Courtesy Brevis Corp., Salt Lake City, UT.)

BIOSAFETY

Biosafety is a term used to describe the safe handling of biological substances that pose a risk to health. Biological hazards can be encountered in a healthcare setting on a daily basis. Healthcare personnel must be able to recognize them in order to take the precautions necessary to eliminate or minimize exposure to them.

Have some fun finding biohazard exposure route terms in the WORKBOOK scrambled words drill.

Biohazard

Anything harmful or potentially harmful to health is called a **biohazard** (short for biological hazard) and should be identified by a **biohazard symbol** (Fig. 3-9). Because most laboratory specimens have the potential to contain infectious agents, they are considered biohazards.

BOX 3-4 GENERAL LABORATORY SAFETY RULES

- *Never* eat, drink, smoke, or chew gum in the laboratory. *Never* put pencils or pens in the mouth.
- *Never* place food or beverages in a refrigerator used for storing reagents or specimens.
- *Never* apply cosmetics, handle contact lenses, or rub eyes in the laboratory.
- *Never* wear long chains, large or dangling earrings, or loose bracelets.
- *Always* wear a fully buttoned lab coat when engaged in lab activities. *Never* wear a lab coat to lunch, on break, or when leaving the lab to go home. *Never* wear personal protective equipment outside the designated area for its use.
- *Always* tie back hair that is longer than shoulder length.
- *Always* keep finger nails short and well manicured. *Do not* wear nail polish or artificial nails. *Never* bite nails or cuticles.
- *Always* wear a face shield when performing specimen processing or any activity that might generate a splash or aerosol of bodily fluids.
- *Always* wear gloves for phlebotomy procedures and when processing specimens.

Biohazard Exposure Routes

There are many routes by which healthcare workers can be exposed to biohazards. Ingestion is probably the most easily recognized, but routes other than the digestive tract, referred to as **parenteral** (par-en'ter-al) routes, can also result in biohazard exposure. The most common biohazard exposure routes are as follows.

Airborne

Biohazards can become airborne and inhaled when splashes, aerosols, or fumes are generated. Aerosols and splashes can be created when specimens are centrifuged, when tube stoppers are removed, and when specimen aliquots are being prepared. Dangerous fumes can be created if chemicals are improperly stored, mixed, or handled. Patients with airborne diseases can transmit infection to workers unless N95 respirators are worn when caring for them. Protection against airborne biohazard exposure includes following safe handling practices, wearing appropriate PPE, and working behind safety shields or splash guards.

BOX 3-5 SAFETY RULES WHEN IN PATIENT ROOMS AND OTHER PATIENT AREAS

- Avoid running. It is alarming to patients and visitors and may cause an accident.
- Be careful entering and exiting patient rooms; housekeeping equipment, dietary carts, x-ray machines, and other types of equipment may be just inside the door or outside in the hall.
- Do not touch electrical equipment in patient rooms while drawing blood. Electrical shock can pass through a phlebotomist and the needle and shock the patient.
- Follow standard precautions when handling specimens.
- Properly dispose of used and contaminated specimen collection supplies and return all other equipment to the collection tray before leaving the patient's room.
- Replace bedrails that were let down during patient procedures.
- Report infiltrated IVs or other IV problems to nursing personnel.
- Report unresponsive patients to nursing personnel.
- Report unusual odors to nursing personnel.
- Watch out for and report food, liquid, and other items spilled on the floor to appropriate personnel.

Figure 3-9 The biohazard symbol.

Ingestion

Biohazards can be ingested if healthcare workers neglect to sanitize hands before handling food, gum, candy, cigarettes, or drinks. Other activities that can lead to ingestion of biohazards include covering the mouth with hands instead of tissue when coughing or sneezing, biting nails, chewing on pens or pencils, and licking fingers when turning pages in books. Frequent hand sanitization, avoiding hand-to-mouth activities, and refraining from holding items in the mouth or chewing on them provides the best defense against accidental ingestion of biohazardous substances.

Nonintact Skin

Biohazards can enter the body through visible and invisible pre-existing breaks in the skin such as abrasions, burns, cuts, scratches, sores, dermatitis, and chapped skin. Defects in the skin should be covered with waterproof (nonpermeable) bandages to prevent contamination, even when gloves are worn.

Percutaneous

Percutaneous (through the skin) exposure to biohazardous microorganisms in blood or body fluid occurs through intact (unbroken) skin as a result of accidental needlesticks and injuries from other sharps including broken glass and specimen tubes. Ways to reduce the chance of percutaneous exposure include using needle safety devices properly, wearing heavy-duty utility gloves when cleaning up broken glass, and never handling broken glass with the hands.

See how well you know your airborne and bloodborne pathogens with WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 3-6.

Permucosal

Permucosal (through mucous membranes) exposure occurs when infectious microorganisms and other biohazards enter the body through the mucous membranes of the mouth and nose and the conjunctiva of the eyes in droplets generated by sneezing or coughing, splashes, and aerosols and by rubbing or touching the eyes, nose, or mouth with contaminated hands. The chance of permucosal exposure can be reduced by following procedures to prevent exposure to splashes and aerosols and avoiding rubbing or touching the eyes, nose, or mouth.

Blood-Borne Pathogen

The term **blood-borne pathogen** (BBP) is applied to any infectious microorganism present in blood and other body fluids and tissues. Such pathogens, which can be present in a patient's body fluids even if there are no symptoms of disease, are among the most significant biohazards faced by healthcare workers. Although HBV, HCV, and HIV tend to receive the most attention, BBPs include other hepatitis viruses; cytomegalovirus (CMV); the microorganisms that cause syphilis, malaria, and relapsing fever; the agent that causes Creutzfeldt–Jakob disease; and more recently, WEST NILE virus.

HBV and Hepatitis D Virus

Hepatitis B (once called serum hepatitis) is caused by HBV, a potentially life-threatening blood-borne pathogen that targets the liver. (*Hepatitis* means "inflammation of the liver.") It has been the most frequently occurring laboratory-associated infection and the major occupational hazard in the healthcare industry, although the rate of infection has dropped

substantially since the advent of HBV immunization programs in the 1980s. Anyone infected with HBV is at risk of also acquiring hepatitis D (delta) virus (HDV), which is a defective virus that can multiply only in the presence of HBV.

HBV Vaccination

The best defense against HBV infection is vaccination. Vaccination consists of a series of three equal intramuscular injections of vaccine: an initial dose, a second dose 1 month after the first, and a third dose 6 months following the initial dose. The vaccine also protects against HDV since it can only be contracted concurrently with HBV infection. Success of immunization and proof of immunity can be determined 1 to 2 months after the last vaccination dose by a blood test that detects the presence of the hepatitis B surface antibody (anti-HBs) in the person's serum. OSHA requires employers to offer the vaccine free to employees within 10 working days of being assigned to duties with potential BBP exposure. Employees who refuse the vaccination must sign and date a declination (statement of refusal) form, which is kept in their personnel file.

The most commonly used hepatitis B vaccine does not contain live virus and poses no risk of transmitting HBV, which was a problem of earlier vaccines.

HBV Exposure Hazards

HBV can be present in blood and other body fluids such as urine, semen, cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), and saliva. It can survive up to a week in dried blood on work surfaces, equipment, telephones, and other objects. In a healthcare setting, it is primarily transmitted through needlesticks (a single needlestick can transmit HBV) and other sharps injuries and contact with contaminated equipment, objects, surfaces, aerosols, spills, and splashes. In nonmedical settings, it is transmitted primarily through sexual contact and sharing of dirty needles.

Symptoms of HBV Infection

HBV symptoms resemble flu symptoms but generally last longer. They include fatigue; loss of appetite; mild fever; muscle, joint, and abdominal pain; nausea; and vomiting. Jaundice appears in about 25% of cases. About 50% of those infected show no symptoms. Some individuals become carriers who can pass the disease on to others. Carriers have an increased risk of developing cirrhosis of the liver and liver cancer. Infection is confirmed by detection of hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) in an individual's serum.

Hepatitis C Virus (HCV)

Hepatitis C, caused by infection with HCV, has become the most widespread chronic bloodborne illness in the United States. The virus, discovered in 1988 by molecular cloning, was found to be the primary cause of non-A, non-B hepatitis. No vaccine is currently available.

HCV Exposure Hazards

HCV is found primarily in blood and serum, less frequently in saliva, and seldom in urine and semen. It can enter the body in the same manner as HBV. However, infection primarily occurs after large or multiple exposures. As in the case of HBV, sexual contact and needle sharing are the primary means of transmission in nonmedical settings.

Symptoms of HCV Infection

HCV symptoms are similar to those of HBV infection, although only 25% to 30% of infections even cause symptoms. As with HBV, chronic and carrier states exist that can lead to cirrhosis of the liver and liver cancer. In fact, HCV infection is a leading indication for liver transplantation.

Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)

HIV attacks the body's immune system, causing AIDS by leaving the body susceptible to opportunistic infections. Opportunistic infections are caused by organisms that would not ordinarily be pathogens to a normal healthy individual. HIV infection has a poor prognosis and is of great concern to healthcare workers.

KEY POINT Although the incidence of work-related HIV infection is relatively low, CDC studies have shown that phlebotomy procedures were involved in approximately 50% of the HIV exposures that have occurred so far in healthcare settings.

HIV Exposure Hazards

HIV has been isolated from blood, semen, saliva, tears, urine, cerebrospinal fluid, amniotic fluid, breast milk, cervical secretions, and tissue of infected persons. The risk to healthcare workers, however, is primarily through exposure to blood. HIV can enter the body through all the same routes as the hepatitis viruses.

Symptoms of HIV Infection

The incubation phase of HIV infection is thought to range from a few weeks up to a year or more. Initial symptoms are mild to severe flu-like symptoms. During this phase, the virus enters the T lymphocytes (T lymphs or helper T cells), triggering them to produce multiple copies of the virus. The virus then enters a seemingly inactive incubation phase while hiding in the T lymphs. Certain conditions reactivate the virus, which slowly destroys the T lymphs. Once the T lymph count is reduced to 200 or fewer per milliliter of blood, the patient is officially diagnosed as having AIDS, the third and final phase of infection. In this phase, the immune system deteriorates significantly and opportunistic infections take hold. Two symptoms of AIDS are hairy leukoplakia, a white lesion on the tongue, and Kaposi's sarcoma, a cancer of the capillaries that produces bluish-red nodules on the skin. End stages of AIDS are characterized by deterioration of the nervous system leading to neurological symptoms and dementia.

OSHA Standard for Blood-Borne Pathogens

The OSHA **Blood-borne Pathogens Standard** was promulgated (put into force) when it was concluded that healthcare employees face a serious health risk from occupational exposure to blood and other body fluids and tissues. Enforcement of the standard, which is mandated by federal law, is meant to reduce or not eliminate occupational exposure to BBPs. The standard requires implementation of **engineering controls** and **work practice controls** to prevent exposure incidents, availability and use of PPE, special training, medical surveillance, and the availability of vaccination against HBV for all at risk employees.

KEY POINT Engineering controls are devices that isolate or remove a BBP hazard. Work practice controls are practices that change the way tasks are performed to reduce the likelihood of BBP exposure.

The BBP standard was revised in 2001 to conform to the **Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act** passed by Congress and signed into law in November 2000. The act directed OSHA to revise the BBP standard in the following four key areas:

- Revision and updating of the exposure control plan
- Solicitation of employee input in selecting engineering and work practice controls
- Modification of definitions relating to engineering controls
- New record-keeping requirements

Exposure Control Plan

To comply with the OSHA standard, employers must have a written exposure control plan. The plan must be reviewed and updated at least annually to document the evaluation and

BOX 3-6 KEY ELEMENTS OF AN EXPOSURE CONTROL PLAN

1. An exposure determination: A list of all job categories and tasks with potential BBP exposure
2. Methods of implementation and compliance including:
   - A *universal precautions statement* requiring all employees to observe UP or the equivalent.
   - *Engineering controls,* such as sharps disposal containers, self-sheathing needles, sharps with engineered sharps injury protections, and needleless systems that isolate or remove the BBP hazard.
   - *Work practice controls* that reduce likelihood of exposure by altering the way tasks are performed. Examples include policies that require hand washing after glove removal and prohibit eating, drinking, smoking, or applying cosmetics in laboratory work areas.
   - *PPE or barrier protection devices* such as gloves, gowns, lab coats, aprons, face shields, masks, and resuscitation mouthpieces that minimize the risk of BBP infection. Disposable PPE and laundry service for reusable PPE must be provided to the employee at no cost.
   - *Housekeeping schedule and methods* that require decontamination of work surfaces at least once a day and after any contact with blood or other potentially infectious material with 1:10 bleach solution or other EPA-approved disinfectant.
3. Hepatitis B vaccine and postexposure follow-up procedures.
4. Communication of hazards to employees in the form of:
   - *Warning labels and signs* attached to containers of potentially infectious material, including refrigerators and freezers where infectious material may be stored. Labels must be predominantly fluorescent orange or orange–red, containing a biohazard symbol and the word "biohazard." Red bags or containers may be substituted for labels.
   - *BBP training and information* provided to employees at no cost and during working hours when first assigned to tasks with risk of exposure. A copy of the BBP standard and an explanation of its contents readily available to employees. Provision for annual training within 1 year of initial training.
5. Record keeping requirements:
   - *Medical records:* A requirement for the employer to maintain confidential medical records on each employee with occupational exposure. Records must include the employee's name, social security number, and HBV vaccination status.
   - *Training records:* A requirement for the employer to maintain records of training sessions that include the content, the qualifications of persons conducting them, and the names and titles of persons attending.
   - *Sharps injury log:* A requirement for the employer to keep a log of injuries from contaminated sharps. The log entry should include where and how the incident occurred, and the type and brand of device involved. Information recorded must protect employee confidentiality.

implementation of safer medical devices. Nonmanagerial employees with risk of exposure must be involved in the identification, review, and selection of engineering and work practice controls and their participation must be documented. Key elements of an exposure control plan are shown in Box 3-6.

BBP Exposure Routes

Occupational exposure to blood-borne pathogens can occur if any of the following happens while a healthcare worker is performing his or her duties.

- The skin is pierced by a contaminated needle or sharp object.
- Blood or other body fluid splashes into the eyes, nose, or mouth.
- Blood or other body fluid comes in contact with a cut, scratch, or abrasion.
- A human bite breaks the skin.

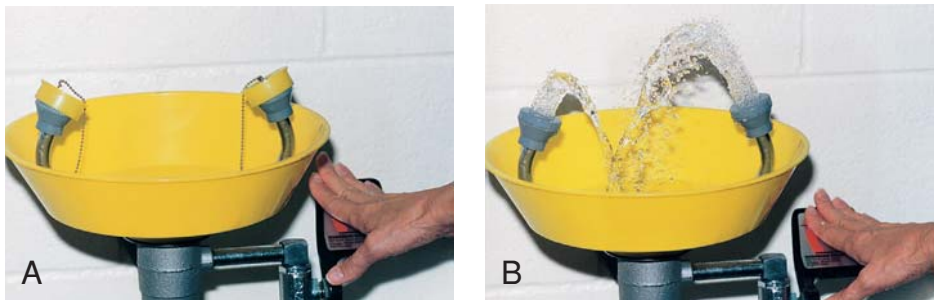


Figure 3-10 Eyewash basin. **A.** Press the lever at the right side of the basin. **B.** The stream of water forces the caps from the nozzles. Lower your face and eyes into the stream and continue to wash the area until the eyes are clear. (Reprinted with permission from Kronenberger J. *Lippincott Williams and Wilkins' Comprehensive Medical Assisting,* 3rd ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.)

Exposure Incident Procedure

An exposure incident requires immediate attention for the most promising outcome in the event that the exposure involves a BBP. The immediate response by the employee in the event of an exposure incident includes the following:

- Needlestick or other sharps injury: Carefully remove shards of glass or other objects that may be embedded in the wound and wash the site with soap and water for a minimum of 30 seconds.

KEY POINT There is currently no scientific evidence that squeezing the wound or cleaning with an antiseptic reduces the transmission of BBPs. Cleaning with bleach or other caustic agents is not recommended.

- Mucous membrane exposure: Flush the site (i.e., eyes, nose, or mouth) with water or sterile saline for a minimum of 10 minutes. Use an eyewash station (Fig. 3-10) if available to adequately flush a splash to the eyes. Remove contact lenses as soon as possible and disinfect them before reuse or discard.
- Report the incident to the immediate supervisor.
- Report directly to a licensed healthcare provider for a medical evaluation, treatment if required, and counseling (see Box 3-7 for key elements of a postexposure medical evaluation.)

KEY POINT Free confidential medical evaluation following an exposure incident is required by OSHA regulations. If postexposure treatment is recommended, it should be started as soon as possible.

BOX 3-7 KEY ELEMENTS OF A POSTEXPOSURE MEDICAL EVALUATION

The employee's blood is tested for HIV in an accredited laboratory.

The source patient's blood is tested for HIV and HBV, with the patient's permission.

- If the source patient refuses testing, is HBV-positive, or is in a high-risk category, the employee may be given immune globulin or an HBV vaccination.
- If the source patient is HIV-positive, the employee is counseled and tested for HIV infection immediately and at periodic intervals, normally 6 weeks, 12 weeks, 6 months, and 1 year after exposure.

The employee may be given azidothymidine (AZT) or other HIV therapy.

The exposed employee is counseled to be alert for acute retroviral syndrome (acute viral symptoms) within 12 weeks of exposure.

Surface Decontamination

OSHA requires surfaces in specimen collection and processing areas to be decontaminated by cleaning them with a 1:10 bleach solution or other disinfectant approved by the **Environmental Protection Agency** (EPA). Bleach solutions should be prepared daily. Cleaning must take place at the end of each shift or whenever a surface is visibly contaminated. Gloves should be worn when cleaning.

Cleanup of Body Fluid Spills

Special EPA-approved chemical solutions and kits are available for cleanup of blood and other body fluid spills and for disinfecting surfaces. Gloves must be worn during the cleaning process. Cleanup procedures, which vary slightly depending upon the type and size of spill (see Procedure 3-2, below), should concentrate on absorbing the material without spreading it over a wider area than the original spill. Disposable cleanup materials must be discarded in a biohazard waste container. Reusable cleanup materials should be properly disinfected after use.

Biohazard Waste Disposal

Nonreusable items contaminated with blood or body fluids are biohazardous waste and must be disposed of in special containers or bags marked with a biohazard symbol. Filled biohazard waste containers require special handling prior to decontamination and disposal. OSHA, EPA, and state and local agencies regulate biohazard waste disposal.

ELECTRICAL SAFETY

Fire and electrical shock are potential hazards associated with the use of electrical equipment. Knowledge of the proper use, maintenance, and servicing of electrical equipment such as centrifuges can minimize hazards associated with their use. Box 3-8 contains guidelines for electrical safety.

PROCEDURE 3-2 Cleanup Procedures for Blood and Other Body Fluid Spills

Type of Spill	Cleanup Procedure
Small spill (a few drops)	Carefully absorb spill with a paper towel or similar material Discard material in biohazard waste container Clean area with appropriate disinfectant
Large spill	Use a special clay or chlorine-based powder to absorb or gel (thicken) the liquid Scoop or sweep up absorbed or thickened material Discard material in a biohazard waste container Wipe spill area with appropriate disinfectant
Dried spills	Moisten spill with disinfectant (avoid scraping, which could disperse infectious organisms into the air) Absorb spill with paper towels or similar material Discard material in biohazard waste container Clean area with appropriate disinfectant
Spills involving broken glass	Wear heavy-duty utility gloves (Never handle broken glass with your hands) Scoop or sweep up material Discard in biohazard sharps container Clean area with appropriate disinfectant

BOX 3-8 ELECTRICAL SAFETY

- *Avoid* the use of extension cords.
- *Do not* attempt to make repairs to equipment if you are not trained to do so.
- *Do not* handle electrical equipment with wet hands or when standing on a wet floor.
- *Do not* overload electrical circuits.
- *Do not* touch electrical equipment in patient rooms, especially when in the process of drawing blood. An electrical shock could pass through the phlebotomist and the needle and shock the patient.
- Inspect cords and plugs for breaks and fraying. Make cetain all electrical cords have three-prong plugs and that the third prong (grounding prong) is functional.
- Know the location of the circuit breaker box.
- Unplug and do not use equipment that is malfunctioning.
- Unplug equipment that has had liquid spilled in it. Do not plug in again until the spill has been cleaned up and you are certain the wiring is dry.
- Unplug equipment when you are servicing it, including when you are replacing a light bulb.

Actions to Take if Electrical Shock Occurs

- Shut off the source of electricity.
- If the source of electricity cannot be shut off, use nonconducting material (e.g., hand inside a glass beaker) to remove the source of electricity from the victim.
- Call for medical assistance.
- Start cardiopulmonary resuscitation if indicated.
- Keep the victim warm.

Fire Safety

All employees of any institution should be aware of procedures to follow in case of fire. They should know where fire extinguishers are located and how to use them. They should know where the fire blankets (Fig. 3-11) are kept and how to use them or heavy toweling to smother clothing fires. They should know the location of emergency exits and be familiar with evacuation routes. Fire spreads rapidly and it is important for employees to know the basics of what to do and also what not to do if a fire occurs so they can react quickly and appropriately. Box 3-9 lists dos and don'ts to follow if a fire occurs.

Figure 3-11 Fire blanket storage box.

BOX 3-9 FIRE SAFETY DOS AND DON'TS

- Do pull the nearest fire alarm.
- Do call the fire department.
- Do attempt to extinguish a small fire.
- Do close all doors and windows if leaving the area.
- Do smother a clothing fire with a fire blanket or have the person roll on the floor in an attempt to smother the fire.
- Do crawl to the nearest exit if there is heavy smoke present.
- Don't panic.
- Don't run.
- Don't use elevators.

Fire Components

Test your classes of fire knowledge and express your creativity with color. Do WORKBOOK Matching Exercise 3-3.

Four components, present at the same time, are necessary for fire to occur. Three of the components, *fuel* (combustible material), *heat* to raise the temperature of the material until it ignites or catches fire, and *oxygen* to maintain combustion or burning have traditionally been referred to as the fire triangle. The fourth component, the chemical reaction that produces fire, actually creates a **fire tetrahedron** (Fig. 3-12), the latest way of looking at the chemistry of fire. Basic fire safety involves keeping the components apart to prevent fire or removing one or more of the components when there is a fire to extinguish it. Fire extinguishers put out fires by removing one or more components. There are different types of fire extinguishers, depending on the class of fire involved.

Classes of Fire

Five classes of fire are now recognized by the **National Fire Protection Association** (NFPA). Classification is based on the fuel source of the fire. The five classes are as follows:

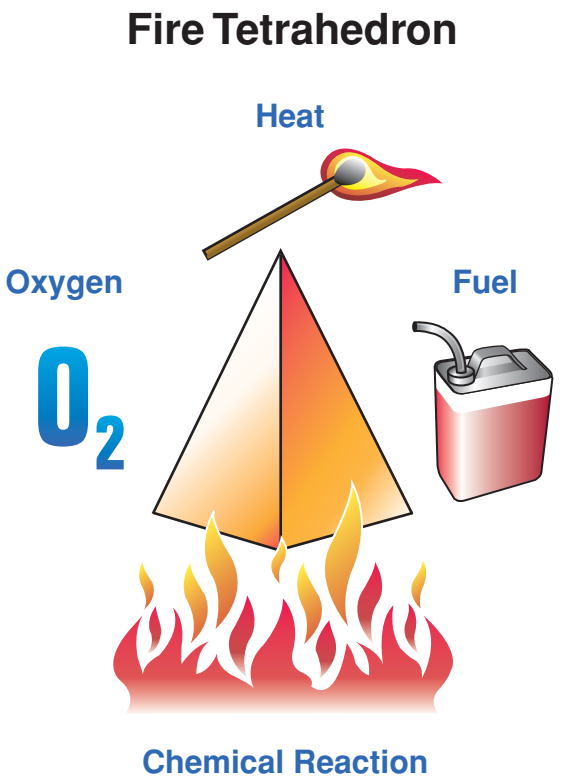


Figure 3-12 Fire tetrahedron.

- *Class A* fires occur with ordinary combustible materials, such as wood, papers, or clothing, and require water or water-based solutions to cool or quench the fire to extinguish it.
- *Class B* fires occur with flammable liquids and vapors, such as paint, oil, grease, or gasoline, and require blocking the source of oxygen or smothering the fuel to extinguish.
- *Class C* fires occur with electrical equipment and require nonconducting agents to extinguish.
- *Class D* fires occur with combustible or reactive metals, such as sodium, potassium, magnesium, and lithium, and require dry powder agents or sand to extinguish (they are the most difficult fires to control and frequently lead to explosions).
- *Class K* fires occur with high-temperature cooking oils, grease, or fats and require agents that prevent splashing and cool the fire as well as smother it.

Memory Jogger The following will help you remember each fire classification.

- Class A fires occur with ordinary combustible materials; emphasize the "a" when saying the word "ordinary."
- Class B fires occur with flammable liquids; emphasize the "b" when saying the word "flammable."
- Class C fires are electrical fires; emphasize the "c" when saying the word "electrical."
- Class D fires: These occur with combustible or reactive metals, so keep in mind that when you say the word "metal" quickly, it sounds like "medal," which has a "d" in it, and medals are commonly made of metal.
- Class K fires: Keep in mind that they occur with cooking oils or fats in kitchens, which begins with a "k."

Fire Extinguishers

There is a fire extinguisher class (Fig. 3-13) that corresponds to each class of fire except class D. Class D fires present unique problems and are best left to firefighting personnel to extinguish. Using the wrong type of fire extinguisher on a fire can be dangerous. Consequently, some fire extinguishers are multipurpose to eliminate the confusion of having several different types of extinguishers. Multipurpose extinguishers are the type most frequently used in healthcare institutions. Common fire extinguisher classes and how they typically work are as follows:

- *Class A extinguishers* use soda and acid or water to cool the fire.
- *Class B extinguishers* use foam, dry chemical, or carbon dioxide to smother the fire.
- *Class C extinguishers* use dry chemical, carbon dioxide, Halon, or other nonconducting agents to smother the fire.
- *Class ABC (multipurpose) extinguishers* use dry chemical reagents to smother the fire. They can be used on class A, B, and C fires.
- *Class K extinguishers* use a potassium-based alkaline liquid specifically formulated to fight high-temperature grease, oil, or fat fires by cooling and smothering them without splashing. Some class K extinguishers can also be used on class A, B, and C fires.

Memory Jogger The NFPA code word for the order of action in the event of fire is RACE, where the letters stand for the following:

R = *Rescue* individuals in danger.
A = *Alarm:* activate the fire alarm.
C = *Confine* the fire by closing all doors and windows.
E = *Extinguish* the fire with the nearest suitable fire extinguisher.

CLASS & SYMBOL	INTENDED USE	ICON	TYPE OF EXTINGUISHER	OPERATION
A Ordinary Combustibles	Fires involving ordinary combustible materials such as cloth, wood, rubber, paper, and many plastics.		A Water; AB Foam; ABC Dry chemical	PULL PIN
B Flammable Liquids	Fires involving flammable liquids and vapors, such as grease, gasoline, oil, and oil-based paints.		AB Foam; ABC Dry chemical; BC Dry chemical	AIM NOZZLE
C Electrical Equipment	Fires involving electrical equipment such as appliances, tools, or other equipment that is plugged into an electricity source.		BC Carbon dioxide; ABC Dry chemical; BC Dry chemical	SQUEEZE TRIGGER
D Combustible Metals	Fires involving combustible, reactive, or flammable metals.		D Dry powder	
K Cooking Oils	Fires involving high temperature cooking oils, grease or fat such as vegetable oils, animal oils, or fats typically found in commercial kitchens.		K Potassium-based alkaline liquid	SWEEP NOZZLE

Figure 3-13 Classes of fire extinguishers. (Symbols reprinted with permission from NFPA 10, Portable Fire Extinguishers, Copyright © 2007, Nationl Fire Protection Association. This reprinted material is not the complete and official position of the NFPA on the referenced subject, which is represented only by the standard in its entirety.)

RADIATION SAFETY

The principles involved in radiation exposure are *distance*, *shielding*, and *time*. This means that the amount of radiation you are exposed to depends upon how far you are from the source of radioactivity, what protection you have from it, and how long you are exposed to it. Exposure time is important because radiation effects are cumulative.

KEY POINT Those working in areas where there may be high levels of radioactivity are required to wear a dosimeter badge, which records accumulated radiation exposure. Badge readings must be checked by the appropriate authority at regular intervals.

A clearly posted **radiation hazard symbol** (Fig. 3-14) is required in areas where radioactive materials are used and on cabinet or refrigerator doors where radioactive materials are stored. In addition, radioactive reagents and specimens must be labeled with a radiation

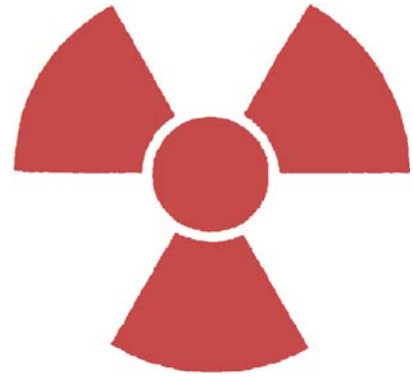


Figure 3-14 The radiation hazard symbol.

hazard symbol. A radiation hazard symbol on a patient's door signifies that a patient has been treated with radioactive isotopes.

A phlebotomist may encounter radiation hazards when collecting specimens from patients who have been injected with radioactive dyes, when collecting specimens from patients in the radiology department or nuclear medicine, and when delivering specimens to radioimmunoassay sections of the laboratory. The phlebotomist should be aware of institutional radiation safety procedures. In addition, the phlebotomist should recognize the radiation hazard symbol and be cautious when entering areas displaying it. Because radiation is particularly hazardous to a fetus, pregnant employees should avoid areas displaying the radiation symbol, patients who have recently been injected with radioactive dyes, and specimens collected from patients while radioactive dye is still in their systems.

CHEMICAL SAFETY

A phlebotomist may come in contact with hazardous chemicals when using cleaning reagents, adding preservatives to 24-hour urine containers, or delivering specimens to the laboratory. Inappropriate use of chemicals can have dangerous consequences. For example, mixing bleach with other cleaning compounds can release dangerous gases. In addition, many chemicals are potent acids, such as the hydrochloric acid (HCl) used as a urine preservative, or alkalis, both of which can cause severe burns. Container labels provide important information regarding the contents and should always be read carefully before use. See Box 3-10 for general chemical safety rules.

CAUTION: An important chemical safety rule to remember when dealing with acids and other liquids is *never* add water or other liquids to an acid, as it can cause an explosive type reaction. If a mixture containing both is to be made, always add the acid to the other liquid.

BOX 3-10 GENERAL RULES FOR CHEMICAL SAFETY

- *Always* wear proper protective clothing—including lab coat, apron, gloves, and safety goggles—when working with chemicals.
- *Always* use proper chemical cleanup materials when cleaning up chemical spills.
- *Never* store chemicals above eye level.
- *Never* add water to acid.
- *Never* indiscriminately mix chemicals together.
- *Never* store chemicals in unlabeled containers.
- *Never* pour chemicals into dirty containers, especially containers previously used to store other chemicals.
- *Never* use chemicals in ways other than their intended use.

Memory Jogger Think of the letters "AAA" to remember the safety rule "always add acid".

OSHA Hazard Communication Standard

OSHA developed the **Hazard Communication (HazCom) Standard** to protect employees who may be exposed to hazardous chemicals. According to the law, all chemicals must be evaluated for health hazards, and all chemicals found to be hazardous must be labeled as such and the information communicated to employees.

KEY POINT The HazCom standard is known as "The Right to Know Law" because of the labeling requirement.

HazCom Labeling Requirements

Although labeling format may vary by company, all chemical manufacturers must comply with labeling requirements set by the Manufacturers Chemical Association. Labels for hazardous chemicals must contain:

- A statement of warning such as "danger" or "poison"
- A statement of the hazard (e.g., toxic, flammable, combustible)
- Precautions to eliminate risk
- First aid measures in the event of a spill or other exposure

Material Safety Data Sheets

The OSHA HazCom standard requires manufacturers to supply **material safety data sheets** (MSDSs) for their products. An MSDS contains general information as well as precautionary and emergency information for the product. Every product with a hazardous warning on the label requires an MSDS to help ensure that it will be used safely and as intended.

KEY POINT Employers are required to obtain an MSDS for every hazardous chemical present in the workplace and to make all MSDS readily accessible to employees.

Department of Transportation Labeling System

Hazardous materials may have additional labels of precaution, including a Department of Transportation (DOT) symbol incorporating a United Nations hazard classification number and symbol (Table 3-3). The DOT labeling system uses a diamond-shaped warning sign (Fig. 3-15)

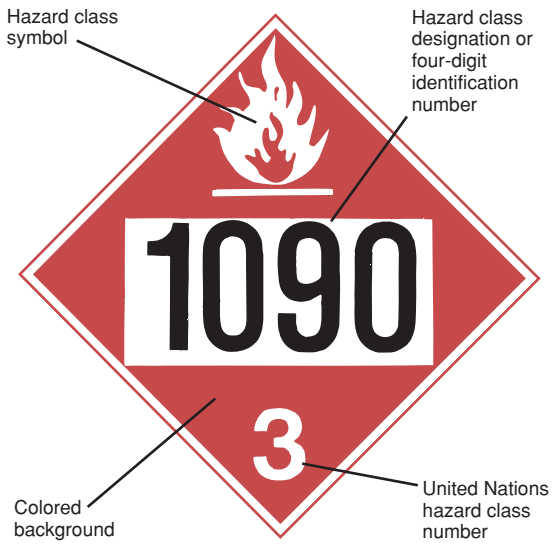
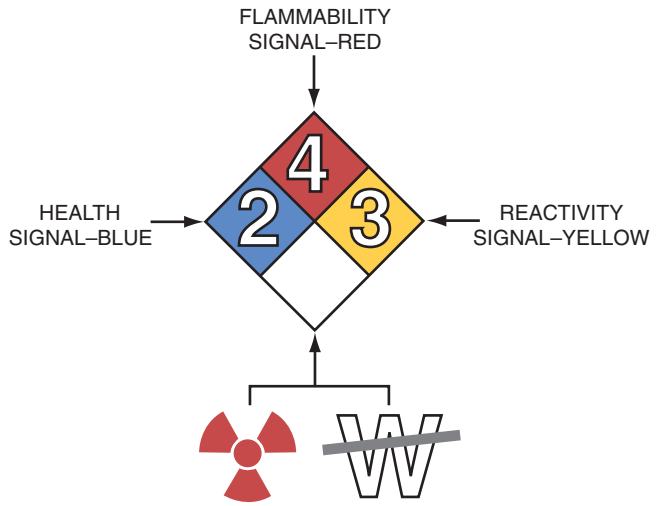


Figure 3-15 Example of DOT hazardous materials labels (flammable, poison, corrosive, etc.). (From Jones SA, Weigel A, White RD, et al., eds. *Advanced Emergency Care for Paramedic Practice.* Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott; 1992.)

TABLE 3-3 United Nations Hazard Classification Numbers and Symbols

United Nations Hazard Class	Symbol	Background Color	Examples
Class 1			
Explosives	Bursting ball	Orange	Fireworks Ammunition Dynamite
Class 2			
Gases (compressed, liquified, or dissolved under pressure)	Flame Cylinder	*Flammable* Red *Nonflammable* Green	Flammable: Butane Propane Nonflammable: Ammonia Chlorine
Class 3			
Flammable liquids	Flame	Red	Brake fluid Camphor oil Glycol ethers Gasoline
Class 4			
Flammable solids or substances	Flame	*Flammable Solid* Red and white vertical stripes	Lithium Magnesium Phosphorus Titanium
Substances that release, flammable gases when in contact with water	Slashed W	*Water-Reactive Materials* Red and white vertical stripes with blue top quadrant	
Class 5			
Division 5.1: oxidizing substances Division 5.2: organic peroxides	Circle with flame	Yellow	Ammonium nitrate Benzoyl peroxide Calcium chlorite
Class 6			
Poisonous and infectious substances	Skull with crossbones	White	Chemical made Pesticides Cyanide AIDS specimens
Class 7			
Radioactive materials	Propeller	Yellow over white	Cobalt 14 Plutonium Radioactive waste Uranium 235
Class 8			
Corrosives	Test tube over hand Test tube over metal	White over black	Caustic potash Caustic soda Hydrochloric acid Sulfuric acid
Class 9			
Miscellaneous dangerous substances referred to as other regulated material (ORM)	ORM-A ORM-B ORM-C ORM-D ORM-E	White	ORM-A: dry ice ORM-B: quick lime ORM-C: sawdust ORM-D: hair spray ORM-E: hazardous waste



Identification of Health Hazard Color Code: **BLUE**		Identification of Flammability Color Code: **RED**		Identification of Reactivity (Stability) Color Code: **YELLOW**	
	Type of possible injury		Susceptibility of materials to burning		Susceptibility to release of energy
SIGNAL		SIGNAL		SIGNAL	
4	Materials that on very short exposure could cause death or major residual injury even though prompt medical treatment was given.	4	Materials that will rapidly or completely vaporize at atmospheric pressure and normal ambient temperature, or that are readily dispersed in air and that will burn readily.	4	Materials that in themselves are readily capable of detonation or of explosive decomposition or reaction at normal temperatures and pressures.
3	Materials that on short exposure could cause serious temporary or residual injury even though prompt medical treatment was given.	3	Liquids and solids that can be ignited under almost all ambient temperature conditions.	3	Materials that in themselves are capable of detonation or explosive reaction but require a strong initiating source or that must be heated under confinement before initiation or that react explosively with water.
2	Materials that on intense or continued exposure could cause temporary incapacitation or possible residual injury unless prompt medical treatment is given.	2	Materials that must be moderately heated or exposed to relatively high ambient temperatures before ignition can occur.	2	Materials that in themselves are normally unstable and readily undergo violent chemical change but do not detonate. Also, materials that may react violently with water or that may form potentially explosive mixtures with water.
1	Materials that on exposure would cause irritation but only minor residual injury even if no treatment is given.	1	Materials that must be preheated before ignition can occur.	1	Materials that in themselves are normally stable, but that can become unstable at elevated temperatures and pressures or that may react with water with some release of energy, but not violently.
0	Materials that on exposure under fire conditions would offer no hazard beyond that of ordinary combustible material.	0	Materials that will not burn.	0	Materials that in themselves are normally stable, even under fire exposure conditions, and that are not reactive with water.

Figure 3-16 National Fire Protection Association 704 marking system example and explanation.

containing the United Nations hazard class number, the hazard class designation or four-digit identification number, and a symbol representing the hazard.

National Fire Protection Association Labeling System

Another hazardous material rating system (Fig. 3-16) was developed by the NFPA to label areas where hazardous chemicals and other materials are stored, thus alerting firefighters in the event of a fire. This system uses a diamond-shaped symbol divided into four quadrants. Health hazards are indicated in a blue diamond on the left, the level of fire hazard is indicated in the upper

Figure 3-17 Combination safety shower and eye wash.

quadrant in a red diamond, stability or reactivity hazards are indicated in a yellow diamond on the right, and other specific hazards are indicated in a white quadrant on the bottom.

Safety Showers and Eyewash Stations

The phlebotomist should know the location of and be instructed in the use of safety showers and eyewash stations (Fig. 3-17) in the event of a chemical spill or splash to the eyes or other body parts. The affected parts should be flushed with water for a minimum of 15 minutes, followed by a visit to the emergency room for evaluation.

Chemical Spill Procedures

Chemical spills require cleanup using special kits (Fig. 3-18) containing absorbent and neutralizer materials. The type of materials used depends upon the type of chemical spilled. An indicator in the cleanup materials detects when the materials have been neutralized and are safe for disposal. The EPA regulates chemical disposal.

Figure 3-18 Spill cleanup kit.

First Aid

The ability to recognize and react quickly and skillfully to emergency situations may mean the difference between life and death for a victim.

Do you know the meaning of the elements that make up the word hemorrhage? Test yourself with WORKBOOK Skills Drill 3-2.

EXTERNAL HEMORRHAGE

According to current American Red Cross guidelines, hemorrhage (abnormal or profuse bleeding) from an obvious wound can be effectively controlled by firmly applying direct pressure to the wound until bleeding stops or EMS rescuers arrive. Pressure should be applied using cloth or gauze, with additional material added if bleeding continues. It is acceptable to use an elastic bandage to hold the compress in place as long as pressure is applied to the bandage. Standard precautions should be followed.

CAUTION: The original compress should not be removed when adding additional ones because removal can disrupt the clotting process.

Previous guidelines added elevating the affected part above the level of the heart and, if efforts to control bleeding were ineffective, use of arterial pressure points. Although not included now, these actions are not considered improper or harmful. Using a tourniquet to control bleeding *can* be harmful and is not recommended. A tourniquet should be used only as a last resort to save a life after all other means to control bleeding are unsuccessful, as may occur with an **avulsion** (a tearing away or amputation of a body part) or a severely mangled or crushed body part.

SHOCK

A state of shock results when there is insufficient return of blood flow to the heart, resulting in an inadequate supply of oxygen to all organs and tissues of the body. Numerous conditions including hemorrhage, heart attack, trauma, and drug reactions can lead to some degree of shock. Because shock can be a life-threatening situation, it is important that the symptoms be recognized and dealt with immediately.

Common Symptoms of Shock

Common symptoms of shock include:

- Pale, cold, clammy skin
- Rapid, weak pulse
- Increased, shallow breathing rate
- Expressionless face and staring eyes

First Aid for Shock

When providing first aid to a victim of shock, be sure to do the following:

1. Maintain an open airway for the victim.
2. Call for assistance.
3. Keep the victim lying down with the head lower than the rest of the body.
4. Attempt to control bleeding or other cause of shock if known.
5. Keep the victim warm until help arrives.

CAUTION: *Never* give fluids if the patient is unconscious or semiconscious or has injuries likely to require surgery and anesthesia.

CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION AND EMERGENCY CARDIOVASCULAR CARE

Most healthcare institutions require their personnel to be certified in cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). Consequently, most phlebotomy programs require it as a prerequisite or corequisite or include it as part of the course. The American Heart Association recommends the 6- to 8-hour Basic Life Support (BLS) Healthcare Provider Course for those in healthcare professions. The course includes instruction in how to perform CPR on victims of all ages, use of an automated external defibrillator (AED), and how to remove a foreign-body airway obstruction. Certification is good for 2 years.

American Heart Association CPR and ECC Guidelines

The latest (2010) American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines for CPR and Emergency Cardiovascular Care (ECC) aim to simplify lay rescuer training, and stress the need for early chest compressions for victims of sudden cardiac arrest. Untrained bystanders are now encouraged to provide Hands-Only™ (compressions only) CPR. Trained lay rescuers, if able, still provide compressions and ventilations; however, the latest guidelines call for them to start chest compressions before opening the airway or initiating rescue breathing. Consequently, the previous ABCs (airway, breathing, compressions) of CPR taught in BLS courses have been replaced with CAB (compressions, airway, breathing), except for CPR on newborns. The guidelines also place increased emphasis on high-quality CPR that includes:

- A compression rate of at least 100 per minute (formerly it was *approximately* 100 per minute
- An adult compression depth of at least 5 cm (2 inches)
- An infant and child compression depth of one third of the anterior-posterior diameter of the chest; approximately 4 cm (1.5 inches) for infants and 5 cm (2 inches) for children
- Allowing complete chest recoil between compressions
- Minimizing interruptions in chest compressions (trying to limit them to less than 10 seconds)
- Avoiding excessive ventilation (BLS single rescuer compression-to-ventilation ratio stays at 30:2)

AHA ECC Adult Chain of Survival

The AHA ECC adult chain of survival is a five-step course of action used to aid victims of sudden cardiac arrest that can optimize their chance of survival and recovery. The links in the chain are:

1. Immediate **recognition** of cardiac arrest and activation of the emergency response system.
2. Early **CPR** with an emphasis on chest compressions
3. Rapid **defibrillation**
4. Effective **advanced life support**
5. Integrated **post-cardiac arrest care**

Personal Wellness

"The doctor of the future will give no medicine but will interest his patients in the care of the human frame, in diet, and in the cause and prevention of disease."

Thomas Edison

Today, many people are striving for personal wellness. A century ago, such a goal was unknown, and people counted themselves lucky just to survive. For example, a person born in 1890 could expect to live only 40 years. Infectious disease took the lives of many, and environmental conditions contributed to the spread of disease. Today, our most serious health threats are chronic illnesses such as heart disease or cancer—diseases that we have the power to prevent. Personal wellness requires a holistic approach, or one that meets the physical, emotional, social, spiritual, and economic needs. It is something almost everyone can have, but achieving it requires knowledge, self-awareness, motivation, and effort.

PERSONAL HYGIENE

Personal wellness starts with good personal hygiene. It is important to shower or bathe and use deodorant on a regular basis. Teeth should be brushed and mouthwash used more than once a day if possible. Hair should be clean and neatly combed. Fingernails should be clean, short, and neatly trimmed. Good personal hygiene communicates a strongly favorable impression about an individual. A fresh, clean appearance without heavily scented lotions or colognes portrays health and instills confidence in employees and their patients and employers as well.

KEY POINT Phlebotomists should pay special attention to personal hygiene not only for optimal health, but also because their job involves close patient contact.

PROPER NUTRITION

"Let thy food be thy medicine, and thy medicine be thy food."
Hippocrates, the father of medicine, 500 B.C.

Nutrition has been defined as the "act or process of nourishing." In other words, a food is nutritious if it supplies the nutrients the body needs "to promote growth and repair and maintain vital processes." The basic purpose of nutrition is to keep us alive, but more importantly, good nutrition provides what the body needs for energy and day-to-day functioning.

Physical health depends on eating well. In this fast-paced world, few of us receive the nutrition we need. Even though what we eat is described as the good American diet, in reality, what we eat is not always nutritious. Our food is often so highly processed and chemically altered that it no longer promotes healthy bodies. The American Institute for Cancer Research (AICR) recently published a recommended diet to reduce the risk of cancer. They suggested that a person choose a predominantly plant-based diet rich in a variety of vegetables, fruits, legumes, and minimally processed starchy staple foods. A healthy diet contains the widest possible variety of natural foods. It provides a good balance of carbohydrates, fat, protein, vitamins, minerals, and fiber.

KEY POINT In general, the amount of food energy (calories) supplied by diet should not exceed the amount of energy expended, so that weight remains relatively constant over time.

REST AND EXERCISE

Personal wellness requires a nutritious diet, exercise, and getting the right amount of rest (Fig. 3-19). Healthcare workers often complain of fatigue (physical or mental exhaustion). Fatigue brought on by physical causes is typically relieved by sleep. Lack of rest and sleep can lead to medical

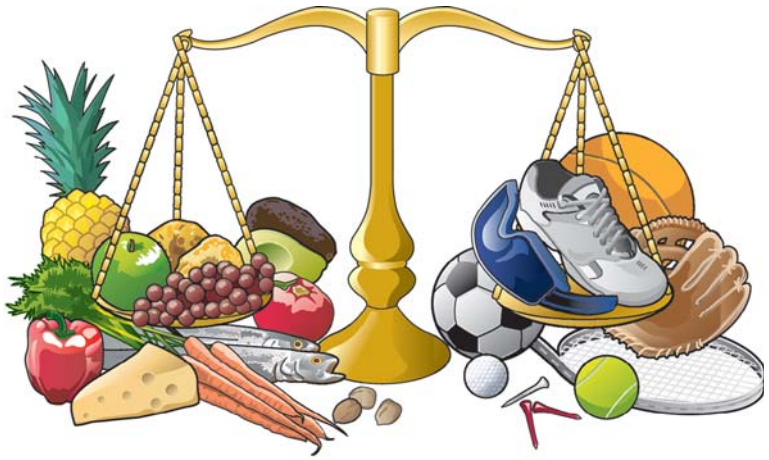


Figure 3-19 Wellness through proper nutrition, exercise, and rest.

problems. The typical frantic pace in healthcare facilities today makes it especially important to get the required hours of sleep and to take breaks during the day to rest, refresh, and stay fit. It is even more inportant in this new decade because there seem to be very few moments of peace, quiet, and relaxation even when one is not at work.

Studies show that being physically fit increases the chance of staying healthy and living longer. The most accurate measurements of fitness consist of three components—strength (the ability to carry, lift, push, or pull a heavy load), flexibility (the ability to bend, stretch, and twist), and endurance (the ability to maintain effort for an extended period of time). No single measurement of performance classifies a person as fit or unfit. If a person becomes breathless after climbing a flight of stairs or hurrying to catch a bus but is otherwise healthy, clearly he or she could benefit from some form of conditioning or exercise.

Exercise contributes to improved quality of life on a day-to-day basis. It strengthens the immune system, increases energy, and reduces stress by releasing substances called endorphins, which create a peaceful state. People who exercise tend to relax more completely, even when under stress. Regular physical activity also appears to reduce symptoms of depression and anxiety and to increase the ability to perform daily tasks. Walking is a form of exercise that can easily be incorporated into almost anyone's life.

KEY POINT If activity during work is low to moderate, AICR recommends that a person take an hour's brisk walk or similar exercise daily because there has been convincing evidence that physical activity helps prevent colon cancer.

Weight training is suggested as an excellent strength exercise. Studies have shown that using weights can build bone mass, even in the very elderly. For flexibility, yoga and Pilates are two forms of exercise that emphasize bending, stretching, and twisting. In choosing an exercise activity, it is most important is to pick one that is enjoyable so that you will be more apt to do it routinely.

View the Poor and Good Workplace Ergonomics for Phlebotomy and Proper Lifting Technique videos at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

BACK PROTECTION

To lead an active and healthy life, you need a healthy back. The spine is designed to withstand everyday movement, including the demands of exercise. Improper lifting and poor posture habits, however, can cause weaknesses. It is estimated that back injuries account for approximately 20% of all workplace injuries and illnesses. Lower back pain is a costly health problem that affects both industry and society in general. Strategies to prevent back injuries include instruction concerning back mechanics and lifting techniques (Fig. 3-20), lumbar support, and exercise. Exercise promotes strong backs; it improves back support and directly benefits the disks in the spinal column. Stress can make a person vulnerable to back problems because of muscle spasms. Keeping back muscles flexible with exercise can alleviate this stress reaction.

KEY POINT Healthcare workers are at risk for back injury because of activities they are required to do (e.g., lift and move patients) and because of the stressful environment often associated with healthcare today.

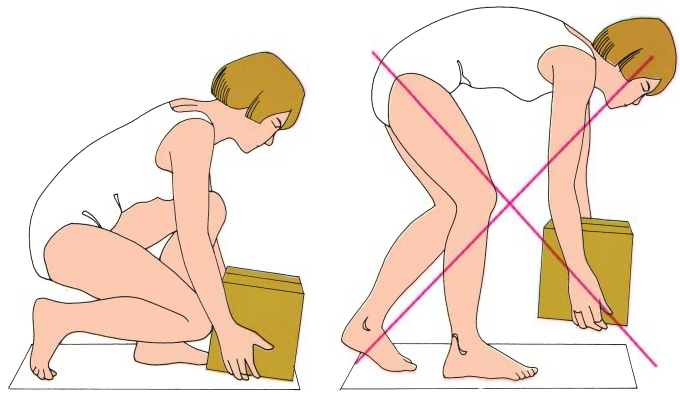


Figure 3-20 Lifting techniques.

BOX 3-11 WAYS TO CONTROL STRESS

- Identify your problem and talk about it with a close friend, partner, or the person at the source of the problem.
- Learn to relax throughout the day—close your eyes, relax your body, and clear your mind.
- Exercise regularly—develop a consistent exercise routine that you can enjoy.
- Avoid making too many changes at once—plan for the future to avoid simultaneous major changes.
- Spend at least 15 minutes a day thoroughly planning the time you have.
- Set realistic goals—be practical about what you can accomplish.
- Avoid procrastination by tackling the most difficult job first.

STRESS MANAGEMENT

Stress is a condition or state that results when physical, chemical, or emotional factors cause mental or bodily tension. It challenges our ability to cope or adapt. Stress is sometimes useful, keeping us alert and increasing our energy when we need it. Persistent or excessive stress, on the other hand, can be harmful.

Evidence suggests that "negative stress" (such as an emergency or an argument) has a damaging effect on personal wellness. Stressful situations are more likely to be damaging if they cannot be predicted or controlled. This fact is particularly apparent where job stress is concerned. Highly demanding jobs are much more stressful if an individual has no control over the workload, as is often the case in healthcare. Stress is more likely to have adverse effects on an individual if social support is lacking or there are personal or financial concerns. Although the signs of stress may not be immediately apparent, different organs and systems throughout the body are being affected. The immune system may be weakened, and other symptoms such as hypertension, ulcers, migraines, and nervous breakdowns may eventually result.

In the today's hectic lifestyle and especially in the healthcare environment, it is necessary to manage stress to maintain personal wellness. Box 3-11 lists ways to deal with stress.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

Visit the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Which of the following situations involves a nosocomial infection?**
   a. A man has a bladder infection upon hospital admission.
   b. An employee contracts hepatitis B from a needlestick.
   c. A patient in ICU has an incision that becomes infected.
   d. A baby in the nursery has a congenital herpes infection.

2. **Reverse isolation may be used for:**
   a. a patient with the measles.
   b. an adult patient with the flu.
   c. a patient with tuberculosis.
   d. a patient with severe burns.

3. **The single most important means of preventing the spread of infection is:**
   a. proper hand antisepsis.
   b. keeping clothes clean.
   c. wearing a mask.
   d. wearing gloves.

4. **The most frequently occurring lab-acquired infection is:**
   a. hepatits B.
   b. HIV infection.
   c. syphilis.
   d. tuberculosis.

5. **To destroy transient microorganisms when washing hands, use:**
   a. antiseptic soap.
   b. bleach solution.
   c. plain soap.
   d. all of the above.

6. **In the event of a body fluid splash to the eyes, the victim should immediately:**
   a. call 911 so the paramedics will come.
   b. flush eyes with water for 10 minutes.
   c. go to the emergency room.
   d. wipe the eyes with a tissue.

7. **Which of the following items is PPE?**
   a. Biohazard bag
   b. Countertop splash shield
   c. Nonlatex gloves
   d. Sharps container

8. **Which of the following examples of potential exposure to blood-borne pathogens involve a parenteral route of transmission?**
   a. Chewing gum while collecting blood specimens
   b. Eating a snack while accessing specimens
   c. Licking fingers while turning lab manual pages
   d. Rubbing the eyes while processing specimens

9. **Surfaces in the specimen collection and processing area should be cleaned with:**
   a. 70% isopropyl alcohol.
   b. 1:10 bleach solution.
   c. soap and water.
   d. any of the above.

10. **Which of the following is a proper way to clean up a small blood spill that has dried on a countertop?**
    a. Moisten it with a disinfectant and carefully absorb it with a paper towel.
    b. Rub it with an alcohol pad, then wipe the area with a clean alcohol pad.
    c. Scrape it into a biohazard bag and wash the surface with soap and water.
    d. Use a disinfectant wipe and scrub it in ever-increasing concentric circles.

11. **Distance, time, and shielding are principles of:**
    a. BBP safety.
    b. electrical safety.
    c. fire safety.
    d. radiation safety.

12. **Safe working conditions are mandated by:**
    a. CDC.
    b. HazCom.
    c. HICPAC.
    d. OSHA.

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 3-1 *An Accident Waiting to Happen*

A female blood drawer works alone in a clinic. It is almost time to close for lunch when a patient arrives for a blood test. The blood drawer is flustered because she has a special date for lunch. She is dressed up for the occasion, wearing a nice dress and high heels. She looks nice except for a large scratch on her left wrist, which she got while playing with her cat that morning. She quickly draws the patient's blood. As she turns to put the specimen in a rack, she slips and falls, and one of the tubes breaks. She does not get cut, but blood splashes everywhere, including on her left wrist.

QUESTIONS

1. *What is the first thing the phlebotomist should do?*
2. *How did the phlebotomist's actions contribute to this accident?*
3. *What should she have done that might have prevented the exposure, despite the tube breaking?*
4. *What type of exposure did she receive?*

Time to try your luck at the crossword in the WORKBOOK

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

CDC. *Guidelines for Hand Hygiene in Health Care Settings.* Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 1994.

CDC. *Guidelines for Preventing Transmission of Mycobacterium tuberculosis in Health-Care Facilities.* Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 1994.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, M29-A3. *Protection Of Laboratory Workers From Occupationally Acquired Infections; Approved Guideline,* 3rd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS; 2005.

Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC) and CDC. *2007 Guideline for Isolation Precautions in Hospitals*. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2007.

Hospital Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC) and CDC. *1996 Guideline for Isolation Precautions in Hospitals*. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 1995.

Larson EL., APIC Guidelines Committee. APIC Guidelines for hand washing and hand antisepsis in health care setting. *Am J Infect Control* **1995;23:251–269.**

National fire protection association (NFPA). National Fire Codes. www.nfpa.org. Accessed Feb 27, 2010.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA): OSHA instruction. *Enforcement Procedures for the Occupational Exposure to Bloodborne Pathogens.* Directive number CPL 2-2.69; Effective date 11/27/2001. Washington, DC: OSHA; 2001.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration. *Hazard Communication Standard: Occupational.* 29CFR Part 1910.1200. Washington, DC: OSHA; 1986.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration. Occupational exposure to bloodborne pathogens: final rule. 29CFR Part 1910.1030. Washington, DC: OSHA; 1991.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration. *Occupational Exposure to Bloodborne Pathogens: Needlestick and Other Sharps Injuries: Final Rule*. 29 CFR Part 1910, Docket No. H370A, RIN 1218-AB85. Washington, DC: OSHA; 2001.

Siegel JD, Rhinehart E, Jackson M, Chiarello L, and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC). *Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings*. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; 2007.

Turgeon ML. *Linne & Ringsrud's Clinical Laboratory Science: The Basics and Routine Techniques,* 5th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2007.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos:
  - Donning and Removal of Protective Equipment
  - Hand Washing/Hand Antisepsis
  - Poor and Good Workplace Erognomics for Phlebotomy
  - Proper Lifting Technique
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash-card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- College of American Pathologists: http://www.cap.org
- National Fire Protection Association: http://www.nfpa.org
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: http:// www.cdc.gov
- U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2007 Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings: http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/dhqp/pdf/guidelines/Isolation2007.pdf

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials, 5th ed.* (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review, 4th ed.* (available for separate purchase).

UNIT II

OVERVIEW OF THE HUMAN BODY

4 Medical Terminology 107

5 Human Anatomy and Physiology Review 121

6 The Circulatory System 153

CHAPTER

4

Medical Terminology

KEY TERMS

Do the Matching Exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

combining form	prefix	word root
combining vowel	suffix	

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Identify basic word elements individually and within medical terms.
3. State the meanings of common word roots, prefixes, and suffixes and identify unique plural endings.
4. State the meanings of medical terms composed of elements found in this chapter.
5. Demonstrate proper pronunciation of medical terms by using the general pronunciation guidelines found in this chapter.
6. State the meanings of common medical abbreviations listed in this chapter.
7. Identify items currently on the Joint Commission's "Do Not Use" list and the list of items for possible future inclusion on the "Do Not Use" list.

OVERVIEW

Medical terminology is a special vocabulary of scientific and technical terms used in the healthcare professions to speak and write effectively and precisely. It is based on an understanding of three basic word elements (word roots, prefixes, and suffixes) that are often derived from Greek and Latin words. Most medical terms are formed from two or more of these elements. If the meanings of the word elements are known, the general meaning of most medical terms can be established (although the actual definition may differ slightly). This chapter covers the three basic word elements, related elements called combining vowels and combining forms, unique plural endings, and pronunciation guidelines for medical terms. Common abbreviations and symbols used in healthcare, including those found on current and possible future Joint Commission's "Do Not Use" lists, are also covered.

KEY POINT To determine the meaning of a medical term, it is generally best to start with the suffix, then go to the prefix, and identify the meaning of the word root or roots last.

Modern medicine was founded by the Greeks and influenced by Latin, the universal language at the time. Consequently, many medical terms are derived from Greek or Latin words. For example many surgical or diagnosis terms are derived from Greek words, and many anatomical terms have a Latin origin. New terms are often of English origin because English is now considered the universal language.

Word Roots

A **word root** (sometimes called a word stem) is the subject of a medical term and the foundation upon which the term is built. The meaning of a medical term is established by analyzing the other word elements, such as prefixes and suffixes attached to the word root.

KEY POINT A word root typically indicates a tissue, organ, body system, color, condition, substance, or structure. For example, the word root *phleb* means "vein," a body structure.

Some medical terms have more than one word root. The term *thrombophlebitis* is made up of the word root *phleb* and the word root *thromb* meaning "clot." In a few instances, a root will have several very different meanings. For example, the root *ped* appears in words derived from both Greek and Latin words for "foot" and the Greek word for "child." In addition, some words containing *ped* are derived from the Latin term *pediculus,* meaning "louse." To establish the meaning of the root in these cases consider the context in which the word is used. Table 4-1 lists common medical word roots.

KEY POINT Occasionally there will be both a Greek and Latin root with the same meaning. For example, the Greek root *nephr* and the Latin root *ren* both mean "kidney."

Prefixes

A **prefix** is a word element that comes before a word root. A prefix modifies the meaning of the word root by adding information such as presence, absence, location, number, or size.

Example:	A/	NUCLEAR
	prefix	root
	(without)	(nucleus)

TABLE 4-1 Common Medical Word Roots

Root	Meaning	Example	Root	Meaning	Example
adip	fat	adipose	hemat	blood	hematology
aer	air	aerobic	hepat	liver	hepatitis
angi	vessel	angiogram	hist	tissue	histology
arteri	artery	arteriosclerosis	kerat	hard, cornea	keratinized
arthr	joint	arthritis	leuk	white	leukocyte
bili	bile	bilirubin	lip	fat	lipemia
bronch	bronchus	bronchitis	melan	black	melanoma
bucc	cheek	buccal	morph	form	morphology
carcin	cancer	carcinogenic	my	muscle	myalgia
cardi	heart	electrocardiogram	nat	birth	natal
cephal	head	cephalic	necr	death	necrosis
chondr	cartilage	osteochondritis	nephr	kidney	nephritis
coron	crown, circle	coronary	neur	nerve	neurology
cyan	blue	cyanotic	onc	tumor	oncologist
crin	to secrete	endocrine	oste	bone	osteoporosis
cry	cold	cryoglobulin	path	disease	pathogen
cutane	skin	percutaneous	ped	child	pediatric
cyst	bladder	cystitis	phag	eat, swallow	phagocytic
cyt	cell	cytology	phleb	vein	phlebotomy
derm	skin	dermis	pneumon	air, lung	pneumonia
dermat	skin	dermatitis	pulmon	lung	pulmonary
encephal	brain	encephalitis	ren	kidney	renal
enter	intestines	enteritis	scler	hard	sclerotic
erythr	red	erythrocyte	thromb	clot	thrombosis
esophag	esophagus	esophagitis	thorac	chest	thoracic
estr	female	estrogen	tox	poison	toxicology
fibrin	fiber	fibrinolysis	ur, urin	urine	urinalysis
gastr	stomach	gastrointestinal	vas	vessel	vascular
gluc	sugar, glucose	glucose	ven	vein	venipuncture
glyc	sugar, glucose	glycolysis	viscer	organ	visceral
hem	blood	hemolysis			

The prefix *a-* means "without." The word root *nuclear* means nucleus. The word *anuclear* means "without a nucleus." Table 4-2 lists common medical prefixes.

Suffixes

A **suffix** is a word ending. It follows a word root and either changes or adds to the meaning of the word root. The best way to determine the meaning of a medical term is to first identify the meaning of the suffix.

TABLE 4-2 Common Medical Prefixes

Prefix	Meaning	Example	Prefix	Meaning	Example
a-, an-, ar-	without	arrhythmia	hyper-	too much, high	hypertension
ab-	away from	abduct	hypo-	low, under	hypoglycemia
ana-	again, upward, back	anabolism	intra-	within	intramuscular
aniso-	unequal	anisocytosis	inter-	between	intercellular
anti-	against	antiseptic	iso-	equal, same	isothermal
bi-	two	bicuspid	macro-	large, long	macrocyte
bio-	life	biology	mal-	poor	malnutrition
brady-	slow	bradycardia	micro-	small	microcyte
cata-	down	catabolism	mono-	one	mononuclear
cyan-	blue	cyanotic	neo-	new	neonatal
dia-	across, through	diapedesis	poly-	many, much	polyuria
dys-	difficult	dyspnea	post-	after	postprandial
endo-	in, within	endothelium	pre-	before	prenatal
epi-	on, over, upon	epidermis	per-	through	percutaneous
exo-	outside	exocrine	peri-	around	pericardium
extra-	outside	extravascular	semi-	half	semilunar
hetero-	different	heterosexual	sub-	below, under	subcutaneous
homo-	same	homogeneous	tachy-	rapid	tachycardia
homeo-	same	homeostasis	tri-	three	tricuspid

Example:	GASTR/	IC
	root	suffix
	(stomach)	(pertaining to)

The word root *gastr* means "stomach." The suffix *-ic* means "pertaining to." The word *gastric* means "pertaining to the stomach." Table 4-3 lists common medical suffixes.

KEY POINT If a suffix begins with "rh," the "r" is doubled, as in *hemorrhage*. If a suffix is added to a word ending in "x," the "x" is changed to a "g" or "c," as in *pharynx* becoming *pharyngeal* and *thorax* becoming *thoracic*. If a suffix begins with a vowel and the root ends in the same vowel, one is dropped as in *carditis*.

Combining Vowels/Forms

A **combining vowel** is a vowel ("o" is the most common, followed by "i") that is added between two word roots or a word root and a suffix to make pronunciation easier. A word root combined with a vowel is called a **combining form**.

KEY POINT A combining vowel is not normally used when a suffix starts with a vowel. However, a combining vowel is kept between two word roots, even if the second root begins with a vowel.

TABLE 4-3 Common Medical Suffixes

Suffix	Meaning	Example
-ac, -al	pertaining to	cardiac, neural
-algia	pain	neuralgia
-ar, -ary	pertaining to	muscular, urinary
-ase	enzyme	lipase
-centesis	surgical puncture to remove a fluid	thoracentesis
-cyte	cell	erythrocyte
-ectomy	excision, removal	appendectomy
-emia	blood condition	anemia
-gram	recording, writing	electrocardiogram
-ia	state or condition	hemophilia
-ic, -tic	pertaining to	thoracic
-ism	state of	hypothyroidism
-ist	one who specializes in	pharmacist
-itis	inflammation	tonsillitis
-ium	structure, tissue	pericardium
-rhage	bursting forth	hemorrhage
-logist	specialist in the study of	cardiologist
-logy	study of	histology
-lysis	breakdown, destruction	hemolysis
-megaly	enlargement	acromegaly
-meter	instrument that measures or counts	thermometer
-ole	small	arteriole
-oma	tumor	hepatoma
-osis	condition	necrosis
-ous	pertaining to	cutaneous
-oxia	oxygen level	hypoxia
-pathy	disease	cardiomyopathy
-penia	deficiency	leukopenia
-pnea	breathing	dyspnea
-poiesis	formation	hemopoiesis
-rrhage	excess/abnormal flow	hemorrhage
-spasm	twitch, involuntary muscle movement	arteriospasm
-stasis	stopping, controlling, standing	hemostasis
-tomy	cutting, incision	phlebotomy
-ule	small	venule

Example 1:

GASTR	/O/	ENTER	/O/	LOGY
word root		word root		suffix
combining vowel		combining vowel		
(combining form)		(combining form)		
(stomach)		(intestines)		(study of)

Check your knowledge of the word elements by doing Labeling Exercise 4-1, Knowledge Drill 4-2 (Scrambled Words), and Skills Drill 4-2 (Word Building) activities in the WORKBOOK.

The two word roots are combined by the vowel "o" to ease pronunciation, even though the second root *enter* begins with a vowel. The vowel "o" is also used between the word root *enter* and the suffix *-logy.* The term gastroenterology means "study of the stomach and intestines." The combining forms created are *gastro* and *entero.*

Example 2:

PHLEB/	ITIS
root	suffix
(vein)	(inflammation)

Because the suffix *-itis* begins with a vowel, a combining vowel is not used after the word root *phleb.* Phlebitis means "inflammation of a vein."

Discrepancies in the Classification of Word Elements

Medical terminology texts sometimes vary in the way they classify the word elements of medical terms. Also, some word elements may be classified one way in one term and a different

TABLE 4-4 Unique Plural Endings

Word Ending	Plural Ending	Singular Example	Plural Example
-a	-ae	vena cava	vena cavae (ka've)
-en	-ina	lumen	lumina (lu'min-a)
-ex, -ix	-ices	appendix	appendices (a-pen'di-sez)
-is	-es	crisis	crises (kri'sez)
-nx	-nges	phalanx	phalanges (fa-lan'-jez)
-on	-a	protozoon	protozoa (pro"to-zo'a)
-um	-a	ovum	ova (o'va)
-us	-i	nucleus	nuclei (nu'kle-i)

way in another. For example, the word element *phasia,* which means "speech," is normally classified as a suffix. It functions as a word root, however, in the word *aphasia,* which means "without speech." Either way, the meaning is the same.

KEY POINT It is more important to be able to identify the meaning of a word element than to identify its classification.

Unique Plural Endings

Identify the singular or plural forms of words listed in Labeling Exercise 4-2 in the WORKBOOK.

The plural forms of some medical terms follow English rules. Others have **unique plural endings** that follow the rules of the Greek or Latin from which they originated. It is important to evaluate medical terms individually to determine the correct plural form. Table 4-4 lists the unique plural forms of typical singular medical term endings.

Pronunciation

Medical terms must be pronounced properly to convey the correct meaning, which can be changed by even one mispronounced syllable. Basic English pronunciation rules apply to most medical terms, and some may have more than one acceptable pronunciation. For example, hemophilia can be pronounced "he mo fil′ e a" or "hem o fil′ e a." In addition, some terms that are spelled differently are pronounced the same. For example, *ilium,* which means "hipbone," is pronounced the same as *ileum,* which means "small intestine." These terms can be confused when spoken rather than written. Verifying spelling eliminates confusion. General pronunciation guidelines are found in Table 4-5.

Abbreviations and Symbols

To save time, space, and paperwork, it is common practice in the healthcare professions to use abbreviations and symbols (such as objects and signs) to shorten words and phrases. Some of the most common abbreviations and symbols are listed in Tables 4-6 and 4-7, respectively.

The Joint Commission's "Do Not Use" List

To help reduce the number of medical errors related to incorrect interpretation of terminology, the Joint Commission issued a minimum list of dangerous abbreviations, symbols, and acronyms

TABLE 4-5 General Pronunciation Guidelines

Letter(s)	Pronunciation Guideline	Example(s)
ae	Pronounce the second vowel only	chordae
c	Sounds like "s" when it precedes "e," "i," or "y" (in terms of Greek or Latin origin) Has a hard sound when it precedes other vowels	cell, circulation, cytology capillary, colitis, culture
g	Sounds like "j" when it precedes "e," "i," or "y" (in terms of Greek or Latin origin) Has a hard sound when it precedes other vowels	genetic, *Giardia,* gyrate gallbladder, gonad, gut
ch	Often pronounced like a "k"	chloride, cholesterol
e	May be pronounced separately when at the end of a term	syncope, diastole
es	May be pronounced as a separate syllable when at the end of a term	nares
i	Pronounce like "eye" when at the end of a plural term	fungi, nuclei
ph	Pronounce with an "f" sound	pharmacy
pn	Pronounce the "n" sound only when at the start of a term Pronounce both letters separately when in the middle of a term	pneumonia dyspnea, apnea
ps	pronounce like "s"	pseudopod, psychology

TABLE 4-6 Common Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Meaning	Abbreviation	Meaning
ABGs	arterial blood gases	$\bar{c}$	with *(cum)*
ABO	blood group system	C	Celsius; centigrade
a.c.	before meals	C & S	culture & sensitivity
ACTH	adrenocorticotropic hormone	Ca	calcium
ADH	antidiuretic hormone	CABG	coronary artery bypass graft
ad lib	as desired	CAD	coronary artery disease
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome	CAT	computed axial tomography
alb	albumin	CBC	complete blood count
ALL	acute lymphocytic leukemia	cc*	cubic centimeter
ALT	alanine transaminase (see SGPT)	CCU	coronary (cardiac) care unit
AML	acute myelocytic leukemia	Chem	chemistry
Aq	water (aqua)	Chemo	chemotherapy
AST	aspartate aminotransferase (see SGOT)	CHF	congestive heart failure
ASO	antistreptolysin O	Chol	cholesterol
AV	atrioventricular	CK	creatine kinase
b.i.d.	twice a day *(bis in die)*	cm	centimeter
bili	bilirubin	CML	chronic myelogenous leukemia
BMP	basic metabolic profile	CNS	central nervous system
BP	blood pressure	c/o	complains of
BS	blood sugar	CO_2	carbon dioxide
BUN	blood urea nitrogen	COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
Bx	biopsy	CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation

(*continued*)

TABLE 4-6 Common Abbreviations (Continued)

Abbreviation	Meaning	Abbreviation	Meaning
Crit	hematocrit (see HCT)	Gm, gm, g	gram
C-section	cesarean section	GTT	glucose tolerance test
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	GYN	gynecology
CT scan	computed tomography scan	h	hour
CVA	cerebrovascular accident (stroke)	HAV	hepatitis A virus
CXR	chest x-ray	Hb, Hgb	hemoglobin
D	day	HBsAg	hepatitis B surface antigen
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	HBV	hepatitis B virus
Diff	differential count of white blood cells	HCG	human chorionic gonadotropin
Dil	dilute	HCL	hydrochloric acid
DKA	diabetic acidosis	HCT/Hct	hematocrit (see crit)
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid	HCV	hepatitis C virus
DOB	date of birth	HGB/hgb	hemoglobin
DVT	deep venous thrombosis	HDL	high-density lipoprotein
Dx	diagnosis	Hg	mercury
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus	HH (H & H)	hemoglobin and hematocrit
ECG	electrocardiogram	HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
ECHO	echocardiogram	h/o	history of
ECU	emergency care unit	H_2O	water
EEG	electroencephalogram	h.s.	at bedtime (*hora somni*)
EKG	electrocardiogram	hx	history
EMG	electromyogram	ICU	intensive care unit
ENT	ear, nose, and throat	ID	identification, intradermal
Eos	eosinophils	IM	intramuscular
ER	emergency room	IP	inpatient
ESR/sed rate	erythrocyte sedimentation rate (sed rate)	IV	intravenous
ETOH	ethyl alcohol	IVP	intravenous pyelogram
exc	excision	K^+	potassium
F	Fahrenheit	Kg	kilogram
FBS	fasting blood sugar	L	left, liter
Fe	iron	lb	pound
FH	family history	Lat	lateral
FS	frozen section	LD/LDH	lactic dehydrogenase
FSH	follicle stimulating hormone	LDL	low-density lipoprotein
Fx	fracture	LE	lupus erythematosus (lupus)
FUO	fever of unknown origin	LH	lutenizing hormone
GH	growth hormone	LP	lumbar puncture
GI	gastrointestinal	lymphs	lymphocytes
gluc	glucose	lytes	electrolytes

*On the list of possible future additions to the "Do Not Use" list.

TABLE 4-6 Common Abbreviations (Continued)

Abbreviation	Meaning
M	meter
MCH	mean corpuscular hemoglobin
MCHC	mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration
MCV	mean corpuscular volume
Mcg	microgram
Mets	metastases
Mg	milligram
Mg^{++}	magnesium
MI	myocardial infarction
ML	milliliter
Mm	millimeter
Mono	monocyte
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MS	multiple sclerosis
Na^{+}	sodium
Neg	negative
NG	nasogastric
NKA	no known allergy
noc	night
NPO	nothing by mouth *(nulla per os)*
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammator drug
O_2	oxygen
OB	obstetrics
O&P	ova and parasite
OP	outpatient
OR	operating room
Oz	ounce
$\bar{p}$	after
P	pulse; phosphorus
PAP	papincolaou test (smear)
Path	pathology
p.c.	after meals
PCO_2	partial pressure of carbon dioxide
Peds	pediatrics
PET	positive emission tomography
pH	hydrogen ion concentration (measure of acidity or alkalinity)

Abbreviation	Meaning
PKU	phenylketonuria
PMNs	polymorphonuclear leukocytes
PaO_2	pressure of oxygen in the blood
p/o	postoperative
p.o.	orally (per os)
polys	polymorphonuclear leukocytes
pos	positive
post-op	after operation
PP	after a meal (postprandial)
PPD	purified protein derivative (TB test)
pre-op	before operation
prep	prepare for
PRN, prn	as necessary (*pro re nata*)
PT	prothrombin time/protime
PTT	partial thromboplastin time
PLT	platelet
PNS	peripheral nervous system
PaO_2	partail pressure of oxygen
PPBS	postprandial blood sugar
PSA	prostrate specific antigen
pt	patient
PT	prothrombin time/protime; physical theraphy
PVC	premature ventricular contraction
QNS, q.n.s.	quantity not sufficient
R	right
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
RBC	red blood cell or red blood count (also rbc)
req	requisition
RIA	radioimmunoassay
R/O	rule out
RPR	rapid plasma reagin
RT	respiratory therapy
RR	recovery room
Rx	treatment
$\bar{s}$	without
SA	sinoatrial

(*continued*)

TABLE 4-6 Common Abbreviations (Continued)

Abbreviation	Meaning
SAD	seasonal affective disorder
SC, SQ	subcutaneous
sed rate	erythrocyte sedimentationrate (ESR)
segs	segmented white blood cells
SGOT	serum glutamic–oxaloacetic transaminase (see AST)
SGPT	serum glutamic–pyruvic transaminase (see ALT)
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
sol	solution
SpGr	specific gravity
Staph	staphylococcus
STAT, stat	immediately (*statum*)
STD	sexually transmitted disease
Strep	streptococcus
Sx	symptoms
T	temperature
T_3	triiodothyronine (a thyroid hormone)
T_4	thyroxine (a thyroid hormone)
TB	tuberculosis
T cells	lymphocytes from the thymus
T&C	type and crossmatch (type & x)
TIA	transcient ischemic attack
TIBC	total iron binding capacity
TPN	total parenteral nutrition (intravenous feeding)
TPR	temperature, pulse, and respiration
Trig	triglycerides
TSH	thyroid-stimulating hormone
Tx	treatment
UA, ua	urinalysis
URI	upper respiratory infection
UTI	urinary tract infection
UV	ultraviolet
VCU	voiding cystourethrogram
VD	venereal disease
~~W~~	water reactive
WBC, wbc	white blood cell
wd	wound
WT, wt	weight
y/o	years old

TABLE 4-7 Common Symbols

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
α	alpha	>*	greater than
β	beta	≥	equal to or greater than
δ	delta	±	plus or minus, positive or negative
γ	gamma	®	registered trademark
λ	lambda	™	trademark
∞	infinity	#	number, pound
μ*	micron	%	percent
μg*	microgram (mcg)	Δ	heat
+	plus, positive	♀	female
−	minus, negative	♂	male
=	equals	↑	increase
<*	less than	↓	decrease
≤	equal to or less than		

*On the list of possible future additions to the "Do Not Use" List.

TABLE 4-8 The Joint Commission's "Do Not Use" List

Do Not Use	Rationale	Replace with
IU	Mistaken for "IV" or "10" (ten)	Write "international unit"
U	Mistaken for "0" (zero), "4" (four), or "cc"	Write "unit"
MS	Can mean morphine sulfate or magnesium sulfate	Write "morphine sulfate" or "magnesium sulfate"
MSO_4 and $MgSO_4$	Can be confused with one another	Write "magnesium sulfate" or "morphine sulfate"
Q.D., QD, q.d., qd (daily)	Mistaken for each other	Write "daily"
Q.O.D., QOD., q.o.d, qod (every other day)	Period after the Q mistaken for "I" and the "O" mistaken for "I"	Write "every other day"
No leading zero (.X mg)	Decimal point is missed	Write 0.X mg
Trailing zero (X.0 mg)*	Decimal point is missed	Write X mg

*A trailing zero may be used when it is needed to show the level of precision of the value being reported as in laboratory test results, imaging reports on the size of lesions, and catheter/tube sizes.
(Adapted with permission from the Joint Commission Do Not Use List, retrieved April 14, 2010 from http://www.jointcommission.org/nr/rdonlyres/2329f8f5-6ec5-4e21-b932-54b2b7d53f00/0/dnu_list.pdf.)

that must be included on a **"Do Not Use" list** by every organization it accredits. The Joint Commission also issued a list of additional abbreviations, acronyms, and symbols for possible future inclusion in the "Do Not Use" list.

An Institute of Medicine (IOM) report in 1999 stated that between 44,000 and 96,000 deaths a year may be attributed to medical errors.

The list applies to all orders and all medication-related documentation that is handwritten, entered on computer, or written on preprinted forms. The list applies to handwritten laboratory reports but not to printed and electronic laboratory reports. Laboratories are also exempt

TABLE 4-9 Possible Future Additions to the "Do Not Use" List

Do Not Use	Rationale	Replace with
> (greater than)	Misinterpreted as the number "7"	Write "greater than"
< (less than)	Misinterpreted as the letter "L" Confused With Each Other	Write "less than"
@	Mistaken for the number "2" (two)	Write "at"
Cc	Mistaken for "U" (units) if poorly written	Write "mL" or "milliliters"
µg	Mistaken for "mg" (milligrams) resulting in 1,000-fold overdose	Write "mcg" or "micrograms"
Abbreviated drug names	Misinterpreted because many drugs have similar abbreviations	Write drug names in full
Apothecary units	Unfamiliar to many practitioners Confused with metric units	Use metric units

from the ban on the use of trailing zeros when they are necessary to indicate the precision of test results. The Joint Commission's "Do Not Use" list and possible future additions to it are shown in Tables 4-8 and 4-9, respectively.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. A prefix:
a. comes before a word root and modifies its meaning.
b. establishes the basic meaning of a medical term.
c. follows a word root and adds to or changes its meaning.
d. makes pronunciation of the term easier.

2. Which part of gastr/o/enter/o/logy is the suffix?
a. Enter
b. Gastr
c. Logy
d. O

3. To what part of the body does the word root *hepat* refer?
a. Head
b. Heart
c. Liver
d. Stomach

4. What does the suffix *-algia* mean?
a. Between
b. Condition
c. Disease
d. Pain

5. The plural form of atrium is:
a. atri.
b. atria.
c. atrial.
d. atrices.

6. The medical term for red blood cell is:
a. erythrocyte.
b. hepatocyte.
c. leukocyte.
d. thrombocyte.

7. Cystitis means:
a. blueness of the skin.
b. cellular infection.
c. inflammation of the bladder.
d. pertaining to a cell.

8. The "e" is pronounced separately in:
a. diastole.
b. syncope.
c. systole.
d. all of the above.

9. The abbreviation NPO means:
a. negative patient outcome
b. new patients only
c. no parenteral output.
d. nothing by mouth.

10. Which of the following abbreviations is on the current Joint Commission "Do Not Use" list?
a. cc
b. IU
c. mL
d. UTI

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 4-1 *Lab Orders*

A physician orders ASAP blood cultures on an ER patient with a diagnosis of FUO.

QUESTIONS

1. *When should the blood cultures be collected?*
2. *Where is the patient located?*
3. *What does the diagnosis abbreviation FUO mean?*

CASE STUDY 4-2 *Misinterpreted Instructions*

A phlebotomy student is doing a clinical rotation with a laboratory in a medical clinic. A patient comes in for a TB test. The phlebotomist in charge thinks that it would be a good learning experience for the student to administer the test. The student is a little reluctant. The phlebotomist tells her not to worry, writes out the instructions shown below, and goes about processing specimens that are ready to be centrifuged. Phlebotomist's instructions:

Choose a clean site on the inside of the arm below the elbow.
Draw .1 mL TB antigen into a tuberculin syringe.
Insert the needle just under the skin, and pull back the plunger slightly.
If you don't see blood slowly inject the antigen under the skin,
remove the needle, but do not hold pressure or bandage the site.

The student filled the syringe with antigen. As she was injecting it into the patient, a large wheal started to form. She got scared and called the phlebotomist, who noticed that half the 1-mL syringe contained antigen. She instructed the student to pull the needle out immediately, telling her that she had used too much antigen.

QUESTIONS

1. *Why would the student have used too much antigen?*
2. *How could the mistake have been prevented?*
3. *What else could have prevented the error?*
4. *What effect might the error have on the patient?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Mosby's Dictionary of Medicine, Nursing & Health Professions St. Louis: Mosby/Elsevier; 2008.
Stedman's Medical Dictionary for the Health Professions And Nursing, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.
Venes D, Taber C. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 20th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005.
Willis M. *Medical Terminology: A Programmed Learning Approach to the Language of Health Care*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2007.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash-card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **American Association of Medical Assistants, CMA (AAMA) Practice Exam**: Medical Terminology: http://www.aama-ntl.org/becomeCMA/practice_term.aspx
- **Des Moines University, Medical Terminology Course:** http://www.dmu.edu/medterms/
- **The Joint Commission's Do Not Use List**: http://www.jointcommission.org/PatientSafety/DoNotUseList/
- **Sheppard Software, Vocabulary Games**: http://www.sheppardsoftware.com/web_games_vocab_med.htm

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review*, 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

CHAPTER

5

Human Anatomy and Physiology Review

KEY TERMS

Do Matching Exercise 5-1 in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

acidosis
alkalosis
alveoli
anabolism
anatomic position
anatomy
anterior
avascular
axons
body cavities
body plane
bursae
cartilage
catabolism
diaphragm
distal
dorsal
endocrine glands
exocrine glands
frontal plane
gametes
hemopoiesis
homeostasis
hormones
meninges
metabolism
mitosis
nephron
neuron
phalanges
physiology
pituitary gland
prone/pronation
proximal
sagittal plane
supine/supination
surfactant
synovial fluid
transverse plane
ventral cavities

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Identify and describe body positions, planes, cavities, and directional terms.
3. Define homeostasis and the primary processes of metabolism.
4. Identify and describe the structural components of cells and the four basic types of body tissue.
5. Describe the function and identify the components or major structures of each body system.
6. List disorders and diagnostic tests commonly associated with each body system.

OVERVIEW

The human body consists of over 30 trillion cells, 206 bones, 700 muscles, approximately 5 liters of blood, and about 25 miles of blood vessels. To fully appreciate the workings of this wonder, it is necessary to have a basic understanding of human **anatomy** (structural composition) and **physiology** (function). A fundamental knowledge of human anatomy and physiology (A&P) is an asset to anyone working in a healthcare setting and especially helps the phlebotomist understand the nature of the various disorders of the body, the rationale for the laboratory tests associated with them, and the importance of the role that laboratory tests play in monitoring body system functions and diagnosing disorders. This chapter covers general body organization and function, anatomical terminology, and the functions, structures, disorders, and diagnostic tests associated with nine body systems. Because of its special importance to phlebotomy, a 10th system (circulatory) is covered separately in Chapter 6.

KEY POINT The medical science and specialty practice concerned with all aspects of disease—including the characteristics, causes, and effects of disease on the structure and function of the body—is called pathology, and the medical professional trained in this area is called a pathologist.

Body Positions

ANATOMIC POSITION

The human body can be described in a number of different ways. For consistency in describing the direction or the location of a given point of the body, medical personnel normally refer to the body as if the patient were in the **anatomical position,** regardless of actual body position. A person in the **anatomical position** is standing erect, arms at the sides, with eyes and palms facing forward.

OTHER POSITIONS

Two other body positions of particular importance to a blood drawer are **supine,** in which the patient is lying horizontal on the back with the face up, and **prone,** the opposite of supine, in which the patient is lying face down. The term *prone* also describes the hand with the palm facing down, a position sometimes used during blood collection.

The act of turning the hand so that the palm faces down is called ***pronation.*** *The act of turning the palm to face upward is called* ***supination.***

Memory Jogger A way to equate supine with lying down is to think of the *ine* as in *recline.* To remember that a person who is supine is *face up,* look for the word *up* in supine.

Body Planes

A **body plane** (Fig. 5-1) is a flat surface resulting from a real or imaginary cut through a body in the normal anatomical position. Areas of the body are often referred to according to their location with respect to one of the following body planes:

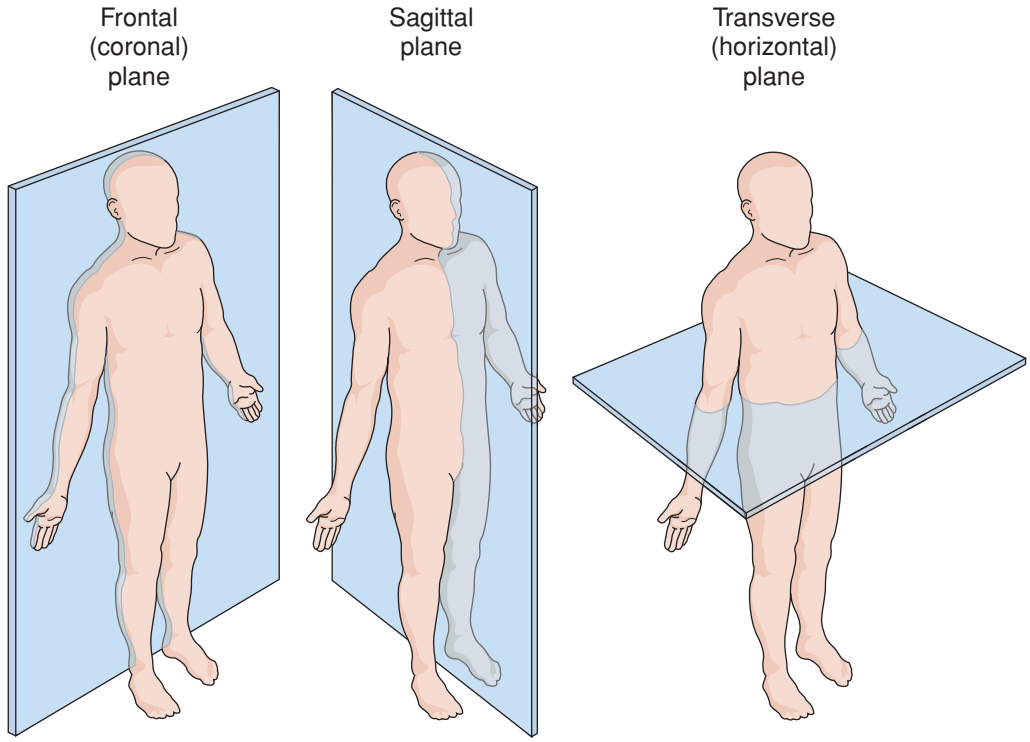


Figure 5-1 Body planes. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:9.)

- **Frontal (coronal) plane:** divides the body vertically into front and back portions.
- **Midsagittal (medial) plane:** divides the body vertically into equal right and left portions.
- **Sagittal plane:** divides the body vertically into right and left portions.
- **Transverse plane:** divides the body horizontally into upper and lower portions.

FYI

A procedure called computed tomography (CT) produces x-rays in a transverse plane of the body. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) can produce images of the body in all three planes using electromagnetic waves instead of x-rays.

Body Directional Terms

Can you find this and other key points in Knowledge Drill 5-1 in the WORKBOOK?

Areas of the body are also identified using **directional terms** (Fig. 5-2). Directional terms describe the relationship of an area or part of the body with respect to the rest of the body or body part. Directional terms are often paired with a term that means the opposite. Table 5-1 lists common paired directional terms.

KEY POINT Directional terms are relative positions in respect to other parts of the body. For example, the ankle can be described as **distal** to the leg and **proximal** to the foot.

Body Cavities

Various organs of the body are housed in large, hollow spaces called **body cavities** (Fig. 5-3). Body cavities are divided into two groups, dorsal and ventral, according to their location within the body.

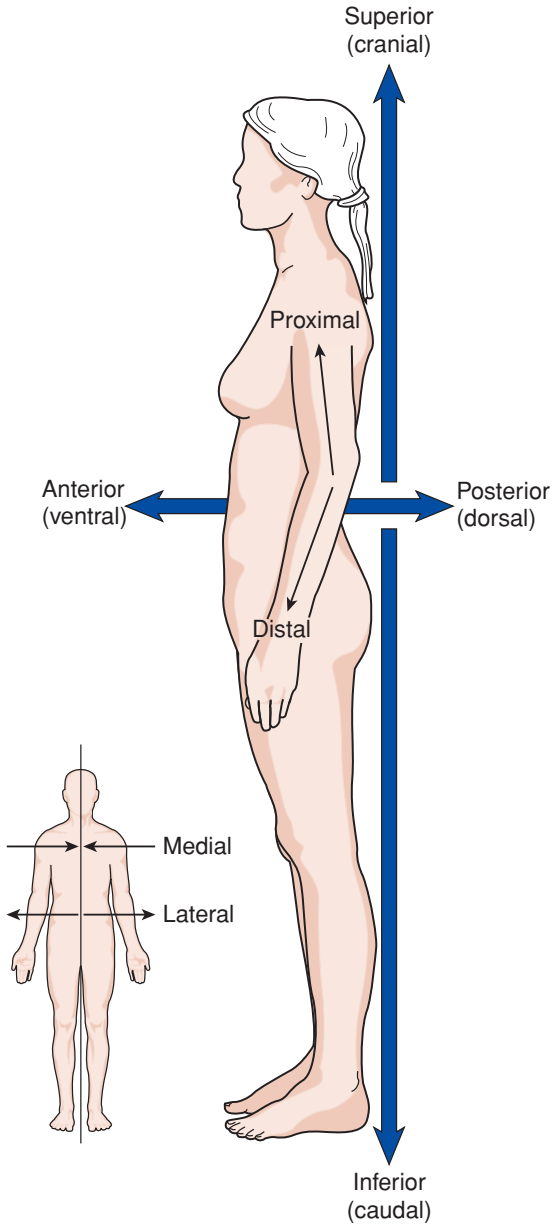


Figure 5-2 Directional terms. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease*, 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:8.)

TABLE 5-1 Common Paired Directional Terms

Directional Term and Meaning	Paired or Related Term and Meaning
Anterior (ventral): to the front of the body	**Posterior (dorsal):** to the back of the body
External (superficial): on or near the surface of the body	**Internal (deep):** within or near the center of the body
Medial: toward the midline or middle of the body	**Lateral:** toward the side of the body
Palmar: concerning the palm of the hand (opposite term is dorsal)	**Plantar:** concerning the sole of the foot (opposite term is dorsal)
Proximal: nearest the center of the body, origin, point of attachment	**Distal:** farthest from the center of the body, origin, or point of attachment
Superior (cranial): higher, or above or toward the head	**Inferior (caudal):** beneath, or lower or away from the head

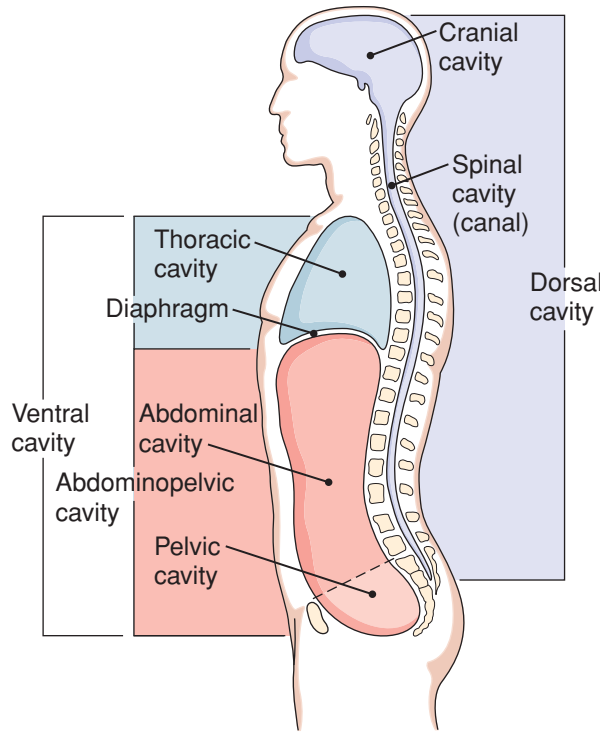


Figure 5-3 Lateral view of body cavities. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:12.)

See how well you can identify body planes, directional terms, and cavities in Labeling Exercises 5-1, 5-2, and 5-3 in the WORKBOOK.

- **Dorsal cavities** are located in the back of the body and include the **cranial cavity,** which houses the brain, and the **spinal cavity,** which encases the spinal cord.
- **Ventral cavities** are located in the front of the body and include the **thoracic cavity,** which houses primarily the heart and lungs; the **abdominal cavity,** which houses numerous organs including the stomach, liver, pancreas, gallbladder, spleen, and kidneys; and the **pelvic cavity,** which houses primarily the urinary bladder and reproductive organs.

KEY POINT The thoracic cavity is separated from the abdominal cavity by a muscle called the **diaphragm.**

Body Functions

HOMEOSTASIS

The human body constantly strives to maintain its internal environment in a state of equilibrium or balance. This balanced or "steady state" condition is called **homeostasis** (ho'me-o-sta'sis), which literally translated means "standing the same." The body maintains homeostasis by compensating for changes in a process that involves feedback and regulation in response to internal and external changes.

METABOLISM

Metabolism (me-tab'o-lizm) is the sum of all the physical and chemical reactions necessary to sustain life. There are two primary processes of metabolism: catabolism and anabolism.

- **Catabolism** (kah-tab'o-lizm) is a destructive process by which complex substances are broken down into simple substances, usually with the release of energy. An example is the conversion of carbohydrates in food into the glucose needed by the cells and the subsequent glycolysis or breakdown of glucose by the cells to produce energy.

Memory Jogger A way to equate catabolism with breakdown is to remember that it begins with *cat* just like *catastrophe.* When something (your car, for example) breaks down, you often think of it as a catastrophe.

- **Anabolism** (ah-nab'o-lizm) is a constructive process by which the body converts simple compounds into complex substances needed to carry out the cellular activities of the body. An example is the body's ability to use simple substances provided by the bloodstream to synthesize or create a hormone.

Body Organization

Complete Labeling Exercise 5-4 in the WORKBOOK to enhance your ability to identify cellular structures.

CELLS

The cell (Fig. 5-4) is the basic structural unit of all life. The human body consists of trillions of cells, responsible for all the activities of the body. There are many categories of cells, and each category is specialized to perform a unique function. No matter what their function, however, all cells have the same basic structural components (Table 5-2).

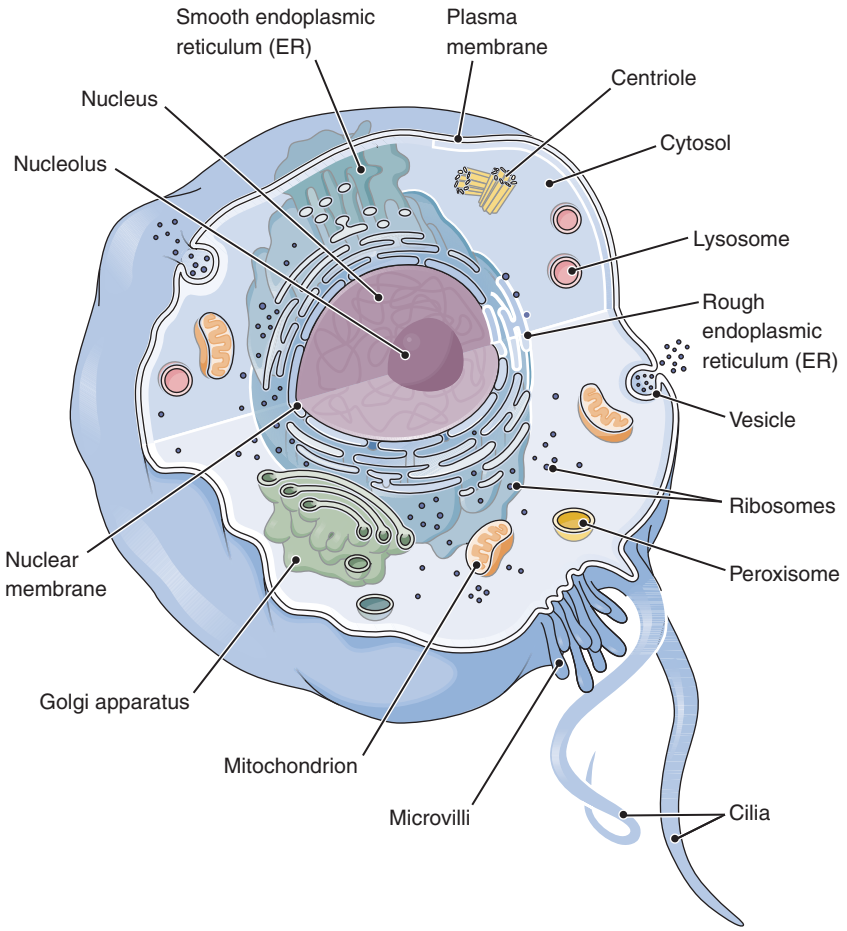


Figure 5-4 Cell diagram. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:37.)

TABLE 5-2 Basic Structural Components of Cells

Component	Description	Function
Plasma membrane	Outer layer of a cell	Encloses the cell and regulates what moves in and out of it
Microvilli	Small projections on the cell membrane of certain cells	Increase surface area for absorption
Nucleus	Large, dark-staining organelle near the center of the cell and composed of DNA and protein	The command center of the cell that contains the chromosomes or genetic material
Nucleolus	Small body in the nucleus that is primarily RNA, DNA, and protein	Makes ribosomes
Chromosomes	Long strands of DNA organized into units called genes, occurring in humans in 23 identical pairs (46 individual)	Govern all cell activities, including reproduction
Cytoplasm	Substance within a cell composed of fluid (cytosol) and various organelles and inclusions	Site of numerous cellular activities
Organelles	Specialized structures within the cytoplasm	Varied, distinct functions depending on the type
Centrioles	Rod-shaped bodies close to the nucleus	Assist chromosome separation during cell division
Endoplasmic reticulum (ER)	Network of either smooth or rough tubular membranes. Rough ER has ribosomes attached.	Smooth ER plays a role in lipid synthesis. Rough ER sorts proteins and creates complex compounds from them.
Golgi apparatus	Layers of membranes	Makes, sorts, and prepares protein compounds for transport
Lysosomes	Small sacs of digestive enzymes	Digest substances within the cell
Peroxisomes	Enzyme-containing organelles	Destroy harmful substances
Mitochondria	Oval or rod-shaped organelles	Play a role in energy production
Ribosomes	Tiny bodies that exist singly, in clusters, or attached to ER	Play a role in assembling proteins from amino acids
Vesicles	Small pouches in the plasma membrane	Store substances and move them in or out of the cell
Surface organelles	Structures that project from certain cells	Move the cell or move fluids around the cell
Cilia	Small hair-like projections	Waving motion moves fluids around the cell
Flagellum	Whip-like extension found on sperm	Propels the sperm toward an egg

KEY POINT Most cells are able to duplicate themselves, which allows the body to grow, repair, and reproduce itself. When a typical cell duplicates itself, the DNA doubles and the cell divides by a process called **mitosis** (mi-to'sis).

TISSUES

Tissues are groups of similar cells that work together to perform a special function. There are four basic types of normal tissue: connective, **epithelial,** muscle, and nerve.

- Connective tissue supports and connects all parts of the body and includes **adipose** (fat) tissue, **cartilage,** bone, and blood.
- Epithelial (ep-i-the'le-al) tissue covers and protects the body and lines organs, vessels, and cavities.

- Muscle tissue contracts to produce movement.
- Nerve tissue has the ability to transmit electrical impulses.

A scar is made up of fibrous tissue that has replaced normal tissue destroyed by disease or injury.

ORGANS

Organs are structures composed of tissues that function together for a common purpose.

Body Systems

Body systems are structures and organs that are related to one another and function together. There are a number of different ways to group organs and structures together, and the number of body systems may vary in different textbooks. The following are 9 of 10 commonly recognized body systems. The 10th system, the circulatory system, is discussed in greater detail in Chapter 6.

SKELETAL SYSTEM

Functions

The skeletal system is the framework that gives the body shape and support, protects internal organs, and with the muscular system provides movement and leverage. It is also responsible for calcium storage and **hemopoiesis** (he'mopoy-e'sis) or **hematopoiesis** (hem'a-to-poy-e'sis), the production of blood cells, which normally occurs in the bone marrow.

Test your bone identification skills with Labeling Exercise 5-5 in the WORKBOOK.

Structures

Structures of the skeletal system include all the bones (206), joints, and supporting connective tissue that form the skeleton (Fig. 5-5).

Bones

Bones are a special type of dense connective tissue consisting of bone cells surrounded by hard deposits of calcium salts. They are living tissue with their own network of blood vessels, lymph vessels, and nerves. Bones can be classified by shape into four groups, as shown in Table 5-3.

KEY POINT Bones of particular importance in blood collection are the distal **phalanx** of the finger and the **calcaneus** or heel bone of the foot.

Joints

A joint is the junction or union between two or more bones. Freely movable joints have a cavity that contains a viscid (sticky), colorless liquid called **synovial fluid.** Some joints have a small sac nearby called a **bursa** (bur'sa) (pl. bursae) (bur'se) that is filled with synovial fluid. Bursae help ease movement over and around areas subject to friction, such as prominent joint parts or where tendons pass over bone.

Supporting Connective Tissue

Supporting connective tissue includes fibrous connective tissue, ligaments (thick bands of a special type of fibrous connective tissue), and a dense type of hard, nonvascular connective tissue called cartilage.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the skeletal system are listed in Box 5-1.

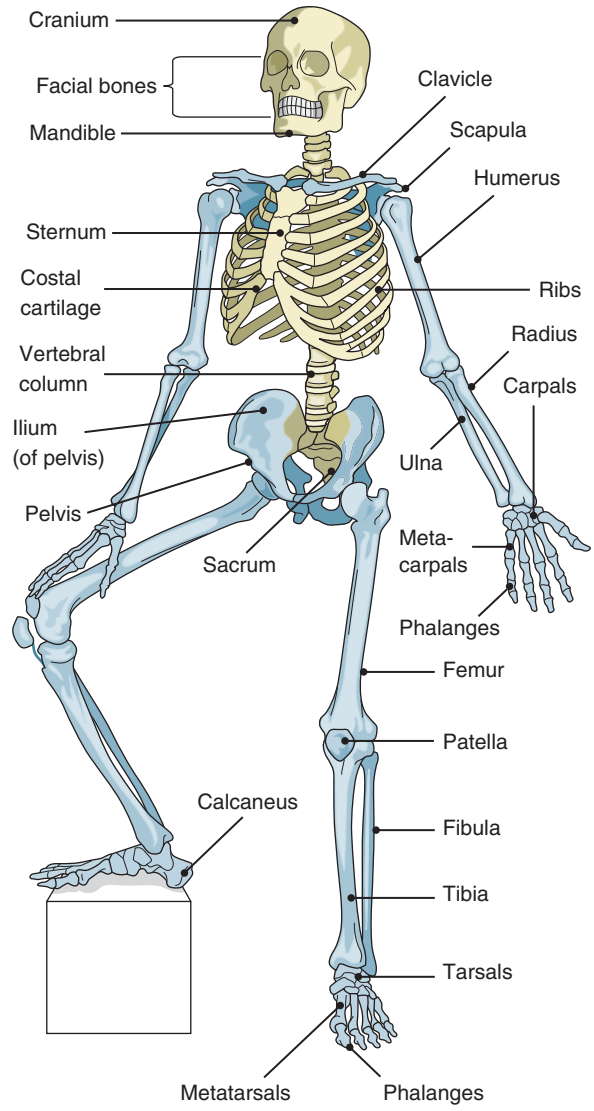


Figure 5-5 Human skeleton. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:128.)

MUSCULAR SYSTEM

Functions

The muscular system gives the body the ability to move, maintain posture, and produce heat. It also plays a role in organ function and blood circulation. Muscle cells have the ability to contract, which produces muscle movement. Muscle tone, a steady partial contraction of muscles, helps the body maintain posture. Muscle cell metabolism produces heat as a by-product.

TABLE 5-3 Classification of Bones by Shape

Bone Shape	Examples
Flat	Rib bones and most skull (cranial) bones
Irregular	Back bones (vertebrae) and some facial bones
Long	Leg (femur, tibia, fibula), arm (humerus, radius, ulna), and hand bones (metacarpals, phalanges)
Short	Wrist (carpals) and ankle bones (tarsals)

BOX 5-1 EXAMPLES OF SKELETAL SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Skeletal System Disorders

Arthritis (ar-thri"tis): joint disorder characterized by joint inflammation, pain, and swelling
Bone tumors: joint disorder characterized by joint inflammation, pain, and swelling
Bursitis (bur-si"tis): inflammation of a bursa (fluid filled sac near a joint)
Gout (gowt): a painful form of arthritis precipitated by deposits of needle-like uric acid crystals in the joints and surrounding tissues as a result of faulty uric acid metabolism
Osteomyelitis (os'te-o-mi'el-i'tis): inflammation of the bone (especially the marrow), caused by bacterial infection
Osteochrondritis (os'te-o-kon-dri'tis): inflammation of the bone and cartilage
Osteoporosis (os'te-por-o'sis): disorder involving loss of bone density
Rickets (rik'ets): abnormal bone formation indirectly resulting from lack of vitamin D needed for calcium absorption

Tests for Skeletal System Disorders

- Alkaline phosphatase (ALP) (bone specific)
- Calcium (ionized)
- C-Telopeptide
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- Osteocalcin
- Phosphorus
- Rheumatoid arthritis test (RA latex)
- Synovial fluid analysis
- Uric acid, serum, and 24-hour urine
- Vitamin D

KEY POINT Skeletal muscle movement helps keep blood moving through your veins. For example, moving your arms helps move blood from your fingertips back to your heart.

Check out Labeling Exercise 5-6 in the WORKBOOK to help strengthen your muscular system knowledge.

Find the name of a muscle type in the WORKBOOK scrambled words drill (Knowledge Drill 5-2).

Structures

The muscular system includes all the muscles of the body, of which there are three types: cardiac, skeletal, (Fig. 5-6) and smooth (visceral). Muscle type (Fig. 5-7) is determined by location, **histological** (microscopic) cellular characteristics, and how muscle action is controlled (see Table 5-4).

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the muscular system are listed in Box 5-2.

TABLE 5-4 Comparison of the Different Types of Muscle

	Smooth	Cardiac	Skeletal
Location	Wall of hollow organs, vessels, respiratory passageways	Wall of heart	Attached to bones
Cell characteristics	Tapered at each end, branching networks, nonstriated	Branching networks; special membranes (intercalated disks) between cells; single nucleus; lightly striated	Long and cylindrical; multinucleated heavily striated
Control	Involuntary	Involuntary	Voluntary
Action	Produces peristalsis; contracts and relaxes slowly; may sustain contraction	Pumps blood out of heart; self-excitatory but influenced by nervous system and hormones	Produces movement at joints; stimulated by nervous system; contracts and relaxes rapidly

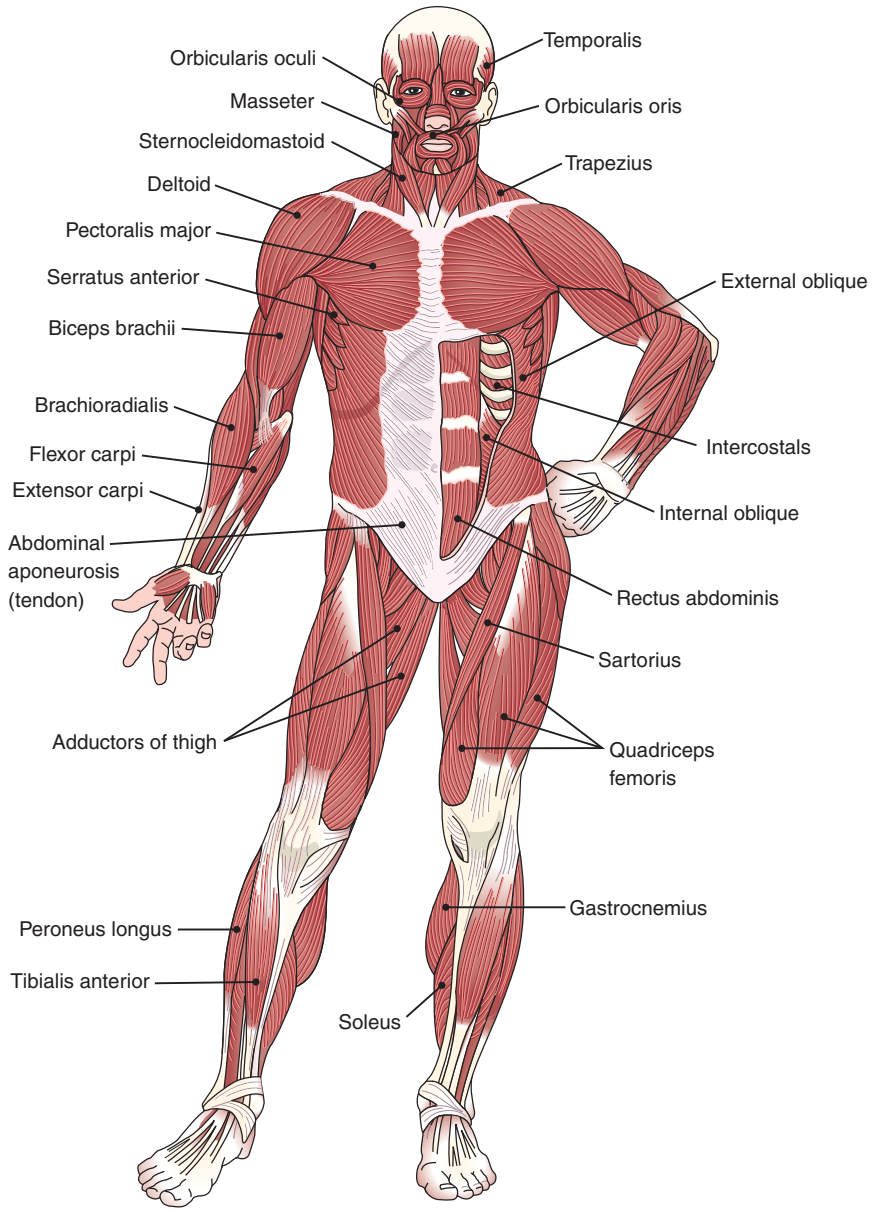


Figure 5-6 Muscular system: Superficial skeletal muscles, anterior view. Associated structures are labeled in parentheses.

INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM

Functions

The skin and accessory structures within it form the integumentary system. **Integument** (in-teg'u-ment) means "covering" or "skin." The skin (Fig. 5-8), the largest organ of the body, is the cover that protects the body from bacterial invasion, dehydration, and the harmful rays of the sun. Structures within the skin help regulate body temperature, eliminate small amounts of waste through sweat, receive environmental stimuli (sensation of heat, cold, touch, and pain), and manufacture vitamin D from sunlight.

Can you identify the skin structures in Labeling Exercise 5-7 in the WORKBOOK?

Structures

The integumentary system consists of the skin and associated structures referred to as appendages (Table 5-5), which include **exocrine glands** (oil and sweat glands), hair, and nails. It also includes blood vessels, nerves, and sensory organs within the skin.

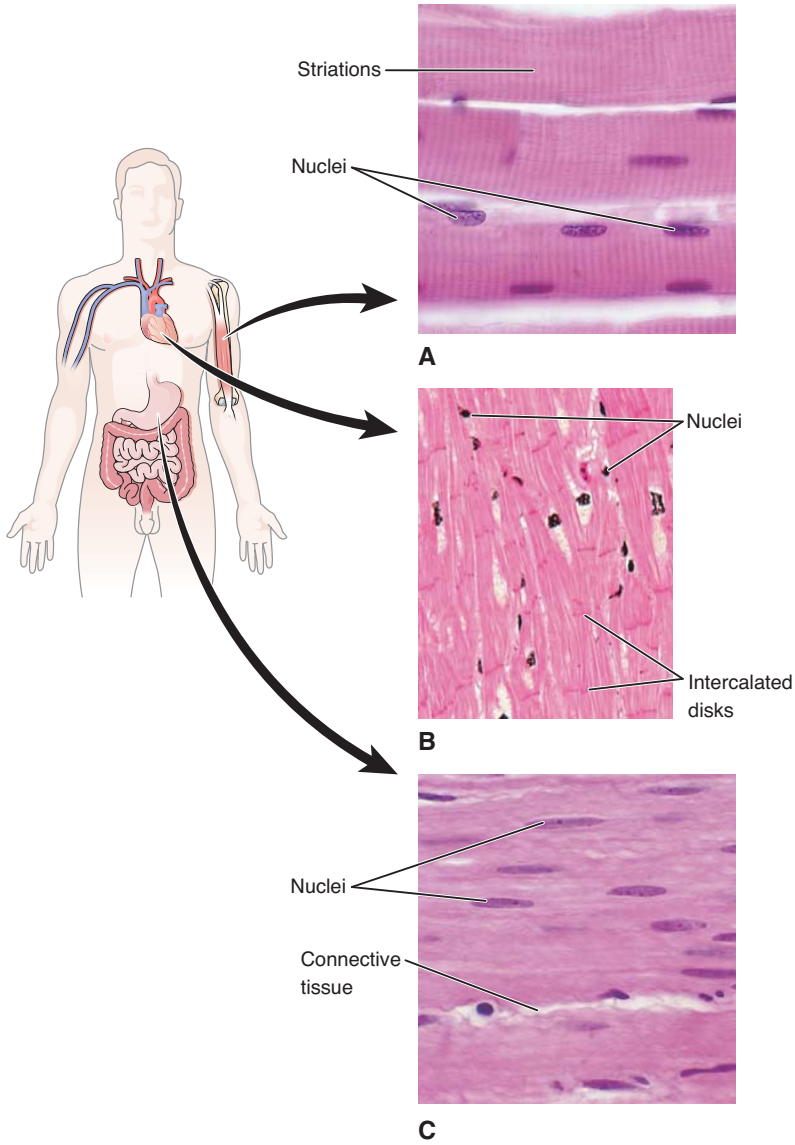


Figure 5-7 Muscle tissue. **A.** Skeletal muscle cells have bands (striations) and multiple nuclei. **B.** Cardiac muscle makes up the wall of the heart. **C.** Smooth muscle is found in soft body organs and in vessels. (**A** and **C** reprinted with permission from Cormack DH. *Essential Histology,* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001; **B** reprinted with permission from Gartner LP, Hiatt JL. *Color Atlas of Histology,* 4th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.)

Skin Layers

There are two main layers of the skin, the **epidermis** (ep'i-der'mis) and the **dermis.** The dermis lies on top of a layer of **subcutaneous** tissue.

Epidermis

The epidermis is the outermost and thinnest layer of the skin. It is primarily made up of **stratified** (layered), **squamous** (scale-like) epithelial cells. The epidermis is **avascular,** meaning it contains no blood or lymph vessels. The only living cells of the epidermis are in its deepest layer, the **stratum germinativum** (ger-mi-na-ti'vum), also called stratum **basale** (ba'sal'e), which is the only layer where mitosis (cell division) occurs. It is also where the skin pigment **melanin** is produced. Cells in the stratum germinativum are nourished by diffusion of nutrients from the dermis. As the cells divide, they are pushed toward the surface, where they gradually die from lack of nourishment and become **keratinized** (hardened), which helps thicken and protect the skin.

BOX 5-2 EXAMPLES OF MUSCULAR SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Muscular System Disorders

Atrophy (at'ro-fe): a decrease in size (wasting) of a muscle usually due to inactivity
Muscular dystrophy (dis'tro-fe) (MD): genetic disease in which muscles waste away or atrophy
Myalgia (mi-al'je-ah): painful muscle
Tendonitis (ten'dun i'tis): inflammation of muscle tendons, usually due to overexertion

Tests for Muscular System Disorders

- Antinuclear antibody (ANA)
- Autoimmune profile
- Cold agglutinin titer, quantitative
- Creatine
- Creatine kinase (CK), total plus isoenzymes
- Electromyography
- Lactic acid
- Lactate dehydrogenase (LD/LDH)
- Myoglobin
- Tissue biopsy or culture

Dermis

The dermis, also called corium or true skin, is the inner layer of the skin. It is much thicker than the epidermis and is composed of elastic and fibrous connective tissue. Elevations called **papillae** (pa-pil'e) and resulting depressions in the dermis where it joins the epidermis give rise to the ridges and grooves that form fingerprints. This area is often referred to as the **papillary dermis.** The dermis contains blood and lymph vessels, nerves, **sebaceous** (se-ba'shus) and **sudoriferous** (su-dor-if'er-us) **glands,** and **hair follicles.** These structures can also extend into the subcutaneous layer.

Subcutaneous

The **subcutaneous** (beneath the skin) **layer** is composed of connective and adipose (fat) tissue that connects the skin to the surface muscles.

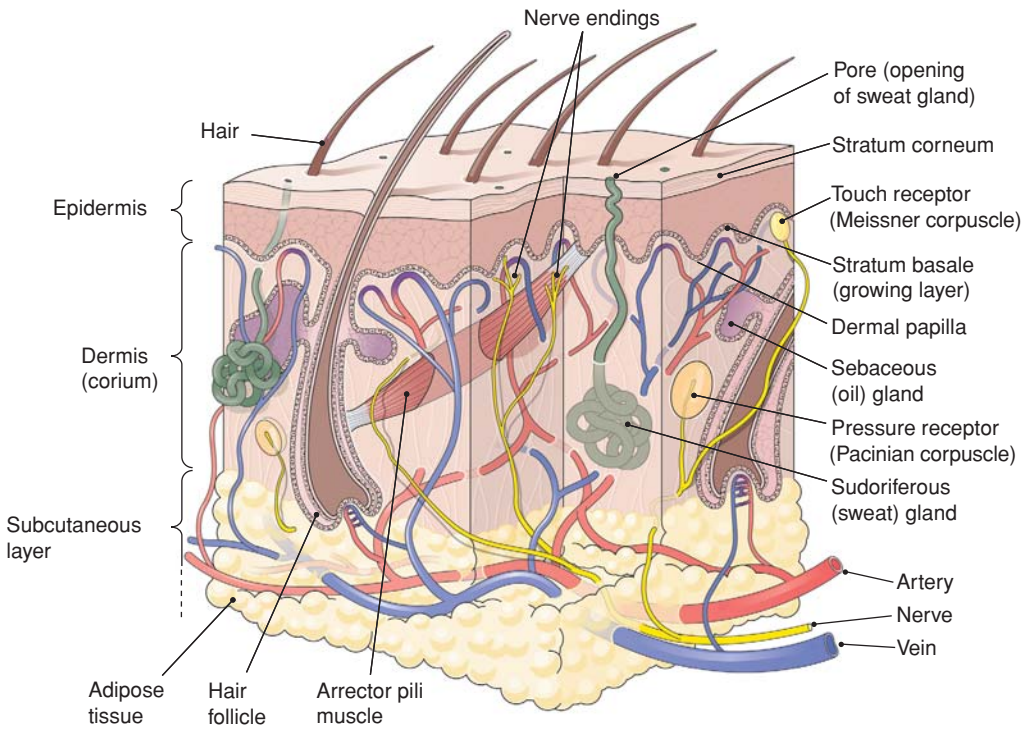


Figure 5-8 Cross section of the skin. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:108.)

TABLE 5-5 Skin Appendages

Appendage	Description	Function
Hair	Nonliving material primarily composed of **keratin** (ker'a-tin), a tough protein	Protection
Hair follicles	Sheaths that enclose hair and contain a bulb of cells at the base from which hair develops	Produce hair
Arrector pili	Tiny, smooth muscles attached to hair follicles	Responsible for the formation of "goose bumps" as they react to pull the hair up straight when a person is cold or frightened When the muscle contracts, it presses on the nearby sebaceous gland, causing it to release sebum to help lubricate the hair and skin
Nails	Nonliving keratin material that grows continuously as new cells form from the nail root	Protect the fingers and toes and help grasp objects
Sebaceous (oil) glands	Glands connected to hair follicles; called oil glands because they secrete an oily substance called **sebum** (se'bum)	Sebum helps lubricate the skin and hair to keep it from drying out
Sudoriferous (sweat) glands	Coiled dermal structures with ducts that extend through the epidermis and end in a pore on the skin surface	Produce perspiration, a mixture of water, salts, and waste

BOX 5-3 EXAMPLES OF INTEGUMENTARY SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Integumentary System Disorders

Acne (ak'ne): inflammatory disease of sebaceous glands and hair follicles
Dermatitis (der"ma-ti'tis): skin inflammation
Decubitis ulcers (bed sores): Necrosis of the skin and underlying tissue due to constant pressure or friction at the site
Fungal infections: invasion of the skin, hair, or nails by fungi such as tinea (e.g., ringworm)
Herpes (her'pez): eruption of blisters (e.g., fever blisters or cold sores) usually caused by a virus
Impetigo (im-pe-ti'go): contagious skin infection caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* or group A streptococci
Keloid (ke'loyd): elevated overgrowth of scar tissue at a wound or incision site
Pediculosis (pe-dik"u-lo'sis): lice infestation
Pruritus (proo-ri'tus): itching
Psoriasis (so-ri'a-sis): chronic skin condition of unknown origin characterized by clearly defined red patches of scaly skin
Skin cancer (kan'ser): (e.g., basal cell, squamous, and melanoma); uncontrolled growth of malignant cells

Tests for Integumentary System Disorders

Biopsy
Microbiology cultures
Skin scrapings for fungal culture
Skin scrapings for KOH (potassium hydroxide) preparation
Tissue cultures

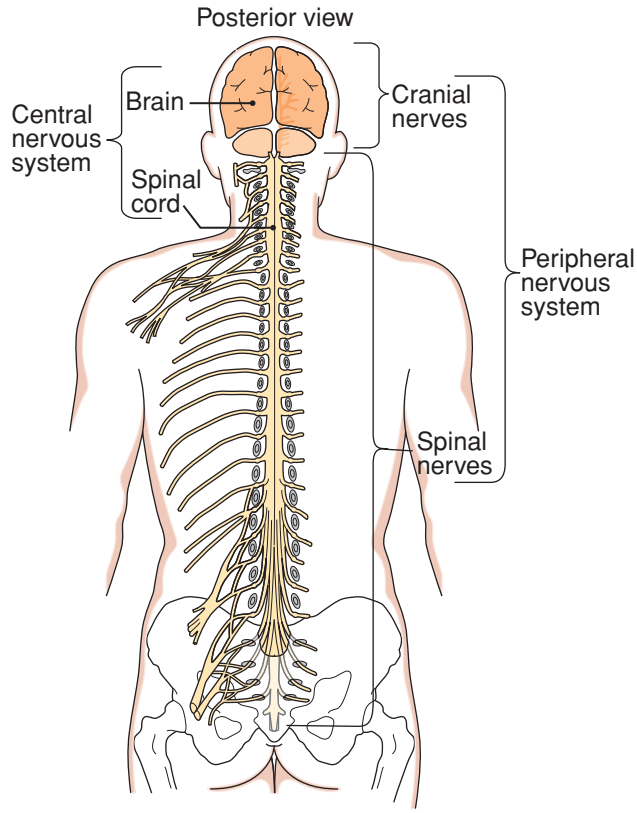


Figure 5-9 Structural divisions of the nervous system. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:188.)

Aging causes thinning of the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous layer. This makes the skin more translucent and fragile and leaves the blood vessels less well-protected. As a result the elderly bruise more easily.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the integumentary system are listed in Box 5-3.

NERVOUS SYSTEM

Functions

The nervous system (Fig. 5-9) controls and coordinates activities of the various body systems by means of electrical impulses and chemical substances sent to and received from all parts of the body. The nervous system has two functional divisions, the somatic nervous system and the autonomic nervous system, identified by the type of control (voluntary or involuntary), and according to the type of tissue stimulated (Table 5-6).

TABLE 5-6 Functional Nervous System Divisions

Division	Function	Type of Control	Tissue Stimulated
Autonomic	Conducts impulses that affect activities of the organs, vessels, and glands	Involuntary	Cardiac muscle, smooth muscle, and glands
Somatic	Conducts impulses that allow an individual to consciously control skeletal muscles	Voluntary	Skeletal muscle

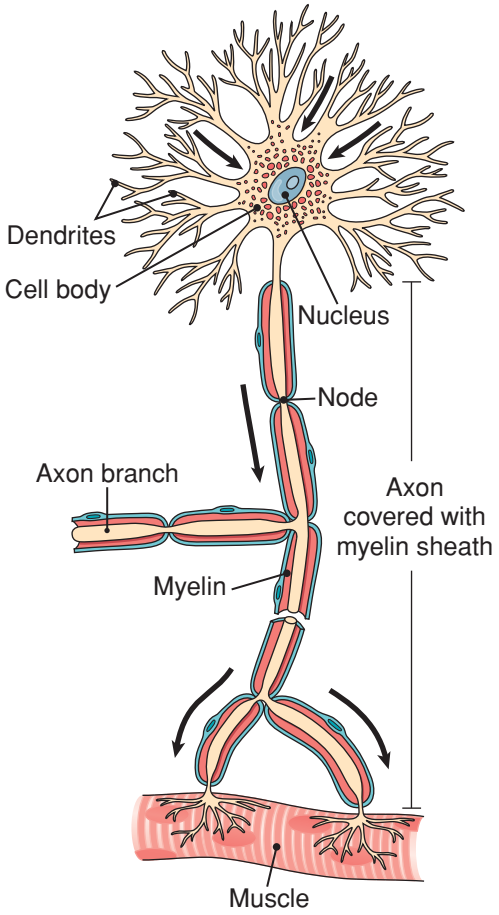


Figure 5-10 Diagram of a motor neuron. The break in the axon denotes length the arrows show the direction of the nerve impulse. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:189.)

Exercise your brain by doing Labeling Exercise 5-9 in the WORKBOOK.

Structures

The fundamental unit of the nervous system is the **neuron** (Fig. 5-10). The two main structural divisions of the nervous system are the **central nervous system (CNS)** and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS).**

Neurons

Neurons are highly complex cells that are capable of conducting messages in the form of impulses that enable the body to interact with its internal and external environment. Neurons have a cell body containing a nucleus and organelles typical of other cells, but are distinguished by unique thread-like fibers called **dendrites** and **axons** that extend out from the cell body. The dendrites carry messages to the nerve cell body, while axons carry messages away from it.

Central Nervous System

The CNS consists of the brain, the nervous system command center that interprets information and dictates responses, and the spinal cord. Every part of the body is in direct communication with the CNS by means of its own set of nerves, which come together in one large trunk that forms the spinal cord.

The brain and spinal cord are surrounded and cushioned by a cavity filled with a clear, plasma-like fluid called **cerebrospinal** (ser'e-bro-spi'nal) **fluid** (CSF). The cavity is completely enclosed and protected by three layers of connective tissue called the **meninges** (me-nin'jez). When CSF is needed for testing, a physician performs a **lumbar puncture** (spinal tap) to enter the cavity and obtain a CSF sample.

BOX 5-4 EXAMPLES OF NERVOUS SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Nervous System Disorders

Amyotrophic (a-mi"-o-tro'fik) lateral sclerosis (skle-ro'sis) (ALS): a disease involving muscle weakness and atrophy due to degeneration of portions of the brain and spinal cord
Encephalitis (en-sef-a-li'tis): inflammation of the brain
Epilepsy (ep'I-lep'se): recurrent pattern of seizures
Hydrocephalus (hi'dro-sef"a-lus): accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid in the brain
Meningitis (men-in-ji'tis): inflammation of the membranes of the spinal cord or brain
Multiple sclerosis (MS): disease involving destruction of the myelin sheath of CNS nerves
Neuralgia (nu-ral'je-a): severe pain along a nerve
Parkinson's disease: chronic nervous disease characterized by fine muscle tremors and muscle weakness
Shingles (shing'gelz): acute eruption of herpes blisters along the course of a peripheral nerve

Tests for Nervous System Disorders

- Acetylcholine receptor antibody
- Cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) analysis
  - Cell count
  - Glucose
  - Protein
  - Culture
- Cholinesterase
- Dilantin (phenytoin)
- Electroencephalogram (EEG)
- Serotonin

Lumbar puncture involves inserting a hollow needle into the space between the third and forth lumbar vertebrae. There is no danger of injuring the spinal cord with the needle in this area because the spinal cord ends at the first lumbar vertebra.

Peripheral Nervous System

The PNS consists of all the nerves that connect the CNS to every part of the body. Two main types of nerves are **motor** or **efferent** (ef'fer-ent) **nerves and sensory or afferent (a'fer-ent) nerves.**

- Motor nerves carry impulses from the CNS to organs, glands, and muscles.
- Sensory nerves carry impulses to the CNS from sensory receptors in various parts of the body.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of nervous system disorders and diagnostic tests are listed in Box 5-4.

ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Functions

The word **endocrine** comes from the Greek words *endon,* meaning "within" and *krinein,* meaning "to secrete." The endocrine system (Fig. 5-11) consists of a group of ductless glands that secrete substances called **hormones** directly into the bloodstream. Hormones are powerful chemical substances that have a profound effect on many body processes such as metabolism, growth and development, reproduction, personality, and the ability of the body to react to stress and resist disease.

Structures

Endocrine system structures include various hormone secreting glands and other organs and structures that have endocrine function. The **pituitary** (pi-tu'i-tar-ee) **gland** is often called

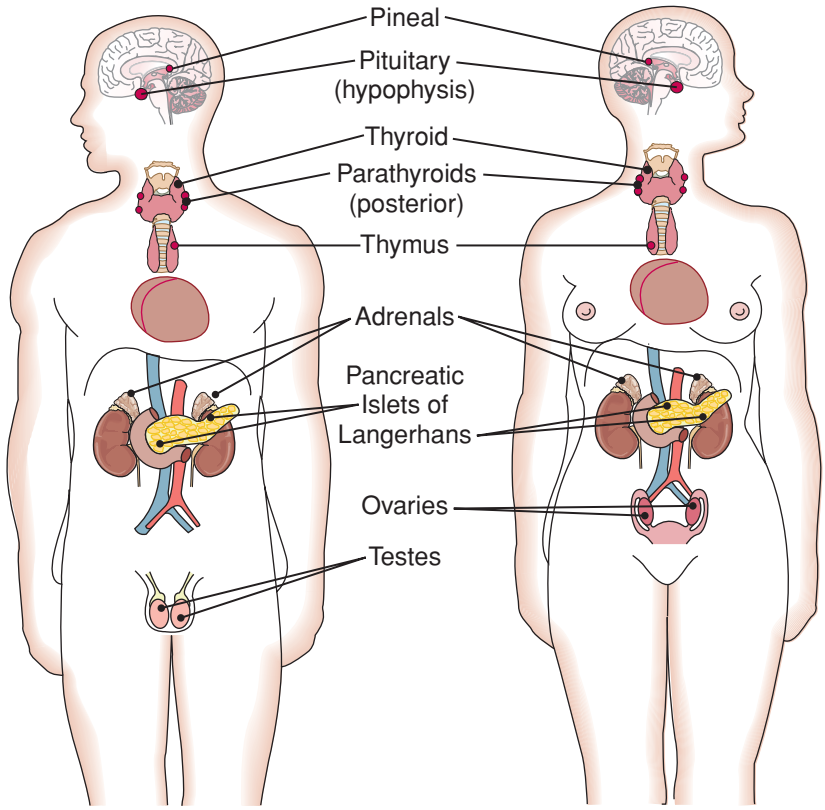


Figure 5-11 Endocrine system. (Adapted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:261.)

Identify the endocrine glands and have fun too with Labeling Exercise 5-10 in the WORKBOOK.

the master gland of this system because it secretes hormones that stimulate the other glands. However, release of hormones by the pituitary is actually controlled by chemicals called releasing hormones sent from the hypothalamus of the brain. Table 5-7 lists the various hormone secreting glands and organs, their location in the body, the major hormones they secrete, and the principal function of each hormone.

FYI

Interesting facts about hormones:

- *Adrenal hormones adrenaline and noradrenaline are known as the "fight-or-flight" hormones because of their effects when the body is under stress. They act by increasing blood pressure, heart activity, metabolism, and glucose release, permitting the body to do an extraordinary amount of work.*
- *Because the pineal hormone melatonin plays a role in promoting sleep, travelers sometimes take melatonin pills to help overcome the effects of jet lag brought on by crossing different time zones.*
- *Production of thyroid hormones requires the presence of adequate amounts of iodine in the blood. Iodine was first added to salt to prevent goiter, an enlargement of the thyroid gland sometimes caused by a lack of iodine in the diet.*

Other Structures with Endocrine Function

There are a number of other body structures with endocrine function. For example:

- The heart ventricles secrete a hormone called B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) in response to volume expansion and pressure overload.
- The kidneys secrete erythropoietin (e-rith'ro-poy'e-tin) (EPO), which stimulates red blood cell production when oxygen levels are low.

TABLE 5-7 Endocrine Glands

Gland	Location	Hormone	Principle Function
Pituitary (pi-tu'i-tar-ee)	In the brain	Adrenocorticotropic (ad-re'no-kor'ti-ko-trop'ik) hormone (ACTH	Stimulates the adrenal glands
		Antidiuretic (an'ti-di-u-ret'ik) hormone (ADH)	Decreases urine production
		Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Stimulates development of ova and sperm and the secretion of reproductive hormones
		Growth hormone (GH)	Regulates growth
		Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	Controls thyroid activity
Pineal (pin'eal)	In the brain, posterior to the pituitary	Melatonin	Helps set diurnal (daily) rhythm with levels lowest around noon and peaking at night; thought to play a role in seasonal affective disorder (SAD)
Thyroid (thi'royd)	In the throat near the larynx	Calcitonin (kal'si-to'nin)	Lowers blood calcium levels
		Triiodothyronine (tri-i-o-do-thi'ro-nin) or T_3	Increases metabolic rate
		Thyroxine (thi-roks'in) or T_4	Increases metabolic rate
Parathyroids (par-a-thi'royds)	In the throat behind the thyroid gland, two on each side	Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Regulates calcium exchange between blood and bones; increases blood calcium levels
Thymus (thi'mus)	In the chest behind the sternum (breastbone)	Thymosin (thi'mo-sin)	Promotes maturation of specialized WBCs called T lymphocytes (T cells) and the development of immunity
Adrenals	One on top of each kidney	Epinephrine (ep-I-nef'rin), also called adrenalin (a-dren'a-lin)	Increases blood pressure, heart rate, metabolism, and release of glucose
		Norepinephrine, also called Noradrenaline	Increases blood pressure, heart rate, metabolism, and release of glucose
		Cortisol (kor'ti-sol)	Active during stress, aids carbohydrate, protein, and fat metabolism
		Aldosterone (al-dos'ter-on)	Helps the kidneys regulate sodium and potassium in the bloodstream
Islets (i'lets) of Langerhans (lahng'er-hanz)	Pancreas	Insulin	Needed for movement of glucose into the cells and decreases blood glucose levels
		Glucagon (gloo'ka-gon)	Increases blood glucose levels by stimulating the liver to release glucose (stored as glycogen) into the bloodstream
Testes	Scrotum	Testosterone (tes-tos'ter-on)	Stimulates growth and functioning of the male reproductive system and development of male sexual characteristics
Ovaries	Pelvic cavity	Estrogens (es'tro-jens)	Stimulate growth and functioning of the female reproductive system and development of female sexual characteristics
		Progesterone (pro'jes-ter-on)	Prepares the body for pregnancy

BOX 5-5 EXAMPLES OF ENDOCRINE SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Endocrine System Disorders

Pituitary Disorders

Acromegaly (ak'ro-meg'a-le): overgrowth of the bones in the hands, feet, and face caused by excessive GH in adulthood.
Diabetes insipidus (di'a-be'tez in-sip'id-us): condition characterized by increased thirst and urine production caused by inadequate secretion of ADH, also called vasopressin (vas'o-pres'in).
Dwarfism: condition of being abnormally small, one cause of which is growth hormone (GH) deficiency in infancy.
Gigantism: excessive development of the body or of a body part due to excessive GH.

Thyroid Disorders

Congenital hypothyroidism: insufficient thyroid activity in a newborn, either from a genetic deficiency or maternal factors such as lack of dietary iron during pregnancy.
Cretinism (kre'tin-izm): severe untreated congenital hypothyroidism in which the development of the child is impaired, resulting in a short, disproportionate body, thick tongue and neck, and mental handicap.
Goiter (goy'ter): enlargement of the thyroid gland.
Hyperthyroidism (Graves' disease): condition characterized by weight loss, nervousness, and protruding eyeballs, due to an increased metabolic rate caused by excessive secretion of the thyroid gland.
Hypothyroidism: condition characterized by weight gain and lethargy due to a decreased metabolic rate caused by decreased thyroid secretion.
Myxedema (hypothyroid syndrome): condition characterized by anemia, slow speech, mental apathy, drowsiness, and sensitivity to cold resulting from decreased thyroid function.

Parathyroid Disorders

Kidney stones and bone destruction caused by hypersecretion of the parathyroids.
Muscle spasms and convulsions caused by hyposecretion of the parathyroids.

Adrenal Disorders

Addison's disease: condition characterized by weight loss, dehydration, and hypotension (abnormally low blood pressure) caused by decreased glucose and sodium levels due to hyposecretion of the adrenal glands.
Aldosteronism: condition characterized by hypertension (high blood pressure) and edema caused by excessive sodium and water retention due to hypersecretion of aldosterone.
Cushing's syndrome: condition characterized by a swollen, "moon-shaped" face and redistribution of fat to the abdomen and back of the neck caused by an excess of cortisone.

Pancreatic Disorders

Diabetes mellitus (di'a-be'tez mel-i-tus): a condition in which there is impaired carbohydrate, fat, and protein metabolism due to a deficiency of insulin.
Diabetes mellitus type I or insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM): type of diabetes in which the body is unable to produce insulin. It is often called juvenile-onset diabetes because it usually appears before 25 years of age.
Diabetes mellitus type II or non–insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM): type of diabetes in which the body is able to produce insulin, but either the amount produced is insufficient or there is impaired use of the insulin produced. This type occurs predominantly in adults.
Hyperglycemia (hi"per-gli-se'me-a): increased blood sugar that often precedes diabetic coma if not treated.
Hyperinsulinism: too much insulin in the blood due to excessive secretion of insulin or an overdose of insulin (insulin shock).
Hypoglycemia (hi"po-gli-se'me-a): abnormally low glucose (blood sugar) often due to hyperinsulinism.

Tests for Endocrine System Disorders

- Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)
- Aldosterone
- Antidiuretic hormone (ADH)
- Cortisol
- Erythropoietin
- Glucagon
- Glucose tolerance test (GTT)
- Glycosylated hemoglobin
- Growth hormone (GH)
- Insulin level
- Thyroid function studies:
  T_3 (Triiodothyronine)
  T_4 (Thyroxine)
  TSH (Thyroid stimulating hormone)

- The lining of the stomach secretes a hormone that stimulates digestion.
- The placenta secretes several hormones that function during pregnancy.

KEY POINT Pregnancy tests are based on a reaction with a hormone called **human chorionic** (ko-re-on'ik) **gonadotropin** (gon-ah-do-tro'pin) (hCG) secreted by embryonic cells that eventually give rise to the placenta.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Endocrine disorders are most commonly caused by tumors, which can cause either **hypersecretion** (secreting too much) or **hyposecretion** (secreting too little) by the gland. Diagnostic tests typically involve measuring hormone levels specific to the gland known or thought to be affected. Examples of diagnostic tests associated with the endocrine system are listed in Box 5-5.

DIGESTIVE SYSTEM

Functions

The digestive system (Fig. 5-12) provides the means by which the body takes in food, breaks it down into usable components for absorption, and eliminates waste products from this process.

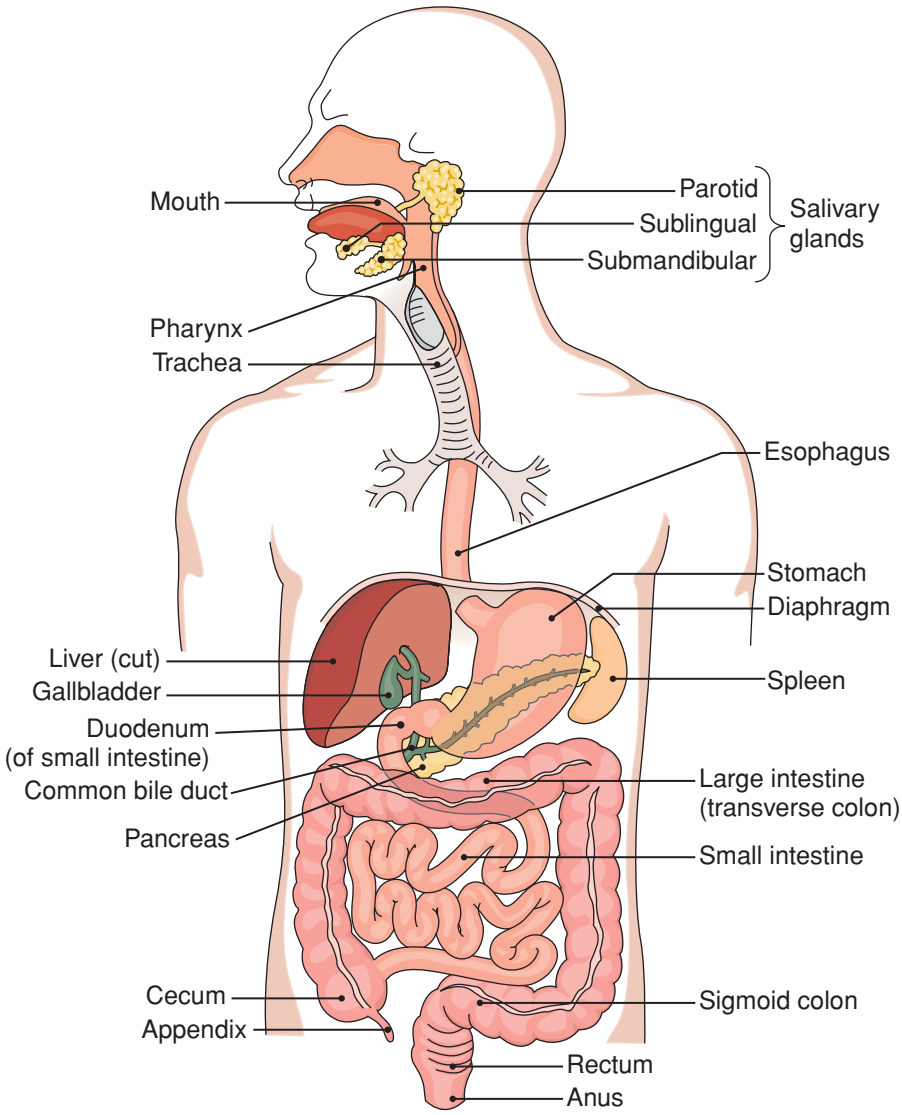


Figure 5-12 Digestive system. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:413.)

Grab your colored markers and do Labeling Exercise 5-11 in the WORKBOOK to help you learn digestive system stuctures.

Structures

The digestive system components form a continuous passageway called the digestive or **gastrointestinal (GI) tract,** which extends from the mouth to the anus through the **pharynx, esophagus,** stomach, and small and large intestines.

Accessory Organs and Structures

The digestive system also includes and is assisted by a number of accessory organs and structures: lips, teeth, tongue, **salivary glands, liver, pancreas,** and **gallbladder.**

Accessory Organ Functions

The lips, teeth, and tongue aid in chewing and swallowing food. The salivary glands secrete saliva, which moistens food and also contains an enzyme that begins the process of starch digestion. Important digestive functions of the liver include glycogen storage, protein catabolism, detoxification of harmful substances, and the secretion of bile necessary for the digestion of fat. Bile is concentrated and stored in the gallbladder. Digestive functions of the pancreas include the secretion of insulin and glucagon and the production of digestive enzymes, including **amylase, lipase,** and **trypsin.**

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the gastrointestinal tract and accessory organs of the digestive system are listed in Box 5-6.

Stomach ulcers, a common digestive system disorder, are sometimes caused by the Helicobacter pylori (H. pylori) *microorganism and are treated with antibiotics in addition to antacids.*

BOX 5-6 EXAMPLES OF DIGESTIVE SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Digestive System Disorders

Appendicitis (a-pen'di-si'tis): inflammation of the appendix
Cholecystitis (ko'le-sis-ti'tis): inflammation of the gallbladder
Colitis (ko-li'tis): inflammation of the colon
Diverticulosis (di'ver-tik'u-lo'sis): pouches in the walls of the colon
Gastritis (gas-tri'tis): inflammation of the stomach lining
Gastroenteritis (gas'tro-en-ter-i'tis): inflammation of the stomach and intestinal tract
Hepatitis (hep'a-ti'tis): inflammation of the liver
Pancreatitis (pan'kre-a-ti'tis): inflammation of the pancreas
Peritonitis (per'i-to-ni'tis): inflammation of the abdominal cavity lining
Ulcer: open sore or lesion

Tests for Digestive System Disorders

Tests for Gastrointestinal Tract Disorders

- C-urea breath test
- Fecal fat
- Gastric analysis
- Occult blood
- Ova and parasites (O&P)
- Serum gastrin analysis
- Stool analysis

Tests for Accessory Organ Disorders

- Ammonia
- Amylase
- Bilirubin (bili)
- Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA)
- Carotene
- Cholesterol
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Glucose
- Glucose tolerance test (GTT)
- Lipase
- Triglycerides

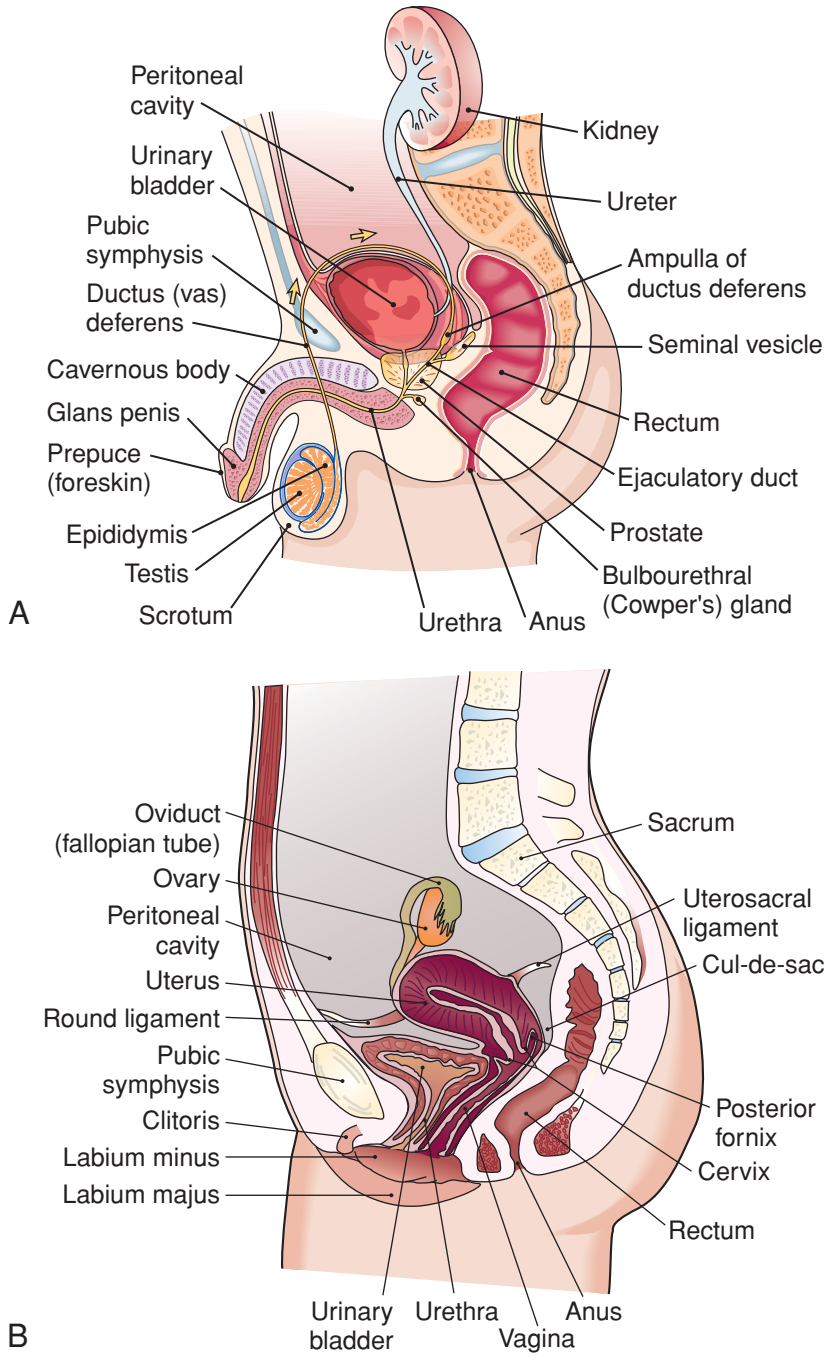


Figure 5-13 Reproductive system. **A.** Male. **B.** Female. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:486,495.)

REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM

Functions

The reproductive system (Fig. 5-13) produces the **gametes** (gam'eets), **sex** or **germ cells,** that are needed to form a new human being. In males, the gametes are called **spermatozoa** (sper'mat-o-zo'a), or sperm. In females, the gametes are called **ova** (o'va), or eggs. Reproduction occurs when an **ovum** (singular of ova) is fertilized by a sperm.

KEY POINT Two chromosomes (called X and Y) determine gender. Every egg contains an X chromosome only. Every sperm contains either an X or a Y chromosome. If an egg is fertilized by a sperm containing an X chromosome, the XX chromosome combination will result in a female fetus. If an egg is fertilized by a sperm containing a Y chromosome, the XY chromosome combination will result in a male fetus.

Boost your ability to identify reproductive system structures by doing Labeling Exercise 5-12 in the WORKBOOK.

Structures

The reproductive system consists of glands called **gonads** (go'nads) and their associated structures and ducts. The gonads manufacture and store the gametes and produce hormones (see the discussion of the endocrine system, above) that regulate the reproductive process.

Structures of the female reproductive system include the ovaries (female gonads), fallopian (fa-lo'pe-an) tubes, uterus, cervix, vagina, and vulva.

The PAP smear, a procedure used to diagnose cervical cancer, is named after George Papanicolaou, who developed the technique.

Structures of the male reproductive system include the testes (male gonads), seminal vesicles, prostate, epididymis (ep'i-did'i-mis), vas deferens (vas def'er-enz), seminal ducts, urethra, penis, spermatic cords, and scrotum.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the reproductive system are listed in Box 5-7.

URINARY SYSTEM

Functions

The urinary system (Fig. 5-14) filters waste products from the blood and eliminates them from the body. It also plays an important role in the regulation of body fluids. Activities of the urinary system result in the creation and elimination of urine.

BOX 5-7 EXAMPLES OF REPRODUCTIVE SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Reproductive System Disorders

Cervical cancer: cancer of the cervix
Infertility: lower than normal ability to reproduce
Ovarian cancer: cancer of the ovaries
Ovarian cyst: a usually nonmalignant growth in an ovary
Prostate cancer: cancer of the prostate gland
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs): diseases such as syphilis, gonorrhea, and genital herpes, which are usually transmitted by sexual contact
Uterine cancer: cancer of the uterus

Tests for Reproductive System Disorders

- Acid phosphatase
- Estrogen
- Follicle stimulating hormone (FSH)
- Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG)
- Luteinizing hormone (LH)
- Microbiological cultures
- PAP smear
- Prostate-specific antigen (PSA)
- Rapid plasmin reagin (RPR)
- Testosterone
- Viral tissue studies

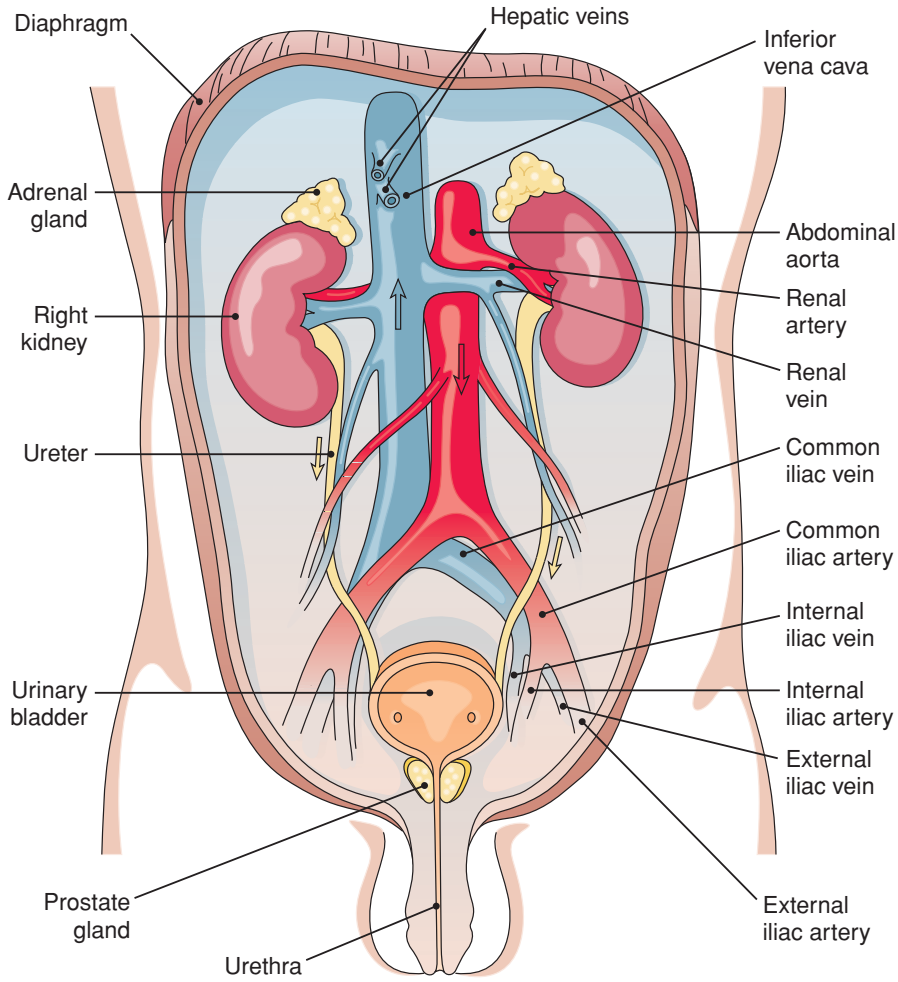


Figure 5-14 Urinary system (male). (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:465.)

Labeling Exercise 5-13 in the WORKBOOK can help you learn the urinary system structures.

Structures

The main structures of the urinary system are two **kidneys,** two **ureters,** a **urinary bladder,** and a **urethra.**

The kidneys are bean-shaped organs located at the back of the abdominal cavity, just above the waistline, one on each side of the body. The kidneys help maintain water and electrolyte balance and eliminate urea (a waste product of protein metabolism). They also produce erythropoietin, a hormone that stimulates red blood cell production, and the enzyme renin, which plays a role in regulating blood pressure.

FYI *Electrolytes include sodium, potassium, chloride, bicarbonate, and calcium ions; they are essential to normal nerve, muscle, and heart activity.*

The functional or basic working unit of the kidney is the **nephron,** of which each kidney contains nearly a million. As blood travels through a nephron, water and dissolved substances including wastes are filtered from it through a tuft of capillaries called the **glomerulus** (pl. glomeruli). The resulting glomerular filtrate travels through other structures within the nephron, where water and essential amounts of substances such as sodium, potassium, and calcium are reabsorbed into the bloodstream. The remaining filtrate is called urine.

The ureter is a narrow muscular tube that transports urine from the kidney to the urinary bladder, located in the anterior portion of the pelvic cavity. The urinary bladder is a muscular

BOX 5-8 URINARY SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Urinary System Disorders

Cystitis (sis-ti'tis): bladder inflammation
Kidney stones: uric acid, calcium phosphate, or oxalate stones in the kidneys, ureter, or bladder
Nephritis (nef-ri'tis): inflammation of the kidneys
Renal (re'nal) failure: sudden and severe impairment of renal function
Uremia (u-re'me-a): impaired kidney function with a buildup of waste products in the blood
Urinary (u'ri-nar"e) tract infection (UTI): infection involving urinary system organs or ducts

Tests for Urinary System Disorders

- Albumin
- Carnitine, total and free
- Creatinine clearance
- Creatinine, serum
- Creatinine, 24-hour urine
- Electrolytes
- Glomerular filtration rate, estimated (eGFR)
- Intravenous pyelography (IVP)
- Kidney function profile
- Osmolality, serum and urine
- Renal biopsy
- Renin activity
- Urea nitrogen, serum
- Urinalysis (UA), routine profile
- Urine culture, comprehensive
- Urine culture and sensitivity (C&S)

sac that serves as a reservoir for the urine. Urine is voided (emptied) from the bladder to the outside of the body through a single tube called the urethra.

KEY POINT Blood creatinine is a measure of kidney function because creatinine is a waste product normally removed from the blood by the kidneys. If kidney function declines, creatinine accumulates in the blood.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the urinary system are listed in Box 5-8.

RESPIRATORY SYSTEM

Functions

The respiratory system (Fig. 5-15) delivers a constant supply of oxygen (O_2) to all the cells of the body and removes carbon dioxide (CO_2), a waste product of cell metabolism. This is accomplished with the help of the circulatory system through respiration.

Respiration

Respiration permits the exchange of O_2 and CO_2 between the blood and the air and involves two processes, **external respiration** and **internal respiration.** During external respiration, O_2 from the air enters the bloodstream in the lungs and CO_2 leaves the bloodstream and is breathed into the air from the lungs. During internal respiration, O_2 leaves the bloodstream and enters the cells in the tissues, and CO_2 from the cells enters the bloodstream.

Although the nose provides the main airway for external respiration, some air enters and leaves through the mouth.

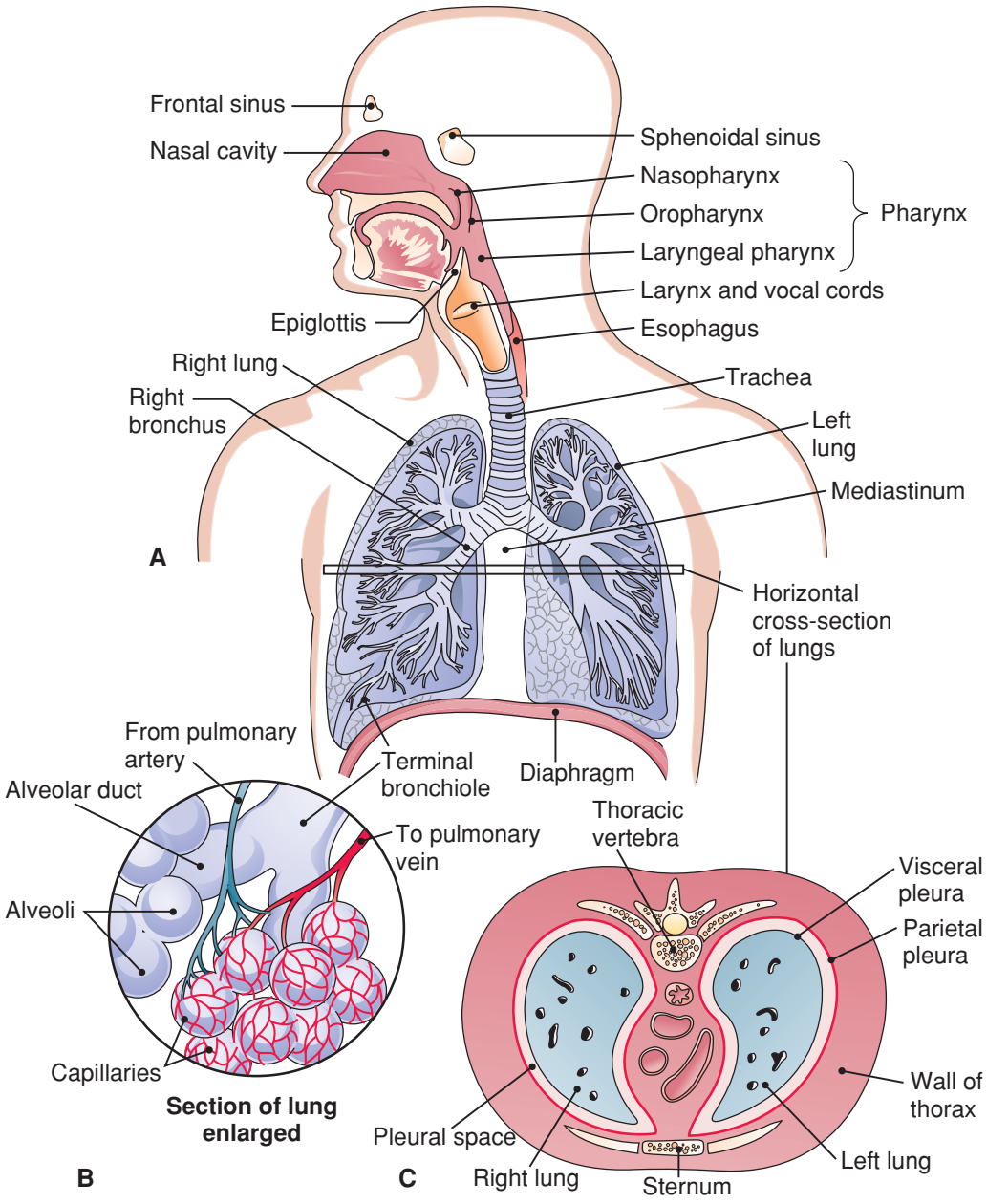


Figure 5-15 Respiratory system. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:387.)

View the Gas Exchange in Alveoli and Oxygen Transport animations at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Gas Exchange and Transport

During normal external respiration (Fig. 5-16), oxygen and carbon dioxide are able to diffuse (go from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration) through the walls of the air sacs and the tiny, one-cell-thick capillaries of the lungs. Blood in lung capillaries is low in O_2 and high in CO_2. Therefore, O_2 from the alveoli diffuses into the capillaries while CO_2 diffuses from the capillaries into the alveoli to be expired (breathed out).

The amount of O_2 that can be carried in the blood plasma is not enough to meet the needs of the body. Fortunately, hemoglobin (a protein in red blood cells) has the ability to bind O_2, increasing the amount the blood can carry by more than 70%. Most of the O_2 that diffuses

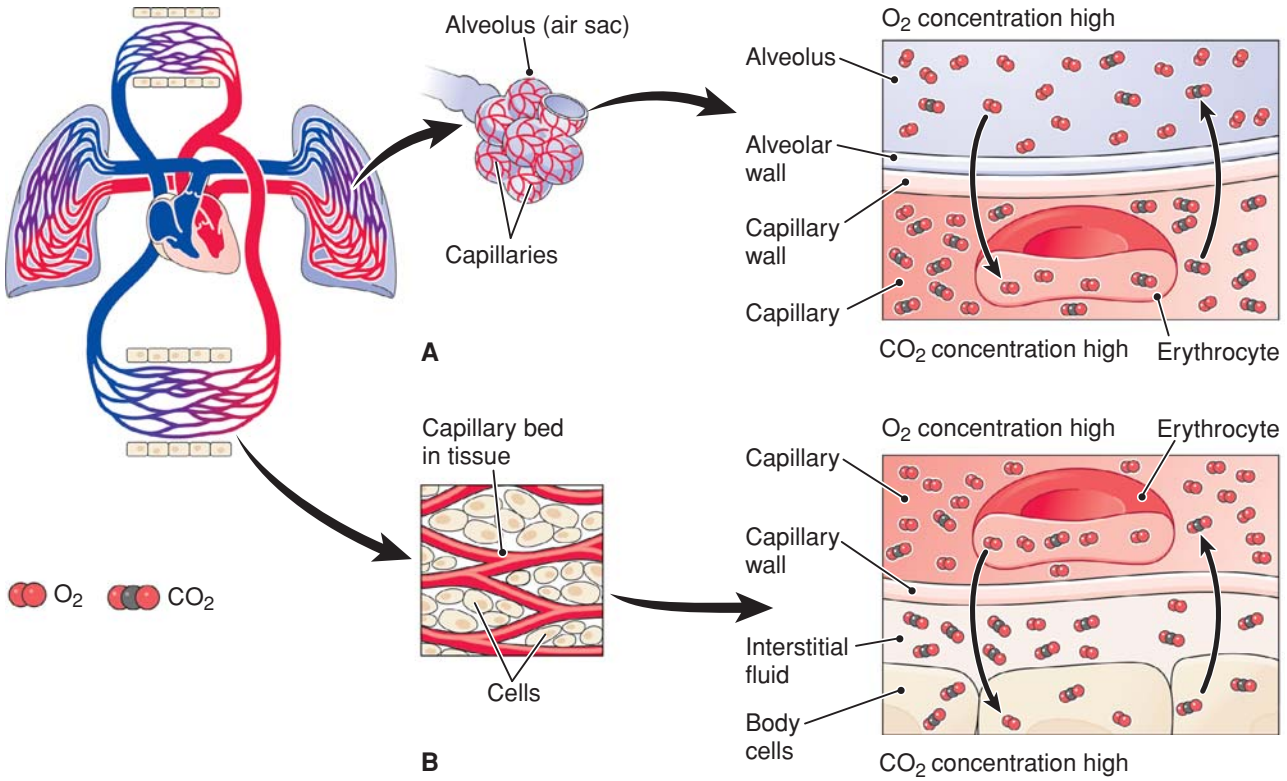


Figure 5-16 Gas exchange. **A.** External exchange between the alveoli and the blood. Oxygen diffuses into the blood and carbon dioxide diffuses out, based on concentration of the two gases in the alveoli and the blood. **B.** Internal exchange between the blood and the cells. Oxygen diffuses out of the blood and into the tissues, while carbon dioxide diffuses from the cells into the blood. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease*, 11th ed. Philadelphia: Williams & Wilkins; 2009:93.)

into the capillaries in the lungs binds to the iron-containing heme portion of hemoglobin molecules. Very little is dissolved in the blood plasma. O_2 combined with hemoglobin is called **oxyhemoglobin.**

Hemoglobin also has the ability to bind with CO_2. Hemoglobin combined with CO_2 is called **carbaminohemoglobin.** However, only about 20% of the CO_2 from the tissues is carried to the lungs in this manner. Approximately 10% is carried as gas dissolved in the blood plasma. The remaining 70% is carried as **bicarbonate ion,** which is formed in the red blood cells and released into the blood plasma. In the lungs, the bicarbonate ion reenters the red blood cells and is released as CO_2 again so it can diffuse into the alveoli and be exhaled by the body.

Whether oxygen or hemoglobin associates (combines) with or disassociates (releases) from hemoglobin depends upon the partial pressure (P) of each gas. Partial pressure is defined as the pressure exerted by one gas in a mixture of gases. Oxygen associates with hemoglobin in the lungs, where the **partial pressure of oxygen (Po_2)** is increased, and disassociates from hemoglobin in the tissues, where the Po_2 is decreased. Carbon dioxide associates with hemoglobin in the tissues, where the **partial pressure of carbon dioxide (Pco_2)** is increased, and disassociates with hemoglobin in the lungs, where the Pco_2 is decreased.

Acid–Base Balance

CO_2 levels play a major role in the acid–base (pH) balance of the blood. If CO_2 levels increase, blood pH decreases (i.e., becomes more acidic), which can lead to a dangerous condition called **acidosis.** The body responds by increasing the rate of respiration (hyperventilation) to increase O_2 levels. Prolonged hyperventilation causes a decrease in CO_2, resulting in an increase in pH (i.e., the blood is more alkaline) and a condition called **alkalosis.** During normal

TABLE 5-8 Major Structures of Respiratory Tract

Structure	Description/Function	Flow of Air to the Lungs
Nose	Provides the main airway for respiration warms, moistens, and filters air; provides a resonance chamber for the voice; and contains receptors for the sense of smell	Air enters the nose through the nares (nostrils) and passes through the nasal cavities into the pharynx
Pharynx	A funnel-shaped passageway that receives food from the mouth and delivers it to the esophagus and air from the nose and carries it into the larynx. (A thin, leaf-shaped structure called the **epiglottis** covers the entrance of the larynx during swallowing)	Air enters the upper end of the pharynx, called the nasopharynx, and exits via the laryngeal pharynx that opens into the larynx
Larynx	The enlarged upper end of the trachea that houses the vocal cords, the ends of which mark the division between the upper and lower respiratory tracts	Air passes through the larynx into the lower trachea
Trachea	A tube that extends from the larynx into the upper part of the chest and carries air to the lungs	Air moves through the trachea into the bronchi in the lungs
Lungs	Organs that house the bronchial branches and the alveoli where gas exchange takes place	Air moves throughout the lungs within the bronchi
Bronchi (singular, bronchus)	Two airways that branch off the lower end of the trachea and lead into the lungs; one branch each into the left and right lungs, where they subdivide into secondary bronchi that divide into smaller and smaller branches	Air moves through the branches of the bronchi, referred to as the *bronchial tree*, until it reaches the terminal bronchioles
Terminal bronchioles	The smallest divisions of the bronchi, the ends of which contain the alveoli	Air flows out of the terminal bronchioles into the alveoli
Alveoli (singular, alveolus)	Tiny air sacs covered with blood capillaries where the exchange of gases in the lungs takes place	Oxygen leaves the alveoli and enters the capillaries. Carbon dioxide leaves the capillaries and enters the alveoli to be expired

respiratory function, the bicarbonate ion acts as a buffer to keep the blood pH within a steady range of 7.35 to 7.45.

Test your ability to identify respiratory system structures with Labeling Exercise 5-14 in the WORKBOOK.

Structures

Respiratory Tract

The major structures of the respiratory system form the respiratory tract, a continuous pathway for the flow of air to and from the air sacs in the lungs. The major respiratory tract structures include the nose, **pharynx** (throat), **larynx** (voice box), **trachea** (windpipe), **bronchi,** and **lungs.** Table 5-8 describes the major respiratory tract structures in the order of the flow of air to the lungs.

Lungs

The human body has two lungs, a right with three lobes and a left with only two lobes because of the space needed for the heart. The lungs are encased in a thin membrane consisting of several layers called **pleura.** An infinitely small space between the layer that covers the lungs and one that lines the inner thoracic cavity is called the **pleural space** or cavity.

Fluid within the pleural cavity (pleural fluid) helps keep the lungs expanded by reducing surface tension. It also helps prevent friction as the lungs expand and contract.

Alveoli

The **alveoli** (al-ve'o-li) (singular alveolus) are the tiny air sacs in the lungs where the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide takes place. The walls of the alveoli are a single layer of squamous (flat) epithelial cells surrounded by a thin membrane. The thinness of the walls allows gases to easily pass between the alveoli and the blood in the tiny capillaries that cover them. The thinness of the walls would ordinarily leave them prone to collapse. However, a coating of fluid called **surfactant** lowers the surface tension (or pull) on the walls and helps to stabilize them.

KEY POINT A deficiency of surfactant in premature infants causes the alveoli to collapse, leading to a condition called **infant respiratory distress syndrome,** or IRDS. Premature infants can be given animal or synthetic surfactant through inhalation in an effort to treat this life-threatening condition.

Disorders and Diagnostic Tests

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the respiratory system are listed in Box 5-9.

BOX 5-9 EXAMPLES OF RESPIRATORY SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Respiratory System Disorders

Apnea (ap'ne-ah): a temporary cessation of breathing
Asthma (az'ma): difficulty in breathing accompanied by wheezing caused by spasm or swelling of the bronchial tubes
Bronchitis (brong-ki'tis): inflammation of the mucous membrane of the bronchial tubes
Cystic fibrosis (sis'tik fi-bro'sis): genetic endocrine disease causing an excess production of mucus
Dyspnea (disp'ne-ah): difficult or labored breathing
Emphysema (em'fi-se'ma): chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)
Hypoxia (hi-pok'se-ah): deficiency of oxygen
Infant Respiratory Distress Syndrome (IRDS): severe impairment of respiratory function in the newborn due to a lack of surfactant in the baby's lungs
Pleurisy (ploo'ris-e): inflammation of the pleural membrane
Pneumonia (nu-mo'ne-a): inflammation of the lungs
Pulmonary edema (pul'mo-ne-re e-de'ma): accumulation of fluid in the lungs
Respiratory syncytial (sin-si'shal) virus: major cause of respiratory distress in infants and children
Rhinitis (ri-ni'tis): inflammation of the nasal mucous membranes
Tonsillitis (ton-sil-i'tis): infection of the tonsils
Tuberculosis (tu-ber"ku-lo'sis) (TB): infectious respiratory system disease caused by the bacteria *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*
Upper respiratory infection (URI): infection of the nose, throat, larynx, or upper trachea such as that caused by a cold virus

Tests for Respiratory System Disorders

- Acid fast bacillus (AFB) culture/smear
- Arterial blood gases (ABG)
- Capillary blood gases (CBG)
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Cocci (IgG/IgM)
- Drug levels
- Electrolytes (lytes)
- Microbiology cultures
- Pleuracentesis
- Skin tests: PPD (tuberculin or TB test)
- Sputum culture
- Bronchial washings

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **The transverse plane divides the body:**
   a. diagonally into upper and lower portions.
   b. horizontally into upper and lower portions.
   c. vertically into front and back portions.
   d. vertically into right and left portions.

2. **Proximal is defined as:**
   a. away from the middle.
   b. closest to the middle.
   c. farthest from the center.
   d. nearest to the point of attachment.

3. **The process by which the body maintains a state of equilibrium is:**
   a. anabolism.
   b. catabolism.
   c. homeostasis.
   d. venostasis.

4. **Which part of a cell contains the chromosomes or genetic material?**
   a. Cytoplasm
   b. Golgi apparatus
   c. Nucleus
   d. Organelles

5. **What type of muscle lines the walls of blood vessels?**
   a. Cardiac
   b. Skeletal
   c. Striated
   d. Visceral

6. **Which of the following is an accessory organ of the digestive system?**
   a. Heart
   b. Liver
   c. Lung
   d. Ovary

7. **Evaluation of the endocrine system involves:**
   a. blood gas studies.
   b. drug monitoring.
   c. hormone determinations.
   d. spinal fluid analysis.

8. **The spinal cord and brain are covered by protective membranes called:**
   a. meninges.
   b. neurons.
   c. papillae.
   d. viscera.

9. **Sudoriferous glands are**
   a. connected to hair follicles.
   b. endocrine system structures.
   c. referred to as sweat glands.
   d. responsible for goose bumps.

10. **Most gas exchange between blood and tissue takes place in the:**
    a. arterioles.
    b. capillaries.
    c. pulmonary vein.
    d. venules.

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 5-1 *Body System Structures and Disorders*

A college student found that she was studying many hours a day after she arrived home and did most of it on the floor leaning on her elbows. She found no time to exercise except weekends, when she hit the pavement for 10 or more miles both days because she loved running and had been a marathon runner in the past. On Monday mornings, she would experience pain in her leg muscles and tendons. After a few months, she noticed a very large fluid-filled sac on her elbow.

QUESTIONS

1. *What are the names of the conditions she is experiencing in her leg muscles and tendons?*
2. *What is that fluid-filled sac on her elbow called and why is it there?*
3. *What most likely caused her problems?*

CASE STUDY 5-2 *Body Systems, Disorders, Diagnostic Tests, and Directional Terms*

A phlebotomist responded to a call from the ER to collect stat glucose and insulin levels on a patient. The patient was unconscious, but the patient's husband granted permission for the blood draw. The patient had an IV in the left arm and a pulmonary function technician had just collected ABGs in the right wrist, so the phlebotomist elected to draw the sample distal to the IV.

QUESTIONS

1. *What body systems of the patient are being evaluated?*
2. *What is most likely wrong with the patient?*
3. *Where did the phlebotomist collect the specimen?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009.

Cohen, BJ, Taylor JJ. *Memmler's Structure and Function of the Human Body,* 9th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009.

Fischbach FT, Dunning MB. *Laboratory Diagnostic Tests,* 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.

Herlihy B. *The Human Body in Health and Illness,* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006.

Stedman's Medical Dictionary for the Health Professions and Nursing, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.

Turgeon ML. *Linne & Ringsrud's Clinical Laboratory Science: The Basics and Routine Techniques*, 5th ed. St. Louis: Mosby/Elsevier; 2006.

Venes MD. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary,* 20th ed. Philadelphia: Davis; 2005.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Animations:
  - Gas Exchange in Alveoli
  - Oxygen Transport
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash-card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Anatomy Arcade**: http://www.anatomyarcade.com
- GetBodySmart.com: http://www.getbodysmart.com/ap/site/resourcelinks/links.html
- **free-ed.net™, free education on the Internet**: http://www.free-ed.net/free-ed/freeedmain01.asp
- **Human Anatomy online**: http://ect.downstate.edu/courseware/haonline/index.htm
- **National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases**: http://www2.niddk.nih.gov/

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

CHAPTER

6

The Circulatory System

KEY TERMS

Want to increase your familiarity with these terms? Do WORKBOOK Matching Exercise 6-1.

antecubital
arrhythmia
atria
basilic vein
blood pressure
cardiac cycle
cephalic vein
coagulation
crossmatch
diastole
ECG/EKG
erythrocyte
extrinsic
fibrinolysis
hemostasis
intrinsic
leukocyte
median cubital vein
plasma
pulmonary circulation
serum
sphygmomanometer
systemic circulation
systole
thrombin
thrombocyte
vasoconstriction
ventricles

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of the chapter.
2. Identify the layers and other structures of the heart and describe their function.
3. Describe the cardiac cycle and how an ECG tracing relates to it; also explain the origins of heart sounds and pulse rates.
4. Describe how to take blood pressure readings and explain what they represent.
5. Identify the two main divisions of the vascular system, describe the function of each, and trace the flow of blood throughout the system.
6. Identify the different types of blood vessels and describe the structure and function of each.
7. Name and locate major arm and leg veins and describe the suitability of each for venipuncture.
8. List the major constituents of blood, describe the function of each of the formed elements, and differentiate between serum, plasma, and whole blood.
9. Describe how ABO and Rh blood types are determined and explain the importance of compatibility testing prior to transfusion.
10. Define hemostasis and describe basic coagulation and fibrinolysis processes.

11 Identify the structures and vessels and describe the function of the lymphatic system.

12 List the disorders and diagnostic tests of the circulatory system.

OVERVIEW

The **circulatory system** carries oxygen and food to the cells of the body and carries carbon dioxide and other wastes away from the cells to the excretory organs, kidneys, lungs, and skin. It also aids in the coagulation process, assists in defending the body against disease, and plays an important role in the regulation of body temperature. A thorough knowledge of this system is especially important to the phlebotomist, who must access it to collect blood specimens for analysis. It also helps the phlebotomist appreciate the importance of the many tests associated with it. This chapter covers the two main components of the circulatory system—the cardiovascular system (heart, blood vessels, and blood) and the lymphatic system (lymph vessels, lymph nodes, and lymph) and describes the structures, functions, disorders, and diagnostic tests associated with them, including the coagulation process, which helps protect the system from blood loss.

The Heart

The heart (Fig. 6-1) is the major structure of the circulatory system. It is the "pump" that circulates blood throughout the body. It is located in the center of the thoracic cavity between the lungs, with the apex (tip) pointing down and to the left of the body.

HEART STRUCTURE

After you finish this section, grab some colored pencils and check out WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 6-1.

The heart is a four-chambered, hollow, muscular organ that is slightly larger than a man's closed fist. It is surrounded by a thin fluid-filled sac called the **pericardium** (per'i-kar'de-um), and its walls have three distinct layers. The heart has two sides, a right and a left. Each side has two chambers, an upper and a lower. One-way valves between the chambers help prevent the backflow of blood and keep it moving through the heart in the right direction. The right and left chambers are separated from each other by partitions called **septa** (singular, **septum**).

Layers

The three layers of the heart (Table 6-1) are the **epicardium** (ep'-i-kar'de-um), the thin outer layer; the **myocardium** (mi-o-kar'de-um), the middle muscle layer; and **endocardium** (en' do-kar'de-um), the thin inner layer.

Chambers

The upper chambers on each side of the heart are called **atria** (a're-a), and the lower chambers are called **ventricles** (ven'trik-ls). The atria (singular, atrium) are receiving chambers, and the ventricles are pumping or delivering chambers. The location and function of the chambers of the heart are described in Table 6-2.

Valves

The valves at the entrance to the ventricles are called **atrioventricular** (a're-o-ven-trik'u-lar) **(AV) valves**.

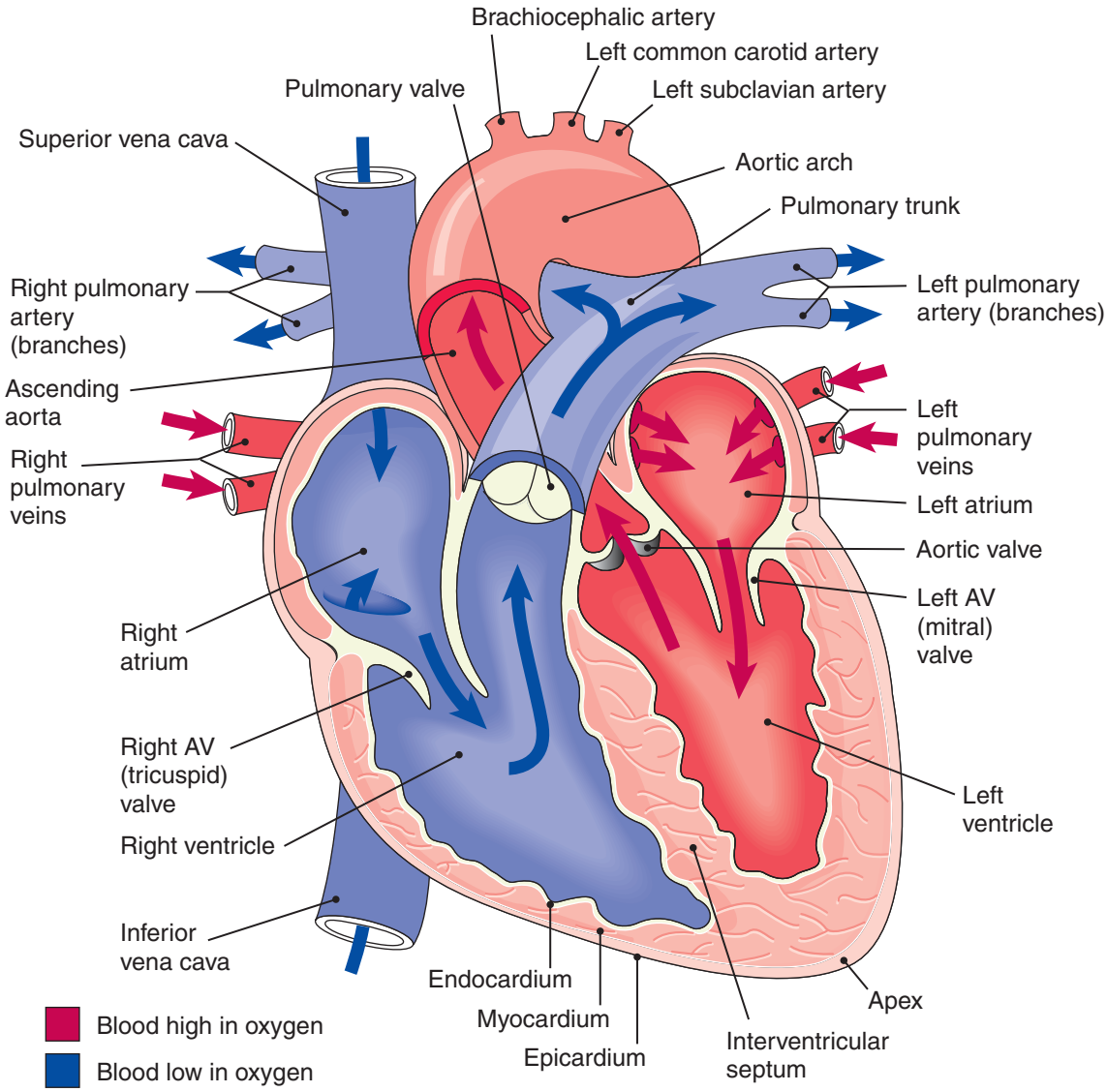


Figure 6-1 The heart and great vessels. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:304.)

FYI

The atrioventricular valves are attached to the walls of the ventricles by thin threads of tissue called ***chordae*** *(kor'de)* ***tendineae*** *(ten-din'e-e), which keep the valves from flipping back into the atria.*

TABLE 6-1 Layers of the Heart

Layer	Location	Description	Function
Epicardium	Outer layer of the heart	Thin, serous (watery) membrane that is continuous with the lining of the pericardium	Covers the heart and attaches to the pericardium
Myocardium	Middle layer of the heart	Thick layer of cardiac muscle	Contracts to pump blood into the arteries
Endocardium	Inner layer of the heart	Thin layer of epithelial cells that is continuous with the lining of the blood vessels	Lines the interior chambers and valves

TABLE 6-2 Chambers of the Heart

Chamber	Location	Function
Right atrium	Upper right chamber	Receives deoxygenated blood from the body via both the **superior (upper) vena cava** (ve'na ka'va) and **inferior (lower) vena cava** (plural, venae cavae) and pumps it into the right ventricle.
Right ventricle	Lower right chamber	Receives blood from the right atrium and pumps it into the **pulmonary artery,** which carries it to the lungs to be oxygenated.
Left atrium	Upper left chamber	Receives oxygenated blood from the lungs via the **pulmonary veins** and pumps it into the left ventricle.
Left ventricle	Lower left chamber	Receives blood from the left atrium and pumps it into the **aorta** (a-or'ta). The walls of the left ventricle are nearly three times as thick as those of the right ventricle owing to the force required to pump the blood into the arterial system.

The valves that exit the ventricles are called **semilunar** (sem'e-lu'nar) **valves** because they are crescent-shaped like a half moon (*semi* is Latin for *half*; *luna* is Latin for *moon*). See Table 6-3 to read more about the location, description, and function of the valves.

The term mitral valve *comes from its resemblance to a miter, the pointed, two-sided hat worn by bishops.*

Septa

There are two partitions separating the right and left sides of the heart. The partition that separates the right and left atria is called the **interatrial** (in-ter-a'tre-al) **septum.** The partition that separates the right and left ventricles is called the **interventricular** (in-ter-ven-trik'u-lar) **septum.** Each septum consists mostly of myocardium.

Coronary Circulation

The heart muscle does not receive nourishment or oxygen from blood passing through the heart. It receives its blood supply via the right and left **coronary (also called cardiac) arteries,** which branch off of the aorta, just beyond the aortic semilunar valve.

TABLE 6-3 Heart Valves

Valve	Location	Description	Function
Right AV valve (also called the **tricuspid** [tri-kus'pid] **valve**)	Between the right atrium and right ventricle	Has three cusps (flaps), hence the name *tricuspid*	Closes when the right ventricle contracts and prevents blood from flowing back into the right atrium
Left AV valve (also called the **bicuspid** or **mitral valve**)	Between the left atrium and left ventricle	Has two cusps, hence the name *bicuspid*	Closes when the left ventricle contracts and prevents blood from flowing back into the left atrium
Right semilunar valve (also called pulmonary or pulmonic valve)	At the entrance to the pulmonary artery	Has three half-moon–shaped cusps	Closes when the right ventricle relaxes and prevents blood from flowing back into the right ventricle
Left semilunar valve (also called aortic valve)	At the entrance to the aorta	Has three half-moon–shaped cusps	Closes when the left ventricle relaxes and prevents blood from flowing back into the left ventricle

Corona *means circle or crown. It is said that the coronary arteries are so named because they encircle the heart like a crown.*

Any impairment of the coronary circulation is a dangerous situation. Partial obstruction of a coronary artery or one of its branches can reduce blood flow to a point where it is not adequate to meet the oxygen needs of the heart muscle, a condition called myocardial **ischemia** (is-kee'me-ah). Complete obstruction or prolonged ischemia leads to **myocardial** (mi'o-kar'de-al) **infarction** (MI) or "heart attack," because of necrosis (ne-kro'sis) or death of the surrounding tissue from lack of oxygen.

The buildup of fatty plaque from a condition called atherosclerosis can lead to severe narrowing of coronary arteries. This condition is sometimes treated by using a coronary bypass procedure. In this surgical procedure, a vein (commonly the saphenous vein from the leg) is grafted onto the artery to divert the blood around the affected area.

Coronary (cardiac) veins return oxygen poor blood from the heart muscle back to the heart. Most coronary veins merge into a structure called the coronary sinus,which delivers the blood to the right atrium. Some coronary veins empty directly into one of the chambers of the heart.

HEART FUNCTION

View the Cardiac Cycle animation at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Cardiac Cycle

One complete contraction and subsequent relaxation of the heart lasts about 0.8 seconds and is called a **cardiac cycle.** The contracting phase of the cardiac cycle is called **systole** (sis'to-le), and the relaxing phase is called **diastole** (di-as'to-le).

Electrical Conduction System

To be effective at pumping blood, the heart's contractions must be synchronized (coordinated) so that both atria contract simultaneously, followed by contraction of both ventricles. Synchronization is achieved by means of specialized muscle cells that form the electrical conduction system (Fig. 6-2). Instead of contracting, these cells act like nerve tissue in that they initiate and distribute electrical impulses throughout the myocardium to coordinate the cardiac cycle. These specialized tissues create an electrical conduction system pathway that includes two tissue masses called nodes and a network of specialized fibers that branch throughout the myocardium. Cardiac contraction is initiated by an electrical impulse generated from the **sinoatrial** (sin'o-a'tre-al) **node,** or SA node, also called the **pacemaker,** at the start of the pathway. The electrical conduction system pathway is described in Table 6-4.

The SA node is called the pacemaker because it sets the basic pace or rhythm of the heartbeat.

Electrocardiogram

An **electrocardiogram** (ECG, formerly also known as an EKG) is a graphic record of the heart's electrical activity during the cardiac cycle. An ECG is produced by a machine called an electrograph, which records the electrical currents corresponding to each event in

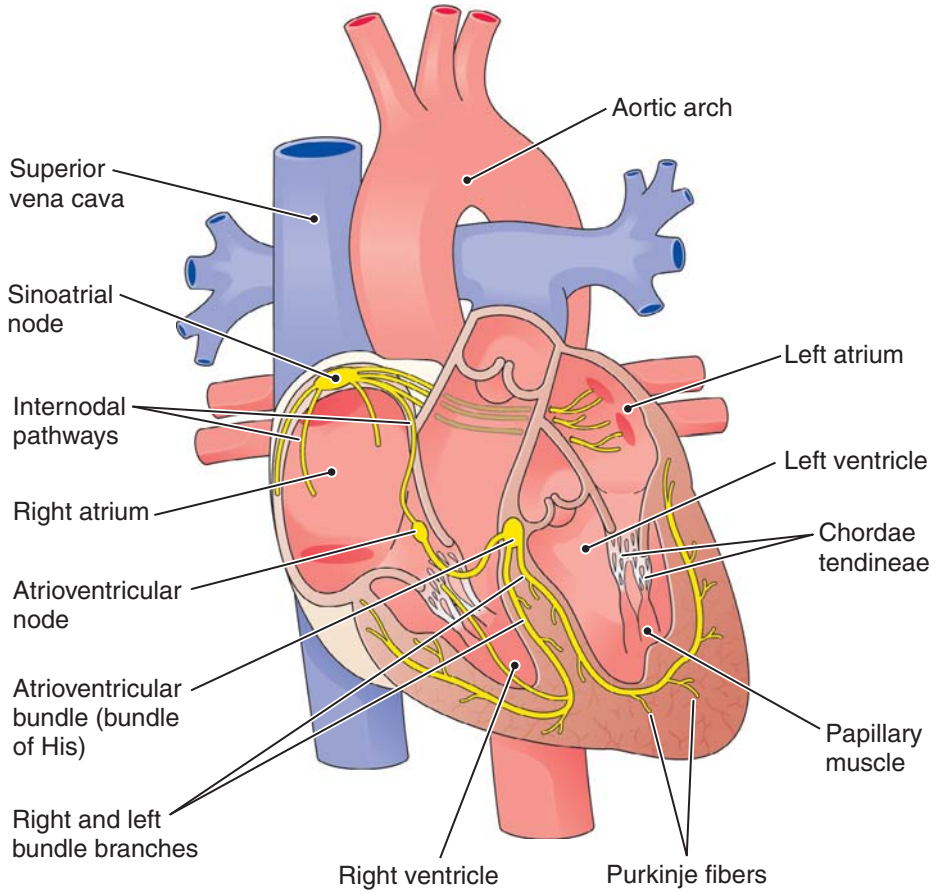


Figure 6-2 The electrical conduction system of the heart. The sinoatrial (SA) node, the atrioventricular (AV) node, and specialized fibers conduct electrical energy that stimulates the heart muscle to contract. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:309.)

TABLE 6-4 The Electrical Conduction System Pathway

Structure	Location	Function
Sinoatrial (SA) node	Upper wall of the right atrium	Begins the heartbeat by generating the electrical pulse that travels through the muscles of both atria, causing them to contract simultaneously and push blood through the atrioventricular valves into the ventricles
Internodal pathway fibers	Wall of the right atrium	Relay the impulse to the **atrioventricular (AV) node**
Atrioventricular (AV) node	Bottom of the right atrium in the interatrial septum	Picks up the impulse, slows it down while the atria finish contracting, and then relays it through the **AV bundle (bundle of His)**
AV bundle (bundle of His)	Top of the interventricular septum	Relays impulse throughout the ventricular walls by means of bundle branches and **Purkinje fibers.** This causes the ventricles to contract, forcing blood through the semilunar valves. Both atria and ventricles relax briefly before the entire cycle starts again

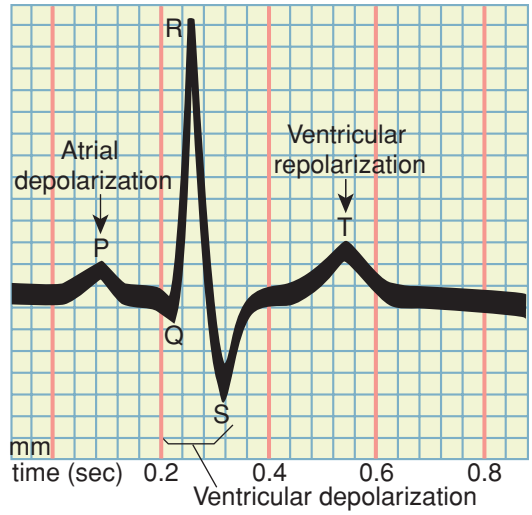


Figure 6-3 A normal ECG tracing showing one cardiac cycle. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:315.)

heart muscle contraction. Electrical impulses are recorded as waves when electrodes (leads or wires) are placed on the skin at specific locations. The recording is called an ECG tracing (Fig. 6-3). The P wave of the tracing represents the activity of the atria and is usually the first wave seen. The QRS complex (a collection of three waves), along with the T wave, represents the activity of the ventricles. An ECG is useful in diagnosing damage to the heart muscle and abnormalities in the heart rate.

Origin of the Heart Sounds (Heartbeat)

As the ventricles contract (systole), the atrioventricular valves close, resulting in the first heart sound: a long, low-pitched sound commonly described as a "lubb." The second heart sound comes at the beginning of ventricular relaxation (diastole) and is due to the closing of the semilunar valves. It is shorter and sharper and described as a "dupp." Abnormal heart sounds are called **murmurs** and are often due to faulty valve action.

Heart Rate and Cardiac Output

The **heart rate** is the number of heartbeats per minute. The normal adult heart rate averages 72 beats per minute. The volume of blood pumped by the heart in 1 minute is called the **cardiac output** and averages 5 liters per minute.

An irregularity in the heart's rate, rhythm, or beat is called an **arrhythmia** (ah-rith'me-ah). A slow rate, less than 60 beats per minute, is called **bradycardia** (brad'e-kar'de-ah). A fast rate, over 100 beats per minute, is called **tachycardia** (tak'e-kar'de-ah). Extra beats before the normal beat are called **extrasystoles**. Rapid, uncoordinated contractions are called **fibrillations** and can result in lack of pumping action.

Pulse

The **pulse** is the palpable rhythmic throbbing caused by the alternating expansion and contraction of an artery as a wave of blood passes through it. It is created as the ventricles contract and blood is forced out of the heart and through the arteries. In normal individuals, the pulse rate is the same as the heart rate. The pulse is most easily felt by compressing the radial artery on the thumb side of the wrist.

Blood Pressure

Blood pressure is the force (pressure) or tension exerted by the blood on the walls of blood vessels. It is commonly measured in a large artery (such as the brachial artery in the upper arm) using a **sphygmomanometer** (sfig'mo-mah-nom'e-ter), more commonly known as a blood pressure cuff. Blood pressure results are expressed in millimeters of

mercury (mm Hg) and are read from a manometer that is either a gauge or a mercury column, depending upon the type of blood pressure cuff used. The two components of blood pressure measured are:

- **Systolic** (sis-tol'ik) **pressure**: the pressure in the arteries during contraction of the ventricles
- **Diastolic** (di-as-tol'ik) **pressure**: the arterial pressure during relaxation of the ventricles

A blood pressure reading is expressed as the systolic pressure over the diastolic pressure. The American Heart Association defines normal blood pressure as less than 120 over 80 mm Hg, which is written 120/80 mm Hg.

A brachial blood pressure reading is taken by placing a blood pressure cuff around the upper arm and a stethoscope over the brachial artery. The cuff is inflated until the brachial artery is compressed and the blood flow is cut off. Then the cuff is slowly deflated until the first heart sounds are heard with the stethoscope. The pressure reading at this time is the systolic pressure. The cuff is then slowly deflated until a muffled sound is heard. The pressure at this time is the diastolic pressure.

HEART DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the heart are shown in Box 6-1.

When a person has a heart attack, the heart muscle is damaged, releasing the enzymes CK and AST into the bloodstream. A sample of blood can be tested for these enzymes. If the results are elevated, a heart attack is suspected.

BOX 6-1 HEART DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Examples of Heart Disorders

Angina pectoris (an'-ji'na pek'to-ris): also called ischemic heart disease (IHD); pain on exertion caused by inadequate blood flow to the myocardium from the coronary arteries
Aortic stenosis (a-or'tik ste-no'sis): narrowing of the aorta or its opening
Bacterial endocarditis (en'do-kar-di'tis): an infection of the lining of the heart, most commonly caused by streptococci
Congestive heart failure (CHF): impaired circulation due to inadequate pumping of a diseased heart, resulting in fluid buildup (edema) in the lungs or other tissues
Myocardial infarction (MI): heart attack or death of heart muscle due to obstruction (occlusion) of a coronary artery
Myocardial ischemia (is-kee'me-ah): insufficient blood flow to meet the needs of the heart muscle
Pericarditis (per-i-kar-di'tis): inflammation of the pericardium

Examples of Tests for Heart Disorders

- Arterial blood gases (ABGs)
- Aspartate aminotransferase (AST) or serum glutamic–oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT)
- Cholesterol
- Creatine kinase (CK)
- Creatine kinase (CK)-MB
- Digoxin
- Electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG)
  Lactate dehydrogenase (LD) isoenzymes
- Microbial cultures
- Myoglobin
- Potassium (K)
- Triglycerides
- Troponin T (TnT)

The Vascular System

FUNCTIONS

The vascular system is the system of blood vessels that, along with the heart, forms the closed loop through which blood is circulated to all parts of the body. There are two divisions to this system, the pulmonary circulation and the systemic circulation.

The Pulmonary Circulation

The **pulmonary circulation** carries blood from the right ventricle of the heart to the lungs to remove carbon dioxide and pick up oxygen; the oxygenated blood is then returned to the left atrium of the heart.

The Systemic Circulation

The **systemic circulation** serves the rest of the body, carrying oxygenated blood and nutrients from the left ventricle of the heart to the body cells and then returning to the right atrium of the heart with blood carrying carbon dioxide and other waste products of metabolism from the cells.

STRUCTURES

The structures of the vascular system are the various blood vessels that, along with the heart, form the closed system through which blood flows. Blood vessels are tubelike structures capable of expanding and contracting. According to information from the Arizona Science Center, the human vascular system has around 250,000 miles of blood vessels, 95% of which are capillaries, which make up what is called the capillary bed. The rest are arteries and veins.

Arteries

Arteries (Fig. 6-4) are blood vessels that carry blood away from the heart. They have thick walls because the blood that moves through them is under pressure from the contraction of the ventricles. This pressure creates a pulse that can be felt, distinguishing the arteries from the veins.

KEY POINT When arterial blood is collected by syringe, the pressure normally causes the blood to "pump" or pulse into the syringe under its own power.

Systemic arteries carry oxygenated (oxygen-rich) blood away from the heart to the tissues. Because it is oxygen-rich, or full of oxygen, normal systemic arterial blood is bright red.

KEY POINT The pulmonary artery is the only artery that carries deoxygenated, or oxygen-poor, blood. It is part of the pulmonary circulation and carries deoxygenated blood from the heart to the lungs. It is classified as an artery because it carries blood away from the heart.

Check out WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 6-1 to see how well you remember the key points in this chapter.

The smallest branches of arteries that join with the capillaries are called **arterioles** (ar-te'reolz). The largest artery in the body is the **aorta.** It is approximately 1 inch (2.5 cm) in diameter.

Veins

Veins (Fig. 6-5) are blood vessels that return blood to the heart. Veins carry blood that is low in oxygen (deoxygenated or oxygen-poor) except for the pulmonary vein, which carries oxygenated blood from the lungs back to the heart. Because systemic venous blood is oxygen-poor, it is much darker and more bluish-red than normal arterial blood.

The walls of veins are thinner than those of arteries because the blood is under less pressure than arterial blood. Since the walls are thinner, veins can collapse more easily than arteries. Blood is kept moving through veins by skeletal muscle movement, valves that prevent the backflow of blood, and pressure changes in the abdominal and thoracic cavities during breathing.

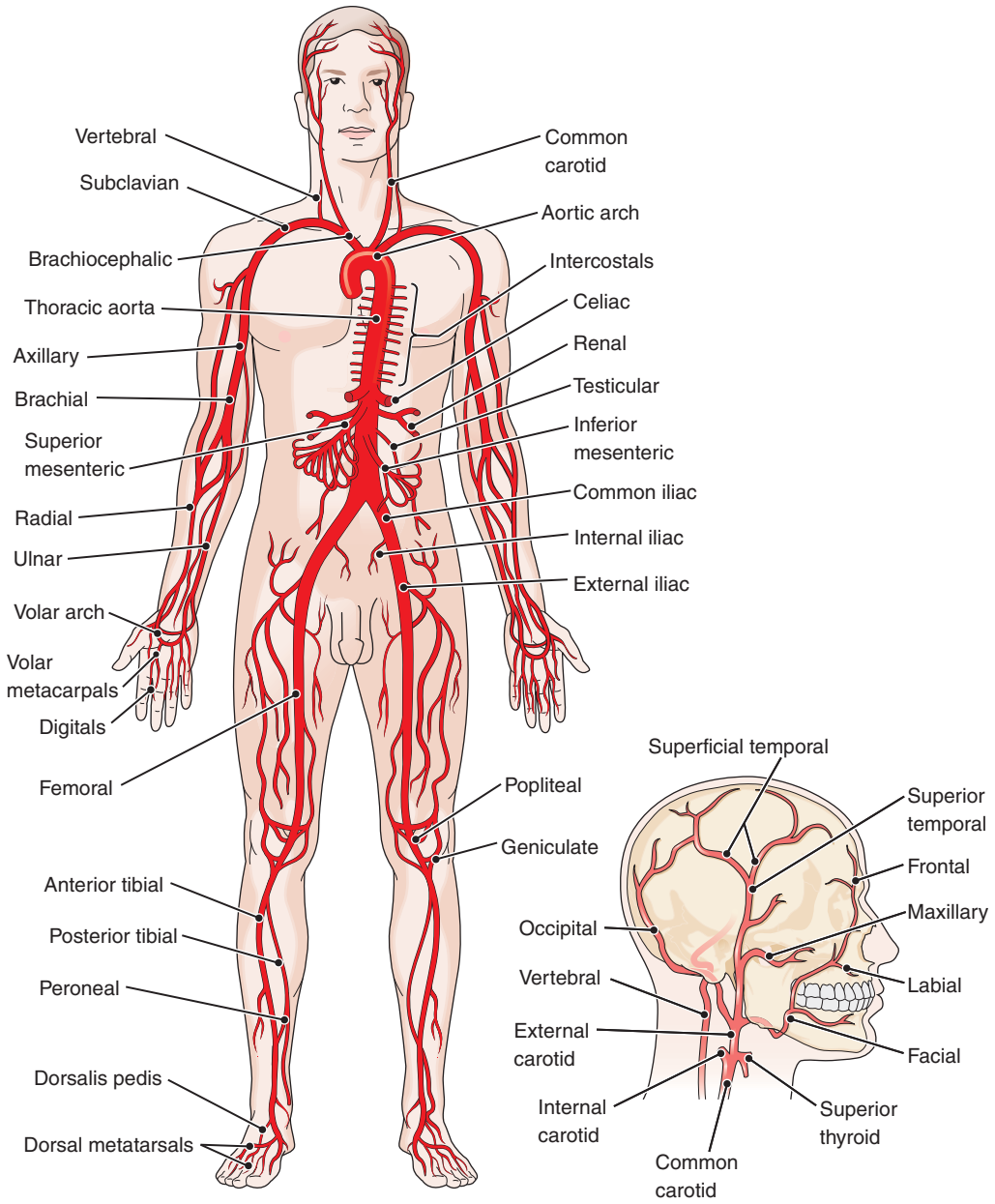


Figure 6-4 The principal arteries of the body. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:330.)

The smallest veins at the junction of the capillaries are called **venules** (ven'ulz). The largest veins in the body are the **venae cavae** (singular, **vena cava**). The longest veins in the body are the **great saphenous** (sa-fe'nus) **veins** in the leg.

Capillaries

Capillaries are microscopic, one-cell-thick vessels that connect the arterioles and venules, forming a bridge between the arterial and venous circulation. Blood in the capillaries is a mixture of both venous and arterial blood. In the systemic circulation, arterial blood delivers oxygen and nutrients to the capillaries. The thin capillary walls allow the exchange of oxygen for carbon dioxide and nutrients for wastes between the cells and the blood (Fig. 6-6). Carbon dioxide and wastes are carried away in the venous blood. In the pulmonary circulation, carbon dioxide is delivered to the capillaries in the lungs and exchanged for oxygen.

View the Gas Exchange in Alveoli and Oxygen Transport animations at http:// thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

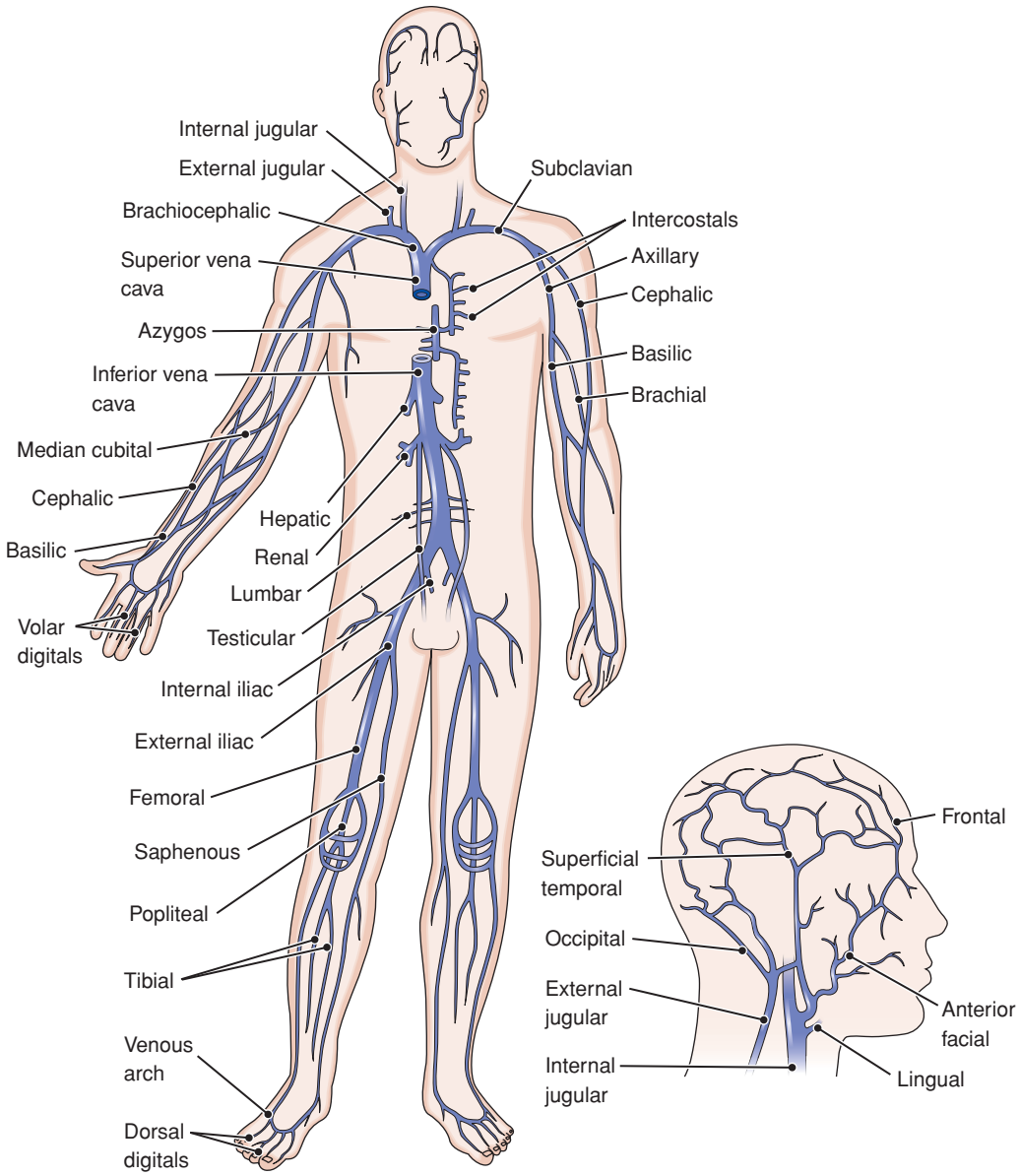


Figure 6-5 The principal veins of the body. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:334.)

BLOOD VESSEL STRUCTURE

See WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 6-3.

Arteries and veins are composed of three main layers. The thickness of the layers varies with the size and type of blood vessel. Figure 6-7 shows a cross-section of an artery and a vein as seen through a microscope. Capillaries are composed of a single layer of endothelial cells enclosed in a basement membrane. (See Fig. 6-8 for a comparison diagram of artery, vein, and capillary structure.)

Layers

- **Tunica** (tu'ni-ka) **adventitia** (ad'ven-tish'e-a): the outer layer of a blood vessel, sometimes called the tunica externa. It is made up of connective tissue and is thicker in arteries than in veins.
- **Tunica media**: the middle layer of a blood vessel. It is made up of smooth muscle tissue and some elastic fibers. It is much thicker in arteries than in veins.

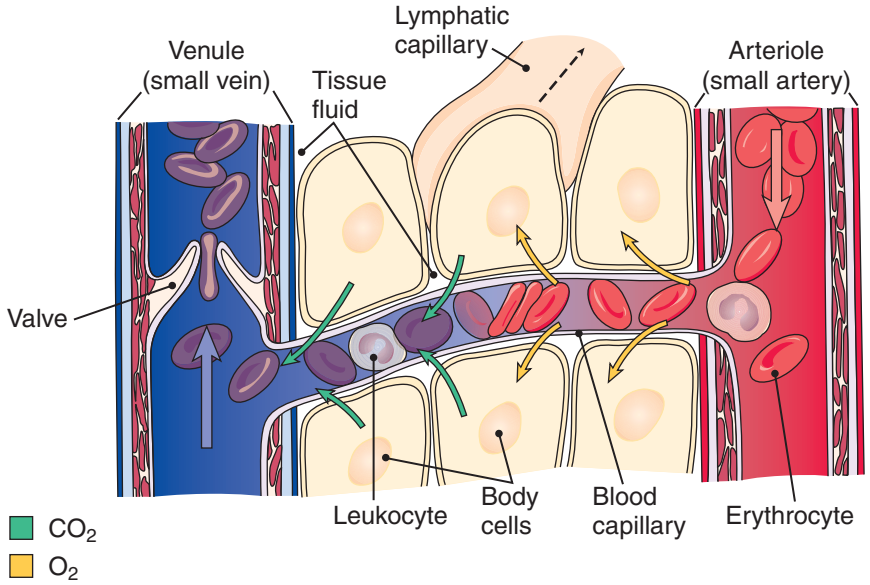


Figure 6-6 The oxygen and carbon dioxide exchange in the tissue capillaries.

- **Tunica intima** (in'ti-ma): the inner layer or lining of a blood vessel, sometimes called the tunica interna. It is made up of a single layer of endothelial cells with an underlying basement membrane, a connective tissue layer, and an elastic internal membrane.

FYI Tunica *(Latin for "coat" or "sheath") means a coat or layer of tissue.*

Lumen

The internal space of a blood vessel through which the blood flows is called the **lumen** (lu'men).

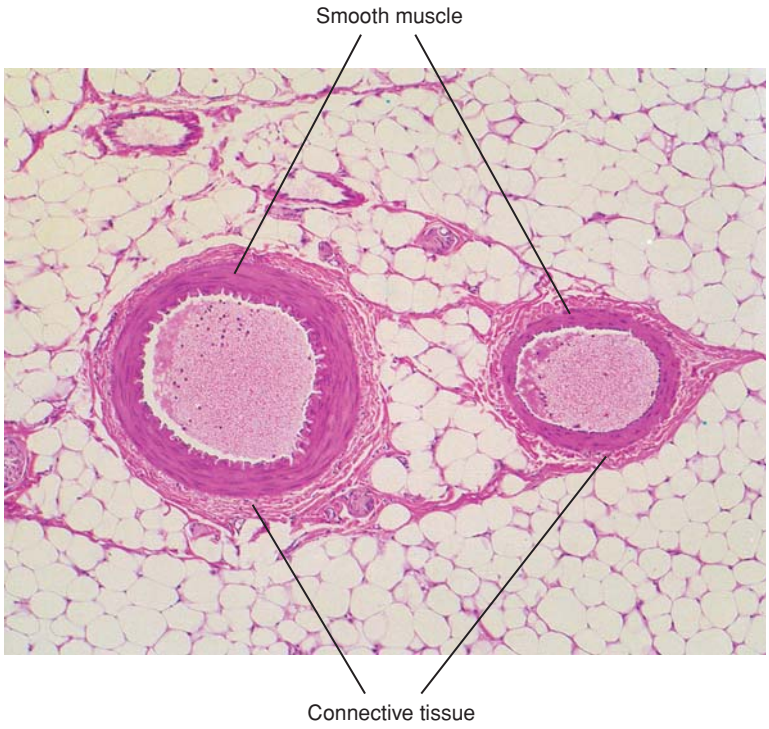


Figure 6-7 A cross-section of an artery and a vein as seen through a microscope. (Reprinted with permission from Cormack DH, *Essential Histology,* 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2001.)

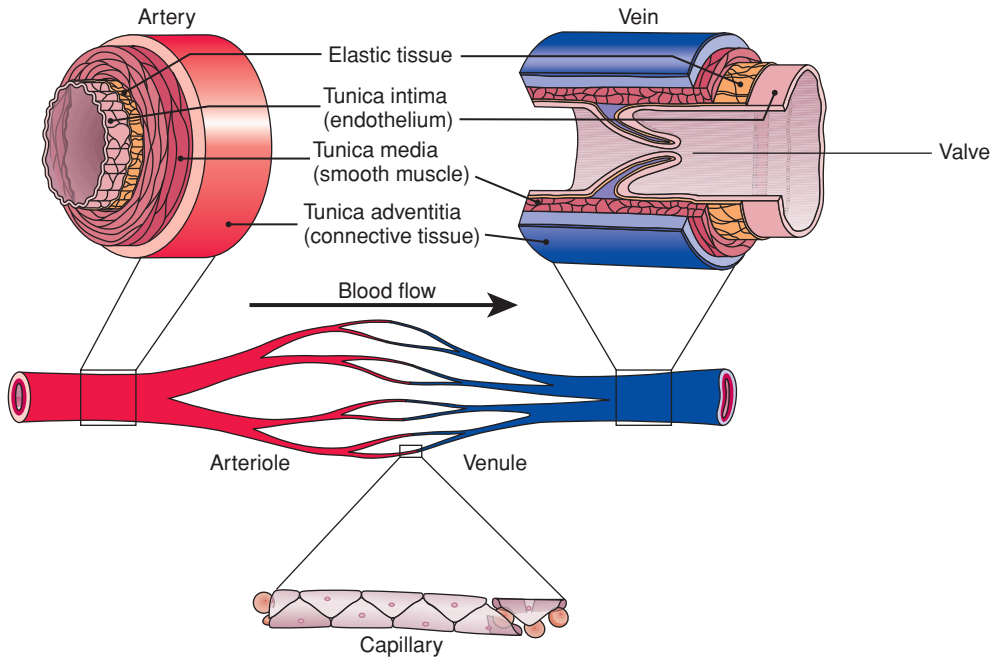


Figure 6-8 The artery, vein, and capillary structure.

View the Venous Valve Action animation at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Valves

Venous valves are thin membranous leaflets composed primarily of epithelium similar to that of the semilunar valves of the heart. (A venous valve can be seen within the vein in Fig. 6-8.) Most of the venous system flows against the pull of gravity. As blood is moved forward by the movement of skeletal muscle, for example, the valves help keep it flowing toward the heart by allowing blood to flow in only one direction (see Fig. 6-9).

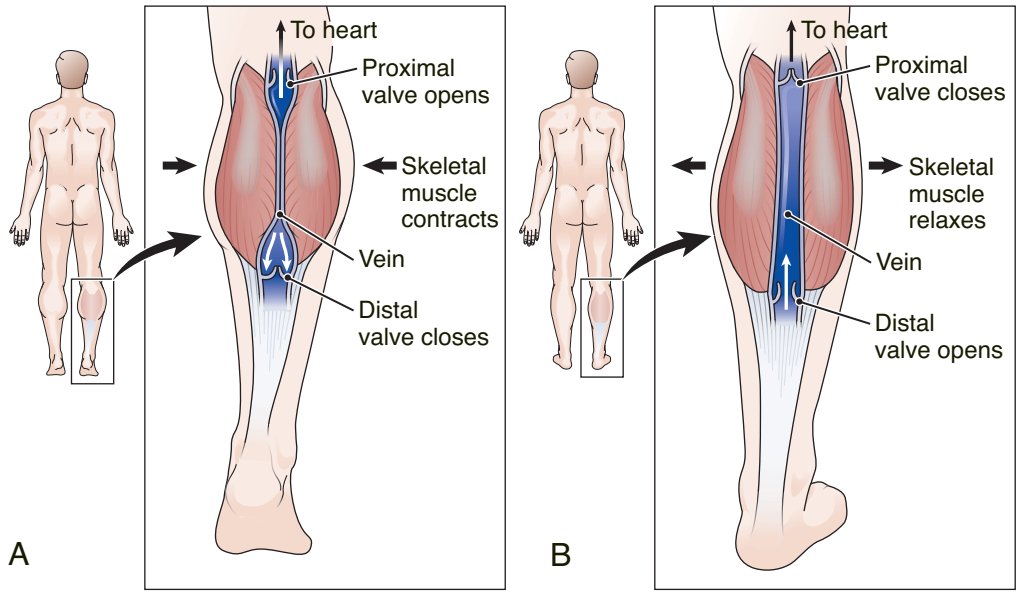


Figure 6-9 The role of skeletal muscles and valves in blood return. **A.** Contracting skeletal muscle compresses the vein and drives blood forward, opening the proximal valve, while the distal valve closes to prevent backflow of blood. **B.** When the muscles relaxes again, the distal valve opens and the proximal valve closes until blood moving in the vein forces it open again. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:338.)

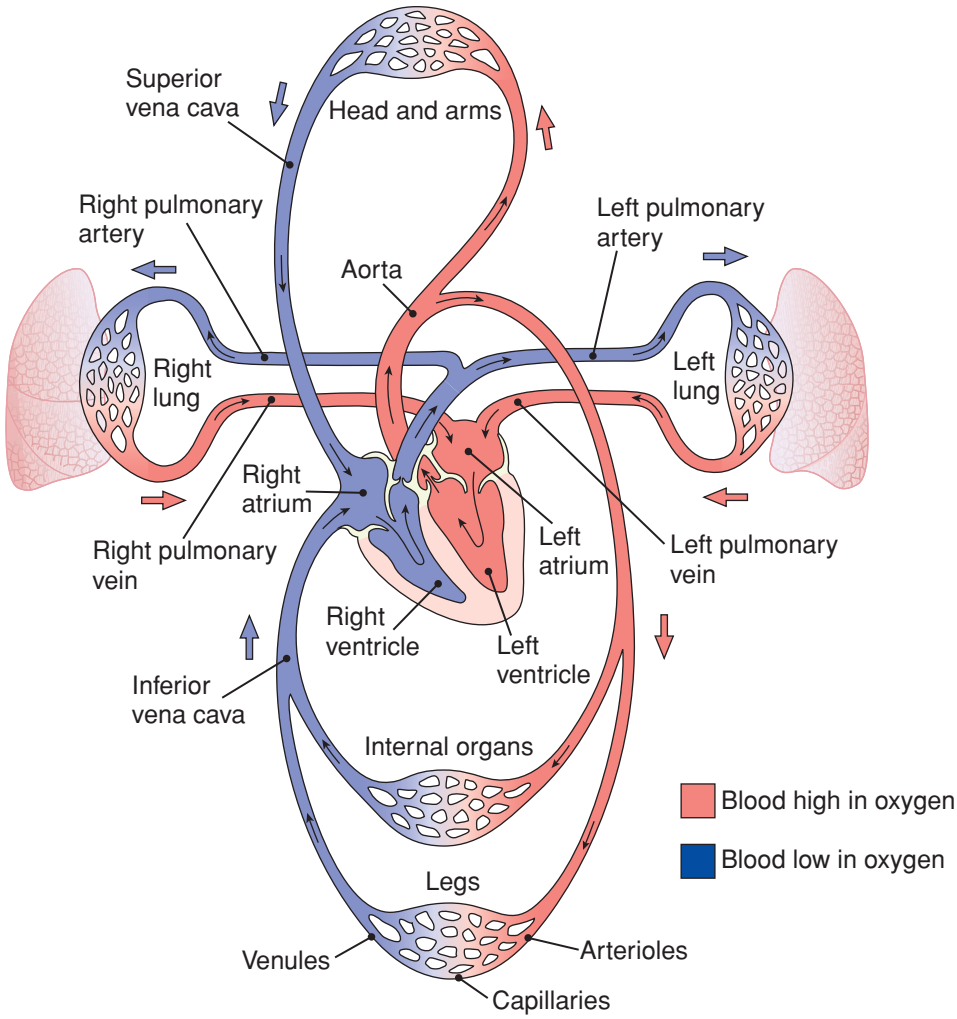


Figure 6-10 A representation of the vascular flow. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:303.)

KEY POINT The presence of valves within veins is a major structural difference between arteries and veins.

THE FLOW OF BLOOD

The network of arteries, veins, and capillaries forms the pathway for the flow of blood (Fig. 6-10) throughout the body; it allows for the delivery of oxygen and nutrients to the body cells and the removal of carbon dioxide and other waste products of metabolism. The order of vascular flow starting with the return of oxygen-poor blood to the heart is shown in Box 6-2.

PHLEBOTOMY-RELATED VASCULAR ANATOMY

Antecubital Fossa

Antecubital (an'te-ku'bi-tal) means "in front of the elbow." **Fossa** means a shallow depression. The **antecubital** (AC) **fossa** is the shallow depression in the arm that is anterior to (in front of) and below the bend of the elbow. It is the first-choice location for venipuncture because several major arm veins lie close to the surface in this area, making them relatively easy to locate and penetrate with a needle. These major superficial veins are referred to as

BOX 6-2 THE FLOW OF BLOOD

- Oxygen-poor blood is returned to the heart via the superior and inferior (upper and lower) venae cavae and enters the right atrium of the heart.
- Contraction of the right atrium forces the blood through the tricuspid valve into the right ventricle.
- Contraction of the right ventricle forces the blood through the pulmonary semilunar valve into the pulmonary artery.
- Blood flows through the pulmonary artery to the capillaries of the lungs, where carbon dioxide is released from the red blood cells and exchanged for oxygen through the walls of the alveoli.
- Oxygen-rich blood flows back to the heart via the pulmonary veins and enters the left atrium.
- Contraction of the left atrium forces the blood through the bicuspid valve into the left ventricle.
- Contraction of the left ventricle forces the blood through the aortic semilunar valve into the aorta.
- The blood travels throughout the body by way of the arteries, which branch into smaller and smaller arteries, the smallest of which are the arterioles.
- The arterioles connect with the capillaries, where oxygen, water, and nutrients from the blood diffuse through the capillary walls to the cells. At the same time, carbon dioxide and other end products of metabolism enter the bloodstream.
- The capillaries connect with the smallest branches of veins (venules).
- The venules merge into larger and larger veins until the blood returns to the heart by way of the superior or inferior vena cava, and the cycle starts again.

antecubital veins. The anatomical arrangement of antecubital veins varies slightly from person to person; however, two basic vein arrangements, referred to as the H- and M-shaped patterns (Fig. 6-11), are seen most often.

The venous distribution patterns are so named because the major antecubital veins on the arm resemble the shape of either an "H" or an "M."

WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 6-5 will help you learn the names and locations of the AC veins.

H-Shaped Antecubital Veins

The H-shaped venous distribution pattern (Fig. 6-11A) is displayed by approximately 70% of the population and includes the median cubital vein, cephalic vein, and basilic vein.

- **Median cubital vein**: Located near the center of the antecubital area, it is the preferred vein for venipuncture in the H-shaped pattern. It is typically larger, closer to the surface, better anchored, and more stationary than the others, making it the easiest and least painful to puncture and the least likely to bruise.
- **Cephalic vein**: Located in the lateral aspect of the antecubital area, it is the second-choice vein for venipuncture in the H-shaped pattern. It is often harder to palpate than the median cubital but is fairly well anchored and often the only vein that can be palpated (felt) in obese patients.
- **Basilic vein**: A large vein located on the medial aspect (inner side) of the antecubital area, it is the last-choice vein for venipuncture in either venous distribution pattern. It is generally easy to palpate but is not as well anchored and rolls more easily, increasing the possibility of accidental puncture of the anterior or posterior branch of the **medial cutaneous nerve** (a major nerve of the arm) or the **brachial artery,** both of which commonly underlie this area. Punctures in this area also tend to be more painful.

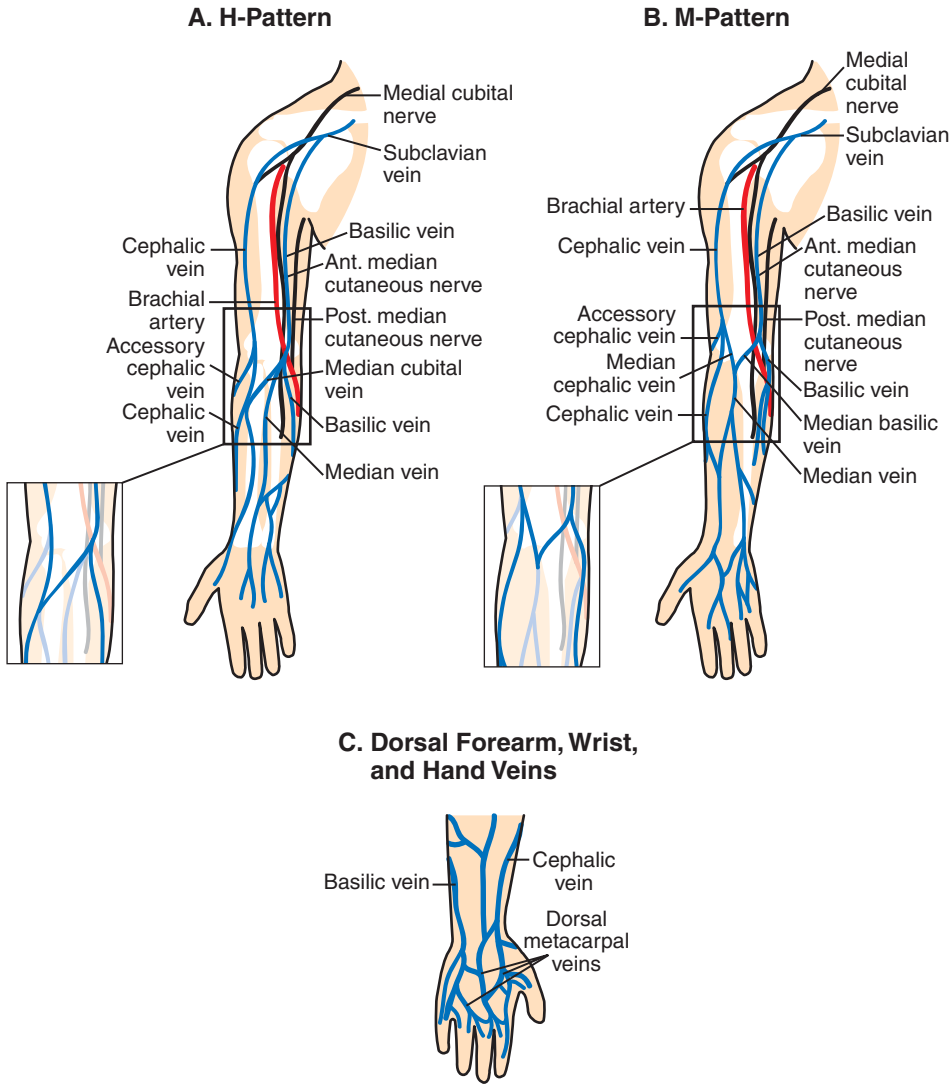


Figure 6-11 The principal veins of the arm, including the major antecubital veins. **A.** H-shaped pattern of antecubital veins of the right arm in anatomical position. **B.** M-shaped pattern of antecubital veins of the right arm in anatomical position. **C.** Right forearm, wrist, and hand veins in prone position.

M-Shaped Antecubital Veins

The veins that form the M-shaped venous distribution pattern (Fig. 6-11B) include the cephalic vein, median vein, median cephalic vein, median basilic vein, and basilic vein. The veins most commonly used for venipuncture in this distribution pattern are described as follows:

- **Median vein** (also called the **intermediate antebrachial vein):** The first choice for venipuncture in the M-shaped pattern because it is well anchored, tends to be less painful to puncture, and is not as close to major nerves or arteries as the others, making it generally the safest one to use.
- **Median cephalic vein** (also called the **intermediate cephalic vein):** The second choice for venipuncture in the M-shaped pattern because it is accessible and is for the most part located away from major nerves or arteries, making it generally safe to puncture. It is also less likely to roll and relatively less painful to puncture.
- **Median basilic vein** (also called the **intermediate basilic vein):** The last choice for venipuncture in the M-shaped pattern (even though it may appear more accessible) because it is more painful to puncture and, like the basilic vein, is located near the anterior and posterior branches of the medial cutaneous nerve and the brachial artery.

KEY POINT Vein location differs somewhat from person to person, and you may not see the exact textbook pattern. The important thing to remember is to choose a prominent vein that is well fixed and does not overlie a pulse, which indicates the presence of an artery and the potential presence of a major nerve.

Other Arm and Hand Veins

According to CLSI, although the larger and fuller median, median cubital, cephalic, and median cephalic veins are used most frequently, veins on the back of the hand and wrist are also acceptable for venipuncture (Fig. 6-11C).

CAUTION: Veins on the underside of the wrist are never acceptable for venipuncture.

Leg, Ankle, and Foot Veins

Because of the potential for significant medical complications such as phlebitis or thrombosis, veins of the leg, ankle, and foot (Fig. 6-12) must not be used for venipuncture without permission from the patient's physician. Puncture of the femoral vein is performed only by physicians or specially trained personnel.

Arteries

Arteries are not used for routine blood collection. Arterial puncture requires special training to perform, is more painful and hazardous to the patient, and is generally limited to the collection of arterial blood gas (ABG) specimens for the evaluation of respiratory function. Arterial puncture for ABG collection is explained in Chapter 12.

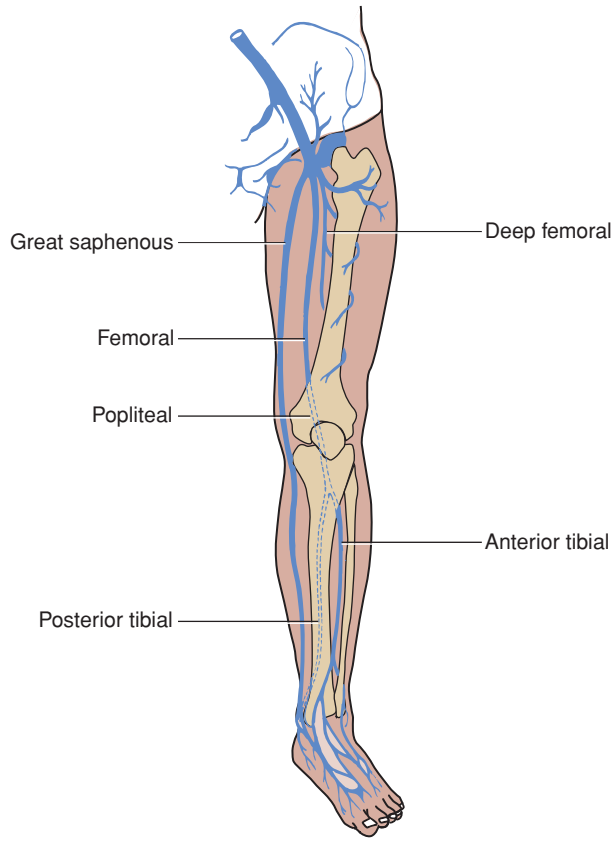


Figure 6-12 The major leg and foot veins.

BOX 6-3 EXAMPLES OF VASCULAR SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Vascular System Disorders

Aneurysm (an'u-rizm): a localized dilation or bulging in the wall of a blood vessel, usually an artery
Arteriosclerosis (ar-te're-o-skle-ro'sis): thickening, hardening, and loss of elasticity of artery walls
Atherosclerosis (ath'er-o'skle-ro'sis): a form of arteriosclerosis involving thickening of the intima of the artery due the buildup of plaque (lipid–calcium deposits)
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC): pathological widespread clotting and fibrinolysis in which coagulation factors are consumed to such an extent that bleeding occurs
Embolism: obstruction of a blood vessel by an embolus
Embolus (em'bo-lus): a blood clot, part of a blood clot, or other mass of undissolved matter circulating in the bloodstream
Hemorrhoids: varicose veins in the rectal area
Phlebitis (fle-bi'tis): inflammation of a vein
Thrombophlebitis (throm'bo-fle-bi'tis): inflammation of a vein along with thrombus (blood clot) formation
Thrombus: a blood clot in a blood vessel or organ
Varicose veins (varices): swollen, knotted superficial veins

Tests for Vascular System Disorders

- D-Dimer
- Fibrin degradation products (FDP)
- Lipoproteins
- Prothrombin time (PT)
- Partial thromboplastin time (PTT/APTT)
- Triglycerides

VASCULAR SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the vascular system are shown in Box 6-3.

The Blood

Blood has been referred to as "the river of life," as it flows throughout the circulatory system delivering nutrients, oxygen, and other substances to the cells and transporting waste products away from the cells for elimination.

BLOOD COMPOSITION

Blood is a mixture of fluid and cells; it is about five times thicker than water, salty to the taste, and slightly alkaline, with a pH of about 7.4 (pH is the degree of acidity or alkalinity on a scale of 1 to 14, with 7 being neutral). In vivo (in the living body), the fluid portion of the blood is called **plasma;** the cellular portion is referred to as the **formed elements.** The average adult weighing 70 kg (approximately 154 pounds) has a blood volume of about 5 liters (5.3 quarts), of which approximately 55% is plasma and 45% is formed elements. Accordingly, approximately one half of a blood specimen will be serum or plasma and the other half will be blood cells.

KEY POINT Testing personnel typically prefer specimens that contain roughly 2½ times the amount of sample required to perform the test; so the test can be repeated if needed, with some to spare. Consequently, a test that requires 1 mL of serum or plasma would require a 5-mL blood specimen because only half the specimen will be fluid, while a test that requires 1 mL of whole blood would require a 2½-mL specimen.

Plasma

Normal plasma is a clear, pale-yellow fluid that is nearly 90% water (H_2O) and 10% solutes (dissolved substances). The composition of the solute includes the following:

- Gases, such as oxygen (O_2), carbon dioxide (CO_2), and nitrogen (N).
- Minerals such as sodium (Na), potassium (K), calcium (Ca), and magnesium (Mg). Sodium helps maintain fluid balance, pH, and calcium and potassium balance is necessary for normal heart action. Potassium is essential for normal muscle activity and the conduction of nerve impulses. Calcium is needed for proper bone and tooth formation, nerve conduction, and muscle contraction. In addition, calcium is essential to the clotting process.
- Nutrients, which supply energy. Plasma nutrients include carbohydrates, such as glucose, and lipids (fats), such as triglycerides and cholesterol.
- Proteins, such as albumin, which is manufactured by the liver and functions to help regulate osmotic pressure, or the tendency of blood to attract water; antibodies, which combat infection; and fibrinogen, which is also manufactured by the liver and functions in the clotting process.
- Waste products of metabolism such as blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, and uric acid.
- Other substances such as vitamins, hormones, and drugs.

Formed Elements

Erythrocytes

Erythrocytes (e-rith'ro-sites), or red blood cells (RBCs) (Fig. 6-13), are the most numerous cells in the blood, averaging 4.5 to 5 million per cubic millimeter of blood. Their main function is to carry oxygen from the lungs to the cells. They also carry carbon dioxide from the cells back to the lungs to be exhaled.

KEY POINT The main component of RBCs is **hemoglobin** (Hgb or Hb), an iron-containing pigment that enables them to transport oxygen and carbon dioxide and also gives them their red color.

RBCs are produced in the bone marrow. They are formed with a nucleus, which they lose as they mature and enter the bloodstream. Normally a few **reticulocytes** (re-tik'u-lo-sits), or **"retics"** (immature RBCs that still contain remnants of material from their nuclear stage), also enter the bloodstream. Mature RBCs have a life span of approximately 120 days, after which they begin to disintegrate and are removed from the bloodstream by the spleen and liver. They are described as anuclear (having no nuclei), biconcave (indented from both sides) disks approximately 7 to 8 microns in diameter. RBCs have **intravascular** (within blood vessels) function, which means that they do their job within the bloodstream.

Leukocytes

Leukocytes, or white blood cells (WBCs), contain nuclei. The average adult has from 5,000 to 10,000 WBCs per cubic millimeter of blood. WBCs are formed in the bone marrow and

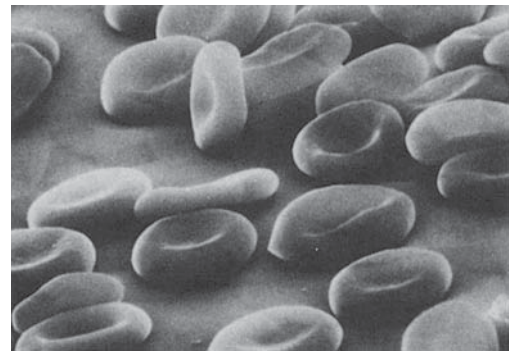


Figure 6-13 Red blood cells as seen under a scanning electron microscope. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:282.)

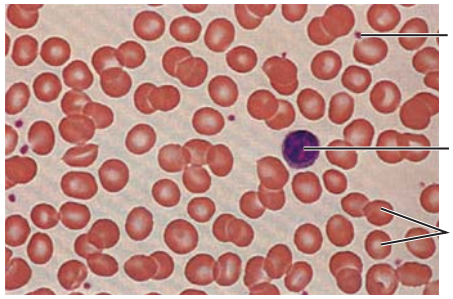


Figure 6-14 Blood cells in a stained blood smear as seen under a microscope. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:282.)

lymphatic tissue. They are said to have **extravascular** (outside the blood vessels) function because they are able to leave the bloodstream and do their job in the tissues. WBCs may appear in the bloodstream for only 6 to 8 hours but reside in the tissues for days, months, or even years. The life span of WBCs varies with the type.

FYI *The process by which WBCs are able to slip through the walls of the capillaries to enter the tissues is called* ***diapedesis*** *(di'a-ped-e'sis).* Dia *(Greek for through),* ped *from "pedan" (leap),* esis *(condition or state).*

The main function of WBCs is to neutralize or destroy pathogens. Some accomplish this by **phagocytosis** (fag'o-si-to'sis), a process in which a pathogen or foreign matter is surrounded, engulfed, and destroyed by the WBC. (WBCs also use phagocytosis to remove disintegrated tissue.) Some WBCs produce antibodies that destroy pathogens indirectly or release substances that attack foreign matter.

There are different types of WBCs, each identified by its size, the shape of the nucleus, and whether or not there are granules present in the cytoplasm when the cells in a blood smear are stained with a special blood stain called Wright's stain (Fig. 6-14). WBCs containing easily visible granules are called **granulocytes** (gran'u-lo-sites'). WBCs that lack granules or have extremely fine granules that are not easily seen are called **agranulocytes.**

Unscramble the name for a type of WBC in WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 6-2.

Granulocytes

Granulocytes can be differentiated by the color of their granules when stained with Wright's stain. There are three types of granulocytes (Fig. 6-15): **neutrophils, eosinophils** ("eos"), and **basophils** ("basos"). Neutrophils are normally the most numerous type of WBC in adults. A typical neutrophil is **polymorphonuclear,** meaning its nucleus has several lobes or segments, and is also called a "poly," "PMN," or "seg" for short.

KEY POINT The presence of increased numbers of neutrophils is associated with bacterial infection.

Granulocytes

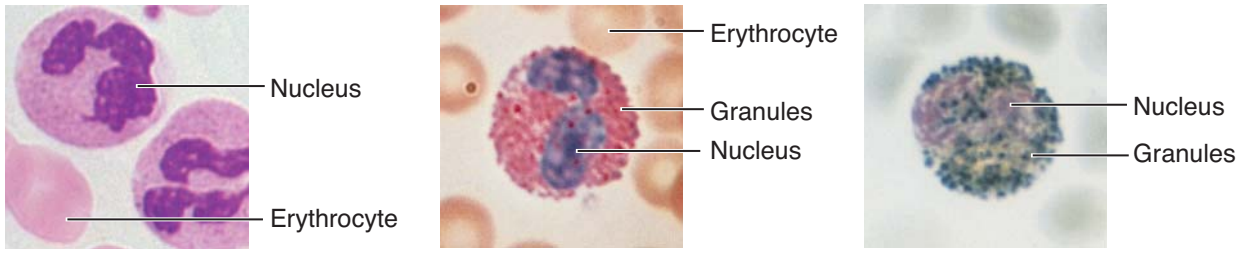


Figure 6-15 Granulocytes. **A.** Neutrophil. **B.** Eosinophil. **C.** Basophil. (Reprinted with permission Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:284.)

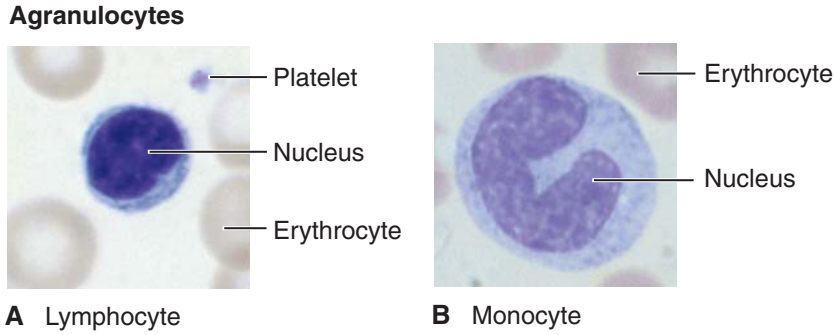


Figure 6-16 Agranulocytes. **A.** Lymphocyte. **B.** Monocyte. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:284.)

Agranulocytes

There are two types of agranulocytes (Fig. 6-16): **monocytes** ("monos") and **lymphocytes** ("lymphs"). Lymphocytes are normally the second most numerous type of WBC and the most numerous agranulocyte. Two main types of lymphocytes are **T lymphocytes** and **B lymphocytes.** Monocytes are the largest WBCs. (The various types of granulocytes and agranulocytes are listed and described in Table 6-5.)

TABLE 6-5 Types of Normal White Blood Cells (WBCs)

WBC Types	Average Percentage of WBCs Total (Adults)	Description/Staining Characteristics	Function	Life Span
Granulocytes				
Neutrophils (nu'tro-fils)	65%	Most numerous type of WBC. Segmented or multilobed nucleus. Fine-textured lavender-staining granules.	Destroy pathogens by phagocytosis	6 hours to a few days
Eosinophils (e'o-sin'o-fils)	Up to 3%	Beadlike granules that stain bright orange–red. Two-lobed nucleus.	Ingest and detoxify foreign protein; help turn off immune reactions; increase with allergies and pinworm infestations.	8–12 days
Basophils (ba'so-fils)	Less than 1%	Least numerous type of WBC: Large dark blue–back staining granules that often obscure a typically S-shaped nucleus.	Release histamine and heparin, which enhance the inflammatory response.	Thought to live several days
Agranulocytes				
Monocytes	1%–7%	Largest WBC; fine, gray–blue cytoplasm and a large, dark-staining nucleus.	Destroy pathogens by phagocytosis; first line of defense in the inflammatory process.	Several months
Lymphocytes	15%–30%	Second most numerous type of WBC; typically has a large, round, dark-purple nucleus that occupies most of the cell and is surrounded by a thin rim of pale-blue cytoplasm.	T lymphocytes directly attack infected cells; B lymphocytes rise to plasma cells that produce immunoglobulins (antibodies) that are released into the bloodstream to circulate and attack foreign cells.	Varies from a few hours to a number of years

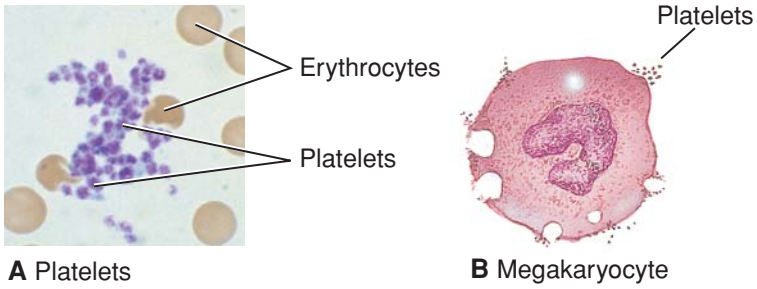


Figure 6-17 Platelets (thrombocytes) in a stained blood smear. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:286.)

Monocytes are sometimes called macrophages after they leave the bloodstream.

Thrombocytes

Thrombocytes (throm'bo-sits), better known as **platelets** (Fig. 6-17), are the smallest of the formed elements. Platelets are actually parts of a large cell called a **megakaryocyte** (meg'a-kar'e-o-sit'), which is found in the bone marrow. The number of platelets in the blood (platelet count) of the average adult ranges from 150,000 to 400,000 per cubic millimeter. Platelets are essential to **coagulation** (the blood-clotting process) and are the first cell on the scene when an injury occurs (see "Hemostasis," below). The life span of a platelet is about 10 days.

BLOOD TYPE

An individual's blood type (also called blood group) is inherited and is determined by the presence or absence of certain proteins called antigens on the surface of the red blood cells. Some blood-type antigens cause formation of antibodies (also called agglutinins) to the opposite blood type. Some antibodies to blood-type antigens are preformed in the blood. (A person will not normally have or produce antibodies against his or her own RBC antigens.) If a person receives a blood transfusion of the wrong type, the antibodies may react with the donor RBCs and cause them to **agglutinate** (a-gloo'tin-ate), or clump together, and **lyse** (lī̄s)—that is, to hemolize or disintegrate. Such an adverse reaction between donor cells and a recipient, which can be fatal, is called a **transfusion reaction.** The most commonly used method of blood typing recognizes two blood group systems: the ABO system and the Rh factor system.

ABO Blood Group System

The **ABO blood group system** recognizes four blood types, A, B, AB, and O, based on the presence or absence of two antigens identified as A and B. An individual who is type A has the A antigen, type B has the B antigen, type AB has both antigens, and type O has neither A nor B. Type O is the most common type, and type AB is the least common.

Unique to the ABO system are preformed antibodies in a person's blood that are directed against the opposite blood type. Type A blood has an antibody (agglutinin) directed against type B, called anti-B. A person with type B has anti-A, type O has both anti-A and anti-B, and type AB has neither. Table 6-6 shows the antigens and antibodies present in the four ABO blood types.

Individuals with type AB blood were once referred to as universal recipients because they have neither A nor B antibody to the RBC antigens and can theoretically receive any ABO type blood. Similarly, type O individuals were once called universal donors because they have neither A nor B antigen on their RBCs, and in an emergency, their blood can theoretically be given to anyone. However, type O blood does contain plasma antibodies to both A and B antigens,

TABLE 6-6 ABO Blood Group System

Blood Type	RBC Antigen	Plasma Antibodies (Agglutinins)
A	A	Anti-B
B	B	Anti-A
AB	A and B	Neither anti-A nor anti-B
O	Neither	Anti-A and anti-B

and when given to an A or B type recipient, it can cause a mild transfusion reaction. To avoid reactions, patients are usually given type-specific blood, even in emergencies.

Rh Blood-Group System

The **Rh blood-group system** is based upon the presence or absence of an RBC antigen called the D antigen, also known as **Rh factor.** An individual with the D antigen present on red blood cells is said to be positive for the Rh factor, or **Rh-positive** (Rh+). An individual whose RBCs lack the D antigen is said to be **Rh-negative** (Rh−). A patient must receive blood with the correct Rh type as well as the correct ABO type. Approximately 85% of the population is Rh+.

Unlike the ABO system, antibodies to the Rh factor (anti-Rh antibodies) are not preformed in the blood of Rh− individuals. However, an Rh− individual who receives Rh+ blood can become sensitized. This means that the individual may produce antibodies against the Rh factor. In addition, an Rh− woman who is carrying an Rh+ fetus may become sensitized by the RBCs of the fetus, most commonly by leakage of the fetal cells into the mother's circulation during childbirth. This may lead to the destruction of the RBCs of a subsequent Rh+ fetus, because Rh antibodies produced by the mother can cross the placenta into the fetal circulation. When this occurs, it is called **hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN).**

An unsensitized Rh− woman can be given Rh immune globulin (RhIg), such as RhoGam, at certain times during her pregnancy and soon after an Rh+ baby's birth. RhIg will destroy Rh+ fetal cells that may have entered her bloodstream and thus prevent sensitization.

Compatibility Test/Cross-Match

Other factors in an individual's blood can cause adverse reactions during a blood transfusion, even with the correct ABO- and Rh-type blood. Consequently, a test to determine if the donor unit of blood and the blood of the patient recipient are compatible (suitable to be mixed together) is performed using patient serum and cells as well as serum and cells from the donor unit. This test is called a **compatibility test** or **cross-match.**

BLOOD SPECIMENS

Serum

Blood that has been removed from the body will coagulate or clot within 30 to 60 minutes. The clot consists of the blood cells enmeshed in a fibrin network (see "Hemostasis," below). The remaining fluid portion is called **serum** and can be separated from the clot by centrifugation (spinning the clotted blood at very high speed in a machine called a centrifuge). Normal fasting serum is a clear, pale-yellow fluid. Serum has the same composition as plasma except that it does not contain fibrinogen, because the fibrinogen was used in the formation of the clot. Many laboratory tests, especially chemistry and immunology tests, are performed on serum.

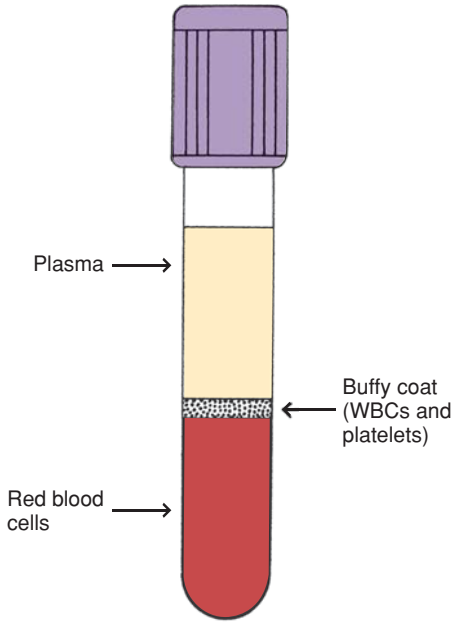


Figure 6-18 Separated whole blood specimen.

Plasma

Not all tests can be performed on serum. For example, most coagulation tests cannot be performed on serum because some of the coagulation factors (e.g., fibrinogen) are used up in the process of clot formation. Some chemistry tests, such as ammonia and potassium, cannot be performed on serum because clotting releases these substances from the cells. In addition, some chemistry test results are needed stat (immediately) in order to respond to emergency situations; having to wait 30 minutes or more for a specimen to clot before centrifuging it to get serum would be unacceptable. If clotting is prevented, however, coagulation factors and other substances affected by clotting are preserved, and the specimen can be centrifuged immediately. Blood can be prevented from clotting by adding a substance called an anticoagulant (see "Anticoagulants," Chapter 7). Adding an anticoagulant initially creates a whole-blood specimen. When a whole-blood specimen is centrifuged, it separates into three distinct layers (Fig. 6-18): a bottom layer of red blood cells; a thin, fluffy-looking, whitish-colored middle layer of WBCs and platelets referred to as the **buffy coat;** and a top layer of liquid called plasma, which can be separated from the cells and used for testing. Normal fasting plasma is a clear to slightly hazy pale-yellow fluid visually indistinguishable from serum. The major difference between plasma and serum is that plasma contains fibrinogen. Many laboratory tests can be performed on either serum or plasma.

Test your ability to identify layers of a separated whole-blood specimen with WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 6-8.

Whole Blood

Some tests, including most hematology tests and some chemistry tests such as glycohemoglobin, cannot be performed on serum or plasma. These tests must be performed on **whole blood** (blood in the same form as it is in the bloodstream). This means that the blood specimen must not be allowed to clot or separate. To obtain a whole-blood specimen, it is necessary to add an anticoagulant. In addition, because the components will separate if the specimen is allowed to stand undisturbed, the specimen must be mixed for a minimum of 2 minutes immediately prior to performing the test.

FYI *Some tests (e.g., glucose) can be performed on serum, plasma, or whole blood, depending upon the type of testing equipment used.*

BOX 6-4 EXAMPLES OF BLOOD DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Blood Disorders

Anemia: an abnormal reduction in the number of RBCs in the circulating blood
Leukemia: disorder involving the multiplication of immature forms of WBCs in the blood
Leukocytosis: an abnormal increase in WBCs in the circulating blood
Leukopenia: an abnormal decrease in WBCs
Polycythemia: an abnormal increase in RBCs
Thrombocytosis: increased number of platelets
Thrombocytopenia: decreased number of platelets

Tests for Blood Disorders

- ABO and Rh type
- Bone marrow examination
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Cross-match
- Differential (diff)
- Eosinophil (Eos) count
- Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)
- Ferritin
- Hematocrit (Hct)
- Hemoglobin (Hb or Hgb)
- Hemogram
- Indices (MCH, MCV, MCHC)
- Iron (Fe)
- Reticulocyte (retic) count
- Total iron-binding capacity (TIBC)

BLOOD DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the blood are listed in Box 6-4.

Hemostasis and Coagulation

Hemostasis (he'mo-sta'sis), which means the arrest or stoppage of bleeding, is the body response that stops the loss of blood after injury without affecting the flow of blood within the rest of the vascular system. (The opposite of hemostasis is hemorrhage.) The hemostatic process requires the coordinated interaction of endothelial cells lining the blood vessels, platelets, other blood cells, plasma proteins, and the coagulation (clotting) process.

Coagulation is the conversion of a liquid such as blood into a semisolid gel called a clot.

View the Platelet Plug Formation animation at http:// thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Ongoing daily repair of vessels keeps the hemostatic process active at a low level all the time as cells die and are replaced. When a blood vessel is injured, it immediately begins to repair the damage. This involves four interrelated responses: (a) vasoconstriction; (b) formation of a primary **platelet plug** in the injured area; (c) progression, if needed, to a stable blood clot called the secondary **hemostatic plug;** and (d) **fibrinolysis,** the dissolving of the clot after the site has healed. (See Figure 6-19 for a description of the hemostatic process.)

KEY POINT Under normal conditions, clot formation is limited to the site of injury and does not disrupt blood flow. Abnormalities in the hemostatic process are potentially life threatening, as they can result in excessive bleeding or thrombosis, which is clotting within a blood vessel.

COAGULATION FACTORS AND PATHWAYS

Normal blood coagulation, which is a critical component of hemostasis, requires the activation of a series of proteins called **coagulation factors** (Table 6-7). These factors are designated

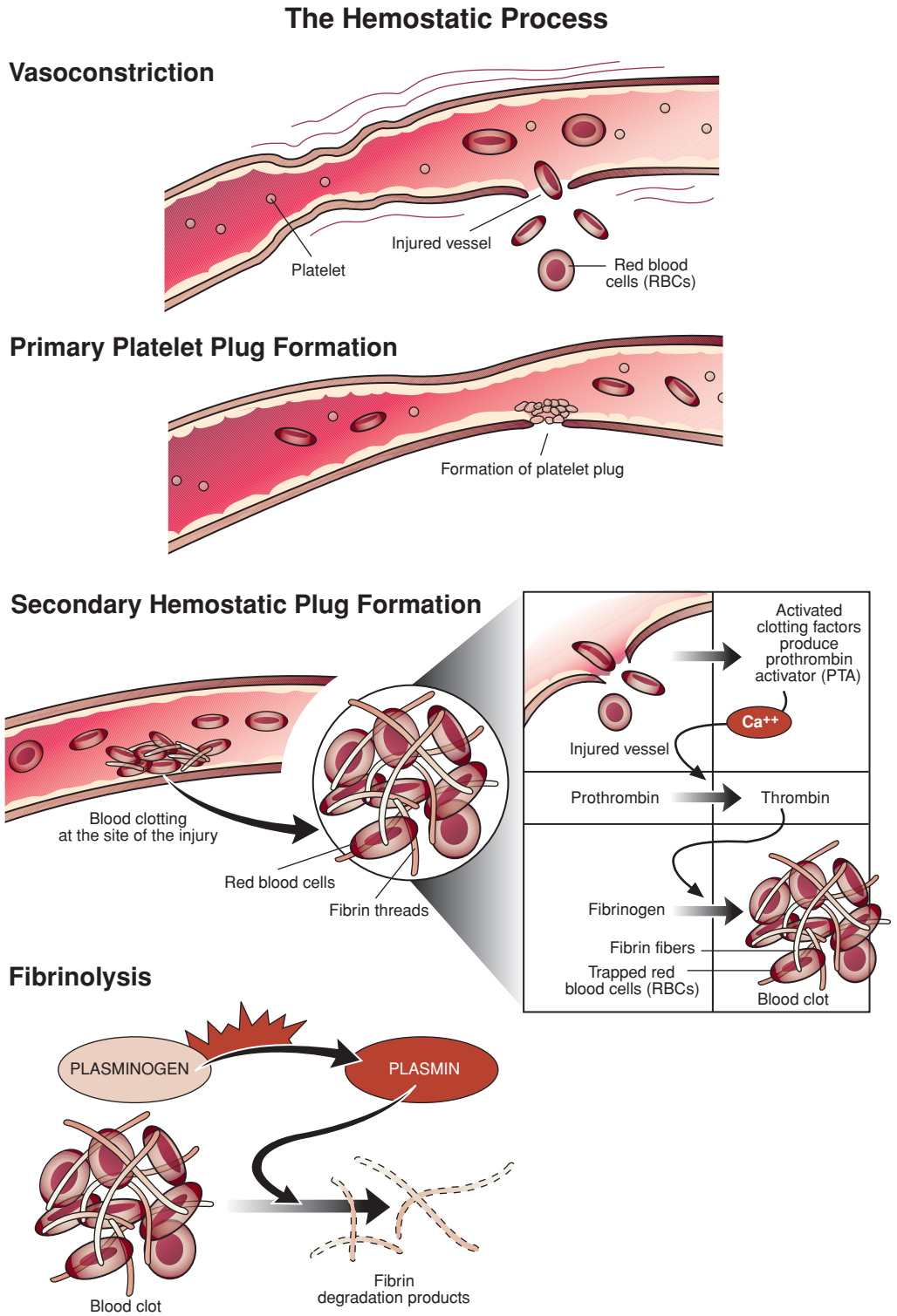


Figure 6-19 The process of hemostasis.

by Roman numerals that were assigned in the order of discovery, not the order in which they become activated. Activated factors have a lowercase "a" added to the roman numeral.

The coagulation factors can be divided into three categories: enzyme precursors, cofactors, and substrates.

- Enzyme precursors are precursor proteins that become enzymes when activated. A precursor is a substance that precedes another substance or one from which another substance

TABLE 6-7 Coagulation Phases, Factors, and Action Involved

Coagulation Phase	Factors Involved	Action Involved
Initiation	vWF TF II IIa VII VIIa X Xa IX IXa V Va	• Endothelial cell damage exposes collagen, von Willebrand factor (vWF), and tissue factor (TF) to circulating blood. • Platelets stick to vWF and collagen in a process called platelet adhesion, become partially activated, and undergo limited degranulation. This generates a small amount of thrombin (IIa) from prothrombin (II). • TF initiates the extrinsic coagulation pathway by activating factor VII and creating a TF/VIIa complex. • TF/VIIa complex activates small amounts of factor X to Xa and factor IX to IXa. • Factor Xa activates factor V and creates an Xa/Va complex on the surface of TF-bearing cells. This too results in the generation of a small amount of thrombin from prothrombin. • Thrombin binds to platelet surface receptors. • The platelets become fully activated, change shape, completely degranulate, and stick to one another in a process called platelet aggregation. • Some of the thrombin converts fibrinogen to soluble fibrin. • Platelet adhesion, aggregation, and fibrin generation result in formation of the primary platelet plug.
Amplification	V Va VIII VIIIa vWF XIa X Xa II IIa	• Cofactors V and VIII bound to platelets during platelet activation are activated by thrombin to factors Va and VIIIa. • Factor Va cleaves factor VIII from the VIII/vWF complex, allowing vWF to cause additional platelet adhesion and aggregation. • Factor XIa binds to factor VIIIa to form a complex that activates factor X on platelet surfaces. • Factor Xa and factor II bind to factor Va, forming a prothrombinase complex that starts mass conversion of prothrombin (II) to thrombin (IIa).
Propagation	IXa XIa Va XIII XIIIa	• Factor IXa activated during initiation binds to factor VIIIa on platelet surfaces creating an IXa/VIIIa complex. More factor IXa is supplied by factor XIa bound to platelet surfaces. • The factor IXa/VIIIa complex supplies factor Xa directly on the platelet surfaces. • Factor Xa quickly complexes with the factor Va bound to platelets during amplification. • The complex creates a prothrombin-converting capacity on the platelets, which creates the thrombin burst needed to trigger conversion of factor XIII to factor XIIIa. • Factor XIIIa cross-links soluble fibrin into insoluble fibrin. • Insoluble fibrin reinforces and stabilizes the secondary hemostatic plug or blood clot.

is made. Enzymes are active proteins that bring about chemical changes in other substances.

- Cofactors are proteins that accelerate enzymatic reactions in the coagulation process.
- Substrates are substances that are acted upon and changed by enzymes.

Fibrinogen (factor I) is the main coagulation substrate. It is a precursor protein that is acted upon by the main coagulation enzyme, thrombin (factor IIa), to form fibrin, an elastic, threadlike protein.

Each activated factor activates another factor in what has been traditionally described as a cascade or waterfall involving two separate pathways:

- The extrinsic, or tissue factor, pathway. *Extrinsic* means "originating outside." The extrinsic pathway is so named because it is initiated (started) by tissue factor, which is normally outside the bloodstream or vascular system.
- The intrinsic, or contact-activation, pathway. *Intrinsic* means "originating within." The intrinsic pathway is so named because it involves coagulation factors circulating within the bloodstream that are activated when they contact the surfaces of certain cells.

KEY POINT The prothrombin test (PT) is used to evaluate extrinsic-pathway function and monitor coumarin therapy. The activated partial thromboplastin test (APTT or PTT) is used to evaluate the intrinsic coagulation pathway and monitor heparin therapy.

Blood collected in a tube that does not contain an anticoagulant clots owing to activation of the intrinsic pathway when the blood comes in contact with the tube or clot activator particles. In addition, the clotting process can be initiated by the extrinsic pathway before the blood enters the tube by tissue injury from the draw and thromboplastin (tissue factor) drawn into the needle.

Both pathways eventually join to form a common pathway that ends in the formation of a fibrin-reinforced blood clot. These pathways require the presence of calcium ions to bind factors to membranes such as platelets. The separate pathway cascade model of coagulation describes reactions that occur in vitro (in a test tube) and is important in the evaluation of coagulation through laboratory testing. However, the cascade model does not adequately explain in vivo (in the living body) coagulation.

Although it was once thought that the two pathways were of equal importance and activated independently, we now know that they do two different jobs during the process of hemostasis in vivo. The extrinsic pathway is responsible for initiating the coagulation process, and the intrinsic pathway is responsible for producing a large amount of thrombin on the surface of activated platelets. (See Figure 6-20 for a diagram of simplified in vivo coagulation activation.) Hemostasis is initiated with the exposure of cell-based tissue factor at the site of injury. This leads to production of a small amount of thrombin that has multiple functions that "amplify" the coagulation process and lead to the production of even more thrombin on platelet surfaces. The majority of steps in the process involve the formation of coagulation factor complexes (combinations) on cell surfaces; hence, it is called a cell-based model of coagulation. Cell-based coagulation is described in terms of three overlapping phases: **initiation, amplification,** and **propagation,** all involving generation of the enzyme thrombin (factor IIa) (Table 6-7).

THE ROLE OF THROMBIN

The enzyme thrombin plays *the* major role in coagulation. It is generated at the injured site from prothrombin (factor II), its precursor form present in the blood. The primary role of thrombin is to convert fibrinogen to soluble fibrin. Thrombin also amplifies (intensifies) coagulation, supports platelet plug formation, activates factor XIII to cross-link fibrin, and controls its own formation and the coagulation process by activating protein C, a substance that helps stop thrombin formation. Once healing has occurred, thrombin initiates the breakdown of the fibrin-reinforced clot by its role in the production of an enzyme that causes clot lysis. Thrombin is also thought to play a role in inflammation and wound healing.

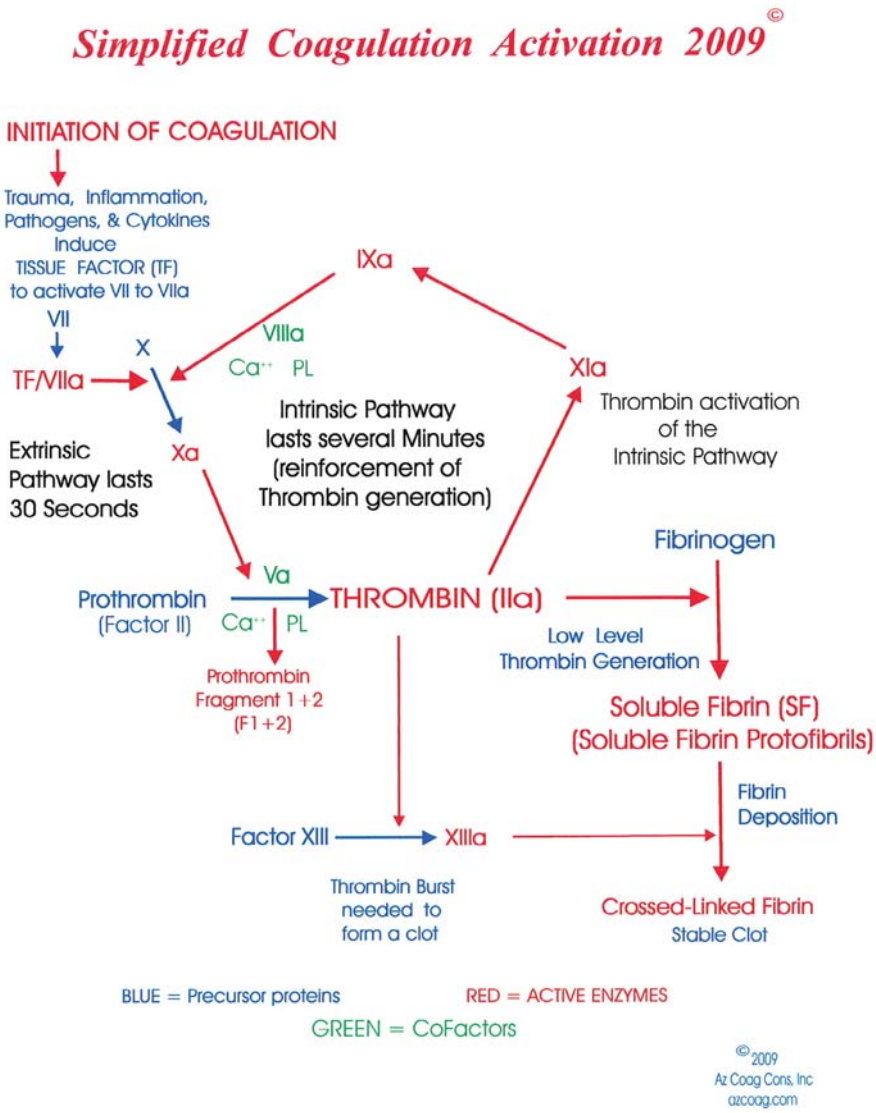


FIGURE 6-20 DIAGRAM OF SIMPLIFIED IN VIVO COAGULATION ACTIVATION. (COURTESY OF ARIZONA COAGULATION CONSULTANTS, INC., AZCOAG.COM)

Test your knowledge of this complicated subject with the questions in the EXAM REVIEW.

THE HEMOSTATIC PROCESS IN VIVO

Vasoconstriction

The immediate reaction to blood vessel injury is vasoconstriction, a reduction in the diameter of the blood vessel caused by contraction of smooth muscle fibers in the tunica media. This narrows the blood vessel, which decreases the flow of blood past the injured area and limits blood loss. This is also the objective behind applying pressure to a bleeding wound.

Vasoconstriction is limited by the opposite process of vasodilation, an increase in vessel diameter due to relaxation of the muscle fibers. Vasodilation prevents the vessel from becoming too narrow and blocking effective blood flow.

FYI

Vasodilation is caused by nitric oxide, a natural muscle relaxant produced by endothelial cells. The use of nitroglycerin tablets to prevent and treat chest pain (angina pectoris) is the same process, because the breakdown of nitroglycerin releases nitric oxide.

View the Platelet Formation animation at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Platelet Plug Formation

Platelet plug formation occurs during the initiation phase of the coagulation process; it involves the adhesion, activation, and aggregation of platelets and the generation a small amount of fibrin.

Initiation

The **initiation** phase (Table 6-7) begins with damage to blood vessel endothelial cells caused, for example, by trauma, inflammation, or pathogens. The damage exposes a "gluelike" substance called von Willebrand (vWF) factor, which causes platelets to stick to the damaged tissue (**platelet adhesion**) and become partially activated. Enough clotting factors are released from the initial platelet mass to form thrombin, which then begins fibrin generation on a small scale.

Under normal circumstances, platelets become activated only at the site of an injured blood vessel, because normal intact blood vessel endothelial cells secrete chemicals that inhibit platelet activation. Aspirin also inhibits platelet activation (and blood clotting in general) and is often prescribed as a "blood thinner" or "antiplatelet agent" to those at risk of heart attack or stroke.

Blood vessel damage also exposes tissue factor (TF) to the circulating blood. TF, which is also called thromboplastin and factor III, is present in the membranes of cells outside the vascular bed; only microparticles of it circulate in the blood. TF activates the extrinsic factor pathway, which leads to the generation of a small amount of thrombin from prothrombin on the surface of TF-bearing cells. The thrombin binds to receptors on the surfaces of the platelets, causing them to change shape, stick to one another (**platelet aggregation**), become activated, and recruit other platelets to the injury. Some of the thrombin converts fibrinogen to soluble fibrin. The combination of platelet adhesion, aggregation, and fibrin generation results in the formation of the primary platelet plug, which is composed of soluble fibrin and activated platelets.

Heparan sulfate is a naturally occurring anticoagulant on the surfaces of blood vessel endothelial cells. It helps prevent clots within vessels (thrombosis) by reducing thrombin generation within normal (noninjured) blood vessels. Heparan sulfate is closely related to the drug heparin. Heparin is derived from certain animal tissues and is used in the treatment of clotting disorders.

The initiation phase (tissue factor activation and formation of the platelet plug as well as a small amount of thrombin) is shut down within 30 seconds by tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI), a protein secreted by endothelial cells that inactivates factors Xa and TF/VIIa. For some very minor injuries, such as a needle puncture of a vein, platelet plug formation and applied pressure are sufficient to seal the site, and coagulation goes no further.

KEY POINT Normal platelet plug formation depends on an adequate concentration of platelets (determined by a platelet count), normally functioning platelets (determined by platelet aggregation testing), and blood vessel integrity. A bleeding time (BT) test assesses platelet plug formation in the capillaries.

Secondary Hemostatic Plug Formation

For injuries with more tissue damage, the stimulus for coagulation is strong, and the coagulation process continues until the initial platelet plug becomes a stable blood clot called the secondary hemostatic plug. This involves the amplification and propagation phases of the coagulation process.

Amplification

The **amplification** phase (Table 6-7) involves another primary function of thrombin, which is to enhance its own production by positive feedback loops. Although a small amount of

TABLE 6-8 Natural Inhibitors of Coagulation

Natural Inhibitor	Function
Antithrombin (AT)	Binds with thrombin to form thrombin/AT complexes that are removed by the liver; inhibits activity of factors IIa, IXa, Xa, XIa, and XIIa.
Heparin cofactor II (HCII)	Thrombin neutralizer activated by substances on arterial endothelial cells.
Proteins C and S	Inactivate cofactors Va and VIIIa. Protein C is activated by a thrombin complex on intact endothelial cell surfaces. Protein S is a binding cofactor for protein C, enhancing its function. Only free circulating protein S can be a protein C cofactor.

thrombin was generated in the initiation phase, more thrombin must be generated to reinforce and stabilize the newly formed platelet plug. Thrombin sets up its own mass production by activating a sequence of clotting factors that ends with a factor complex on the surface of the platelets; this begins the mass conversion of prothrombin to thrombin.

Propagation

In the **propagation** phase (Table 6-7), the large amounts of thrombin needed for fibrin formation are generated on the surface of activated platelets as more and more of them are drawn to the site of injury. This creates a prothrombin converting capacity on the platelets, which ultimately creates a burst of thrombin. The thrombin burst triggers the activation of coagulation factor XIII to factor XIIIa. Factor XIIIa cross-links soluble fibrin into a stable fibrin meshwork, forming a netlike structure that traps blood cells and platelets; this produces a dense, stable clot at the injury site in 3 to 5 minutes.

Thrombin generation ends with clot formation. The site of coagulation initiation is covered by a mass of platelets and fibrin. Activated factors cannot get through the dense clot that now overlies the site. It is believed that the trapping of activated factors and depletion of precursor enzymes shuts down thrombin generation, terminating the coagulation process and preventing thrombosis of the vessel. Thrombin remaining within the clot is still quite active and can make repairs if the clot is disturbed. Vessel repair is accomplished by the release of platelet-derived growth factor, which is released from the activated platelets in the clot.

KEY POINT The natural inhibitors (Table 6-8) circulate in the plasma along with the coagulation factors. They keep the coagulation process in check and limited to local sites by degrading (breaking down) any activated coagulation factors that escape the injury site or remain within the formed clot.

Antithrombin, a natural inhibitor, is too large to get into a clot. The drug fondaparinux sodium (Arixtra) was developed to inactivate thrombin inside a clot and prevent clot propagation in individuals with clotting disorders, such as deep venous thrombosis (DVT).

FIBRINOLYSIS

Fibrinolysis (fi'brin-ol'i-sis), the process by which fibrin is dissolved, is an ongoing process responsible for two important activities: (a) it dissolves clots that form within intact vessels (thrombi), thus reopening the vessels, and (b) it removes hemostatic clots from the tissue as healing occurs. The process is possible because activation of the clotting process also activates factors like XIIa and promotes release of plasminogen activators from vessel lining cells and white blood cells. These substances convert plasminogen to plasmin. Plasmin is the enzyme that breaks down fibrin into smaller fragments called **fibrin degradation products** (**fibrin split products and D-dimers**), which are then removed by phagocytic cells.

BOX 6-5 EXAMPLES OF DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS OF THE HEMOSTATIC PROCESS

Hemostatic Disorders

Deep venous thrombosis (DVT): a blood clot that forms in a large vein in the leg.
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC): pathological, widespread clotting and fibrinolysis at the same time, in which coagulation factors are consumed to such an extent that bleeding occurs.
Hemophilia (he'mo-fil'e-a): a hereditary condition characterized by bleeding due to increased coagulation time. The common type of hemophilia is due to factor VIII deficiency along with factor IX (Christmas factor).
Thrombocytopenia (throm'bo-si'to-pe'ne-a): an abnormal decrease in platelets.

Tests of the Hemostatic Process

- Bleeding time (BT)
- D-dimer
- Factor assays
- Fibrin degradation products (FDP)
- Platelet function assay (PFA)
- Prothrombin time (PT)
- Partial thromboplastin time (PTT or APTT)

Bleeding may be associated with increased fibrinolytic activity, whereas decreased fibrinolytic activity is associated with thrombosis.

THE ROLE OF THE LIVER IN HEMOSTASIS

The liver plays an important role in the hemostatic process. It is responsible for the synthesis, or manufacture, of many of the coagulation factors, including factors V, VIII, prothrombin, and fibrinogen. It also produces the bile salts needed for the absorption of vitamin K, which is essential to the synthesis of a number of coagulation factors, including factors II, VII, IX, X, protein C, and protein S. In addition, mast cells (tissue basophils) in the liver produce heparin. When the liver is diseased, the synthesis of coagulation factors is impaired and bleeding may result.

KEY POINT Because vitamin K is essential to the synthesis of a number of clotting factors, vitamin K deficiency can result in the production of defective clotting factors and lead to an elevated prothrombin time and activated partial thromboplastin time as well as potential bleeding. Coumarins (including Coumadin and other warfarin trade names) are used to treat clotting disorders by inhibiting the proper synthesis of the vitamin K–dependent factors.

HEMOSTATIC DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the hemostatic process are listed in Box 6-5.

The first coagulation disorder to be recognized historically was hemophilia, having been described during the second century.

The Lymphatic System

FUNCTIONS

The **lymphatic system** (Fig. 6-21) returns tissue fluid to the bloodstream, protects the body by removing microorganisms and impurities, processes lymphocytes, and delivers fats absorbed

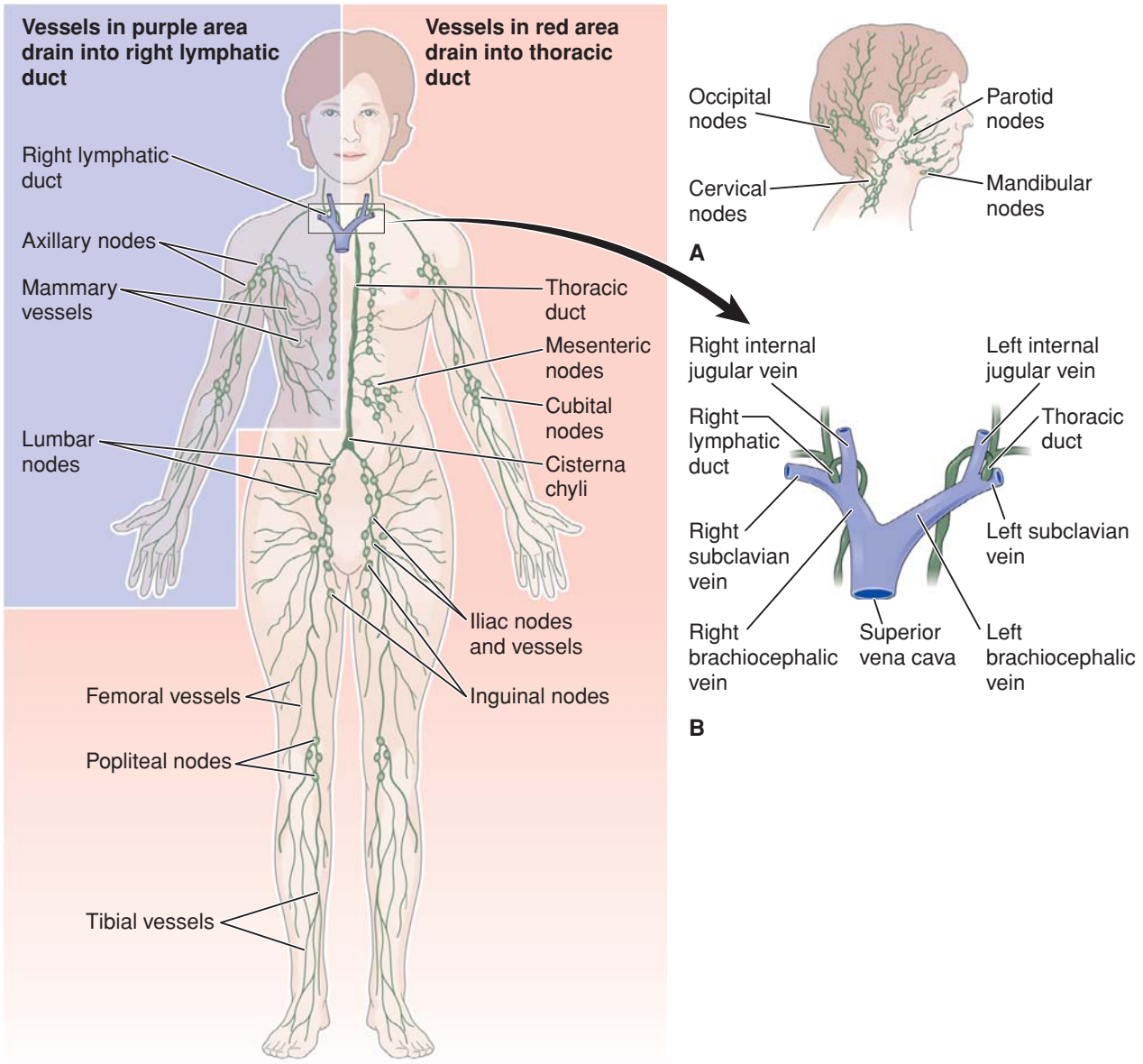


Figure 6-21 Lymphatic system. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease,* 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009:354.)

from the small intestine to the bloodstream. Lymph vessels extend throughout the entire body, much like blood vessels.

STRUCTURES

The lymphatic system contains fluid called **lymph** and is made up of lymphatic vessels, ducts, and **nodes** (masses of lymph tissue) through which the lymph flows.

LYMPH FLOW

Body cells are bathed in tissue fluid acquired from the bloodstream. Water, oxygen, and nutrients continually diffuse through the capillary walls into the tissue spaces. Much of the fluid diffuses back into the capillaries along with waste products of metabolism. Excess tissue fluid filters into lymphatic capillaries, where it is called lymph. Lymph fluid is similar to plasma but is 95% water.

Lymphatic capillaries join with larger and larger lymphatic vessels until they empty into one of two terminal vessels, either the right lymphatic duct or the thoracic duct. These ducts then empty into large veins in the upper body. Lymph moves through the vessels primarily owing to skeletal muscle contraction, much as blood moves through the veins. Like veins, lymphatic vessels have valves to keep the lymph flowing in the right direction.

Before reaching the ducts, the lymph passes through a series of structures called **lymph nodes.** Lymphoid tissue, of which nodes are composed, is a special kind of tissue with the ability to remove impurities and process lymphocytes. Thus, lymph nodes are able to trap and destroy bacteria and foreign matter and produce lymphocytes. The tonsils, thymus, gastrointestinal tract, and spleen also contain lymphoid tissue.

CAUTION: Axillary lymph nodes (nodes in the armpit) are often removed as part of breast cancer surgery. Their removal can impair lymph drainage and interfere with the destruction of bacteria and foreign matter. This is cause for concern in phlebotomy and the reason why an arm on the same side as a mastectomy is not suitable for venipuncture.

KEY POINT Inflamed lymph nodes may not be able to filter pathogens from the lymph before it returns to the bloodstream. This can lead to septicemia (sep-ti-se'me-ah), the presence of pathogenic microorganisms in the blood.

Time for some fun. It's good for your heart. Check out the cross-word puzzle in Chapter 6 of the WORKBOOK.

LYMPHATIC SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Examples of disorders and diagnostic tests associated with the lymphatic system are listed in Box 6-6.

BOX 6-6 EXAMPLES OF LYMPHATIC SYSTEM DISORDERS AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Lymphatic System Disorders

Lymphangitis (lim-fan-ji'tis): inflammation of the lymph vessels
Lymphadenitis (lim-fad'e-ni-tis): inflammation of lymph nodes
Lymphadenopathy (lim-fad'e-nop'ah-the): disease of the lymph nodes, often associated with node enlargement such as seen in mononucleosis
Splenomegaly (splen'no-meg'ah-le): spleen enlargement
Hodgkin disease: a chronic, malignant disorder, common in males, characterized by lymph node enlargement
Lymphosarcoma (lim-fo-sar-ko'mah): a malignant lymphoid tumor
Lymphoma: the term for any lymphoid tumor, benign or malignant

Tests for Lymphatic System Disorders

- Bone marrow biopsy
- Complete blood count (CBC)
- Culture and sensitivity (C&S)
- Lymph node biopsy
- Mononucleosis (mono) test

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Which of the following is described as an anuclear, biconcave disk?**
   a. Erythrocyte
   b. Granulocyte
   c. Leukocyte
   d. Thrombocyte

2. **The chamber of the heart that receives blood from the systemic circulation is the:**
   a. left atrium.
   b. left ventricle.
   c. right atrium.
   d. right ventricle.

3. **The thick muscle layer of the heart is called the:**
   a. endocardium.
   b. epicardium.
   c. myocardium.
   d. pericardium.

4. **The ECG shows P waves due to:**
   a. atrial contractions.
   b. delayed contractions.
   c. electrical charge revival.
   d. ventricular contraction.

5. **When taking a blood pressure, the systolic pressure is the pressure reading when the:**
   a. artery is compressed and blood flow is cut off.
   b. cuff has already been completely deflated.
   c. first heart sounds are heard as the cuff is deflated.
   d. muffled sound is heard as the cuff is deflated.

6. **The purpose of the pulmonary system is to:**
   a. carry blood to and from the lungs.
   b. carry nutrients to the cells.
   c. deliver blood to the systemic system.
   d. remove impurities from the blood.

7. **Which of the following blood vessels are listed in the proper order of blood flow?**
   a. Aorta, superior vena cava, vein
   b. Arteriole, venule, capillary
   c. Capillary, venule, vein
   d. Vein, venule, capillary

8. **The internal space of a blood vessel is called the:**
   a. atrium.
   b. lumen.
   c. septum.
   d. valve.

9. **The longest vein and the largest artery in the body in that order are:**
   a. cephalic and femoral.
   b. great saphenous and aorta.
   c. inferior vena cava and brachial.
   d. pulmonary and femoral.

10. **The preferred vein for venipuncture in the "H" pattern is the:**
    a. accessory cephalic.
    b. basilic.
    c. cephalic.
    d. median cubital.

11. **The major difference between plasma and serum is that plasma:**
    a. contains fibrinogen, serum does not.
    b. contains nutrients, serum does not.
    c. looks clear, serum looks cloudy.
    d. looks amber, serum looks pale yellow.

12. **An individual's blood type (A, B, AB, or O) is determined by the presence or absence of which of the following on the red blood cells?**
    a. Antigens
    b. Antibodies
    c. Chemicals
    d. Hormones

13. **Which is the correct sequence of events after blood vessel injury?**
    a. Fibrinolysis, platelet adhesion, vasoconstriction
    b. Platelet aggregation, vasoconstriction, fibrin clot formation
    c. Vasoconstriction, platelet aggregation, fibrin clot formation
    d. Vasodilation, platelet adhesion, fibrin clot formation

14. **Lymph originates from:**
    a. joint fluid.
    b. plasma.
    c. serum.
    d. tissue fluid.

15. **A heart disorder characterized by fluid buildup in the lungs is called:**
    a. aortic stenosis.
    b. bacterial endocarditis.
    c. congestive heart failure.
    d. myocardial infarction.

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 6-1 *M-shaped Antecubital Veins*

A phlebotomist is examining a patient's arm in search of a suitable vein for a venipuncture. The major visible veins are arranged in the M-shaped pattern.

QUESTIONS

1. *Which vein in this pattern is the first choice for venipuncture?*
2. *Which vein in this pattern is the second choice for venipuncture?*
3. *Which vein is the last choice for venipuncture?*
4. *Why is the vein identified in question 3 the last choice for venipuncture?*

CASE STUDY 6-2 *Blood Specimens*

A specimen processor receives a stat chemistry specimen on a patient in the ED at 0900 hours. The specimen was collected at 0855 hours. She immediately spins it in the centrifuge, causing the cells to go to the bottom of the tube and leaving clear liquid at the top. She then transfers the clear liquid to another tube that is labeled with the patient's information before delivering the tube to a technician in the chemistry department.

QUESTIONS

1. *Was the specimen whole blood or clotted blood before it was centrifuged?*
2. *What is the term for the part of the specimen that will be used for testing?*
3. *What clues tell you the type of specimen it is?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Blaney KD, Howard PR. *Basic and Applied Concepts of Immunohematology*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Mosby/Elsevier; 2008.

Cohen BJ. *Memmler's the Human Body in Health and Disease*, 11th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009.

Federated Committee on Anatomical Terminology (FCAT). *Terminologica Anatomica.* New York: Thieme; 1999.

Fischbach FT, Dunning MB. *Laboratory Diagnostic Tests*, 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.

Harmening DM. *Clinical Hematology and Fundamentals of Hemostasis.* Philadelphia, FA Davis; 2009.

Herlihy B. *The Human Body in Health and Illness*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2006.

Moore K.L., Dalley A.F. Clincally oriented anatomy 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009.

Netter FP. *Atlas of Human Anatomy*, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier; 2006.

Stedman's Medical Dictionary for the Health Professions and Nursing, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2007.

Venes MD. *Taber's Cyclopedic Medical Dictionary*, 20th ed. Philadelphia: FA Davis; 2005.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Animations:
  - Cardiac Cycle
  - Gas Exchange in Alveoli
  - Oxygen Transport
  - Platelet Plug Formation
  - Venous Valve Action
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash-card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **American Heart Association, Learn and Live**: http://www.heart.org/HEARTORG/
- **Anatomy Arcade, WACK-A-BONE**: http://www.anatomyarcade.com/games/WAB/WAB.html

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review*, 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

UNIT III

BLOOD COLLECTION PROCEDURES

7 Blood Collection Equipment, Additives, and Order of Draw 191

8 Venipuncture Procedures 225

9 Preanalytical Considerations 283

10 Capillary Puncture Equipment and Procedures 319

CHAPTER

7

Blood Collection Equipment, Additives, and Order of Draw

KEY TERMS

Do the matching exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

ACD
additive
anticoagulant
antiglycolytic agent
antiseptic
bevel
butterfly needle
clot activator
disinfectant
EDTA
ETS
evacuated tube
gauge
glycolysis
heparin
hub
hypodermic needle
lumen
multisample needle
order of draw
potassium oxalate
PST
shaft
sharps container
silica
sodium citrate
sodium fluoride
SPS
SST
thixotropic gel
winged infusion set

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. List, describe, and explain the purpose of the equipment and supplies needed to collect blood by venipuncture.
3. Compare and contrast antiseptics and disinfectants and give examples of each.
4. Identify appropriate phlebotomy needles by length, gauge, and any associated color coding.
5. List and describe evacuated tube system (ETS) and syringe system components, explain how each system works, and tell how to determine which system and components to use.
6. Identify the general categories of additives used in blood collection, list the various additives within each category, and describe how each additive works.
7. Describe the color coding used to identify the presence or absence of additives in blood collection tubes and name the additive, laboratory departments, and individual tests associated with the various color-coded tubes.
8. List the "order of draw" when multiple tubes are being collected and explain why it is important.

The primary duty of the phlebotomist is to collect blood specimens for laboratory testing. Blood is collected by several methods, including arterial puncture, capillary puncture, and venipuncture. This chapter describes general blood collection equipment and supplies commonly needed regardless of the method of collection, equipment specific to venipuncture, additives used in blood collection, and the order of draw for collecting or filling blood specimen tubes. A phlebotomist must be familiar with all the types of equipment in order to select appropriate collection devices for the type and condition of the patient's vein and the type and amount of specimen required for the test. Choosing the appropriate tools and using them correctly helps assure the safe collection of high-quality blood specimens. (Equipment specific to capillary puncture and arterial puncture is described in Chapters 10 and 14, respectively.)

General Blood Collection Equipment and Supplies

The following paragraphs describe the equipment and supplies commonly needed for all methods of collecting blood specimens.

BLOOD-DRAWING STATION

A blood-drawing station is a dedicated area of a medical laboratory or clinic equipped for performing phlebotomy procedures on patients, primarily outpatients sent by their physicians for laboratory testing. A typical blood-drawing station includes a table for supplies, a special chair where the patient sits during the blood collection procedure, and a bed or reclining chair for patients with a history of fainting, persons donating blood, and other special situations. A bed or padded table is also needed if heelsticks or other procedures will be performed on infants and small children.

PHLEBOTOMY CHAIRS

A phlebotomy chair should be comfortable for the patient and have adjustable armrests to achieve proper positioning of either arm. Special phlebotomy chairs (Fig. 7-1) are available from a number of manufacturers. Most have adjustable armrests that lock in place to prevent the patient from falling should fainting occur.

Figure 7-1 A phlebotomy chair. (Courtesy Lab Conco, Kansas City, MO.)

Figure 7-2 Two types of handheld phlebotomy equipment carriers.

CAUTION: In the absence of a special chair, precautions must be taken to prevent falls and ensure client safety.

EQUIPMENT CARRIERS

Equipment carriers make blood collection equipment portable. This is especially important in a hospital setting and other instances in which the patient cannot come to the laboratory.

Handheld Carriers

Handheld phlebotomy equipment carriers or trays (Fig. 7-2) come in a variety of styles and sizes designed to be easily carried by the phlebotomist and to contain enough equipment for numerous blood draws. They are convenient for "stat" or emergency situations or when relatively few patients need blood work.

Phlebotomy Carts

Phlebotomy carts (Fig. 7-3) are typically made of stainless steel or strong synthetic material. They have swivel wheels, which glide the carts smoothly and quietly down hospital hallways and in and out of elevators. They normally have several shelves to carry adequate supplies for obtaining blood specimens from many patients. Carts are commonly used for early-morning

Figure 7-3 A phlebotomist with a phlebotomy cart.

hospital phlebotomy rounds, when many patients need lab work, and for scheduled "sweeps" (rounds that occur at regular intervals throughout the day). Carts are bulky and a potential source of nosocomial infection; they are not normally brought into patients' rooms. Instead, they are parked outside in the hallway. A tray of supplies to be taken into the room is often carried on the cart.

KEY POINT Keeping carts and trays adequately stocked with supplies is an important duty of the phlebotomist.

GLOVES AND GLOVE LINERS

The Centers for Disease Control/ Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (CDC/HICPAC) standard precautions and the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Bloodborne Pathogen Standard require the wearing of gloves when performing phlebotomy. A new pair must be used for each patient and be removed when the procedure is completed. Nonsterile, disposable latex, nitrile, neoprene, polyethylene, and vinyl examination gloves are acceptable for most phlebotomy procedures. A good fit is essential. Special glove liners (Fig. 7-4A) are available for persons who develop allergies or dermatitis from wearing gloves. Barrier hand creams (Fig. 7-4B) that help prevent skin irritation and are compatible with most gloves are also available. Gloves with powder are not recommended, as the powder can be a source of contamination for some tests (especially those collected by skin puncture) and can also cause allergies in some users. In addition, powder in latex gloves can help suspend most types of particles in the air and thus pose a danger to those with latex allergy. The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates glove quality.

KEY POINT Decontamination of hands after glove removal is essential. Any type of glove may contain defects, and some studies suggest that vinyl gloves may not provide an adequate barrier to viruses.

ANTISEPTICS

Antiseptics are substances used to prevent sepsis, which is the presence of microorganisms or their toxic products within the bloodstream. Antiseptics prevent or inhibit the growth and development of microorganisms but do not necessarily kill them. They are considered safe to use on human skin and are used to clean the site prior to blood collection. The antiseptic most commonly used for routine blood collection is 70% isopropyl alcohol (isopropanol) in

Figure 7-4 **A.** UltraFIT glove liners. **B.** SoftGUARD barrier hand cream. (Courtesy Erie Scientific Co., Portsmouth, NH.)

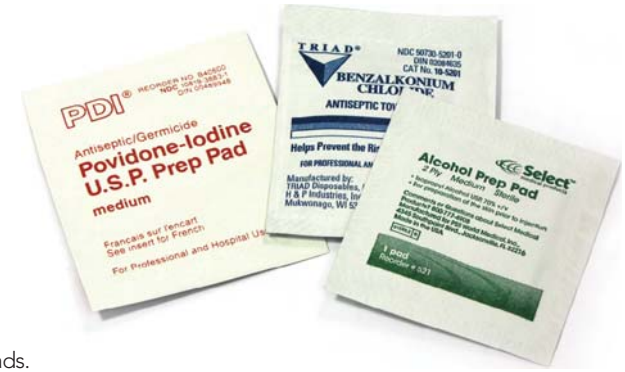


Figure 7-5 Examples of antiseptic prep pads.

individually wrapped prep pads (Fig. 7-5). For a higher degree of antisepsis, the traditional antiseptic has been povidone–iodine in the form of swab sticks or sponge pads for blood culture collection and prep pads for blood gas collection. However, the use of alcohol-based preparations for these procedures is increasing because many patients are allergic to povidone–iodine. A list of antiseptics used in blood collection is shown in Box 7-1.

KEY POINT Cleaning with an antiseptic reduces the number of microorganisms but does not sterilize the site.

DISINFECTANTS

Disinfectants are chemical substances or solutions regulated by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) that are used to remove or kill microorganisms on surfaces and instruments. They are typically corrosive and are not safe to use on human skin. According to the CDC and HICPAC *Guidelines for Environmental Infection Control in Healthcare Facilities*, use of EPA-registered sodium hypochlorite products is preferred, but solutions made from generic 5.25% sodium hypochlorite (household bleach) may be used. A 1:100 dilution is recommended for decontaminating nonporous surfaces after cleaning up blood or other body fluid spills in patient-care settings. When spills involve large amounts of blood or other body fluids or occur in the laboratory, a 1:10 dilution is applied prior to cleanup. At least 10 minutes of contact time is required for disinfectants to be effective.

KEY POINT Fresh bleach solutions should be made daily or as needed.

HAND SANITIZERS

The CDC *Guideline for Hand Hygiene in Health Care Settings* recommends the use of alcohol-based hand sanitizers for routine decontamination of hands as a substitute for hand washing provided that the hands are not visibly soiled. If hands are heavily contaminated with

BOX 7-1 ANTISEPTICS USED IN BLOOD COLLECTION

- 70% Ethyl alcohol
- 70% Isopropyl alcohol (isopropanol)
- Benzalkonium chloride (e.g., Zephiran chloride)
- Chlorhexidine gluconate
- Hydrogen peroxide
- Povidone–iodine (0.1%–1% available iodine)
- Tincture of iodine

Figure 7-6 **A.** A personal-size bottle of hand sanitizer. **B.** A wall-mounted hand sanitizer dispenser.

organic material and hand-washing facilities are not available, it is recommended that hands be cleaned with detergent-containing wipes followed by the use of an alcohol-based hand cleanser. Alcohol-based hand cleansers are available in rinses, gels, and foams and come in various types of containers including personal-size bottles and wall-mounted dispensers (Fig. 7-6). Wall-mounted dispensers are often located just inside the doors to patient rooms and next to handwashing facilities. Phlebotomists typically carry small bottles of sanitizer in their equipment carriers.

GAUZE PADS/COTTON BALLS

Clean 2- by 2-inch gauze pads folded in fourths are used to hold pressure over the site following blood collection procedures. Special gauze pads with fluidproof backing are also available to help prevent contamination of gloves from blood at the site. Use of cotton balls to hold pressure is not recommended because they tend to stick to the site and reinitiate bleeding when removed because they dislodge the platelet plug that seals a puncture site.

BANDAGES

Adhesive bandages are used to cover a blood collection site after the bleeding has stopped. Paper, cloth, or knitted tape placed over a folded gauze square can also be used. Self-adhesive gauze placed over the gauze pad or cotton ball and wrapped around the arm is being used increasingly, especially for patients who are allergic to adhesive bandages. It is also used to form a pressure bandage following arterial puncture or venipuncture in patients with bleeding problems. Latex-free bandages are available for those with latex allergies.

CAUTION: Adhesive bandages should not be used on babies younger than 2 years of age because of the danger of aspiration and suffocation.

Figure 7-7 Several styles of sharps containers. (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.)

NEEDLE AND SHARPS DISPOSAL CONTAINERS

Used needles, lancets, and other sharp objects must be disposed of immediately in special containers referred to as **"sharps" containers** (Fig. 7-7), even if such objects contain safety features. A variety of styles and sizes of sharp containers are available. Most are red, for easy identification, but some are clear or opaque to make it easier to tell when they are full. All must be clearly marked with a biohazard symbol and be rigid, puncture-resistant, leakproof, and disposable and have locking lids to seal the contents when filled to the appropriate volume, after which they must be properly disposed of as biohazardous waste.

CAUTION: Sharps containers should not be overfilled because this creates a danger of sharps injury or other biohazard exposure (e.g., contact with infectious substances) to subsequent users.

BIOHAZARD BAGS

Biohazard bags (Fig. 7-8) are leakproof plastic bags that are commonly used to transport blood and other specimens from the collection site to the laboratory. The bags are marked with a biohazard label and often have an outside pocket in which requisitions or other forms can be placed. The bags help protect the collector and others from biohazard contamination. They will also contain a leak should a spill occur. There are various other styles and sizes of biohazard bags for biohazard trash and other biohazardous waste.

SLIDES

Precleaned 25- by 75-mm (1- by 3-in.) glass microscope slides are used to make blood films for hematology determinations. Slides are available either plain or with a frosted area at one end where the patient's name or other information can be written in pencil.

PEN

A phlebotomist should always carry a pen with indelible (permanent) nonsmear ink to label tubes and record other patient information.

WATCH

A watch, preferably with a sweep second hand or timer, is needed to accurately determine specimen collection times and time certain tests.

Figure 7-8 Two styles of biohazard bags.

Venipuncture Equipment

Don't forget that you can test your equipment knowledge with the questions in the EXAM REVIEW.

The following equipment is used for venipuncture procedures in addition to the general blood collection supplies and equipment previously described.

VEIN-LOCATING DEVICES

There are a number of optional but useful portable transillumination devices on the market that make it easier to locate veins that are difficult to see or feel. Transillumination means to inspect an organ by passing light through its walls. These devices typically shine high-intensity LED or infrared red light through the patient's subcutaneous tissue to highlight veins. The hemoglobin in the blood within the veins absorbs the light, causing the veins to stand out as dark lines. Most devices can be used in patients of all ages. Examples include the Venoscope II (Fig. 7-9A,B) and Neonatal Transilluminator (Venoscope, L.L.C., Lafayette, LA), and the AccuVein AV300 (Fig. 7-9C) (AccuVein LLC, Huntington, NY).

TOURNIQUET

A **tourniquet** (Fig. 7-10) is a device that is applied or tied around a patient's arm prior to venipuncture to restrict blood flow. A properly applied tourniquet is tight enough to restrict venous flow out of the area but not so tight as to restrict arterial flow into the area. Restriction of venous flow distends or inflates the veins, making them larger and easier to find, and stretches the vein walls so they are thinner and easier to pierce with a needle. Restriction of blood flow can change blood components if the tourniquet is left in place for more than 1 minute, so a tourniquet must fasten in a way that is easy to release with one hand during blood collection procedures or in emergency situations, such as when a patient starts to faint or the needle accidentally backs out of the arm during venipuncture.

There are a number of different types of tourniquets, and most are available in both adult and pediatric sizes. The most common type, a strap tourniquet, is a flat strip of stretchable material, such as latex, nitrile, or vinyl that is fairly inexpensive and disposable. (This type

Figure 7-9 **A.** A Venoscope II transilluminator device. **B.** A vein appears as a dark line between the light-emitting arms of the Venoscope II. (Venoscope II, LLC, Lafayette, LA.) **C.** AccuVein AV300 being used to locate veins on a patient's arm. (AccuVein LLC, Huntington, NY.)

Figure 7-10 Stretchable strap tourniquets. Latex tourniquet on the left. Nitrile tourniquets center and right.

Figure 7-11 Single-use latex-free tourniquets.

is sometimes used more than once but must be discarded if dropped or contaminated with blood or other visible contaminants.)

KEY POINT A blood pressure cuff may be used in place of a tourniquet. The patient's blood pressure is taken and the pressure is then maintained below the patient's diastolic pressure, or no greater than 40 mm Hg.

Although at present there is no regulatory requirement to dispose of tourniquets after a single use, a number of studies have shown that reusable tourniquets have the potential to transmit bacteria, including methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA). Consequently many facilities now use a new tourniquet for each patient. Reusable tourniquets are still in use at some facilities, however. A recent study determined that tourniquet contamination came from phlebotomists' hands rather than patients' skin, suggesting a need for better hand-hygiene habits on the part of phlebotomists. Although proper hand hygiene is important regardless of the type of tourniquet used, for those who reuse tourniquets, meticulous hand hygiene is crucial.

KEY POINT To address latex allergies and infection-control issues, more and more healthcare facilities are using disposable single-use latex-free tourniquets (Fig 7-11).

NEEDLES

Phlebotomy needles are sterile, disposable, and designed for a single use only. They include **multisample needles** (see "Evacuated Tube System," below), **hypodermic needles** (see "Syringe System"), and **winged infusion (butterfly) needles** used with both the evacuated tube system and the syringe system. Multisample needles are commonly enclosed in sealed twist-off shields or covers. Hypodermic needles and butterfly needles are typically sealed in sterile pull-apart packages.

CAUTION: It is important to examine the packaging or seal of a needle before use. If the packaging is open or the seal is broken, the needle is no longer sterile and should not be used.

KEY POINT It important to visually inspect a needle prior to venipuncture. Needles are mass produced and on rare occasions contain defects such as blocked, blunt, or bent tips or rough bevels or shafts that could injure a patient's vein, cause unnecessary pain, or result in venipuncture failure.

Specific terminology is used to refer to the parts of a needle. The end that pierces the vein is called the **bevel** because it is "beveled," or cut on a slant. The bevel allows the needle to easily slip into the skin and vein without coring (removing a portion of the skin or vein).

TABLE 7-1 Common Venipuncture Needle Gauges with Needle Type and Typical Use

Gauge	Needle Type	Typical Use
15–17	Special needle attached to collection bag	Collection of donor units, autologous blood donation, and therapeutic phlebotomy.
18	Hypodermic	Used primarily as a transfer needle rather than for blood collection; safety issues have diminished use.
20	Multisample Hypodermic	Sometimes used when large-volume tubes are collected or large-volume syringes are used on patients with normal-size veins.
21	Multisample Hypodermic	Considered the standard venipuncture needle for routine venipuncture on patients with normal veins or for syringe blood culture collection.
22	Multisample Hypodermic	Used on older children and adult patients with small veins or for syringe draws on difficult veins.
23	Butterfly	Used on the veins of infants and children and on difficult or hand veins of adults.

The long cylindrical portion is called the **shaft.** The end that attaches to the blood collection device is called the **hub,** and the internal space of the needle is called the **lumen.** Needles are available in various sizes, indicated by gauge and length.

Gauge

Have fun finding the word "gauge" in the scrambled words drill in the WORKBOOK.

Needle **gauge** is indicated by a number that is related to the diameter of the lumen. A needle's diameter and gauge have an inverse (opposite) relationship; that is, the higher the gauge number, the smaller the actual diameter of the needle.

Although blood typically flows more quickly through large-diameter needles, needle gauge is selected according to the size and condition of the patient's vein, the type of procedure, and the equipment being used. Appropriate needles for the collection of most blood specimens for laboratory testing include gauges 20 through 23; however, a 21-gauge needle is considered the standard for most routine adult antecubital venipunctures. Common venipuncture needle gauges with needle type and typical use are shown in Table 7-1.

KEY POINT It is important to select the appropriate needle for the situation. A needle that is too large may damage a vein needlessly, and a needle that is too small may hemolyze the specimen.

Manufacturers typically color code needles by gauge for easy identification. Generally, multisample needles have color-coded caps and hubs, and syringe needles have color-coded hubs. Butterfly needles often have color-coded "wings." Syringe and butterfly needle packaging may also contain color coding. Needle color codes vary among manufacturers; however, several large manufacturers use yellow for 20-gauge, green for 21-gauge, and black for 22-gauge needles (Fig. 7-12).

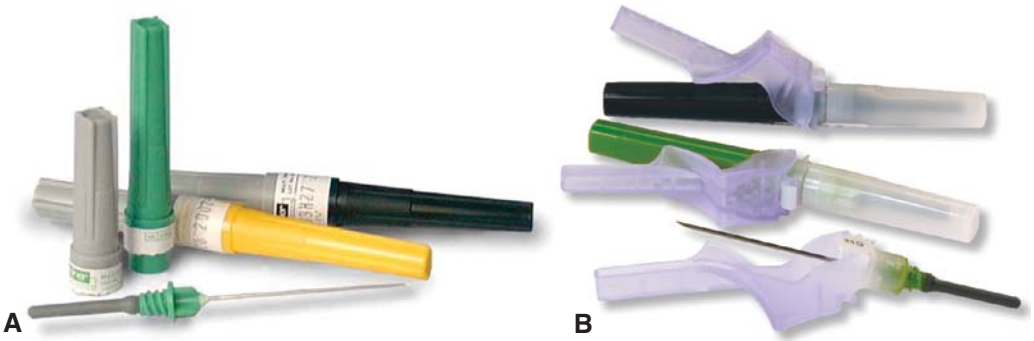


Figure 7-12 Multisample needles with color-coded caps. **A.** Traditional style needles: yellow 20 gauge, green 21 gauge, and black 22 gauge. (Courtesy Greiner Bio-One International AG, Kremsmünster, Austria.) **B.** BD Eclipse safety needles, black 22 gauge, green 21 gauge. (Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.)

BOX 7-2 DESIRABLE CHARACTERISTICS OF SAFETY FEATURES

- The safety feature is a fixed safety feature that provides a barrier between the hands and the needle after use; the safety feature should allow or require the worker's hands to remain behind the needle at all times.
- The safety feature is an integral part of the device and not an accessory.
- The safety feature is in effect before disassembly and remains in effect after disposal to protect users and trash handlers and for environmental safety.
- The safety feature is as simple as possible, requiring little or no training to use effectively.

Length

Most multisample needles come in 1- or 1.5-in. lengths. Syringe needles come in many lengths; however 1- and 1.5-in. ones are most commonly used for venipuncture. Butterfly needles are typically 1/2 to 3/4 in. long. Some of the new safety needles come in slightly longer lengths to accommodate resheathing features. Length selection depends primarily upon user preference and the depth of the vein. Many phlebotomists prefer to use 1-in. needles in routine situations because it is less intimidating to the patient. Others, especially those with larger hands, feel that the 1.5-in. needle makes it easier to achieve the proper angle for entering the vein.

Safety Features

Needles are available with or without safety features. Safety features must provide immediate permanent containment and be activated using one hand, which must stay behind the needle at all times. Safety features include **resheathing devices,** such as shields that cover the needle after use; blunting devices; and equipment with devices that retract the needle after use. The FDA is responsible for clearing medical devices for marketing. Box 7-2 lists desirable characteristics of safety features that the FDA considers important in preventing percutaneous injury.

KEY POINT According to OSHA regulations, if the needle does not have a safety feature, the equipment it is used with (such as tube holder or syringe) must have a safety feature to minimize the chance of an accidental needlestick.

EVACUATED TUBE SYSTEM

The most common and efficient system and that preferred by the CLSI for collecting blood samples is the **evacuated tube system (ETS)** (Fig. 7-13). It is a closed system in which the patient's blood flows through a needle inserted into a vein and then directly into a collection tube without being exposed to the air or outside contaminants. The system allows numerous tubes to be collected with a single venipuncture. Evacuated tube systems are available from several manufacturers. Although the design of individual elements may vary slightly by manufacturer, all ETS systems have three basic components: a special blood-drawing needle, a tube holder, and various types of evacuated tubes.

KEY POINT Unless components are specifically designed for use with multiple systems, it is recommended that all ETS components come from the same manufacturer. Mixing components from different manufacturers can lead to problems such as needles coming unscrewed and tubes popping off the needle during venipuncture.

Multisample Needles

ETS needles are called *multisample needles* because they allow multiple tubes of blood to be collected during a single venipuncture. They are threaded in the middle and have a beveled point on each end. The threaded portion screws into a tube holder. The end of the needle that pierces the vein is longer and has a longer bevel. The shorter end penetrates the tube stopper during specimen collection. It is covered by a sleeve that retracts as the needle goes through

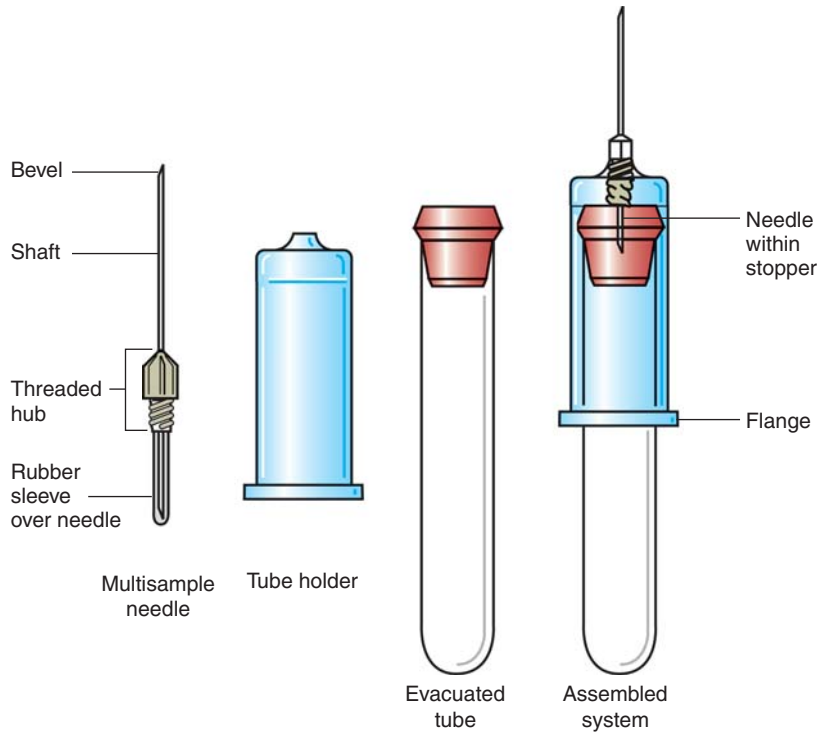


Figure 7-13 Traditional components of the evacuated tube system (ETS).

the tube stopper so that blood can flow into the tube. When the tube is removed, the sleeve slides back over the needle to prevent leakage of blood. ETS needles are available with or without safety features. The color-coded needles shown in Figure 7-12A are traditional-style multiplesample needles without safety features. The needles shown in Figure 7-12B have safety devices used to resheath the needles after use.

CAUTION: ETS needles without safety features must be used with tube holders that have safety features.

A recent innovation in multisample needles is the Greiner Bio-One VACUETTE® VISIO PLUS Needle (Fig. 7-14). This needle has a transparent hub where blood can be seen if the venipuncture is successful. With most other multisample needles, blood flow is not evident until the tube is advanced onto the needle in the tube holder.

Tube Holders

A **tube holder** is a clear, plastic, disposable cylinder with a small threaded opening at one end (often also called a hub) where the needle is screwed into it and a large opening at the other end where the collection tube is placed. The large end has flanges or extensions on the sides that aid in tube placement and removal.

KEY POINT OSHA regulations require that the tube holder with needle attached be disposed of as a unit after use and never be removed from the needle and reused.

Holders are typically available in several sizes to accommodate different-sized tubes, including special sizes for large-diameter blood culture bottles, some of which have adapter inserts to narrow the diameter of the holder and allow for the collection of evacuated tubes after the blood culture specimens. Adapter inserts are also available so that small-diameter tubes can be collected in regular-size tube holders. Holders are available with and without safety features (Fig. 7-15).

Figure 7-14 VACUETTE® VISIO PLUS needle with see-through hub attached to a safety tube holder. (Courtesy Greiner Bio-One International AG, Kremsmünster, Austria.)

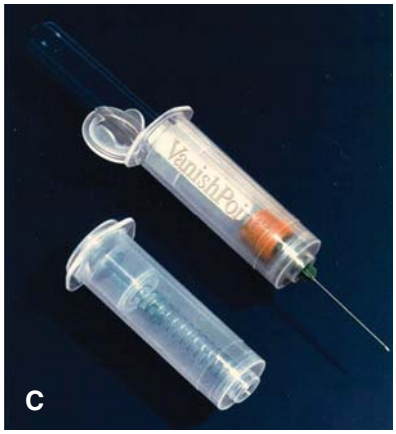


Figure 7-15 Tube holders. **A.** Traditional tube holder. **B.** JELCO Venipuncture Needle-Pro® safety tube holder with resheathing device. (Image courtesy Smiths Medical North America. JELCO, Needle-Pro is a trademark of Smiths Medical Family of Companies. All Rights Reserved.) **C.** Vanishpoint® safety tube holder with needle-retracting device attached to a traditional nonsafety needle. (Courtesy Retractible Technologies, Little Elm, TX.)

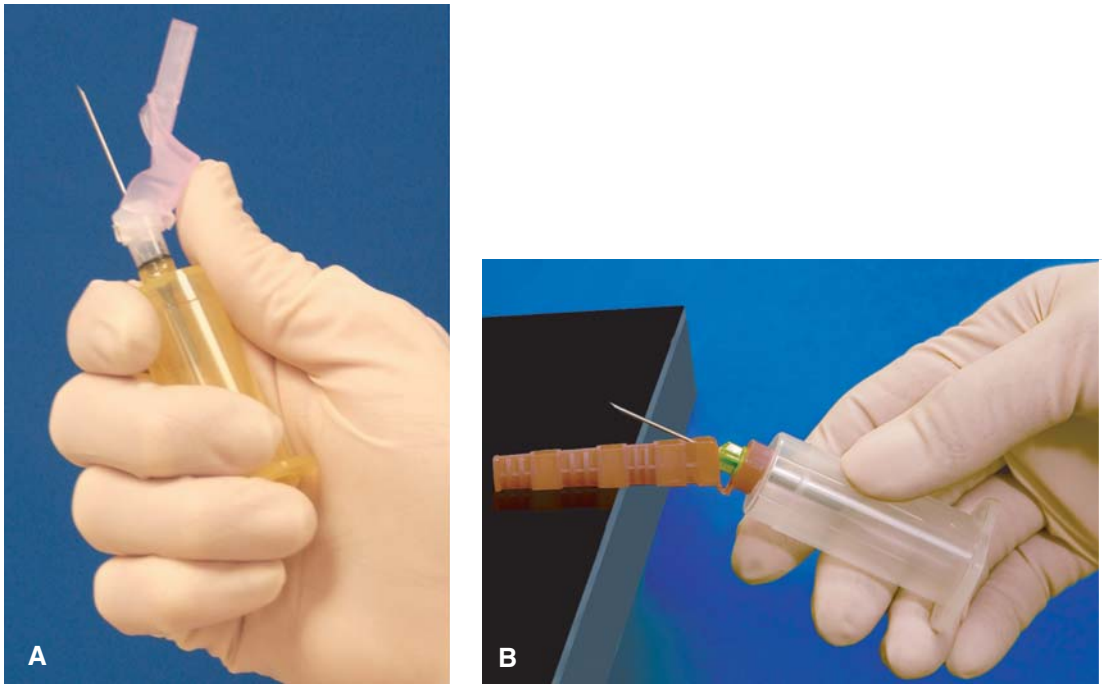


Figure 7-16 Tube holders with needles attached. **A.** Traditional tube holder with safety needle attached. **B.** Venipuncture Needle-Pro safety tube holder with needle resheathing device attached to a traditional nonsafety needle.

CAUTION: If the tube holder does not have a safety feature, the needle used with it must have a safety feature.

Safety features include shields that cover the needle and devices that manually or automatically retract the needle into the holder either before or after it is removed from the vein. Two types of holders (traditional and safety) with needles attached are shown in Figure 7-16.

FYI *A needle or tube holder that has a safety device is an example of a SESIP, which is the OSHA acronym for a* **sharp with engineered sharps injury protection.**

Needle and Holder Units

Needle and tube-holder devices are available permanently attached as a single unit or as both devices preassembled. Preassembled devices are often sealed in sterile packaging for use in sterile applications. An example of a single unit is the BD Vacutainer® Passive Shielding Blood Collection Needle (Fig. 7-17). The needle has a shield that releases automatically when the first tube is inserted in the holder. Upon activation, the shield rests against the patient's arm and immediately covers the needle when it is withdrawn from the patient. This safety feature cannot be bypassed by the user, ensuring 100% compliance.

Evacuated Tubes

Evacuated tubes (Fig. 7-18) are used with both the ETS and the syringe method of obtaining blood specimens. (With the syringe method, blood is collected in a syringe and must be immediately transferred into the tubes.) Evacuated tubes are available from a number of different manufacturers and come in various sizes and volumes ranging from 1.8 to 15 mL. Tube

Figure 7-17 BD Vacutainer® Passive Shielding Blood Collection Needle. (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, New Jersey)

selection is based on the age of the patient, the amount of blood needed for the test, and the size and condition of the patient's vein. Most laboratories stock several sizes of each type of tube to accommodate various needs. At present, tubes are available in plastic and glass. Many laboratories have switched to plastic tubes for safety reasons. Local, state, and federal safety regulatory agencies should be consulted for current applicable regulations.

Vacuum

Evacuated tubes fill with blood automatically because there is a **vacuum** (negative pressure) in them. The vacuum is artificially created by pulling air from the tube. The amount of vacuum (i.e., the amount of air removed and negative pressure created) is measured precisely by the manufacturer so that the tube will draw the exact volume of blood indicated on the label. To reach its stated volume, a tube must be allowed to fill with blood until the normal

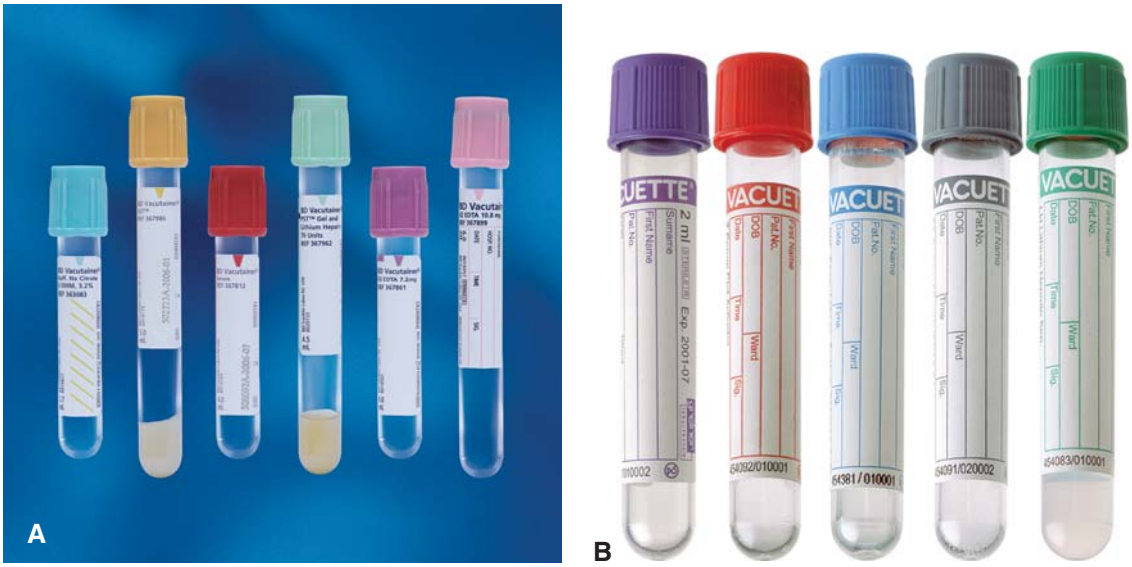


Figure 7-18 Evacuated tubes. **A.** Vacutainer® Plus Plastic brand evacuated tubes. (Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.) **B.** Vacuette® evacuated tubes. (Greiner Bio-One International AG, Kremsmünster, Austria.)

Figure 7-19 Coagulation tubes with arrows indicating fill levels; a regular draw tube (bottom) and a short draw tube (top).

vacuum is exhausted. A tube that has prematurely lost all or part of its vacuum will fail to properly fill with blood.

KEY POINT Tubes do not fill with blood all the way to the stopper. When a tube is filled properly, there is always a consistent amount of head space (air) between the level of blood in the tube and the tube stopper.

Premature loss of vacuum can occur from improper storage, opening the tube, dropping the tube, advancing the tube too far onto the needle before venipuncture, or if the needle bevel becomes partially out of the skin during venipuncture. Premature loss of vacuum, removing the tube before the vacuum is exhausted, or stoppage of blood flow during the blood draw can result in an underfilled tube called a partial draw or **"short draw."** Test results may be compromised in partially filled tubes that contain additives because the ratio of blood to additive has been altered. Consequently some manufacturers offer special "short draw" tubes (Fig. 7-19) designed to partially fill without compromising test results. These tubes are used in situations in which it is difficult or inadvisable to draw larger quantities of blood.

FYI *Manufacturers' partial draw tubes are often the same size as standard-volume tubes but do not fill to the same level and may fill more slowly.*

Additive Tubes

Most ETS tubes contain some type of **additive.** An additive is any substance placed within a tube other than the tube stopper. Additives have one or more specific functions, such as preventing clotting or preserving certain blood components. Blood collected in additive tubes may or may not clot, depending on the additive type. For example, if the additive prevents clotting, the result is a whole-blood specimen. Some whole-blood specimens are used directly for testing; others are centrifuged to separate the cells from the fluid portion called plasma, which is used for testing. If the additive is a clot activator, the blood will clot and the specimen must be centrifuged to obtain the fluid portion called serum. (See Chapter 6 for a discussion of serum, plasma, and whole blood.)

KEY POINT Plastic tubes are so smooth inside that platelet aggregation and adhesion are inhibited, resulting in delayed or incomplete clotting. Consequently, clot activators are added to plastic serum tubes. This is not a problem with glass tubes, because glass has a rough surface.

The amount of additive in a tube has been calibrated by the manufacturer to function optimally and produce accurate results with the amount of blood it takes to fill the tube to the capacity or volume indicated. Specimen quality can be compromised and lead to innaccurate results if the tube is underfilled, so it is important to allow additive tubes to fill with blood until the normal vacuum is exhausted.

Figure 7-20 Nonadditive tube used as a discard or "clear" tube.

CAUTION: An underfilled additive tube will have an incorrect blood-to-additive ratio, which can cause inaccurate test results.

Nonadditive Tubes

Very few tubes are additive-free. (Even serum tubes need an additive to promote clotting if they are plastic.) Most nonadditive plastic tubes (Fig. 7-20) that do exist are used for clearing or discard purposes only. A few glass nonadditive red-top tubes are still in existence, but most are in the process of being discontinued for safety reasons. Blood collected in a tube will clot when there is nothing in the tube to prevent it. Consequently, nonadditive tubes yield serum samples.

Stoppers

Tube stoppers (tops or closures) are typically made of rubber. Some tubes have a rubber stopper covered by a plastic shield designed to protect lab personnel from blood drops remaining on the stopper after the tube is removed from the needle and from aerosols (mists) and sprays of specimen when the stopper is removed from the tube. The rigidity of the plastic also prevents removal of the stopper using a "thumb roll," a technique that has been shown to cause aerosol formation.

Color Coding

Tube stoppers are color-coded. Consequently, it is not unusual for evacuated tubes to be referred to as red tops, green tops, and so forth. For most tubes, the stopper color identifies a type of additive placed in the tube by the manufacturer for a specific purpose. However, for some tubes, the stopper color indicates a special property of the tube. For example, a royal-blue stopper (Fig. 7.21) indicates a tube that is as free of trace element contamination as possible.

KEY POINT If a royal-blue top has an additive, the color code for the additive is often displayed on the label. If not, the proper tube must be selected according to the additive listed on the label.

Figure 7-21 Royal blue top tube. The red stripe down the left side of the label indicates that it is a serum tube.

Occasionally, there may be more than one stopper color for the same additive. In addition, although color-coding is generally universal, it may vary slightly by manufacturer. Common stopper colors, what they indicate, and what departments use them are shown in Table 7-2. For reference, two manufacturers' tube guides are shown in Appendix F.

Expiration Dates

Manufacturers guarantee reliability of additives and tube vacuum until an expiration date printed on the label (Fig. 7-22), provided the tubes are handled properly and stored between 4 and 25°C. Improper handling or storage can affect additive integrity and tube vacuum, which can lead to compromised test results or improper filling, respectively.

TABLE 7-2 Common Stopper Colors, Additives, and Departments

Stopper Color	Additive	Department(s)
Light blue	Sodium citrate	Coagulation
Red	None	Chemistry, Blood Bank, Serology/Immunology
Red	Clot activator	Chemistry
Red/light gray	None	NA (discard tube only)
Clear		
Red/black (tiger) Gold Red/gold	Clot activator and gel separator	Chemistry
Green/gray Light green	Lithium heparin and gel separator	Chemistry
Green	Lithium heparin Sodium heparin Ammonium heparin	Chemistry
Lavender (purple)	EDTA	Hematology
Pink	EDTA	Blood Bank
Gray	Sodium fluoride and potassium oxalate Sodium fluoride and EDTA Sodium fluoride	Chemistry
Orange Gray/yellow	Thrombin	Chemistry
Royal blue	None EDTA Sodium heparin	Chemistry
Tan	EDTA	
Yellow	Sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS)	Microbiology
Yellow	Acid citrate dextrose (ACD)	Blood Bank/Immunohematology

Figure 7-22 A closeup of the expiration date on a blood specimen tube. (Expiration date has been circled in red.)

KEY POINT Always check the expiration date on a tube before using it, and never use a tube that has expired or has been dropped. Discard it instead.

SYRINGE SYSTEM

Although the evacuated tube system (ETS) is the preferred method of blood collection, a **syringe system** (Fig. 7-23) is sometimes used for patients with small or difficult veins. This system consists of a sterile syringe needle called a *hypodermic needle* and a sterile plastic syringe with a Luer-lock tip (a special tip that allows the needle to attach more securely than a slip tip).

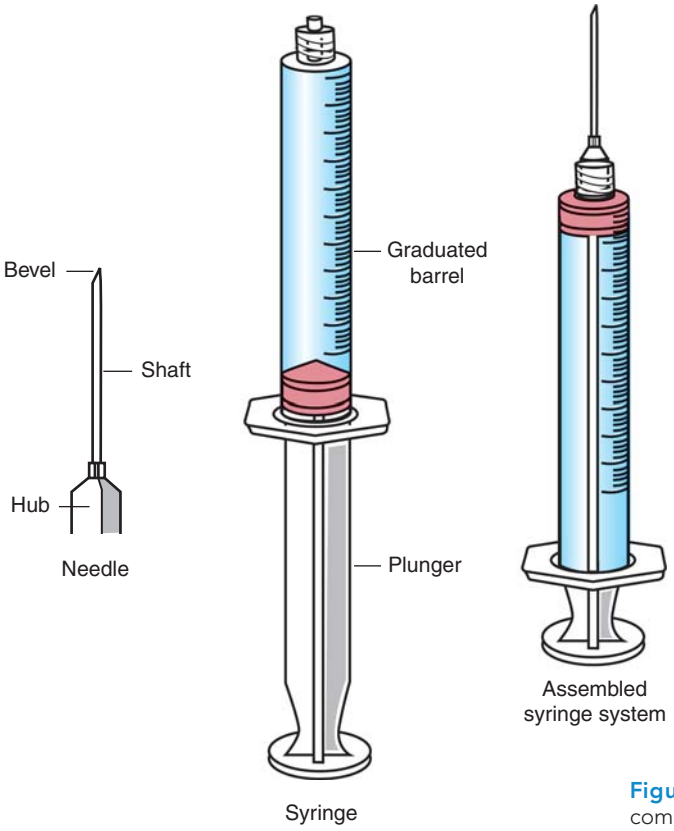


Figure 7-23 Traditional syringe system components.

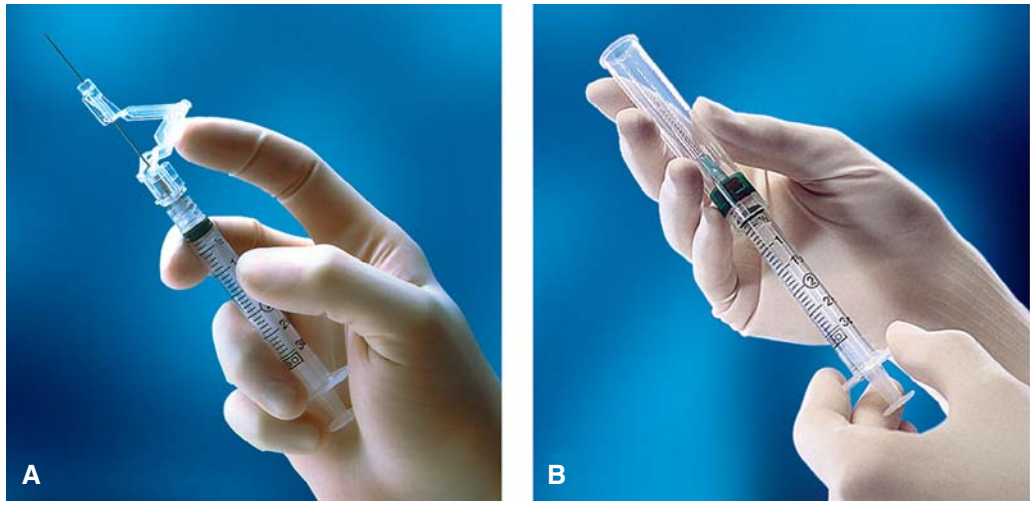


Figure 7-24 Syringe safety devices. **A.** Syringe with BD SAFETYGLIDE™ hypodermic needle attached. **B.** BD SAFETY-LOK™ syringe. (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.) **C.** JELCO Hypodermic Needle-Pro® safety needle attached to a syringe. (Image courtesy Smiths Medical North America. JELCO, Needle-Pro is a trademark of Smiths Medical Family of Companies. All Rights Reserved.)

Syringe Needles

Syringe needles come in a wide range of gauges and lengths for many different uses. Those appropriate for phlebotomy procedures are generally gauges 21 to 23, in 1- or 1.5-in. lengths. When used to draw blood, a syringe needle must have a resheathing feature to allow it to be safely covered and removed so that a transfer device can be attached to the syringe to fill the evacuated tubes. An example of a safety needle attached to a syringe is shown in Figure 7-24A. A syringe that has a built-in safety device to cover the needle is shown in Figure 7-24B.

CAUTION: Syringe needles used for phlebotomy must have resheathing devices to minimize the chance of accidental needlesticks. Needles used for intradermal skin tests must have resheathing devices or be used with syringes that have devices that cover or retract the needle after use.

Syringes

Syringes typically come in sterile pull-apart packages and are available in various sizes or volumes. The most common volumes used for phlebotomy are 2, 5, and 10 mL. Syringe volume is selected according to the size and condition of the patient's vein and the amount of blood to be collected.

Syringes have two parts: a **barrel,** which is a cylinder with graduated markings in either milliliters (mL) or cubic centimeters (cc), and a **plunger,** a rod-like device that fits tightly into the barrel (Fig. 7-23). When drawing venous blood by syringe, the phlebotomist slowly pulls back the plunger, creating a vacuum that causes the barrel to fill with blood.

Syringe Transfer Device

Blood collected in a syringe must be transferred into ETS tubes. In the past blood was transferred by poking the syringe needle through the tube stopper or by removing the tube stopper and ejecting blood from the syringe into the tube. Both practices are now considered unsafe. A **syringe transfer device** (Fig. 7-25) allows the safe transfer of blood into the tubes without using the syringe needle or removing the tube stopper. The device is similar to an ETS tube holder but has a permanently attached needle inside. After a syringe draw is completed, the needle safety device is activated and the needle is removed and discarded into a sharps container. The transfer device is then attached to the hub of the syringe. An ETS tube is placed inside it and advanced onto the needle until blood flows into the tube. Additional tubes can

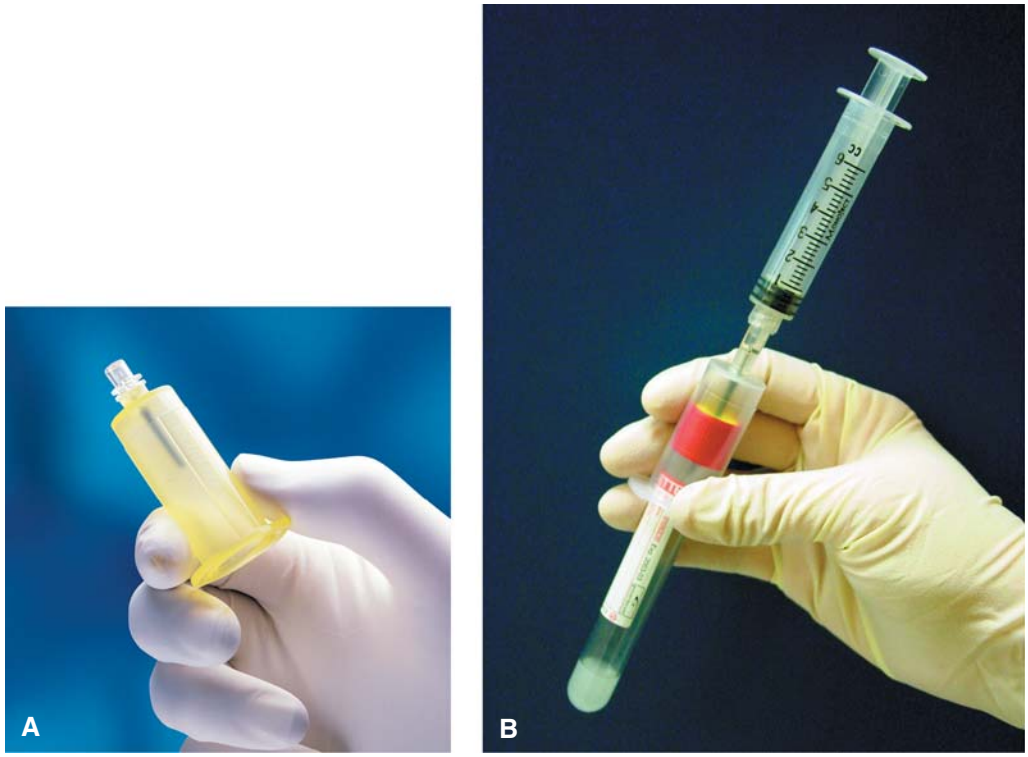


Figure 7-25 Syringe transfer devices. **A.** BD transfer device. (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.) **B.** Greiner transfer device attached to a syringe.

be filled as long as there is enough blood in the syringe. The transfer device greatly reduces the chance of accidental needlesticks and confines any aerosol or spraying of the specimen that may be generated as tubes are removed from it.

KEY POINT A transfer device must be vertical when tubes are being filled in order to prevent blood in the tube from touching the needle in the transfer device. If blood mixed with additive gets on or in the needle, it could be transferred into the next tube that is filled and contaminate it.

WINGED INFUSION SET

A **winged infusion blood collection set,** or **butterfly,** is an indispensable tool for collecting blood from small or difficult veins such as hand veins and veins of elderly and pediatric patients as it allows much more flexibility and precision than a needle and syringe. It consists of a $^{1}/_{2}$- to $^{3}/_{4}$-inch stainless steel needle permanently connected to a 5- to 12-in. length of tubing with either a Luer attachment for syringe use or a multisample Luer adapter for use with the evacuated tube system (Fig. 7-26). Multisample Luer adapters are also available separately.

KEY POINT The first tube collected with a butterfly will underfill because of the air in the tubing. If the tube contains an additive, the blood-to-additive ratio will be affected. If an additive tube is the first tube to be collected, it is important to draw a few milliliters of blood into a nonadditive tube or another additive tube of the same type and to discard it prior to collecting the first tube. This is referred to as collecting a "clear" or discard tube and is especially critical when one is collecting coagulation tubes using a butterfly.

Plastic extensions that resemble butterfly wings (thus the name *butterfly*) are attached to the needle where it is joined to the tubing. During use, the needle may be held from above by gripping the "wings" together between the thumb and index finger, thus allowing the user to achieve the shallow angle of needle insertion required to access small veins.

Figure 7-26 Winged infusion sets attached to a syringe (left) and an evacuated tube holder by means of a Luer adapter (right).

Butterfly needles come in various gauges, although a 23-gauge needle is most commonly used for phlebotomy. In rare situations a 25-gauge needle is used by specially trained personnel to collect blood from scalp or other tiny veins of premature infants and other neonates.

CAUTION: Using a needle smaller than 23 gauge increases the chance of hemolyzing the specimen.

As with other blood collection needles, butterfly needles are required to have safety devices to reduce the possibility of accidental needlesticks. Butterfly safety devices include locking shields that slide over the needle, blunting devices, and needle retracting devices. See Figure 7-27 for examples of safety-winged infusion sets (butterflies).

COMBINATION SYSTEMS

The S-Monovette® Blood Collection System (Sarstedt, Inc., Newton, NC) shown in Figure 7-28 is a complete system for blood collection in which the blood collection tube and collection apparatus are combined in a single unit. The unit allows the specimen to be collected by either an evacuated tube or syringe system technique. The units are available with regular or butterfly-style needles. Safety devices are available to contain the needle immediately after use.

Blood Collection Additives

WORKBOOK Matching 7-1 can help you learn the additives and their functions.

Blood collection tubes and other collection devices often contain one or more additives. There are a number of different types of additives, and each has a specific function. The type of additive required for blood collection generally depends upon the test that has been ordered. No substitution or combining of tubes with different additives is allowed.

CAUTION: *Never* transfer blood collected in an additive tube into another additive tube, even if the additives are the same. Different additives may interfere with each other or the testing process. If the additives are the same, an excess of the additive is created, which can negatively affect testing.

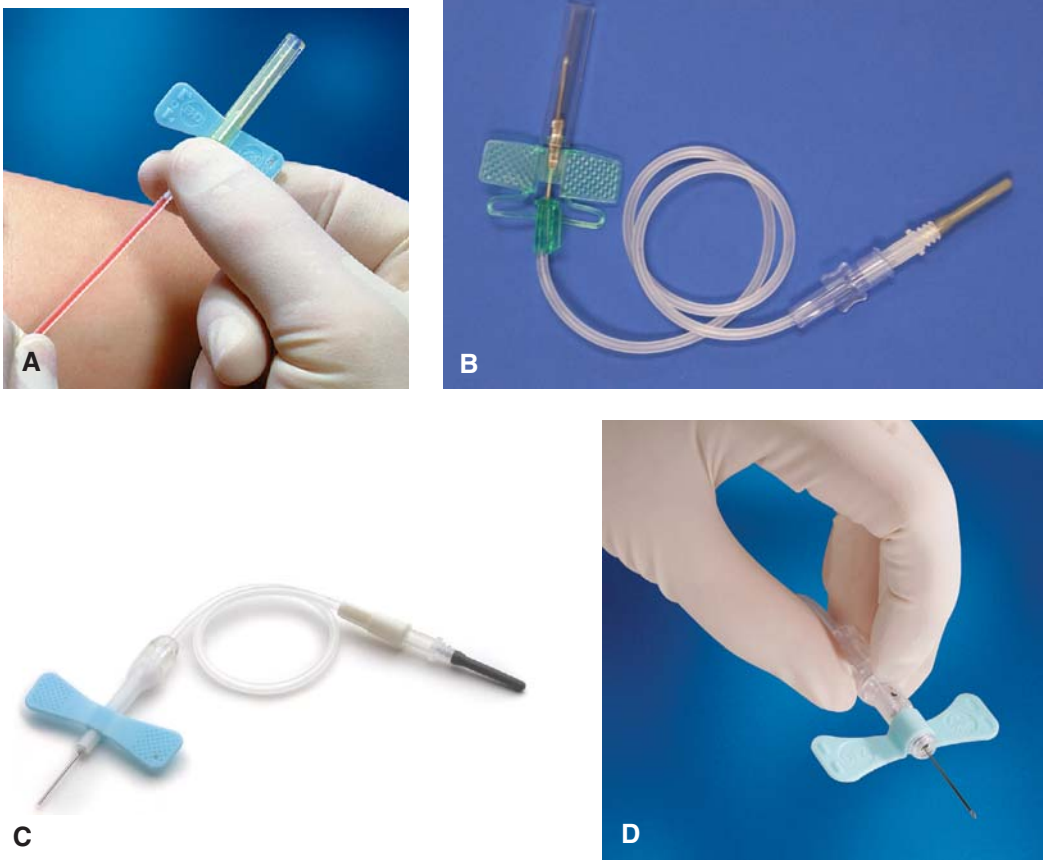


Figure 7-27 Examples of safety-winged infusion sets. **A.** BD Vacutainer® SAFETY-LOK™ Blood Collection Set for use with the evacuated tube system. (Courtesy Becton Dickinson Vacutainer Systems, Franklin Lakes, NJ.) **B.** Monoject Angel Wing blood collection set. (Kendall CO, LP, Mansfield, MA.) **C.** Vacuette® safety butterfly blood collection system (Greiner Bio-One, Kremsmünster, Austria.) **D.** Vacutainer® Push Button Blood Collection Set. (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.)

Figure 7-28 Sarstedt S-Monovette® venous blood collection system. Left: System with needle attached. Upper right: System used as a syringe. Lower right: System used as ETS. (Courtesy of Sarstedt, Inc., Newton, NC.)

Additives are available in liquid, spray-dried, and powder forms. A tube with a powdered additive should be lightly tapped prior to use to settle the additive to the bottom of the tube. An additive tube must be gently inverted 3 to 10 times, depending on the type of additive and the manufacturer, immediately after collection to adequately mix the additive with the specimen. (See the tube guides in Appendix F for tube inversion information from two major tube manufacturers.)

KEY POINT According to tube manufacturer Becton Dickinson (BD), each inversion requires turning the wrist 180 degrees and back again.

CAUTION: *Never* shake or otherwise vigorously mix a specimen, as this can cause hemolysis, which makes most specimens unsuitable for testing.

ANTICOAGULANTS

The most common reason for using an additive is to prevent clotting of the specimen. **Anticoagulants** are substances that prevent blood from clotting (coagulating) by either of two methods: by chelating (binding) or precipitating calcium so it is unavailable to the coagulation process or by inhibiting the formation of thrombin needed to convert fibrinogen to fibrin in the coagulation process. If a test requires whole blood or plasma, the specimen must be collected in a tube that contains an anticoagulant. Anticoagulant specimens must be mixed immediately after collection to prevent microclot formation. Gentle mixing is essential to prevent hemolysis.

KEY POINT Because the cells are free-flowing and not clotted, a specimen collected in anticoagulant will separate through settling or centrifugation and can be resuspended by intentional or inadvertent mixing of the specimen.

There are different types of anticoagulants, each designed for use in certain types of testing. It is important to use the correct anticoagulant for the type of test collected. The most common anticoagulants are **ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), citrates, heparin,** and **oxalates.** Memory joggers to help you learn the most common anticoagulants are found in Table 7-3.

TABLE 7-3 Memory Joggers for Anticoagulants

Acronym, Mnemonic, or Acrostic	An Easy Way to Remember
ECHO	The most common anticoagulants. E (EDTA) C (citrate) H (heparin) O (oxalate).
phEDTA (*pronounced like fajita*)	Purple tubes go to hematology and contain EDTA. P (purple) h (hematology) EDTA.
Spring Creates Colorful Light-Blue Pansies	Sodium citrate tubes go to coagulation, have light-blue stoppers, and yield plasma. S (sodium) C (citrate) C (coagulation) L (light) B (blue) P (plasma).
HH: Heparin inhibits In-in: Heparin inhibits	Heparin inhibits thrombin formation; "H" in heparin and "H" in inhibits. Heparin ends with "in," and inhibits starts with "in."
Greenhouses Have Colorful Plants	Green tubes contain heparin for chemistry tests on plasma: G (green) H (heparin) C (chemistry) P (plasma).
GO (gray oxalate) Gray ox (gray oxalate)	Gray tubes typically contain oxalate. G (gray) O (oxalate) Gray (gray); ox (oxalate)
LL (lavender last except for gray)	Lavender is drawn last unless a gray top is ordered. Gray tops are rarely ordered, so lavender is often last.

EDTA

Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) is commonly available as a powdered di-potassium (K_2) or liquid tri-potassium (K_3) salt, which prevents coagulation by binding or chelating calcium.

EDTA is the additive in:

- Lavender (purple)-top tubes (Fig. 7-18)
- Microcollection containers with lavender tops
- Pink plastic-top tubes with a special blood bank patient ID label
- Pearl-top tubes with thixotropic gel separator
- Royal blue–top tubes with lavender color-coding on the label

Although EDTA is increasingly being used for blood bank tests, it is primarily used to provide whole-blood specimens for hematology tests (e.g., CBCs) because it preserves cell morphology (shape and structure) and inhibits platelet aggregation better than any other anticoagulant. EDTA specimens must be mixed immediately after collection to prevent platelet clumping and microclot formation, which can affect test results negatively. Eight to ten inversions are normally required for proper mixing.

CAUTION: If microclots are detected in a hematology specimen, it cannot be used for testing and must be recollected.

CLSI recommends spray-dried EDTA for most hematology tests because liquid EDTA dilutes the specimen and results in lower hemoglobin values, RBC and WBC counts, platelet counts, and packed-cell volumes. The dilutional effect is even more pronounced if the tubes are not completely filled. Therefore, it is important to fill tubes until their normal vacuum is exhausted. Either type of EDTA tube should be filled to its stated volume to maintain the correct blood-to-anticoagulant ratio.

KEY POINT Excess EDTA, which results when tubes are underfilled, can cause RBCs to shrink and thus change CBC results.

Citrates

Citrates prevent coagulation by binding or chelating calcium. The most common citrate is **sodium citrate**, which is used for coagulation tests (e.g., PT and aPTT) because it does the best job of preserving the coagulation factors. Sodium citrate tubes have light-blue stoppers (Fig. 7-18).

Sodium citrate is also the additive in special erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) tubes with black stoppers.

Coagulation specimens require immediate mixing after collection to prevent activation of the coagulation process and microclot formation, which invalidates test results. Three to four gentle inversions are required for adequate mixing.

CAUTION: Vigorous mixing or an excessive number of inversions can activate platelets and shorten clotting times.

Light blue–top tubes contain a 9:1 ratio of blood to anticoagulant when filled to the stated volume and must be filled to within 90% of that volume for accurate coagulation results.

Figure 7-29 Guide showing fill levels for Vacuette sodium citrate tubes. (Courtesy Greiner Bio-One International AG, Kremsmünster, Austria.)

Exact fill volume is hard to tell on most tubes; however, Vacuette® sodium citrate tubes have arrows that are used to identify correct fill volume. A guide provided by the manufacturer also helps phlebotomists or specimen processors to determine whether a tube is adequately filled (Fig. 7-29).

CAUTION: The 9:1 ratio of blood to anticoagulant in light-blue sodium citrate tubes is critical; therefore, it is extremely important to fill them to their stated capacity. Underfilled tubes can cause artificially prolonged clotting times and visibly underfilled tubes will not be accepted for testing by most laboratories.

Coagulation tests are performed on plasma, so specimens must first be centrifuged to separate the plasma from the cells. Because sodium citrate binds calcium, calcium is added back to the specimen during the testing process so that clotting can be initiated and timed.

Heparin

Heparin prevents clotting by inhibiting **thrombin** formation. (Thrombin is an enzyme needed to convert fibrinogen into the fibrin necessary for clot formation.) Heparinized plasma is often used for some chemistry tests, especially stat tests (e.g., electrolytes) and in other rapid-response situations when a fast turnaround time (TAT) for chemistry tests is needed. Faster TAT is possible because time is eliminated that would normally be required for a specimen to clot before serum could be obtained.

KEY POINT Heparinized plasma is preferred over serum for potassium tests because when blood clots, potassium is released from cells into the serum and can falsely elevate results.

Check out WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 7-1 to see how well you know this and other cautions and key points.

Heparin is the additive in:

- Green-top tubes
- Green-top and light green–top gel tubes (Fig. 7-18)
- Mottled-green and gray-top tubes
- Royal blue–top tubes with green color coding on the label
- Green-top and light green–top microtubes
- Red-banded and green-banded microhematocrit tubes

There are three heparin formulations: ammonium, lithium, and sodium heparin. Lithium heparin causes the least interference in chemistry testing and is the most widely used anticoagulant for both plasma and whole-blood chemistry tests.

CAUTION: It is essential to choose the right heparin formulation for the type of test. Lithium heparin must not be used to collect lithium levels. Sodium heparin must not be used to collect sodium specimens or electrolyte panels because sodium is part of the panel.

Heparinized specimens must be mixed immediately upon collection to prevent clot formation and fibrin generation. From five to ten inversions, depending on the manufacturer, are required for proper mixing. Gentle mixing is essential to prevent hemolysis. Hemolyzed specimens are unsuitable for many chemistry tests.

Oxalates

Oxalates prevent coagulation by precipitating calcium. **Potassium oxalate** is the most widely used. It is commonly added to tubes containing glucose preservatives (see "Antiglycolytic Agents," below) to provide plasma for glucose testing. Potassium oxalate is most commonly found in evacuated tubes and microcollection containers with gray stoppers. Oxalate specimens must be mixed immediately upon collection to prevent clot formation and fibrin generation. Eight to ten inversions are required for proper mixing.

CAUTION: It is essential to fill oxalate tubes to the volume stated on the tube because excess oxalate causes hemolysis (destruction of red blood cells, or RBCs) and release of hemoglobin into the plasma.

SPECIAL-USE ANTICOAGULANTS

The following anticoagulants are combined with other additives and have additional properties for special-use situations.

Acid Citrate Dextrose (ACD)

ACD solution is available in two formulations (solution A and solution B) for immunohematology tests such as DNA testing and human leukocyte antigen (HLA) phenotyping, which is used in paternity evaluation and to determine transplant compatibility. The acid citrate prevents coagulation by binding calcium, with little effect on cells and platelets. Dextrose acts as an RBC nutrient and preservative by maintaining RBC viability. ACD tubes have yellow tops and require eight inversions immediately after collection to prevent clotting.

Citrate Phosphate Dextrose (CPD)

CPD is used in collecting units of blood for transfusion. Citrate prevents clotting by chelating calcium, phosphate stabilizes pH, and dextrose provides cells with energy and helps keep them alive.

Sodium Polyanethol Sulfonate (SPS)

SPS prevents coagulation by binding calcium. It is used for blood culture collection because, in addition to being an anticoagulant, it reduces the action of a protein called *complement*, which destroys bacteria. It also slows down phagocytosis (ingestion of bacteria by leukocytes), and reduces the activity of certain antibiotics. SPS tubes have yellow stoppers and require eight inversions to prevent clotting.

ANTIGLYCOLYTIC AGENTS

An **antiglycolytic agent** is a substance that prevents **glycolysis,** the breakdown or metabolism of glucose (blood sugar) by blood cells. If glycolysis is not prevented, the glucose concentration in a blood specimen decreases at a rate of 10 mg/dL per hour.

KEY POINT Glycolysis occurs faster in newborns because their metabolism is increased, and in patients with leukemia because of high metabolic activity of WBCs.

The most common antiglycolytic agent is **sodium fluoride.** It preserves glucose for up to 3 days and also inhibits the growth of bacteria. Sodium fluoride is commonly used in combination with the anticoagulant potassium oxalate to provide plasma specimens for rapid-response situations. Sodium fluoride tubes have gray stoppers and require between five and ten inversions, depending on the manufacturer, for proper mixing.

KEY POINT Sodium fluoride tubes are used to collect ethanol specimens to prevent either a decrease in alcohol concentration due to glycolysis or an increase due to fermentation by bacteria.

CLOT ACTIVATORS

A **clot activator** is a substance that enhances coagulation in tubes used to collect serum specimens. Clot activators include substances that provide more surface for platelet activation, such as glass **(silica)** particles and inert clays like **Celite,** and clotting factors such as thrombin. Silica particles are the clot activators in serum-separator tubes (SSTs) and plastic red-top tubes. Silica particles cause the blood to clot within 15 to 30 minutes. Blood collected in thrombin tubes generally clots within 5 minutes. Celite tubes are used with some point-of-care coagulation systems. Tubes containing clot activators require five gentle inversions for complete and rapid clotting to occur.

KEY POINT Blood in an SST tube will eventually clot without mixing; however, when it is not mixed, glass particles may become suspended in the serum and interfere in the testing process.

THIXOTROPIC GEL SEPARATOR

Thixotropic gel is an inert (nonreacting) synthetic substance initially contained in or near the bottom of certain blood collection tubes. The density of the gel is between that of the cells and the serum or plasma. When a specimen in a gel tube is centrifuged, the gel undergoes a change in viscosity (thickness) and moves to a position between the cells and the serum or plasma, forming a physical barrier between them. This physical separation prevents the cells from continuing to metabolize substances such as glucose in the serum or plasma. Serum gel-barrier tubes include Becton Dickinson (BD) tubes with gold plastic (Fig. 7-18) stoppers or tubes with mottled red/gray rubber stoppers called **serum-separator tubes (SSTs);** new BD tubes containing thrombin that clot in 5 minutes called **Rapid Serum Tubes™ (RSTs)** (Fig. 7-30); Kendall tubes with mottled red/gray rubber stoppers called Monoject **Corvac tubes;** and Greiner Bio-One Vacuette serum tubes with red plastic stoppers and yellow tops. Heparinized plasma gel-barrier tubes include BD tubes with light-green plastic or mottled

Figure 7-30 BD Vacutainer® Rapid Serum Tube (RST). (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.)

gray/green rubber stoppers called **plasma-separator tubes (PSTs)** and Vacuette tubes with green plastic stoppers and yellow tops. In addition, BD has EDTA gel-barrier tubes with pearl-colored stoppers called **plasma-preparation tubes (PPTs).**

TRACE ELEMENT–FREE TUBES

Although stopper colors normally indicate a type of additive in a tube, royal-blue stoppers indicate **trace element–free tubes.** These tubes are made of materials that are as free of trace element contamination as possible; they are used for trace element tests, toxicology studies, and nutrient determinations. These tests measure substances present in such small quantities that trace element contamination commonly found in the glass, plastic, or stopper material of other tubes may leach into the specimen and falsely elevate test results. Royal blue–top tubes (Fig. 7-21) contain EDTA, heparin, or no additive to meet various test requirements. Tube labels may be color-coded to indicate the type of additive, if any, in the tube.

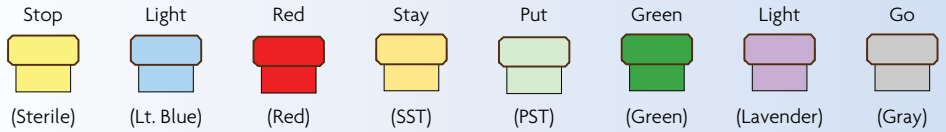
Order of Draw

Grab some colored pencils and have some fun with the order of draw with WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 7-1.

Order of draw refers to the order in which tubes are collected during a multiple-tube draw or are filled from a syringe. CLSI recommends the following order of draw for both ETS collection and in filling tubes from a syringe:

1. Sterile tube (blood culture)
2. Blue-top coagulation tube
3. Serum tube with or without clot activator, with or without gel
4. Heparin tube with or without gel plasma separator
5. EDTA tube
6. Glycolytic inhibitor tube

Memory Jogger For the order of draw:



The memory jogger for the order-of-draw places the red top before the SST and places the PST before the green top for convenience in memorization.

Filling tubes in the wrong order can lead to interference in testing from cross contamination of the specimen by additive carryover, tissue thromboplastin, or microorganisms. The special sequence of tube collection (order of draw) is intended to minimize these problems.

Order of draw may vary slightly among institutions. Consult institutional protocol before using a specific order of draw.

CARRYOVER/CROSS-CONTAMINATION

Carryover or cross-contamination is the transfer of additive from one tube to the next. It can occur when blood in an additive tube touches the needle during ETS blood collection or when blood is transferred from a syringe into ETS tubes. Blood remaining on or within the needle

TABLE 7-4 Common Tests Affected by Additive Contamination

Contaminating Additive	Tests Potentially Affected
Citrate	Alkaline phosphatase Calcium Phosphorus
EDTA	Alkaline phosphatase Calcium Creatine kinase Partial thromboplastin Potassium Protime Serum iron Sodium
Heparin (all formulations)	Activated clotting time Acid phosphatase Calcium (some test methods) Partial thromboplastin Protime Sodium (sodium formulations) Lithium (lithium formulations)
Oxalates	Acid phosphatase Alkaline phosphatase Amylase Calcium Lactate dehydrogenase Partial thromboplastin Potassium Protime Red cell morphology
Silica (clot activator)	Partial thromboplastin time Protime
Sodium fluoride	Sodium Urea nitrogen

can be transferred to the next tube drawn or filled, contaminating that tube with additive from the previous tube and possibly affecting test results on the specimen. Table 7-4 lists some of the most common tests affected by additive contamination.

KEY POINT EDTA in tubes has been the source of more carryover problems than any other additive. Heparin causes the least interference in tests other than coagulation tests because it also occurs in blood naturally.

Remembering which tests the various additives affect can be difficult. Order of draw eliminates confusion by presenting a sequence of collection that results in the least amount of interference should carryover occur. The chance of carryover can be minimized by making certain that specimen tubes fill from the bottom up during collection and that the contents of the tube do not come in contact with the needle during the draw or in transferring blood into tubes from a syringe.

KEY POINT According to the Center for Phlebotomy Education (www.phlebotomy.com), when using the ETS system, royal-blue tops for trace element studies should be collected separately to avoid even the smallest amount of carryover. If a syringe is being used, the transfer device should be changed if the trace element tube is filled after other tubes. (The CLSI order of draw for other tubes, including stopper colors and rationale for collection order, is summarized in Table 7-5.)

TABLE 7-5 Order of Draw, Stopper Colors, and Rationale for Collection Order

Order of Draw	Tube Stopper Color	Rationale for Collection Order
Blood cultures (sterile collections)	Yellow SPS Sterile media bottles	Minimizes chance of microbial contamination.
Coagulation tubes	Light blue	The first additive tube in the order because all other additive tubes affect coagulation tests.
Glass nonadditive tubes	Red	Prevents contamination by additives in other tubes.
Plastic clot activator tubes Serum separator tubes (SSTs)	Red Red and gray rubber Gold plastic	Filled after coagulation tests because silica particles activate clotting and affect coagulation tests (carryover of silica into subsequent tubes can be overridden by anticoagulant in them).
Plasma-separator tubes (PSTs) Heparin tubes	Green and gray rubber Light-green plastic Green	Heparin affects coagulation tests and interferes in collection of serum specimens; it causes the least interference in tests other than coagulation tests.
EDTA tubes Plasma-preparation tubes (PPTs)	Lavender, pink, or purple Pearl top	Responsible for more carryover problems than any other additive: elevates Na and K levels, chelates and decreases calcium and iron levels, elevates PT and PTT results.
Oxalate/fluoride tubes	Gray	Sodium fluoride and potassium oxalate affect sodium and potassium levels, respectively. Filled after hematology tubes because oxalate damages cell membranes and causes abnormal RBC morphology. Oxalate interferes in enzyme reactions.

TISSUE THROMBOPLASTIN CONTAMINATION

Tissue thromboplastin, a substance present in tissue fluid, activates the extrinsic coagulation pathway and can interfere with coagulation tests. It is picked up by the needle during venipuncture and flushed into the first tube filled during ETS collection, or it is mixed with blood collected in a syringe. Although tissue thromboplastin is no longer considered to pose a significant problem for prothrombin time (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT or aPTT) tests unless the draw is difficult and involves a lot of needle manipulation, it may compromise results of other coagulation tests. Therefore any time a coagulation test other than PT or PTT is the first or only tube collected, a few milliliters of blood should be drawn into a nonadditive tube or another coagulation tube before the coagulation specimen is collected. The extra tube is called a "clear" or "discard" tube because it is used to remove tissue fluid from the needle and is then thrown away.

CAUTION: A discard tube must be drawn to protect the critical 9:1 blood-to-additive ratio of a coagulation tube that is the first or only tube collected using a butterfly because air in the tubing displaces blood in the tube.

MICROBIAL CONTAMINATION

Blood cultures detect microorganisms in the blood and require special site-cleaning measures prior to collection to prevent contamination of the specimen by microorganisms that are normally found on the skin. Blood culture tubes or bottles are sterile and are collected first in the order of draw to ensure that they are collected when sterility of the site is optimal and to prevent microbial contamination of the needle from the unsterile tops of tubes used to collect other tests. Blood cultures do not often factor into the sequence of collection because they are typically drawn separately.

KEY POINT Contamination of blood culture bottles can lead to false-positive results and inappropriate or delayed care for the patient.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Which additive prevents glycolysis?**
   a. EDTA
   b. Heparin
   c. Potassium oxalate
   d. Sodium fluoride

2. **The following supplies were gathered for a routine venipuncture. Which item is incorrect?**
   a. ETS tubes
   b. Iodine swab
   c. Safety needle
   d. Tourniquet

3. **Which of the following tubes can be used to collect a serum specimen?**
   a. Light-blue top
   b. Green top
   c. PST
   d. Red top

4. **A tourniquet is used in venipuncture to:**
   a. concentrate the blood specimen.
   b. find and enter veins more easily.
   c. keep the vein from collapsing.
   d. all of the above.

5. **You are about to perform routine venipuncture on a patient with no known allergy to antiseptics. Which of the following substances would you use to clean the site?**
   a. 5.25% sodium hypochlorite
   b. 70% isopropyl alcohol
   c. Antibacterial soap and water
   d. Povidone–iodine

6. **Which of the following needles has the largest diameter?**
   a. 18 gauge
   b. 20 gauge
   c. 21 gauge
   d. 23 gauge

7. **What causes evacuated tubes to fill with blood automatically?**
   a. Arterial blood pressure
   b. Fist pumping by the patient
   c. Pressure from the tourniquet
   d. Premeasured tube vacuum

8. **Lavender-top tubes are most commonly used to collect:**
   a. chemistry tests.
   b. coagulation specimens.
   c. hematology tests.
   d. immunology tests.

9. **Of the following tubes or containers, which is filled last in the recommended order of draw?**
   a. Blood culture bottle
   b. Lavender top
   c. Light-blue top
   d. Red top

10. **A butterfly is typically used for:**
    a. coagulation specimens.
    b. difficult and hand veins.
    c. draws from a basilic vein.
    d. all of the above.

Case Studies

See the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 7-1 *Proper Handling of Anticoagulant Tubes*

A mobile blood collector named Chi is collecting an SST and two lavender tops (one for a glycohemoglobin and one for a CBC) on a client named Louise Jones. He fills the SST, lays it down while he places the first lavender top in the tube holder, then picks it up and mixes it as the lavender top is filling. When the lavender top is full, he lays it down while he places the second lavender top in the tube holder. The second lavender top fails to fill with blood, so he makes several needle adjustments to try to establish blood flow. Nothing works, so he decides to try a new tube. The new tube works fine. While it is filling, he picks up the first lavender top and mixes it. After completing the draw he labels his tubes, putting the hematology label on the lavender top he collected first. He finishes up with the client, delivers the specimens to the laboratory, and goes to lunch. When he returns from break his supervisor tells him to recollect the CBC on Louise Jones because the specimen had a clot in it.

QUESTIONS

1. *What can cause clots in EDTA specimens?*
2. *What most likely caused the clot in this specimen?*
3. *Did the problem with the second lavender top contribute to the problem?*
4. *Would the problem with the second lavender top have been an issue if Chi had handled the first lavender top properly? Explain your answer.*
5. *What can Chi do to prevent this type of thing from happening in the future?*

CASE STUDY 7-2 *Order of Draw*

Jake, a phlebotomist, is sent to the ER to collect an EDTA specimen for a stat type and crossmatch on an accident victim. He properly identifies the patient and is in the process of filling the lavender-top tube when an ER nurse tells him that the patient's physician wants to add a stat set of electrolytes to the test order. Jake acknowledges her request. He finishes filling the lavender top and grabs a green top. After completing the draw, he takes the specimens straight to the laboratory to be processed immediately.

QUESTIONS

1. *One of the specimens that Jake drew is compromised. Which one is it?*
2. *Why is the specimen compromised and how may test results be affected?*
3. *How could Jake have avoided the problem without drawing blood from the patient twice?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Bishop M, Fody E, Schoeff L. *Clinical Chemistry, Principles, Procedures, Correlations,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.

Burtis C, Ashwood E. *Tietz Fundamentals of Clinical Chemistry,* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2007.

CDC. Guideline for hand hygiene in health care settings, *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR),* October 25, 2002;51 (RR-16). Complete report available at http://www.cdc.gov

CDC/HICPAC. Guideline for environmental infection control in health-care facilities. Recommendations of CDC and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC). *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR),* June 2003:52 (RR-10).

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H1–A5. *Tubes and Additives for Blood Specimen Collection: Approved Standard*, 5th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, December 2003.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H3–A6. *Procedures for the Collection of Diagnostic Blood Specimens by Venipuncture: Approved Standard,* 5th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, December 2007.

Clinical Laboratory Standards Institute, M29–A3. *Protection of Laboratory Workers From Occupationally Acquired Infections; Approved Guideline,* 3rd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2005.

College of American Pathologists (CAP). *So You're Going to Collect a Blood Specimen*, 12th ed. Northfield, IL: CAP, 2007.

Gottfried EL, Adachi MM. Prothrombin time (PT) and activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT) can be performed on the first tube. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1997;107:681–683.

Ernst DJ. *Applied Phlebotomy.* Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.

Leitch A, McCormick I, Gunn I, Gillespie T. Reducing the potential for phlebotomy tourniquets to act as a reservoir for methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus. *J Hosp Infect* 2007;65(2):173–175.

OSHA. Disposal of contaminated needles and blood tube holders used for phlebotomy. *Safety and Health Information Bulletin*, http://www.osha.gov/dts/shib/shib101503.html, October 15, 2003.

Roark C, Bates C, Read R. Poor hospital infection control practice in venipuncture and use of tourniquets. *J Hosp Infect* 2002:49(1):59–61.

Siegel JD, Rhinehart E, Jackson M, Chiarello L, and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC). *Guideline for Isolation Precautions: Preventing Transmission of Infectious Agents in Healthcare Settings*. Atlanta, GA:CDC/HICPAC;2007.

Turgeon ML. *Clinical Hematology,* 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2012.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash-card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Accuvein vein locator demo**: http://accuvein.com/
- **Becton Dickinson (BD) Lab** notes Volume 19, No. 1, 2009: The evolution of evacuated blood collection tubes: http://www.bd.com/*vacutainer/labnotes*
- **Center for Phlebotomy Education**: http://www.phlebotomy.com/
- **Clinical Laboratory Science Internet Resources Website**: http://loucaru.tripod.com/index-5.html#Phlebotomy
- **LabCorp (Laboratory Corporation of America)**: https://www.labcorp.com/wps/portal/provider/testmenu/
- **Quia Corp; online education support**: http://www.quia.com/fc/71443.html

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

CHAPTER

8

Venipuncture Procedures

KEY TERMS

Do the matching exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

accession	EMLA	NPO
anchor	fasting	palpate
arm/wrist band	hospice	patency
ASAP	ID band/bracelet	patient ID
bar code	ID card	preop/postop
bedside manner	MR number	reflux
concentric circles	needle phobia	requisition
DNR/DNAR	needle sheath	stat

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Describe the test request process, identify the types of requisitions used, and list the required requisition information.
3. List and define test status designations, identify status priorities, and describe the procedure to follow for each status designation.
4. Describe proper "bedside manner" and how to handle special situations associated with patient contact.
5. Explain the importance of proper patient identification and describe what information is verified, how to handle discrepancies, and what to do if a patient's ID band is missing.
6. Describe how to prepare patients for testing, how to answer inquiries concerning tests, and what to do if a patient objects to a test.
7. Describe how to verify fasting and other diet requirements and what to do when diet requirements have not been met.
8. Describe each step in the venipuncture procedure, list necessary information found on specimen tube labels, and list the acceptable reasons for inability to collect a specimen.
9. Describe collection procedures when using a butterfly or syringe and the proper way to safely dispense blood into tubes following syringe collection.
10. Describe unique requirements associated with drawing from special populations including pediatric, geriatric, and long-term care patients.

Venipuncture is the process of collecting or "drawing" blood from a vein and the most common way to collect blood specimens for laboratory testing. It is the most frequent procedure performed by a phlebotomist and the most important step in this procedure is patient identification. This chapter addresses how to correctly identify all types of patients and how to safely obtain high-quality blood specimens from them. Venipuncture techniques covered in this chapter include ETS, butterfly, and syringe procedures on arm and hand veins. This chapter also addresses challenges and unique issues associated with pediatric, geriatric, dialysis, long-term care, home care, and hospice patients. Venipuncture procedures in this chapter conform to CLSI standards.

Venipuncture Steps

WORKBOOK Skills Drill 8-3 can help you commit these steps to memory.

STEP 1: REVIEW AND ACCESSION TEST REQUEST

Blood collection procedures legally begin with the test request. This is the first step for the laboratory in the preanalytical (before analysis) or pre-examination phase of the testing process. Typically, a physician or other qualified healthcare professional requests laboratory testing; the exceptions are certain rapid tests that can be purchased and performed at home by consumers and blood specimens requested by law enforcement officials that are used for evidence. Some states have legalized "Direct Access Testing" (DAT), in which patients are allowed to order some of their own blood tests.

KEY POINT In the interest of achieving global harmonization (worldwide uniformity) and to align the use of terminology with that of the International Standards Organization (ISO), the CLSI has begun using the terms *pre-examination, examination, and postexamination* in place of *preanalytical, analytical, and postanalytical* in recent guidelines.

The Test Requisition

The form on which test orders are entered is called a **requisition.** Test requisitions become part of a patient's medical record and require specific information to ensure that the right patient is tested, the physician's orders are met, the correct tests are performed at the proper time under the required conditions, and the patient is billed properly. Required requisition information is listed in Box 8-1. Requisitions come in manual and computer-generated forms.

KEY POINT Verbal test requests are sometimes used in emergencies; however, the request is usually documented on standard request forms or entered in the computer by the time the phlebotomist arrives to collect the specimen.

BOX 8-1 REQUIRED REQUISITION INFORMATION

- Ordering physician's name
- Patient's first and last names and middle initial
- Patient's medical record number (if inpatient)
- Patient's date of birth or age
- Room number and bed (if inpatient)
- Type of test to be performed
- Date test is to be performed
- Billing information and ICD-9 codes (if outpatient)
- Test status (e.g., timed, fasting, priority)
- Special precautions (e.g., latex sensitivity)

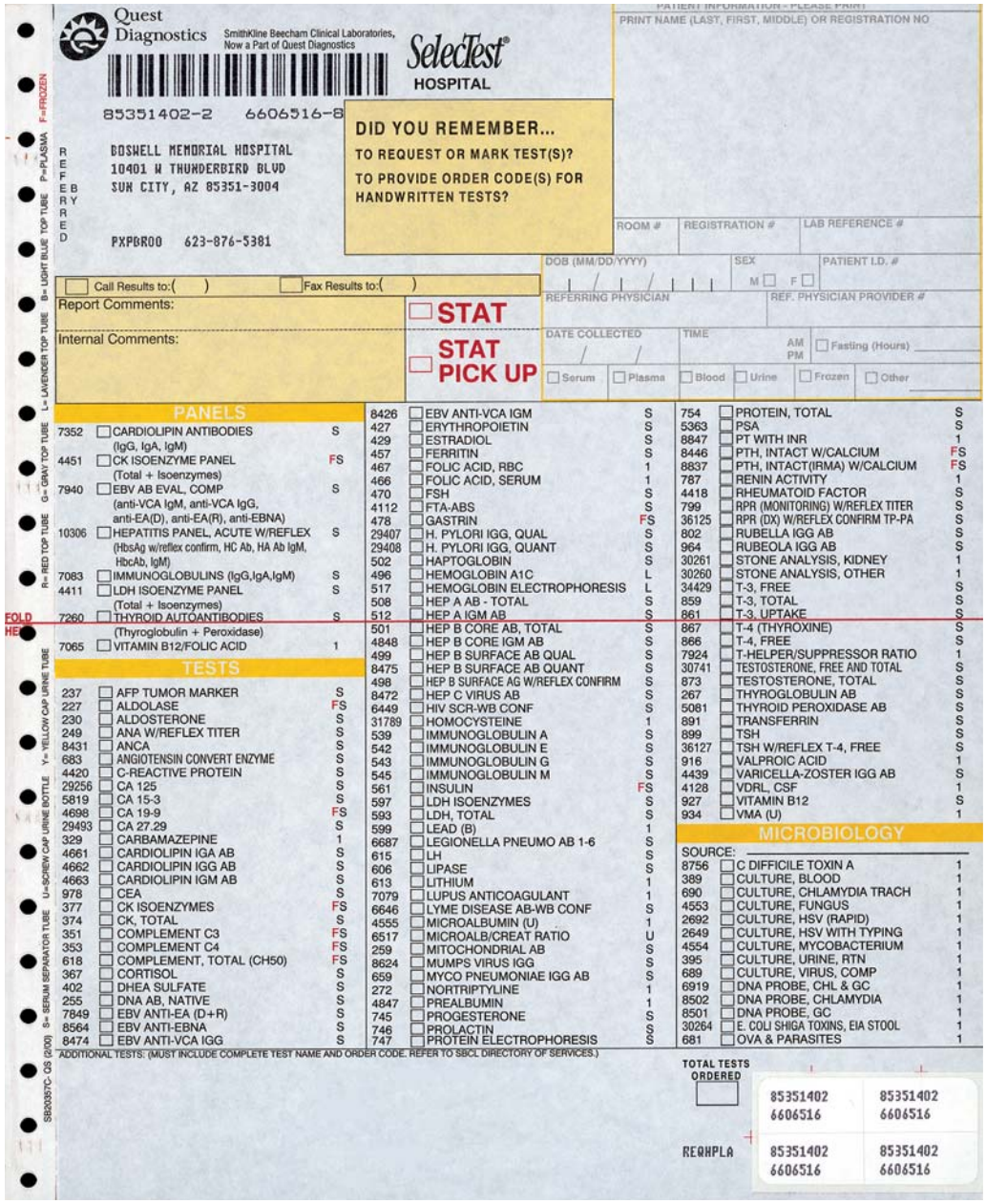

Quest Diagnostics
SmithKline Beecham Clinical Laboratories, Now a Part of Quest Diagnostics
SelectTest
HOSPITAL
85351402-2 6606516-8
DID YOU REMEMBER...
TO REQUEST OR MARK TEST(S)?
TO PROVIDE ORDER CODE(S) FOR HANDWRITTEN TESTS?
BOSWELL MEMORIAL HOSPITAL
10401 W THUNDERBIRD BLVD
SUN CITY, AZ 85351-3004
PXPGROO 623-876-5381
PRINT NAME (LAST, FIRST, MIDDLE) OR REGISTRATION NO
ROOM # REGISTRATION # LAB REFERENCE #
DOB (MM/DD/YYYY) SEX PATIENT I.D. #
REFERRING PHYSICIAN REF. PHYSICIAN PROVIDER #
Call Results to:( ) Fax Results to:( )
Report Comments:
Internal Comments:
STAT
STAT PICK UP
DATE COLLECTED TIME
Serum Plasma Blood Urine Frozen Other
PANELS
7352 CARDIOLIPIN ANTIBODIES (IgG, IgA, IgM) S
4451 CK ISOENZYME PANEL (Total + Isoenzymes) FS
7940 EBV AB EVAL, COMP (anti-VCA IgM, anti-VCA IgG, anti-EA(D), anti-EA(R), anti-EBNA) S
10306 HEPATITIS PANEL, ACUTE W/REFLEX (HbsAg w/reflex confirm, HC Ab, HA Ab IgM, HbcAb, IgM) S
7083 IMMUNOGLOBULINS (IgG,IgA,IgM) S
4411 LDH ISOENZYME PANEL (Total + Isoenzymes) S
7260 THYROID AUTOANTIBODIES (Thyroglobulin + Peroxidase) S
7065 VITAMIN B12/FOLIC ACID 1
TESTS
237 AFP TUMOR MARKER S
227 ALDOLASE FS
230 ALDOSTERONE S
249 ANA W/REFLEX TITER S
8431 ANCA S
683 ANGIOTENSIN CONVERT ENZYME S
4420 C-REACTIVE PROTEIN S
29256 CA 125 S
5819 CA 15-3 S
4698 CA 19-9 FS
29493 CA 27.29 S
329 CARBAMAZEPINE 1
4661 CARDIOLIPIN IGA AB S
4662 CARDIOLIPIN IGG AB S
4663 CARDIOLIPIN IGM AB S
978 CEA S
377 CK ISOENZYMES FS
374 CK, TOTAL S
351 COMPLEMENT C3 FS
353 COMPLEMENT C4 FS
618 COMPLEMENT, TOTAL (CH50) FS
367 CORTISOL S
402 DHEA SULFATE S
255 DNA AB, NATIVE S
7849 EBV ANTI-EA (D+R) S
8564 EBV ANTI-EBNA S
8474 EBV ANTI-VCA IGG S
8426 EBV ANTI-VCA IGM S
427 ERYTHROPOIETIN S
429 ESTRADIOL S
457 FERRITIN S
467 FOLIC ACID, RBC 1
466 FOLIC ACID, SERUM 1
470 FSH S
4112 FTA-ABS S
478 GASTRIN FS
29407 H. PYLORI IGG, QUAL S
29408 H. PYLORI IGG, QUANT S
502 HAPTOGLOBIN S
496 HEMOGLOBIN A1C L
517 HEMOGLOBIN ELECTROPHORESIS L
508 HEP A AB - TOTAL S
512 HEP A IGM AB S
501 HEP B CORE AB, TOTAL S
4848 HEP B CORE IGM AB S
499 HEP B SURFACE AB QUAL S
8475 HEP B SURFACE AB QUANT S
498 HEP B SURFACE AG W/REFLEX CONFIRM S
8472 HEP C VIRUS AB S
6449 HIV SCR-WB CONF S
31789 HOMOCYSTEINE 1
539 IMMUNOGLOBULIN A S
542 IMMUNOGLOBULIN E S
543 IMMUNOGLOBULIN G S
545 IMMUNOGLOBULIN M S
561 INSULIN FS
597 LDH ISOENZYMES S
593 LDH, TOTAL S
599 LEAD (B) 1
6687 LEGIONELLA PNEUMO AB 1-6 S
615 LH S
606 LIPASE S
613 LITHIUM 1
7079 LUPUS ANTICOAGULANT 1
6646 LYME DISEASE AB-WB CONF S
4555 MICROALBUMIN (U) 1
6517 MICROALB/CREAT RATIO U
259 MITOCHONDRIAL AB S
8624 MUMPS VIRUS IGG S
659 MYCO PNEUMONIAE IGG AB S
272 NORTRIPTYLINE 1
4847 PREALBUMIN 1
745 PROGESTERONE S
746 PROLACTIN S
747 PROTEIN ELECTROPHORESIS S
754 PROTEIN, TOTAL S
5363 PSA S
8847 PT WITH INR 1
8446 PTH, INTACT W/CALCIUM FS
8837 PTH, INTACT(IRMA) W/CALCIUM FS
787 RENIN ACTIVITY 1
4418 RHEUMATOID FACTOR S
799 RPR (MONITORING) W/REFLEX TITER S
36125 RPR (DX) W/REFLEX CONFIRM TP-PA S
802 RUBELLA IGG AB S
964 RUBEOLA IGG AB S
30261 STONE ANALYSIS, KIDNEY 1
30260 STONE ANALYSIS, OTHER 1
34429 T-3, FREE S
859 T-3, TOTAL S
861 T-3, UPTAKE S
867 T-4 (THYROXINE) S
866 T-4, FREE S
7924 T-HELPER/SUPPRESSOR RATIO 1
30741 TESTOSTERONE, FREE AND TOTAL S
873 TESTOSTERONE, TOTAL S
267 THYROGLOBULIN AB S
5081 THYROID PEROXIDASE AB S
891 TRANSFERRIN S
899 TSH S
36127 TSH W/REFLEX T-4, FREE S
916 VALPROIC ACID 1
4439 VARICELLA-ZOSTER IGG AB S
4128 VDRL, CSF 1
927 VITAMIN B12 S
934 VMA (U) 1
MICROBIOLOGY
SOURCE:
8756 C DIFFICILE TOXIN A 1
389 CULTURE, BLOOD 1
690 CULTURE, CHLAMYDIA TRACH 1
4553 CULTURE, FUNGUS 1
2692 CULTURE, HSV (RAPID) 1
2649 CULTURE, HSV WITH TYPING 1
4554 CULTURE, MYCOBACTERIUM 1
395 CULTURE, URINE, RTN 1
689 CULTURE, VIRUS, COMP 1
6919 DNA PROBE, CHL & GC 1
8502 DNA PROBE, CHLAMYDIA 1
8501 DNA PROBE, GC 1
30264 E. COLI SHIGA TOXINS, EIA STOOL 1
681 OVA & PARASITES 1
ADDITIONAL TESTS: (MUST INCLUDE COMPLETE TEST NAME AND ORDER CODE. REFER TO SBCL DIRECTORY OF SERVICES.)
TOTAL TESTS ORDERED
85351402 6606516
85351402 6606516
REQHPLA
85351402 6606516
85351402 6606516
FOLD HERE
R=RED TOP TUBE
G=GRAY TOP TUBE
L=LAVENDER TOP TUBE
B=LIGHT BLUE TOP TUBE
P=PLASMA
F=FROZEN
Y=YELLOW CAP URINE BOTTLE
U=SCREW CAP URINE TUBE
S=SERUM SEPARATOR TUBE
SB2035/7C CS (200)

Figure 8-1 A manual requisition. (Courtesy Sun Health Systems, Sun City, AZ.)

Manual Requisitions

Manual requisitions (Fig. 8-1) come in many different styles and types. One type is a three-part form that serves as a request, report, and billing form. With increased use of computer systems, the use of manual requisitions is declining. However, they are typically used as a backup when computer systems fail.

Computer Requisitions

Computer requisitions (Fig. 8-2) normally contain the actual labels that are placed on the specimen tubes immediately after collection. In addition to patient identification and test status information, many indicate the type of tube needed for the specimen and some indicate additional patient information such as "potential bleeder" or "no venipuncture right arm."

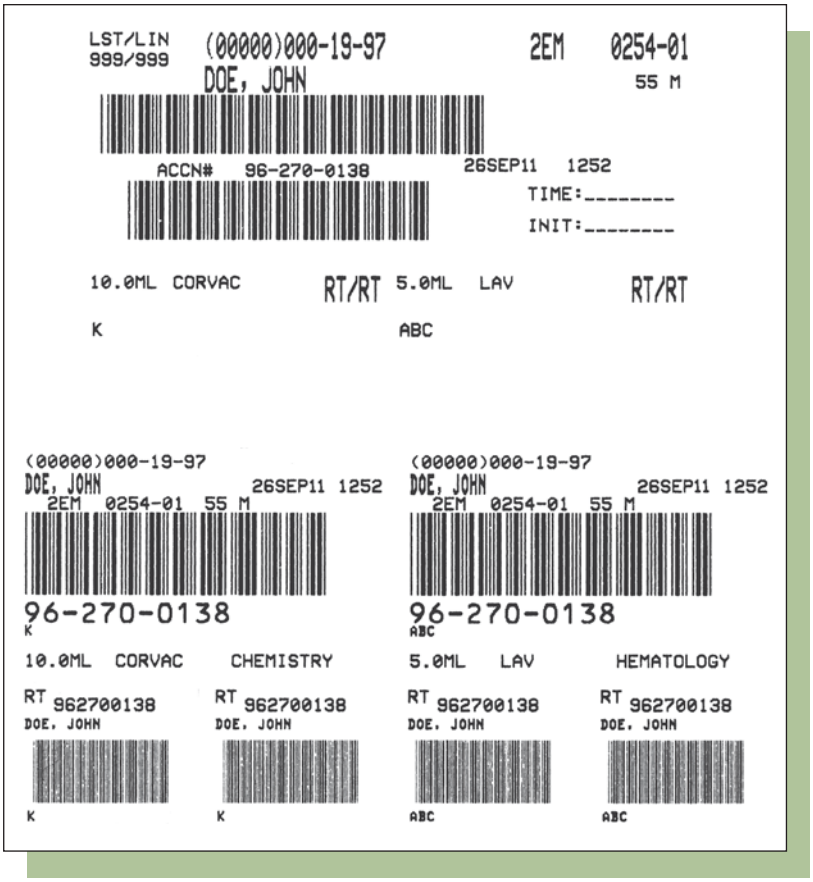


Figure 8-2 A computer requisition with bar code.

KEY POINT When a computer-generated label is used, the phlebotomist is typically required to write the time of collection and his or her initials on the label after collecting the specimen.

Bar-Code Requisitions

Either type of requisition may contain a **bar code**, a series of black stripes and white spaces of varying widths that correspond to letters and numbers (Fig. 8-2). The stripes and spaces are grouped together to represent patient names, identification numbers, or laboratory tests. Manual requisitions that have bar codes normally contain copies of the bar code that can be peeled off and placed on the specimens. Computer requisitions typically have the bar code printed on each label. Bar-code information can be scanned into a computer using a special light or laser to identify the information represented. Bar-code systems allow for fast, accurate processing, and their use has been shown to decrease laboratory errors associated with clerical mistakes.

RECEIPT OF THE TEST REQUEST

Computer requisitions for inpatients usually print out at a special computer terminal (Fig. 8-3) at the phlebotomist station in the laboratory. Typically, outpatients are given laboratory requisitions or prescription slips with test orders written on them by their physicians and are responsible for taking them to a blood collection site. It is up to personnel of the blood collection site to make certain that all required information is on the requisition provided by the patient or to fill out a requisition from the physician's prescription slip.

Figure 8-3 Computer requisitions printing at a terminal in the laboratory.

REVIEWING THE REQUISITION

A thorough review of the test requisition helps to avoid duplication of orders, ensures that the specimen is collected at the right time and under the proper conditions, and identifies special equipment that may be required. In reviewing a requisition the phlebotomist must:

- Check to see that all required information is present and complete.
- Verify the tests to be collected and time and date of collection.
- Identify diet restrictions or other special circumstances that must be met prior to collection.
- Determine test status or collection priority (Table 8-1).

Accessioning the Test Request

The definition of **accession** is the process of recording in the order received. To accession a specimen means to take steps to unmistakably connect the specimen and the accompanying paperwork with a specific individual. When a test request is accessioned it is assigned a unique number used to identify the specimen and all associated processes and paperwork and connect them to the patient. This helps to ensure prompt and accurate processing from receipt of the order to reporting of test results.

STEP 2: APPROACH, IDENTIFY, AND PREPARE PATIENT

Approaching the Patient

Being organized and efficient plays a role in a positive and productive collection experience. Before collecting the specimens, the phlebotomist should arrange the requisitions according to priority and review them to see that needed equipment is on the blood-collecting tray or cart before proceeding to the patient's room. Outpatients are typically summoned into the drawing area from the waiting room in order of arrival and check-in. As with inpatients, stat requests take priority over all others.

Looking for Signs

Looking for signs containing information concerning the patient is an important part of the approach to an inpatient. Signs are typically posted on the door to the patient's room or on the wall beside or behind the head of the patient's bed. Of particular importance to phlebotomists are signs indicating that infection-control precautions are to be followed on entering the

TABLE 8-1 Common Test Status Designations

Status	Meaning	When Used	Collection Conditions	Test Examples	Priority
Stat	Immediately (from Latin *statim*)	Test results are urgently needed on critical patients	Immediately collect, test, and report results. Alert lab staff when delivered. ER stats typically have priority over other stats.	Glucose H&H Electrolytes Cardiac enzymes	First
Med Emerg	Medical Emergency (replaces stat)	Same as stat	Same as stat	Same as stat	Same as stat
Timed	Collect at a specific time	Tests for which timing is critical for accurate results	Collect as close as possible to requested time. Record actual time collected.	2-hour PP GTT Cortisol Cardiac enzymes TDM Blood cultures	Second
ASAP	As soon as possible	Test results are needed soon to respond to a serious situation, but patient is not critical	Follow hospital protocol for type of test.	Electrolytes Glucose H&H	Second or third depending on test
Fasting	No food or drink except water for 8–12 hours prior to specimen collection	To eliminate diet effects on test results	Verify patient has fasted. If patient has not fasted, check to see if specimen should still be collected.	Glucose Cholesterol Triglycerides	Fourth
NPO	Nothing by mouth (from Latin *nil per os*)	Prior to surgery or other anesthesia procedures	Do not give patient food or water. Refer requests to physician or nurse.	N/A	N/A
Preop	Before an operation	To determine patient eligibility for surgery.	Collect before the patient goes to surgery.	CBC PTT Platelet function studies	Same as ASAP
Postop	After an operation	Assess patient condition after surgery.	Collect when patient is out of surgery.	H&H	Same as ASAP
Routine	Relating to established procedure	Used to establish a diagnosis or monitor a patient's progress.	Collect in a timely manner but no urgency involved. Typically collected on morning sweeps or the next scheduled sweep.	CBC Chem profile	None

room and signs that prohibit the taking of blood pressures or blood draws (Fig. 8-4A) from a particular arm. Other commonly encountered signs may identify limits to the number of visitors allowed in the room at one time, indicate that "fall" precautions are to be observed for the patient, or warn that the patient has a severe allergy (e.g., to latex or flowers). A sign with the letters **DNR** (do not resuscitate) or **DNAR** (do not attempt resuscitation) means that there is an order (also called a no code order) stating that the patient should not be revived if he or she stops breathing. A physician—at the request of the patient or the patient's guardian—typically writes the order.

A **code** *is a way to transmit a message, normally understood by healthcare personnel only, over the facility's public address system. A code uses numbers or words to convey information needed by healthcare personnel to respond to certain situations.*

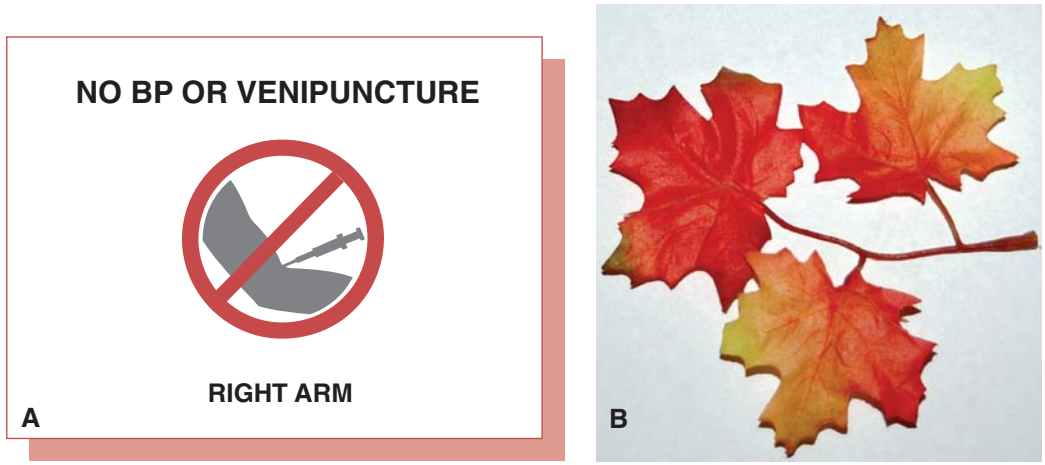


Figure 8-4 Two examples of warning signs. **A.** No blood pressures or venipuncture in right arm. (Courtesy Brevis Corp, Salt Lake City, UT.) **B.** Fall-colored leaves symbolizing fall precautions.

Pictures are sometimes used in place of written warnings. For example, a sign with a picture of fall leaves (Fig. 8-4B) is sometimes used to indicate precautions against falling. A picture of a fallen leaf with a teardrop on it is sometimes used on obstetric wards to indicate that a patient has lost a baby.

Entering a Patient's Room

Doors to patients' rooms are usually open. If the door is closed, knock lightly, open the door slowly, and say something like "good morning" before proceeding into the room. Even if the door is open, it is a good idea to knock lightly to make occupants aware that you are about to enter. Curtains are often pulled closed when nurses are working with patients or when patients are using bedpans or urinals. Make your presence known before proceeding or opening the curtain so as to protect the patient's privacy and avoid embarrassment.

Physicians and Clergy

If a physician or a member of the clergy is with the patient, don't interrupt. The patient's time with these individuals is private and limited. If the draw is not stat, timed or other urgent priority, go draw another patient and check back after that. If that is the only patient, wait outside the room for a few minutes or go back to the lab and draw the specimen on the next sweep. (In any case, always make certain your actions follow facility policy.) If the request is stat, timed, or other urgent priority , excuse yourself, explain why you are there, and ask permission to proceed.

Family and Visitors

Often there are family members or visitors with the patient. It is best to ask them to step outside the room until you are finished. Most will prefer to do so; however, some family members will insist on staying in the room. It is generally acceptable to let a willing family member help steady the arm or hold pressure over the site while you label tubes.

Unavailable Patient

If the patient cannot be located, is unavailable, or you are unable to obtain the specimen for any other reason, it is the policy of most laboratories that you fill out a form stating that you were unable to obtain the specimen at the requested time and the reason why. The original copy of this form is left at the nurses' station and a copy goes to the lab.

Identifying Yourself

Identify yourself to the patient by stating your name, your title, and why you are there (e.g., "Good morning. I am Joe Smith, a phlebotomist. I'm here to collect a blood specimen if it is

all right with you."). If you are a student, let the patient know this and ask permission to do the blood draw. This is a part of informed consent and patient rights. The patient has a right to refuse to have blood drawn by a student or anyone else.

Obtaining Consent

The patient's consent must be obtained before initiating venipuncture. Always ask a patient for permission to collect the specimen (see "Identifying Yourself," above). This is not only courteous but also legally required. Consent does not always have to be stated verbally, however. It can be implied by actions—for example, if the patient extends an arm when you explain why you are there. A phlebotomist must never collect a blood specimen without permission or against a patient's will. Objections should be reported to the appropriate personnel. (See "Patient Consent" in Chapter 2.)

CAUTION: Be aware of conflicting permission statements. This often happens with student phlebotomists. For example, when a student asks permission to collect the specimen, a patient may say "Yes, but I would rather not." The patient has given permission and taken back that permission in the same statement. In this case it is best if the student's instructor or another phlebotomist employed by the facility collects the specimen.

Bedside Manner

The behavior of a healthcare provider toward, or as perceived by, a patient is called **bedside manner.** Approaching a patient is more than simply calling an outpatient into the blood-drawing room or finding an inpatient's room and proceeding to collect the specimen. The manner in which you approach and interact with the patient sets the stage for whether or not the patient perceives you as a professional. Gaining the patient's trust and confidence and putting the patient at ease are important aspects of a successful encounter and an important part of professional bedside manner. A phlebotomist with a professional bedside manner and appearance will more easily gain a patient's trust. A confident phlebotomist will convey that confidence to patients and help them feel at ease.

KEY POINT A cheerful, pleasant manner and an exchange of small talk will help to put a patient at ease as well as divert attention from any discomfort associated with the procedure.

View the Introductory and Identification Processes Required Prior to Blood Specimen Collection video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Patient Identification

Patient Identification (ID)

The process of verifying a patient's identity, is the most important step in specimen collection. Obtaining a specimen from the wrong patient can have serious, even fatal, consequences, especially specimens for type and cross-match prior to blood transfusion. Misidentifying a patient or specimen can be grounds for dismissal of the person responsible and can even lead to a malpractice lawsuit against that person.

Verifying Name and Date of Birth

The patient must be actively involved in the identification process. When identifying a patient, ask the patient to state his or her full name and date of birth. In addition, the CLSI guideline GP33-A (*Accuracy in Patient and Sample Identification*) recommends having the patient spell the last name. This also serves as a memory jogger to help the phlebotomist remember that the patient's ID was verified. The patient's response must match the information on the requisition and/or computer-generated specimen labels. Any errors or differences must be resolved before a sample is collected.

Figure 8-5 **A.** A phlebotomist at bedside checking patient identification band. **B.** Closeup of a typical identification bracelet.

CAUTION: When identifying a patient, *never* say, for example, "Are you Mrs. Smith?" A person who is very ill, hard of hearing, or sedated may say "Yes" to anything.

Checking Identification Bracelets

If the patient's response matches the information on the requisition, proceed to check the patient's **ID band** or **bracelet** (Fig. 8-5A) (also called an **arm band** or **wrist band**) if applicable. Inpatients are normally required to wear an ID band, usually on the wrist. The typical ID band (Fig. 8-5B) lists the patient's name and hospital identification number or **medical record (MR) number**. Additional information includes the patient's birth date or age, room number and bed designation, and physician's name.

The patient's name, MR number, and date of birth (DOB) or age on the ID band must match the information on the requisition *exactly*. It is not unusual to have patients with the same or similar names in the hospital at the same time. (Examples are patients with common last names, fathers and sons who have been in accidents, multiple-birth babies, and relatives involved in tissue transplant procedures.) There have even been instances when two unrelated patients shared the same full name and birth date. Two patients will not, however, have the same hospital or medical record number, although they may be similar.

Identification protocol may vary slightly from one healthcare institution to another. Generally, ID information such as room number, bed number, and physician name are allowed to differ. For instance, occasionally a room number will differ because the patient has been moved. The name of the ordering physician may be different, since it is not unusual for a patient to be under the care of several different physicians at the same time.

3-Way ID

To avoid identification and mislabeling errors, some inpatient facilities require what is referred to as 3-Way ID, in which the patient is identified by three means: the patient's verbal ID statement, a check of the ID band, and a visual comparison of the labeled specimen with the patient's ID band before leaving the bedside. Some facilities are now also showing the labeled specimen to the patient and asking for verification that the correct name is on the label.

ID Discrepancies

If there is a discrepancy between the name, MR number, or date of birth on the ID band and the information on the requisition, the patient's nurse should be notified. The specimen must not be obtained until the discrepancy is addressed and the patient's identity has been verified.

Missing ID

If there is no ID band on either of an inpatient's wrists, ask the patient if you can check to see if it is on an ankle. Intravenous (IV) lines in patient's arms often infiltrate the surrounding tissues and cause swelling, which necessitates removal of the ID band. When this occurs, especially on a patient with IV lines in both arms, nursing personnel sometimes place the ID band around an ankle. (The patient is not always aware that this has been done.) In some instances, an ID band is removed from an IV-infiltrated arm or while other procedures are being performed on the patient and placed on an IV pole or the night table by the patient's bed. An ID band on an IV pole or night table could belong to a patient who previously occupied that bed and should not be used for identification purposes. It is also not unusual for a new patient to occupy a bed before the nursing staff has had a chance to attach his or her ID band.

CAUTION: *Never* verify information from an ID band that is not attached to the patient or collect a specimen from an inpatient who is not wearing an ID band.

In rare cases, such as a patient with severe burns, the ID is left off intentionally. In such cases follow facility protocol, which typically involves a verbal statement of ID by the patient and confirmation of ID by a nurse or relative with documentation of that person's name.

If an ID band is required and the patient is not wearing one, it is usually acceptable to ask the patient's nurse to attach an ID band before collecting the specimen. Some sites require the phlebotomist to refrain from collecting the specimen and fill out a special form stating that the specimen was not collected because the patient did not have an ID band. The form is left at the nurse's station. It is then up to the patient's nurse to attach an ID band and inform the lab when it has been done so that the specimen can be collected. In rare emergency situations in which there is no time to wait for the attachment of an ID band, the patient's nurse is allowed to verify the patient's ID. In such cases the nurse must sign or initial the requisition. Follow institution protocol.

Sleeping Patients

Obviously, proper identification and informed consent cannot occur if the patient is asleep. If you encounter a sleeping patient, as is often the case in hospitals and nursing homes, wake the person gently. Try not to startle the patient, as this can affect test results. Speak softly but distinctly. If the room is darkened, avoid turning on bright overhead lighting, at least until the patient's eyes have adjusted to being open, and warn the patient first.

CAUTION: *Never* attempt to collect a blood specimen from a sleeping patient. Such an attempt may startle the patient and cause injury to the patient or the phlebotomist.

Unconscious Patients

Unconscious patients are often encountered in emergency rooms and intensive care units. Ask a relative or the patient's nurse or physician to identify the patient and record the name of that person. Speak to the patient as you would to someone who is alert. Identify yourself and inform the patient of your intent. Unconscious patients can often hear what is going on around them even though they are unresponsive.

CAUTION: An unconscious patient may be able to feel pain and move when you insert the needle, so it may be necessary to have someone assist you in holding the arm during the blood draw.

Emergency Room ID Procedures

It is not uncommon for an emergency room (ER), or emergency department (ED), to receive an unconscious patient with no identification. Clear guidelines for this situation, provided by the American Association of Blood Banks (AABB), include the following:

Figure 8-6 An example of a special 3-part ID band used for unidentified ER patients.

- Assign a temporary number to the patient and record it on the test request forms.
- Fill out labels by hand or computer and apply them to the test request and specimens after collection. (Some tubes have bar codes and bar-code labels that can be peeled off and placed on the test request form.)
- When a permanent number is issued, it must be cross-referenced to the temporary number.
- Attach an ID band or device to the patient that has the name and temporary number on it. In many institutions, the phlebotomist is allowed to attach a special three-part identification band (Fig. 8-6) such as a Typenex Blood Recipient ID band (Typenex Medical LLC, Chicago, IL) to an unidentified ER patient's wrist. All three parts contain the same number. The first part becomes the patient's ID band. The second part is attached to the specimen. The third part is used if the patient needs a transfusion, and it is attached to the unit of blood. Follow your institution's protocol for unidentified patients.

CAUTION: *Never* collect a specimen without some way to positively connect that specimen to the patient.

Identification of Young, Mentally Incompetent, or Non–English-Speaking Patients

If the patient is young, mentally incompetent, or non–English-speaking, ask the patient's nurse, attendant, relative, or friend to identify the patient by name, address, and identification number or birth date. This information must match the information on the test requisition and the patient's ID band if applicable.

Neonates and Other Infants

ID bands may be placed on the lower leg instead of the arm of inpatient newborns or babies under 2 years of age. (In some facilities, newborns may also have another ID with the mother's information.) In addition, there is usually a card on the isolette with the baby's

information on it. It can be used to locate the infant; however, it must not be used for final identification purposes. The child may be identified by a nurse, relative, or guardian. The name and relationship of a relative or guardian or the name and title of a nurse who identifies the child should be recorded on the requisition. Information that must be confirmed on a baby includes:

- Name (if available) and date of birth
- Gender
- Medical record number or other unique identifier
- Mother's last name or name of person provided at registration

CAUTION: Multiple births present an increased risk of identification error. Follow strict facility protocol.

Outpatient ID

Typically, the outpatient collection site's receptionist verifies the patient's identity and fills out the proper lab requisition or generates one via computer. Some labs supply requisition forms to physicians who use their services, so some outpatients arrive at the collection site with lab requisitions that are already filled out. Information must still be verified, and patients may be required to show proof of identification such as a driver's license or other picture ID. Outpatients do not normally have ID bands. However, they may have a clinic-issued **ID card** that contains their name and other information identifying them as clinic patients. ID cards are sometimes used to imprint requisitions or labels using an addressograph type of machine. Even if a receptionist has identified the patient, a phlebotomist must still personally verify the patient's ID after calling him or her into the blood-drawing area from the waiting room. Simply calling a person's name and having someone respond is not verification enough. An anxious or hard-of-hearing patient may think that his or her name has been called when in fact a similar name was called. Always ask an outpatient to state his or her name and date of birth and spell the last name. Make certain that the patient's response matches the requisition information before obtaining the specimen.

Preparing the Patient

Explaining the Procedure

Most patients have had a blood test before. A statement of your intent to collect a specimen for a blood test is usually sufficient for them to understand what is about to occur. A patient who has never had a blood test may require a more detailed explanation. Special procedures may require additional information. If a patient does not speak or understand English, you may have to use sign language or other nonverbal means to demonstrate what is to occur. If this fails, an interpreter must be located. Speaking slowly and distinctly, using sign language, or writing down information may be necessary for patients with hearing problems.

KEY POINT Regardless of the difficulties involved, you must always determine that the patient understands what is about to take place and obtain permission before proceeding. This is part of informed consent.

Addressing Patient Inquiries

Some healthcare facilities will allow the phlebotomist to tell the patient the name of the test or tests to be performed. Others prefer that all inquiries be directed to the patient's physician. Never attempt to explain the purpose of a test to a patient. Because a particular test can be ordered to rule out a number of different problems, any attempt to explain its purpose could mislead or unduly alarm the patient. Handle such inquiries by stating that it is best to have the doctor or nurse explain them.

When bedside testing is being performed (such as glucose monitoring), the patient is often aware of the type of test being performed and may ask about results. Follow facility protocol

for addressing such requests or check with the patient's nurse or physician to see if it is acceptable to tell the patient the results.

Handling Patient Objections

Although most patients understand that blood tests are needed in the course of treatment, occasionally a patient will object to the procedure. Outpatients rarely object because typically they have been personally directed by their physician to obtain testing and in most cases have been given a test requisition. Inpatients, on the other hand, may not be aware of all the tests that have been ordered or the frequency with which some tests must be repeated. Some may have difficult veins and just get tired of the ordeal. A reminder that the doctor ordered the test and needs the results to provide proper care will sometimes convince the patient to cooperate.

KEY POINT Do not attempt to badger the patient into cooperating or to restrain a conscious, mentally alert adult patient to obtain a specimen. Remember, a patient has the right to refuse testing.

Sometimes a patient objects at first but is not really serious. However, if a patient truly objects and refuses to let you collect the specimen, write on the requisition that the patient has refused to have blood drawn and notify the appropriate personnel that the specimen was not obtained because of patient refusal. Depending upon institution policy, you may be required to fill out a special form stating why you were unable to collect the specimen.

Handling Difficult Patients

The patient may not echo your cheerful, pleasant manner. Hospitalization or illness is typically a stressful situation. The patient may be lonely, scared, fearful, or just plain disagreeable and may react in a negative manner toward you. It is important to remain calm and professional and treat the patient in a caring manner under all circumstances.

Addressing Needle Phobia

An admission of **needle phobia** (intense fear of needles) by a patient or signs that suggest it, such as extreme fear or apprehension in advance of venipuncture, should not be taken lightly. Needle-phobic individuals can experience a shock type reaction during or immediately following venipuncture. Symptoms include pallor (paleness), profuse sweating, light-headedness, nausea, and fainting. In severe cases, patients have been known to suffer arrhythmia and even cardiac arrest. Needle phobia is estimated to affect more than 10% of the population to such a degree that they avoid medical care. It is important that those who do have the courage to submit to blood tests are treated with empathy and special attention and that steps be taken to minimize any trauma associated with the venipuncture. Basic steps that can be taken include the following:

- Have the patient lie down during the procedure, with legs elevated.
- Apply an ice pack to the site for 10 to 15 minutes to numb it before venipuncture.
- Have only the most experienced and skilled phlebotomist perform the venipuncture.

It is recommended that anyone who has suffered a severe reaction as a result of needle phobia have future procedures involving needles performed at sites where personnel are trained in CPR and a defibrillator is readily accessible.

Addressing Objects in the Patient's Mouth

Do not allow a patient to eat, drink, chew gum, or have a thermometer, toothpick, or any other foreign object in the mouth during blood collection. Objects in the mouth can cause choking. A bite reflex could break a thermometer and injure a patient. Politely ask patients to stop eating or drinking and remove objects from their mouths until you are finished with the venipuncture.

STEP 3: VERIFY DIET RESTRICTIONS AND LATEX SENSITIVITY

Diet Restrictions

It is important to verify that any special diet instructions or restrictions have been followed. The most common diet requirement is for the patient to fast (refrain from eating) for a certain

period of time, typically overnight, such as after the last meal of the day or after midnight in some cases (e.g., outpatients if they will not have the specimen drawn until after 8 A.M.) until the specimen is collected the following morning. The total time required is usually 8 to 12 hours. If no other restrictions are required, the patient may have water during the fasting period. Drinking water is important so that the patient does not become dehydrated, which can affect test results and make it harder to collect a blood specimen.

Eating can alter blood composition considerably. Consequently, if the patient did not fast or follow other diet instructions, it is important to notify and consult with the patient's physician or nurse so that a decision can be made as to whether or not to proceed with the test.

KEY POINT If the patient has eaten and you are told to proceed with specimen collection, it is important to write "nonfasting" on the requisition and the specimen label.

Latex Sensitivity

Exposure to latex can trigger life-threatening reactions in those allergic to it. If a patient is allergic to latex, it is extremely important to verify that all equipment used on him or her is latex-free and that no latex items are brought into the room, even if they are for use on another patient in the same room.

STEP 4: SANITIZE HANDS

View a video of Hand Washing/ Hand Antisepsis at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in preventing the spread of infection and is an important step in the venipuncture procedure that should not be forgotten or performed poorly. Depending on the degree of contamination, hands can be decontaminated by washing or use of alcohol-based hand sanitizers (Fig. 8-7), which are normally available in the form of gels or foams. In using hand sanitizers it is important to use a generous amount and allow the alcohol to evaporate to achieve proper antisepsis. If hands are visibly dirty or contaminated with blood or other body fluids, they must be washed with soap and water. If hand-washing facilities are not available, visibly contaminated hands should be cleaned with detergent-containing wipes followed by the use of an alcohol-based hand cleaner. Gloves are usually put on at this point. Follow facility protocol.

FYI

Some phlebotomists prefer to put on gloves immediately after hand sanitization; others prefer to wait until after vein selection because they find it easier to feel veins without gloves on. Follow facility protocol.

Figure 8-7 A phlebotomist applying hand sanitizer.

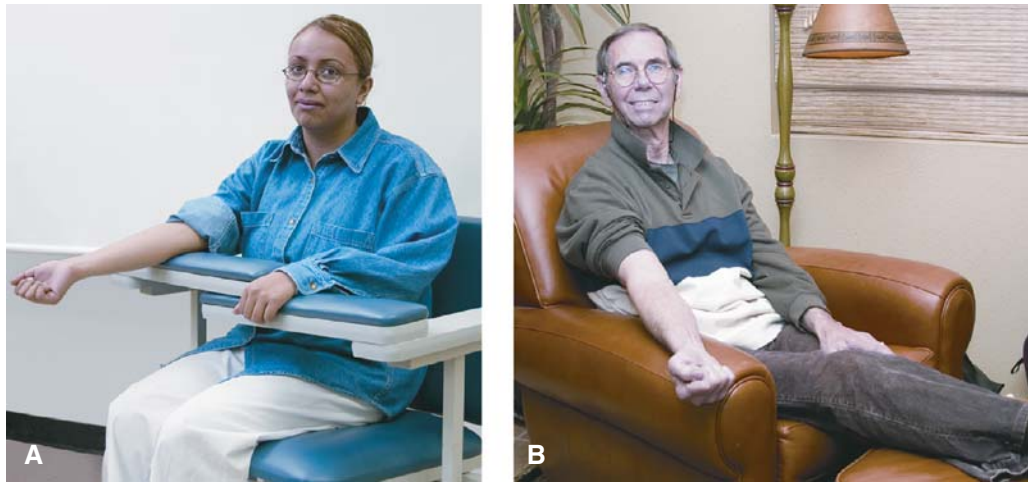


Figure 8-8 **A.** A patient seated in a special blood-drawing chair. **B.** A home-draw patient seated in a reclining chair.

STEP 5: POSITION PATIENT, APPLY TOURNIQUET, AND ASK PATIENT TO MAKE A FIST

Positioning the Patient

Inpatients normally have blood drawn while lying down in their beds. Outpatients at most facilities are drawn while sitting up in special blood-drawing chairs (Fig. 8-8A). If a special chair is not available, the patient should be seated in one that is sturdy and comfortable and has armrests (Fig. 8-8B) in case the patient faints. If a suitable chair is not available or an outpatient is in a weakened condition or known to have fainting tendencies, the blood can be drawn with the patient in a reclining chair or lying on a sofa or bed. With all blood draws, be prepared to react in case the patient feels faint or loses consciousness.

CAUTION: Because of the possibility of fainting, a patient should *never* be standing or seated on a high or backless stool during blood collection.

When venipuncture is performed on a hand or wrist vein, the patient's hand must be well supported on a bed, rolled towel, or armrest. For venipuncture in the antecubital area, the patient's arm should extend downward in a straight line from shoulder to wrist and *not* be bent at the elbow. (In some cases a slight bend may be necessary to avoid hyperextension of the elbow.) This position helps "fix" the veins so they are less apt to roll and makes them easier to locate because gravity causes them to enlarge and become more prominent. In addition, a downward position is necessary to ensure that blood-collection tubes fill from the bottom up. This prevents reflux or backflow of tube contents into the patient's vein (see Chapter 9) as well as additive carryover between tubes if multiple tubes are collected.

Proper positioning is somewhat harder to achieve with patients who are lying down, especially if the head of the bed cannot be raised. If necessary, a pillow or rolled towel can be used to support and position the arm so that at least the hand is lower than the elbow. Bed rails may be let down, but be careful not to catch IV lines, catheter bags and tubing, or other patient apparatus. Bed rails *must* be raised again when the procedure is finished. Many phlebotomists have learned to draw blood specimens with bed rails in place, so they don't have to worry about forgetting to put them back up when they are finished.

CAUTION: A phlebotomist who lowers a bed rail and forgets to raise it can be held liable if the patient falls out of bed and is injured.

View the Proper Tourniquet Application for Venipuncture video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Tourniquet Application and Fist Clenching

A tourniquet is applied 3 to 4 in. above the intended venipuncture site to restrict venous blood flow and make the veins more prominent. If it is closer to the site, the vein may collapse as blood is removed. If it is too far above the site, it may be ineffective. In drawing blood from a hand vein, the tourniquet is applied proximal to the wrist bone.

KEY POINT If a patient has prominent, visible veins, tourniquet application can wait until after the site has been cleaned and you are ready to insert the needle.

The tourniquet should be tight enough to slow venous flow without affecting arterial flow. This allows more blood to flow into the area than out. As a result, blood backs up in the veins, enlarging them so they are easier to see and distending or stretching them so the walls are thinner and easier to pierce with a needle. A tourniquet that is too tight may prevent arterial blood flow into the area and result in failure to obtain blood. A tourniquet that is too loose will be useless. The tourniquet should feel snug or slightly tight to the patient. It should lie flat around the circumference of the arm and not be rolled, twisted, or so tight that it pinches, hurts, or causes the arm to turn red or purple.

A tourniquet has a greater tendency to roll or twist on the arms of obese patients. Two tourniquets placed on top of one another and used together will sometimes be sturdy enough to prevent this problem.

If a patient has sensitive skin or dermatitis, apply the tourniquet over a dry washcloth or gauze wrapped around the arm or a hospital gown sleeve if facility policy allows. A tourniquet is sometimes applied over an outpatient's sleeve if the sleeve is tight and cannot be pushed or rolled up far enough above the site. Ask the outpatient for permission before doing so, however, as some patients may object. *Never* apply a tourniquet over an open sore. Choose another site. Instructions for tying a latex or vinyl strip tourniquet are shown in Procedure 8-1.

When the tourniquet is in place, ask the patient to clench or make a fist. When a patient makes a fist, the veins in that arm become more prominent, making them easier to locate and enter with a needle. Pumping (repeatedly opening and closing the fist) should be prohibited, as it causes muscle movement that can make vein location more difficult; it can also cause changes in blood components that could affect test results.

KEY POINT Fist pumping most notably affects levels of potassium and ionized calcium.

STEP 6: SELECT VEIN, RELEASE TOURNIQUET, AND ASK PATIENT TO OPEN FIST

The preferred venipuncture site is the antecubital area of the arm, where a number of veins lie fairly close to the surface. Typically, the most prominent of these are the median cubital, cephalic, and basilic veins in the "H" pattern and the median, median cephalic, and median basilic veins in the "M" pattern (see Chapter 6). The median cubital and median veins are normally closer to the surface, more stationary, and in an area where nerve injury is least likely. Consequently, they are the first choices for venipuncture, followed by the cephalic and median cephalic veins. The basilic and median basilic veins are last-choice veins because they are near the median nerve and brachial artery, which could be punctured accidentally.

View the Proper Tourniquet Application for Venipuncture video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 8-1 Tourniquet Application

PURPOSE: Properly apply a tourniquet to a patient's arm as an aid to venipuncture

EQUIPMENT: Vinyl or latex strap tourniquet

NOTE: Steps listed are for a right-handed individual. If you are left handed, substitute dominant and nondominant, respectively, for right and left references.

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Place the tourniquet around the arm 3–4 in. above the intended venipuncture site.	If closer to the site, the vein may collapse as blood is withdrawn. If too far above the site, it may be ineffective.
2. Grasp one side of the tourniquet in each hand a few inches from the end.	Allows sufficient length for fastening the tourniquet and creating the loop in step 7.
3. Apply a small amount of tension and maintain it throughout the process.	Tension is needed so the tourniquet will be snug when tied. If too much tension is applied, it will be too tight and will roll up on itself or twist and cause discomfort.
4. Bring the two sides together and grasp them both between the thumb and forefinger of the right hand.	This is preparation for crossing the sides over each other.
5. Reach over the right hand and grasp the right side of the tourniquet between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand and release it from the grip of the right hand.	The tourniquet ends will now be held in opposite hands, with the sides crossed over each other.

PROCEDURE 8-1 Tourniquet Application (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
6. Cross the left end over the right end near the left index finger, grasping both sides together between the thumb and forefinger of the left hand, close to the patient's arm.	If there is too much space between the left index finger and the patient's arm, the tourniquet will be too loose.
7. While securely grasping both sides, use either the left middle finger or the right index finger to tuck a portion of the left side under the right side and pull it into a loop.	The loop allows the tourniquet to be released quickly by a slight tug on the end that forms it.
8. A properly tied tourniquet with the ends pointing toward the shoulder.	The tourniquet ends should point toward the shoulder to prevent them from contaminating the blood collection site.

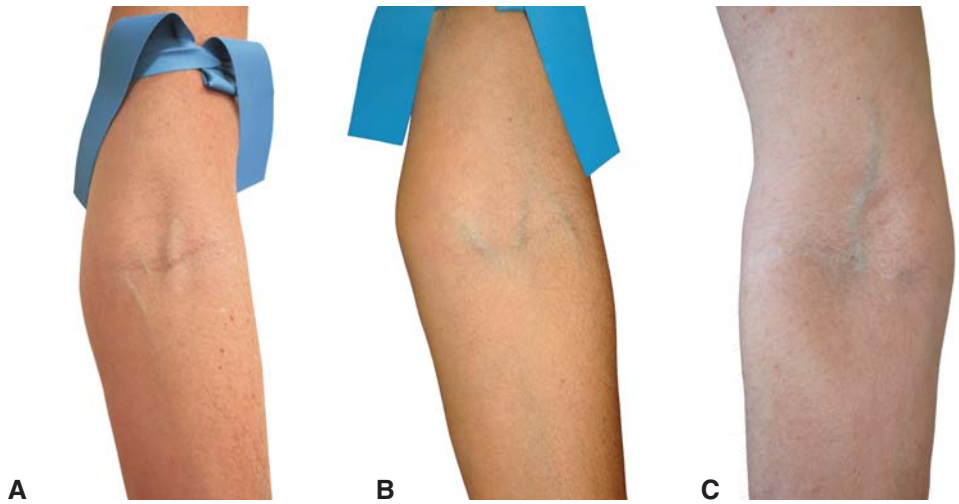


Figure 8-9 Three examples of antecubital vein patterns. **A.** H-pattern. **B.** M-pattern. **C.** Atypical pattern.

CAUTION: According to CLSI Standards, an attempt must have been made to locate the median cubital vein on both arms before considering an alternate vein; because of the possibility of nerve injury and damage to the brachial artery, the basilic vein should not be chosen unless no other vein is more prominent.

Have fun unscrambling patency *and other words with the Scrambled Words activity in the WORKBOOK.*

A patient will generally have the most prominent veins in the dominant arm. It should be examined first unless there is a reason that it should not be used. Some veins may be easily visible (Fig. 8-9); others will have to be located entirely by feel. To locate a vein, **palpate** (examine by touch or feel) the area by pushing down on the skin with the tip of the index finger (Fig. 8-10). In addition to locating veins, palpating helps determine their **patency** (state of being freely open), size and depth, and the direction or the path they follow. Consequently, even visible veins must be palpated to judge their suitability for venipuncture.

When you have found a vein, roll your finger from one side to the other while pressing against it to help judge its size. Trace its path to determine a proper entry point by palpating above and below where you first feel it. Press and release it several times to determine depth and patency. Depth is indicated by the degree of pressure required to feel it. A **patent** (open) vein is turgid (distended from being filled with blood), giving it a bounce or resilience, and

Figure 8-10 A phlebotomist palpating the antecubital area for a vein.

has a tube-like feel. An artery has a pulse and must be avoided. (Do not use your thumb to palpate as it has a pulse that could lead you to think that a vein is an artery.)

CAUTION: To avoid inadvertently puncturing an artery, *never* select a vein that overlies or is close to where you feel a pulse.

Do not select a vein that feels hard and cord-like or lacks resilience, as it is probably sclerosed or thrombosed (see Chapter 9). Such veins roll easily, are hard to penetrate, and may not have adequate blood flow to yield a representative blood sample. Tendons are also hard and lack resilience. Rotating the patient's arm slightly helps to locate veins and differentiate them from other structures. Dimming the lights and using a transilluminator device or halogen flashlight can help locate veins, especially in infants and children. Wiping the site with alcohol often makes surface veins such as hand veins appear more visible. (This step *does not* take the place of cleaning after vein selection.) If no suitable antecubital vein can be found, check the other arm. If no suitable antecubital vein can be found in either arm, check for veins on the back of the hand or wrist.

CAUTION: *Do not* use veins on the underside of the wrist because nerves lie close to the veins in this area and can easily be injured.

If a suitable vein still cannot be found, massage the arm from wrist to elbow to force blood into the area or wrap a warm, wet towel around the arm or hand for a few minutes. Warming the site increases blood flow and makes veins easier to feel. The site should not be manipulated excessively, however, as this may change the composition of blood in the area and cause erroneous test results. In the absence of a suitable vein, a capillary puncture may have to be considered if the test can be performed on capillary blood.

After you have selected a suitable vein, mentally visualize its location if it is not obvious. Making a mental note of the position of the vein in reference to landmarks such as a freckle, mole, hair, skin crease, superficial surface vein, or imperfection makes relocation easier after the delay while the site is cleaned. Do not mark the site with a pen. This contaminates the site and the pen. The pen can become a source of infection transmission if it is used on other patients. An acceptable way to mark the site using an alcohol pad is shown in Figure 8-11. This, of course, is done before the site is cleaned, so the pad must be placed far enough away from the site so it is not disturbed in the cleaning process.

If the tourniquet was applied during vein selection, release it and ask the patient to open the fist. This allows the vein to return to normal and minimizes the effects of stasis from blockage of blood flow on specimen composition.

KEY POINT According to the CLSI, when a tourniquet is used during preliminary vein selection, it should be released and reapplied after 2 minutes.

STEP 7: CLEAN AND AIR-DRY THE SITE

The venipuncture site must be cleaned with an antiseptic prior to venipuncture. Otherwise, microorganisms from the skin could be picked up by the needle and carried into the vein, creating the possibility of infection, or flushed into the collection tube on blood flow, contaminating the specimen. The recommended antiseptic for cleaning a venipuncture site is 70% isopropyl alcohol, which is typically available in sterile, prepackaged pads referred to as alcohol prep pads.

FYI *An antiseptic does* not *sterilize the site; however, it does inhibit microbial growth.*

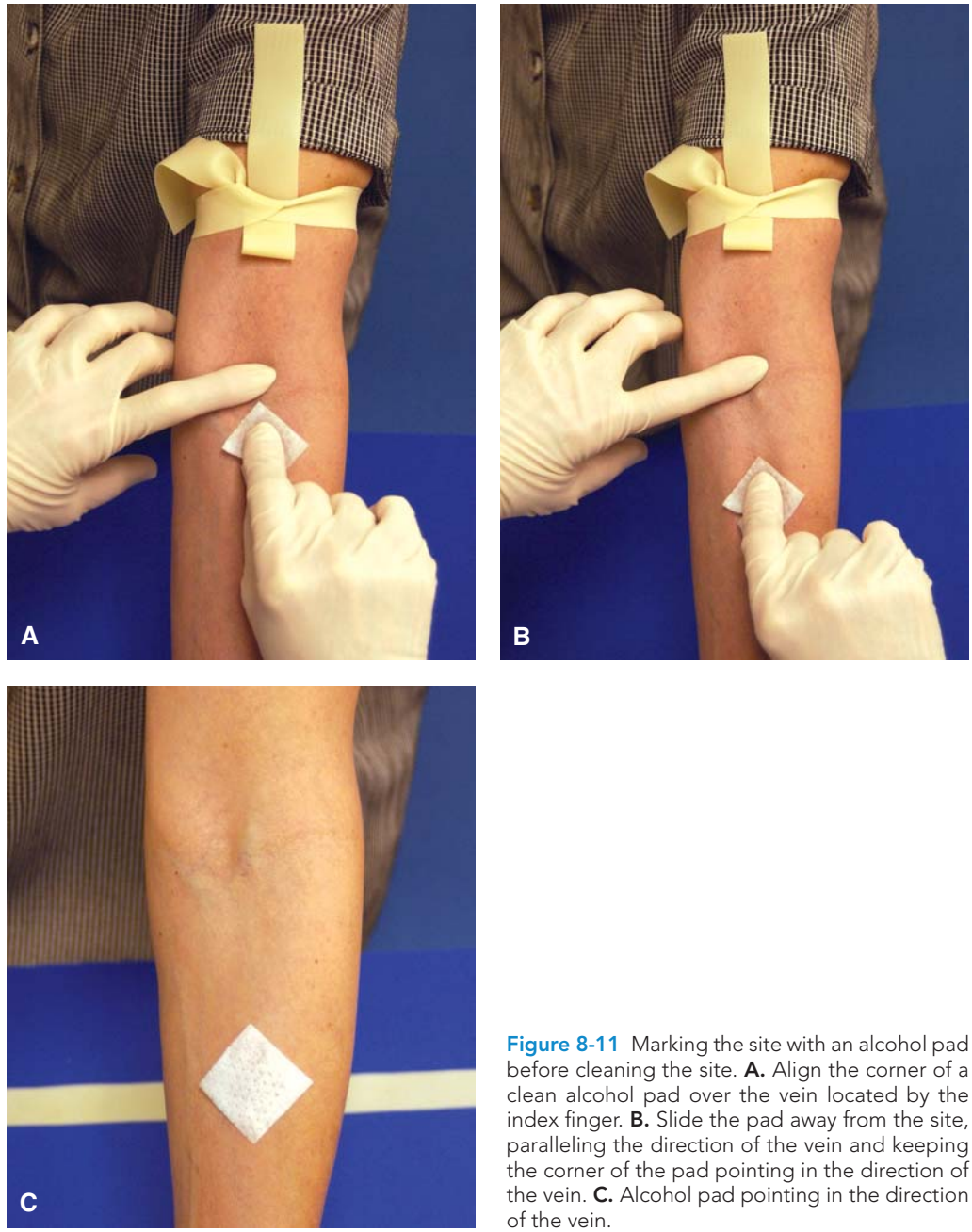


Figure 8-11 Marking the site with an alcohol pad before cleaning the site. **A.** Align the corner of a clean alcohol pad over the vein located by the index finger. **B.** Slide the pad away from the site, paralleling the direction of the vein and keeping the corner of the pad pointing in the direction of the vein. **C.** Alcohol pad pointing in the direction of the vein.

Clean the site with a circular motion, starting at the point where you expect to insert the needle, and moving outward in ever-widening **concentric circles** (circles with a common center) until you have cleaned an area approximately 2 to 3 in. in diameter. Use sufficient pressure to remove surface dirt and debris but do not rub so vigorously that you abrade the skin, especially on infants and elderly patients whose skin is thin and more delicate. If the site is especially dirty, clean it again with another alcohol prep pad. Allow the area to dry naturally for 30 seconds to 1 minute.

KEY POINT The evaporation and drying process helps destroy microbes, prevents specimen hemolysis from alcohol contamination, and avoids a burning sensation when the needle is inserted.

To prevent contamination of the site,

- *Do not* dry the alcohol with unsterile gauze.
- *Do not* fan the site with your hand or blow on it to hasten drying time.
- *Do not* touch the site after cleaning it.

KEY POINT If it is necessary to repalpate the vein after the site has been cleaned, clean it again or decontaminate the gloved finger used to palpate and touch only above or below the expected needle entry point.

STEP 8: PREPARE EQUIPMENT AND PUT ON GLOVES

Assemble the components of the blood-collection system and supplies if you have not already done so. Choose the collection system, needle size, and tube volume according to the age of the patient, size and location of the vein, and amount of blood to be collected. Select tubes according to the tests that have been ordered. Select and attach the needle to the collection device but *do not* remove the **needle sheath** (cap or cover) at this time. Put on a clean pair of gloves if you have not already done so.

CAUTION: Either the needle, tube holder, or syringe selected must have an OSHA-required safety feature to help protect the user from accidental needlesticks.

ETS Equipment Preparation

Select the appropriate ETS tubes. Check the expiration date on each one to make certain that it has not expired. (Discard any tube that is beyond its expiration date.) Tap additive tubes lightly to dislodge any additive that may be adhering to the tube stopper. Inspect the seal of the needle. If it is broken, discard it and select a new one. Twist the needle cover apart to expose the short or back end of the needle, which is covered by a retractable sleeve. Screw this end of the needle into the threaded hub of an ETS tube holder. Place the first tube in the holder and use a slight clockwise twist to push it onto the needle just far enough to secure it and keep it from falling out but not far enough to release the tube vacuum. It is acceptable to delay positioning the tube in the holder until the needle is inserted in the patient's vein.

Preparation of a Winged Infusion Set (Butterfly)

Although they are available in various gauges, a 23-gauge butterfly is most commonly used for small and difficult veins. Butterfly needles are also available in two basic types. One type has a hub that can be attached to a syringe. The second type has a hub with a multisample Luer adapter that can be threaded onto an ETS tube holder. Select the type according to the method you have chosen to collect the specimen. The method chosen (ETS or syringe) typically depends on the size, condition, and location of the vein as well as the skill and personal preference of the user. In some cases a syringe and butterfly are used after a failed attempt at blood collection using a butterfly and ETS holder. For either method, the butterfly needle typically contains the safety feature.

Verify sterility of the butterfly packaging (i.e., package is sealed and intact) before aseptically opening it and removing the butterfly. To help preserve needle sterility (a butterfly needle cover is typically an open-ended tubular sheath), it is a good idea to retain the package so you can put the needle back in it temporarily while retying the tourniquet. Attach the butterfly to the evacuated tube holder or syringe. Butterfly tubing may be coiled somewhat because it was coiled in the package. To help straighten it and keep it from coiling back up, use the thumb and index finger of one hand to grasp the tubing just beyond the point where it attaches to the needle. Gently grasp the tubing a little below this point with the thumb and index finger of the opposite hand and slide these fingers down the full length of the tubing while stretching it slightly. Be extremely careful not to loosen the tubing from the needle at the one end or the hub at the other. Select the appropriate small-volume tubes for the tests ordered. (The vacuum draw of large-volume tubes may collapse the vein or hemolyze the specimen.)

Preparation of Syringe Equipment

Select a syringe and needle size compatible with the size and condition of the patient's veins and the amount of blood to be collected. To comply with OSHA regulations, you must select a needle-locking syringe (e.g., Luer lock) to use for the draw and a syringe transfer device to transfer blood from the syringe to the ETS tubes. Syringes and syringe needles designed for blood collection are normally available in sterile pull-apart packages. The syringe plunger is typically already pulled back slightly. To ensure that the plunger moves freely but still maintain syringe sterility, move the plunger back and forth a few times and advance it to the end of the syringe before opening the sterile package. Open the needle packages in an aseptic manner and securely attach the needle to the syringe. A blood specimen collected in a syringe will have to be transferred to ETS tubes. Small-volume tubes are typically chosen because the amount of blood that can be collected in a syringe is limited. Partially open the package containing the transfer device to make removal easy when it comes time to use it.

Positioning Equipment for Use

Place collection equipment and other supplies, such as gauze and alcohol pads, within easy reach, typically on the same side of the patient's arm as your free hand during venipuncture. Make certain that extra supplies, ETS tubes for example, are within easy reach. If you are using a phlebotomy tray, place it within easy reach.

CAUTION: *Do not* place the phlebotomy tray on a patient's bed or any other place that could be contaminated by it.

STEP 9: REAPPLY TOURNIQUET, UNCAP AND INSPECT NEEDLE

Reapply the tourniquet, being careful not to touch the cleaned area. Be aware that there are a few tests (i.e., lactic acid) that must be collected without using a tourniquet.

Pick up collection equipment with your dominant hand. Both an ETS tube holder and a syringe are held close to the needle hub with the thumb on top and two or three fingers underneath and slightly to the side. Turn your wrist upward slightly so the opening of the tube holder remains accessible. Hold the wing portion of the butterfly between your thumb and index finger or fold the wings upright and grasp them together. Cradle the butterfly tubing and holder or syringe in the palm of your dominant hand or lay it next to the patient's hand.

Remove the needle cover and visually inspect the needle. Although rare, a needle can have obstructions that could impair blood flow or imperfections such as roughness or barbs that could hurt the patient or damage the vein. If any are noted, discard the needle and select a new one.

CAUTION: Once the cap is removed, *do not* let the needle touch anything prior to venipuncture. If it does, remove it and replace it with a new one.

STEP 10: ASK PATIENT TO REMAKE A FIST, ANCHOR VEIN, AND INSERT NEEDLE

At this time the patient is asked to again make a fist. The nondominant hand is used to **anchor** (secure firmly) the vein while the collection equipment is held and the needle inserted using the dominant hand.

Anchoring

To anchor antecubital veins, grasp the patient's arm with your free hand, using your fingers to support the back of the arm just below the elbow. Place your thumb a minimum of 1 to 2 in. below and slightly to the side of the intended venipuncture site and pull the skin toward the wrist (Fig. 8-12). This stretches the skin taut (pulled tight or without slack), anchoring the

Figure 8-12 Proper placement of thumb and fingers in anchoring a vein.

vein and helping to keep it from moving or rolling to the side upon needle entry. (If the vein rolls, the needle may slip beside the vein, not into it.) In addition, a needle passes through taut skin more easily and with less pain. Even so, it is not uncommon for an apprehensive patient to suddenly pull back the arm as the needle is inserted. Because your fingers are wrapped around the arm, the patient is less likely to pull away from your grasp and the needle is more likely to stay in the vein. This is known as the "L" hold technique for anchoring the vein.

CAUTION: For safety reasons, *do not* use a two-finger technique (also called the "C" hold) in which the entry point of the vein is straddled by the index finger above and the thumb below. If the patient abruptly pulls the arm back when the needle is inserted, a reflex reaction could cause the needle to recoil as it comes out of the arm and spring back into your index finger.

One way to anchor a hand vein is to use your free hand to hold the patient's hand just below the knuckles and use your thumb to pull the skin taut over the knuckles while bending the patient's fingers. Another way is to have the patient make a tight fist. Encircle the fist with your fingers and use your thumb to pull the skin over the knuckles.

Needle Insertion

Hold the collection device or butterfly needle in your dominant hand as described in step 9. The bevel of the needle should be facing up. Position the needle above the vein so it is lined up with it and paralleling or following its path. Your body should be positioned directly behind the needle so that you are not trying to insert the needle with your arm or hands at an awkward angle. Warn the patient by saying something like "There is going to be a little poke (or stick) now."

For antecubital site venipunctures, insert the needle into the skin at an angle of 30 degrees or less (Fig. 8-13A), depending on the depth of the vein. (A shallow vein may need an angle closer to 15 degrees, while a deeper vein may require an angle closer to 30 degrees.) Use one smooth, steady forward motion to penetrate first the skin and then the vein. Advancing the needle too slowly prolongs any discomfort. A rapid jab can result in missing the vein or going all the way through it.

When the needle enters the vein, you will feel a slight "give" or decrease in resistance. Some phlebotomists describe this as a "pop," although it may be described as a feeling and not a sound. (It is especially important to recognize the decrease in resistance when using an

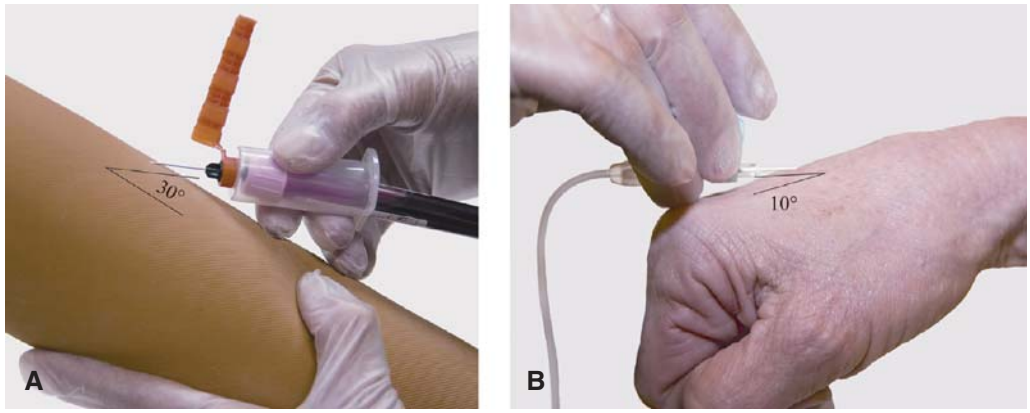


Figure 8-13 **A.** Illustration of a 30-degree angle of needle insertion. **B.** Illustration of a 10-degree angle of needle insertion.

ETS needle and tube holder, because most needles do not provide visual confirmation that the vein has been entered.) When you sense the "pop" or recognize the lessening of resistance signaling that the needle is in the vein, stop advancing it and securely anchor the tube holder or syringe by pressing the back of your fingers or knuckles against the arm. Discontinue anchoring with your thumb and let go of the arm with that hand.

CAUTION: Do not deeply depress the skin by forcefully pushing down on the needle as it is inserted. This causes pain and enlarges the vein opening, increasing the risk of blood leakage at the site.

When using a butterfly needle on a hand vein, insert it into the vein at a shallow angle between 10 and 15 degrees (Fig. 8-13B), being careful not to push it through the back wall of the vein. You may need to slightly increase the angle of the needle bevel at first to get it to slip into the vein. A "flash" or small amount of blood will usually appear in the tubing when the needle is in the vein. "Seat" the needle by slightly threading it within the lumen (central area of the vein). This helps keep the needle from twisting back out of the vein if you let go of it. If the needle does start to come out of the vein, secure it with the thumb of the opposite hand.

At this point, some phlebotomists switch to holding the blood collection device in their nondominant hand so that tube changes can be made with the dominant hand. This is accomplished by gently slipping the fingers of the opposite hand under the holder and placing the thumb atop the holder as the other hand lets go. Many phlebotomists, particularly those who are left-handed, do not change hands but continue to steady the holder in the same hand and change tubes with the opposite one. Whatever the method, it is important to hold the blood-collection device steady so there is minimal needle movement.

KEY POINT If the tube holder or syringe is not securely anchored, the needle can push through the back of the vein or pull out of the vein when tubes are changed or the syringe is filled.

STEP 11: ESTABLISH BLOOD FLOW, RELEASE TOURNIQUET, AND ASK PATIENT TO OPEN FIST

To establish blood flow when using the ETS system, the collection tube must be advanced into the tube holder until the stopper is completely penetrated by the needle. This is accomplished most efficiently by pushing the tube with your thumb while your index and middle fingers straddle and grasp the flanges of the tube holder (Fig. 8-14), pulling back on them slightly to prevent forward motion of the tube holder. If the vein has been successfully entered, blood will begin to flow into the tube. If you are using a syringe, a flash of blood in the syringe hub indicates that the vein has been successfully entered. Blood flow into the syringe is achieved by slowly pulling back on the plunger with your free hand.

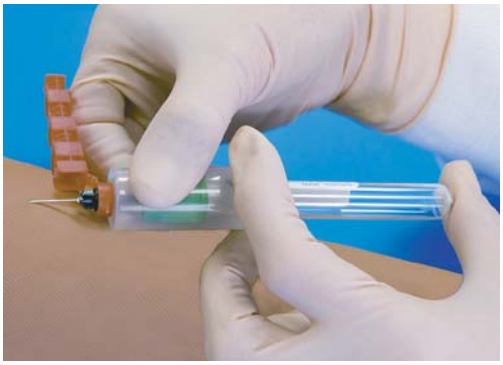


Figure 8-14 Proper placement of fingers and thumb in advancing a tube in an ETS holder.

Release the tourniquet and ask the patient to release the fist as soon as blood flows freely into the first ETS tube or is established in the syringe. Blood should continue to flow until multiple tubes have been collected or the syringe filled. On elderly patients and others with fragile veins that might collapse or in other difficult-draw situations where release of the tourniquet might cause blood flow to stop, the tourniquet is sometimes left on until the last tube is filled. *Do not*, however, leave the tourniquet on for more than 1 minute, or test results may be affected.

Typically, several tubes can be filled in less than a minute.

STEP 12: FILL, REMOVE, AND MIX TUBES IN ORDER OF DRAW OR FILL SYRINGE

Following the order of draw, place ETS tubes in the holder and advance them onto the needle.

ETS tubes fill automatically until the tube vacuum is exhausted or lost. A syringe is filled manually by slowly and steadily pulling back on the plunger until the barrel is filled to the appropriate level.

KEY POINT According to the CLSI, if a coagulation tube is the first tube to be drawn when using a butterfly, a discard tube should be drawn first to fill the tubing dead space and ensure a correct blood-to-anticoagulant ratio when the coagulation tube is filled. The discard tube can be a nonadditive tube or another coagulation tube and does not have to be filled completely.

Maintain needle position while the tubes or syringe are filling. Try not to pull up, press down, or move the needle back and forth or sideways in the vein. These actions can be painful to the patient and enlarge the hole in the vein, resulting in leakage of blood and hematoma formation.

Keep the arm in a downward position so that blood fills ETS tubes from the bottom up and does not contact the needle in the tube holder. Under certain conditions, **reflux** (flow of blood from the tube back into the vein) and a possible adverse patient reaction from additives can occur if tube blood is in contract with the needle. Additive-containing blood on or in the needle could also contaminate subsequent tubes when multiple tubes are collected. Do not change position of the tube or allow back-and-forth movement of the blood in the tube, as this too can cause reflux. A downward arm position also helps maintain blood flow.

KEY POINT If the stopper end of the tube fills first, blood in the tube is in contact with the needle and reflux can occur if there is a change in pressure in the patient's vein.

Figure 8-15 A phlebotomist mixing a heparin tube.

See how well you know the key points and cautions in this chapter with WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 8-1.

To ensure a proper ratio of blood to additive, allow ETS tubes to fill until the normal vacuum is exhausted and blood ceases to flow. Tubes do not fill completely to the top. When blood flow stops, remove the tube, using a reverse twist and pulling motion while bracing the thumb or index finger against the flange of the holder. The rubber sleeve will cover the needle and prevent leakage of blood into the tube holder. If the tube contains an additive, mix it by gently inverting it three to eight times (depending upon the type of additive and manufacturer's recommendations) as soon as it is removed from the tube holder and before putting it down (Fig. 8-15). Lack of, delayed, or inadequate mixing can lead to clot formation and necessitate recollection of the specimen. Nonadditive tubes do not require mixing.

CAUTION: *Do not* shake or vigorously mix blood specimens, as this can cause hemolysis (breakage of red blood cells and release of hemoglobin into the serum or plasma).

If other ETS tubes are to be drawn, place them in the holder, use a clockwise twist to engage them with the needle, and push them the rest of the way onto the needle until blood flow is established. Steady the tube holder so that the needle does not pull out of or penetrate through the vein as tubes are placed and removed. If the needle backs out of the skin even slightly, the vacuum of the tube will be lost (evidenced by a hissing sound) and the tube will stop filling. Unless the tube already has an adequate amount of blood for the test, a new one will have to be filled. Remember to follow the proper order of draw (see Chapter 7).

When the last ETS tube has been filled, remove it from the holder and mix it, if applicable, before removing the needle from the arm. If the tube is still engaged when the needle is removed from the arm, the needle may drip blood and cause needless contamination.

KEY POINT The practice of releasing the tube from the needle but leaving it in the holder during needle removal is awkward and increases the chance of needlesticks. It also delays proper mixing of tube contents, which can lead to microclot formation in anticoagulant tubes.

If the tourniquet is still on, release it before removing the needle. If the needle is removed with the tourniquet in place, blood may run down the arm and alarm the patient.

STEP 13: PLACE GAUZE, REMOVE NEEDLE, ACTIVATE SAFETY FEATURE, AND APPLY PRESSURE

After the last tube has been removed from the holder or an adequate amount of blood has been collected (if you are using a syringe), fold a clean gauze square into fourths and place it directly over the site where the needle enters the skin. Hold the gauze lightly in place but do not press down on it until the needle is removed.

CAUTION: *Do not* press down on the gauze while the needle is in the vein. It puts pressure on the needle during removal, causing pain, and the needle may slit the vein and skin as it is withdrawn.

If the needle safety feature is designed to function within the vein, activate it according to the manufacturer's instructions. Withdraw the needle from the vein in one smooth motion. If the needle safety feature operates outside the vein, activate it immediately while simultaneously applying pressure to the site with your free hand. Apply pressure to the site for 3 to 5 minutes or until the bleeding stops. Failure to apply pressure or applying inadequate pressure can result in leakage of blood and hematoma formation. It is acceptable to have the patient hold pressure while you proceed to label tubes (or fill them if a syringe was used) provided that the patient is fully alert and able to so. *Do not* ask the patient to bend the arm up. The arm should be kept extended or even raised.

KEY POINT Studies show that folding the arm back at the elbow to hold pressure or keep the gauze in place after a blood draw actually increases the chance of bruising by keeping the wound open (especially if it is to the side of the arm) or disrupting the platelet plug when the arm is lowered.

If the sharps container has been moved out of reach (as sometimes happens in emergencies when others are working on the patient at the same time) and the patient is not able to hold pressure, it is generally acceptable to bend the patient's arm up temporarily while locating the sharps container and disposing of the collection device.

STEP 14: DISCARD COLLECTION UNIT, SYRINGE NEEDLE, OR TRANSFER DEVICE

CAUTION: OSHA regulations prohibit cutting, bending, breaking, or recapping blood collection needles or removing them from tube holders after use.

A needle and tube holder must be promptly discarded in a sharps container as a single unit. A syringe safety needle, however, may be removed and discarded separately so that the syringe can be attached to a syringe transfer device and tubes filled at this point. A transfer device is similar to an ETS holder but has a permanently attached needle inside. After the device is attached to the syringe, an ETS tube is placed inside it and advanced onto the needle until blood flows into the tube. Additional tubes can be filled as long as there is enough blood left in the syringe. When the transfer is complete, the syringe and transfer device are discarded in a sharps container as a single unit.

STEP 15: LABEL TUBES

View the Specimen Labeling and Venipuncture Follow-up Procedures video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Tubes must be labeled in the presence of the patient immediately after blood collection, never before, and the label must be permanently attached to the tube before leaving an inpatient's bedside or dismissing an outpatient.

If you are using a preprinted computer or bar-code label, you will need to write the date, time, your initials, and other pertinent information on the label immediately before or after attaching it to the tube. If you do not have a preprinted label, you will have to hand print the required information on the tube yourself. Any handwritten labeling must be done with a permanent-ink pen. Labels should include the following information as a minimum:

- Patient's first and last names
- Patient's identification number (inpatient) or date of birth (outpatient)
- Date and time of collection
- Phlebotomist's initials
- Pertinent additional information, such as "fasting"

Before leaving an inpatient, compare the information on each labeled tube with the patient's ID band (Fig. 8-16) and the requisition. Some facilities have the phlebotomist show the

Figure 8-16 A phlebotomist comparing labeled tube with patient's ID band.

labeled tube to the patient and ask the patient to verify that the correct name is on the tube. Both inpatient and outpatient tubes must then be placed upright in a biohazard specimen bag or other suitable container for transport to the laboratory.

STEP 16: OBSERVE SPECIAL HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

Follow applicable special handling requirements. Place specimens that must be cooled (e.g., ammonia) in crushed ice slurry. Put specimens that must be kept at body temperature (e.g., cold agglutinin) in a 37°C heat block or other suitable warming device. Wrap specimens that require protection from light (e.g., bilirubin) in aluminum foil or other light-blocking material or place them in a light-blocking container.

STEP 17: CHECK PATIENT'S ARM AND APPLY BANDAGE

Examine the venipuncture site to determine if bleeding has stopped. (Bleeding from the vein can continue even though it has stopped at the surface of the skin). If you are certain it has stopped, apply an adhesive bandage (or tape and folded gauze square) over the site. If the patient is allergic to adhesive bandages, apply paper tape over a clean, folded gauze square. If the patient has sensitive skin or is allergic to adhesives, place a folded gauze square over the site and wrap gauze around it, fastening the gauze with paper tape, or wrap the site with a self-adhering gauze-like material such as Coban. Instruct the patient to leave the bandage on for a minimum of 15 minutes, after which it should be removed to avoid irritation. Instruct an outpatient not to carry a purse or other heavy object or lift heavy objects with that arm for a minimum of 1 hour.

CAUTION: If bleeding has not stopped, the phlebotomist must apply pressure until it does. If the patient continues to bleed beyond 5 minutes, the appropriate personnel such as the patient's physician or nurse should be notified.

STEP 18: DISPOSE OF CONTAMINATED MATERIALS

Dispose of contaminated materials in the proper biohazard containers or according to facility protocol; place other materials such as needle caps and wrappers in the trash receptacle. Make sure that you have your tourniquet and that other equipment is returned to the proper place.

STEP 19: THANK PATIENT, REMOVE GLOVES, AND SANITIZE HANDS

Thank the patient for his or her cooperation. This is courteous and lets the patient know that the procedure is complete. Remove gloves aseptically as described in Chapter 3, discard them in the manner required by your institution, and sanitize your hands before leaving the area.

Don't forget that questions in the EXAM REVIEW can help you see how well you have learned venipuncture procedures.

STEP 20: TRANSPORT SPECIMEN TO THE LAB

Transport specimens to the laboratory or designated pickup site in a timely fashion. Prompt delivery to the laboratory protects specimen integrity and is typically achieved by personal delivery, transportation through a pneumatic tube system, or arranged pickup by a courier service. The phlebotomist is typically responsible for verifying and documenting collection by computer entry or manual entry in a logbook.

Routine ETS Venipuncture

Most venipunctures are routine and can be performed on antecubital veins using an ETS system. This system is preferred because it is direct, efficient, relatively safe for the patient and the blood drawer, and allows multiple tubes to be easily collected. Routine ETS venipuncture is illustrated in Procedure 8-2.

View the Collecting a Blood Specimen by Venipuncture Using the Evacuated Tube System Video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e. For tips on proper ergonomics for this technique, watch the video Poor and Good Workplace Ergonomics for Phlebotomy, found at the same location.

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture

PURPOSE: To obtain a blood specimen for patient diagnostic or monitoring purposes from an antecubital vein using the evacuated tube system (ETS)

EQUIPMENT: Tourniquet; gloves; antiseptic prep pad; ETS needle*, tube holder* and tubes; gauze pads; sharps container; permanent ink pen; bandage

*Either the needle or tube holder must have a safety feature to prevent needlesticks.

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Review and accession test request.	A test request is reviewed for completeness, date and time of collection, status, and priority. The accession process records the request and assigns it a unique number used to identify the specimen and related processes and paperwork.
2. Approach, identify, and prepare patient.	The right approach for a successful patient encounter includes a professional bedside manner, being organized and efficient, and looking for signs that convey important inpatient information or infection-control precautions. Correct ID is vital to patient safety and meaningful test results. Name, DOB, and MR number must be verified and matched to the test order and inpatient's ID band.Preparing the patient by explaining procedures and addressing inquiries helps reduce patient anxiety.

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

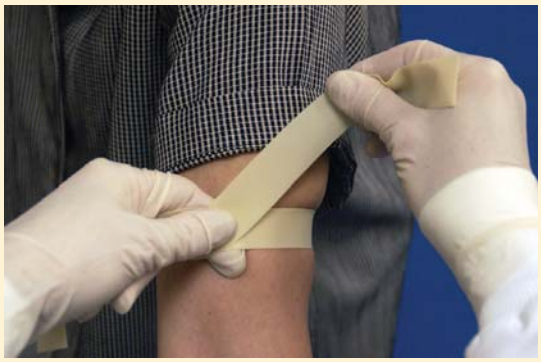
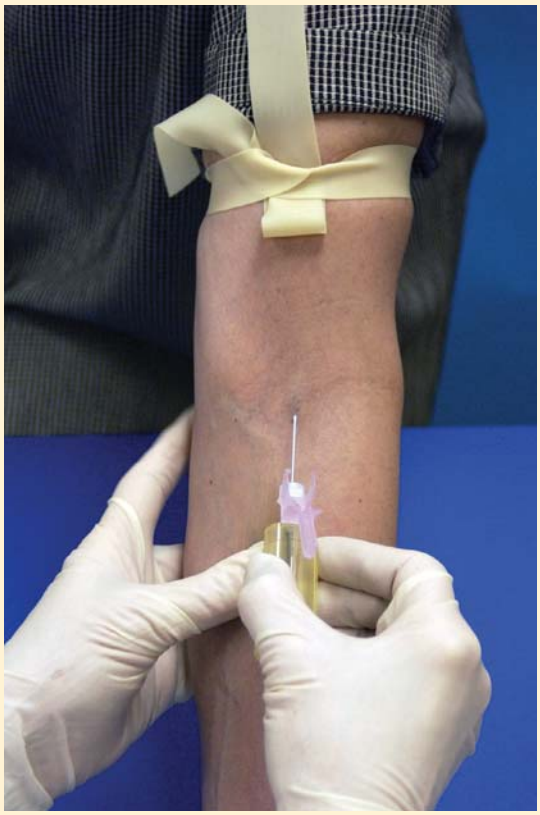
Step	Explanation/Rationale
3. Verify diet restrictions and latex sensitivity. 	Test results can be meaningless or misinterpreted and patient care compromised if diet requirements have not been met. In such cases, consult the physician or nurse before proceeding. Exposure to latex can trigger a life-threatening reaction in those allergic to it, so it is vital that no latex items be used on a latex-sensitive patient or even brought into the room.
4. Sanitize hands. 	Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in infection control by protecting the phlebotomist, patient, and others from contamination. Gloves are sometimes put on at this point. Follow facility protocol.
5. Position patient, apply tourniquet, and ask patient to make a fist. 	Proper positioning is important to patient comfort and venipuncture success. Place the patient's arm downward in a straight line from shoulder to wrist to aid in vein selection and avoid reflux as tubes are filled. A tourniquet placed 3–4 in. above the antecubital area enlarges veins and makes them easier to see, feel, and enter with a needle. A clenched fist makes the veins easier to see and feel and helps keep them from rolling.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
6. Select vein, release tourniquet, ask patient to open fist.	Select a large, well-anchored vein. The median cubital is the first choice, followed by the cephalic. The basilic should not be chosen unless no other vein is more prominent in either arm. Releasing the tourniquet and opening the fist helps prevent hemoconcentration.
7. Clean and air-dry site.	Cleaning the site with an antiseptic such as 70% isopropyl alcohol helps avoid contaminating the specimen or patient with skin-surface bacteria picked up by the needle during venipuncture. Letting the site dry naturally permits maximum antiseptic action, prevents contamination caused by wiping, and avoids stinging on needle entry and specimen hemolysis from residual alcohol.
8. Prepare equipment and put on gloves.	Selecting appropriate equipment for the size, condition, and location of the vein is easier after vein selection. Preparing it while the site is drying saves time. Attach a needle to an ETS holder. Put the first tube in the holder now (see step 10) or wait until after needle entry. According to the OSHA BBP standard, gloves must be worn during phlebotomy procedures.

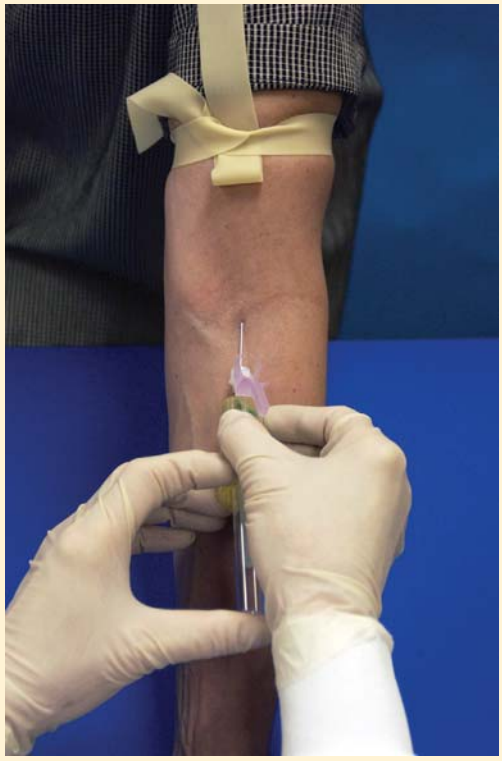
PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
9. Reapply tourniquet, uncap and inspect needle. 	The tourniquet aids needle entry. Pick up the tube holder with your dominant hand, placing your thumb on top near the needle end and fingers underneath. Uncap and inspect the needle for defects and discard it if flawed.
10. Ask patient to remake a fist, anchor vein, and insert needle. 	The fist aids needle entry. Anchoring stretches the skin so the needle enters easily and with less pain, and keeps the vein from rolling. Anchor by grasping the arm just below the elbow, supporting the back of it with your fingers. Place your thumb 1–2 in. below and slightly beside the vein and pull the skin toward the wrist. Warn the patient. Line the needle up with the vein and insert it into the skin using a smooth forward motion. Stop when you feel a decrease in resistance, often described as a "pop," and press your fingers into the arm to anchor the holder.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
11. Establish blood flow, release tourniquet, ask patient to open fist.	Blood will not flow until the needle pierces the tube stopper. Place a tube in the holder and push it part way onto the needle with a clockwise twist. Grasp the holder's flanges with your middle and index fingers, pulling back slightly to keep the holder from moving, and push the tube onto the needle with your thumb. Releasing the tourniquet and opening the fist allows blood flow to normalize (see step 6). According to CLSI standards, the tourniquet should be released as soon as possible after blood begins to flow and should not be left on longer than 1 minute.



PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
12. Fill, remove, and mix tubes in order of draw.	Fill additive tubes until the vacuum is exhausted to ensure correct blood-to-additive ratio and mix them immediately upon removal from the holder using 3 to 8 gentle inversions (depending on type and manufacturer) to prevent clot formation. Follow the CLSI order of draw to prevent additive carryover between tubes.
13. Place gauze, remove needle, activate safety feature, and apply pressure.	A clean, folded gauze square is placed over the site so pressure can be applied immediately after needle removal. Remove the needle in one smooth motion without lifting up or pressing down on it. Immediately apply pressure to the site with your free hand while simultaneously activating the needle safety feature with the other to prevent the chance of a needlestick.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
14. Discard collection unit. 	According to OSHA, the needle and the tube holder must go into the sharps container as a unit because removing a needle from the holder exposes the user to sharps injury.
15. Label tubes. 	To avoid mislabeling errors, label tubes before leaving the bedside or dismissing the patient.

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
16. Observe special handling instructions.	For accurate results, some specimens require special handling such as cooling in crushed ice (e.g., ammonia), transportation at body temperature (e.g., cold agglutinin), or protection from light (e.g., bilirubin).
17. Check patient's arm and apply bandage.	The patient's arm must be examined to verify that bleeding has stopped. Just because bleeding has stopped on the skin surface does not mean that the site has stopped bleeding from the vein. The site must be checked for signs of bleeding beneath the skin. If bleeding persists beyond 5 minutes, notify the patient's nurse or physician. If bleeding has stopped, apply a bandage and advise the patient to keep it in place for at least 15 minutes.
18. Dispose of used and contaminated materials.	Materials such as needle caps and wrappers are normally discarded in the regular trash. Some facilities require that contaminated items such as blood-soaked gauze be discarded in biohazard containers.
19. Thank patient, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Thanking the patient is courteous and professional. Gloves must be removed in an aseptic manner and hands washed or decontaminated with hand sanitizer as an infection-control precaution.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-2 Routine ETS Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
20. Transport specimen to the lab.	Prompt delivery to the lab protects specimen integrity and is typically achieved by personal delivery, transportation via a pneumatic tube system, or by a courier service.

Butterfly Procedure

A phlebotomist may elect to use a winged infusion set (butterfly) in attempting to draw blood from antecubital veins of infants and small children or from difficult adult veins, such as small antecubital veins or wrist and hand veins. A butterfly needle (i.e., 23 gauge) is appropriate in these situations because it is less likely to collapse or "blow" (rupture) the vein. A butterfly can be used with an ETS tube holder or a syringe (see "Syringe Venipuncture Procedure"). Small-volume tubes should be chosen when a butterfly is used with an ETS holder because the vacuum of large tubes may collapse the vein or hemolyze the specimen. Venipuncture of a hand vein using a butterfly and ETS holder is illustrated in Procedure 8-3.

View the video of the Blood Collection from a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder procedure at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

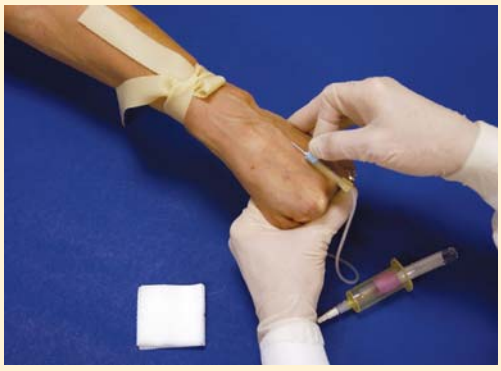
PROCEDURE 8-3 Venipuncture of a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder

PURPOSE: To obtain a blood specimen for patient diagnostic or monitoring purposes from a hand vein using a butterfly and ETS holder

EQUIPMENT: Tourniquet, gloves, antiseptic prep pad, butterfly needle with safety feature, ETS tube holder and tubes, gauze pads, sharps container, permanent ink pen, bandage

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1–4. (Same as routine ETS venipuncture.)	See Procedure 8-2: steps 1–4.
5. Position hand, apply tourniquet, ask patient to close the hand.	Proper arm position is important to the comfort of the patient and the success of venipuncture. Support the hand on the bed or armrest. Have the patient bend the fingers slightly or make a fist. A tourniquet is necessary to increase venous filling and aid in vein selection. Apply it proximal to the wrist bone. A closed hand or clenched fist sometimes makes the veins easier to see and feel.

PROCEDURE 8-3 Venipuncture of a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
6. Select vein, release tourniquet, ask patient to relax hand.	Select a vein that has bounce or resilience and can be easily anchored. Wiping the hand with alcohol sometimes makes the veins more visible. Finding a suitable vein can take a while. Releasing the tourniquet and opening the fist allows blood flow to return to normal and minimizes effects of hemoconcentration.
7. Clean and air-dry site.	Same as routine ETS venipuncture (see Procedure 8-2: step 7).
8. Prepare equipment and put on gloves.	It is easier to select appropriate equipment after the vein has been chosen. Preparing it while the site is drying saves time. Attach the butterfly to an ETS holder. Grasp the tubing near the needle end and run your fingers down its length, stretching it slightly to help keep it from coiling back up. Position the first tube in the holder now or wait until after needle entry. According to the OSHA BBP standard, gloves must be worn during phlebotomy procedures.
9. Reapply tourniquet, uncap and inspect needle.	The tourniquet aids needle entry. Hold the wing portion of the butterfly between your thumb and index finger or fold the wings upright and grasp them together. Cradle the tubing and holder in the palm of your dominant hand or lay it next to the patient's hand. Uncap and inspect the needle for defects and discard it if flawed.
10. Anchor vein and insert needle. 	Anchoring stretches the skin so the needle enters easily and with less pain, and it keeps the vein from rolling. To anchor, use your nondominant hand to hold the patient's hand just below the knuckles and pull the skin taut over the knuckles with your thumb while bending the patient's fingers. Another way is to have the patient make a tight fist, encircle the fist with your fingers, and use your thumb to pull the skin over the knuckles. Insert the needle into the vein at a shallow angle between 10 and 15 degrees. A "flash" or small amount of blood will appear in the tubing when the needle is in the vein. "Seat" the needle by slightly threading it within the lumen of the vein to keep it from twisting back out of the vein if you let go of it.
11. Establish blood flow and release tourniquet. 	The flash of blood in the tubing indicates vein entry. Blood will not flow until the needle pierces a tube stopper. Place a tube in the holder and push it part way onto the needle with a clockwise twist. Grasp the holder flanges with your middle and index fingers, pulling back slightly to keep the holder from moving, and push the tube onto the needle with your thumb. Releasing the tourniquet allows blood flow to normalize (see step 6).

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-3 Venipuncture of a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
12. Fill, remove, and mix tubes in order of draw.	Maintain tubing and holder below the site, and positioned so that the tubes fill from the bottom up to prevent reflux. Fill additive tubes until the vacuum is exhausted to ensure the correct blood-to-additive ratio and mix them immediately upon removal from the holder, using 3 to 8 gentle inversions (depending on type and manufacturer) to prevent clot formation. Follow the CLSI order of draw to prevent additive carryover between tubes. If a coagulation tube is the first or only tube collected, draw a discard tube first to remove air in the tubing and assure proper filling of the coagulation tube
13. Place gauze, remove needle, activate safety device, and apply pressure.	A clean, folded gauze square is placed over the site so pressure can be applied immediately after needle removal. Remove the needle in one smooth motion without lifting it up or pressing down on it. Immediately apply pressure to the site with your free hand while simultaneously activating the needle safety device with the other to prevent the chance of a needlestick.
14. Discard collection unit.	According to OSHA, the needle and tube holder must go into the sharps container as a unit because removing a needle from the holder exposes the user to sharps injury.
15–20. (Same as routine ETS venipuncture.)	See Procedure 8-2: steps 15–20

Syringe Venipuncture Procedure

The preferred method of obtaining venipuncture specimens is the evacuated tube method. In fact, according to CLSI standard H3-A5, blood collection with a needle and syringe should be avoided for safety reasons. Even so, a needle or butterfly and syringe are sometimes used when the patient has extremely small, fragile, or weak veins. The vacuum pressure of an evacuated tube may be too great for such veins and cause them to collapse easily. This is often the case with elderly patients and newborn infants. When a syringe is used, the amount of pressure can be reduced somewhat over that of a tube by pulling the plunger back slowly. If the syringe fills too slowly, however, there is the possibility that the specimen will begin to clot either before enough blood is collected or before it can be transferred to the appropriate tubes. A special syringe transfer device is required to safely transfer blood from the syringe into the ETS tubes. Venipuncture with a needle and syringe is illustrated in Procedure 8-4. Steps to follow when using a transfer device to fill tubes with blood from a syringe are shown in Procedure 8–5.

Procedure for Inability to Collect Specimen

If you are unable to obtain a specimen on the first try, evaluate the problem and try again below the first site, on the opposite arm, or on a hand or wrist vein. If the patient's veins are small or fragile, it may be necessary to use a butterfly or syringe on the second attempt.

View the video of the procedure for Collecting Blood from an Antecubital Vein Using a Needle and Syringe at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 8-4 Needle-and-Syringe Venipuncture

PURPOSE: To obtain a blood specimen for patient diagnostic or monitoring purposes from an antecubital vein using a needle and syringe.

EQUIPMENT: Tourniquet, gloves, antiseptic prep pad, syringe needle,* syringe,* ETS tubes, gauze pads, sharps container, permanent ink pen, bandage

*Either the needle or syringe must have a safety feature to prevent needlesticks.

Step	Rationale/Explanation
1–7. (Same as routine ETS venipuncture.)	See Procedure 8-2: steps 1–7.
8. Prepare equipment and put on gloves.	It is easier to select appropriate equipment after the vein has been chosen. Preparing it while the site is drying saves time. Select the syringe needle according to the size and location of the vein and select the syringe and tube size according to the volume of blood required for the tests. Attach the needle to the syringe but do not remove the cap at this time. Hold the syringe as you would an ETS tube holder. According to OSHA's BBP standard, gloves must be worn during phlebotomy procedures.
9. Reapply tourniquet, uncap and inspect needle.	The tourniquet aids in venipuncture. Hold the syringe in your dominant hand as you would an ETS holder. Place your thumb on top near the needle end and fingers underneath. Uncap and inspect the needle for defects and discard it if flawed. Although it is rare, a needle can have defects.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-4 Needle-and-Syringe Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
10. Ask patient to make a fist, anchor vein, and insert needle. 	The fist aids needle entry. Anchoring stretches the skin so the needle enters easily and with less pain and keeps the vein from rolling. Anchor by grasping the arm just below the elbow, supporting the back of it with your fingers. Place your thumb 1–2 in. below and slightly beside the vein and pull the skin toward the wrist. Warn the patient. Line the needle up with the vein and insert it into the skin using a smooth forward motion. Stop when you feel a decrease in resistance, often described as a "pop," and press your fingers into the arm to anchor the holder.
11. Establish blood flow, release tourniquet, ask patient to open fist. 	Establishment of blood flow is normally indicated by blood in the hub of the syringe. In some cases blood will not flow until the syringe plunger is pulled back. Releasing the tourniquet and opening the fist allows blood flow to return to normal and helps prevent hemoconcentration. According to CLSI Standard H3-A5, the tourniquet should be released as soon as possible after blood begins to flow and should not be left on longer than 1 minute.
12. Fill syringe.	Venous blood will not automatically flow into a syringe. It must be filled by slowly pulling back on the plunger with your free hand. Steady the syringe as you would an ETS holder during routine venipuncture.

PROCEDURE 8-4 Needle-and-Syringe Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
13. Place gauze, withdraw needle, activate safety device, apply pressure.	A clean, folded gauze square is placed over the site so pressure can be applied immediately after needle removal. Remove the needle without lifting it up or pressing down on it. Immediately apply pressure to the site with your free hand and simultaneously activate the needle safety device with the other.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-4 Needle-and-Syringe Venipuncture (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
14. Discard needle, fill tubes, discard syringe and transfer device.	The needle must be removed and discarded in the sharps container so that a transfer device for filling the tubes can be attached to the syringe. A transfer device greatly reduces the chance of accidental needlesticks and confines any aerosol or spraying that may be generated as the tube is removed. An ETS tube is placed in the transfer device in the order of draw and pushed onto the internal needle until the stopper is pierced. Blood from the syringe is then safely drawn into the tube. Several tubes can be filled as long as there is enough blood in the syringe. After use, the syringe and transfer device unit is discarded in the sharps container.
15–20. (Same as routine ETS venipuncture.)	See Procedure 8-2, steps 15–20.

View the video Transferring Blood from a Syringe into ETS Tubes at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 8-5 Using a Syringe Transfer Device

PURPOSE: To safely transfer blood from a syringe into ETS tubes

EQUIPMENT: Syringe transfer device

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Remove the needle from the syringe and discard it in a sharps container.	The needle must be removed to attach the transfer device.
2. Attach the syringe hub to the transfer device hub, rotating it to ensure secure attachment.	Secure attachment is necessary to prevent blood leakage during transfer.

PROCEDURE 8-5 Using a Syringe Transfer Device (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
3. Hold the syringe vertically with the tip down and the transfer device at the bottom.	This ensures vertical placement of tubes to prevent additive carryover.
4. Place an ETS tube in the barrel of the transfer device and push it all the way to the end.	The device has an internal needle that will puncture the stopper and allow blood to flow into the tube.
5. Follow the order of draw if multiple tubes are to be filled.	The order of draw is designed to prevent additive carryover between tubes.
6. Keep the tubes and transfer device vertical.	This ensures that tubes fill from bottom to top, preventing additive contact with the needle and cross-contamination of subsequent tubes.
7. Let tubes fill using the vacuum draw of the tube. Do not push on the syringe plunger.	Forcing blood into a tube by pushing the plunger can hemolyze the specimen or cause the tube stopper to pop off, splashing tube contents.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 8-5 Using a Syringe Transfer Device (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
8. If you must underfill a tube, hold back the plunger to stop blood flow before removing it.	Tubes quickly fill until the vacuum is gone. Holding back the plunger stops the tube from filling
9. Mix additive tubes as soon as they are removed.	Additive tubes must be mixed immediately for proper function, including preventing clot formation in anticoagulant tubes.
10. When finished, discard the syringe and transfer device unit in a sharps container.	Removing the transfer device from the syringe would expose the user to blood in the hubs of both units. The transfer device must go into the sharps container because of its internal needle.

If the second attempt is unsuccessful, ask another phlebotomist to take over. Unsuccessful venipuncture attempts are frustrating to the patient and the phlebotomist. Should the second phlebotomist be unsuccessful after two attempts, it is a good idea to give the patient a rest if the request is not stat or timed and try again at a later time.

CAUTION: According to CLSI, arterial puncture should not be used as an alternative to venipuncture on difficult veins. If it appears to be the only choice, the patient's physician should be consulted first.

There are times when a phlebotomist is not able to collect a specimen from a patient even before attempting venipuncture. Occasionally, a patient will refuse to have blood drawn. Other times, the patient may be unavailable because he or she has gone to surgery or for another test, as in radiology. Whatever the reason, if the specimen cannot be obtained, notify the patient's nurse or physician. You may be required to fill out a form stating that the specimen was not obtained and the reason why. The original form is placed in the patient's chart and the laboratory retains a copy. The following are the most common and generally accepted reasons for inability to obtain a specimen:

- Phlebotomist attempted but was unable to draw blood.
- Patient refused to have blood drawn.
- Patient was unavailable.

Pediatric Venipuncture

Collecting blood by venipuncture from infants and children may be necessary for tests that require large amounts of blood (i.e., cross-matching and blood cultures) and tests that cannot normally be performed by skin puncture (i.e., ammonia levels and most coagulation studies). Venipuncture in children under the age of 2 should be limited to superficial veins and not deep, hard-to-find veins. Normally, the most accessible veins of infants and toddlers are the veins of the antecubital fossa and forearm. Other potential venipuncture sites include the medial wrist, the dorsum of the foot, the scalp, and the medial ankle. Venipuncture of these sites, however, requires special training and the permission of the patient's physician.

CHALLENGES

Capillary collection is normally recommended for pediatric patients, especially newborns and infants up to 12 months, because their veins are small and not well developed and there is a considerable risk of permanent damage. There are, however, times when capillary collection

is not feasible or possible owing to type or volume requirements of tests ordered; in such instances a venipuncture is necessary. Performing venipuncture on pediatric patients presents special challenges and requires the expertise and skill of an experienced phlebotomist. In addition, every attempt should be made to collect the minimum amount of blood required for testing, because infants and young children have much smaller blood volumes than older children and adults. Removal of large quantities of blood at once or even small quantities on a regular basis, as is often the case when an infant or child is in intensive care, can lead to anemia. Removing more than 10% of an infant's blood volume at one time can lead to shock and cardiac arrest. Consequently, most facilities have limits on the amount of blood that can be removed per draw and for various time periods from 24 hours up to a month. For example, many facilities do not allow more than 3% of a child's blood volume to be collected at any one time and allow no more than 10% in an entire month.

The CLSI recommends that procedures be in place to monitor amounts of blood drawn from pediatric, geriatric, and other vulnerable patients to avoid phlebotomy-induced anemia.

No one would intentionally put a patient's life at risk by drawing too much blood. However, a phlebotomist who fails to keep track of amounts of blood collected or who is unable to judge how much blood can be collected safely could do just that. Consequently, for safe practice, a competent phlebotomist should be able to calculate blood volume. The formula for calculating blood volume is shown in Appendix B.

DEALING WITH PARENTS OR GUARDIANS

If parents or guardians are present, it is important for the phlebotomist to earn their trust before attempting to draw blood. A phlebotomist who behaves in a warm and friendly manner and displays a calm, confident, and caring attitude will more easily earn that trust and limit his or her own anxiety as well. Parents or guardians may give the best prediction of how cooperative the child will be. Ask them about the child's past experiences with blood collection so as to gain insight into how the child may behave and approaches that might work. Give them the option of staying in the room during the procedure or waiting outside until you are finished. Their presence and involvement should be encouraged, however, as studies show that this reduces a child's anxiety and has a positive effect on the child's behavior.

DEALING WITH THE CHILD

With older children, it is as important as with adults to gain their trust. However, children typically have a wider zone of comfort, which means that you cannot get as close to them as you can to an adult without making them feel threatened. Approach them slowly and determine their degree of anxiety or fear before handling equipment or touching their arms to look for a vein. An adult towering over a child is intimidating. Physically lower yourself to the patient's level. Explain what you are going to do in terms that the child can understand and answer questions honestly.

KEY POINT *Never* tell a child that it won't hurt. Instead, say that it may hurt just a little bit, but it will be over quickly.

Help the child to understand the importance of remaining still. Give the child a job to do such as holding the gauze or adhesive bandage. Offer the child a reward for being brave. However, *do not* put conditions on receiving the reward, such as "you can have a sticker if you don't cry." Some crying is to be anticipated, and it is important to let the child know that it is all right to cry.

KEY POINT Calm a crying child as soon as possible, because the stress of crying and struggling can alter blood components and lead to erroneous test results.

PAIN INTERVENTIONS

Interventions to ease pain include the use of a **eutectic** (easily melted) **mixture of local anesthetics (EMLA)** for newborns through adults and oral sucrose and pacifiers for infants and toddlers.

EMLA is a topical anesthetic containing lidocaine and prilocaine; it can be applied to intact skin by a nurse or physician. It is available in a cream that must be covered with a clear dressing or a patch after application. It takes approximately 1 hour (a major drawback to its use) for it to anesthetize the area to a depth of approximately 5 mm. It cannot be used on patients who are allergic to local anesthetics.

Use of a 12% to 24% solution of oral sucrose has been shown to reduce the pain of procedures such as heel puncture and venipuncture in infants up to 6 months of age. A 24% solution of sucrose (prepared by mixing 4 teaspoons of water with 1 teaspoon of sugar) can be administered by dropper, nipple, oral syringe, or on a pacifier provided that it will not interfere with the tests to be collected or diet restrictions. Sucrose nipples or pacifiers are available commercially. The sucrose must be given to the infant 2 minutes before the procedure, and its pain-relieving benefits last for approximately 5 minutes. Studies have shown that infants given sucrose or even a regular pacifier by itself cry for a shorter time and are more alert and less fussy after the procedure.

SELECTING A METHOD OF RESTRAINT

Immobilization of the patient is a critical aspect in obtaining an adequate specimen from infants and children while ensuring their safety. A newborn or young infant can be wrapped in a blanket, but physical restraint is often required for older infants, toddlers, and younger children. Older children may be able to sit by themselves in the blood-drawing chair, but a parent or another phlebotomist should help steady the child's arm.

Toddlers are most easily restrained by having them sit upright on a parent's lap (Fig. 8–17). The arm to be used for venipuncture is extended to the front and downward. The parent

Figure 8-17 A seated adult restraining a toddler.

places an arm around the toddler and over the arm that is not being used. The other arm supports the venipuncture arm from behind, at the bend of the elbow. This helps steady the child's arm and prevents the child from twisting the arm during the draw.

If the child is lying down, the parent or another phlebotomist typically leans over the child from the opposite side of the bed. One arm reaches around and holds the venipuncture arm from behind, the other reaches across the child's body, holding the child's other arm secure against his or her torso.

EQUIPMENT SELECTION

Venipuncture of an antecubital vein is most easily accomplished using a 23-gauge butterfly needle attached to an evacuated tube holder or syringe. The tubing of the butterfly allows flexibility if the child struggles or twists during the draw. Use of an evacuated-tube holder and butterfly needle is preferred because it minimizes chances of producing clotted specimens and inadequately filled tubes. However, the smallest tubes available should be used to reduce the risk of creating too much vacuum draw on the vein and causing it to collapse. In difficult-draw situations, a small amount of blood can be drawn into a syringe and the blood placed in microcollection tubes (microtubes or "bullets") rather than ETS tubes.

CAUTION: Laboratory personnel will assume that blood in microtubes is capillary blood. If venous blood is placed in a microtube, it is important to label the specimen as venous blood because reference ranges for some tests differ depending on the source of the specimen.

PROCEDURES

Regardless of the collection method, every attempt should be made to collect the minimum amount of blood required for testing because of the small blood volume of the patient. Follow proper identification requirements outlined earlier in the chapter. You may be required to wear a mask, gown, and gloves in the newborn nursery or neonatal ICU.

Geriatric Venipuncture

Geriatric means relating to old age. According to the National Institute on Aging (NIA), life expectancy has doubled over the last century, and there are now over 35 million Americans of age 65 or older. This segment of the population is expected to grow by 137% over the next 50 years and to become the major focus of healthcare. Already a major portion of laboratory testing is performed on the elderly. (See Table 8-2 for a list of tests commonly ordered on geriatric patients.)

Matching 8-3 in the WORKBOOK tests knowledge of geriatric tests and indications for ordering them.

Although aging is a normal process, it involves physical, psychological, and social changes leading to conditions, behaviors, and habits that may seem unusual to those unaccustomed to working with elderly patients. To feel comfortable working with them one must understand the aging process and be familiar with the physical limitations, diseases, and illnesses associated with it. It is also important to remember that elderly patients are unique individuals with special needs who deserve to be treated with compassion, kindness, patience, and respect.

CHALLENGES

Physical effects of aging, such as skin changes, hearing and vision problems, mobility issues—often related to arthritis and osteoporosis, diseases such as diabetes, and mental and emotional conditions often present challenges not only to the patient but to a phlebotomist's technical expertise and interpersonal skills as well.

Skin Changes

Skin changes include loss of collagen and subcutaneous fat, resulting in wrinkled, sagging, thin skin with a decreased ability to stay adequately hydrated. Lack of hydration along with

TABLE 8-2 Tests Commonly Ordered on Geriatric Patients

Test	Typical Indications for Ordering
ANA, RA, or RF	Diagnose lupus and rheumatoid arthritis, which can affect nervous system function.
CBC	Determine hemoglobin levels, detect infection, and identify blood disorders.
BUN/creatinine	Diagnose kidney function disorders that may be responsible for problems such as confusion, coma, seizures, and tremors
Calcium/magnesium	Identify abnormal levels associated with seizures and muscle problems
Electrolytes	Determine sodium and potassium levels, critical to proper nervous system function
ESR	Detect inflammation; identify collagen vascular diseases
Glucose	Detect and monitor diabetes; abnormal levels can cause confusion, seizures, or coma or lead to peripheral neuropathy
PT/PTT	Monitor blood-thinning medications; important in heart conditions, coagulation problems, and stroke management
SPEP, IPEP	Identify protein or immune globulin disorders that lead to nerve damage
VDRL/FTA	Diagnose or rule out syphilis, which can cause nerve damage and dementia

impaired peripheral circulation caused by age-related narrowing of blood vessels make it harder to obtain adequate blood flow, especially during skin puncture. In addition, aging skin cells are replaced more slowly, causing the skin to lose elasticity and increasing the likelihood of injury. Blood vessels also lose elasticity, becoming more fragile and more likely to collapse, resulting in an increased chance of bruising and the failure to obtain blood.

KEY POINT Skin changes make veins in the elderly easier to see; however, sagging skin combined with loss of muscle tone may make it harder to anchor veins and keep them from rolling.

Hearing Impairment

Effects of aging include loss of auditory hair cells, resulting in a hearing loss in upper frequencies and trouble distinguishing sounds such as ch, s, sh, and z. Hearing-impaired patients may strain to hear and have difficulty answering questions and understanding instructions. If you know or have reason to suspect that a patient has a hearing impairment, move closer and face the patient when you speak. Speak clearly and distinctly, but use your normal tone of voice. Never shout; shouting raises the pitch of your voice and makes it harder to understand. Allow the patient enough time to answer questions and confirm patient responses to avoid misunderstanding. Repeat information if necessary. Watch for nonverbal verification that the patient understands. Be mindful of nonverbal messages you may be sending inadvertently. Use pencil and paper to communicate if necessary. A relative or attendant often accompanies a patient with a hearing impairment or other communication problem. If this person is included in the conversation, do not speak to him or her directly as if the patient were not present.

KEY POINT Although hearing loss is common in the elderly, never assume that an elderly person is hard of hearing.

Visual Impairment

Effects of aging on the eyes include a diminished ability of the lens to adjust, causing farsightedness; clouding of the lens or cataract formation resulting in dim vision; and other changes that lead to light intolerance and poor night vision. The phlebotomy area should have adequate lighting without glare. Be aware that you may need to guide elderly patients to the drawing

chair or escort them to the restroom if a urine specimen is requested. Provide written instructions in large print, avoid using gestures when speaking, and use a normal tone of voice.

KEY POINT A common mistake and one that is irritating to the visually impaired is to raise your voice when you are speaking to them.

Mental Impairment

Slower nerve conduction associated with aging leads to slower learning, slower reaction times, and a diminished perception of pain, which, in turn, can lead to an increase in injuries. Reduced cerebral circulation can lead to loss of balance and frequent falls. The effects of some medications can make problems worse. Speak clearly and slowly and give the patient plenty of time to respond. You may need to repeat your statement or question more than once. Be especially careful in obtaining patient identification information and verifying compliance with diet instructions. If a relative or attendant is with the patient, verify information with him or her.

Alzheimer's disease and other forms of dementia can render a patient unable to communicate meaningfully, requiring you to communicate through a relative or other caregiver. Some Alzheimer's patients will act absolutely normal and others will exhibit anger and hostility, which should not be taken personally. Always approach patients in a calm, professional manner. Use short, simple statements and explain things slowly. You may require assistance to keep the patient's arm in place during the draw.

KEY POINT Although mental confusion and dementia are common in elderly patients, always assume that an elderly person is of sound mind unless you have information to the contrary.

Effects of Disease

Although most elderly persons are generally healthy, many are not. Some of the diseases that affect the elderly and the challenges they present to the patient and the phlebotomist include the following:

Arthritis

The two basic types of arthritis are osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. Osteoarthritis occurs with aging and also results from joint injury. The hips and knees are most commonly affected; this can cause difficulty getting in and out of a blood-drawing chair. Rheumatoid arthritis affects connective tissue throughout the body and can occur at any age. It primarily affects the joints, but connective tissue in the heart, lungs, eyes, kidneys, and skin may also be affected. Inflammation associated with both types of arthritis may leave joints swollen and painful and cause the patient to restrict movement. It may result in the patient being unable or unwilling to straighten an arm or open a hand. Use the other arm if it is unaffected. If that is not an option, let the patient decide what position is comfortable. A butterfly needle with 12-in. tubing helps provide the flexibility needed to access veins from awkward angles.

CAUTION: Never use force to extend a patient's arm or open a hand, as this can cause pain and injury.

Coagulation Problems

Patients who have coagulation disorders or who take blood-thinning medications as a result of heart problems or strokes are at risk of hematoma formation or uncontrolled bleeding at the blood-collection site. Make certain that adequate pressure is held over the site until bleeding is stopped. You must hold pressure if the patient is unable to do so. However, do not hold pressure so tightly that the patient is injured or bruised and do not apply a pressure bandage in lieu of holding pressure. If bleeding persists, notify the patient's physician or follow your facility's policy.

Diabetes

Many elderly patients have diabetes. Diabetes affects circulation and healing, particularly in the lower extremities, and generally makes venipuncture of leg, ankle, and foot veins off limits. Peripheral circulation problems and scarring from numerous skin punctures to check glucose can make skin puncture collections difficult. Warming the site before blood collection can help encourage blood flow.

Parkinson's Disease and Stroke

Stroke and Parkinson's disease can affect speech. The frustration this can cause to both the patient and the phlebotomist can present a barrier to effective communication. Allow these patients time to speak and do not try to finish their sentences. Keep in mind that difficulty in speaking does not imply problems in comprehension. Tremors and movement of the hands of Parkinson's patients can make blood collection difficult; such patients may require help to hold still.

Pulmonary Function Problems

The effects of colds and influenza are more severe in the elderly. Age-related changes in pulmonary function reduce the elasticity of airway tissues and decrease the effectiveness of respiratory defense systems. Weakened chest muscles reduce the ability to clear secretions and increase the chance of developing pneumonia. If you have a cold, refrain from drawing blood from elderly patients if possible or wear a mask.

Other Problems

Disease and loss of immune function in the elderly increase the chance of infection. Lack of appetite due to disease or a decreased sense of smell and taste can result in emaciation. Poor nutrition can intensify the effects of aging on the skin, affect clotting ability, and contribute to anemia.

SAFETY ISSUES

Although all patients require an unencumbered traffic pattern, geriatric patients may need wider open areas to accommodate wheelchairs and walkers. Some patients tend to shuffle when they walk, so floors should have nonslip surfaces and be free of clutter. Dispose of equipment packaging properly and look out for items inadvertently dropped on the floor. Floor mats should stay snug against the floor so that they do not become a tripping hazard for any patient or employee as well.

PATIENTS IN WHEELCHAIRS

Many geriatric patients are wheelchair-bound or are so weak that they are transported to the laboratory in wheelchairs. Be careful in moving wheelchair patients (Fig. 8-18) from the waiting

Figure 8-18 An elderly patient in a wheelchair.

room to the blood-drawing room. Remember to lock wheels when drawing blood from patients in wheelchairs, assisting them to and from the drawing chair, or after returning them to waiting areas. Never attempt to lift patients to transfer them from a wheelchair to a drawing chair. Attempting to do so can result in injury to the patient, the phlebotomist, or both.

KEY POINT It is generally safest and easiest to draw blood with the patient in the wheelchair, supporting the arm on a pillow or on a special padded board placed across the arms of the chair.

BLOOD-COLLECTION PROCEDURES

Although the venipuncture steps are basically the same for all patients, extra care must be taken in the following areas when drawing from elderly patients.

Patient Identification

Be extra careful in identifying patients with mental or hearing impairments. Never rely on nods of agreement or other nonverbal responses. Verify patient information with a relative or attendant if possible.

Equipment Selection

It is often best to use butterfly needles and pediatric or short-draw tubes for venipuncture on the elderly. Although the veins may appear prominent, they are apt to roll or collapse easily, making blood collection difficult. It is best to select equipment after you have selected the venipuncture site so that you can choose the best equipment for the size, condition, and location of the vein. If the veins are extremely fragile, you may have to collect the specimen by syringe or finger puncture.

Tourniquet Application

Apply the tourniquet snugly but loose enough to avoid damaging the patient's skin. A tourniquet that is too tight can cause the vein to collapse when it is released or the tube is engaged. It can also distend the vein so much that it "blows" or splits open on needle entry, resulting in hematoma formation. It is acceptable to apply the tourniquet over the patient's sleeve or a clean dry washcloth wrapped around the arm.

KEY POINT Geriatric patients in their 90s and 100s are seen more often lately, and their veins are very sensitive to tourniquet pressure.

Site Selection

Elderly patients, especially inpatients, often have bruising in the antecubital (AC) area from previous blood draws. Venipuncture in a bruised site should be avoided, as it can be painful to the patient and the hemostatic process occurring in the area can lead to erroneous test results. If both AC areas are bruised, select a needle entry point below the bruising. Be aware that some elderly patients may not be able to make a fist because of muscle weakness.

If no suitable vein can be found, gently massage the arm from wrist to elbow to force blood into the area or wrap a warm, wet towel around the arm or hand for a few minutes to increase blood flow. Avoid heavy manipulation of the arm, as this can cause bruising and affect test results. Have the patient hold the arm down at his or her side for a few minutes to let gravity help back up blood flow. When a suitable vein has been selected, release the tourniquet to allow blood flow to return to normal while you clean the site and ready your equipment.

Cleaning the Site

Clean the site in the same manner as in routine venipuncture, being careful not to rub too vigorously, as that may abrade or otherwise damage the skin. The site may have to be cleaned a second time on some elderly patients who are unable to bathe regularly.

Performing the Venipuncture

Although actually quite fragile, an elderly patient's veins often feel tough and have a tendency to roll. Anchoring them firmly and entering quickly increases the chance of successful venipuncture. If the skin is loose and the vein poorly fixed in the tissue, it sometimes helps to wrap your hand around the arm from behind and pull the skin taut from both sides rather than anchoring with your thumb. Because veins in the elderly tend to be close to the surface of the skin, a shallow angle of needle insertion may be required.

Holding Pressure

As discussed earlier under "Coagulation Problems," it may take longer for bleeding in elderly patients to stop, especially if they are on anticoagulant therapy. Bleeding must have stopped before the bandage is applied. If bleeding is excessively prolonged, the patient's nurse or physician must be notified and laboratory facility procedures followed.

Dialysis Patients

Dialysis is a procedure in which patients whose kidneys do not function adequately have their blood artificially filtered to remove waste products. The most common reason for dialysis is end-stage renal disease (ESRD), a serious condition in which the kidneys have so deteriorated that they fail to function. The most common cause of ESRD is diabetes. The second most common cause is high blood pressure. Patients with ERSD require ongoing dialysis treatments or a kidney transplant.

In one type of dialysis, called hemodialysis, the patient's blood is filtered through a special machine often referred to as an artificial kidney. Access for hemodialysis is commonly provided by permanently fusing an artery and vein in the forearm, creating an arteriovenous (AV) shunt or fistula (see Chapter 9). During dialysis a special needle and tubing set is inserted into the fistula to provide blood flow to the dialysis machine. A typical AV fistula appears as a large bulging vein in the forearm above the wrist and causes a buzzing sensation called a "thrill" when palpated. The fistula arm must not be used to take blood pressures or perform venipuncture.

KEY POINT A phlebotomist must be able to recognize a fistula to avoid damaging the area, as it is the dialysis patient's lifeline.

Long-term Care Patients

Long-term care includes a variety of healthcare and social services required by certain patients with functional disabilities who cannot care for themselves but do not require hospitalization. Although long-term care serves the needs of patients of all ages, primary recipients are the elderly. Long-term care is delivered in adult daycare facilities, nursing homes, assisted living facilities, rehabilitation facilities (Fig. 8-19), and even private homes.

Figure 8-19 A phlebotomist making a visit to a rehabilitation center.

Figure 8-20 A traveling phlebotomist getting supplies from the back of his vehicle.

Home Care Patients

Care for the sick at home plays an important role in today's healthcare delivery system. Many individuals who in the past would have been confined to a healthcare institution are now able to remain at home, where numerous studies show they are happier and get better sooner or survive longer. Home care services are provided through numerous agencies and include professional nursing; home health aid; physical, occupational, and respiratory therapy; and laboratory services. Laboratory services are often provided by mobile phlebotomists who go to the patient's home to collect specimens and then deliver them to the laboratory for testing. A home care phlebotomist must have exceptional phlebotomy, interpersonal, and organizational skills; be able to function independently; and be comfortable working in varied situations and under unusual circumstances. Mobile phlebotomists must carry with them all necessary phlebotomy supplies including sharps containers and biohazard bags for disposal of contaminated items and containers for properly protecting specimens during transportation, typically in their own vehicles (Fig. 8-20).

Hospice Patients

Hospice is a type of care for patients who are terminally ill. Hospice care allows them to spend their last days in a peaceful, supportive atmosphere that emphasizes pain management to help keep them comfortable. Some individuals are uncomfortable with the subject of death or being around patients who are dying and react with indifference out of ignorance. Phlebotomists who deal with hospice patients must understand the situation and be able to approach them with care, kindness, and respect.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **NPO means:**
   a. new patient orders.
   b. needed postoperative.
   c. nothing by mouth.
   d. nutrition postoperative.

2. **Which of the following is required requisition information?**
   a. Ordering physician's name
   b. Patient's first and last names
   c. Type of test to be performed
   d. All of the above

3. **The following test orders for different patients have been received at the same time. Which test would you collect first?**
   a. Fasting glucose
   b. STAT glucose in the ER
   c. STAT hemoglobin in ICU
   d. ASAP CBC in ICU

4. **A member of the clergy is with the patient when you arrive to collect a routine specimen. What should you do?**
   a. Ask the patient's nurse what you should do.
   b. Come back after the clergy person has gone.
   c. Fill out a form saying you were unable to collect the specimen.
   d. Say "Excuse me, I need to collect a specimen from this patient."

5. **You are asked to collect a blood specimen from an inpatient. The patient is not wearing an ID band. What is the best thing to do?**
   a. Ask the patient's name and collect the specimen if it matches the requisition.
   b. Ask the patient's nurse to put an ID band on the patient before you draw the specimen.
   c. Identify the patient by the name card on the door.
   d. Refuse to draw the specimen and cancel the request.

6. **If a patient adamantly refuses to have blood drawn, you should:**
   a. convince the patient to be cooperative.
   b. notify the patient's nurse or physician.
   c. restrain the patient and draw the blood.
   d. write a note to the patient's physician.

7. **An inpatient is eating breakfast when you arrive to collect a fasting glucose. What is the best thing to do?**
   a. Consult with the patient's nurse to see if the specimen should be collected.
   b. Draw the specimen quickly before the patient finishes eating.
   c. Draw the specimen and write "nonfasting" on the requisition.
   d. Fill out a form stating the patient had eaten so the specimen was not drawn.

8. **After cleaning the venipuncture site with alcohol, the phlebotomist should:**
   a. allow the alcohol to dry completely.
   b. fan the site to help the alcohol dry.
   c. dry the site with a clean gauze pad or cotton ball.
   d. insert the needle quickly before the alcohol dries.

9. **The tourniquet should be released:**
   a. as soon as blood flow is established.
   b. before needle removal from the arm.
   c. within 1 minute of its application.
   d. all of the above.

10. **Which statement is true of syringe venipuncture?**
    a. A syringe is sometimes used for veins that collapse easily.
    b. A syringe is recommended for drawing most blood specimens.
    c. You must pull the plunger all the way back when you see the "flash."
    d. With a syringe, it is difficult tell when the needle is in the vein.

11. **After inserting a butterfly needle, the phlebotomist must "seat" it, meaning:**
    a. have the patient make a fist to keep it in place.
    b. keep the skin taut during the entire procedure.
    c. push the bevel against the back wall of the vein.
    d. slightly thread it within the lumen of the vein.

12. **Blood collection tubes are labeled:**
    a. as soon as the test order is received.
    b. before the specimen is even collected.
    c. immediately after specimen collection.
    d. whenever it is the most convenient.

13. **What is the best approach to use on an 8-year-old child who needs to have blood drawn?**
    a. Explain the draw in simple terms and ask for the child's cooperation.
    b. Have someone restrain the child and collect the specimen.
    c. Offer the child a treat or a toy if he or she does not cry.
    d. Tell the child it won't hurt and will only take a few seconds.

14. **Which type of patient is most likely to have an arteriovenous fistula or graft?**
    a. Arthritic
    b. Dialysis
    c. Hospice
    d. Wheelchair-bound

15. **Which of the following is proper procedure when dealing with an elderly patient?**
    a. Address your questions to an attendant if the patient has a hearing problem.
    b. Make certain to hold adequate pressure after the draw until bleeding stops.
    c. Speak extra loud in order to be certain that the patient can hear you.
    d. Tie the tourniquet extra tight to make the veins more prominent.

Case Studies

See the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 8-1 *Patient Identification*

Jenny works with several other phlebotomists in a busy outpatient lab. This day has been particularly hectic, with many patients filling the waiting room. Jenny is working as fast as she can. Toward the end of the day, after Jenny has finished drawing blood from what seems like the millionth patient, she mentions to a coworker how extra busy it has been. The coworker says, "Yes it has, but it looks like there is only one patient left." Jenny grabs the paperwork and heads for the door of the waiting room. As her coworker has said, there is only one patient, an elderly woman, sitting there reading a book. The paperwork is for a patient named Jane Rogers. "You must be Jane," she says, glancing at the name on the paperwork. The patient looks up and smiles. "Have you been waiting long?" Jenny asks. The patient replies, "Not really," and Jenny escorts her to a drawing chair. The patient is a difficult draw, and Jenny makes two attempts to collect the specimen. The second one is successful. Jenny places the labels on the tubes, dates and initials them, bandages the patient, and sends her on her way. About 5 minutes later a somewhat younger woman appears at the reception window and says, "My name is Jane Rogers. I just stepped outside to make a phone call and was wondering if you called my name while I was gone." The receptionist notices that the patient's name is checked off the registration log. The receptionist turns around and asks if anyone had called a patient named Jane Rogers. "I already drew her," Jenny says as she walks over to the receptionist window. The woman at the window is not the one Jenny just drew; however, her information matches information on the requisition used to draw that patient.

QUESTIONS

1. *What error did Jenny make in identifying the patient?*
2. *What assumptions did Jenny make that contributed to her drawing blood from the wrong patient?*
3. *Who might the other patient from whom Jenny mistakenly drew blood have been?*
4. *How can the error be corrected?*

CASE STUDY 8-2 *Blood Draw Refusal*

Two phlebotomists went to a pediatric ward to collect a blood specimen from a young boy they had drawn many times before. The child told them to go away and that he was not supposed to have any more blood tests. The boy's parents were not present, but in the past they had always given permission for blood draws over the child's objections. The phlebotomists ignored the child, and one of them collected the specimen while the other restrained him. It was later determined that the boy's parents had earlier filed a written request that the child was to have no more blood drawn.

QUESTIONS

1. *What error did the phlebotomists make in drawing blood from the child?*
2. *What assumptions were made in deciding to draw blood from the child over his objections?*
3. *What might be the consequences of the phlebotomists' actions?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

BD™ Blood Transfer Device product literature. Franklin Lakes, NJ: BD Vacutainer Systems.

Bishop ML, Fody EP, Schoeff LE. *Clinical Chemistry: Principles, Procedures, Correlations,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, GP33-A. *Accuracy in Patient and Sample Identification.* Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2010.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H3–A6. *Procedures for the Collection of Diagnostic Blood Specimens by Venipuncture,* 6th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2007.

College of American Pathologists (CAP) Publications Committee, Phlebotomy Subgroup. *So You're Going to Collect a Blood Specimen: An Introduction to Phlebotomy,* 11th ed. Northfield, IL: CAP, 2005.

Ernst DJ. *Applied Phlebotomy.* Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.

Ernst DJ. *Blood Specimen Collection FAQs*. Corydon, IN: Center for Phlebotomy Education, 2008.

Food and Drug Administration (FDA). Allergic reactions to latex-containing medical devices. *FDA Med Alert*, March 29, 1991.

Graden M, et al. Pain reduction at venipuncture in newborns: Oral glucose compared with local anesthetic cream. *Pediatrics* 2002;110:1053–1057.

Kronberger J, Woodson, D. *Clinical Medical Assisting,* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.

Lindh V, Wiklund U, Hakanssom S. Assessment of the effect of EMLA during venipuncture in newborn by analysis of heart rate variability. *Pain* 2000;86:247–254.

Mitchell A, Waltman PA. Oral sucrose and pain relief for preterm infants. *Pain Management Nursing* 2003;4(2):62–69.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos:
  - Blood Collection from a Hand Vein Using a Butterfly and ETS Holder
  - Collecting a Blood Specimen by Venipuncture Using the Evacuated Tube System
  - Collecting Blood from an Antecubital Vein Using a Needle and Syringe
  - Hand Washing/Hand Antisepsis
  - Introductory and Identification Processes Required Prior to Blood Specimen Collection
  - Poor and Good Workplace Ergonomics for Phlebotomy
  - Proper Tourniquet Application for Venipuncture
  - Specimen Labeling and Venipuncture Follow-up Procedures
  - Transferring Blood from a Syringe into ETS Tubes
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Advance magazine for medical laboratory personnel:** http://laboratorian.advanceweb.com/
- **American Academy of Pediatricians**: http://www.aap.org
- **Center for Phlebotomy Education**: http://www.phlebotomy.com
- **National Institute for Safety and Health**: http://www.cdc.gov/niosh

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley *C. Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley *C. Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

CHAPTER

9

Preanalytical Considerations

KEY TERMS

Do the matching exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

A-line
AV shunt/fistula/graft
basal state
bilirubin
CVAD
CVC
diurnal/circadian
edema
exsanguination
hematoma
hemoconcentration
hemolysis
hemolyzed
heparin/saline lock
iatrogenic
icteric
implanted port
IV
jaundice
lipemia
lipemic
lymphostasis
mastectomy
petechiae
PICC
preanalytical
pre-examination
reference ranges
sclerosed
syncope
thrombosed
vasovagal
venous stasis

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. List and describe the physiological variables that influence laboratory test results and identify the tests most affected by each one.
3. List problem areas to avoid in site selection, identify causes for concern, and describe procedures to follow when encountering each.
4. Identify and describe various vascular access sites and devices and explain what to do when they are encountered.
5. Identify, describe, and explain how to handle patient complications associated with blood collection.
6. Identify, describe, and explain how to avoid or handle procedural error risks, specimen quality concerns, and reasons for failure to draw blood.

OVERVIEW

The **preanalytical** (before analysis) or pre-examination phase of the testing process begins for the laboratory when a test is ordered and ends when testing begins. Numerous factors associated with this phase of the testing process, if not properly addressed, can lead to errors that can compromise specimen quality, jeopardize the health and safety of the patient, and ultimately increase the cost of medical care. Since each blood collection situation is unique, a phlebotomist must have—in addition to the technical skills needed to perform a blood draw—the ability to recognize preanalytical factors and address them, if applicable, to avoid or reduce any negative impact. This chapter addresses physiological variables, problem venipuncture sites, various types of vascular access devices, patient complications and conditions, procedural errors, specimen quality issues, and how to troubleshoot failed venipuncture.

Reference Ranges/Intervals

Most tests are performed to confirm health or to screen for, diagnose, or monitor disease. To be properly evaluated, test results typically need to be compared with results expected of healthy individuals. Consequently, result values for most tests are established using specimens from normal, healthy individuals. Because results vary somewhat from person to person, the results used for comparison become a range of values with high and low limits, commonly called a **reference range** or **reference interval.** Most reference ranges are for healthy fasting individuals. Although less common, some tests have reference ranges for specific situations, such as patients who are ill or those being treated for certain disorders, such as diabetes.

KEY POINT One way a physician evaluates a patient's test results is by comparing them to reference ranges and, if applicable, previous results on the same patient. If a specimen has been compromised and the results are not valid, a physician could make a decision based upon incorrect information and thus jeopardize the patient's care.

Basal State

Basal state refers to the resting metabolic state of the body early in the morning after fasting for approximately 12 hours. A basal-state specimen is ideal for establishing reference ranges on inpatients because the effects of diet, exercise, and other controllable factors on test results are minimized or eliminated. Basal state is influenced by a number of physiologic patient variables such as age, gender, and conditions of the body that cannot be eliminated.

Outpatient specimens are not basal-state specimens and may have slightly different reference ranges (normal values).

Physiological Variables

Match physiological effects with lab tests in the Matching 9-2 activity in the WORKBOOK.

AGE

Values for some blood components vary considerably depending upon the age of the patient. For example, red blood cell (RBC) and white blood cell (WBC) values are normally higher in newborns than in adults. Some physiological functions such as kidney function decrease with age. For example, creatinine clearance, a measure of kidney function, is directly related to the age of the patient, which must be factored in when test results are being calculated.

ALTITUDE

Test results for some blood analytes show significant variation at higher elevations compared with results at sea level. Red blood cell (RBC) counts are a prime example. RBCs carry oxygen. Decreased oxygen levels at higher altitudes cause the body to produce more RBCs to meet the body's oxygen requirements; the higher the altitude, the greater the increase. Thus RBC counts and related determinations such as hemoglobin (Hgb) and hematocrit (Hct) have higher reference ranges at higher elevations. Other analytes that increase at higher elevations include C-reactive protein and uric acid. Analytes that decrease in value at increased altitude include urinary creatinine (which in turn affects creatinine clearance tests) and plasma renin.

Analytes generally take weeks to adapt to high elevations; however, they adapt to a return to sea level within days.

DEHYDRATION

Dehydration (decrease in total body fluid), which occurs, for example, with persistent vomiting or diarrhea, causes **hemoconcentration,** a condition in which blood components that cannot easily leave the bloodstream become concentrated in the smaller plasma volume. Blood components affected include RBCs, enzymes, iron (Fe), calcium (Ca), sodium (Na), and coagulation factors. Consequently, results on specimens from dehydrated patients may not accurately reflect the patient's normal status. In addition, it is often difficult to obtain blood specimens from dehydrated patients.

DIET

Blood analyte composition can be altered by the ingestion of food and drink. As a result, blood specimens collected soon after a meal or snack are unsuitable for many laboratory tests. Diet effects on analytes are generally temporary and vary depending upon the amount and type of food or drink and the length of time between ingestion and specimen collection. Requiring a patient to fast or follow a special diet eliminates most dietary influences on testing. Patients are typically asked to fast approximately 8 to 12 hours, depending on the test. Fasting is normally done overnight after the last evening meal, with specimens collected the following morning before the patient has eaten.

CAUTION: Fasting beyond 12 hours can cause serious health problems, such as electrolyte imbalance and heart rhythm disturbances. Consequently fasting specimens, especially those requiring a 12-hour fast, should be collected promptly without unreasonable delay.

KEY POINT Patients are allowed to drink water during fasting unless they are NPO for another procedure. Refraining from drinking water while fasting can result in dehydration, which can negatively affect test results and also make blood collection more difficult.

The following are examples of how some analytes can be significantly affected by the consumption of certain types of food or drink and the excess consumption of some fluids.

- Ammonia, urea, and uric acid levels may be elevated in patients on high-protein diets.
- Cortisol and ACTH levels have been shown to increase with the consumption of beverages containing caffeine.
- Glucose (blood sugar) levels increase dramatically with the ingestion of carbohydrates or sugar-laden substances but return to normal within 2 hours if the patient has normal glucose metabolism. Eating carbohydrates can also increase insulin levels.
- Hgb levels can decrease and electrolyte balance can be altered by drinking excessive amounts of water and other fluids.

Figure 9-1 Left to right: Lipemic, icteric, and normal specimen.

- Lipid levels increase with ingestion of foods such as butter or margarine, cheese, cream, and some enteral (tube feeding) preparations. (*Lipid* is a term meaning fat-soluble; it is used to describe certain fatty substances of animal or vegetable origin.) Abnormally increased blood lipid content is called **lipemia.** Lipids do not dissolve in water and thus high levels of lipids are visible in serum or plasma, causing it to appear milky (cloudy white) or turbid, and the specimen is described as being **lipemic** (Fig. 9-1).

Memory Jogger The word root *lip* means "fat." To associate lipemic with fat, think "fat lip" or visualize a big fat white cloud, because fats make the specimen appear cloudy white.

Lipemia can be present for up to 12 hours, which is why accurate testing of triglycerides (a type of lipid) requires a 12-hour fast. In addition, some chemistry tests cannot be performed on lipemic specimens because the cloudiness interferes with the testing procedure.

KEY POINT Lipemia in a fasting specimen is rare. When a test requires a fasting specimen but the serum or plasma sample submitted is lipemic, it is a clue that the patient may not have been fasting.

- Some test methods that detect occult (hidden) blood in stool specimens also detect similar substances in meat and certain vegetables. Consequently, a special diet that eliminates these foods must be followed for several days before the specimen is collected.
- Triglycerides, certain liver enzymes, and other liver function analytes are increased by chronic consumption or recent ingestion of large amounts of alcohol, which can also cause hypoglycemia.

Malnutrition and starvation also affect the composition of blood analytes. Long-term starvation decreases cholesterol, triglycerides, and urea levels and increases creatinine, ketone, and uric acid levels.

DIURNAL/CIRCADIAN VARIATIONS

The levels of many blood components normally exhibit **diurnal** (happening daily) or **circadian** (having a 24-hour cycle) variations or fluctuations. Factors that play a role in diurnal variations include posture, activity, eating, daylight and darkness, and being awake or asleep. For example, melatonin levels are affected by light; they increase at night, when it is dark, and decrease during daylight hours. Maximum renin and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) levels normally occur in the predawn hours of the morning during sleep, while peak cortisol levels normally occur later in the morning, around 8:00 A.M. Other blood components that exhibit diurnal variation with highest levels occurring in the morning include aldosterone, bilirubin, cortisol, hemoglobin, insulin, iron, potassium, testosterone, and RBCs. Blood levels of eosinophils, creatinine, glucose, growth hormone (GH), triglycerides, and phosphate are normally lowest in the morning. Diurnal variations can be large. For example the levels of cortisol, TSH, and iron can differ by 50% or more between morning and late afternoon.

A change of several time zones can affect diurnal rhythm and the tests associated with it. Several days may be required to restore a normal rhythm.

KEY POINT Tests influenced by diurnal variation are often ordered as timed tests; it is important to collect them as close to the time ordered as possible.

DRUG THERAPY

Some drugs alter physiological functions, causing changes in the concentrations of certain blood analytes. The effect may be desired or an unwanted side effect or sensitivity. Consequently, it is not uncommon for physicians to monitor levels of specific blood analytes while a patient is receiving drug therapy. The following are just a few examples of drugs that can alter physiologic function and the analytes they affect:

- Chemotherapy drugs can cause a decrease in blood cells, especially WBCs and platelets.
- Many drugs are toxic to the liver, as evidenced by increased levels of liver enzymes such as aspartate aminotransaminase (AST)—also called serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT), alkaline phosphatase (ALP), and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) and decreased production of clotting factors.
- Opiates such as morphine increase levels of liver and pancreatic enzymes.
- Oral contraceptives can affect the results of many tests. For example, they can elevate the erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) and decrease levels of vitamin B_{12}.
- Steroids and diuretics can cause pancreatitis and an increase in amylase and lipase values.
- Thiazide diuretics can elevate calcium and glucose levels and decrease sodium and potassium levels. Other thiazide-type medications that lower blood volume can increase blood levels of nitrogenous waste such as urea, a condition called azotemia.

Drugs can also interfere with the actual test procedure, causing false increases or decreases in test results. A drug may compete with the test reagents for the substance being tested, causing a falsely low or false-negative result, or the drug may enhance the reaction, causing a falsely high or false-positive result.

An acronym for substances that interfere in the testing process is CRUD, which stands for "compounds reacting unfortunately as the desired."

Although it is ultimately up to the physician to prevent or recognize and eliminate drug interferences, this can be a complicated issue that requires cooperation between the physician, pharmacy, and laboratory to make certain that test results are not affected by medications.

Phlebotomists can play a role in this effort by noting on the requisition when they observe medication being administered just prior to blood collection.

KEY POINT According to CAP guidelines, drugs that interfere with blood tests should be stopped or avoided 4 to 24 hours prior to obtaining the blood sample for testing. Drugs that interfere with urine tests should be avoided for 48 to 72 hours prior to the urine sample collection.

EXERCISE

Exercise affects a number of blood components, raising levels of some and lowering levels of others. Effects vary, depending on the patient's physical condition and the duration and intensity of the activity. However, moderate to strenuous exercise appears to have the greatest effect. Levels typically return to normal soon after the activity is stopped. The following are examples of the effects of exercise on a number of blood components:

- Arterial pH and $PaCO_2$ levels are reduced by exercise.
- Glucose, creatinine, insulin, lactic acid, and total protein can be elevated by moderate muscular activity.
- Potassium (K^+) is released from the cells during exercise, increasing levels in the plasma. Levels generally return to normal after several minutes of rest.

CAUTION: The simple exercise of pumping the hand (i.e., making and releasing a fist) during venipuncture is enough to erroneously increase potassium levels.

- Skeletal muscle enzyme levels are increased by exercise, with levels of creatine kinase (CK) and lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) remaining elevated for 24 hours or more.

Athletes generally have higher resting levels of skeletal muscle enzymes, and exercise produces less of an increase.

- Vigorous exercise shortly before blood collection can temporarily increase cholesterol levels by 6% or more. Levels can remain elevated for up to an hour after the exercise has stopped. Vigorous or sustained exercise can also affect hemostasis. For example, an increased number of platelet clumps were seen in a study of runners evaluated immediately after running the Boston marathon.

FEVER

Fever affects the levels of a number of hormones. Fever-induced hypoglycemia increases insulin levels, followed by a rise in glucagon levels. Fever also increases cortisol and may disrupt its normal diurnal variation.

GENDER

A patient's gender affects the concentration of a number of blood components. Most differences are apparent only after sexual maturity and are reflected in separate normal values for males and females. For example, RBC, Hgb, and Hct normal values are higher for males than for females.

INTRAMUSCULAR INJECTION

A recent intramuscular injection can increase levels of creatine kinase (CK) and the skeletal muscle fraction of LDH. Consequently, it is recommended that CK and LDH levels be drawn

Figure 9-2 Jaundice. Note patient's yellow skin color in comparison with that of the examiner's hand.

before intramuscular injection or at least 1 hour after injection. Muscular trauma from injuries or surgery can also increase CK levels.

JAUNDICE

Jaundice, also called **icterus,** is a condition characterized by increased **bilirubin** (a product of the breakdown of RBCs) in the blood, leading to deposits of yellow bile pigment in the skin, mucous membranes, and sclerae (whites of the eyes), giving the patient a yellow appearance (Fig. 9-2). The term **icteric** means relating to or marked by jaundice and is used to describe serum, plasma, or urine specimens that have an abnormal deep yellow to yellow-brown color due to high bilirubin levels (Fig. 9-1). The abnormal color can interfere with chemistry tests based on color reactions, including reagent-strip analyses on urine.

KEY POINT Jaundice in a patient may indicate liver inflammation caused by hepatitis B or C virus.

POSITION

Body position before and during blood collection can influence specimen composition. Going from supine (lying down on the back) to an upright sitting or standing position causes blood fluids to filter into the tissues, decreasing plasma volume in an adult up to 10%. Only protein-free fluids can pass through the capillaries; consequently the blood concentration of components that are protein in nature or bound to protein—such as aldosterone, bilirubin, blood cells, calcium, cholesterol, iron, protein, and renin—increases. In most cases the concentration of freely diffusible blood components is not affected by postural changes. Nevertheless, a significant increase in potassium (K^+) levels occurs within 30 minutes of standing; this has been attributed to the release of intracellular potassium from muscle. Other examples of the effects of posture changes include the following:

- A change in position from lying to standing can cause up to a 15% variation in total and high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol results.

KEY POINT The National Cholesterol Education Program recommends that lipid profiles be collected in a consistent manner after the patient has been either lying down or sitting quietly for a minimum of 5 minutes.

- Plasma aldosterone and renin change more slowly but can double within an hour. Consequently patients are required to be recumbent (lying down) for at least 30 minutes prior to aldosterone specimen collection, and plasma renin-activity levels require documentation of the patient's position during collection.
- The RBC count on a patient who has been standing for approximately 15 minutes will be higher than a basal-state RBC count on that patient.

KEY POINT Calling outpatients into the drawing area and having them sit in the drawing chair while paperwork related to the draw is readied can help minimize effects of postural changes on some analytes.

PREGNANCY

Pregnancy causes physiologic changes in many body systems. Consequently results of a number of laboratory tests must be compared with reference ranges established for pregnant populations. For example, increases in body fluid, which are normal during pregnancy, have a diluting effect on the RBCs, leading to lower RBC counts.

SMOKING

A number of blood components are affected by smoking. The extent of these effects depends upon the number of cigarettes smoked. Patients who smoke prior to specimen collection may have increased cholesterol, cortisol, glucose, growth hormone, and triglyceride levels as well as WBC counts. Chronic smoking often leads to decreased pulmonary function and increased RBC counts and hemoglobin levels. Smoking can also affect the body's immune response, typically lowering the concentrations of immunoglobulins IgA, IgG, and IgM but increasing levels of IgE.

Skin-puncture specimens may be difficult to obtain from smokers because of impaired circulation in the fingertips.

STRESS

Emotional stress such as anxiety, fear, or trauma can cause transient (short-lived) elevations in WBCs. For example, studies of crying infants have demonstrated marked increases in WBC counts, which returned to normal within 1 hour after the crying stopped. Consequently CBC or WBC specimens on an infant are ideally obtained after the infant has been sleeping or resting quietly for at least 30 minutes. If they are collected while an infant is crying, this should be noted on the report.

Studies in psychoneuroimmunology (PNI)—a field that deals with the interactions between the brain, the endocrine system, and the immune system—have demonstrated that receptors on the cell membrane of WBCs can sense stress in a person and react by increasing cell numbers.

Stress is also known to decrease serum iron levels and increase adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), catecholamine, and cortisol levels. Other hormones that can be affected include aldosterone and TSH, and GH in children.

TEMPERATURE AND HUMIDITY

Environmental factors such as temperature and humidity can affect test values by influencing the composition of body fluids. Acute heat exposure causes interstitial fluid to move into the blood vessels, increasing plasma volume and influencing its composition. Extensive sweating without fluid replacement, on the other hand, can cause hemoconcentration. Environmental factors associated with geographic location are accounted for when reference values are established.

Temperature and humidity in the laboratory are closely monitored to maintain specimen integrity and ensure proper functioning of equipment.

Problem Sites

BURNS, SCARS, AND TATTOOS

Avoid burned, scarred, or tattooed areas. Veins are difficult to palpate or penetrate in these areas. Healed burn sites and other areas with extensive scarring may have impaired circulation and can therefore yield erroneous test results. Newly burned areas are painful and also susceptible to infection. Tattooed areas can have impaired circulation, may be more susceptible to infection, and contain dyes that can interfere with testing.

KEY POINT If you have no choice but to draw in an area with a tattoo, try to insert the needle in a spot that does not contain dye.

DAMAGED VEINS

Some patients' veins feel hard and cord-like and lack resiliency because they are occluded or obstructed. These veins may be **sclerosed** (hardened) or **thrombosed** (clotted) from the effects of inflammation, disease, or chemotherapy drugs. Scarring caused by numerous venipunctures—as occurs in regular blood donors, persons with chronic illnesses, and illegal IV drug users—can also harden veins. Damaged veins are difficult to puncture, yield erroneous (invalid) test results because of impaired blood flow, and should be avoided.

KEY POINT Choose another site if possible; otherwise draw below (distal to) damaged veins.

EDEMA

Edema is swelling caused by the abnormal accumulation of fluid in the tissues. It sometimes results when fluid from an IV infiltrates the surrounding tissues. Specimens collected from edematous areas may yield inaccurate test results owing to contamination with tissue fluid or altered blood composition caused by the swelling. In addition, veins are harder to locate, the tissue is often fragile and easily injured by tourniquet and antiseptic application, and healing may be prolonged in these areas. Another site should be chosen if possible.

KEY POINT Phlebotomists on early-morning rounds in hospitals or nursing homes are often the first ones to notice edema from infiltrated IVs and should alert the appropriate personnel to the problem.

HEMATOMA

A **hematoma** (Fig. 9-3) is a swelling or mass of blood (often clotted) that can be caused by blood leaking from a blood vessel during or following venipuncture. A large bruise eventually spreads over the surrounding area. Venipuncture through an existing hematoma is painful and can result in collection of a specimen that is contaminated with hemolyzed blood from outside the vein and unsuitable for testing. Venipuncture in the area surrounding a hematoma may also be painful. In addition, obstruction of blood flow by the hematoma and the effects of the coagulation process may lead to inaccurate test results on the specimen.

CAUTION: Never perform venipuncture through a hematoma. If there is no alternative site, perform the venipuncture distal to the hematoma to ensure the collection of free-flowing blood.

MASTECTOMY

Blood should never be drawn from an arm on the same side as a **mastectomy** (surgical breast removal) without first consulting the patient's physician. Lymph node removal, which is typically

Figure 9-3 Examples of bruising resulting from hematomas that formed during or immediately following venipuncture. (Top right photo courtesy Monica Lewis. Bottom right photo courtesy Sue Kucera.)

part of the procedure, causes **lymphostasis** (obstruction or stoppage of normal lymph flow). Impaired lymph flow makes the arm susceptible to swelling, called lymphedema, and to infection. Applying a tourniquet to the arm can cause injury. Effects of lymphostasis can also change blood composition in that arm and lead to erroneous test results.

KEY POINT When a mastectomy has been performed on both sides, the patient's physician should be consulted to determine a suitable site. Generally, the side of the most recent mastectomy is the one avoided.

OBESITY

Obese (extremely overweight) patients often present a challenge to the phlebotomist. Veins on obese patients may be deep and difficult to find. Proper tourniquet selection and application is the first step to a successful venipuncture. Conventional tourniquets may be too short to fit around the arm without rolling and twisting. A long length of new Penrose drain tubing or a long Velcro closure strap often works better than a latex or vinyl strap. A blood pressure cuff can also be used.

Check the antecubital area first. Obese patients often have a double crease in the antecubital area with an easily palpable median cubital vein between the two creases. If no vein is easily visible or palpable on tourniquet application, ask the patient what sites have been successful for past blood draws. Most patients who are "difficult draws" know what sites work best. If the patient has never had blood drawn before or does not remember, another site to try is the cephalic vein. To locate the cephalic vein, rotate the patient's arm so that the hand is prone. In this position, the weight of excess tissue often pulls downward, making the cephalic vein easier to feel and penetrate with a needle.

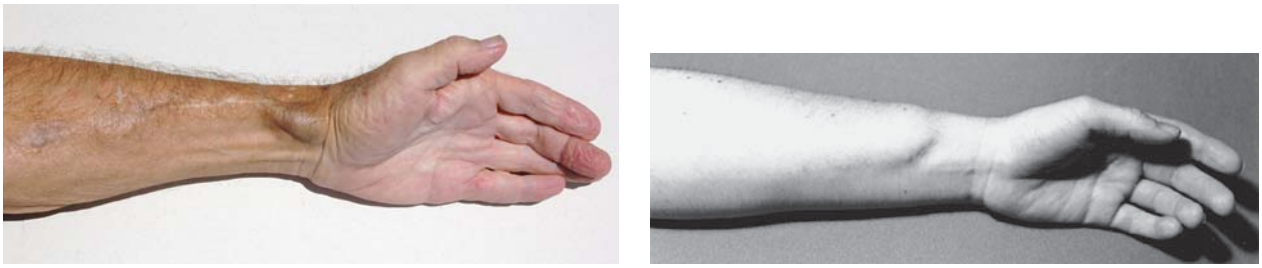


Figure 9-4 Arms with AV shunts; fistula (left) and graft (right).

Vascular Access Devices (VADs) And Sites

Test your VAD knowledge in Matching 9-6 and Labeling Exercise 9-2 in the WORKBOOK.

ARTERIAL LINE

An **arterial line** (A-line or Art-line) is a catheter that is placed in an artery. It is most commonly placed in a radial artery and is typically used to provide accurate and continuous measurement of a patient's blood pressure. It may also be used to collect blood gas and other blood specimens and for the administration of drugs such as dopamine. Only specially trained personnel should access arterial lines. Never apply a tourniquet or perform venipuncture on an arm with an arterial line.

ARTERIOVENOUS SHUNT, FISTULA, OR GRAFT

An **arteriovenous (AV) shunt, fistula,** or **graft** (Fig. 9-4) is the permanent surgical connection of an artery and vein by direct fusion (fistula), resulting in a bulging vein, or with a piece of vein or tubing (graft) that creates a loop under the skin. It is typically created to be used for dialysis, commonly joins the radial artery and cephalic vein above the wrist on the underside of the arm, and has a distinctive buzzing sensation called a "thrill" when palpated. A temporary shunt with tubing on the surface of the skin can also be created.

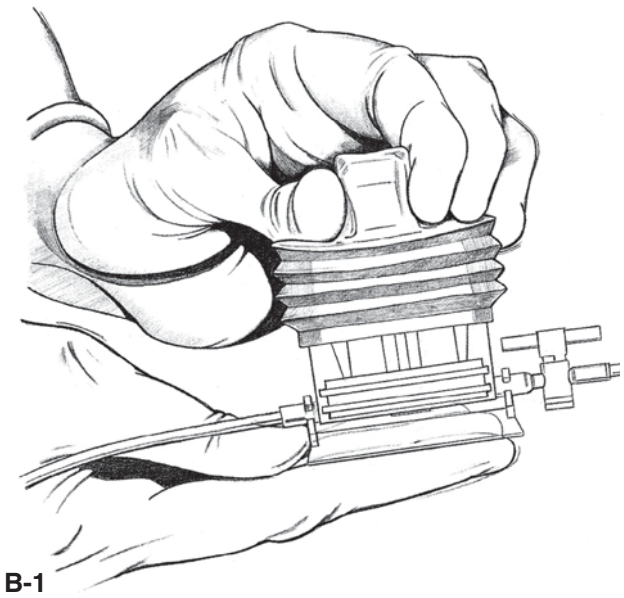
CAUTION: Never apply a blood pressure cuff or tourniquet, or perform venipuncture, on an arm with a shunt.

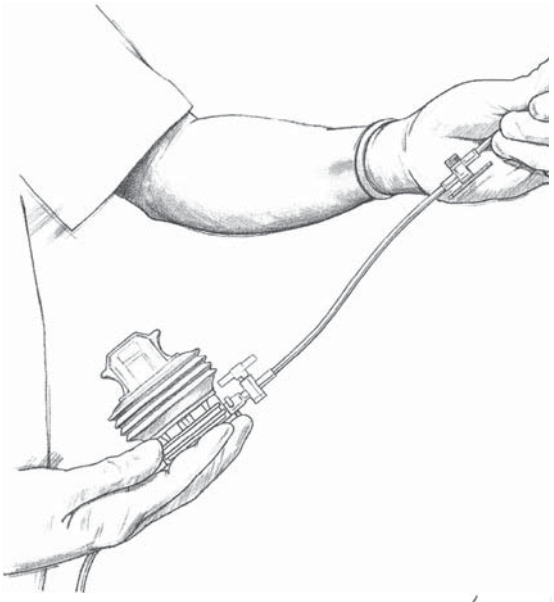
BLOOD SAMPLING DEVICE

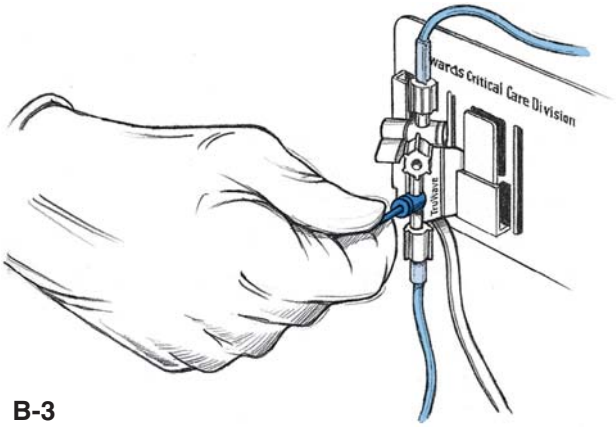
A needleless closed blood sampling device is sometimes connected to an arterial or central venous catheter (see "Vascular-Access Devices") for the purpose of collecting blood specimens. These devices are said to reduce the chance of infection, prevent needlesticks, and minimize waste associated with line draws. One example is the VAMP® (Venous Arterial blood Management Protection system) from Edwards Lifesciences (Irvine, CA). The VAMP® and instuctions for its use are shown in Figure 9-5.

Figure 9-5 Blood sampling device. **A.** VAMP® blood sampling device. **B.** Illustrated instructions for using a VAMP®. (*continued*)

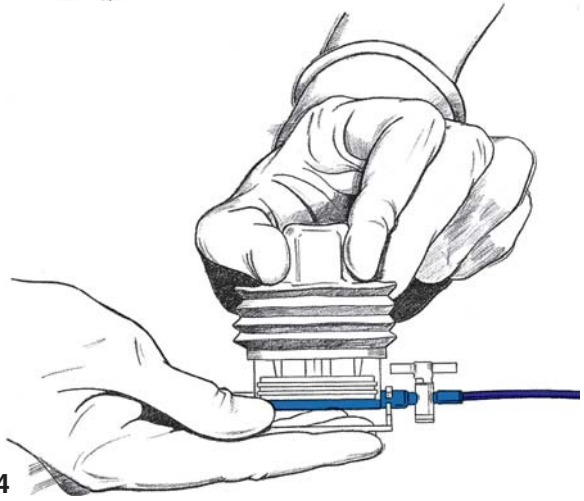
A

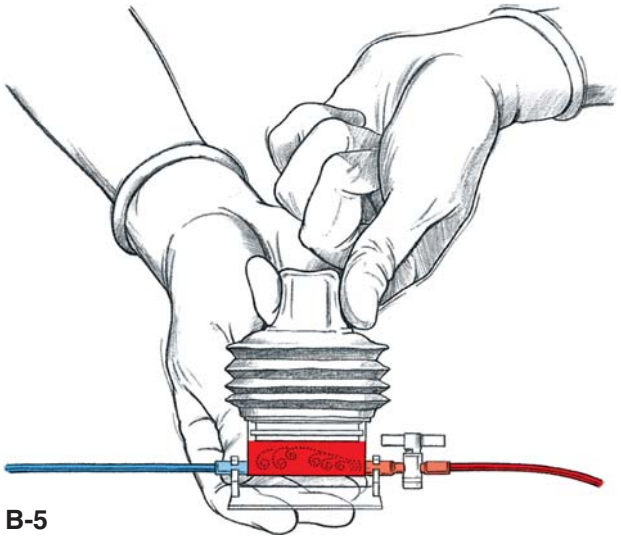

B-1


B-2



B-3


B-4


B-5

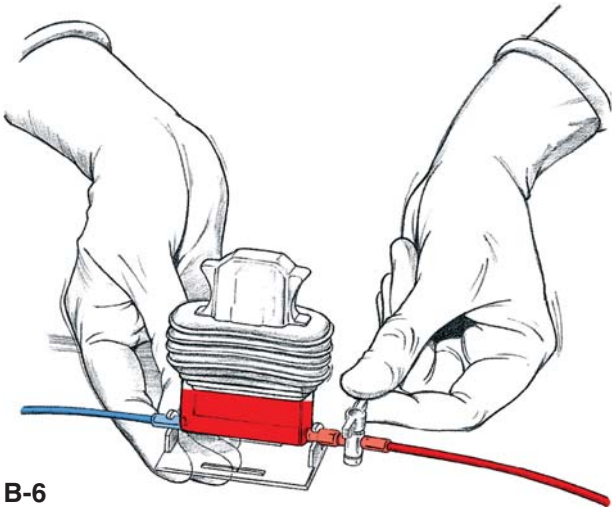

B-6

Figure 9-5 (*Continued*) **B-1.** Squeeze-and-hold flexures raise plunger slightly to facilitate flow of priming solution. **B-2.** With shut-off valve in open position (parallel to the tubing), hold sampling site above the VAMP reservoir at a 45-degree angle. **B-3.** Provide flow by pulling Snap-Tab of the pressure transducer. **B-4.** Slowly deliver priming solution to remove air. Close plunger and connect to patient's catheter. **B-5.** Firmly squeeze the flexures and slowly draw the reservoir open over 3 to 5 seconds. **B-6.** Close shut-off valve by turning handle perpendicular to tubing. (*continued*)

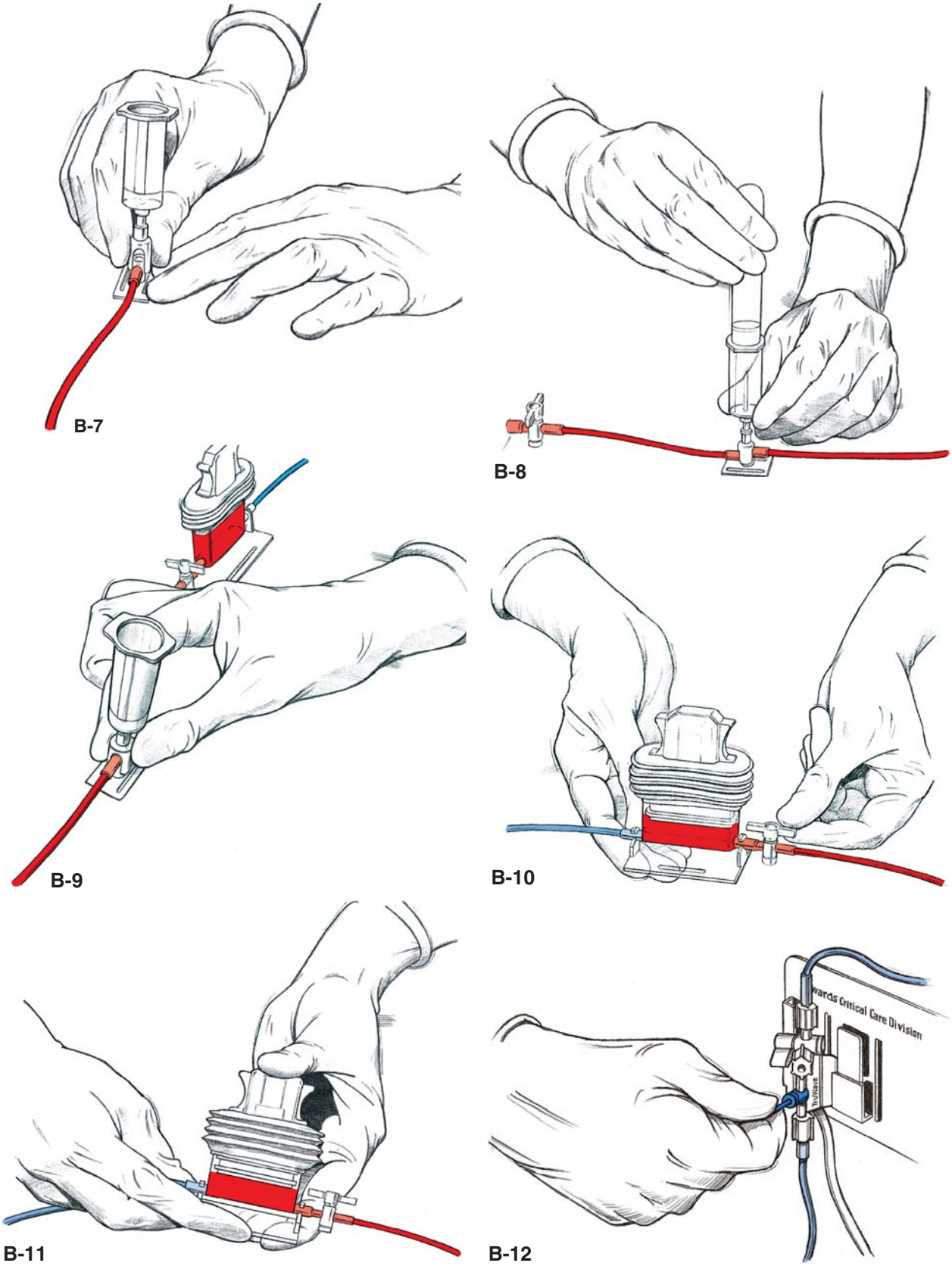


Figure 9-5 (*Continued*) **B-7.** Swab sample port and push tube holder onto it. **B-8.** Collect required tubes of blood via the tube holder. **B-9.** Gently remove the tube holder from the port by pulling straight out. **B-10.** Open the shut-off valve by turning the handle parallel to the tubing. **B-11.** Smoothly and evenly, over 3 to 5 seconds, depress the plunger until flexures lock in place in the fully closed position and all fluid has been reinfused into the line. **B-12.** Flush the VAMP system clear by pulling the Snap-Tab on the transducer. Swab the sampling site to remove any excess blood on the sampling port. (Courtesy of Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, CA.)

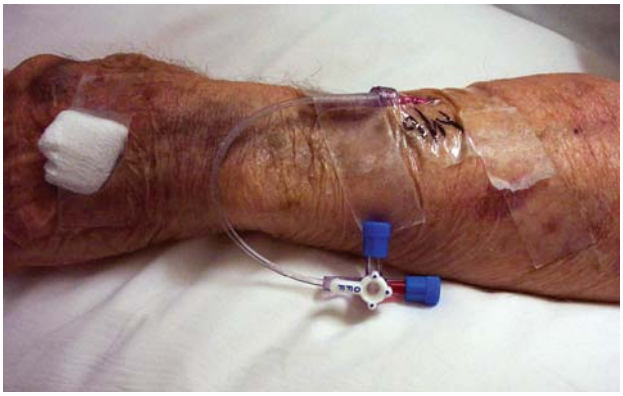


Figure 9-6 Saline lock with needleless entry stopcock.

HEPARIN OR SALINE LOCK

A **heparin** or **saline lock** (Fig. 9-6) is a catheter or cannula connected to a stopcock or a cap with a diaphragm (thin rubber-like cover) that provides access for administering medication or drawing blood. It is often placed in a vein in the lower arm above the wrist and can be left in place for up to 48 hours. To keep it from clotting, the device is flushed and filled with heparin or saline. A saline lock is sometimes flushed with heparin also. Heparin readily adheres to surfaces; therefore it is difficult to remove all traces of it. Consequently a 5-mL discard tube should be drawn first when blood specimens are collected from either type of device. Drawing coagulation specimens from either type is not recommended because traces of heparin or dilution with saline can negatively affect test results. Only specially trained personnel should draw blood from heparin and saline locks.

INTRAVENOUS SITES

Intravenous (IV) means "of, pertaining to, or within a vein." An intravenous line, referred to simply as an IV, is a catheter inserted in a vein to administer fluids. It is preferred that blood specimens not be drawn from an arm with an IV (Fig. 9-7), as they can be contaminated or diluted with the IV fluid, causing erroneous test results. This is especially true if the specimen is drawn above the IV. When a patient has an IV in one arm, blood specimens should be collected from the other arm. If a patient has IVs in both arms or the other arm is also unavailable for some reason, it is preferred that the specimen be collected by capillary puncture. Many

Figure 9-7 Patient's arm with an intravenous (IV) line.

PROCEDURE 9-1 Performing Venipuncture Below an IV

PURPOSE: To obtain a blood specimen by venipuncture below an IV

EQUIPMENT: Applicable ETS or syringe system supplies and equipment

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Ask the patient's nurse to turn off the IV for at least 2 minutes prior to collection.	A phlebotomist is not qualified to make IV adjustments. Turning off the IV for 2 minutes allows IV fluids to dissipate from the area.
2. Apply the tourniquet distal to the IV.	Avoids disturbing the IV.
3. Select a venipuncture site distal to the IV.	Venous blood flows up the arm toward the heart. Drawing below an IV affords the best chance of obtaining blood that is free of IV fluid contamination.
4. Perform the venipuncture in a different vein than the one with the IV if possible.	IV fluids can be present below an IV because of backflow and may still be there after the IV is shut off because of poor venous circulation.
5. Ask the nurse to restart the IV after the specimen has been collected.	IV flow rates must be precise, and starting or adjusting them is not part of a phlebotomist's scope of practice.
6. Document that the specimen was collected below an IV, indicate the type of fluid in the IV, and identify which arm was used.	This aids laboratory personnel and the patient's physician in the event that test results are questioned.

specimens (e.g., CBCs) can easily be collected this way. A specimen that cannot be collected by capillary puncture (e.g., a coagulation specimen) may be collected below the IV (never above) following the steps in Procedure 9-1.

PREVIOUSLY ACTIVE IV SITES

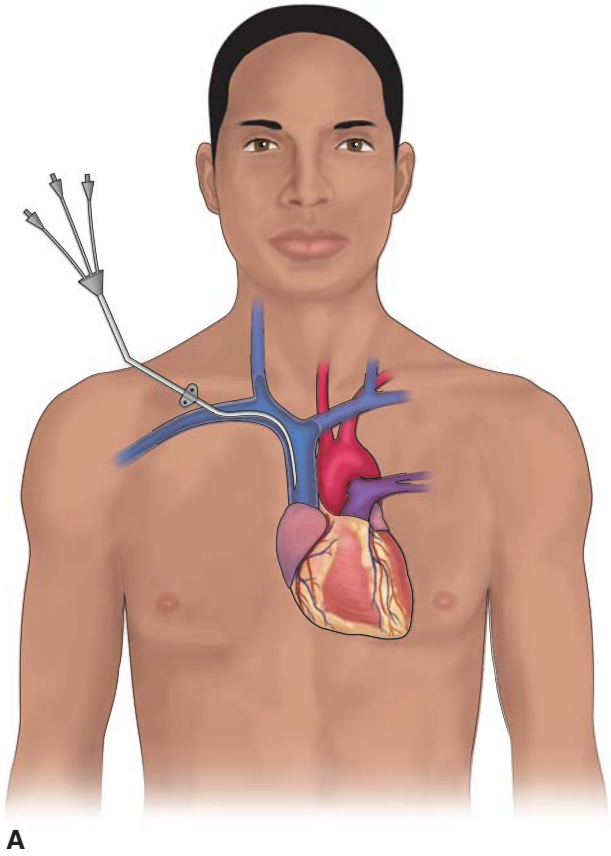
Previously active IV sites present a potential source of error in testing. Blood specimens should not be collected from a known previous IV site within 24 to 48 hours of the time the IV was discontinued. Follow facility protocol.

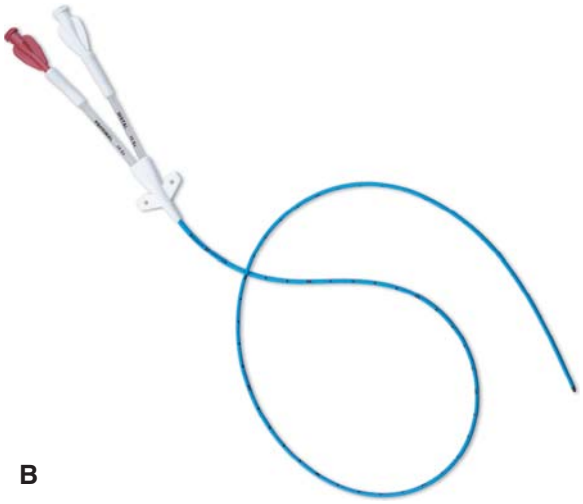
CENTRAL VASCULAR ACCESS DEVICES

A **central vascular access device (CVAD),** also called an **indwelling line,** consists of tubing inserted into a main vein or artery. CVADs are used primarily for administering fluids and medications, monitoring pressures, and drawing blood. Having a CVAD is practical for patients who need IV access for an extended time and is especially beneficial for patients who do not have easily accessible veins.

CAUTION: Only specially trained personnel should access CVADs to draw blood. However, the phlebotomist may assist by transferring the specimen to the appropriate tubes.

Most CVADs are routinely flushed with heparin or saline to reduce the risk of thrombosis. To help ensure that the specimen is not contaminated with the flush solution, a small amount of blood must be drawn from the line and discarded before a blood specimen can be collected. The amount of blood discarded depends upon the dead-space volume of the line. Two times the dead-space volume is discarded for noncoagulation tests and six times (normally about 5 mL) is generally recommended for coagulation tests, although it is preferred that specimens for coagulation tests not be drawn from CVADs. Three main types of CVADs are described; they are as follows:





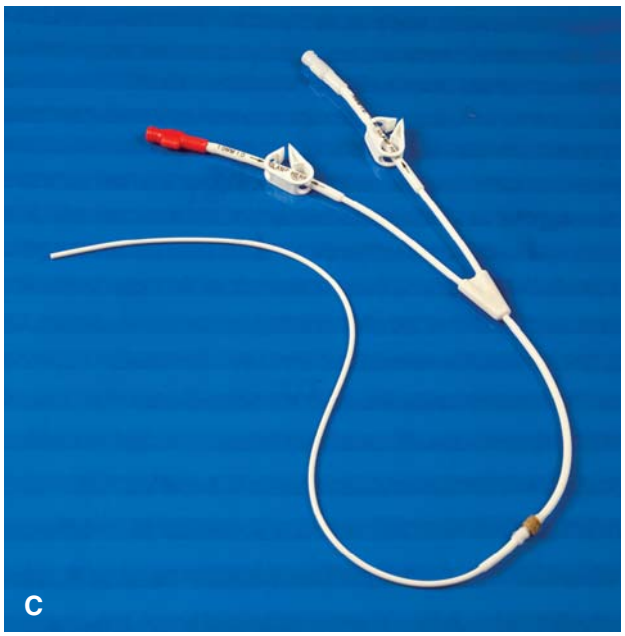


Figure 9-8 Central venous catheters (CVCs). **A.** CVC placement. (Reprinted with permission from Taylor CR, Lillis C, et al. *Fundamentals of Nursing: The Art and Science of Nursing Care,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.) **B.** Groshong® CVC. **C.** Hickman® CVC (Groshong® and Hickman® catheters courtesy BARD Access Systems, Inc., Salt Lake City, UT.)

- **Central venous catheter (CVC)** or **central venous line** (Fig. 9-8): a line inserted into a large vein such as the subclavian and advanced into the superior vena cava, proximal to the right atrium. The exit end is surgically tunneled under the skin to a site several inches away in the chest. One or more short lengths of capped tubing protrude from the exit site (Fig. 9-8A), which is normally covered with a transparent dressing. There are a number of different types of CVCs, including Broviac®, Groshong® (Fig. 9-8B), and Hickman® (Fig. 9-8C).

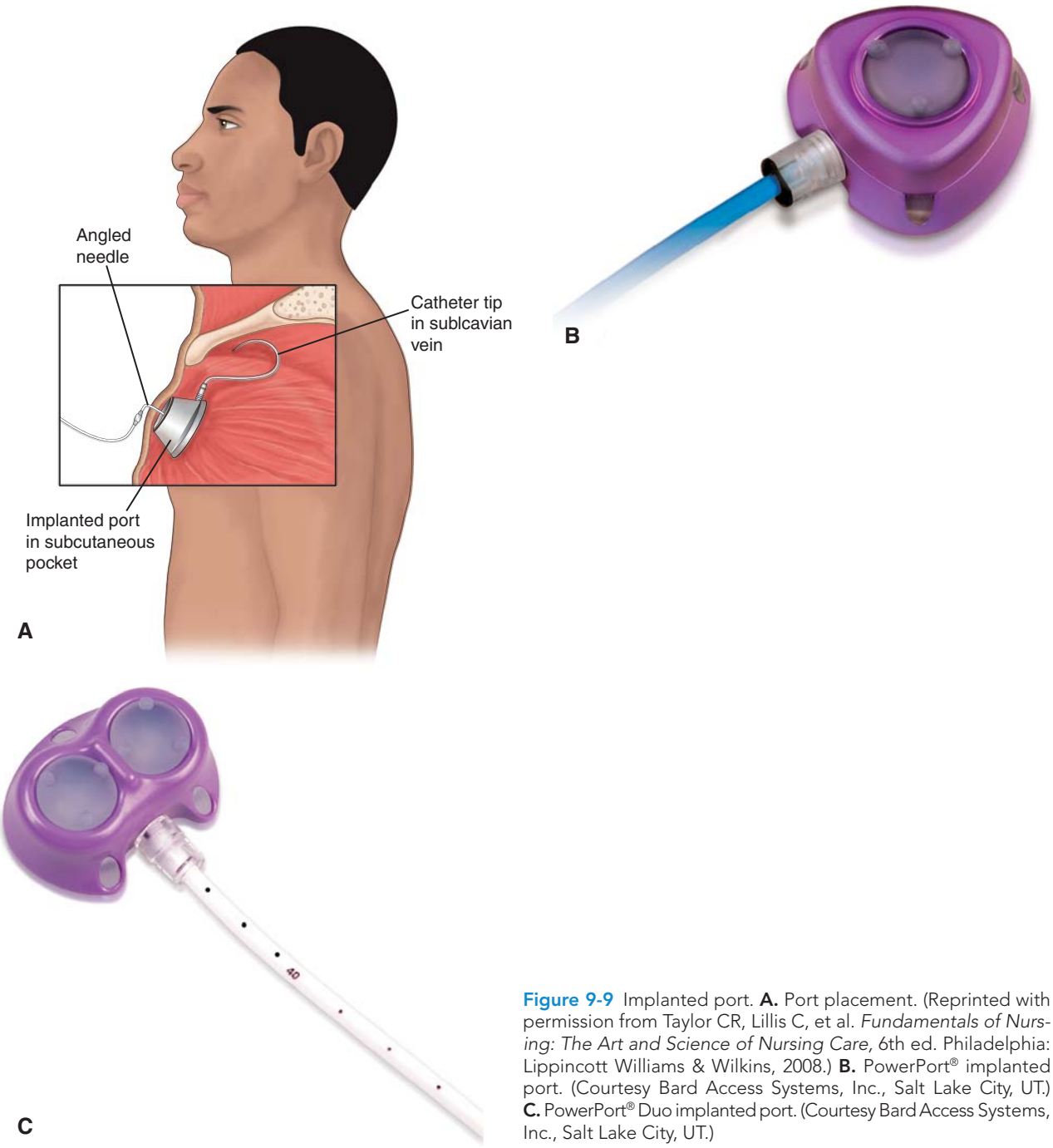


Figure 9-9 Implanted port. **A.** Port placement. (Reprinted with permission from Taylor CR, Lillis C, et al. *Fundamentals of Nursing: The Art and Science of Nursing Care*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.) **B.** PowerPort® implanted port. (Courtesy Bard Access Systems, Inc., Salt Lake City, UT.) **C.** PowerPort® Duo implanted port. (Courtesy Bard Access Systems, Inc., Salt Lake City, UT.)

- **Implanted port** (Fig. 9-9): a small chamber attached to an indwelling line that is surgically implanted under the skin and most commonly located in the upper chest or arm (Fig. 9-9A). The device is located by palpating the skin and accessed by inserting a special needle through the skin into the self-sealing septum (wall) of the chamber (Fig. 9-9B). The site is not normally covered with a bandage when not in use.
- **Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC)** (Fig. 9-10): a line inserted into the peripheral venous system (veins of the extremities) and threaded into the central venous system (main veins leading to the heart). It does not require surgical insertion and is typically placed in an antecubital vein just above or below the antecubital fossa (Fig. 9-10A). An example of a PICC is shown in Figure 9-10B.

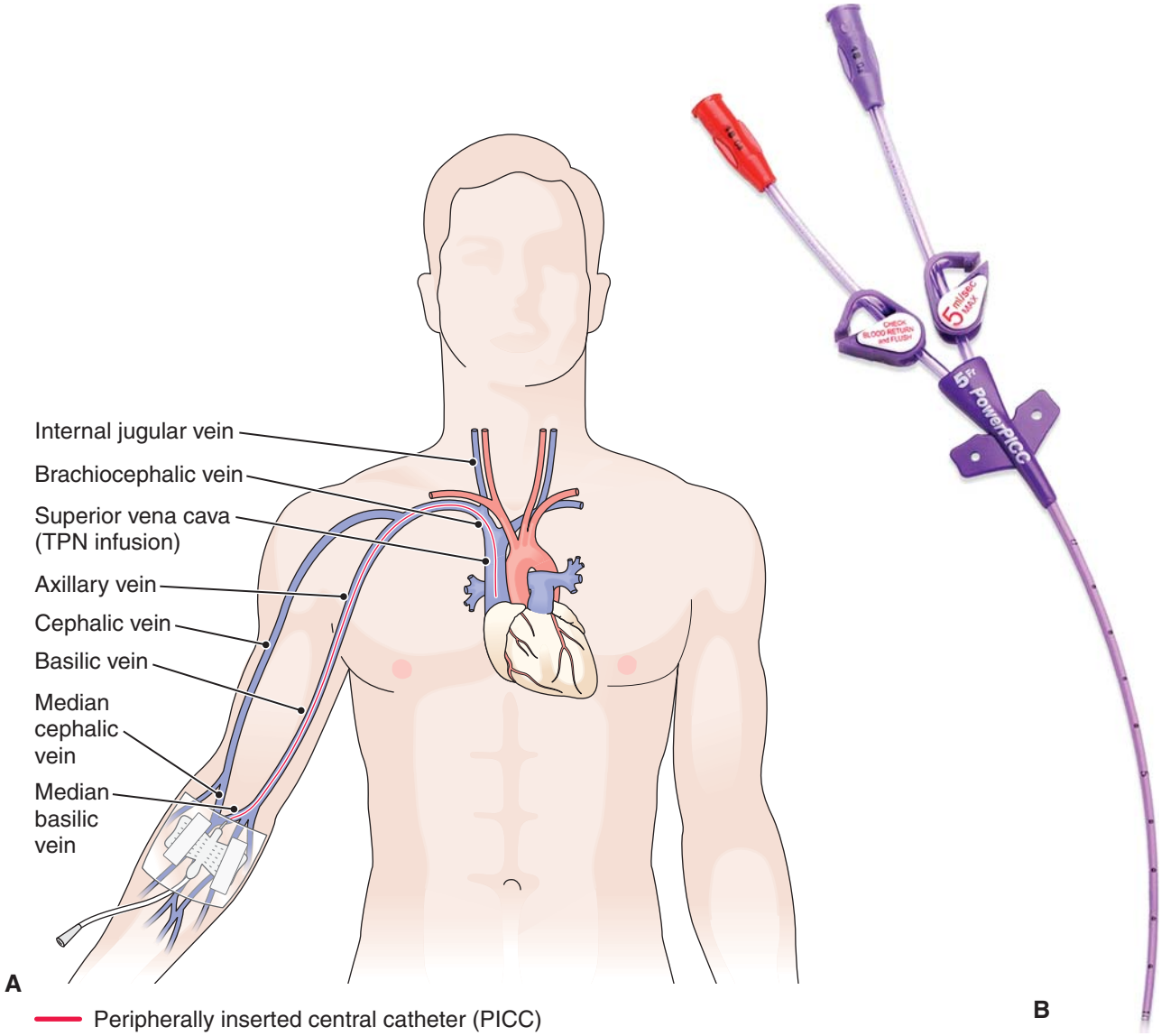


Figure 9-10 Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC). **A.** PICC placement. (Reprinted with permission from Cohen BJ. *Medical Terminology,* 4th ed. Philadelphia. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins 2003.) **B.** PowerPICC® catheter. (Courtesy Bard Access Systems, Inc., Salt Lake City, UT.)

Patient Complications and Conditions

ALLERGIES TO EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

Occasionally patients are encountered who are allergic to one or more of the supplies or equipment used in blood collection. Examples include the following.

Adhesive Allergy

Some patients are allergic to the glue used in adhesive bandages. One solution is to place a clean, folded gauze square over the site and wrap it with self adherent bandaging material such as Coban. Care must be taken not to wrap it too tightly, and the patient should be instructed to remove it in 15 minutes. If the patient is alert, mentally competent, and willing, another alternative is to instruct him or her to hold pressure for 5 minutes in lieu of applying a bandage.

Antiseptic Allergy

Occasionally, a patient is allergic to the antiseptic used in skin preparation prior to blood collection. (For example, many individuals are allergic to povidone–iodine.) Alternate antiseptics should be readily available for use in such cases.

Latex Allergy

Increasing numbers of individuals are allergic to latex. Most latex allergies are seemingly minor and involve irritation or rashes from physical contact with latex products such as gloves. Other allergies are so severe that being in the same room where latex materials are used can set off a life-threatening reaction. There should be a warning sign on the door to the room of any patient known to have a severe latex allergy, and it is vital that no items made of latex be brought into the room. This means that the phlebotomist must wear nonlatex gloves, use a nonlatex tourniquet, and use nonlatex bandages when in the room, whether collecting blood from the patient or a roommate.

KEY POINT Patients with known allergies often wear special armbands or have allergy-specific warning signs posted in their hospital rooms.

EXCESSIVE BLEEDING

Normally, a patient will stop bleeding from the venipuncture site within a few minutes. Some patients, particularly those on aspirin or anticoagulant therapy, may take longer to stop bleeding. Pressure must be maintained over the site until the bleeding stops. If the bleeding continues after 5 minutes, the appropriate personnel should be notified.

CAUTION: Never apply a pressure bandage instead of maintaining pressure, and do not leave or dismiss a patient until bleeding has stopped or the appropriate personnel have taken charge of the situation.

View the How to Handle a Fainting Patient video at http://thePoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

FAINTING

The medical term for fainting is **syncope (sin'ko-pea),** described as a loss of consciousness and postural tone resulting from insufficient blood flow to the brain. It can last for as little as a few seconds or as long as half an hour.

Memory Jogger To remember that syncope means fainting, look for the word *cope* in *syncope*. If the body can't cope, the patient faints.

Any patient has the potential to faint (Fig. 9-11) before, during, or immediately following venipuncture. Some patients become faint at just the thought or sight of their blood being drawn, especially if they are ill or have been fasting for an extended period. Other contributing factors include anemia, dehydration, emotional problems, fatigue, hypoglycemia, hyperventilation, medications, nausea, needle phobia, and poor compromised breathing. Sudden faintness or loss of consciousness due to a nervous system response to abrupt pain, stress, or trauma is called **vasovagal** (relating to vagus nerve action on blood vessels) syncope.

A patient with a history of fainting should be asked to lie down for the procedure. Patients who feel faint just before or even after venipuncture should be asked to lie down until recovered. Inpatients, who typically are already lying down, rarely faint during blood draws. Outpatients are more likely to faint because they are usually sitting up during venipuncture.

Blood collection personnel should routinely ask patients how they are doing during a draw, watch for signs of fainting, and be prepared to protect them from falling. Signs to watch for include pallor (paleness), perspiration, and hyperventilation or an indication from the patient that he or she is experiencing vertigo (a sensation of spinning), dizziness, light-headedness, or nausea. Fainting can occur without any warning, so never turn your back on a patient. See Procedure 9-2 for steps to follow if a patient complains of feeling faint or exhibits symptoms of fainting during venipuncture.

Figure 9-11 Phlebotomist caring for a patient who feels faint.

PROCEDURE 9-2 Steps to Follow if a Patient Starts to Faint During Venipuncture

PURPOSE: To properly handle a patient who feels faint or shows symptoms of fainting during a blood draw

EQUIPMENT: Cold compress such as a wash cloth dipped in cold water.

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Release the tourniquet and remove and discard the needle as quickly as possible.	Discontinuing the draw and discarding the needle protects the phlebotomist and patient from injury should the patient faint.
2. Apply pressure to the site while having the patient lower the head and breathe deeply.	Pressure must be applied to prevent bleeding or bruising. Lowering the head and breathing deeply helps get oxygenated blood to the brain.
3. Talk to the patient.	Diverts patient's attention, helps keep the patient alert, and aids in assessing the patient's responsiveness.
4. Physically support the patient.	Prevents injury in case of collapse.
5. Ask permission and explain what you are doing if it is necessary to loosen a tight collar or tie.	Avoids misinterpretation of actions that are standard protocol to hasten recovery.
6. Apply a cold compress or wet washcloth to the forehead and back of the neck	Part of the standard of care.
7. Have someone stay with the patient until recovery is complete.	Prevents patient from getting up too soon and possibly causing self-injury.
8. Call first aid personnel if the patient does not respond.	Emergency medicine is not in the phlebotomist's scope of practice.
9. Document the incident according to facility protocol.	Legal issues could arise, and further documentation is essential at that time.

CAUTION: The use of ammonia inhalants to revive patients can have unwanted side effects such as respiratory distress in asthmatic individuals and is not recommended (see CLSI H3-A6, 11.7.1).

When a patient who has fainted regains consciousness, he or she must remain in the area for at least 15 minutes. The patient should be instructed *not* to operate a vehicle for at least 30 minutes. It is important for the phlebotomist to document the incident (following institutional policy) in case of future litigation.

NAUSEA AND VOMITING

It is not unusual to have a patient experience nausea before, during, or after a blood draw. The patient may state that he or she is feeling nauseous or show signs similar to fainting, such as becoming pale or having beads of sweat appear on the forehead. A blood draw should not be attempted until the experience subsides. A blood draw that is in progress should be discontinued.

KEY POINT If the patient vomits during venipuncture, the procedure must be terminated immediately.

The patient should be reassured and made as comfortable as possible. A feeling of nausea often precedes vomiting, so it is a good idea to give the patient an emesis basin or wastebasket to hold as a precaution. Ask the patient to breathe slowly and deeply. Apply a cold, damp washcloth or other cold compress to the patient's forehead. If the patient vomits, provide tissues or a washcloth to wipe the face and water to rinse the mouth. If the patient is NPO for surgery, other procedures, or otherwise not allowed to have water, advise him or her to spit the water out after rinsing and not swallow any. Notify the patient's nurse, physician, or appropriate first-aid personnel of the incident.

PAIN

A small amount of pain is normally associated with routine venipuncture and capillary puncture. Putting patients at ease before blood collection helps them relax and can make the procedure less painful. Warning the patient prior to needle insertion helps avoid a startle reflex. A stinging sensation can be avoided by allowing the alcohol to dry completely prior to needle insertion.

Excessive, deep, blind, or lateral redirection of the needle is considered probing. It can be very painful to the patient; risks injury to arteries, nerves, and other tissues; and should never be attempted.

Marked or extreme pain, numbness of the arm, a burning or electric-shock sensation, or pain that radiates up or down the arm during a venipuncture attempt indicates nerve involvement and requires immediate removal of the needle. If pain persists after needle removal, the patient's physician or other appropriate personnel should be consulted and the incident documented. Application of an ice pack to the site after needle removal can help prevent or reduce inflammation associated with nerve involvement. Follow your healthcare facility's protocol.

CAUTION: If marked or extreme pain occurs, or the patient asks you to remove the needle for any reason, the venipuncture should be terminated immediately, even if there are no other signs of nerve injury.

PETECHIAE

Petechiae (Fig. 9-12) are tiny, nonraised red spots that appear on the patient's skin when a tourniquet is applied. The spots are minute drops of blood that escape the capillaries and come to the surface of the skin below the tourniquet, most commonly as a result of capillary wall defects or platelet abnormalities. They are not an indication that the phlebotomist has used incorrect procedure. However, they are an indication that the venipuncture site may bleed excessively.

Figure 9-12 Petechiae. **A.** Adult arm. (Copyright Medical Training Solutions. Used with permission.) **B.** Hand of child with low platelet count. (Reprinted with permission from McConnell TH. *The Nature of Disease Pathology for the Health Professions.* Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.)

SEIZURES/CONVULSION

Seizures have been known to occur during venipuncture, although there is no evidence that they can be caused by venipuncture. In the rare event that a patient has a seizure or goes into convulsions during blood specimen collection, it is important to discontinue the draw immediately. Hold pressure over the site without overly restricting the patient's movement. Do not attempt to put anything into the patient's mouth. Try to protect the patient from self-injury without completely restricting movement of the extremities. Notify the appropriate first-aid personnel.

Procedural Error Risks

Match risks to procedural errors in the WORKBOOK activity Matching 9-5.

HEMATOMA FORMATION

Hematoma formation is the most common complication of venipuncture. It is caused by blood leaking into the tissues during or following venipuncture and is identified by rapid swelling at or near the venipuncture site. (See Box 9-1 for situations that can trigger hematoma formation.)

Watch a hematoma form in the needle positions, Bevel Partially into the Vein animation at http://thePoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

BOX 9-1 SITUATIONS THAT CAN TRIGGER HEMATOMA FORMATION

- Excessive or blind probing is used to locate the vein.
- Inadvertent arterial puncture.
- The vein is fragile or too small for the needle size.
- The needle penetrates all the way through the vein.
- The needle is only partly inserted into the vein.
- The needle is removed while the tourniquet is still on.
- Pressure is not adequately applied following venipuncture.

CAUTION: A rapidly forming hematoma may indicate that an artery has been inadvertently hit. Discontinue the draw immediately and apply direct forceful pressure to the puncture site for a minimum of 5 minutes until active bleeding ceases.

A hematoma is painful to the patient and often results in unsightly bruising (Fig. 9-3); it can also cause compression injuries to nerves and lead to lawsuits. Continuing to draw blood while a hematoma is forming risks injury to the patient and collection of a specimen contaminated with hematoma blood that has mixed with tissue fluids from outside the vein. Such a specimen has a high probability of being hemolyzed and of being rejected for testing. Even if it is not hemolyzed, it can still produce inaccurate test results. The presence of a hematoma makes the site unacceptable for subsequent venipunctures. (See "Hematoma" under "Problem Sites").

If a hematoma forms during blood collection, the phlebotomist should discontinue the draw immediately and hold pressure over the site for a minimum of 2 minutes. A small amount of blood under the skin is relatively harmless and generally resolves on its own. If the hematoma is large and causes swelling and discomfort, the patient should be offered a cold compress or ice pack to relieve pain and reduce swelling. Follow facility protocol.

FYI *Acetaminophen or ibuprofen can help to relieve discomfort from a hematoma. Ice applied in the first 24 hours helps manage the swelling and discomfort. After 24 hours, application of heat or warm, moist compresses can encourage the resorption of accumulated blood.*

IATROGENIC ANEMIA

Iatrogenic is an adjective used to describe an adverse condition brought on by the effects of treatment. Blood loss as a result of blood removed for testing is called iatrogenic blood loss. Removing blood on a regular basis or in large quantities can lead to iatrogenic anemia in some patients, especially infants.

FYI *A primary reason for blood transfusion in neonatal ICU patients is to replace iatrogenic blood loss.*

Blood loss to a point where life cannot be sustained is called **exsanguination.** Life is threatened if more than 10% of a patient's blood volume is removed at one time or over a short period of time. Coordination with physicians to minimize the number of draws per patient, following quality assurance procedures to minimize redraws, collecting minimum required specimen volumes, especially from infants, and keeping a log of draws can help reduce iatrogenic blood loss.

INADVERTENT ARTERIAL PUNCTURE

Inadvertent arterial puncture is rare when proper venipuncture procedures are followed. It is most often associated with deep or blind probing, especially in the area of the basilic vein, which is in close proximity to the brachial artery. If an inadvertent arterial puncture goes undetected, leakage and accumulation of blood in the area can result in compression injury to a nearby nerve. Such injuries are often permanent and can lead to lawsuits.

Signs of inadvertent arterial puncture include a rapidly forming hematoma and blood filling the tube very quickly. In the absence of these clues, arterial blood can be recognized by the fact that it spurts or pulses into the tube or by its bright red color if the patient's pulmonary function is normal. If arterial puncture is suspected, terminate the venipuncture immediately and apply direct forceful pressure to the site for at least 5 minutes and until bleeding stops.

KEY POINT If you think a specimen might be arterial blood, check with laboratory personnel to determine if a suspected arterial specimen is acceptable for testing, as opposed to redrawing more blood from the patient. If testing is permitted, identify the specimen as possible arterial blood, since some test values are different for arterial specimens.

INFECTION

Although a rare occurrence, infection at the site following venipuncture does happen. The risk of infection can be minimized by the use of proper aseptic technique, which includes the following:

- Do not open adhesive tape or bandages ahead of time or temporarily tape them to your lab coat cuffs or other contaminated objects.
- Do not preload needles onto tube holders to have a supply for many draws ready ahead of time. The sterility of the needle is breached once the seal is broken.
- Before or during needle insertion, do not touch the site with your finger, gauze, or any other nonsterile object after it has been cleaned.
- Try to minimize the time between removing the needle cap and performing the venipuncture.
- Remind the patient to keep the bandage on for at least 15 minutes after specimen collection.

NERVE INJURY

Poor site or improper vein selection, inserting the needle too deeply or quickly, movement by the patient as the needle is inserted, excessive or lateral redirection of the needle, or blind probing while attempting venipuncture can lead to injury of a main nerve (such as the median cutaneous), the risk of permanent damage, and the possibility of a lawsuit. Follow national guidelines for site selection, vein selection, and venipuncture technique to minimize the risk of problems. If initial needle insertion does not result in successful vein entry and slight forward or backward redirection of the needle or use of a new tube does not result in blood flow, the needle should be removed and venipuncture attempted at an alternate site, preferably on the opposite arm.

CAUTION: Extreme pain, a burning or electric-shock sensation, numbness of the arm, and pain that radiates up or down the arm are all signs of nerve involvement, and any one of them requires immediate termination of the venipuncture. Application of an ice pack to the site after needle removal can help prevent or reduce inflammation associated with nerve involvement.

View the Reflux animation at http://thePoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

REFLUX OF ADDITIVE

In rare instances, it is possible for blood to **reflux** (flow back) into the patient's vein from the collection tube during the venipuncture procedure. Some patients have had adverse reactions to tube additives, particularly EDTA, that were attributed to reflux. Reflux can occur when the contents of the collection tube are in contact with the needle while the specimen is being drawn. To prevent reflux, the patient's arm must be kept in a downward position so that the collection tube remains below the venipuncture site and fills from the bottom up (Fig. 9-13). This prevents the tube-holder end of the needle from contacting blood in the tube. Back-and-forth movement of blood in the tube should also be avoided until the tube is removed from the evacuated tube holder. An outpatient can be asked to lean forward and extend the arm downward over the arm of the drawing chair to achieve proper positioning. Raising the head of the bed, extending the patient's arm over the side of the bed, or

Figure 9-13 Correct filling of tube to avoid reflux.

supporting the arm with a rolled towel can be used to help achieve proper positioning of a bedridden patient.

Sometimes, when venipuncture is performed using a butterfly, blood initially flows into the tubing, but then some of it starts to disappear back into the vein before the tube is engaged. This is an example of reflux; however, since the tube is not engaged, there is no danger of additive reflux.

VEIN DAMAGE

Properly performed, an occasional venipuncture will not impair the patency of a patient's vein. Numerous venipunctures in the same area over an extended period of time, however, will eventually cause a buildup of scar tissue and increase the difficulty of performing subsequent venipunctures. Blind probing and improper technique when redirecting the needle can also damage veins and impair patency.

Specimen Quality Concerns

The quality of a blood specimen can be compromised by improper collection techniques. A poor-quality specimen will generally yield poor-quality results, which can affect the patient's care. Because it is not always apparent to the phlebotomist or testing personnel when the quality of a specimen has been compromised, it is very important for the phlebotomist to be aware of the following pitfalls of collection.

HEMOCONCENTRATION

Test your knowledge of hemoconcentration with Knowledge Drill 9-5 in the WORKBOOK.

Tourniquet application causes localized **venous stasis,** or stagnation of the normal venous blood flow. (A similar term for this is **venostasis,** the trapping of blood in an extremity by compression of veins.) In response, some of the plasma and filterable components of the blood pass through the capillary walls into the tissues. This results in hemoconcentration, a decrease in the fluid content of the blood with a subsequent increase in nonfilterable large molecule or protein-based blood components such as red blood cells. Other abnormally increased analytes include albumin, ammonia, calcium, cholesterol, coagulation factors, enzymes, iron, potassium, and total protein. Changes that occur within 1 minute of tourniquet application are slight; however, prolonged tourniquet application can lead to marked changes.

Cholesterol levels can increase up to 5% after 2 minutes of tourniquet application and up to 15% after 5 minutes.

BOX 9-2 WAYS TO HELP PREVENT HEMOCONCENTRATION DURING VENIPUNCTURE

- Ask the patient to release the fist upon blood flow.
- Choose an appropriate patent vein.
- Do not allow the patient to pump the fist.
- Do not excessively massage the area in locating a vein.
- Do not probe or redirect the needle multiple times in search of a vein.
- Release the tourniquet within 1 minute.

Massaging or squeezing the site, probing for veins, long-term IV therapy, drawing blood from sclerosed or occluded veins, and vigorous hand pumping (making and releasing a fist) can also result in the collection of specimens affected by hemoconcentration.

KEY POINT Hand or fist pumping can increase blood potassium levels up to 20%. It is reported to be responsible for a third of all elevated potassiums and may also increase lactate and phosphate levels.

Test results on hemoconcentrated specimens may not accurately reflect the patient's true status, so it is important to try to avoid them. A list of ways to prevent hemoconcentration during venipuncture is presented in Box 9-2.

View the Hemolysis animation at http://thePoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

HEMOLYSIS

Hemolysis results when RBCs are damaged or destroyed and the hemoglobin they contain escapes into the fluid portion of the specimen. The red color of the hemoglobin makes the serum or plasma appear pink (slight hemolysis), dark pink to light red (moderate hemolysis), to dark red (gross hemolysis), and the specimen is described as being **"hemolyzed"** (Fig. 9-14).

Figure 9-14 Left to right: Normal serum specimen, specimen with slight hemolysis, and grossly hemolyzed specimen.

BOX 9-3 PROCEDURAL ERRORS THAT CAN CAUSE SPECIMEN HEMOLYSIS

- Drawing blood through a hematoma or from a vein with a hematoma
- Failure to wipe away the first drop of capillary blood, which can contain alcohol residue
- Forceful aspiration of blood during a syringe draw
- Forcing the blood from a syringe into an evacuated tube
- Frothing of blood caused by improper fit of the needle on a syringe
- Horizontal transport of tubes, which lets the blood slosh back and forth
- Mixing additive tubes vigorously, shaking them, or inverting them too quickly or forcefully
- Partially filling a normal-draw sodium fluoride tube
- Pulling back the plunger too quickly during a syringe draw
- Rough handling during transport
- Squeezing the site during capillary specimen collection
- Syringe transfer delay in which partially clotted blood is forced into a tube
- Using a large-volume tube with a small-diameter butterfly needle
- Using a needle with a diameter that is too small for venipuncture

Hemolyzed specimens can result from patient conditions such as hemolytic anemia, liver disease, or a transfusion reaction, but they are more commonly the result of procedural errors in specimen collection or handling that damages the RBCs. Hemolysis can erroneously elevate ammonia, catecholamines, creatine kinase and other enzymes, iron, magnesium, phosphate, and potassium levels; it can also decrease RBC counts. Consequently a specimen that is hemolyzed as a result of procedural error will most likely have to be redrawn. Box 9-3 lists procedural errors that can cause hemolysis.

KEY POINT A common procedural error by nursing personnel that causes hemolysis is drawing blood through an IV valve. IV valves are designed to prevent backflow of IV solution by allowing fluid to move in only one direction. Consequently the force required to pull blood through a valve in the opposite direction can hemolyze the specimen.

PARTIALLY FILLED TUBES

ETS tubes should be filled until the normal amount of vacuum is exhausted. Failing to do so results in a partially filled tube (Fig. 9-15), referred to as a short draw. Short-draw serum tubes such as red tops and SSTs are generally acceptable for testing as long as the specimen is not hemolyzed and there is sufficient specimen to perform the test. Underfilled anticoagulant tubes and most other additive tubes, however, may not contain the blood-to-additive ratio for which the tube was designed.

CAUTION: Never pour two partially filled additive tubes together to fill one tube, as this will also affect the blood-to-additive ratio.

Although in some cases underfilled additive tubes may be accepted for testing, the specimens can be compromised. For example:

- Excess EDTA in underfilled lavender-top tubes can shrink RBCs, causing erroneously low blood cell counts and hematocrits and negatively affecting the morphological examination of the RBCs on a blood smear. It can also alter the staining characteristics of the cells on a blood smear.
- Excess heparin in plasma from underfilled green-top tubes may interfere with the testing of some chemistry analytes.

Figure 9-15 Two examples of underfilled light blue–top tubes.

- Excess sodium fluoride in underfilled gray-top tubes can result in hemolysis of the specimen.
- Underfilled coagulation tubes do not have the correct blood-to-additive ratio and will produce erroneous results.

Inadvertent (unintentional) short draws are usually the result of difficult draw situations in which blood flow stops or vacuum is lost during needle manipulation. Phlebotomists sometimes underfill tubes on purpose when it is inadvisable to obtain larger quantities of blood, as when drawing from infants, children, or severely anemic individuals.

CAUTION: Some phlebotomists underfill tubes to save time. This practice is never recommended.

Partial-vacuum tubes are available that are the same size as some standard-fill tubes but designed to contain a smaller volume of blood. These tubes can be used in situations where it is difficult or inadvisable to draw larger amounts of blood. They are sometimes referred to as "short-draw" tubes, but when they are filled properly, the blood-to-additive ratio is correct even though they contain less blood. Some manufacturers' short-draw tubes have a line or arrow on the label to indicate the proper fill level (Fig. 9-16).

Figure 9-16 Normal draw tube shown with "short draw" tube designed for partial filling. Arrow on tube indicates proper fill level.

SPECIMEN CONTAMINATION

Specimen contamination is typically inadvertent and generally the result of improper technique or carelessness, such as

- Allowing, alcohol, fingerprints, glove powder, baby powder, or urine from wet diapers to contaminate newborn screening forms or specimens, leading to specimen rejection.
- Getting glove powder on blood films (slides) or in capillary specimens, resulting in misinterpretation of results. Calcium-containing powders can affect calcium results.
- Unwittingly dripping perspiration into capillary specimens during collection or any specimen during processing or testing. The salt in sweat, for example, can affect sodium and chloride levels.
- Using the correct antiseptic but not following proper procedure. For example, improperly cleaning blood-culture bottle tops or the collection site, touching the site after it has been prepped (cleaned), or inserting the needle before the antiseptic on the arm or bottle tops is dry. (Traces of the antiseptic in the culture medium can inhibit the growth of bacteria and cause false-negative results.) Performing capillary puncture before the alcohol is dry can cause hemolysis of the specimen and lead to inaccurate results or rejection of the specimen by the lab.
- Using the wrong antiseptic to clean the site prior to specimen collection. For example, using alcohol to clean the site can contaminate an ethanol (blood alcohol) specimen. Using povidone–iodine (e.g., Betadine) to clean a skin puncture site can contaminate the specimen and cause erroneously high levels of uric acid, phosphate, and potassium.

WRONG OR EXPIRED COLLECTION TUBE

Drawing a specimen in the wrong tube can affect test results and jeopardize patient safety if the error is not caught before testing. The error may not be caught if the phlebotomist is also the one who processes the specimen, as it is impossible to visually tell serum from plasma or one type of plasma from another if the specimen has been removed from the cells and transferred to an aliquot tube. A phlebotomist who is not certain of the type of tube required for a particular test must consult the procedure manual before collecting the specimen.

Additives in expired tubes may not work properly. For example, expired anticoagulant may allow the formation of microclots. Expiration dates of tubes must be checked routinely and expired tubes discarded.

Troubleshooting Failed Venipuncture

Test your venipuncture troubleshooting abilities with the WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 9-1.

Failure to initially draw blood during a venipuncture attempt can be caused by a number of procedural errors. Being aware of these errors and knowing how to correct them may determine whether you obtain blood on the first try or have to repeat the procedure. If you fail to obtain blood, remain calm so that you can clearly analyze the situation and check the following:

TUBE POSITION

Tube position is important. Check the tube to see that it is properly seated and the needle in the tube holder has penetrated the tube stopper. Reseat the tube to make certain that the needle sleeve is not pushing the tube off the needle.

View the needle position animations at http://thePoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

NEEDLE POSITION

Insertion of the venipuncture needle so that the bevel is correctly positioned within the vein is critical to the success of venipuncture. If the needle or bevel is incorrectly positioned, blood may not flow into the tube or syringe properly or at all. If blood flow is not established or the rate of flow is not normal, use visual cues to help determine if the needle is correctly

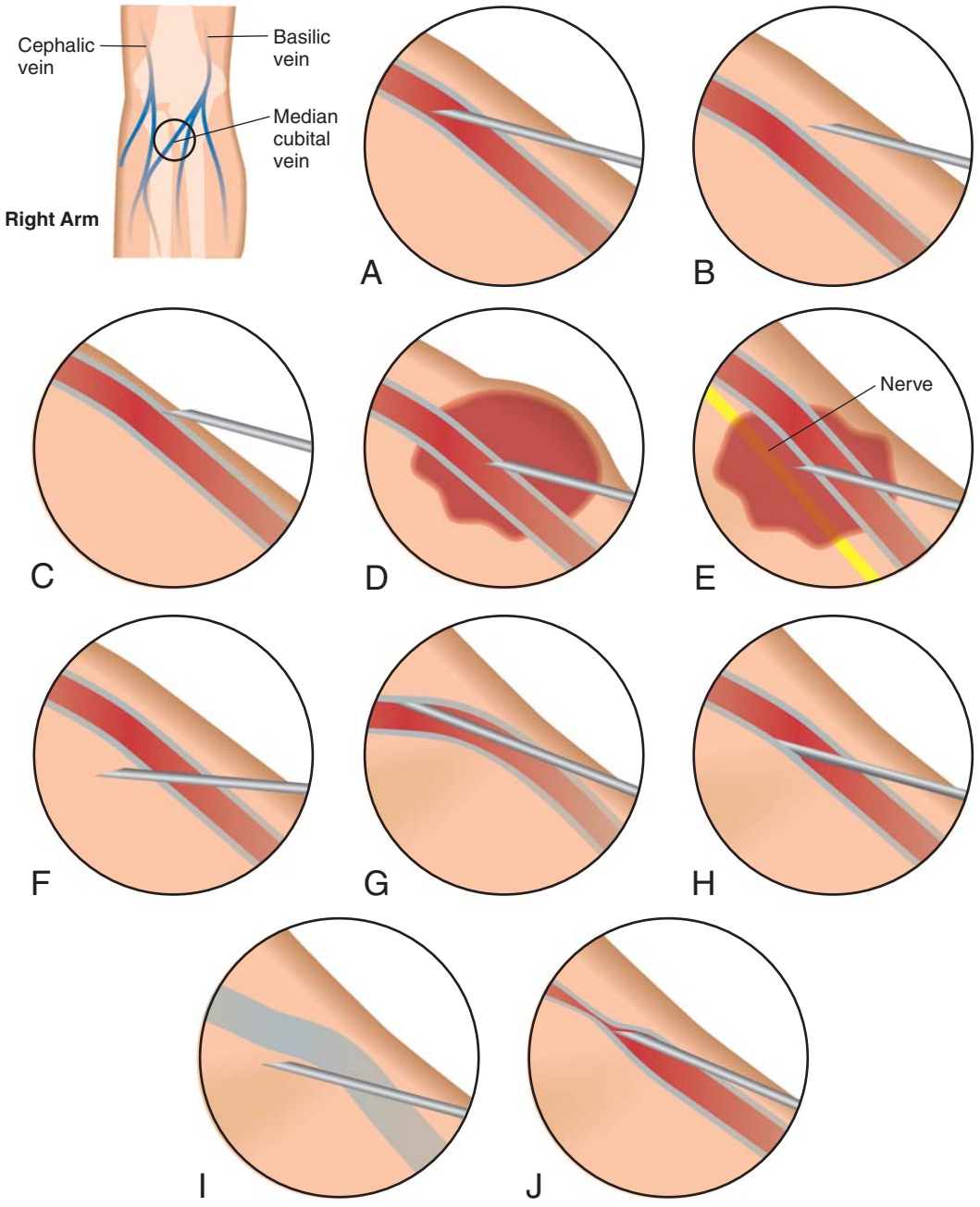


Figure 9-17 Needle position. **A.** Correct needle position; blood can flow freely into the needle. **B.** Needle not inserted far enough; needle does not enter vein. **C.** Needle bevel partially out of the skin; tube vacuum will be lost. **D.** Needle bevel partially into the vein; causes blood leakage into tissue. **E.** Needle bevel partially through the vein; causes blood leakage into tissue. **F.** Needle bevel completely through the vein; no blood flow obtained. **G.** Needle bevel against the upper vein wall prevents blood flow. **H.** Needle bevel against the lower vein wall prevents blood flow. **I.** Needle beside the vein; caused when a vein rolls to the side. **J.** Collapsed vein prevents blood flow despite correct needle position.

positioned in the vein. Some problems are harder to discern than others. Eliminate any that you can and try the remedy for the others to see if one works. All needle adjustments must be made slowly and precisely to avoid injuring the patient. Correct needle position is shown in Figure 9-17A.

Needle Not Inserted Far Enough

If the needle is not inserted far enough, it may not penetrate the vein at all (Fig. 9-17B). This can happen if the vein is located more deeply than normal (e.g., if the patient is extremely

overweight). In this case there will be no blood flow at all. To correct this problem, slowly advance the needle forward until blood flow is established.

CAUTION: One must be very certain that needle depth is the issue before advancing the needle, as the deeper a needle goes, the greater the chance of injuring a nerve, artery, or other tissue.

Bevel Partially out of the Skin

If the needle bevel is not completely under the skin after it is inserted the tube will lose its vacuum when engaged and fail to fill with blood even if the bevel is mostly in the vein. This can happen with arm veins that are close to the surface of the skin as well as hand veins, especially if the angle of needle entry is too steep. Tube vacuum can also be lost if the bevel backs out of the skin slightly (Fig. 9-17C) during a draw; for example, if the holder is not held securely when the tube is removed from it. A short hissing sound is often heard as the vacuum is lost, and there may be a spurt of blood into the tube before blood flow stops. Discard the tube and advance the needle slowly until the bevel is under the skin before engaging a new tube. A hand vein may require you to thread the needle bevel within the lumen vein slightly. If the angle is too steep and the vein is small, the bevel may go through the vein before it is completely under the skin, in which case the venipuncture will have to be terminated and a new site chosen.

FYI *A patient who hears the hissing sound when the tube vacuum is lost during a draw may be alarmed and need reassurance that nothing harmful has happened.*

Bevel Partially into the Vein

If the needle is not inserted deeply enough, the bevel may be beneath the skin but only partly through the upper vein wall (Fig. 9-17D), resulting in the blood filling the tube very slowly. Correct blood flow should be established by gently pushing the needle forward into the vein. If not corrected quickly, partial needle insertion can cause blood to leak into the tissue and form a hematoma. If this occurs, discontinue the draw immediately and hold pressure over the site.

CAUTION: Continuing the draw while a hematoma is forming increases the risk of injury to the patient and the collection of blood from outside the vein; this blood would be contaminated with tissue fluids and is very likely to be hemolyzed.

Bevel Partially Through the Vein

If the needle is inserted too deeply, too quickly, or at an angle that is too steep part of the bevel may penetrate the lower wall of the vein (Fig. 9-17E). If this is not corrected quickly, blood can leak into the tissue below the vein and result in hematoma formation, which may not be apparent until long after the draw is completed. If the needle appears to be inserted deeply and blood fills the tube slowly, this may be the case. Pull the needle back slightly until normal blood flow is established. If it appears that a hematoma has already formed, discontinue the draw immediately, and hold pressure over the site.

CAUTION: Blood that pools beneath a vein can put pressure on underlying nerves, causing pain and the possibility of nerve damage.

Bevel Completely Through the Vein

If the needle has gone in too deep, the bevel may penetrate all the way through the vein (Fig. 9-17F). In this case, there may be a small spurt of blood into the tube as the bevel goes through the vein, or there may be no blood flow at all. This can happen on needle insertion,

especially if the needle angle is too steep, or as a tube is pushed onto the needle if the tube holder is not held steady. To correct this problem, slowly withdraw the needle until blood flow is established. If the needle position is not corrected quickly, blood may leak out around the needle into the tissues and form a hematoma. Even after correction, blood may still leak out of the opening caused by the needle, especially if the tourniquet is left on throughout the draw. This too can result in a hematoma that is not apparent until long after the draw is completed. If a hematoma is visible, discontinue the draw.

Bevel Against a Vein Wall

Blood flow can be impaired if the needle bevel is up against the upper or lower wall of the vein. This can happen if the needle angle is wrong. For example, an angle that is too shallow can cause the needle bevel to contact the upper wall (Fig. 9-17G). This can also happen if the needle is inserted near a bend in the vein or at a point where the vein goes deeper into the skin. An angle that is too steep, or inserting the needle with the bevel down, can cause the needle to contact the lower wall (Fig. 9-17H). Most of these situations are hard to detect. Remove the tube from the needle in the holder to release vacuum pull on the vein and pull the needle back slightly. (Rotating the bevel slightly may also help.) Advance the tube back onto the needle. If blood flow is established, the problem most likely was an issue with the bevel and the vein wall.

CAUTION: Tube vacuum may hold the vein wall against the needle bevel. Do not rotate the bevel of the needle without first removing the tube and pulling the needle back slightly or the vein may be injured.

Needle Beside the Vein

Vein walls are sometimes tough, and if a vein is not anchored well with the thumb, it may roll (move away) slightly and the needle may slip to the side of the vein instead of into it (Fig. 9-17I). Often the needle ends up beside the vein and slightly under it as well. (This is often the case with the basilic vein, which is not well anchored in the tissue to begin with.) If this happens, disengage the tube to preserve the vacuum, withdraw the needle slightly until just the bevel is under the skin, anchor the vein securely, redirect the needle into the vein, and re-engage the tube. If redirection is unsuccessful, discontinue the draw and choose a new site. Do not search or probe for the vein or move the needle in a lateral (sideways) direction to find it.

FYI

When phlebotomists "miss" veins, they often tell patients that they have "veins that roll." This leads patients to mistakenly believe that there is a problem with their veins, when more than likely the problem is the phlebotomist's technique.

Undetermined Needle Position

If you cannot determine the position of the needle and the above solutions do not help, you may have to use your finger to relocate the vein. Remove the tube from the holder needle and withdraw the needle until the bevel is just under the skin. Clean your gloved finger with alcohol and palpate the arm above the point of needle insertion to try to determine needle position and vein location. Be careful not to feel too close to the needle, as this would cause pain. Once you have relocated the vein, pull the skin taut and redirect the needle into it. If you cannot relocate the vein (or if access to it would require lateral redirection of the needle), discontinue the draw and select a new site.

CAUTION: *Do not* blindly probe the arm in an attempt to locate a vein. Probing is painful to the patient and can damage nerves or lead to inadvertent puncture of an artery.

COLLAPSED VEIN

A vein can collapse despite correct needle position. When a vein collapses, the walls draw together temporarily, shutting off blood flow (Fig. 9-17J). This can happen if the vacuum draw

of a tube or the pressure created by pulling on a syringe plunger is too much for the vein. A vein can also collapse if the tourniquet is tied too tightly or too close to the venipuncture site. In this case, blood cannot be replaced as quickly as it is withdrawn, causing the vein to collapse. In addition, veins sometimes collapse when the tourniquet is removed during the draw. This is often the case in elderly patients, whose veins are fragile and collapse more easily.

Stoppage of blood flow upon tourniquet removal does not necessarily mean that the vein has collapsed. It may be that the needle is no longer positioned properly and a slight adjustment is needed to re-establish blood flow.

A clue that a normally visible vein has collapsed is that it disappears as soon as the tube is engaged or when the tourniquet is removed. If the ends of the tourniquet are lying over the arm, grasp them with your free hand and twist them together to reintroduce pressure. That may be enough to re-establish blood flow. If the tourniquet cannot be retightened, use your finger to apply pressure to the vein several inches above the needle. Remove the tube from the needle and wait a few seconds for the blood flow to re-establish itself before re-engaging it. Try using a smaller-volume tube or pull more slowly on the plunger if you are using a syringe. If the blood flow is not re-established, discontinue the venipuncture and attempt a second venipuncture at another site.

TUBE VACUUM

A tube can lose its vacuum during a venipuncture if the needle bevel is not completely under the skin. (See "Bevel Partially Out of the Skin," explained earlier, and Figure 9-17C.) Tubes can also lose vacuum during shipping and handling, when they bump one another in trays, if they are dropped, or if they are pushed too far onto the needle prior to venipuncture. If you suspect that a tube has lost its vacuum, try using a new one. If you fail to establish blood flow during a draw and repositioning the needle doesn't help, try using a new tube before giving up on the draw, as it could be a vacuum problem.

KEY POINT Tube vacuum problems at the start of a draw may be a sign that the tube is cracked or has been dropped. Cracked tubes present a safety hazard because they may leak or break with further handling. Never use a tube that has been dropped. Discard it instead.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Peak levels of this analyte typically occur around 0800 hours.**
   a. Bilirubin
   b. Cortisol
   c. Eosinophil
   d. Glucose

2. **Which of these tests are most affected if the patient is not fasting?**
   a. CBC and protime
   b. Glucose and triglycerides
   c. RA and cardiac enzymes
   d. Blood culture and thyroid profile

3. **Veins that feel hard and cord-like when palpated may be**
   a. collapsed.
   b. fistulas.
   c. thrombosed.
   d. venules.

4. **Tiny red spots that appear on a patient's arm when the tourniquet is applied are a sign that the**
   a. patient is allergic to latex.
   b. patient is anemic.
   c. site may bleed excessively.
   d. tourniquet is too tight.

5. **When the arm of the patient is swollen with excess fluids, the condition is called**
   a. edema.
   b. hemoconcentration.
   c. icterus.
   d. syncope.

6. **A patient has several short lengths of IV-type tubing protruding from his chest. This is most likely a/an**
   a. A-line.
   b. CVC.
   c. implanted port.
   d. PICC.

7. **Which of the following would be most likely to allow reflux to occur during venipuncture?**
   a. Filling the tube stopper end-first
   b. Lateral redirection of the needle
   c. Tourniquet release on blood flow
   d. Using the wrong order of draw

8. **A patient complains of extreme pain when you insert the needle during a venipuncture attempt. The pain does not subside, but the patient does not feel any numbness or burning sensation. You know the needle is in the vein because the blood is flowing into the tube. You have only two tubes to fill, and the first one is almost full. What should you do?**
   a. Ask the patient if he or she wants you to continue the draw.
   b. Discontinue the draw and attempt collection at another site.
   c. Distract the patient with small talk and continue the draw.
   d. Tell the patient to hang in there as you have only one tube left.

9. **Which of the following situations can result in hemoconcentration?**
   a. Drawing a large tube with a small needle
   b. Leaving the tourniquet on over 1 minute
   c. Mixing the specimen too vigorously
   d. Partially filling a normal-draw tube

10. **You are in the process of collecting a specimen by venipuncture. You hear a hissing sound, there is a spurt of blood into the tube, and blood flow stops. What has most likely happened?**
    a. Reflux of tube contents.
    b. The needle went too deep.
    c. The vein has collapsed.
    d. Tube vacuum escaped.

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 9-1 *Physiological Variables, Problem Sites, and Patient Complications*

Charles is a phlebotomist who works in a physician's office laboratory. One morning shortly after the drawing station opens he is asked to collect blood specimens for a CBC and a glucose test from a very heavy set woman who appears quite ill. The patient tells Charles that she vomited all night and was unable to eat or drink anything. She also mentions that she has had a mastectomy on the left side and the last time she had blood collected she was stuck numerous times before the phlebotomist was able to collect the specimen.

QUESTIONS:

1. *What physiological variables may be associated with the collection of this specimen and how should they be dealt with?*
2. *What complications might Charles expect and how should he prepare for them?*
3. *How should Charles go about selecting the blood collection site?*
4. *What options does Charles have if he is unable to select a proper venipuncture site?*

CASE STUDY 9-2 *Troubleshooting Failed Venipuncture*

A phlebotomist named Sara is in the process of collecting a protime and CBC from a patient. The needle is in the patient's vein. As Sara pushes the first tube onto the needle in the tube holder, there is a spurt of blood into the tube and she hears a hissing sound. Then the blood stops flowing. She repositions the needle but is not able to establish blood flow.

QUESTIONS:

1. *Why did blood spurt into the tube and then stop?*
2. *What clues are there to determine what the problem is?*
3. *What can Sara do to correct the problem?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Bishop ML, Fody EP, Schoeff LE. *Clinical Chemistry: Principles, Procedures, Correlations,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.

Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, Bruns DE. *Tietz Fundamentals of Clinical Chemistry,* 5th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2007.

Cavalieri TA, Chopra A, Bryman PN. When outside the norm is normal: Interpreting lab data in the aged. *Geriatrics* 1992;47(5):66–70.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute H3-A6. *Procedures for the Collection of Diagnostic Blood Specimens by Venipuncture: Approved Standard,* 6th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2007.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute H4-A6. *Procedures and Devices for the Collection of Diagnostic Capillary Blood Specimens: Approved Standard,* 6th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2008.

College of American Pathologists (CAP). *So You're Going to Collect a Blood Specimen,* 12th ed. Northfield, IL: CAP, 2005.

Dale JC. Preanalytical variables in laboratory testing. *Lab Medicine,* 1998;29:540–545.

Ernst DJ. *Applied phlebotomy.* Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.

Ernst DJ. *Blood Specimen Collection FAQs.* Ramsey, Indiana: Center for Phlebotomy Education, 2008.

Foran SE, Lewandrowski KB, Krantz A. Effects of exercise on laboratory test results. *Lab Medicine,* 2003;34:736–742.

Henry JB. *Clinical Diagnostics and Management of Laboratory Methods*, 20th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2001.

Howanitz PJ. Errors in laboratory medicine: Practical lessons to improve patient safety. *Laboratory Medicine* 2005;129(10):1252–1261.

Lippi G, Salvagno GL, Montagnana M, Guidi GC. Short-term venous stasis influences routine coagulation testing. *Blood Coagulation Fibrinolysis* 2005;16(6):453–458.

Magee LS. Preanalytical variables in the chemistry laboratory. *Becton Dickinson Lab Notes* 2005;15(1).

Malcolm L, Brigden ML, Heathcote JC. Problems in interpreting laboratory tests: What do unexpected results mean? *Postgraduate Medicine* 2000;107(7). Accessed 11-04-05.

Managing preanalytical variability in hematology. *Becton Dickinson Lab Notes* 2004;14(1).

Mayo Foundation for Medical Education and Research. Postural and venous stasis–induced changes in total calcium. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings* 2005;80:1100–1101 (letter).

Roda B, Fritsma G, Doig K. *Hematology: Clinical Principles and Applications,* 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007.

Rock RC. Interpreting laboratory tests: A basic approach. *Geriatrics* 1984;39(1):49–54.

Tryding N. *Drug Effects in Clinical Chemistry.* Washington, DC: AACC Press, 2007.

Young D. Effects of preanalytical variables on clinical laboratory tests. Washington, DC: AACC Press, 1997.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Animations:
  - Hemolysis
  - Needle positions:
    - Correct Needle Position
    - Needle Not Inserted Far Enough
    - Bevel Partially out of the Skin
    - Bevel Partially into the Vein
    - Bevel Partially Through the Vein
    - Bevel Completely Through the Vein
    - Bevel Against Upper Vein Wall
    - Bevel Against Lower Vein Wall
    - Needle Beside the Vein
    - Collapsed Vein
  - Reflux
- Videos:
  - How to Handle a Fainting Patient
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **BD Vacutainer(R) LabNotes-Preanalytical errors in the emergency department:** http://www.bd.com/vacutainer/labnotes/Volume17Number1/
- **Errors in Laboratory Medicine:** http://wwwn.cdc.gov/mlp/qiconference/Presentations/CDC%20Atlanta%20Plebani1.pdf
- **Lab Explorer:** http://www.labexplorer.com/lab_links.htm
- **Preanalytical Variables:** http://www.thedoctorsdoctor.com/labtests/Preanalytical_variables.htm
- **Resource Center:** http://www.specimencare.com/
- **Troubleshooting Erroneous Potassiums:** http://www.bd.com/vacutainer/pdfs/VS7048_troubleshooting_erroneous_potassiums_poster.pdf
- **Troubleshooting Hemolysis Issues in the Clinical Laboratory:** *http://www.bd.com/vacutainer/labnotes/Volume16Number2/*

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

CHAPTER
10

Capillary Puncture Equipment and Procedures

KEY TERMS

Do the Key Term Matching exercise in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

arterialized
blood film/smear
calcaneus
CBGs
cyanotic
differential
feather
galactosemia
hypothyroidism
interstitial fluid
intracellular fluid
lancet
microcollection containers
microhematocrit tubes
newborn/neonatal screening
osteochondritis
osteomyelitis
PKU
plantar surface
posterior curvature
whorls

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. List and describe the various types of equipment needed for capillary specimen collection.
3. Describe the composition of capillary specimens, identify which tests have different reference values when collected by capillary puncture methods, and name tests that cannot be performed on capillary specimens.
4. Identify indications for performing capillary puncture on adults, children, and infants.
5. List the order of draw for collecting capillary specimens.
6. Describe the proper procedure for selecting the puncture site and collecting capillary specimens from adults, infants, and children.
7. Describe how both routine and thick blood smears are made and the reasons for making them at the collection site.
8. Explain the clinical significance of capillary blood gas, neonatal bilirubin, and newborn screening tests and describe how specimens for these tests are collected.

OVERVIEW

Drops of blood for testing can be obtained by puncturing or making an incision in the capillary bed in the dermal layer of the skin with a lancet, other sharp device, or laser. Terms typically used to describe this technique include capillary, dermal, or skin puncture, regardless of the actual type of device or method used to penetrate the skin, and the specimens obtained are respectively referred to as capillary, dermal, or skin puncture specimens. (To best reflect the nature and source of the specimen, and for simplification and consistency, the terms capillary specimen and capillary puncture are used in this chapter.) With the advent of laboratory instrumentation capable of testing small sample volumes, specimens for many laboratory tests can now be collected in this manner. This chapter covers capillary equipment, principles, collection sites, and procedures. Although steps may differ slightly, procedures in this chapter conform to CLSI Standards.

KEY POINT Capillary specimen collection is especially useful for pediatric patients in whom removal of larger quantities of blood can have serious consequences.

Capillary Puncture Equipment

In addition to blood collection supplies and equipment described in Chapter 7, the following special equipment may be required for skin puncture procedures.

LANCETS/INCISION DEVICES

A **lancet** is a sterile, disposable, sharp-pointed or bladed instrument that either punctures or makes an incision in the skin to obtain capillary blood specimens for testing. Lancets are available in a range of lengths and depths to accommodate various specimen collection requirements. Selection depends on the age of the patient, collection site, volume of specimen required, and the puncture depth needed to collect an adequate specimen without injuring bone. Lancets are specifically designed for either finger puncture (Fig. 10-1), or heel puncture (Fig. 10-2), and must have OSHA-required safety features.

KEY POINT An important OSHA required lancet safety feature is a permanently retractable blade or needle point to reduce the risk of accidental sharps injury.

LASER LANCETS

Several companies make devices that perforate the skin with a laser instead of a sharp instrument. A laser typically vaporizes water in the skin to produce a small hole in the capillary bed without cauterizing delicate capillaries. Because no sharp instrument is involved, there is no risk of accidental sharps injury, and no need for sharps disposal. The Lasette® (Fig 10-1C) (Beijing Sincoheren Science & Technology Developing Co., Ltd, Beijing, China) has single-use, disposable inserts to prevent cross-contamination between patients. It is cleared by the FDA for use on the fingers of adults and children 5 years of age and older. Use on children younger than 5 years of age is subject to a physician's discretion.

MICROCOLLECTION CONTAINERS

Microcollection containers (Fig. 10-3), also called microtubes, are special small plastic tubes used to collect the tiny amounts of blood obtained from capillary punctures. They are often referred to as "bullets" because of their size and shape. Some come fitted with narrow plastic capillary tubes (Fig. 10-3B) to facilitate specimen collection. Most have color-coded bodies or stoppers that correspond to color-coding of ETS blood collection tubes, and markings for

Figure 10-1 Several types of finger puncture lancets. **A.** BD Microtainer® Contact Activated Lancets (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ). **B.** Tenderlett® Toddler, Junior, and Adult lancets (Courtesy ITC, Edison, NJ). **C.** Capiject® Safety Lancets. (Courtesy Terumo Medical Corp., Somerset, NJ). **D.** ACCU-CHEK® Safe-T-Pro Plus lancet with three depth settings (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN). **E.** Lasette® laser lancet (Photo courtesy lancet developer Cell Robotics, Lasette now owned by Beijing Sincoheren Science & Technology Developing Co., Ltd, Beijing, China).

Figure 10-2 Several types of heel puncture lancets. **A.** BD QuikHeel® infant lancet, also available in a preemie version (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ). **B.** Tenderfoot® toddler (*pink*), newborn (*pink/blue*), preemie (*white*), and micro-preemie (*blue*) heel incision devices (Courtesy ITC, Edison, NJ).

Figure 10-3 Examples of microcollection containers. **A.** Microtainers® (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ). **B.** MiniCollect® Capillary Blood Collection Tubes (Courtesy of Greiner Bio-One International AG, Kremsmunster, Austria). **C.** Capiject® EDTA Capillary Blood Collection Tube (Terumo, Somerset, NJ). **D.** Samplette™ capillary blood collection collectors (Courtesy Tyco Healthcare, Kendall, Mansfield, MA). **E.** BD Microtainer®MAP (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ).

minimum and maximum fill levels that are typically measured in microliters (µL) ,such as 250 µL and 500 µL, respectively (Fig. 10-3C). A relatively new microtube, the BD Microtainer® MAP (Fig. 10-3E) has a penetrable septum for use with automated hematology systems. Some manufacturers print lot numbers and expiration dates on each tube.

CAUTION: Sometimes venous blood obtained by syringe during difficult draw situations is put into microcollection containers. When this is done, the specimen must be labeled as venous blood. Otherwise, it will be assumed to be a capillary specimen, which may have different reference ranges.

MICROHEMATOCRIT TUBES AND SEALANTS

Microhematocrit tubes (Fig. 10-4) are disposable, narrow-bore plastic or plastic-clad glass capillary tubes that fill by capillary action and typically hold 50 to 75 µL of blood. They are used primarily for manual hematocrit (Hct), also called packed cell volume (PVC), determinations.

Figure 10-4 Plastic Clad Microhematocrit tubes (Courtesy Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ).

The tubes come coated with ammonium heparin, for collecting Hct tubes directly from a capillary puncture, or plain, to be used when an Hct tube is filled with blood from a lavender-top tube. Heparin tubes typically have a red or green band on one end; nonadditive tubes have a blue band. Smaller microhematocrit tubes designed for use with special microcentrifuges, such as those available from StatSpin, Inc. (Norwood, MA), require as little as 9 µL of blood and are often used in infant and child anemia screening programs and pediatric clinics. Plastic or clay sealants that come in small trays are used to seal one end of microhematocrit tubes. Traditionally, the dry end of the tube was inserted into the clay to plug it. Because of safety concerns, it is now recommended that sealing methods be used that do not require manually pushing the tube into the sealant or products be used that measure Hct without centrifugation.

CAPILLARY BLOOD GAS EQUIPMENT

The following special equipment (Fig. 10-5) is used to collect **capillary blood gas (CBG)** specimens:

- *CBG collection tubes:* CBG collection tubes are long thin narrow-bore capillary tubes. They are normally plastic for safety and are available in a number of different sizes to accommodate volume requirements of various testing instruments. The most common

Figure 10-5 Capillary blood gas collection equipment displayed with arterial blood gas syringes. (Courtesy Sarstedt, Inc., Newton, NC.)

Fisherbrand
DISPOSABLE—SINGLE USE ONLY
Gel Infant Heel Warmer
Cat. No.: 22-024-647
To Activate:
1. Locate metal disc and grasp with thumb and forefingers of both hands.
2. Flex (bend) disc rapidly.
3. Massage pack to soften; apply.
NOTE: For warmer nurseries (75° F and up), or premature babies, knead pack after activation for 30 seconds.
Store at room temperature.
Temperature when activated: 105° F (from 75° F start)
Contents: Sodium acetate (food grade), water and thickeners.
Curtin Matheson Scientific
Houston, TX 77038
Fisher HealthCare

Figure 10-6 An infant heel warmer.

CBG tubes are 100 mm in length with a capacity of 100 µL. A color-coded band identifies the type of anticoagulant that coats the inside of the tube; it is normally green, indicating sodium heparin.

- *Stirrers:* Stirrers are small metal filings (often referred to as "fleas") or small metal bars that are inserted into the tube after collection of a CBG specimen to aid in mixing the anticoagulant.
- *Magnet:* Both ends of a CBG tube are sealed immediately after specimen collection to prevent exposure to air, and a magnet is used to mix the specimen. The magnet typically has an opening in the center or side so that it can be slipped over the capillary tube and moved back and forth along the tube length, pulling the metal stirrer with it, and mixing the anticoagulant into the blood specimen.
- *Plastic caps:* Plastic end caps or closures are used to seal CBG tubes and maintain anaerobic conditions in the specimen. CBG tubes typically come with their own caps.

MICROSCOPE SLIDES

Glass microscope slides are occasionally used to make blood films for hematology determinations. (See Chapter 7, General Blood Collection Equipment and Supplies.)

When you finish the chapter, have fun seeing how many types of equipment you can identify from among the cross-word clues in the WORKBOOK.

WARMING DEVICES

Warming the site increases blood flow as much as seven times. This is especially important when performing heelsticks on newborns. Heel-warming devices (Fig. 10-6) are commercially available. To avoid burning the patient, the devices provide a uniform temperature that does not exceed 42°C. A towel or diaper dampened with warm tap water can also be used to wrap a hand or foot before skin puncture. However, care must be taken not to get the water so hot that it scalds the patient.

Capillary Puncture Principles

COMPOSITION OF CAPILLARY SPECIMENS

Capillary specimens are a mixture of arterial, venous, and capillary blood, along with **interstitial fluid** (fluid in the tissue spaces between the cells) and **intracellular fluid** (fluid within the cells) from the surrounding tissues. Because arterial blood enters the capillaries under pressure, capillary blood contains a higher proportion of arterial blood than venous blood and therefore more closely resembles arterial blood in composition. This is especially true if the area has been warmed, because warming increases arterial flow into the area.

REFERENCE VALUES

Because the composition of capillary blood differs from that of venous blood, reference (normal) values may also differ. For example, the concentration of glucose is normally higher in capillary blood specimens, whereas total protein (TP), calcium (Ca^{2+}), and potassium (K^{+}), concentrations are lower.

KEY POINT Although potassium values are normally lower in properly collected skin puncture specimens, levels may be falsely elevated if there is tissue fluid contamination or hemolysis of the specimen.

INDICATIONS FOR CAPILLARY PUNCTURE

A properly collected capillary specimen can be a practical alternative to venipuncture when small amounts of blood are acceptable for testing. Capillary puncture can be an appropriate choice for adults and older children under the following circumstances:

- Available veins are fragile or must be saved for other procedures such as chemotherapy.
- Several unsuccessful venipunctures have been performed and the requested test can be collected by capillary puncture.
- The patient has thrombotic or clot-forming tendencies.
- The patient is apprehensive or has an intense fear of needles.
- There are no accessible veins (e.g. the patient has IVs in both arms or the only acceptable sites are in scarred or burned areas).
- To obtain blood for POCT procedures such as glucose monitoring

Capillary puncture is the preferred method of obtaining blood from infants and very young children for the following reasons:

- Infants have a small blood volume; removing quantities of blood typical of venipuncture or arterial puncture can lead to anemia. According to studies, for every 10 mL of blood removed, as much as 4 mg of iron is also removed.
- Large quantities removed rapidly can cause cardiac arrest. Life is threatened if more than 10% of a patient's blood volume is removed at once or over a short period.
- Obtaining blood from infants and children by venipuncture is difficult and may damage veins and surrounding tissues.
- Puncturing deep veins can result in hemorrhage, venous thrombosis, infection, and gangrene.
- An infant or child can be injured by the restraining method used while performing a venipuncture.
- Capillary blood is the preferred specimen for some tests, such as newborn screening tests.

CAUTION: Capillary puncture is generally *not* appropriate for patients who are dehydrated or have poor circulation to the extremities from other causes, such as shock, because specimens may be hard to obtain and may not be representative of blood elsewhere in the body.

TESTS THAT CANNOT BE COLLECTED BY CAPILLARY PUNCTURE

Although today's technology allows many tests to be performed on very small quantities of blood, and a wide selection of devices are available to make collection of skin puncture specimens relatively safe and easy, some tests cannot be performed on skin puncture specimens. These include most erythrocyte sedimentation rate methods, coagulation studies that require plasma specimens, blood cultures, and tests that require large volumes of serum or plasma.

CAUTION: Although light blue top microtubes are available from some manufacturers, they are not to be used for capillary specimens. They are intended to be used for venous blood collected by syringe in difficult draw situations.

ORDER OF DRAW

The order of draw for collecting multiple specimens by capillary puncture is not the same as for venipuncture. Puncturing the skin releases tissue thromboplastin, which activates the coagulation process in the blood drops. Specimens must be collected quickly to minimize the effects of platelet clumping and microclot formation and to ensure that an adequate amount of specimen is collected before the site stops bleeding. Hematology specimens are collected first because they are most affected by the clotting process. Serum specimens are collected last because they are supposed to clot. The CLSI order of draw for capillary specimens is as follows:

- Blood gas specimens (CBGs)
- EDTA specimens
- Other additive specimens
- Serum specimens

KEY POINT Specimens for newborn screening tests should be collected separately.

Capillary Puncture Steps

Capillary punctures have the same general steps regardless of whether they are fingersticks or heelsticks. The first four steps are the same as Chapter 8 venipuncture steps 1 through 4.

STEP 1: REVIEW AND ACCESSION TEST REQUEST

STEP 2: APPROACH, IDENTIFY, AND PREPARE PATIENT

STEP 3: VERIFY DIET RESTRICTIONS AND LATEX SENSITIVITY

STEP 4: SANITIZE HANDS AND PUT ON GLOVES

STEP 5: POSITION PATIENT

Position is important to patient comfort and the success of specimen collection. For finger punctures, the patient's arm must be supported on a firm surface with the hand extended and palm up. A young child is typically held in the lap by a parent or guardian who restrains the child with one arm and holds the child's arm steady with the other. For heel punctures, an infant should be supine (lying face up) with the foot lower than the torso so the force of gravity can assist blood flow.

Confirm that you know how to select a safe site by doing WORKBOOK Labeling Exercises 10-1 and 10-2.

STEP 6: SELECT THE PUNCTURE/INCISION SITE

General site selection criteria include one that is warm, pink or normal color, and free of scars, cuts, bruises, or rashes. It should not be **cyanotic** (bluish in color), **edematous** (swollen), or infected. Swollen or previously punctured sites should be avoided, because accumulated tissue fluid can contaminate the specimen and negatively affect test results. Specific locations for capillary puncture include fingers of adults and heels of infants.

Adults and Older Children

The CLSI recommended site for capillary puncture on adults and children older than 1 year is the palmar surface of the distal or end segment of the middle or ring finger of the nondominant hand. (Fingers on the nondominant hand are typically less calloused.) The puncture site

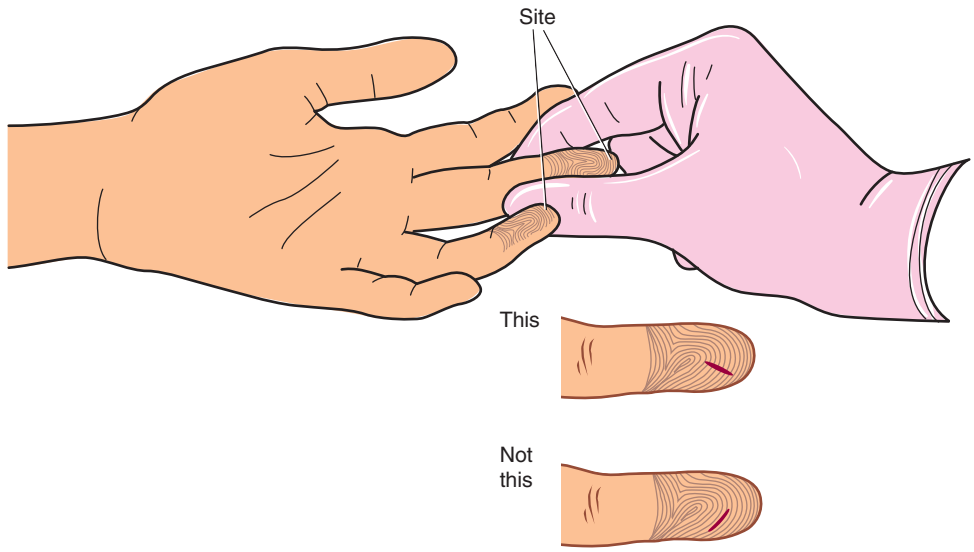


Figure 10-7 The recommended site and direction of finger puncture.

should be in the central, fleshy portion of the finger, slightly to the side of center and perpendicular to the grooves in the **whorls** (spiral pattern) of the fingerprint (Fig. 10-7). Finger puncture precautions are summarized and explained in Box 10-1.

KEY POINT Some texts refer to the end segment of the finger as the distal phalanx. This is not to be confused with the use of the term phalanx (pl. phalanges) for finger bone.

CAUTION: According to CLSI standards, capillary puncture *must not* be performed on the fingers or earlobes of newborns or other infants under 1 year of age.

BOX 10-1 FINGER PUNCTURE PRECAUTIONS

- *Do not* puncture fingers of infants and children under 1 year of age. The amount of tissue between skin surface and bone is so small that bone injury is very likely. Infection and gangrene have been identified as complications of finger punctures in newborns.
- *Do not* puncture fingers on the same side as a mastectomy without consultation with the patient's physician. The arm on the same side as a mastectomy is susceptible to infection, and effects of lymphostasis can lead to erroneous results.
- *Do not* puncture parallel to the grooves or lines of the fingerprint. A parallel puncture will allow blood to run down the finger rather than form a rounded drop, and make collection difficult.
- *Do not* puncture the fifth or little (pinky) finger. The tissue between skin surface and bone is thinnest in this finger, and bone injury is likely.
- *Do not* puncture the index finger. It is usually more calloused and harder to puncture. It is also more sensitive so the puncture can be more painful; and, because that finger is typically used more, a patient may notice the pain longer.
- *Do not* puncture the side or very tip of the finger. The distance between the skin surface and the bone is half as much at the side and tip as it is in the central fleshy portion of the end of the finger.
- *Do not* puncture the thumb. It has a pulse, indicating an artery in the puncture area, and the skin is generally thicker and more calloused, making it difficult to obtain a good specimen.

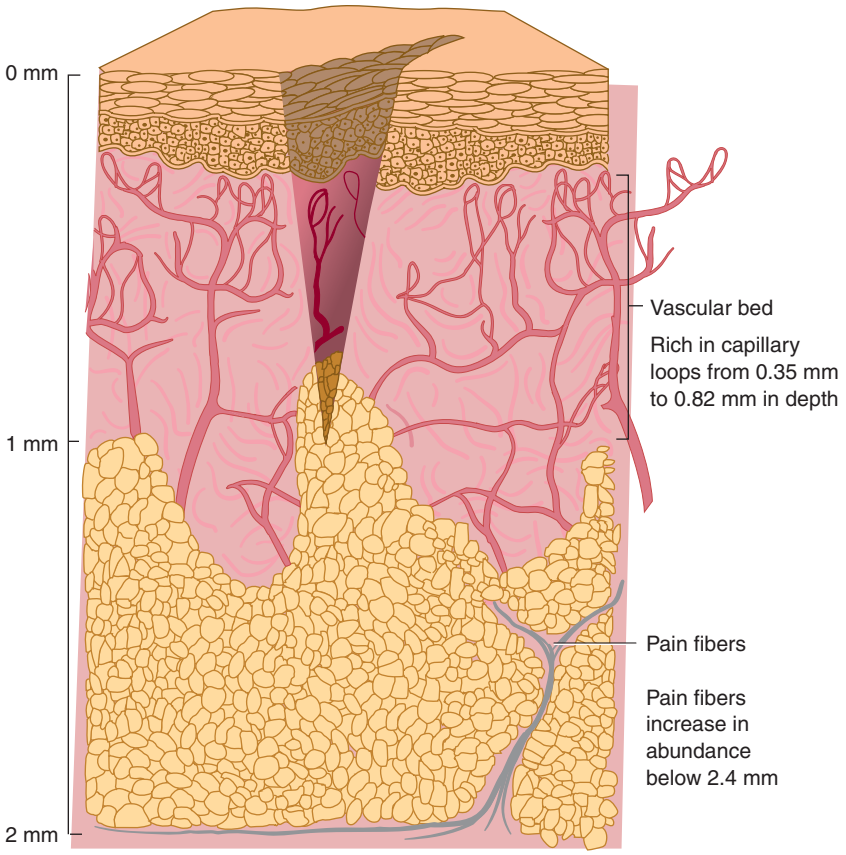

0 mm
1 mm
2 mm
Vascular bed
Rich in capillary loops from 0.35 mm to 0.82 mm in depth
Pain fibers
Pain fibers increase in abundance below 2.4 mm

Figure 10-8 A cross-section of full-term infant's heel showing lancet penetration depth needed to access the capillary bed.

Infants

Do Matching 10-3 in the WORKBOOK to test your knowledge of heel puncture precautions.

The heel is the recommended site for collection of capillary puncture specimens on infants less than 1 year of age. However, it is important to perform the puncture in an area of the heel where there is little risk of puncturing the bone. Puncture of the bone can cause painful **osteomyelitis** (os'te-o-mi'el-i'tis), inflammation of the bone marrow and adjacent bone, or **osteochondritis** (os'te-o-kon-dri'tis), inflammation of the bone and cartilage, as a result of infection. Additional punctures through a previous puncture site that is inflamed can spread an infection.

Studies have shown that the **calcaneus** (kal-ka'ne-us) or heel bone of small or premature infants may be as little as 2.0 mm below the skin surface on the plantar or bottom surface of the heel and half that distance at the **posterior curvature** (back) of the heel. Punctures deeper than this may cause bone damage. The vascular or capillary bed (Fig. 10-8) in the skin of a newborn is located at the dermal–subcutaneous junction between 0.35 and 1.6 mm beneath the skin surface, so punctures 2.0 mm deep or less will provide adequate blood flow without risking bone injury.

KEY POINT Pain fibers increase in abundance below the capillary bed, so deeper punctures are more painful.

According to CLSI, to avoid puncturing bone the only safe areas for heel puncture are on the plantar surface of the heel, medial to an imaginary line extending from the middle of the great toe to the heel or lateral to an imaginary line extending from between the fourth and fifth toes to the heel (Fig. 10-9). Punctures in other areas risk bone, nerve, tendon, and cartilage injury. Heel puncture precautions are summarized in Box 10-2.

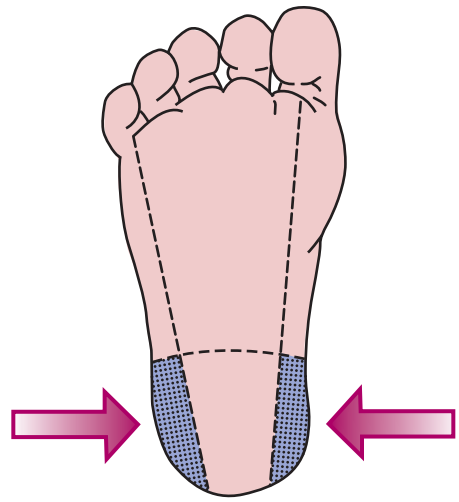


Figure 10-9 An infant heel. *Shaded areas indicated by arrows* represent recommended safe areas for heel puncture.

Memory Jogger One way to remember that the safe areas for heel puncture are the medial or lateral plantar surfaces of the heel is to think of the phrase "Make little people happy." Using the first letter of each word, "M" stands for medial, "L" stands for lateral, "P" stands for plantar, and "H" stands for heel.

STEP 7: WARM THE SITE IF APPLICABLE

Warming increases blood flow up to sevenfold and, except for PaO_2 levels, does not significantly alter results of routinely tested analytes. Increased blood flow makes specimens easier and faster to obtain and reduces the tendency to compress or squeeze the site, which can contaminate the specimen with tissue fluid and hemolyze red blood cells. Because the increase is caused by arterial flow into the area, a specimen obtained from a warmed site is described as being **arterialized.** Consequently, warming the site is essential when collecting capillary pH or blood gas specimens. Warming is typically recommended for heelstick procedures because infants normally have high red blood cell counts and other factors that result in relatively thick blood that flows slowly. Warming may also be required before fingersticks when patients have cold hands. Warming can be accomplished by wrapping the site for 3 to 5 minutes with a

BOX 10-2 HEEL PUNCTURE PRECAUTIONS

- *Do not* puncture any deeper than 2.0 mm. Deeper punctures risk injuring the bone, even in the safest puncture areas.
- *Do not* puncture areas between the imaginary boundaries. The calcaneus may be as little as 2.0 mm deep in this area.
- *Do not* puncture in the arch and any areas of the foot other than the heel. Arteries, nerves, tendons, and cartilage in these areas can be injured.
- *Do not* puncture severely bruised areas. It is painful, and impaired circulation or byproducts of the healing process can negatively affect the specimen.
- *Do not* puncture the posterior curvature of the heel. The bone can be as little as 1 mm deep in this area.
- *Do not* puncture through previous puncture sites. This can be painful and can spread previously undetected infection.
- *Do not* puncture a site that is swollen. Excess tissue fluid in the area could contaminate the specimen.

washcloth, towel, or diaper that has been moistened with comfortably warm water or using a commercial heel warming device.

CAUTION: The temperature of the material used to warm the site must not exceed 42°C (108°F) because higher temperatures can burn the skin, especially the delicate skin of an infant.

STEP 8: CLEAN AND AIR-DRY SITE

The collection site must be cleaned with an antiseptic before puncture, so that skin flora (microorganisms on the skin) do not infiltrate the puncture wound and cause infection. The CLSI-recommended antiseptic for cleaning a capillary puncture site is 70% isopropanol.

CAUTION: *Do not* use povidone–iodine to clean skin puncture sites because it greatly interferes with a number of tests, most notably bilirubin, uric acid, phosphorus, and potassium.

Memory Jogger Help remember the tests affected by povidone–iodine by associating them with the word BURPP, where "B" stands for bilirubin, "UR" stands for uric acid, and the two "Ps" stand for phosphorous and potassium.

After cleaning, allow the site to air-dry to ensure maximum antiseptic action and minimize the chance of alcohol contamination of the specimen. Residual alcohol, in addition to causing a stinging sensation, causes rapid hemolysis of red blood cells. It has also been shown to interfere with glucose testing.

STEP 9: PREPARE EQUIPMENT

Gloves are put on at this point if not put on in step 4. Select collection devices according to the tests that have been ordered and place them within easy reach, along with several layers of gauze or gauze-type pads. Select a new, sterile lancet/incision device according to the site selected, age of the patient, and amount of blood to be collected. Prepare equipment in view of the patient or guardian to provide assurance that it is new and being handled aseptically. Verify lancet sterility by checking to see that packaging is intact before opening. Open the package or protective cover in an aseptic manner and do not allow the device opening to rest or brush against any nonsterile surface. If the lancet/incision device has a protective shield or locking feature that prevents accidental activation, remove or release it per manufacturer's instructions. Hold the device between the thumb and index fingers or as described by the manufacturer.

STEP 10: PUNCTURE THE SITE AND DISCARD LANCET

Finger Puncture

Grasp the patient's finger between your nondominant thumb and index finger. Hold it securely in case of sudden movement. Place the lancet device flat against the skin in the central, fleshy pad of the finger, slightly to the side of center and perpendicular to the fingerprint whorls as described in step 6.

KEY POINT With very young children it is usually best to grasp three or four of the child's fingers (Fig. 10-10) between your fingers and thumb. If you grasp only one finger, the child may twist it trying to pull away. Although you are holding more fingers, it is still easy to puncture the middle finger because it is normally the longest and sticks out farthest.

Figure 10-10 Holding a toddler's fingers prior to capillary puncture (Courtesy ITC, Edison, NJ).

Heel Puncture

Grasp the foot gently but firmly with your nondominant hand. Encircle the heel by wrapping your index finger around the arch and your thumb around the bottom. Wrap the other fingers around the top of the foot. Place the lancet flat against the skin on the medial or lateral plantar surface of the heel. Follow manufacturer's instructions for direction of puncture.

KEY POINT Most manufacturers of heel incision devices recommend puncturing the heel at a 90-degree angle to the length of the foot. This creates a "gap" puncture (i.e., a puncture that opens when pressure is applied).

Both Finger Puncture and Heel Puncture

Use sufficient pressure to keep the device in place without deeply compressing the skin. Warn the patient (or patient's parent or guardian) of impending puncture, and activate the release mechanism to trigger the puncture. Remove the device from the skin immediately following puncture and discard it in a sharps container.

STEP 11: WIPE AWAY THE FIRST BLOOD DROP

Position the site downward and apply gentle pressure toward the site to encourage blood flow. Wipe away the first drop of blood with a dry gauze pad. The first drop is typically contaminated with excess tissue fluid, and may contain alcohol residue that can hemolyze the specimen and also keep the blood from forming a well-rounded drop. In addition, there have been reports of isopropyl alcohol contamination causing errors in blood glucose testing.

KEY POINT Some POCT instruments may allow use of the first drop, so follow manufacturer's instructions.

STEP 12: FILL AND MIX TUBES/CONTAINERS IN ORDER OF DRAW

Continue to position the site downward to enhance blood flow and apply gentle, intermittent pressure to tissue surrounding a heel puncture site or proximal to a finger puncture site.

CAUTION: Do not squeeze, use strong repetitive pressure, or "milk" the site, as hemolysis and tissue fluid contamination of the specimen can result.

Collect subsequent blood drops using devices appropriate for the ordered tests. Collect slides, platelet counts, and other hematology specimens first to avoid the effects of platelet aggregation (clumping) and clotting. Collect other anticoagulant containers next, and serum specimens last according to the CLSI order of draw for capillary specimens.

To fill a collection tube or device, touch it to the drop of blood formed on the surface of the skin.

- If making a blood film, touch the appropriate area of the slide to the blood drop.
- A microhematocrit or narrow-bore capillary tube will fill automatically by "capillary" action if held in a vertical position above, or a horizontal position beside, the blood drop while touching one end to the blood drop. While maintaining contact with the blood drop, the opposite end of the tube may need to be lowered slightly and brought back into position now and then as it fills. Do not remove the tube from the drop or continually hold or tip the tube below the site. This can result in air spaces in the specimen that cause inaccurate test results. When the tube is full, plug the opposite (or dry end) with clay or other suitable sealant.
- To fill a microcollection container or microtube, hold it upright just below the blood drop. Touch the tip of the tube's "scoop" to the drop of blood and allow the blood to run down the inside wall of the tube. The scoop should touch only the blood and not the surface of the skin. This allows blood to be collected before it runs down the surface of the finger or heel.

CAUTION: Do not use a scooping motion against the surface of the skin and attempt to collect blood as it flows down the finger. Scraping the scoop against the skin activates platelets, causing them to clump, and can also hemolyze the specimen.

You may need to tap microtubes gently now and then to encourage the blood to settle to the bottom. When filled to an appropriate level, seal containers with the covers provided. Mix additive microtubes by gently inverting them 8 to 10 times or per manufacturer's instructions. If blood flow stops and you are unable to collect sufficient specimen, the procedure may be repeated at a new site with a new lancet.

CAUTION: Pay strict attention to fill levels of microtubes containing anticoagulants. Excess anticoagulant in underfilled microtubes can negatively affect test results. Overfilling can result in the presence of microclots in the specimen or even complete clotting of the specimen.

STEP 13: PLACE GAUZE AND APPLY PRESSURE

After collecting specimens, apply pressure to the site with a clean gauze pad until bleeding stops. Keep the site elevated while applying pressure. An infant's foot should be elevated above the body while pressure is applied.

STEP 14: LABEL SPECIMEN AND OBSERVE SPECIAL HANDLING INSTRUCTIONS

Label the specimens with the appropriate information (see Chapter 8). Include nature and source of specimen according to facility policy. Label in view of the patient/guardian, and affix labels directly to microcollection containers. Microhematocrit tubes can be placed in a nonadditive tube or an appropriately sized aliquot tube and identifying information written on the label; or follow laboratory protocol. Follow any special handling required, such as cooling in crushed ice (e.g., ammonia), transportation at body temperature (e.g., cold agglutinin), or light protection (e.g., bilirubin).

STEP 15: CHECK THE SITE AND APPLY BANDAGE

The site must be examined to verify that bleeding has stopped. If bleeding persists beyond 5 minutes, notify the patient's nurse or physician. If bleeding has stopped and the patient is

an older child or adult, apply a bandage and advise the patient to keep it in place for at least 15 minutes.

CAUTION: *Do not* apply bandages to infants and children under 2 years of age because they pose a choking hazard. In addition, bandage adhesive can stick to the paper-thin skin of newborns and tear it when the bandage is removed.

STEP 16: DISPOSE OF USED AND CONTAMINATED MATERIALS

Equipment packaging and bandage wrappers are normally discarded in the regular trash. Some facilities require contaminated items, such as blood-soaked gauze, to be discarded in biohazard containers. Follow facility protocol.

STEP 17: THANK PATIENT, REMOVE GLOVES, AND SANITIZE HANDS

Thanking the patient is courteous and professional. Gloves must be removed in an aseptic manner and hands washed or decontaminated with hand sanitizer as an infection control precaution.

STEP 18: TRANSPORT SPECIMEN TO THE LAB

Prompt delivery to the lab protects specimen integrity and is typically achieved by personal delivery, transportation via a pneumatic tube system, or a courier service.

Capillary Puncture Procedures

Most capillary punctures are fingersticks. Fingerstick procedure is illustrated in Procedure 10-1. Heel punctures are performed on infants under 1 year of age. Heelstick procedure is illustrated in Procedure 10-2.

Check out the Capillary Blood Specimen Collection video and the Introductory and Identification Processes Required Prior to Blood Specimen Collection video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 10-1 Fingerstick Procedure

PURPOSE: To obtain a blood specimen for patient diagnosis or monitoring from a finger puncture

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, warming device (optional), antiseptic prep pad, safety finger puncture lancet, microcollection tubes or other appropriate collection devices, gauze pads, sharps container, permanent ink pen, bandage

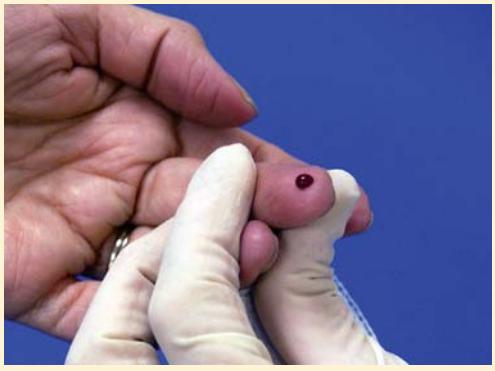
Step	Explanation/Rationale
1–3. See Chapter 8 Venipuncture steps 1 through 3.	See Chapter 8 Procedure 8-2: steps 1 through 3.
4. Sanitize hands and put on gloves.	Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in infection control by protecting the phlebotomist, the patient, and others from contamination. Gloves are required at this point to protect the phlebotomist from bloodborne pathogen exposure.
5. Position the patient.	The patient's arm must be supported on a firm surface with the hand extended and the palm up. A young child may have to be held on the lap and restrained by a parent or guardian.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 10-1 Fingerstick Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
6. Select the puncture/incision site.	Select a site in the central, fleshy portion and slightly to the side of center of a middle or ring finger that is warm, pink or normal color, and free of scars, cuts, bruises, infection, rashes, swelling, or previous punctures.
7. Warm the site, if applicable.	Warming makes blood collection easier and faster, and reduces the tendency to squeeze the site. It is not normally part of a routine fingerstick unless the hand is cold, in which case, wrap it in a comfortably warm washcloth or towel for 3 to 5 minutes or use a commercial warming device.
8. Clean and air-dry the site.	CLSI recommends 70% isopropanol for cleaning capillary puncture sites. Cleaning removes or inhibits skin flora that could infiltrate the puncture and cause infection. Letting the site dry naturally permits maximum antiseptic action, prevents contamination caused by wiping, and avoids stinging on puncture and specimen hemolysis from residual alcohol.
9. Prepare the equipment.	Select a fingerstick lancet according to the age of the patient and amount of blood to be collected. Verify lancet sterility by checking to see that packaging is intact before opening; open and handle aseptically to maintain sterility. Select collection devices according to the ordered tests. Place items within easy reach along with several layers of gauze or gauze-type pads. Remove or release any lancet locking mechanism and hold the lancet between the thumb and index finger or per manufacturer's instructions.
10. Puncture the site and discard the lancet/incision device.	Grasp the patient's finger between your nondominant thumb and index finger, holding it securely in case of sudden movement. Place the lancet flat against the skin in the central, fleshy pad of the finger, slightly to the side of center to avoid bone injury, and perpendicular to the fingerprint whorls so the blood will form easily collected drops and not run down the fingerprint. Warn the patient or parent/guardian, trigger the puncture, and discard the lancet in sharps container.

PROCEDURE 10-1 Fingerstick Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
11. Wipe away the first blood drop. 	Apply gentle pressure until a blood drop forms, and use a clean gauze pad to wipe it away. This prevents contamination of the specimen with excess tissue fluid and rids the site of alcohol residue that could prevent formation of well-rounded drops and also hemolyze the specimen.
12. Fill and mix the tubes/containers in order of draw	Collect subsequent blood drops using devices appropriate for the ordered tests and in the CLSI order of draw to minimize effects of clotting on specimens. Hold a microhematocrit tube above or beside the site and touch one end to the blood drop. You may need to lower the opposite end of the tube slightly as it fills, but do not remove it from the drop because this creates air spaces in the specimen that compromise results. When the tube is full, plug the opposite or dry end with clay or other suitable sealant. Hold a microcollection tube below the blood drop. Touch the scoop to the blood drop and allow it to run down the inside wall of the tube. The tube may need a gentle tap occasionally to settle blood to the bottom. Seal tubes when full and mix additive tubes by gently inverting them 8 to 10 times.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 10-1 Fingerstick Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
13. Place gauze and apply pressure.	Apply pressure with a clean gauze pad and elevate the site until bleeding stops.
14. Label the specimen and observe special handling instructions.	Specimens must be labeled with the appropriate information (see Chapter 8). Affix labels directly to microcollection containers. Place microhematocrit tubes in a nonadditive or aliquot tube and place the label on this container. Follow any special handling required.
15. Check the site and apply bandage.	Examine the site to verify that bleeding has stopped; apply a bandage if the patient is an older child or adult, and advise the patient to keep it in place for at least 15 minutes. If bleeding persists beyond 5 minutes, notify the patient's nurse or physician.
16. Dispose of used and contaminated materials.	Discard equipment packaging and bandage wrappers in the trash. Follow facility protocol for discarding contaminated items, such as blood-soaked gauze.
17. Thank patient, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Thanking the patient is courteous and professional. Remove gloves aseptically and wash or decontaminate hands with sanitizer as an infection control precaution.
18. Transport specimen to the lab.	Prompt delivery to the lab is necessary to protect specimen integrity.

PROCEDURE 10-2 Heelstick Procedure

PURPOSE: To obtain a blood specimen for patient diagnosis or monitoring from a heel puncture

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, warming device, antiseptic prep pad, safety heel puncture lancet, microcollection tubes or other appropriate collection devices, gauze pads, sharps container, permanent ink pen

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1–3. See Chapter 8 venipuncture steps 1 through 3.	See Chapter 8 Procedure 8-2: steps 1 through 3.
4. Sanitize hands and put on gloves.	Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in infection control by protecting the phlebotomist, the patient, and others from contamination. Gloves should be put on at this point.
5. Position the patient.	The infant should be lying face up with the foot lower than the torso so gravity can assist blood flow.
6. Select the puncture/incision site.	Select a site on the medial or lateral plantar surface of the heel that is warm, normal color, and free of cuts, bruises, infection, rashes, swelling, or previous punctures.
7. Warm the site, if applicable.	Warming makes blood collection easier and faster and reduces the tendency to squeeze the site. Warm the heel by wrapping it in a comfortably warm washcloth, towel, or diaper for 3 to 5 minutes or use a commercial heel-warming device.

PROCEDURE 10-2 Heelstick Procedure (Continued)

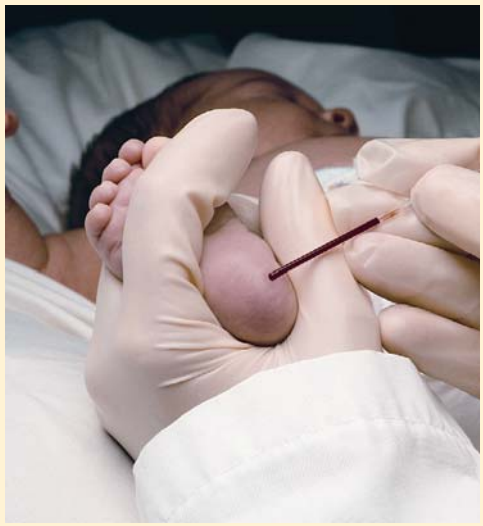
Step	Explanation/Rationale
8. Clean and air-dry the site. 	CLSI recommends 70% isopropanol for cleaning capillary puncture sites. Cleaning removes or inhibits skin flora that could infiltrate the puncture and cause infection. Letting the site dry naturally permits maximum antiseptic action, prevents contamination caused by wiping, and avoids stinging on puncture and specimen hemolysis from residual alcohol.
9. Prepare the equipment. 	Select a heel puncture device. Verify packaging is intact to assure sterility. Open and handle aseptically to maintain sterility. Select blood collection devices according to the ordered tests. Place items within easy reach along with several layers of sterile gauze. Release any locking mechanism, and hold the lancet between the thumb and index finger.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 10-2 Heelstick Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
10. Puncture the site and discard the lancet/incision device.	Grasp the foot gently, but firmly with your nondominant hand. Encircle the heel with your index finger around the arch, thumb around the bottom, and other fingers around the top of the foot. Place the lancet flat against the skin on the medial or lateral plantar surface of the heel, using sufficient pressure to keep it in place without deeply compressing the skin. Trigger the puncture, and discard the lancet in a sharps container.
11. Wipe away the first blood drop.	Position the foot downward and apply gentle pressure to the site to encourage blood flow. Wipe away the first blood drop with a gauze pad to prevent contamination of the specimen with excess tissue fluid and rid the site of alcohol residue that could prevent formation of well-rounded drops and also hemolyze the specimen.

PROCEDURE 10-2 Heelstick Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
12. Fill and mix tubes/containers in order of draw. 	Collect subsequent blood drops using appropriate devices for the ordered tests and fill them in the same manner described in fingerstick procedure step 12. Follow CLSI order of draw for capillary specimens to minimize effects of clotting.
13. Place gauze and apply pressure.	Apply pressure with a clean gauze pad and elevate the foot until bleeding stops.
14. Label the specimen and observe special handling instructions.	Specimens must be labeled with the appropriate ID information (see Chapter 8). Affix labels directly to microcollection containers. Place microhematocrit tubes in a nonadditive or aliquot tube and place the label on this container. Follow any special handling required.
15. Check the site.	Examine the site to verify that bleeding has stopped. If bleeding persists beyond 5 minutes, notify the patient's nurse or physician. Do not apply a bandage to an infant because it can become a choking hazard and can also tear the skin when removed.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 10-2 Heelstick Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
16. Dispose of used and contaminated materials.	Discard equipment packaging and bandage wrappers in the trash. Follow facility protocol for discarding contaminated items, such as blood-soaked gauze.
17. Thank parent or guardian, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Thanking the parent or guardian is courteous and professional. Remove gloves aseptically and wash or decontaminate hands with sanitizer as an infection control precaution.
18. Transport specimen to the lab.	Prompt delivery to the lab is necessary to protect specimen integrity.

Special Capillary Puncture Procedures

CAPILLARY BLOOD GASES

Capillary puncture blood is less desirable for blood gas analysis, primarily because of its partial arterial composition and also because it is temporarily exposed to air during collection, which can alter test results. Consequently, **capillary blood gas specimens** (CBGs) are rarely collected on adults. However, because arterial punctures can be hazardous to infants and young children, blood gas analysis on these patients is sometimes performed on capillary specimens.

CBG specimens are collected from the same sites as routine capillary puncture specimens. Warming the site for 5 to 10 minutes before collection is necessary to increase blood flow and arterialize the specimen. Proper collection technique is essential to minimize exposure of the specimen to air. Collection of a capillary blood gas specimen by heel puncture is illustrated in Procedure 10-3.

PROCEDURE 10-3 Collection of a Capillary Blood Gas (CBG) Specimen by Heel Puncture

PURPOSE: To obtain a specimen for blood gas analysis by capillary puncture

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, warming device, antiseptic prep pad, safety lancet, special capillary tube with caps, metal filings (fleas) or stirrer bar, magnet, sterile gauze pads, sharps container, permanent ink pen

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1–6. Same as routine heelstick procedures	See capillary puncture steps 1 through 6
7. Warm the site.	Warming the site is required to arterialize the specimen. It also makes blood collection easier and faster and reduces the tendency to squeeze the site. Warm the heel by wrapping it in a comfortably warm washcloth, towel, or diaper for 3 to 5 minutes or use a commercial heel-warming device.
8. Clean and air-dry the site.	CLSI recommends cleaning a heel puncture site with 70% isopropanol to remove or inhibit skin flora that could infiltrate the puncture and cause infection. Letting the site dry naturally permits maximum antiseptic action, prevents contamination caused by wiping, and avoids stinging on puncture and specimen hemolysis from residual alcohol.

PROCEDURE 10-3 Collection of a Capillary Blood Gas (CBG) Specimen by Heel Puncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
9. Prepare the equipment.	Place a metal stirrer bar or metal filings (fleas) in the capillary tube to help mix the specimen during collection. Place tube caps and magnet within easy reach along with several layers of sterile gauze. Select, open, prepare, and hold a sterile puncture device as described in Heelstick Procedure 10-2 step 9.
10. Puncture the site and discard the lancet.	Grasp the heel and puncture the site as described in Heelstick Procedure 10-2 step 10. Immediately discard the puncture device.
11. Wipe away the first drop of blood.	Wiping the first drop removes excess tissue fluid and alcohol residue that could affect test results.
12. Fill the capillary tube with blood.	Collect the specimen quickly to minimize exposure of the blood drops to air, and carefully to prevent introduction of air spaces in the tube. The tube must be completely full with no air spaces or results will be inaccurate.
13. Immediately cap both ends of the tube.	The tube must be sealed as soon as possible to prevent exposure to air and protect blood gas composition.
14. Mix the specimen with the magnet.	Run the magnet back and forth the full length of the tube several times. The magnet pulls the metal stirrer (or fleas) with it, mixing the blood with the heparin and preventing clotting.
15. Label the tube.	Specimens must be labeled with the appropriate ID information.
16. Place the tube in ice slurry.	Place the tube horizontally in ice slurry. Cooling slows WBC metabolism and prevents changes in pH and blood gas values.
17. Check the puncture site.	Examine the site to verify that bleeding has stopped. If bleeding persists beyond 5 minutes, notify the patient's nurse or physician. Do not apply a bandage to an infant because it can become a choking hazard and can also tear the skin when removed.
18. Dispose of used and contaminated materials.	Discard equipment packaging and bandage wrappers in the trash. Follow facility protocol for discarding contaminated items, such as blood-soaked gauze.
19. Thank parent or guardian, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Thanking the parent or guardian is courteous and professional. Remove gloves aseptically and wash or decontaminate hands with sanitizer as an infection control precaution.
20. Transport specimen to the lab.	Prompt delivery to the lab is necessary to protect specimen integrity.

Can you find "bilirubin" among the scrambled words in WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 10-2?

NEONATAL BILIRUBIN COLLECTION

Neonates (newborns) are commonly tested to detect and monitor increased bilirubin levels caused by overproduction or impaired excretion of bilirubin. Overproduction of bilirubin occurs from accelerated red blood cell hemolysis associated with hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN). Impaired bilirubin excretion often results from temporary abnormal liver

Figure 10-11 A newborn infant with jaundice. (Reprinted with permission from Carol Mattson Porth, *Pathophysiology Concepts of Altered Health States*, 7th ed., Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.)

function commonly associated with premature infants. High levels of bilirubin result in jaundice (yellow skin color) (Fig. 10-11).

Bilirubin can cross the blood–brain barrier in infants, accumulating to toxic levels that can cause permanent brain damage or even death. A transfusion may be needed if levels increase at a rate equal to or greater than 5.0 mg/dL per hour or when levels exceed 18.0 mg/dL. Bilirubin breaks down in the presence of light. Consequently, jaundiced infants are often placed under special ultraviolet (UV) lights to lower bilirubin levels.

CAUTION: The UV light must be turned off when collecting a bilirubin specimen to prevent it from breaking down bilirubin in the specimen as it is collected.

Bilirubin specimens are normally collectd by heel puncture. Proper collection procedure is crucial to the accuracy of results. Specimens must be collected quickly to minimize exposure to light and must be protected from light during transportation and handling. To reduce light exposure, specimens are typically collected in amber-colored microcollection containers (Fig. 10-12). Specimens must be collected carefully to avoid hemolysis, which could falsely decrease bilirubin

Figure 10-12 An amber-colored microcollection container used to protect a bilirubin specimen from effects of ultraviolet light.

results. Because determining the rate of increase in bilirubin levels depends on accurate timing, specimens should be collected as close as possible to the time requested.

NEWBORN/NEONATAL SCREENING

Newborn/neonatal screening (NBS) is the state mandated testing of newborns for the presence of certain genetic (inherited), metabolic (chemical changes within living cells), hormonal, and functional disorders that can cause severe mental handicaps or other serious abnormalities if not detected and treated early. Some states also screen for infectious agents, such as toxoplasma and HIV. The number and type of newborn screening tests varies by state. Requirements for disorders to be included in NBS screening panels include benefits to early diagnosis, availability of accurate tests to confirm diagnosis, and better health as a result of early detection and treatment.

For a fee, some labs will perform additional newborn screening tests that are not part of state-mandated testing.

The March of Dimes recommends that all newborns be screened for 29 specific disorders, including hearing loss, for which there is effective treatment (Table 10-1). So far, 48 states and the District of Columbia screen for 21 or more of the 29 disorders.

There are 25 other conditions that are often identified during NBS for which there is currently limited information or no treatment.

Screening for **phenylketonuria** (PKU), **galactosemia,** and **hypothyroidism** is required by law in all 50 states and U.S. territories. Mandatory screening for cystic fibrosis (CF) became effective in all 50 states and the District of Columbia by the end of 2009.

- ***Phenylketonuria:*** Phenylketonuria is a genetic disorder characterized by a defect in the enzyme that breaks down the amino acid phenylalanine, converting it into the amino acid tyrosine. Without intervention, phenylalanine, which is in almost all food, accumulates in the blood and is only slowly metabolized by an alternate pathway that results in increased phenylketones in the urine. PKU cannot be cured but normally can be treated with a diet low in phenylalanine. If left untreated or not treated early on, phenylalanine can rise to toxic levels and lead to brain damage and mental retardation. PKU testing typically requires the collection of two specimens, one shortly after an infant is born and another after the infant is 10 to 15 days old. The incidence of PKU in the United States is approximately 1 in 10,000 to 25,000 births.
- ***Hypothyroidism:*** Hypothyroidism is a disorder that is characterized by insufficient levels of thyroid hormones. If left untreated, the deficiency hinders growth and brain development. Some forms of neonatal hypothyroidism, although congenital (present at birth), are not inherited but temporarily acquired because the mother has the condition. Newborn screening tests detect both inherited and noninherited forms. In the United States and Canada, the newborn screening test for hypothyroidism measures total thyroxine (T_4). Positive results are confirmed by measuring thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) levels. The disorder is treated by supplying the missing thyroid hormone orally. The incidence of hypothyroidism is 1 in 4,000 births.
- ***Galactosemia:*** Galactosemia (GALT) is an inherited disorder characterized by lack of the enzyme needed to convert the milk sugar galactose into glucose needed by the body for energy. Within a week of birth, an infant with galactosemia will fail to thrive due to anorexia, diarrhea, and vomiting unless galactose and lactose (lactose breaks down to galactose and glucose) are removed from the diet. Untreated, the infant may starve to death.

TABLE 10-1 March of Dimes Recommended Newborn Screening Tests by Category

Disorder Description	Untreated	Consequence if Screening Tests	Category
Organic acid metabolism disorders	Inherited disorders resulting from inactivity of an enzyme involved in the breakdown of amino acids and other body substances, such as lipids, sugars, and steroids	Toxic acids build up in the body and can lead to coma and death within the first month of life.	IVA (isovaleric acidemia) GA I (glutaric acidemia) HMG (3-OH,3-CH_3-glutaric aciduria) MCD (multiple carboxylase deficiency) MUT (methylmalonic acidemia from mutase deficiency) Cbl A, B (methylmalonic acidemia) 3MCC (3-methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency) PROP (propionic acidemia) BKT (beta-ketothiolase deficiency)
Fatty acid oxidation disorders	Disorders involving inherited defects in enzymes that are needed to convert fat into energy	The body is unable to produce alternate fuel when it runs out of glucose as can happen with illness or skipping meals. Glucose deprivation negatively affects the brain and other organs, and can lead to coma and death.	MCAD (medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency) VLCAD (very long-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency) LCHAD (long-chain L-3-OH-acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency) TFP (trifunctional protein deficiency) CUD (carnitine uptake defect)
Amino acid metabolism disorders	A diverse group of disorders. Some involve lack of an enzyme needed to breakdown an amino acid Others involve deficiencies of enzymes that aid in the elimination of nitrogen from amino acid molecules	Toxic levels of amino acids or ammonia can build up in the body, causing a variety of symptoms and even death. Severity of symptoms varies by disorder.	PKU (phenylketonuria) MSUD (maple syrup urine disease) HCY (homocystinuria) CIT (citrullinemia) ASA (argininosuccinic acidemia) TYR I (tyrosinemia type I)
Hemoglobinopathies	Inherited disorders of the red blood cells that result in varying degrees of anemia and other health problems	Anemias that vary in severity by disorder and by individual	Hb SS (sickle cell anemia) Hb S/Th (hemoglobin S/beta thalassemia) Hb S/C (hemoglobin S/C disease)
Others	Mixed group of inherited and noninherited disorders	Severity varies from mild to life threatening, depending on the disorder.	CH (congenital hypothyroidism) BIOT (biotinidase deficiency) CAH (congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to 21-hydroxylase deficiency) GALT (classic galactosemia) HEAR (hearing loss) CF (cystic fibrosis)

Source: March of Dimes, Professionals and Researchers, Quick References and Fact Sheets, Recommended Newborn Screening Tests: 29 Disorders. Retrieved May 5, 2010 from http://www.marchofdimes.com/professionals/14332_15455.asp.

Untreated infants that survive typically fail to grow, are mentally handicapped, and have cataracts. Treatment involves removing all milk and dairy products from the infant's diet. Several less severe forms of galactosemia that may not need treatment can also be detected by newborn screening. The incidence of galactosemia is 1 in 60,000 to 80,000 births.

- ***Cystic Fibrosis:*** CF is a genetic disorder caused by one or more mutations in the gene that directs a protein responsible for regulating the transport of chloride across cell membranes. CF involves multiple organs, but primarily affects the lungs and pancreas. The mutation causes the body to produce thick, sticky mucus secretions that build up in the lungs and other organs. The mucus obstructs passageways in the lungs, leading to pulmonary infections. Mucus blockage of pancreatic enzymes needed for digestion can lead to malnutrition. Early diagnosis and treatment helps avoid respiratory distress and malnutrition, and has the potential to increase life expectancy. CF occurs in 1 of

Figure 10-13 Newborn screening specimen collection equipment.

every 3,700 U.S. births. Prevalence at birth varies by race/ethnicity from 1 in 2,500 to 3,500 births among non-Hispanic whites, 1 in 4,000 to 10,000 among Hispanics, and 1 in 15,000 to 20,000 births among non-Hispanic blacks.

Most NBS tests are ideally performed when an infant is between 24 and 72 hours old. Because of early hospital release, some infants are tested before they are 24 hours old. Early testing for some tests (e.g., PKU) may not give accurate results, so some states require repeat testing approximately 2 weeks later. Specimens for NBS tests are collected by heel puncture and require a special state form. Newborn screening equipment is shown in Figure 10-13.

On-line information on newborn screening can be found at the National Newborn Screening and Genetic Resource Center at www.genes-r-us.uthscsa.edu/.

Blood Spot Collection

Newborn screening tests, except hearing tests, are typically performed on a few drops of blood obtained by heel puncture. The blood drops are collected by absorption onto circles printed on a special type of filter paper that is typically part of the NBS form (Fig. 10-14). The blood-filled circles are often referred to as blood spots. As many as 30 different disorders can be detected in the blood spots on one form.

CAUTION: If an infant requires a blood transfusion, newborn screening specimens should be collected before it is started, as dilution of the sample with donor blood invalidates test results.

To fill the circles, heel puncture is performed, and the first blood drop is wiped away in the normal manner. The filter paper is brought close to the heel, and a large drop of free-flowing blood is applied to the center of the first circle on the printed side of the paper. The paper

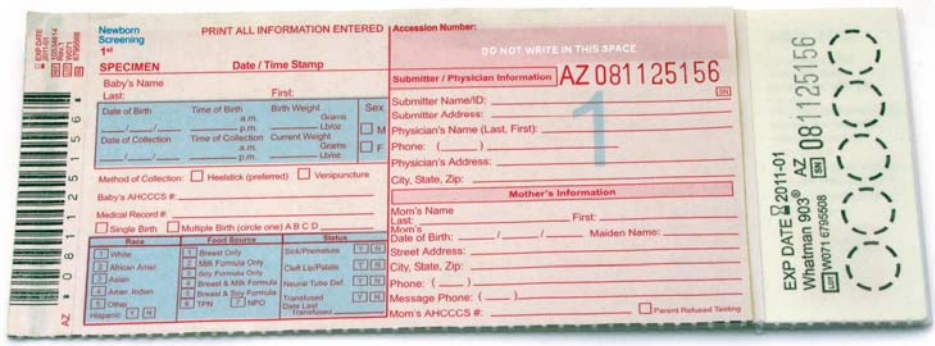


Figure 10-14 A newborn screening form with collection circles displayed.

must not be allowed to touch the surface of the heel. This can result in smearing, blotting, and stoppage of blood flow, and incomplete penetration of blood through the paper. The original position of the paper must be maintained and blood must continue flowing until it completely fills the circle on both sides of the paper. The same process is continued until all circles are filled. Unfilled or incompletely filled circles can result in inability to perform all required tests. Circles must be filled from one side of the paper only and by one large drop that spreads throughout the circle. Application of multiple drops or filling circles from both sides of the paper causes layering of blood and possible misinterpretation of results.

CAUTION: Do not contaminate the filter paper circles by touching them with or without gloves or allowing any other object or substance to touch them before, during, or after specimen collection. Substances that have been identified as contaminants in newborn screening specimens include alcohol, formula, lotion, powder, and urine.

After collection, the specimen must be allowed to air-dry in an elevated, horizontal position away from heat or sunlight. Specimens should not be hung to dry or stacked together before, during, or after the drying process. Hanging may cause the blood to migrate and concentrate toward the low end of the filter paper and lead to erroneous test results on the sample. Stacking can result in cross-contamination between specimens, which also causes erroneous results. When dry, the requisition containing the sample is normally placed in a special envelope and sent to a state public health laboratory or other approved laboratory for testing. Results are sent to the infant's physician or other healthcare provider. The procedure for collecting blood spots for newborn screening is shown in Procedure 10-4.

PROCEDURE 10-4 Newborn Screening Blood Spot Collection

PURPOSE: To obtain a newborn screening blood sample by heel puncture

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, warming device, antiseptic prep pad, safety lancet, newborn screening filter paper, sterile gauze pads, sharps container, permanent ink pen

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1–4. Follow Chapter 8 venipuncture steps 1 through 4.	See Chapter 8 Procedure 8-2: steps 1 through 4.
5. Position the patient.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 5.
6. Select the puncture/incision site.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 6.
7. Warm the site, if applicable.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 7.
8. Clean and air-dry the site.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 8.
9. Prepare the equipment.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 9.
10. Puncture site and discard lancet.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 10.
11. Wipe away the first blood drop.	See Heelstick Procedure 10-2: step 11.
12. Bring the filter paper close to the heel.	Ensures that drops fill the circles properly. The paper must not actually touch the heel; if it does, smearing, incomplete penetration of the paper, blotting, and stoppage of blood flow can result.
13. Generate a large, free-flowing drop of blood.	It takes a large, free-flowing blood drop to fill a circle. Small drops can result in incomplete filling and the tendency to layer successive drops in a circle to fill it.
14. Touch the blood drop to the center of the filter paper circle.	The drop must touch the center of the circle for blood to uniformly spread out to the perimeter.

PROCEDURE 10-4 Newborn Screening Blood Spot Collection (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
15. Fill the circle with blood.	Blood drop position is maintained until blood soaks through the circle, completely filling both sides of the paper. Caution: Do not fill spots from the reverse side to finish filling the circles because this causes layering and erroneous results.
16. Fill remaining blood spot circles.	Fill all circles the same way. Unfilled or incompletely filled circles can result in inability to perform all required tests.
17. Place gauze and apply pressure.	Apply pressure with a clean gauze pad and elevate the site until bleeding stops.
18. Label specimen.	Specimens must be appropriately identified.
19. Check the site.	Check the site to verify that bleeding has stopped, but do not apply a bandage because it can become a choking hazard and can also tear the skin when removed.
20. Dispose of used materials	Equipment packaging and bandage wrappers can be discarded in the trash. Follow facility protocol for discarding contaminated items, such as blood-soaked gauze.
21. Allow the specimen to air-dry.	The specimen must be allowed to air-dry in an elevated horizontal position away from heat or sunlight. It should not be hung to dry or stacked with other specimens before, during, or after the drying process. Hanging causes blood to migrate to the low end of the filter paper and leads to erroneous test results.
22. Dispatch specimen to testing facility.	When dry, the sample-containing requisition is normally placed in a special envelope and sent to the appropriate laboratory for testing.

ROUTINE BLOOD FILM/SMEAR PREPARATION

A **blood film** or **smear** (a drop of blood spread thin on a microscope slide) is required to perform a manual **differential** (Diff), a test in which the number, type, and characteristics of blood cells are determined by examining a stained blood smear under a microscope. A manual differential may be performed as part of a complete blood count or to confirm abnormal results of a machine-generated differential or platelet count. Two blood smears are normally prepared and submitted for testing. Although a common practice in the past, today blood smears are rarely made at the bedside. They are typically made in the hematology department from blood collected in an EDTA tube, either by hand or using an automated machine that makes a uniform smear from a single drop of blood.

KEY POINT Blood smears prepared from EDTA specimens should be made within 1 hour of collection to eliminate cell distortion caused by the anticoagulant.

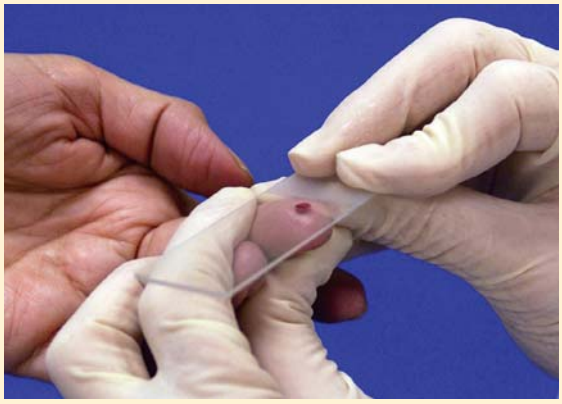
A few special tests require evaluation of a blood smear made from a fresh drop of blood from a fingertip. An example is a leukocyte alkaline phosphatase (LAP) stain or score, which usually requires four fresh peripheral blood (blood from an extremity) smears. Skin puncture collection of peripheral smears is typically preferred. In addition, some hematologists prefer blood smears made from blood that has not been in contact with EDTA.

When collected with other skin puncture specimens, blood smears should be collected first to avoid effects of platelet clumping. Blood smear preparation from a capillary puncture is illustrated in Procedure 10-5.

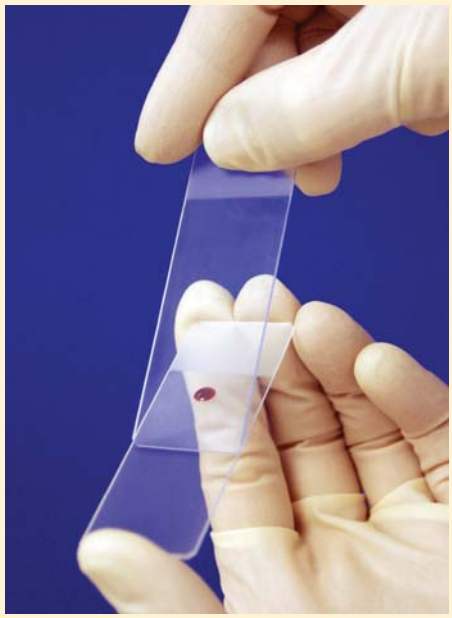
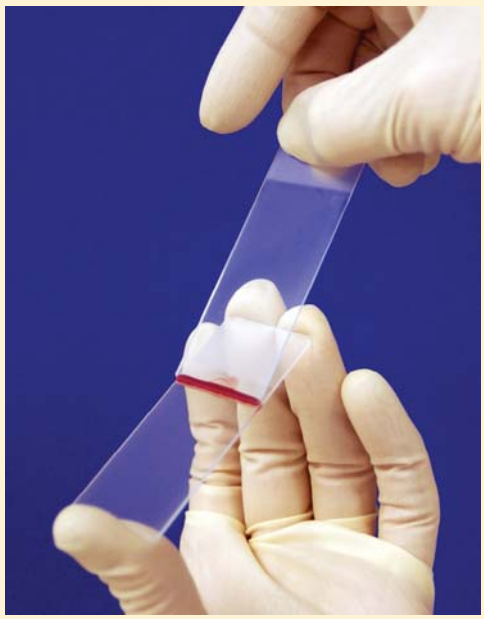
PROCEDURE 10-5 Preparing a Blood Smear from a Capillary Puncture

PURPOSE: To prepare two routine blood films (smears) for hematology or other studies using blood obtained by capillary puncture

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, alcohol prep pad, lancet/incision device, two plain or frosted glass slides free of cracks or chipped edges, gauze pads, bandage, and a pencil

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Perform capillary puncture.	Blood to make the slide can be obtained by normal finger or heel puncture, following applicable capillary puncture steps 1 through 9 until this point.
2. Wipe away first blood drop.	Wiping the first drop removes excess tissue fluid and alcohol residue that could distort cell morphology.
3. Touch a slide the next blood drop 	The drop should be 1 to 2 mm in diameter and centered on the slide adjacent to the frosted end or 1/2 to 1 inch from one end of a plain slide.

PROCEDURE 10-5 Preparing a Blood Smear from a Capillary Puncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
4. Hold the blood drop slide between the thumb and forefinger of the nondominant hand. With the other hand, rest the second slide in front of the drop at an angle of approximately 30 degrees.	The second slide is called the pusher or spreader slide and is held at one end, between the thumb and index finger in either a vertical or horizontal position. If blood is of normal thickness, a 30-degree angle will create a smear that covers approximately three fourths of the remaining area of the slide.
	
5. Pull the spreader slide back to the edge of the blood drop. Stop it as soon as it touches the drop, and allow the blood to spread along its width.	The blood must spread the width of the pusher slide or a bullet-shaped film will result.
	

(continued)

PROCEDURE 10-5 Preparing a Blood Smear from a Capillary Puncture (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
6. Push the spreader slide away from the drop in one smooth motion, carrying it the entire length and off the end of the blood drop slide.	Let the weight of the spreader slide carry the blood and create the film or smear. *Do not* push down on the spreader slide because this creates lines and ridges and an unacceptable blood film.
7. Place the drop of blood for the second smear on the spreader slide. Use the slide with the first smear as the spreader slide for the second smear and make it in the same manner as the first one.	This way, two smears can be made using only two slides.
8. Place gauze over the wound and ask the patient to apply pressure.	A conscious, mentally alert patient can apply pressure; otherwise, the phlebotomist must apply pressure.
9. Label frosted blood slides by writing the patient information in pencil on the frosted area. If using a preprinted label, attach it over the writing or in the empty space at the blood drop end if it is a plain slide.	*Do not* use ink because it may dissolve during the staining process.
10. Allow the blood films to air-dry and place them in a secondary container for transport.	*Never* blow on a slide to dry it because red blood cell distortion may result. Be aware that unfixed slides are capable of transmitting disease and handle accordingly.
11. Thank patient, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Thanking the patients, parents, and guardians is courteous and professional. Remove gloves aseptically and wash hands or use a hand sanitizer as an infection control precaution.
12. Transport specimen to the lab.	Prompt delivery to the lab is necessary to protect specimen integrity.

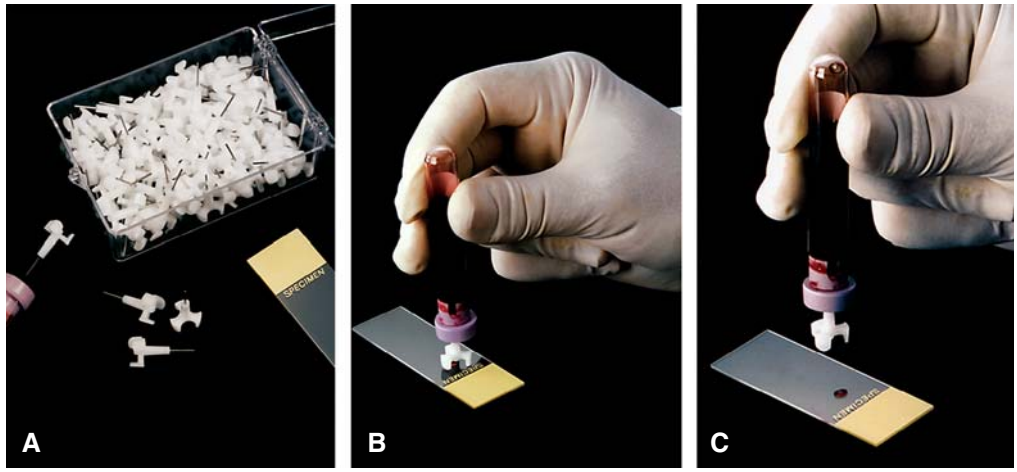


Figure 10-15 **A.** DIFF-SAFE blood drop delivery device. **B.** Applying a blood drop to a slide using a DIFF-SAFE device. **C.** Blood drop on slide (Courtesy Alpha Scientific, Malvern, PA).

To prepare a smear manually from an EDTA specimen, the tube of blood must first be mixed for a minimum of 2 minutes to ensure a uniform specimen. A plain capillary tube or pipet is then used to dispense a drop of blood from the specimen tube onto the slide. A device called DIFF-SAFE (Fig. 10-15A–C) (Alpha Scientific, Malvern, PA) allows a slide to be made from an EDTA tube without removing the tube stopper. The device is inserted through the rubber stopper of the specimen tube and then pressed against the slide to deliver a uniform drop of blood.

CAUTION: Blood smears are considered biohazardous or infectious until they are stained or fixed.

Making a good blood smear is a skill that takes practice to perfect. Improperly made blood smears may not contain a normal, even distribution of blood cells and can produce erroneous results. An acceptable smear covers about one half to three fourths of the surface of the slide and has no holes, lines, or jagged edges. It should show a smooth transition from thick to thin when held up to the light. The thinnest area of a properly made smear, often referred to as the **feather,** is one cell thick and is the most important area because that is where a differential is performed.

Smears that are uneven, too long (i.e., cover the entire length of the slide), too short, too thick, or too thin are not acceptable. The length and thickness of the smear can usually be controlled by adjusting the size of the drop or the angle of the spreader slide. Dirt, fingerprints, or powder on the slide, or fat globules and lipids in the specimen can result in holes in the smear. A chipped pusher slide, a blood drop that has started to dry out, or uneven pressure as the smear is made can cause the smear to have ragged edges. Table 10-2 lists common problems associated with routine blood smear preparation.

THICK BLOOD SMEAR PREPARATION

Thick blood smears are most often requested to detect the presence of malaria, a disorder caused by four species of parasitic sporozoan (types of protozoa) organisms called plasmodia. These organisms are transmitted to humans by the bite of infected female anopheles mosquitoes. Symptoms of malaria include serial bouts of fever and chills at regular intervals, related to the multiplication of certain forms of the organism within the red blood cells and the consequent rupture of those cells. The progressive destruction of red blood cells in certain types of malaria causes severe anemia.

Malaria is diagnosed by the presence of the organism in a peripheral blood smear. Diagnosis often requires the evaluation of both regular and thick blood smears. Presence of the

TABLE 10-2 Common Problems Associated with Routine Blood Smear Preparation

Problem	Probable Cause
Absence of feather	Spreader slide lifted before the smear was completed
Holes in the smear	Dirty slide Fat globules in the blood Blood contaminated with glove powder
Ridges or uneven thickness	Too much pressure applied to spreader slide
Smear is too thick	Blood drop too large Spreader slide angle too steep Patient has high red blood cell count
Smear is too short	Blood drop too small Spreader slide angle too steep Spreader slide pushed too quickly Patient has high red blood cell count
Smear is too long	Blood drop too large Spreader slide angle too shallow Spreader slide pushed too slowly Patient has a low hemoglobin
Smear is too thin	Blood drop too small Spreader slide angle too shallow Patient has a low hemoglobin
Streaks or tails in feathered edge	Blood drop started to dry out Edge of spreader slide dirty or chipped Spreader slide pushed through blood drop Uneven pressure applied to spreader slide

organism is observed most frequently in a thick smear; however, identification of the species requires evaluation of a regular blood smear. Malaria smears may be ordered STAT or at timed intervals and are most commonly collected just before the onset of fever and chills.

To prepare a thick smear, a very large drop of blood is placed in the center of a glass slide and spread with the corner of another slide or cover slip until it is the size of a dime. The smear is allowed to dry for a minimum of 2 hours before staining with fresh diluted Giemsa stain, a water-based stain that lyses the red blood cells and makes the organism easier to see.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Which of the following tests requires an arterialized specimen?**
   a. Bilirubin
   b. CBGs
   c. Electrolytes
   d. Glucose

2. **Capillary puncture supplies include all of the following except:**
   a. Gauze pad
   b. Lancet
   c. Microcollection device
   d. Povidone–iodine pad

3. **Capillary puncture blood contains:**
   a. Arterial blood
   b. Interstitial fluids
   c. Venous blood
   d. All of the above

4. **The concentration of this substance is higher in capillary blood than in venous blood:**
   a. Blood urea nitrogen
   b. Carotene
   c. Glucose
   d. Total protein

5. **Capillary puncture is typically performed on adults when:**
   a. No accessible veins can be located
   b. Patients have thrombotic tendencies
   c. Veins are saved for chemotherapy
   d. All of the above

6. **If collected by capillary puncture, which test specimen is collected first?**
   a. CBC
   b. Electrolytes
   c. Glucose
   d. Phosphorus

7. **Which of the following conditions disqualifies a site for capillary puncture?**
   a. Cyanotic
   b. Edematous
   c. Swollen
   d. All of the above

8. **Which of the following is the least hazardous area of an infant's foot for capillary puncture?**
   a. Central area of the heel
   b. Lateral plantar heel surface
   c. Medial area of the arch
   d. Posterior curvature of the heel

9. **According to CLSI, a heel puncture lancet should puncture no deeper than:**
   a. 1.5 mm
   b. 2.0 mm
   c. 2.5 mm
   d. 3.0 mm

10. **Which of the following is a proper capillary puncture procedure?**
    a. Clean the site thoroughly with povidone–iodine.
    b. Milk the site to keep the blood flowing freely.
    c. Puncture parallel to fingerprint grooves.
    d. Wipe away the very first drop of blood.

11. **When making a routine blood smear, the "pusher slide" is normally used at an angle of how many degrees?**
    a. 15
    b. 30
    c. 45
    d. 60

12. **The blood specimen for this test is placed in circles on special filter paper:**
    a. Bilirubin
    b. CBGs
    c. PKU
    d. Malaria

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 10-1 *Capillary Puncture Procedure*

A phlebotomist is sent to collect a CBC specimen on a 5-year-old pediatric patient. The patient has an IV in the left forearm. The right arm has no palpable veins so the phlebotomist decides to perform capillary puncture on the middle finger of the right hand. This is the phlebotomist's first job and, although he is quite good at routine venipuncture, he has not performed very many capillary punctures. The child is uncooperative and the mother tries to help steady the child's hand during the procedure. The phlebotomist is able to puncture the site, but the child pulls the hand away. Blood runs down the finger. The phlebotomist grabs the child's finger and tries to fill the collection device with the blood as it runs down the finger. The child continues to try to wriggle the finger free. The phlebotomist finally fills the container to the minimum level. When the specimen is tested, the platelet count is abnormally low. A slide is made and platelet clumping is observed. A new specimen is requested. Hemolysis is later observed in the specimen.

QUESTIONS

1. *How might the circumstances of collection have contributed to the platelet clumping in the specimen?*
2. *What most likely caused the hemolysis?*
3. *What factors may have contributed to the specimen collection difficulties?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Bishop ML, Fody EP, Schoeff LE. *Clinical Chemistry: Principles, Procedures, Correlations*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute LA04-A5. *Blood Collection on Filter Paper for Newborn Screening Programs; Approved Standard*, 5th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS; 2007.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H4-A6. *Procedures and Devices for the Collection of Capillary Blood Specimens; Approved Standard*, 6th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2007.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H11-A4. *Procedures for the Collection of Arterial Blood Specimens; Approved Standard*, 4th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS; 2004.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H18-A4. *Procedures for the Handling and Processing of Blood Specimens; Approved Guideline, 3rd ed.* Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS; 2010.

Fischbach F, Dunning MB. (2009). *A Manual of Laboratory & Diagnostic Tests*, 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009.

Harmening D. (2008). Clinical hematology and fundamentals of hemostasis (5th ed). Philadelphia: FA Davis.

Hicks JM, Q & A. Blood volumes needed for common tests. 2001; (2):187.

Turgeon ML. *Clinical Hematology,* 5th ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2012.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos:
  - Introductory and Identification Processes Required Prior to Blood Specimen Collection
  - Capillary Blood Specimen Collection
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Advance magazine for medical laboratory personnel:** http://laboratorian.advanceweb.com/
- **American Academy of Pediatricians:** http://www.aap.org
- **Center for Phlebotomy Education:** http://www.phlebotomy.com
- **National Newborn Screening and Genetic Resource Center:** http://genes-r-us.uthsca.edu

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

UNIT IV

SPECIAL PROCEDURES

11 Special Collections and Point-of-Care Testing 357
12 Computers and Specimen Handling and Processing 411
13 Nonblood Specimens and Tests 435
14 Arterial Puncture Procedures 455

CHAPTER
11

Special Collections and Point-of-Care Testing

KEY TERMS

Do the Matching exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

ACT	ETOH	lookback
aerobic	FAN	lysis
anaerobic	FUO	NIDA
ARD	GTT	peak level
autologous	hCG	POCT
BAC	hyper/hypoglycemia	PP
bacteremia	hyper/hypokalemia	septicemia
BNP	hyper/hyponatremia	TDM
BT	hypoxemia	TGC
chain of custody	iCa^{2+}	TnI
compatibility	INR	TnT
CRP	K^{+}	trough level
EQC	lactate	

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Explain the principle behind each special collection procedure, identify the steps involved, and list any special supplies or equipment required.
3. Describe patient identification and specimen labeling procedures required for blood bank tests and identify the types of specimens typically required.
4. Describe sterile technique in blood culture collection, explain why it is important, and list the reasons why a physician might order blood cultures.
5. List examples of coagulation specimens and describe how to properly collect and handle them.
6. Describe chain-of-custody procedures and identify the tests that may require them.
7. Explain the importance of timing; identify the role of drug half-life, providing names of drugs as examples; and describe peak, trough, and therapeutic levels in therapeutic drug monitoring.
8. Define point-of-care testing (POCT), explain the principle behind the POCT examples listed in this chapter, and identify any special equipment required.

This chapter describes special tests and point-of-care testing (POCT). Collecting specimens for special tests requires special preparation, equipment, handling, or timing. POCT specimens are collected using small, portable, and often handheld testing devices that bring laboratory testing to the location of the patient. POCT is convenient for the patient; its short turnaround times (TATs) for results allow healthcare providers to address crucial patient needs, deliver prompt medical attention, and expedite patient recovery. Some of the most commonly encountered special blood test and POCT procedures are described in this chapter.

Special Procedures

Most laboratory tests require blood specimens that are collected by routine venipuncture or capillary puncture procedures. Some tests, however, require special or additional collection procedures or are performed on other body substances such as feces or urine. Collecting specimens for these tests may require special preparation, equipment, handling, or timing. The following are some of the most commonly encountered special test procedures.

BLOOD BANK SPECIMENS

Blood bank specimens yield information that determines which blood products can be transfused safely into a patient. Faithful attention to protocol in collecting blood bank specimens is crucial to safe transfusions. Follow facility-specific procedures.

Specimen Requirements

Blood bank tests require the collection of one or more lavender- or pink-top EDTA tubes. In some cases, a nonadditive glass red-stoppered tube is used.

Identification and Labeling Requirements

Blood bank specimens require strict patient identification and specimen labeling procedures. Specimens that have labeling errors of any kind or are unlabeled will not be accepted for testing. An error in specimen identification or labeling requires re-collection of the specimen and causes a delay in patient treatment. An undetected error can result in administration of an incompatible blood product and the possibility of a fatal transfusion reaction. Typical labeling requirements for blood bank specimens are shown in Box 11-1.

Special Identification Systems

A variety of special blood bank identification systems are available. One system uses a special ID bracelet such as the PDC Securline Blood Bank (Precision Dynamics Corporation, San Fernando, CA), which is attached to the patient's wrist.

With this system, the patient's identity is confirmed and the information written on a self-carbon adhesive label on the special bracelet, which contains a unique ID number. The adhesive label is peeled from the latex-free bracelet, leaving a carbon copy of the information, including the unique ID number, on the bracelet. The adhesive label is then placed on

BOX 11-1 LABELING REQUIREMENTS FOR BLOOD BANK SPECIMENS

- Patient's full name (including middle initial)
- Patient's hospital identification number (or social security number for outpatients)
- Patient's date of birth
- Date and time of collection
- Phlebotomist's initials
- Room number and bed number (optional)

Figure 11-1 A phlebotomist compares a labeled blood bank tube with a blood bank ID bracelet.

the patient's specimen (Fig. 11-1). Additional ID-number labels from the bracelet are sent to the lab with the specimen to be used in the cross-match process or eventually attached to the unit of blood or other blood products used for transfusion. Figure 11-2 shows a blood bank ID bracelet and a patient's specimen with additional numbered labels attached to it. Prior to transfusion, the nurse must match the numbers on the patient's blood bank ID bracelet with the numbers on the unit of blood. Some facilities require the unique number and patient's name to be brought to the blood bank as an additional identification check when the blood products are being picked up.

In recent years, blood ID-band systems with linear bar-coded BBID numbers have been introduced for use. Typenex Medical has created two of these systems: their Next Generation Barcode Blood Bands and their FlexiBlood bar-coded band and form system.

Both of these systems allow for the implementation of electronic blood bank ID systems. Other features of these systems address two of the major concerns stated by blood bank personnel. With either of these systems, a person has the ability to add preprinted patient information labels to the BBID wristband, thus reducing many common transcription errors at the bedside. Both of these systems also have separate bar-coded specimen tube stickers containing directions for proper overlabeling on specimen tubes, thereby helping to standardize the process for everyone using this system. Figure 11-3 shows an example of a condensed Typenex FlexiBlood form, which accompanies the requisition when blood is being collected for patient cross-matching.

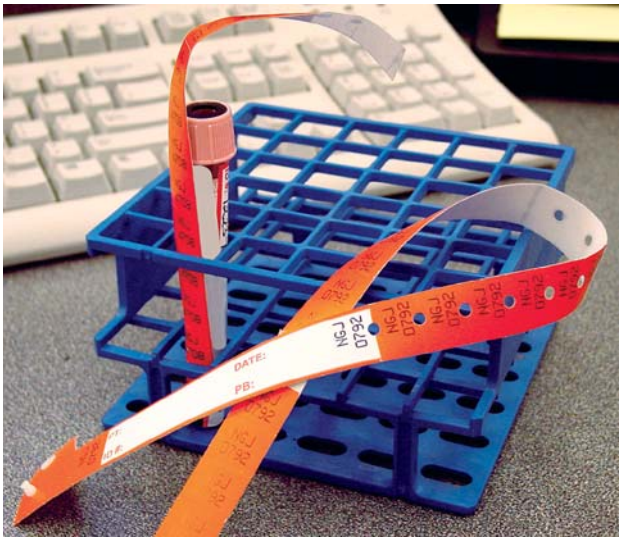


Figure 11-2 Securline Blood Bank recipient identification band and blood sample with additional numbers from a similar band attached to a blood sample. (Precision Dynamics Corporation, San Fernando, CA.)

Figure 11-3 BBID Form from the FlexiBlood System (Courtesy Typenex Medical LLC, Chicago, IL.)

To gain familiarity with how to handle blood bank collections, try Labeling Exercise 11-2, in the WORKBOOK.

An example of an electronic blood bank ID system is the Siemens Patient Identification Check–Blood Administration workflow. Patient Identification Check provides positive identification safeguards for blood product administration, helping clinicians identify the right patient with the right blood product with bar-code accuracy. The nurse initiates the blood product validation for a patient by gathering four key facts about the blood product in the presence of the patient:

- The clinician's identity, scanned from the bar code on his or her identification card
- The patient's identification scanned from the bar code on the patient's wristband as seen in Figure 11-4.
- The product's unique bar-coded donor identifier on the blood unit.
- The blood product's bar code on the blood unit.

Before the healthcare provider physically starts the transfusion, the Patient Identification Check can require a second nurse validation. Once all verification is complete, the unit is ready to be physically transfused by the clinician. Upon completion of the transfusion, the nurse updates the Patient Identification Check system, which in turn updates the blood bank system to reflect that the unit has been administered and logs the date and time of completion. This method helps to increase patient safety and provides accurate records for the blood administration workflow process.

TYPE, SCREEN, AND CROSS-MATCH

One of the most common tests performed by the blood bank is a blood type and screen. This test determines a patient's blood type (ABO) and Rh factor (positive or negative). When required, a cross-match is performed using the patient's type and screen results to help select a donor unit of blood. During a cross-match, the patient's plasma or serum and the donor's RBCs are mixed together to determine **compatibility** (suitability to be mixed). A transfusion of incompatible blood can be fatal because of **agglutination** (clumping) and **lysis** (rupturing) of the RBCs within the patient's circulatory system.

BLOOD DONOR COLLECTION

Blood donor collection involves collecting blood to be used for transfusion purposes rather than for diagnostic testing. Blood is collected from volunteers in amounts referred to as units.

Figure 11-4 A nurse uses the Patient Identification Check to scan the patient ID band. (Courtesy Siemens Medical Solutions, Malvern, PA.)

Donor collection requires special training and exceptional venipuncture skills. Facilities that provide blood products for transfusion purposes are called Donor Blood Banks. Blood banks follow guidelines set by the American Association of Blood Banks (AABB) for purposes of quality assurance and standardization. Regulation by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) is required, since blood and blood products are considered pharmaceuticals.

KEY POINT All potential blood donors must be interviewed to determine their eligibility to donate blood as well as to obtain information for the records that must be kept on all blood donors.

Donor Eligibility

To donate blood, a person must be between the ages of 17 and 66 years and weigh at least 110 pounds. Minors must have written permission from their parents. Adults over the age of 66 years may be allowed to donate at the discretion of the blood bank physician. A brief physical examination as well as a complete medical history are needed to determine the patient's health status. This information is collected each time a person donates, no matter how many times a person has donated before. All donor information is strictly confidential. In addition, the donor must give written permission for the blood bank to use his or her blood. The principles of donor unit collection are listed in Box 11-2.

FYI

The anticoagulant and preservative CPD (citrate–phosphate–dextrose) or CPDA1 (CPD plus adenine) is typically used in collecting units of blood for transfusion purposes. The citrate prevents clotting by chelating calcium. A phosphate compound stabilizes the pH, and dextrose provides energy to the cells and helps keep them alive.

Lookback Program

A unit of blood can be separated into several components: RBCs, plasma, and platelets. All components of the unit must be traceable to the donor for federally required **lookback**

BOX 11-2 PRINCIPLES OF DONOR UNIT COLLECTION

- Donor units are normally collected from a large antecubital vein.
- The vein is selected in a manner similar to routine venipuncture and cleaned in a manner similar to blood culture collection (see Figure 11-8).
- The collection unit is a sterile, closed system consisting of a bag to contain the blood connected by a length of tubing to a sterile 16- to 18-gauge needle.
- The bag fills by gravity and must be placed lower than the patient's arm.
- The collection bag contains an anticoagulant and preservative solution and is placed on a mixing unit while the blood is being drawn.
- The unit is normally filled by weight but typically contains around 450 mL of blood when full. Only one needle puncture can be used to fill a unit. If the unit only partially fills and the procedure must be repeated, an entire new unit must be used.

programs. A lookback program requires notification to all blood recipients when a donor for a blood product they have received has turned positive for a transmissible disease. At that point, it is absolutely necessary that verification for all blood components previously collected and currently in inventory has been retrieved.

Autologous Donation

Despite advances in preventing the transmission of infection through transfusions, providing safe blood for blood products remains a challenge. Errors such as drawing blood samples from the wrong patient for blood transfusion present even more of a risk than transmissible diseases.

Autologous donation is the process by which a person donates blood for his or her own use. This is done for elective surgeries when it is anticipated that a transfusion will be needed. Using one's own blood eliminates many risks associated with transfusion, such as disease transmission and blood or plasma incompatibilities. Although blood is normally collected several weeks prior to the scheduled surgery, the minimum time between donation and surgery can be as little as 72 hours. To be eligible to make an autologous donation, a person must have a written order from a physician.

Cell Salvaging

Aqueous solutions, plasma, and serum samples or banked erythrocytes often contain lysed RBCs that have released hemoglobin into the solution. For example, during some surgical procedures, the patient's blood is salvaged, washed, and reinfused. Prior to reinfusion, it is recommended that the salvaged blood be tested for residual free hemoglobin. A high free hemoglobin level indicates that too many red cells were destroyed during the salvage process and renal dysfunction could result if the blood were reinfused. Free hemoglobin can be detected using point-of-care instruments such as the HemoCue Plasma/Low Hemoglobin analyzer (Fig. 11-5).

BLOOD CULTURES

It is known that bacteria can enter the body and cause disease. During the disease process, bacteria may also enter the circulatory system, causing **bacteremia** (bacteria in the blood) or **septicemia** (microorganisms or their toxins in the blood). Except when overwhelming infection is present, these organisms are generally cleared from the bloodstream in a short time. Blood cultures help determine the presence and extent of infection as well as indicating the type of organism responsible and the antibiotic to which it is most susceptible. They are also useful in assessing the effectiveness of antibiotic therapy once treatment is initiated.

Blood cultures should be ordered on the basis of whether the patient has a condition in which bloodstream invasion is possible and not only when a patient experiences a **fever of unknown**

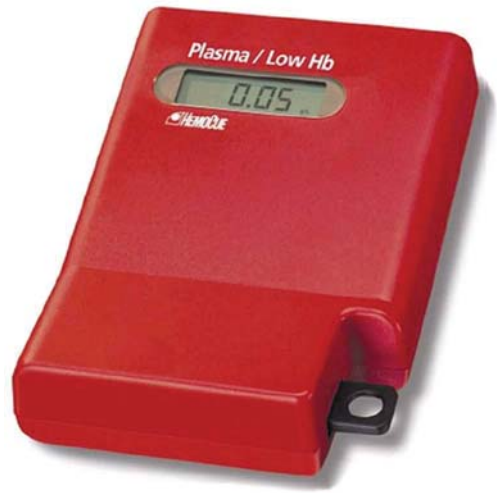


Figure 11-5 HemoCue® Plasma/Low Hb. (HemoCue, Inc., Mission Viejo, CA.)

origin (FUO). Some elderly patients and others with underlying conditions are often not capable of mounting good fever responses, even though they may be experiencing septicemia.

KEY POINT Blood cultures are typically ordered immediately before or after anticipated fever spikes when bacteria are most likely to be present. Timely collection is essential. Recent studies have shown that the best chance for detecting bacteremia exists between 30 minutes to 2½ hours prior to the fever peak, before the body can eliminate some of the microorganisms.

Specimen Requirements

The most recent literature of American Society for Microbiology (ASM) states that two to four blood cultures are necessary to optimize the detection of bacteremia and fungemia. For optimum results such specimens should be drawn 30 to 60 minutes apart. However, if the patient is in critical condition or an antibiotic must be given right away, cultures should be drawn consecutively and immediately from different sites. When more than one set is ordered for collection at the same time, the second set should be obtained from a separately prepared site on the opposite arm if possible. In some cases, "second-site" blood cultures are more useful when drawn 30 minutes apart. If timing is not specified on the requisition, the phlebotomist should follow the laboratory protocol.

KEY POINT According to ASM, the volume of blood drawn for infants and younger children should be from 1% to 4% of the patient's total blood volume, generally speaking. For adults or people weighing more than 80 pounds, the recommended volumes for blood cultures are 20 to 30 mL per culture with a minimum of 10 mL per draw.

The Skills Drill 11-1: Requisition Activity in the WORKBOOK will help you understand how to handle blood culture collections.

Blood culture specimens are most commonly collected in special bottles (Fig. 11-6) containing nutrient broth (referred to as medium) that encourages the growth of microorganisms. These specimens are typically collected in sets of two: one **aerobic** (with air) and one **anaerobic** (without air). When a syringe is used to collect the blood, the anaerobic bottle is filled first. When a butterfly is used, it is preferable to fill the aerobic bottle first because air in the tubing will be drawn into it along with the blood.

Skin Antisepsis

The major difficulty in the interpretation of blood cultures is contamination by microbial flora on the skin. **Skin antisepsis**, the destruction of microorganisms on the skin, is a critical part of the blood culture collection procedure. Failure to carefully disinfect the venipuncture site

Figure 11-6 BACTEC blood culture bottles. Anaerobic/F, Aerobic/F, and Myco/F-lytic. (Becton Dickinson, Franklin Lakes, NJ.)

can introduce skin-surface bacteria into the blood culture bottles and interfere with interpretation of results. The laboratory must report all microorganisms detected; it is then up to the patient's physician to determine whether the organism is clinically significant or merely a contaminant. If a contaminating organism is misinterpreted as pathogenic, it could result in inappropriate treatment. This problem is overcome best by meticulous preparation of the skin with a bactericidal agent.

Antiseptic or sterile technique for blood culture collection varies slightly from one laboratory to another. To minimize the risk of contamination by skin flora, the collection sites require a 30- to 60-second friction scrub to get to the bacteria beneath the dead skin cells onto the surface of the arm. Tincture of iodine, chlorhexidine gluconate, and a povidone/70% ethyl alcohol combination have all been shown to be effective.

Traditionally 10% povidone or 1% to 2% tincture of iodine compounds in the form of swab sticks or special cleaning-pad kits such as benzalkonium chloride (Fig. 11-7) have been used to clean the collection site. In using a povidone–iodine or chlorhexidine gluconate ampule swab, the swab should be placed at the site of needle insertion and moved outward in concentric circles without going over any area more than once, as shown in Figure 11-8. The area covered should be 3 to 4 in. in diameter.

Because of the increasing incidence of iodine sensitivities, some healthcare facilities are using chlorhexidine gluconate/isopropyl alcohol antiseptic preparations in blood culture preparation kits that have a one-step application and are effective with a 30-second scrub.

Figure 11-7 Five examples of antiseptics used for sterilizing the blood culture venipuncture site. Left to right: Betadine swabsticks, Chloroprep, PVP ampule, Frepp/Sepp II. Center: Benzalkonium chloride.

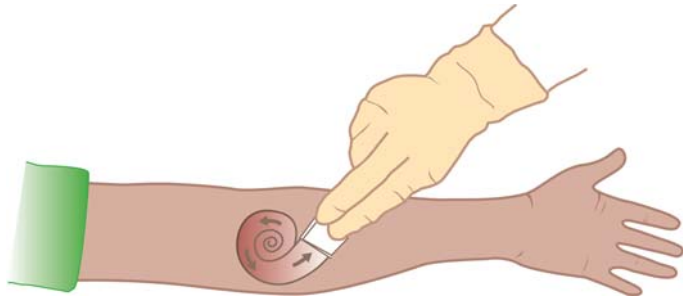


Figure 11-8 Pattern of concentric circles used in cleaning a blood culture site.

KEY POINT According to the CLSI, chlorhexidine gluconate is the recommended blood culture site disinfectant for infants 2 months and older and patients with iodine sensitivity.

Collection Procedure

The specimen collection procedure for blood culture is described in Procedure 11-1.

View the video Collecting a Blood Culture Specimen at http://thePoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 11-1 Blood Culture Specimen Collection

PURPOSE: Collect a blood culture specimen.

EQUIPMENT: Gloves and suitable skin antiseptic; blood culture bottles; butterfly and blood culture tube holder or needle, syringe, and transfer device; alcohol pads; bandage; permanent ink pen.

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Follow normal identification protocol; explain collection procedure.	Patient must be properly identified and consent to the procedure.
2. Identify venipuncture site and release tourniquet.	Proper disinfection takes time; CLSI Standard H3-A5 states that the tourniquet should not be left on longer than 1 minute.

KEY POINT Blood cultures should not be drawn through an indwelling IV or arterial catheter unless absolutely necessary. Draws from vascular lines are known to have a high contamination rate and may cause a person to receive antibiotic therapy when a septic condition is not truly present.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 11-1 Blood Culture Specimen Collection (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
3. Aseptically select and assemble equipment.	Be very careful when removing the antiseptic sponge applicator from the packaging; keep the sponge sterile by touching only the handle. Aseptic technique in handling equipment aids in accurate diagnosis by reducing the risk of false-positive results due to contamination.
4. Perform friction scrub.	Bacteria exist on the skin surface; they can be temporarily removed by scrubbing with an effective antiseptic solution for the amount of time designated by the procedure method, generally 30–60 seconds. Maximum area of treatment by one applicator is approximately 2.5 by 2.5 inches. The applicator must be discarded after a single use.
CAUTION: Do not scrub the skin of neonates too aggressively, as this may be abrasive and cause the skin to tear.	
5. Allow the site to dry.	Antisepsis does not occur instantly. The 30-second wait allows time for the antiseptic to be effective against skin-surface bacteria. Never blot, fan, or blow on the site.

PROCEDURE 11-1 Blood Culture Specimen Collection (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
6. Remove the flip-off cap and inspect the bottle for visible defects.	Inspect the bottle for contamination, excessive cloudiness, cracks, and bulging or indented septums. Make certain the bottle is in date and that the vacuum will draw at least 8 cc. Do *not* use if any defect is noted.
7. Cleanse the culture bottle stoppers while the site is drying.	Tops of the culture bottles must be free of contaminants when inoculated. Typically, culture bottles with plastic caps can be cleaned with 70% isopropyl alcohol after removing the flip-off cap. It is suggested that a clean alcohol prep pad be placed on top of each bottle after cleaning.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 11-1 Blood Culture Specimen Collection (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
8. Mark the minimum and maximum fill on the culture bottles.	A blood culture bottle has a vacuum that usually exceeds 10 mL; consequently the user must carefully monitor how much blood is being added to the bottle. Most bottles have fill lines on the sides that can be marked. Marking the bottles ensures that enough but not too much blood enters the bottle. Typically, adult blood cultures require 10–20 mL per set, while pediatric blood cultures require 1–2 mL per set. Consult manufacturer's instructions, as volume requirements may vary depending on the system used.
9. Reapply the tourniquet and perform the venipuncture without touching or repalpating the site.	The tourniquet must be reapplied to aid in venipuncture and care must be taken that the site is not recontaminated in the process. Ensuring antiseptic technique and sterility of the site is critical to accurate diagnosis. However, if the patient has "difficult" veins and a need to relocate the site is anticipated, the gloved palpating finger must be cleaned in the same manner as the site, including the 30-second contact time. Repalpating should only be done above or below the site of needle entry.
10. Inoculate the medium as required.	Inoculation of the medium can occur directly into the bottle during specimen collection or after collection when a syringe is used. A bottle should never be inserted directly into an ETS holder used for normal specimen collection even though it may fit. There is a possibility that medium in the bottle could flow back into the patient's vein.

PROCEDURE 11-1 Blood Culture Specimen Collection (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
11. Invert the bottle several times.	The blood should be mixed with the medium, especially if the bottle contains resin beads to neutralize antibiotics in the patient's blood, giving any bacteria present a chance to grow.
12. Clean the patient's skin if applicable.	If an iodine preparation was used to clean the arm, the iodine should be removed with alcohol or suitable cleanser. Iodine left on the skin can be irritating and even toxic to those with iodine sensitivity. Iodine contamination of a blood sample can also cause erroneous results for other tests.
13. Label the specimen containers with required identification information, including the site of blood collection.	Noting the collection site (e.g., right arm) or source, such as a port-a-cath, is necessary in case there is a localized infection. Some facilities require that labeling information include the amount of blood added to each bottle.
14. Dispose of used and contaminated materials.	Materials such as needle caps and wrappers are normally discarded in the regular trash. Some facilities require that contaminated items such as blood-soaked gauze be discarded in biohazard containers.
15. Thank the patient, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Thanking the patient is courteous and professional. Gloves must be removed in an aseptic manner and hands washed or decontaminated with hand sanitizer as an infection-control precaution.
16. Transport specimens to the lab as quickly as possible.	Prompt delivery to the lab protects specimen integrity and is typically achieved by personal delivery, transportation via a pneumatic tube system, or by a courier service.

Media Inoculation Methods

Inoculation of media can occur several different ways: directly into the bottle during specimen collection or after collection as when blood has been collected in a syringe. A third way is to use an intermediate collection tube to collect the sample for inoculation in the laboratory and not at the bedside.

Direct Inoculation

To collect the specimen directly into the blood culture medium, use a butterfly and specially designed holder (Fig. 11-9). Connect the special holder to the Luer connector of the butterfly collection set. Fill the aerobic vial first, because the butterfly tubing has air in it. Avoid backflow by keeping the culture bottle or tube lower than the collection site and preventing the culture medium from contacting the stopper or needle during blood collection. Mix each container after removing it from the needle holder. After filling both containers and collecting blood for any other tests, remove the needle from the patient's arm, activate the safety device, and hold pressure over the site.

KEY POINT Blood culture specimens are always collected first in the order of draw to prevent contamination from other tubes.

Figure 11-9 BacT/ALERT® blood culture supplies including a specially designed holder for a butterfly needle. (bioMerieux, Durham, NC.)

Syringe Inoculation

When the syringe method is used, the blood must be transferred to the bottles after the draw is completed. OSHA regulations require the use of a safety transfer device (see Fig. 7-25A) for this procedure. To transfer blood from the syringe to the culture bottles, activate the needle's safety device as soon as the needle is removed from the vein. Remove the needle and attach a safety transfer device to the syringe. Push the culture bottle into the device until the needle inside it penetrates the bottle stopper. Allow the blood to be drawn from the syringe by the vacuum in the container. The plunger may have to be held back to keep from expelling too much blood into the bottle. Never push the plunger to expel the blood into the vial. This can hemolyze the specimen and cause aerosol formation when the needle is removed.

If a transfer safety device is not available and a needle must be used, use extreme caution upon blood transfer.

CAUTION: The practice of changing needles prior to this transfer is no longer recommended. Several recent studies have shown that changing needles has little effect on reducing contamination rates and may actually increase risk of needlestick injury to the phlebotomist.

Never hold the culture bottle in your hand during the inoculation process. Place it on a solid surface or in a rack. When delivering blood to the bottles, direct the flow along the side of the container. As with the transfer device, do not push on the syringe plunger.

Intermediate Collection Tube

Blood is sometimes collected in an intermediate collection tube rather than blood culture bottles. A yellow-top sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS) tube (Fig. 11-10) is acceptable for this purpose. Other anticoagulants—such as citrate, heparin, EDTA, and oxalate—may be toxic to bacteria and are not recommended. Use of an intermediate tube is discouraged, however, for the following reasons:

- SPS in the collection tube when added to the blood culture bottle increases the final concentration of SPS.
- Transfer of blood from the intermediate tube to the blood culture bottles presents another opportunity for contamination.
- Transfer of blood to the culture bottles presents an exposure risk to laboratory staff.

Figure 11-10 A yellow-top tube used for blood culture collection.

ANTIMICROBIAL NEUTRALIZATION PRODUCTS

It is not unusual for patients to be on **antimicrobial** (antibiotic) **therapy** at the time blood culture specimens are collected. Presence of the antimicrobial agent in the patient's blood can inhibit the growth of the microorganisms in the blood culture bottle. In such cases, the physician may order blood cultures to be collected in **fastidious antimicrobial neutralization (FAN)** (bioMerieux) or **antimicrobial removal device (ARD)** (Becton Dickinson) bottles, as shown in Figure 11-11. An ARD contains a resin that removes antimicrobials from the blood.

Figure 11-11 Left to right: FAN and ARD blood culture bottles.

FAN bottles contain activated charcoal, which neutralizes the antibiotic. The blood can then be processed by conventional technique without the risk of inhibiting the growth of microorganisms. ARDs and FANs should be delivered to the lab for processing as soon as possible.

COAGULATION SPECIMENS

There are a number of important things to remember in collecting specimens for coagulation tests.

- At one time it was customary to draw a "clear" or discard tube prior to collection of a blue-top tube. A few milliliters of blood were collected into a plain red-top tube to clear the needle of thromboplastin contamination picked up as it penetrated the skin. The clearing tube was discarded if it was not needed for other tests. New studies have shown that a clear tube is not necessary when collecting for a PT or PTT. A clear tube is required for all other coagulation tests (e.g., factor VIII) because the CLSI still recommends that they be the second or third tube drawn.
- Sodium citrate tubes for coagulation studies must be filled until the vacuum is exhausted to obtain a *9:1 ratio of blood to anticoagulant*. Even when the tubes are properly filled, this ratio is altered if the patient's hemoglobin level is abnormally high or low. In such cases, laboratory personnel may request specimen collection in a special tube that has had the anticoagulant volume adjusted. A blue-top CTAD tube is available for special coagulation testing. In addition to sodium citrate, CTAD tubes contain theophylline, adenosine and dipyridamole to inhibit thrombocyte activation between collection of the blood and performance of the test.

CAUTION: All anticoagulant tubes must be gently inverted three or four times immediately after collection to avoid microclots, which can invalidate test results.

- Never pour two partially filled tubes together to create a full tube, as the anticoagulant-to-blood ratio will be greatly increased.
- Cooling on ice during transport may be required for some test specimens to protect the coagulation factors. Some coagulation factors, such as factors V and VIII, are not stable. If the tests cannot be performed in a timely manner, the specimen must be centrifuged and the plasma frozen.
- If a coagulation specimen must be drawn from an indwelling catheter, the CLSI recommends drawing and discarding 5 mL of blood or six times the dead-space volume of the catheter before collecting the specimen. If heparin has been introduced into the line, it should be flushed with 5 mL of saline before drawing the discard blood and collecting the specimen.

2-HOUR POSTPRANDIAL GLUCOSE

Postprandial (PP) means after a meal. Glucose levels in blood specimens obtained 2 hours after a meal are rarely elevated in normal persons but may be significantly increased in diabetic patients. Therefore a glucose test on a specimen collected 2 hours after a meal (**2-hour PP**) is an excellent screening test for diabetes and other metabolic problems. A 2-hour PP test is also used to monitor insulin therapy. Correct timing of specimen collection is very important. Glucose levels in specimens collected too early or late may be falsely elevated or decreased, respectively, leading to misinterpretation of results. The principles of the 2-hour PP procedure are shown in Box 11-3.

GLUCOSE TOLERANCE TEST

A **glucose tolerance test (GTT)** is used to diagnose problems of carbohydrate metabolism. The major carbohydrate in the blood is glucose, the body's source of energy. The GTT, also called the oral glucose test (OGTT), evaluates the body's ability to metabolize glucose by monitoring the patient's tolerance to high levels of glucose without adverse effects. The two

BOX 11-3 PRINCIPLES OF 2-HOUR PP SPECIMEN COLLECTION

- The patient is placed on a high-carbohydrate diet for 2 to 3 days prior to the test.
- The patient fasts prior to the test. This means no eating, smoking, or drinking other than water for at least 10 hours before the test.
- A fasting glucose specimen may be collected before the start of the test.
- The patient is instructed to eat a special breakfast (typically one containing the equivalent of 100 grams of glucose) or given a measured dose of glucose beverage on the day of the test.
- A blood glucose specimen is collected 2 hours after the patient finishes eating.

major types of disorders involving glucose metabolism are those in which the blood glucose level is increased (**hyperglycemia**), as in diabetes mellitus, and those in which the blood glucose levels are decreased (**hypoglycemia**). Insulin, produced by the pancreas, is primarily responsible for regulating blood glucose levels. The GTT evaluates the insulin response to a measured dose of glucose by recording glucose levels on specimens collected at specific time intervals. Insulin levels are sometimes measured also. GTT length is typically 1 hour for gestational diabetes and 3 hours for other glucose metabolism evaluations. The test rarely exceeds 6 hours. Results are plotted on a graph, creating a so-called GTT curve (Fig. 11-12).

Experience setting up a GTT schedule and plotting a GTT curve in Knowledge Drill 11-2: Glucose Tolerance Test GTT in the WORKBOOK.

There are a number of variations of the GTT procedure, involving different doses of glucose and timing of collections. The method used to collect the blood, however, should be consistent for all specimens. That is, if the first specimen is collected by venipuncture, all succeeding specimens should be venipuncture specimens. If skin puncture is used to collect the first specimen, all succeeding specimens should also be skin puncture specimens.

GTT Preparation and Procedure

Preparation for a GTT is very important. The patient must eat balanced meals containing approximately 150 grams (g) of carbohydrate for 3 days before the test and must fast for at least 12 hours but not more than 16 hours prior to the test. The patient is allowed to drink water during the fast and during the test to avoid dehydration and because urine specimens may be collected as part of the procedure. No other foods or beverages are allowed. The patient is also not allowed to smoke or chew gum, as these activities stimulate the digestive process and may cause erroneous test results. The patient should receive both verbal and written instructions to ensure compliance. The GTT procedure is described in Procedure 11-2.

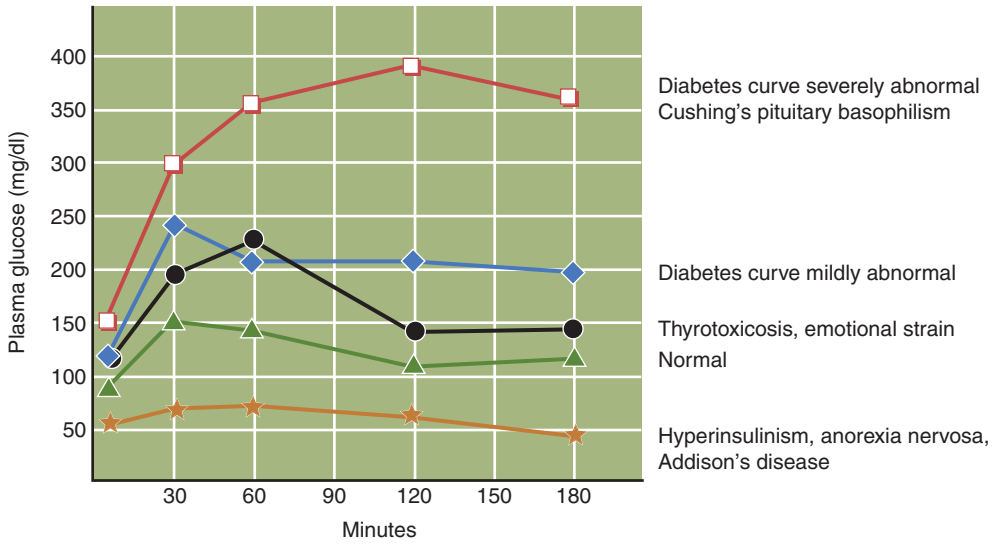


Figure 11-12 Glucose tolerance test (GTT) curves.

PROCEDURE 11-2 GTT Procedure

PURPOSE: Perform a glucose tolerance test.

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, alcohol prep pads, ETS holder, tubes and needle, glucose beverage, urine containers (if applicable), bandage, permanent ink pen.

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Follow normal identification protocol, explain collection procedure, and advise patient that water *is* allowed but drinking other beverages, eating food, smoking, or chewing gum is *not* allowed throughout the test period.	Patient must be properly identified and must understand and consent to the procedure. Eating, drinking beverages other than water, smoking, and chewing gum all affect test results.
2. Draw fasting specimen and check for glucose.	If the fasting glucose result is abnormal, the patient's physician must be consulted before continuing the test. The test is not normally performed if the patient's blood glucose is over 200 mg/dL.
3. Ask the patient to collect a fasting urine specimen if urine testing has been requested.	The GTT can be requested with or without urine testing.
4. Give the patient the determined dose of glucose beverage.	A typical adult patient dose is 75 g. Children and small adults are given approximately 1 g of glucose per kilogram of weight. The dose for detecting gestational diabetes is normally between 50 and 75 g.
5. Remind the patient to finish the beverage within 5 minutes.	Results may be inaccurate if the patient takes longer to drink the beverage, as the glucose may start to be metabolized by the body, thus affecting test results.
6. Note the time that the patient finishes the beverage, start the timing for the test, and calculate the collection times for the rest of the specimens based on this time.	GTT specimens are typically collected 30 minutes, 1 hour, 2 hours, 3 hours, and so forth, after the patient finishes the glucose beverage.
7. Give a copy of the collection times to the patient.	Patients (especially outpatients) must be aware of the collection times so that they can be available for the draw.
8. Collect blood and urine specimens (if applicable) as close to the computed times as possible.	Timing of specimen collection is critical for computation of the GTT curve and correct interpretation of results.
9. Label all specimens with the exact time collected and the time interval of the test (1/2 hour, 1 hour, etc.) in addition to patient identification information.	Each specimen must be correctly identified for accurate computation of the GTT curve and interpretation of results. Actual time of collection must be recorded.
10. Deliver or send specimens to the lab as soon as possible.	Glucose specimens must be separated from the cells or tested within 2 hours of collection for accurate results. Specimens collected in sodium fluoride are stable for 24 hours and are sometimes held and tested all together. Follow facility protocol.

BOX 11-4 PRINCIPLES OF LACTOSE TOLERANCE TESTING

- It is suggested that a 2-hour GTT be performed the day before the lactose tolerance test.
- A 2-hour lactose tolerance test is performed in the same manner as the GTT; however, an equal amount of lactose is substituted for the glucose.
- Blood samples for glucose testing are drawn at the same times used in the previous GTT test.
- If the patient has mucosal lactase, the resulting glucose curve will be similar to the GTT curve.
- If the patient lacks the enzyme (is lactose intolerant), glucose levels will rise only slightly from the fasting level, resulting in a "flat" curve.
- False-positive results have been demonstrated in patients with small bowel resections and disorders such as slow gastric emptying, Crohn's disease, and cystic fibrosis.

CAUTION: If the patient vomits during the GTT procedure, his or her physician must be consulted to determine if the test should be continued.

In normal patients, blood glucose levels peak within 30 minutes to 1 hour following glucose ingestion. The peak in glucose levels triggers the release of insulin, which brings glucose levels back down to fasting levels within about 2 hours and no glucose spills over into the urine.

Diabetics have an inadequate or absent insulin response; consequently glucose levels peak at higher levels and are slower to return to fasting levels. If blood is not drawn on time, it is important for the phlebotomist to note the discrepancy so that the physician can take this into consideration.

LACTOSE TOLERANCE TEST

A lactose tolerance test (Box 11-4) is used to determine if a patient lacks the enzyme (mucosal lactase) that is necessary to convert lactose, or milk sugar, into glucose and galactose. A person lacking the enzyme suffers from gastrointestinal distress and diarrhea following the ingestion of milk and other lactose-containing foods. Symptoms are relieved by eliminating milk from the diet.

A lactose tolerance test is typically performed in the same manner as a 2-hour GTT; however, an equal amount of lactose is substituted for the glucose. Blood samples are drawn at the same times as for a GTT. If the patient has mucosal lactase, the resulting glucose curve will be similar to a GTT curve, and the result is considered negative. If the patient is lactose intolerant (lacking the enzyme lactase), the glucose curve will be flat, rising no more than a few mg/dL from the fasting level. Some individuals normally have a flat GTT curve (resulting in a false-positive result); it is then suggested that they have a 2-hour GTT performed the day before the lactose tolerance test so that results can be evaluated adequately. False-positive results have also been demonstrated in patients with small bowel resections and with disorders such as slow gastric emptying, Crohn's disease, and cystic fibrosis. A lactose tolerance test can also be performed on breath samples (see Chapter 13).

PATERNITY/PARENTAGE TESTING

Paternity testing is performed to determine the probability that a specific individual fathered a particular child. Generally, paternity test results exclude the possibility of paternity rather than prove paternity. Testing may be requested by physicians, lawyers, child support enforcement bureaus, or individuals. Paternity testing requires a chain-of-custody protocol and

specific identification procedures that may include fingerprinting. A photo identification document such as a passport is usually required. The mother, child, and alleged father are all tested. Blood samples are preferred for testing; however, buccal (cheek) swabs are increasingly being used.

Blood sample testing usually includes ABO and Rh typing. If the putative (assumed) or alleged parent is not excluded by basic red cell antigen testing, further testing is performed until the individual is excluded or the likelihood of parentage is established. Further testing includes identifying extended red cell antigens, red cell enzymes and serum proteins, white cell enzymes, and HLA (human leukocyte antigen), or white cell antigens.

Buccal samples are collected by rubbing a swab against the inside of the cheek to collect loose cells. DNA extracted from the cells is "mapped" to create a DNA profile. DNA profiles of the individuals involved are compared to determine an alleged father's probability of paternity.

Paternity testing can also be performed before the infant is born on specimens obtained by amniocentesis or by chorionic villus sampling. (Chorionic villi are projections of vascular tissue that have the same genetic makeup as the fertilized egg and become the fetal portion of the placenta.)

THERAPEUTIC DRUG MONITORING

Therapeutic drug dosage necessary to produce a desired effect varies widely among patients and may require oversight. **Therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM)**, the testing of drug levels at specific intervals, is used in the management of patients being treated with certain drugs in order to help establish a drug dosage, maintain the dosage at a therapeutic (beneficial) level, and avoid drug toxicity. Drugs that are monitored typically have a narrow therapeutic range, which means that the amount required to be effective is fairly close to the amount that can cause side effects or toxicity. Table 11-1 lists examples of categories of drugs that require monitoring.

When a patient takes a drug dose, the amount in the bloodstream rises initially. It eventually peaks and then falls, typically reaching its lowest or trough level just before the next dose is due. For a drug to be beneficial, the **peak (maximum) level** must not exceed toxic levels, and the **trough (minimum) level** must remain within the therapeutic range. Consequently, timing of specimen collection in regard to dosage administration is critical for safe and beneficial treatment

TABLE 11-1 Examples of Categories of Drugs That Typically Require Therapeutic Monitoring

Drug Category	Examples	Use
Antibiotics	Aminoglycosides (gentamicin, tobramycin, amikacin), chloramphenicol, vancomycin	Treat infections caused by bacteria that are resistant to other antibiotics
Anticancer drugs	Methotrexate	Psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis (RA), non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, osteosarcoma
Antiepileptics	Carbamazepine (Tegretol), ethosuximide, gabapentin,* lamotrigine,* phenobarbital, phenytoin, valproic acid	Epilepsy, seizure prevention, mood stabilization
Bronchodilators	Theophylline, caffeine	Asthma, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), neonatal apnea
Cardiac drugs	Digitoxin, digoxin, procainamide, quinidine	Congestive heart failure (CHF), angina, arrhythmia
Immunosuppressants	Azathioprine, cyclosporine, sirolimus, tacrolimus	Autoimmune disorders, prevent organ transplant rejection
Protease inhibitors	Atazanavir, indinavir, lopinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir	HIV/AIDS
Psychiatric drugs	Antidepressants (such as imipramine, amitriptyline, nortriptyline, doxepin, desipramine), lithium, valproic acid	Bipolar disorder (manic depression), depression

*May not always require monitoring.

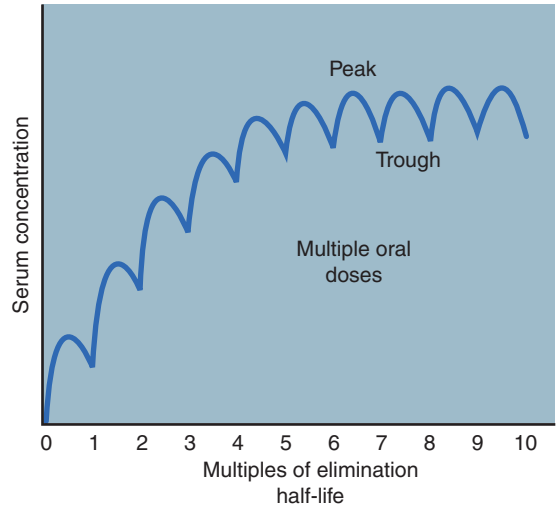


Figure 11-13 Dose–response curve after multiple oral doses of a drug were given each half-life.

and must be consistent. A team effort is essential and requires coordination with pharmacy, nursing, and the lab. The phlebotomist, a key player in this team effort, must understand the importance of peak and trough levels and collect the specimens in a timely manner.

- Peak levels screen for drug toxicity and specimens are collected when the highest serum concentration of the drug is anticipated. Peak times are influenced by many factors but typically occur approximately 30 minutes after intravenous (IV) administration, 60 minutes after intramuscular (IM) administration, and 1 to 2 hours after oral intake. Careful coordination of sample collection with dosing is critical.
- Trough levels are monitored to ensure that levels of the drug stay within the therapeutic range. Trough-level specimens are easiest to collect because they are collected when the lowest serum concentration of the drug is expected, usually immediately prior to administration of the next scheduled dose.

Collection timing is most critical for aminoglycoside drugs, such as amikacin, gentamicin, and tobramycin, which have short half-lives. A half-life is the time required for the body to metabolize half the amount of the drug. (Figure 11-13 depicts a dose–response curve based on doses of drug given each half-life.) The timing is less critical for drugs that have longer half-lives, such as phenobarbital and digoxin.

The FDA has approved some manufacturers' gel tubes for all analytes, including TDM; however, other manufacturers' gel tubes may affect TDM results. Refer to the manufacturer's package inserts and test methodologies used in the laboratory for specific requirements.

THERAPEUTIC PHLEBOTOMY

Therapeutic phlebotomy involves the withdrawal of large volumes of blood usually measured by the unit (as in blood donation), or approximately 500 mL. It is performed by phlebotomists who have been specially trained in the procedure or in donor phlebotomy, as the procedure is similar to collecting blood from donors. It is used as a treatment for certain medical conditions such as polycythemia and hemochromatosis.

- *Polycythemia* is a disease involving the body's overproduction of RBCs, which is detrimental to the patient's health and the most common reason for performing therapeutic phlebotomy. The patient's RBC levels are monitored regularly, usually by the hematocrit test. Periodic removal of blood when the hematocrit exceeds a certain level is used to help keep the patient's RBC levels within the normal range.
- *Hemochromatosis* is a disease characterized by excess iron deposits in the tissues. It can be caused by a defect in iron metabolism or result from multiple blood transfusions or excess iron intake. Periodic removal of single units of blood from the patient gradually depletes iron stores, because the body then uses the iron to make new RBCs to replace those removed.

TOXICOLOGY SPECIMENS

Toxicology is the scientific study of toxins (poisons). Clinical toxicology is concerned with the detection of toxins and treatment for the effects they produce. Forensic toxicology is concerned with the legal consequences of toxin exposure, both intentional and accidental. Toxicology tests examine blood, hair, urine, and other body substances for the presence of toxins, which often exist in very small amounts.

Forensic Specimens

Increasingly law enforcement officials request the collection of a toxicology specimen for forensic or legal reasons. The tests most frequently requested are breath or blood for alcohol. Other requests include urine drug screens and blood specimens for drugs and DNA analysis. When forensic specimens are collected, a special protocol, referred to as the **chain of custody**, must be strictly followed. Chain of custody requires detailed documentation that tracks the specimen from the time it is collected until the results are reported. The specimen must be accounted for at all times. If documentation is incomplete, legal action may be compromised.

One example of a chain-of-custody form is shown in Figure 11-14 and is used to identify the specimen and the person or persons who obtained and processed it. Information on the form also includes the time, date, and place where the specimen was obtained, along with the signature of the person from whom the specimen was taken. Patient identification and specimen collection take place in the presence of a witness, frequently a law enforcement officer, in which case protocol and packaging are completed by the officer before the specimen is sent to a crime laboratory for analysis. Any person who is involved in drawing a blood alcohol specimen for legal reasons can be summoned to appear in court.

Blood Alcohol (Ethanol) Specimens

Normally a physician orders a blood alcohol **(ethanol [ETOH])** test on a patient for medical reasons related to treatment or other clinical purposes. In such situations, there is no requirement for chain of custody, but the results of such analyses can ultimately become evidence in court. For that reason, the need for a standard protocol and well-documented handling becomes very important. Blood alcohol determinations for industrial purposes are becoming more common and may be required in connection with on-the-job injury, employee insurance programs, and employee drug screening. Occasionally a law enforcement agency may request a **blood alcohol concentration (BAC)** on an individual who has been involved in a traffic accident. Both industrial and legal samples require that chain-of-custody protocol be strictly followed. Refer to the specific state law for legal regulations and requirements.

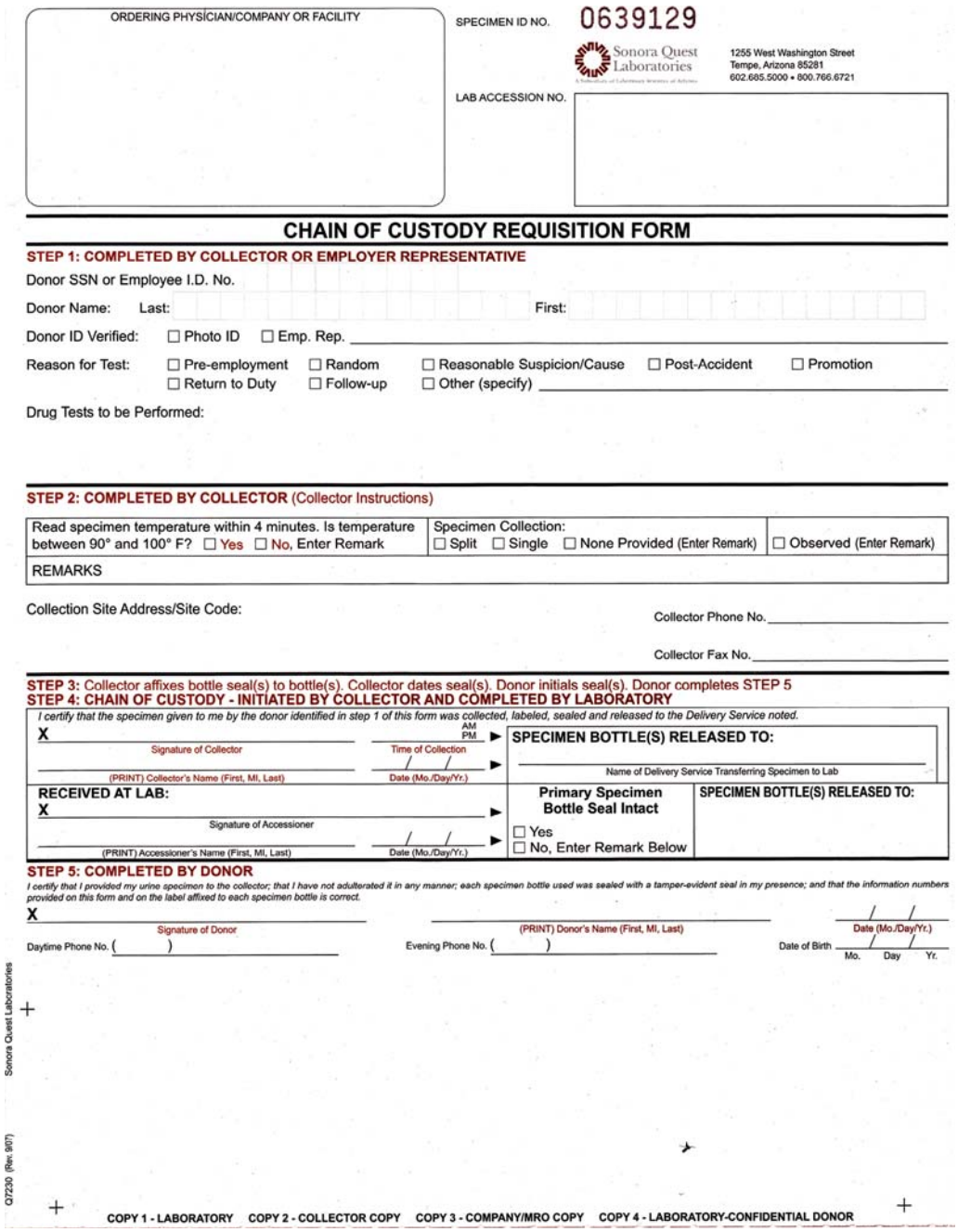
Skin Preparation

The antiseptic used to clean the venipuncture site must not contain alcohol or other volatile organic substances that might compromise results. Therefore 70% isopropyl alcohol used for routine venipuncture site preparation or other alcohols such as methanol and ethyl alcohol cannot be used for a BAC collection. Tincture of iodine contains alcohol and likewise should not be used to clean the site. The most frequently used antiseptics for ETOH specimen collection are aqueous povidone–iodine and aqueous benzalkonium chloride (BZK). If an alternative antiseptic is not available, regular soap and water can be used.

Specimen Requirements

A glass **gray-top sodium fluoride tube**, with or without an anticoagulant (depending upon the need for serum, plasma, or whole blood in the test procedure) is typically required for specimen collection. Because alcohol is volatile (easily vaporized or evaporated), the tube should be filled until the vacuum is exhausted and the stopper should not be removed.

KEY POINT Glass tubes are preferred for blood alcohol specimens because of the porous nature of plastic tubes.



ORDERING PHYSICIAN/COMPANY OR FACILITY

SPECIMEN ID NO. 0639129

Sonora Quest Laboratories

1255 West Washington Street
Tempe, Arizona 85281
602.685.5000 • 800.766.6721

LAB ACCESSION NO.

CHAIN OF CUSTODY REQUISITION FORM

STEP 1: COMPLETED BY COLLECTOR OR EMPLOYER REPRESENTATIVE

Donor SSN or Employee I.D. No.

Donor Name: Last: First:

Donor ID Verified: ☐ Photo ID ☐ Emp. Rep.

Reason for Test: ☐ Pre-employment ☐ Random ☐ Reasonable Suspicion/Cause ☐ Post-Accident ☐ Promotion
☐ Return to Duty ☐ Follow-up ☐ Other (specify)

Drug Tests to be Performed:

STEP 2: COMPLETED BY COLLECTOR (Collector Instructions)

Read specimen temperature within 4 minutes. Is temperature between 90° and 100° F? ☐ Yes ☐ No, Enter Remark	Specimen Collection: ☐ Split ☐ Single ☐ None Provided (Enter Remark)	☐ Observed (Enter Remark)
REMARKS		

Collection Site Address/Site Code:

Collector Phone No.

Collector Fax No.

STEP 3: Collector affixes bottle seal(s) to bottle(s). Collector dates seal(s). Donor initials seal(s). Donor completes STEP 5

STEP 4: CHAIN OF CUSTODY - INITIATED BY COLLECTOR AND COMPLETED BY LABORATORY

I certify that the specimen given to me by the donor identified in step 1 of this form was collected, labeled, sealed and released to the Delivery Service noted.

X _____ Signature of Collector

_____ (PRINT) Collector's Name (First, MI, Last)

AM PM Time of Collection

/ / Date (Mo./Day/Yr.)

SPECIMEN BOTTLE(S) RELEASED TO:

Name of Delivery Service Transferring Specimen to Lab

RECEIVED AT LAB:

X _____ Signature of Accessioner

_____ (PRINT) Accessioner's Name (First, MI, Last)

/ / Date (Mo./Day/Yr.)

Primary Specimen Bottle Seal Intact

☐ Yes
☐ No, Enter Remark Below

SPECIMEN BOTTLE(S) RELEASED TO:

STEP 5: COMPLETED BY DONOR

I certify that I provided my urine specimen to the collector; that I have not adulterated it in any manner; each specimen bottle used was sealed with a tamper-evident seal in my presence; and that the information numbers provided on this form and on the label affixed to each specimen bottle is correct.

X _____ Signature of Donor

Daytime Phone No. ( )

_____ (PRINT) Donor's Name (First, MI, Last)

Evening Phone No. ( )

/ / Date (Mo./Day/Yr.)

Date of Birth / / Mo. Day Yr.

Sonora Quest Laboratories

Q7230 (Rev. 9/07)

COPY 1 - LABORATORY COPY 2 - COLLECTOR COPY COPY 3 - COMPANY/MRO COPY COPY 4 - LABORATORY-CONFIDENTIAL DONOR

Figure 11-14 Chain-of-custody requisition form for urine drug screen. (Courtesy Sonora Laboratory Sciences, Phoenix, AZ.)

Drug Screening

Many healthcare organizations, sports associations, and major companies require preemployment **drug screening**. Random screening (without prior notice) may be performed on employees or athletes. Tests may detect a specific drug or screen for up to 30 different drugs, depending upon the circumstance. Testing is typically performed on urine rather than blood because it is easy to obtain and a wide variety of drugs or their metabolites (products of metabolism) can be detected in urine for a longer period of time. (See Table 11-2 for a list of drugs commonly detectable by drug screening, along with the length of time after use that the drug is detectable in the body.) The Triage TOX Drug Screen device (Biosite Incorporated, San Diego, CA) can rapidly and simultaneously test for seven major classes of drugs of abuse.

TABLE 11-2 Drugs Commonly Detectable at Drug Screening

Drug or Drug Families	Common Names	Detectable (time)	Comment
Alcohol		2–12 hours	
Amphetamines	Methamphetamine, speed, crystal, crank, ice	1–3 days 2–7 days	Single/light use Frequent/chronic use
Barbiturates	"Downers," Seconal, Fiorinal, Tuinal, phenobarbital	2 days to 4 weeks	Varies considerably with drugs in this class
Benzodiazepines	Valium, Librium, Xanax, Dalmane, Serax	1 week to >30 days	Varies considerably with drugs in this class
Cocaine (as metabolite)	Crack	1–3 days 3–14 days	Single/light use Frequent use/free base
Cannabinoids	Marijuana, grass, hash	1–7 days >30 days	Single/light use Frequent/chronic use
Methadone	Dolophine	1–4 days	Single/light use
Opiates	Heroin, morphine, codeine, Dilaudid, hydrocodone	2–4 days >7 days	Single/light use Frequent/chronic use
Phencyclidine	PCP, angel dust	2–7 days >30 days	Single/light use Frequent/chronic use
Propoxyphene	Darvon, Darvocet	1–2 days >7 days	Single/light use Frequent/chronic use

Courtesy Sonora Quest Laboratories, Phoenix, AZ, 2010.

Illicit drugs detected include cocaine (crack), opiates (heroin), and amphetamines (ecstasy, speed, crystal), and tetrahydrocannabinol (pot).

There are legal implications to drug screening, and a chain-of-custody protocol is required whether or not the test is being performed for legal reasons. The following are urine drug screen patient preparation and collection requirements defined by the **National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA)**.

Patient Preparation Requirements

- Explain the test purpose and procedure.
- Advise the patient of his or her legal rights.
- Obtain a witnessed, signed consent form.

Specimen Collection Requirements

- A special area must be maintained for urine collection.
- A proctor is required to be present at the time of collection to verify that the specimen came from the correct person.
- A split sample may be required for confirmation or parallel testing.
- The specimen must be labeled appropriately to establish a chain of custody.
- To avoid tampering, a specimen must be sealed and placed in a locked container during transport from the collection site to the testing site. Documentation must be carefully maintained from courier to receiver.

TRACE ELEMENTS

Trace elements or metals include aluminum, arsenic, copper, lead, iron, and zinc. These elements are measured in such small amounts that traces of them in the glass, plastic, or stopper material of evacuated tubes may leach into the specimen, causing falsely elevated test values. For this reason, specimens for these tests must be collected in special trace element–free

tubes. These tubes are made of materials that have been specially manufactured to be as free of trace elements as possible. An insert with each carton of tubes gives a detailed analysis of residual amounts of metals contained in the tubes. These tubes are typically royal blue and contain EDTA, heparin, or no additive. The type of additive is indicated on the label (e.g., red for no additive, lavender for EDTA, and green for heparin).

In collecting trace elements, it is important to prevent introducing even the smallest amount of the contaminating substance into the tube, since the amounts being tested are in micro- or nanograms. Contaminants in the stoppers accumulate in the needle each time a different tube is pierced in a multiple-tube collection. That accumulation can then carry over to the royal blue–stoppered tube, changing the results. When a trace-element test is ordered, it is best to draw it by itself if using a needle/tube assembly, or a syringe may be used. For best results, change the transfer device before filling the royal-blue tube.

Point-of-Care Testing*

Point-of-care testing (POCT)—also known as alternate site testing (AST) or ancillary, bedside, or near-patient testing—brings laboratory testing to the location of the patient. POCT has been made possible by advances in laboratory instrumentation that have led to the development of small, portable, and often handheld testing devices. Its benefits include convenience to the patient and a short turnaround time (TAT) for results that allow healthcare providers to address crucial patient needs, deliver prompt medical attention, and expedite patient recovery.

In addition to being able to operate the analyzer according to the manufacturer's instructions and possessing the phlebotomy skills required to collect the specimen, anyone who does POCT should be able to carry out the quality-control (QC) and maintenance procedures necessary to ensure that results obtained are accurate. Everyone who performs POCT in a clinical setting must meet the requirements of the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) for testing and the guidelines of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) for specimen handling.

QUALITY AND SAFETY IN POINT-OF-CARE TESTING

It is important to have processes and systems in place to ensure that the testing that is being done at the bedside or at the patient's side is performed properly and that results correlate with the same test when performed in the main laboratory.

Monitoring the quality of the waived testing being done at bedside is a constant challenge for the laboratory, and each year more tests are classified as waived by the FDA. In addition, the POCT regulations that govern many institutions change periodically with the addition of new regulations and clarification of existing ones.

Waived tests do not require the same level of quality checks as tests classified as nonwaived or sometimes referred to as moderately complex tests. Not too long ago, all POCT required external QC to be performed daily if any patient testing was to be done that day. Today the College of American Pathologists (CAP) requires that external liquid control be performed only as specified by the manufacturer's instructions on many of the waived tests. In most cases that means performing liquid controls upon receipt of a new shipment of test kits, if the kit is not stored properly, or if patient results are questionable. The POCT regulations from CAP serve as a minimum guide that must be instituted. Some institutions choose to go beyond the minimum requirements because of past experiences and to be reassured that the testing is working properly.

Manufacturers have enhanced instruments to include **electronic QCs (EQCs),** which can detect problems with the specimen (i.e., clotting, short samples, air bubbles) and electronic internal checks that can determine if the instrument is functioning properly. Although EQC has helped ease the regulatory requirements, it cannot check a very important part of the testing process, which is specimen collection and handling.

Some POC tests do not use instruments (often referred to as noninstrumented tests); for that reason the manufacturer or institution may require that daily external liquid QC be

*Section written by Bob Kaplanis, PBT(ASCP), Point of Care Specialist (AACC), MT(ASCP) Technical Specialist–POCT, AACC POCT Coordinator of the Year 2010, Laboratory Sciences of Arizona/Banner Health, Tempe, Arizona.

POINT-OF-CARE TESTING
UA QC Log

Facility General Hospital Instrument Serial #: 98157

Month: May Year: 2011 Nursing Unit: Pediatric Oncology
High Control Lot # & Exp. Date 04489 4/2012 Exp. Date at Room Temp: June 1, 2012
New High Control Lot # & Exp. Date _____ Exp. Date at Room Temp _____

Date	Sp. Gravity	pH	WBC	Nitrate	Protein	Glucose	Ketone	Urobil	Bilirubin	Blood	Signature
Write in QC Range to the right	1005-1030	7.0-8.5	1+ - 3+	Pos	1+ - 3+	Trace - 3+	1+ - 3+	2.0 - 8.0	1+ - 3+	Trace - 3+	
1	1020	7.5	2+	Pos	2+	2+	2+	4.0	3+	3+	
2	1015	7.5	2+	Pos	1+	3+	2+	4.0	2+	3+	
3	1020	8.0	3+	Pos	1+	3+	2+	4.0	2+	3+	
4	1020	7.5	2+	Pos	2+	3+	2+	4.0	2+	3+	
5	1015	7.5	2+	Pos	2+	3+	2+	4.0	2+	3+	
6											
7											
8											
9											
10											
11											
12											
13											
14											
15											
16											
17											
18											
19											
20											
21											
22											
23											
24											
25											
26											
27											
28											
29											
30											
31											

Reagent Strip Lot and Expiration Date

New Reagent Strip Lot and Expiration Date

Two levels of control are run every day a patient sample is tested, if results do agree with patient results, if a strip vial is not stored properly, or if a new lot # of strips is used

Document corrective action for any out of range QC on reverse of this sheet

POCT Monthly Review Signature: Date: / /

Figure 11-15 Urinalysis QC log showing daily recorded results for the positive control.

performed as a check on the technique used and the accuracy of the results. An example of such a test could be urine dipsticks that are read visually. At the bedside, this test does not use an instrument; instead, an individual compares the color pads on the dipstick (which has been dipped in urine) to a color chart on the strip vial . All control results must be recorded on a QC log and reviewed for consistency and acceptibility. An example of a log listing high UA control results for urine specimens is shown in Figure 11-15. This log is usually composed of two pages: one page for recording low QC values and the other for the high QC.

In addition to the many quality assurance issues with the POC instruments in use in today's healthcare facilities, it has become evident that handheld POC analyzers carried between patients in a healthcare institution can be fomites for disease. One relevant publication from the Center for Disease Control (CDC) is entitled *Recommendations of CDC and the Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC)*. The following quote

Premoistened 3" x 3" Towel
TUBERCULOCIDAL VIRUCIDAL* BACTERICIDAL FUNGICIDAL
ACCU-CHEK Convenience Bleach Wipe
REORDER REF 0 3757897001
Disinfecting wipe for hard, non-porous environmental surfaces and patient care equipment
Mycobacterium bovis variant tuberculosis OT 451C150, *HIV-1, Trichophyton mentagrophytes,
Staphylococcus aureus-MRSA, Enterococcus faecalis-VRE, Staphylococcus aureus, Salmonella
enterica and Pseudomonas aeruginosa
For wiping hard non-porous environmental surfaces & patient care equipment 0.525%
Active ingredient: Sodium hypochlorite 99.475%
Other ingredients* 100.000%
Total
*Other ingredients do not include weight of towel.
SUGGESTED AREAS OF USAGE: Medical, Dental and Laboratory Counters, Exam Tables, Carts, Patient Care Equipment and Point-of-Care Equipment
KEEP OUT OF REACH OF CHILDREN
CAUTION
FIRST AID: If in eyes: Hold eye open and rinse slowly and gently with water for 15-20 minutes. Remove contact lenses, if present, after the first 5 minutes, then continue rinsing eye. Call a poison control center or doctor for treatment advice.
STORAGE AND DISPOSAL
• Store product in a cool, dry area, away from heat and direct sunlight. • Do not reuse empty packet and used towel • Discard used towel and empty packet in designated infectious waste containers for autoclaving and dispose according to federal, state, and local regulations.
(See panel on reverse side for directions for use and additional precautionary statements.)
EPA Reg. No. 69687-1-75446 EPA Est. No. 69687-IL-001
Net Contents 0.1 oz.

Figure 11-16 EPA-registered bleach wipes for POCT instruments. (Roche Diagnostics Corporation, Indianapolis, IN.)

from that document illustrates the important role medical equipment can play in the spread of infections.

> Although microbiologically contaminated surfaces can serve as reservoirs of potential pathogens, these surfaces generally are not directly associated with transmission of infections to either staff or patients. The transferral of microorganisms from environmental surfaces to patients is largely via hand contact with the surface. Although hand hygiene is important to minimize the impact of this transfer, cleaning and disinfecting environmental surfaces routinely is fundamental in reducing their potential contribution to the incidence of healthcare-associated infections.

In an effort to reduce the possible transmission of microorganisms to patients, glucose meter manufacturers have developed recommendations to disinfect their instruments. These vary by manufacturer; therefore, the specific recommendations for a particular glucose meter should be followed. Several manufacturers recommend cleaning the glucose meter with 10% bleach. It has been proven that a 1:10 bleach solution can effectively clean and disinfect POC instruments, but to be effective, such a solution must be mixed daily. A similar product available commercially is made up of individually wrapped EPA-registered bleach wipes designed to be used once and then thrown in the trash.

These wipes, shown in Figure 11-16, meet all OSHA and CDC regulations pertaining to devices that can be exposed to blood-borne pathogens. Because of their convenience, they have been found to encourage cleaning, thus reducing cross-contamination between patients of various bacteria including *Clostridium difficile*, methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), and vancomycin-resistant *Enterococcus* (VRE).

COAGULATION MONITORING BY POCT

Several different types of coagulation POCT analyzers can be used to measure and evaluate patient warfarin and heparin therapy. Some of the more common POCT coagulation tests monitored are:

- Prothrombin time (PT) and international normalized ratio (INR)
- Activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT or PTT)
- **Activated clotting time (ACT)**
- Platelet function

Figure 11-17 Whole-blood sample being added to the Cascade® POC bar-coded assay card. (Courtesy Helena, Beaumont, TX.)

The numerous POCT instruments available to perform various coagulation tests include:

- Cascade POC—ACT, APTT, PT/INR
- CoaguChek XS Plus—PT/INR
- GEM Premier 4000—ACT, APTT, PT/INR
- i-STAT—ACT, PT/INR
- Verify Now—Platelet function

Act

The ACT test analyzes activity of the intrinsic coagulation factors and is used to monitor heparin therapy. Heparin is given intravenously to patients who have blood clots or whose blood is apt to clot too easily; it is also given as a precaution following certain surgeries. Effects on intravenous heparin administration are immediate but difficult to control. Too much heparin can cause the patient to bleed; therefore heparin therapy is closely monitored. Once a patient's condition is stabilized, the patient is placed on oral anticoagulant therapy (such as warfarin) and monitored by PT testing.

The ACT test has traditionally been a bedside test; however, timing and mixing was done manually and prone to error. With automated ACT analyzers, the mixing and timing are done automatically. An example of an analyzer used to perform this test is the Cascade POC (Helena, Beaumont, TX). To begin the testing process with the Cascade POC, the bar-coded assay card is scanned by a reader on the instrument. This lets the instrument know which assay is requested and also the calibration details. The card is then placed into the instrument and, as shown in Figure 11-17, a whole-blood sample is added to the card for analysis. The data management system allows for the results to be sent directly to the laboratory information system (LIS) if desired.

PT/INR

The PT test is used to monitor warfarin (e.g., Coumadin) therapy. Many warfarin or anticoagulation clinics use POCT coagulation analyzers that perform **protime (PT)** and **international normalized ratio (INR)** tests on whole blood from a fingerstick to provide timely laboratory results. An example of a prothrombin time (PT/INR) meter that is frequently used is the **CoaguChek XS** (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN) (Fig. 11-18).

The INR is derived from the mathematical formula below, which was developed to standardize the differences found between the various manufacturer's reagents.

$$INR = (PT_{patient}/PT_{normal})^{ISI}$$

$PT_{patient}$ = the patient's PT result expressed in seconds

Figure 11-18 CoaguChek® XS Plus for PT/INR testing. (Courtesy Roche Diagnostics Corporation, Indianapolis, IN.)

PT_{normal} = the laboratory's geometric mean value for normal patients in seconds

ISI = international sensitivity index for the tissue factor in the manufacturer's reagent

Some POCT analyzers, such as CoaguChek, allow patients to perform protimes at home and transmit their results to the physician's office. The physician can then adjust medication over the phone and the patient does not have to make an office visit.

PTT

The APTT/PTT test is used to screen for bleeding disorders prior to surgery, investigate bleeding or clotting disorders, detect clotting factor deficiencies, and monitor low-dose heparin therapy. Cascade POC and GEM Premier (Instrumentation Laboratories, Bedford, MA) are two POC analyzers that have test functions for APTT.

Platelet Function

Platelet function testing allows the clinician to determine a patient's response to medication before open heart surgery or cardiac catheterization. This can help prevent excessive bleeding or blood clots. This testing can be done utilizing an automated analyzer with single-use, disposable assays called the VerifyNow® System (Accumetrics, San Diego, CA; Fig. 11-19). It uses whole-blood samples and gives measurements that correlate with laboratory testing.

Platelet function tests can measure the ability of an individual to respond to various antiplatelet medications. Patients respond differently to this type of medication; some are even very resistant. The VerifyNow System Aspirin Assay, which is CLIA-waived, provides a measurement to determine whether or not a patient is responding to aspirin therapy.

Bleeding Time

Bleeding time is the time required for blood to stop flowing from a standardized puncture on the inner surface of the forearm. The **bleeding-time (BT)** test, which evaluates platelet

Figure 11-19 VerifyNow® automated analyzer for platelet function tests. (Courtesy Accumetrics, San Diego, CA.)

plug formation in the capillaries to detect platelet function disorders and capillary integrity problems, has always been a POCT and does not require special POCT instrumentation. It is used in diagnosing problems with hemostasis and as a presurgical screening test. Although it has largely been replaced by other coagulation tests, such as platelet function assays, it is still occasionally ordered. Since accuracy of results depends on technique, the test must be performed correctly.

The BT test is performed on the volar (inner) lateral surface of the forearm, using a blood pressure cuff to standardize and maintain a constant pressure. The incision is made with a sterile automated incision device, such as the Surgicutt (ITC, Edison, NJ) (Fig. 11-20), that controls the width (5.0 mm) and depth (1.0 mm) of the incision. The steps of BT testing are shown in Procedure 11-3.

Figure 11-20 Surgicutt® automated bleeding time devices. (Courtesy ITC, Edison, NJ.)

View the Bleeding Time Test video at http:// thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 11-3 Bleeding-Time Test

PURPOSE: To perform a bleeding-time test.

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, suitable skin antiseptic, automated bleeding time incision device, blood pressure cuff, timing device, filter paper (#1 Whatman or equivalent), alcohol pads, butterfly bandage or Steri-Strips, waterproof bandage, permanent ink pen.

Step	Rationale
1. Identify patient and sanitize hands.	Correct ID is vital to patient safety and meaningful test results. Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in infection control by protecting the phlebotomist, patient, and others from contamination. Gloves are sometimes put on at this point. Follow facility protocol.
2. Determine whether the patient has taken aspirin or any other salicylate-containing drug within the previous 2 weeks. Advise the patient of the potential for scarring.	Salicylates interfere with interpretation of the test by prolonging bleeding time. Although the incision is minor, there is a possibility of scarring.
3. Support the patient's arm on a steady surface.	Support is required so the patient is comfortable for the duration of the test and doesn't move the arm when the incision is made.
4. Select an area on the inner (volar) lateral surface of the forearm, approximately 5 cm distal to the antecubital area and devoid of surface veins, scars, bruises, or edema. It may be necessary to shave the test area lightly if it is covered with a large amount of hair.	The lateral aspect is preferred because the medial aspect tends to cause more pain and has a higher incidence of scarring. Scars, veins, bruises, and edema are avoided for accuracy of test results. The area must be devoid of hair for the incision device to make proper contact with the skin before activation.
5. Place the blood pressure cuff around the arm.	The blood pressure cuff must be in place and ready to be inflated before the incision is made. Applying it before cleaning the site minimizes chance of contaminating the site during application and adjustment.
6. Clean the selected area with alcohol and allow to air-dry.	Cleaning the site with an antiseptic helps avoid contaminating the patient with skin-surface bacteria when the incision is made. Letting the site dry naturally permits maximum antiseptic action, prevents contamination caused by wiping, and avoids stinging when the incision is made.
7. Put on gloves and prepare equipment.	According to the OSHA BBP standard, gloves must be worn during phlebotomy procedures. Preparing equipment while the site is drying saves time.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 11-3 Bleeding-Time Test (Continued)

Step	Rationale
8. Remove the puncture device from its package, being careful not to touch or rest the blade slot on any nonsterile surface.	Sterility of the incision device must be maintained for the safety of the patient.
9. Inflate the blood pressure cuff to 40 mm Hg.	This pressure *must* be maintained throughout the entire procedure for standardization purposes.
10. Quickly remove the safety clip and place the puncture device firmly on the lateral aspect of the forearm (without pressing hard) approximately 5 cm below and parallel to the antecubital crease.	Time between inflation of the blood pressure cuff and making the incision should be between 30 and 60 seconds for accuracy of results. A horizontal incision parallel to the antecubital crease is recommended.
11. Depress the trigger while simultaneously starting the timer. Remove the device from the arm as soon as the blade has retracted and discard it in the sharps container.	Timing is critical and must start when the incision is made. Removing the device before the blade retracts can result in injury to the patient or phlebotomist. All sharp objects must be discarded in a sharps container.
12. Blot the blood flow at 30 seconds by bringing the filter paper close to the incision and absorbing or "wicking" the blood onto the filter paper without touching the wound.	Standardization of timing is necessary for accuracy of results. Touching the wound disturbs platelet plug formation.
13. Stop the timer when blood no longer stains the filter paper. (If bleeding persists beyond 15 minutes, the test is normally stopped and the result is reported as 15 minutes or greater.)	The end point is determined by stoppage of blood flow indicated when no more blood soaks into the paper. Follow facility protocol for stopping the test if the bleeding time is excessive.

PROCEDURE 11-3 Bleeding-Time Test (Continued)

Step	Rationale
14. Remove blood pressure cuff, clean the arm, and apply a butterfly bandage or Steri-Strip. Cover with an adhesive bandage. Instruct the patient not to remove the bandage or get the site wet for 24 hours.	A butterfly bandage (or Steri-Strip) pulls the sides of the wound together and helps prevent scarring. For proper healing, the site should not get wet or be disturbed for 24 hours.
15. Record the time to the nearest 30 seconds. Normal: 2–8 minutes depending on method and facility reference ranges.	Timing cannot be more precise because blotting occurs only at 30-second intervals.
16. Dispose of used and contaminated supplies. Thank and dismiss (outpatient) or leave patient (inpatient).	Wrappers are normally discarded in the regular trash. The blood-soaked filter paper is typically discarded in a biohazard container.

Sources of Error

- Ingestion of aspirin or other salicylate-containing drugs or drugs such as ethanol, dextran, and streptokinase within 2 weeks of the test can abnormally prolong bleeding time.
- Any disturbance of platelet plug formation will increase the bleeding time.
- BP below or above 40 mm Hg will decrease or increase the bleeding time, respectively.
- Failure to start the timing as soon as the incision is made will decrease the bleeding time.
- Too little pressure on the incision device will decrease, and too much pressure will increase the bleeding time.

ARTERIAL BLOOD GASES AND ELECTROLYTES

Arterial blood gases (ABGs) and electrolytes are panels of tests that are often ordered in an emergency situation because of the critical balance in which these analytes must be maintained. ABG readings are used to determine the pH of blood which if outside the very narrow normal range threatens the patient's survival. Balance of the electrolytes is essential for normal function of cells and organs. POCT has proven to be invaluable in critical care challenges.

Arterial Blood Gases

Arterial blood gases (ABGs) measured by POCT methods include **pH, partial pressure of carbon dioxide** (Pco_2), **oxygen saturation** (So_2), and **partial pressure of oxygen** (Po_2).

- pH is an abbreviation for potential hydrogen, a scale representing the relative acidity or alkalinity of a solution. The arterial blood pH test is a measure of the body's acid–base balance and indicates his or her metabolic and respiratory status. The normal range for arterial blood pH is 7.35 to 7.45. Below-normal pH is referred to as acidosis and above-normal pH is referred to as alkalosis.
- The Pco_2 is a measure of the pressure exerted by dissolved CO_2 in the blood plasma and is proportional to the Pco_2 in the alveoli; therefore it is an indicator of how well air is being exchanged between the blood and the lungs. CO_2 levels are maintained within normal limits by the rate and depth of respiration. An abnormal increase in Pco_2 is associated with hypoventilation and a decrease with hyperventilation.
- The Po_2 is a measure of the pressure exerted by dissolved O_2 in the blood plasma and indicates the ability of the lungs to diffuse O_2 through the alveoli into the blood. It is used to evaluate the effectiveness of oxygen therapy.

- So_2 is a measure of the percentage of hemoglobin binding sites occupied by oxygen in the bloodstream. It is used by physicians to determine a patient's oxygenation status. A normal, healthy individual will usually exhibit oxygen saturation around 98%. A person with an arterial So_2 below 90% is said to have hypoxemia (a low oxygen level in the blood) and may be cyanotic.

Electrolytes

The most common electrolytes measured by POCT are **sodium (Na^+), potassium (K^+), chloride (Cl^-), bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-), and ionized calcium (iCa_2^+).**

- Sodium is the most plentiful electrolyte in the blood. It plays a major role in maintaining osmotic pressure and acid–base balance and in transmitting nerve impulses. Reduced sodium levels are referred to as **hyponatremia.** Elevated levels are referred to as **hypernatremia.**
- Potassium is primarily concentrated within the cells, with very little found in the bones and blood. It is released into the blood when cells are damaged. Potassium plays a major role in nerve conduction, muscle function, acid–base balance, and osmotic pressure. It influences cardiac output by helping to control the rate and force of heart contraction. The presence of a U wave on an electrocardiogram indicates potassium deficiency. Decreased blood potassium is called **hypokalemia.** Increased blood potassium is called **hyperkalemia.**
- Chloride exists mainly in the extracellular spaces in the form of sodium chloride (NaCl) or hydrochloric acid. Chloride is responsible for maintaining cellular integrity by influencing osmotic pressure and both acid–base and water balance. Chloride must be supplied along with potassium when hypokalemia is being corrected.
- Bicarbonate ion plays a role in transporting carbon dioxide (CO_2) to the lungs and in regulating blood pH. It is formed when carbonic acid is dissociated into H^+ and HCO_3^- ions. Hydrogen ions (H^+) released in the process cause a decrease in pH, which means that the blood becomes more acid. The released HCO_3^- moves from the cells to the plasma and is carried to the lungs, where it re-enters the cells and releases CO_2 for removal through the walls of the alveoli. Removal of CO_2 by the lungs results in a decrease of H^+ ions and an increase in blood pH. Decreased ventilation (hypoventilation) results in higher CO_2 levels and the production of more H^+ ions and can lead to acidosis. Hyperventilation decreases CO_2 levels and can lead to alkalosis.
- Ionized calcium (iCa^{2+}) accounts for approximately 45% of the calcium in the blood; the rest is bound to protein and other substances. Only ionized calcium can be used by the body for such critical functions as muscular contraction, cardiac function, transmission of nerve impulses, and blood clotting.

MULTIPLE-TEST-PANEL MONITORING BY POCT

Several small, portable, and in some cases handheld instruments are available that measure multiple test panels of commonly ordered stat tests such as BUN, glucose, lactate, hemoglobin and potassium The body normally maintains these analytes in specific proportions within a narrow range; any uncorrected imbalance can quickly turn life threatening. POCT instruments in the ER or ICU play an important role at these times because of the immediate test result availability.

Examples of instruments that have a menu of several different tests are:

- GEM Premier
- i-STAT
- NOVA Stat Profile Analyzer
- ABL80 Flex

All the testing devices listed measure a multitude of analytes. Although they all have slightly different test menus, some of the more common analytes are Na^+, K^+, Cl, and HCO_3^- as well as blood gas values for pH, Pco_2, Po_2, and So_2, BUN, glucose, Hgb and Hct, ACT, lactate, and troponin.

Figure 11-21 i-STAT® instrument. (Courtesy Abbott Diagnostics, Abbott Park, IL.)

The handheld i-STAT (Fig. 11-21) (Abbott Diagnostics, Abbott Park, IL) is a versatile, portable system that can measure a variety of tests. This system utilizes small test cartridges. Some cartridges are for single tests, but most can perform multiple tests on one cartridge. It can measure blood gas values and the electrolytes as well as BUN, glucose, Hgb and Hct, and ACT values.

Another POCT analyzer that measures blood gases and electrolytes is the GEM Premier 4000 (Instrumentation Laboratories, Lexington, MA) (Fig. 11-22). Test cartridges for this instrument also measure critical chemistry analytes, such as lactate, potassium, BUN, and creatinine, allowing for rapid "near-patient" screening for renal disease.

The AVOXimeter (ITC, Edison, NJ) (Fig. 11-23) provides physicians with quick results to aid in diagnosing carbon monoxide toxicity and methemoglobin status of patients in neonatal intensive care. This instrument aids physicians in diagnosing and detecting intracardiac (within the heart) and great-vessel shunts. Because of its point-of-care availability, it can offer

Figure 11-22 GEM® Premier™ 4000 used for rapid screening for renal disease. (Courtesy Instrumentation Laboratory, Lexington, MA.)

Figure 11-23 AVOXimeter® for blood gases. (Courtesy ITC, Edison, NJ.)

an evaluation of blood gases in approximately 10 seconds, enabling the physician to make critical decisions concerning care and treatment without delay.

The portable blood gas analyzer ABL80 Flex (Fig. 11-24) is used in primary clinics and full-service hospitals. The ABL80 series offers the ability to personalize diagnostic and test capabilities to suit the needs of a facility's acute care requirements.

OTHER TESTS PERFORMED BY POCT

Cardiac Troponin T and I

Cardiac troponin T (TnT) and **troponin I (TnI)** are proteins specific to heart muscle. Blood levels of cardiac TnT begin to rise within 4 hours of the onset of myocardial damage and may stay elevated for up to 14 days. Cardiac TnI levels rise within 3 to 6 hours and return to normal in 5 to 10 days. Measurement of these proteins is a valuable tool in the diagnosis of acute myocardial infarction (AMI) or heart attack. TnT is also measured to monitor

Figure 11-24 ABL80 Flex shown on a pole for portability in a hospital setting. (Courtesy of Radiometer America, Inc.)

Figure 11-25 **A.** Cholestech LDX analyzer for lipid testing. **B.** LDX test cartridge. (Both photos courtesy Alere, San Diego, CA.)

the effectiveness of thrombolytic therapy in heart attack patients. Cardiac troponin POCT analyzers include

- The CARDIAC T Rapid Assay (Roche Corporation, Indianapolis, IN), a one-step, whole-blood test for cardiac TnT that uses disposable test kits to provide results in minutes
- The Triage® Cardiac Panel (Alere, San Diego, CA), which provides results for three cardiac markers, TnI, CK-MB, and myoglobin

Lipid Testing

The Cholestech LDX analyzer (Alere, San Diego, CA) (Fig. 11-25A) can perform cholesterol, triglyceride, low-density lipoprotein (LDL), and high-density lipoprotein (HDL) tests. Blood can be obtained by venipuncture or fingerstick and collected in a lithium heparin capillary tube for transfer into the testing cartridge (Fig. 11-25B). A quantitative result is obtained by the instrument's evaluation of the intensity of a colored bar. A separate cartridge measures alanine transferase (ALT), a liver enzyme that is monitored when patients are on certain lipid-lowering medications.

B-Type Natriuretic Peptide

B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) is a cardiac hormone produced by the heart in response to ventricular volume expansion and pressure overload. It is the first objective measurement for congestive heart failure (CHF). BNP levels help physicians differentiate chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) and CHF. This facilitates early patient diagnosis and placement into the appropriate care plan. BNP blood concentrations increase with the increasing severity of CHF and have been shown to more accurately reflect final diagnosis than echocardiographic ejection fractions. BNP can be determined by the Triage® MeterPro (Fig. 11-26) using a whole-blood EDTA specimen and a special cartridge.

C-Reactive Protein (CRP)

C-reactive protein (CRP) is a β-globulin found in the blood that responds to inflammation and can therefore be used as a sensitive though nonspecific marker of systemic inflammation. The test from Cholestech called hs-CRP (high sensivity CRP) can be used as an aid in the detection and evaluation of infection, tissue injury, and inflammatory disorders. Owing to its high sensitivity, this test can detect low-grade inflammation and even CRP in asymptomatic individuals. Healthcare providers can use the POC Cholestech LDX® instrument (Fig. 11-25A) to measure this reactive protein within 7 minutes, using capillary blood.

Figure 11-26 Triage® MeterPro used for BNP analysis. (Courtesy Alere, San Diego, CA.)

View the Finger Stick Glucose video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Glucose

Glucose testing is one of the most common POCT procedures and is most often performed to monitor glucose levels of patients with diabetes mellitus. POCT glucose analyzers/meters are small, portable, and relatively inexpensive. Two different types of meters are made: one type for an individual's personal use and the other for use in healthcare settings. Hospital-approved glucose analyzers are equipped with data management systems and require various QC checks to monitor the performance of the meter and the operator. Glucose meters manufactured for home use do not have the same level of QC checks. It is common practice in hospitals not to use a patient's personal glucose meter for treatment decisions.

KEY POINT Regulatory guidelines and the CLSI recommend that a person receive institutional authorization to perform POCT glucose testing only after completing formal training in facility-established procedures, including maintenance and QC.

An example of some of the glucose meters that are available include:

- ACCU-CHEK Inform
- HemoCue Glucose 201 DM
- Precision Xceed Pro
- SureStep Flex30

These analyzers require the use of special reagent test strips or microcuvettes that are unique to their meters. To prevent deterioration of the strips/microcuvettes, the containers they are stored in must be protected from excessive heat and moisture. Some strips/microcuvetttes are stored in vials, which should be tightly recapped after obtaining the necessary strip/microcuvette, while other strips are individually wrapped, like those used in Precision XceedPro. The Accu-Chek Inform (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN) (Fig. 11-27) has a code chip in the analyzer that must match the strip code number.

Glucose analyzers predominantly use whole-blood specimens obtained by routine skin puncture. Some will also accept heparinized venous specimens. To perform the test, a drop of blood is applied to the test strip/microcuvette. The analyzer determines the level of glucose in the blood, and the result appears on a display screen.

All of the analyzers approved for hospital use have the following in common:

- Sample types used may be venous, arterial, or capillary.
- They allow data for the glucose meter to be downloaded to a data management program.
- They require the use of a patient and/or authorized operator identification number.
- They require QC.

Figure 11-27 AccuChek® Inform glucose meter. (Courtesy Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis, IN.)

To download POCT test results from a remote location, an analyzer must be linked to a serial downloader. The SureStep Flexx (Lifescan, Inc., Milpitas, CA) (Fig. 11-28) is shown with a network downloader which, when connected to the instrument, allows transfer of patient glucose results to the patient's chart through various interface options. The SureStep Flexx procedure involves "off-meter dosing," which means that the test strip is touched to the blood before the strip is placed in the meter/instrument to be measured. This can help protect the patient from possible contamination by infectious agents, as may be associated with instruments where blood is added to a strip that is already in the instrument.

KEY POINT QC should be repeated if the analyzer is dropped, the battery is replaced, or patient results or analyzer functioning are questioned.

Figure 11-28 SureStep® Flexx glucose meter with the connection module to the network. (Courtesy Lifescan, Inc., Milpitas, CA.)

Figure 11-29 The PXP scanning a test strip barcode at the bedside. (Courtesy of Abbott Diabetes Care, Alameda, CA.)

The HemoCue Glucose 201 DM (HemoCue, Inc., Lake Forest, CA) Analyzer accepts arterial specimens as well as skin puncture and venous specimens. The test is performed using a microcuvette instead of a test strip. This unit is also a data management system that prompts the operator for identification, lot numbers, and other required QC information during analysis. The data are then transferred to the computer information system in the laboratory.

The Abbott Precision XceedPro (PXP) is designed to monitor patients at risk for diabetic ketoacidosis and is presently the only POC system that can test both blood glucose and β-ketones on the same instrument. The system incorporates the latest technology to minimize the chance of error and to ensure patient safety in performing POCT. For example, the PXP is capable of scanning the patient's wrist band, the operator's badge and the test strip's bar code (Fig. 11-29). The scan identifies the lot number and expiration date found on the strip and automatically calibrates the system. Each strip is individually wrapped so as to protect it from moisture and light until used. The patient name, date of birth and gender is clearly displayed on the monitor to aid in patient identification.

Glycemic Index Control

Most institutions use a practice of intensive insulin therapy commonly referred to as **tight glycemic control (TGC).** This may involve monitoring a patient's glucose level every half hour and the administration of insulin as required to keep glucose levels in a predetermined range and avoid hyperglycemia. TGC requires frequent and fast glucose results. Blood glucose monitors on a nursing unit are an integral part of this testing. It has been well documented that managing a patient's glucose level reduces infections, speeds healing, decreases length of stay, and lowers the costs of caring for a patient.

Glycosylated Hemoglobin

Glycosylated hemoglobin is a diagnostic tool for monitoring diabetes therapy and was recently accepted as a more accurate predictor than current techniques of a diabetic patient's likelihood of developing complications of the disease; it is being considered as the primary diagnostic test for type 2 diabetes. Three hemoglobins—A_{1a}, A_{1b}, and A_{1c}—are types of Hgb A formed by glycosylation. Because glycosylation occurs at a constant rate during the 120-day life cycle of a red cell, glycosylated (sugar chemically linked to protein) Hgb levels reflect the average blood glucose level during the preceding 4 to 6 weeks and thus can be used to evaluate the long-term effectiveness of diabetes therapy. Since this test measures glucose within a RBC, levels are more stable than tests involving plasma or whole-blood glucose. Glycosylated hemoglobin values are reported as a percentage of the total hemoglobin within an erythrocyte. Since A_{1c} is present in larger quantity than the others, it is the one measured.

Figure 11-30 DCA Vantage® and two different A1c test cartridges. (Courtesy Siemens Health Care Diagnostics, Deerfield, IL.)

One analyzer that measures glycosylated hemoglobin is the DCA Vantage A1c Analyzer (Siemens Healthcare Diagnostics, Inc., Tarrytown, NY) (Fig. 11-30). The device has a data management system and an "on-board" printer that allows the clinician to see a patient's trend graph for an immediate review of previous results; this also facilitates a discussion of compliance issues with the patient.

Hematocrit

Hematocrit (Hct), also called packed cell volume (PCV), is a measure of the volume of RBCs in a patient's blood. It is calculated by centrifuging a specific volume of anticoagulated blood and determining the proportion of RBCs to plasma. Blood is collected in special microhematocrit capillary tubes. The tubes are sealed at one end with clay or a special stopper and placed in a special hematocrit centrifuge (Fig. 11-31). The StatSpin® CritSpin microhematocrit centrifuge provides complete cell packing in 2 minutes. The result is expressed as a percentage of cells to liquid.

Hematocrits are often performed in physician office labs (POLs), clinics, and blood donor stations to screen for anemia or as an aid in the diagnosis and monitoring of patients with polycythemia.

Figure 11-31 StatSpin® CritSpin microhematocrit centrifuge. (IRIS International, Inc., Chatsworth, CA.)

Figure 11-32 HB 201+ for measuring hemoglobin in arterial, venous, or capillary blood. (HemoCue, Inc., Mission Viejo, CA.)

View the video Collecting Blood for Hemoglobin Determination at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Hemoglobin

The measurement of hemoglobin (hgb) levels is an important part of managing patients with anemia. A number of POCT analyzers measure hemoglobin. One example is the Hemocue HB 201+ Analyzer (Fig. 11-32) (HemoCue, Inc. Lake Forest, CA). It can determine hemoglobin levels in arterial, venous, or capillary blood specimens. A small amount of blood sample is placed in a special microcuvette and inserted into the machine for a reading. As part of the analyzer's electronic QC, the analyzer automatically verifies the performance of the optics every time it is turned on and every 2 hours while the analyzer is left on.

Lactate

It has long been known that patients who are critically ill can exhibit metabolic acidosis. The accumulation of lactic acid in blood has been identified as the cause of acid–base disorder. Lactic acidosis is associated with major metabolic issues and is due to hyperlactatemia (increased lactate in the blood). Hyperlactatemia is usually present in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock.

The lactate level can be used as a marker of the severity of the condition and the patient's stress response. Patients who have an arterial lactate level of more than 5 mmol/L have a very poor prognosis; consequently it is important to be able to obtain lactate results within minutes to effectively treat severe sepsis. If the test is to be performed in the laboratory, the sample must be transported on ice without delay and analyzed as soon as it arrives in the lab. Today the test can be performed at the bedside within a few seconds using the i-STAT or Nova Biomedical's StatStrip Lactate analyzer (Waltham, MA) (Fig. 11-33).

Occult Blood (Guaiac)

Detection of occult (hidden) blood in stool (feces) is an important tool in diagnosing and determining the location of a number of diseases of the digestive tract, including gastric ulcer disease and colon cancer. Most tests that detect fecal blood make use of the peroxidase activity of the hemoglobin molecule to bring about a color change in the specimen being tested. For this reason, a patient's diet should be free of meat and vegetable sources of peroxidase, which may lead to false-positive results. Other sources of false-positive results may be certain drugs, vitamin C, alcohol, and aspirin.

Figure 11-33 StatStrip Lactate analyzer. (Courtesy Nova Biomedical, Waltham, MA.)

Testing for occult blood in POCT settings typically involves the use of special kits containing cards on which small amounts of feces are placed. Hemoccult® II Sensa® (Beckman Coulter Inc., Brea, CA) offers easily used and safely transported cards for collection of the sample (Fig. 11-34). The specimen can be collected and tested on site or the cards can be sent home with the patient to collect the samples and mail back to the lab.

Pregnancy Testing

Most rapid pregnancy tests detect the presence of **human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)**, a hormone produced by the placenta that appears in both urine and serum beginning approximately 10 days after conception. Most rapid pregnancy testing is performed on urine. Peak urine levels of hCG occur at approximately 10 weeks of gestation.

A number of manufacturers supply pregnancy testing kits. Two examples are the Beckman Coulter Icon hCG (Beckman Coulter, Inc., Brea, CA) (Fig. 11-35) and Quidel's (San Diego, CA)

Figure 11-34 Hemoccult® II Sensa® occult blood collection cards. (Beckman Coulter, Fullerton, CA.)

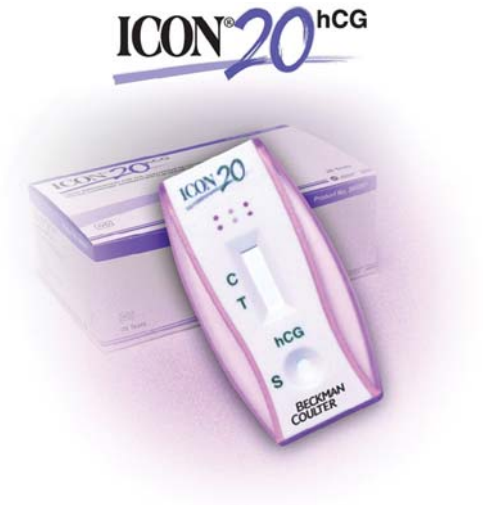


Figure 11-35 Icon® 20 hCG. (Beckman Coulter, Fullerton, CA.)

After seeing all the POCT instruments in this portion of the book, try your hand at matching some of the instruments and devices with the tests they measure in Labeling Exercise 11-1 of the WORKBOOK.

QuickVue+ One Step hCG Combo, both of which can use urine or serum to perform testing. Each manufacturer's kit has unique reagents, timing, and testing methods, and most test kits have a built-in control system. It is important to follow directions exactly. The steps in testing for hCG are outlined in Procedure 11-4.

PROCEDURE 11-4 Pregnancy Testing

hCG Pregnancy Test Procedure

PURPOSE: To determine pregnancy status using a qualitative hCG urine test. The test checks to see if there is a hormone called human chorionic gonadotropin in the urine. HCG is a hormone normally present in serum and urine during pregnancy.

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, hCG test kit test device, disposable dropper or other transfer device (usually supplied with test device), specimen collection cup, patient label, certified timer.

PROCEDURE 11-4 Pregnancy Testing (Continued)

SPECIMEN REQUIREMENTS: No special patient preparation is necessary. Use a clean container to collect sample and keep at room temperature. First morning specimen is suggested because it generally contains the highest concentration of hCG, but any urine sample is suitable for testing.

NOTE: The pouch containing the hCG test kit must be at room temperature before it is opened.

Step	Rationale
1. Identify the patient according to facility policy.	Correct ID is vital to patient safety and meaningful test results.
2. Label the specimen cup with the patient's label.	To avoid errors, the specimen cup should be labeled even if the specimen is the only one being tested at that time.
3. Obtain the patient's urine specimen.	If the patient will be collecting a urine specimen for the test, explain how to do so.
4. Remove the test device from the protective pouch and place it on a flat surface.	For correct results, the device should be absolutely flat so the urine will flow evenly onto the testing surface of the device. Note: If the specimen appears to look watery, a specific gravity test should be performed.
5. Using the disposable dropper, add the required amount (3 drops) of sample to the sample well (S) on the cassette.	Use the dropper supplied in the protective pouch for adding the sample. The size of the drops must be exactly as specified and consistent for results to be accurate.
6. Set a timer for the time the hCG kit's manufacturer states a negative test must be read.	The reaction must be carefully timed with a certified timer. The test cassette should not be handled or moved until the test is ready to be read, and the results must be read at the specified time. Most manufacturers suggest reading their test after 3 minutes and to *not read* it after 10 minutes.
7. Read the cassette window's results when the timer goes off.	A positive result can be read as soon as lines at both the T and C areas of the test cassette window appear. A negative result is indicated by a line at the C area of the test cassette window only.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 11-4 Pregnancy Testing (Continued)

Step	Rationale
Negative Results The test is negative if a colored line appears only in the control (C) position. 	A negative result means, in most cases, that the person is not pregnant. Once you have a negative test after 3–5 minutes, *throw out* the test. Any positive test appearing after that time is inaccurate and cannot be considered positive. False negatives may occur when levels of hCG in the sample are below the sensitivity level of the test. If pregnancy is still suspected, the test can be repeated on a fresh sample collected 48 hours later. If results are questionable, a blood sample should be drawn and sent to the laboratory for testing. Most laboratories have hCG tests that are more sensitive than urine hCG tests. False-negative results may occur when the sample is diluted due to a large amount of fluid consumption and a low specific gravity. A fresh morning sample will usually have the highest concentration of hCG. If the results do not agree with other patient findings, a specimen should be sent to the laboratory for confirmation.
Positive Results The test is positive if two colored lines appear, one at the test (T) position and one at the control (C) position. These lines may not be equally light or dark. 	A positive result means, in most cases, that the person is pregnant. • Some tests will produce a faint positive test result if read after the instructed time due to the formation of something called an "evaporation line." • Expired tests can also lead to false positive results. Always check the expiration date before testing. • Certain rare medical conditions, such as ectopic pregnancy, and some drugs can give a false-positive pregnancy test. **Note:** If a female receives shots of hCG for ovulation it is possible to have a positive urine for two to three weeks after the shot and not be pregnant. After delivery or an abortion, hCG may remain detectable for a few days to several weeks.

PROCEDURE 11-4 Pregnancy Testing (Continued)

Step	Rationale
Invalid Results The test is considered invalid if there is no distinct visible line at the control (C) position, *even if a colored line appears in the test (T) position.*	An invalid result means that the test should be repeated.

Skin Tests

Some laboratories offer skin testing services, especially for outpatients. Skin tests most often involve the intradermal (within the skin) injection of an allergenic substance (a substance that causes an immune response). Such tests are performed to determine whether an individual has come in contact with a specific allergen (antigen) and developed antibodies against it. Many disease-producing microorganisms function as allergens, stimulating an antibody response in susceptible individuals. Skin testing can determine an individual's immune status associated with such microorganisms.

Examples of Skin Tests

- *Tuberculin (TB) test:* Also called the PPD test after the purified protein derivative used in it.
- *Aspergillus test:* Detects hypersensitivity to *Aspergillus*, a type of mold.
- *Coccidioidomycosis (cocci) test:* Tests for an infectious fungal disease caused by *Coccidioides immitis.*
- *Histoplasmosis (histo) test:* Tests for past or present infection by the fungus *Histoplasma capsulatum.*

Tuberculin Test

The tuberculin (TB) test is a skin test that determines whether an individual has developed an immune response to *Mycobacterium tuberculosis,* the microbe that causes

tuberculosis. An immune response or reaction to the test can occur if someone currently has TB or has been exposed to it in the past. The procedure for administering a TB test is given in Procedure 11-5.

PROCEDURE 11-5 TB Test Administration

PURPOSE: Administer a TB skin test.

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, alcohol pad, tuberculin syringe, 1/2 inch 27-gauge safety needle, TB antigen, permanent ink pen.

Step	Rationale
1. Identify the patient, explain the procedure, and sanitize hands.	Correct ID is vital to patient safety and meaningful test results. Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in infection control by protecting the phlebotomist, patient, and others from contamination. Gloves are sometimes put on at this point. Follow facility protocol.
2. Support the patient's arm on a firm surface and select a suitable site on the volar surface of the forearm, below the antecubital crease.	The arm must be supported to minimize movement during test administration. Areas with scars, bruises, burns, rashes, excessive hair, or superficial veins must be avoided as they can interfere with interpretation of the test.
3. Clean the site with an alcohol pad and allow it to air dry.	Cleaning with antiseptic and allowing it to air dry permits maximum antiseptic action.
4. Put on gloves at this point if you have not already done so	Gloves are necessary for safety and infection control.
5. Clean the top of the antigen bottle and draw 0.1 mL of diluted antigen into the syringe.	The top of the bottle must be clean to prevent contamination of the antigen.
6. Stretch the skin taut with the thumb in a manner similar to venipuncture and slip the needle just under the skin at a very shallow angle (approximately 10–15 degrees).	The skin must be taut so the needle will slip into it easily. The antigen must be injected just beneath the skin for accurate interpretation of results.
7. Pull back on the syringe plunger slightly to make certain a vein has not been entered.	The antigen must not be injected into a vein.
8. Slowly expel the contents of the syringe to create a distinct, pale elevation commonly called a bleb or wheal.	Appearance of the bleb or wheal is a sign that the antigen has been injected properly.

PROCEDURE 11-5 TB Test Administration (Continued)

Step	Rationale
9. Without applying pressure or gauze to the site, withdraw the needle, activate the safety feature, and discard the needle.	Applying pressure could force the antigen out of the site. Gauze might absorb the antigen. Both actions could invalidate test results. Activation of safety features and prompt needle disposal minimize the chance of an accidental needlestick.
10. Ensure that the arm remains extended until the site has time to close. Do not apply a bandage.	A bandage can absorb the fluid or cause irritation, resulting in misinterpretation of test results.
11. Check the site for a reaction in 48 to 72 hours. This is called "reading" the reaction.	Maximum reaction is achieved in 48–72 hours. A reaction can be underestimated if read after this time.
12. Measure induration (hardness) and interpret the result. Do not measure erythema (redness). *Negative:* induration absent or less than 5 mm in diameter. *Doubtful:* induration between 5 and 9 mm in diameter. *Positive:* induration 10 mm or greater in diameter.	A TB reaction is interpreted according to the amount of induration or firm raised area due to localized swelling. The health status and age of the individual are important considerations when interpreting results. 5 mm of induration can be considered a positive test result in patients who are immunosuppressed due to chronic medical conditions.

KEY POINT A TB test is also called a PPD test after the purified protein derivative used in the test.

View the video Rapid Detection of Strep at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Strep Testing

Numerous kits are available for the direct detection of group A streptococci on throat swab specimens; for example, the Genzyme OSOM Ultra A test kit or the Strep A Dipstick test kit (ACON Laboratories, San Diego, CA), as shown in Figure 11-36. Performance of the test normally

Figure 11-36 Strep A Dipstick Kit. (ACON Laboratories, San Diego, CA.)

Figure 11-37 Technician comparing urine reagent strip with chart on reagent strip container.

requires two steps. The first involves nitrous acid or enzymatic extraction of the swab; the second involves a latex agglutination or enzyme immunoassay method of antigen detection. Results are available in minutes.

Urinalysis

A routine urinalysis (UA) consists of a physical and chemical analysis of the specimen as well as microscopic analysis if indicated. A medical laboratory technician or technologist must perform a microscopic analysis.

Chemical composition is most commonly determined by use of an inert plastic reagent strip containing pads impregnated with reagents that test for the presence of bacteria, blood, bilirubin, glucose, leukocytes, protein, and urobilinogen; they measure pH and specific gravity as well. (Specific gravity can also be measured separately using an instrument called a refractometer.) A chemical reaction resulting in color changes to the strip takes place when the strip is dipped in urine. The results can be determined by comparing the strip visually against a code on the container, as shown in Figure 11-37, or by inserting the strip into a machine called a reflectance photometer, which reads the strip and prints out the results. Reflectance photometers include the Clinitek Advantus (Siemen's Diagnostic, Deerfield, IL) and the CLIA-waived analyzers Clinitek Status Connect and Roche Urisys 1100 Urine Analyzers (Roche, Indianapolis, IN). The Clinitek Status Connect and Advantus both have lockouts that require the use of an authorized operator identification and can prevent patient testing until the QC has been accepted. These features are welcome additions to POCT urine instruments.

To ensure the integrity of the strips, they should remain tightly capped in their original containers when not in use so as to protect them from the deteriorating effects of light, moisture, and chemical contamination. The containers should also be protected from heat.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **When drawing a blood alcohol specimen, it is acceptable to clean the arm with:**
   a. benzalkonium chloride.
   b. isopropyl alcohol.
   c. methanol prep.
   d. tincture of iodine.

2. **Which of the following is the most critical part of blood culture collection?**
   a. Adequately filling two media vials
   b. Antisepsis of the collection site
   c. Selecting the collection site
   d. Timing of the second set of cultures

3. **TDM peak concentration may be defined as the:**
   a. highest concentration of the drug during a dosing interval.
   b. lowest concentration of the drug during a dosing interval.
   c. concentation required for maximum drug effectiveness.
   d. none of the above.

4. **In performing a glucose tolerance test, the fasting specimen is drawn at 0815 hours and the patient finishes the glucose beverage at 0820 hours. When should the 1-hour specimen be collected?**
   a. 0915 hours
   b. 0920 hours
   c. 0945 hours
   d. 0950 hours

5. **A bleeding-time test detects:**
   a. alcohol concentration.
   b. diabetes mellitus.
   c. platelet function disorders.
   d. septicemia toxins.

6. **Removing a unit of blood from a patient and not replacing it is used as a treatment for:**
   a. arthritis.
   b. leukemia.
   c. polycythemia.
   d. tuberculosis.

7. **Which of the following tests may require special chain-of-custody documentation when the specimen is collected?**
   a. Blood culture
   b. Cross-match
   c. Drug screen
   d. TDM

8. **What type of specimen is needed for a guaiac test?**
   a. Blood
   b. Breath
   c. Feces
   d. Urine

9. **Which of the following tests must have a 9:1 ratio of blood to anticoagulant in the collection tube?**
   a. 2-hour PP
   b. Blood culture
   c. Electrolytes
   d. Protime

10. **Which of the following tests is collected in a trace element–free tube?**
    a. ABGs
    b. Aluminum
    c. BUN
    d. Hemoglobin

11. **Common chemistry tests performed by POCT instruments include:**
    a. Hgb and Hct.
    b. Na and K.
    c. PT and PTT.
    d. T_4 and TSH.

12. **Which of the following is a test that measures packed cell volume?**
    a. hCG
    b. Hct
    c. INR
    d. TnT

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 11-1 *Performing a Glucose Tolerance Test*

Nancy, a phlebotomist, helped Mr. Smith prepare for a glucose tolerance test over the telephone last week. Today Mr. Smith comes in to have his tolerance performed. Nancy asks Mr. Smith if he ate regular, balanced meals for 3 days before today and did not eat, smoke, drink coffee or alcohol, or exercise strenuously for 12 hours before coming in. Mr. Smith answered that he had followed all the directions exactly. Nancy drew the fasting blood at 0815. Mr. Smith was given the drink at 0825.

QUESTIONS

1. *How quickly must Mr. Smith completely finish the drink?*
2. *At what time would Nancy collect the 1-hour specimen?*
3. *If Mr. Smith's glucose was 300 at 30 minutes is this normal?*
4. *If Mr. Smith vomits after 45 minutes what should Nancy do?*

CASE STUDY 11-2 *POCT in the ER*

Due to the ever increasing demands on a crowded ED, point-of-care testing is used as much as possible for lab results and for quick TAT. The ED personnel receive formal training in POCT procedures, maintenance, and QC. This is done to ensure that the analyzers are properly handled and that the test results are correct. On this busy Friday morning, an elderly man arrives in the ED complaining of stomach cramps. The physician orders electrolytes to be performed. The blood is drawn by a nurse with a 3 cc syringe through the valve of an IV that was just inserted into the patient's left hand. The blood is then placed in the appropriate cartridge for running in the i-STAT. After a few minutes, the results are given to the physician and she immediately tells the nurse to redo the test because the other clinical findings do not support the potassium result of 6.7 mEq/L.

QUESTIONS

1. *Is the i-STAT the best POCT instrument to be used for electrolytes?*
2. *Can venous blood be used on a POC analyzer like the i-STAT?*
3. *What does a 6.7 mEq/L potassium result suggest to the physician if it is not supported by the other clinical findings?*
4. *Could the nurse affect the results by the way the specimen was collected?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Baron EJ, Weinstein MP, Dunne WM Jr., et al. *Cumitech 1C, Blood Cultures IV*. Coordinating ed., EJ Baron. Washington, DC: ASM Press, 2005.

Bishop ML, Fody EP, Schoeff L. *Clinical Chemistry: Principles, Procedures, Correlations,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H45-A2. *Performance of the Bleeding Time Test: Approved Guideline,* 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2005.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, T/DM06-A. *Blood Alcohol Testing in the Clinical Laboratory: Approved Guideline.* Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 1997;17(14) (reaffirmed September 2002).

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H21-A5. *Collection, Transport, and Processing of Blood Specimens for Testing Plasma-Based Coagulation Assays: Approved Guideline,* 5th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2008.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, C38-A. *Control of Preanalytical Variation in Trace Element Determinations: Approved Guideline*. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 1997.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, AST04-A2. *Glucose Monitoring in Settings Without Laboratory Support: Approved Guideline,* 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2005.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, C31-A2. *Ionized Calcium Determinations; Precollection Variables, Specimen Choice, Collection, and Handling; Approved Guideline*, 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2001.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, C30-A2. *Point-of-Care Blood Glucose Testing in Acute and Chronic Care Facilities; Approved Guideline,* 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2002.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, POCT04-A2. *Point-of-Care in Vitro Diagnostic (IVD) Testing: Approved Guideline,* 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2006.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H49-A. *Point-of-Care Monitoring of Anticoagulation Therapy; Approved Guideline.* Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2004.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H07-A03. *Procedure for Determining Packed Cell Volume by the Microhematocrit Method; Approved Standard,* 3rd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI, 2010.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H-18A04. *Procedures for the Handling and Processing of Blood Specimens: Approved Guideline,* 4th ed.Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS, 2010.

Dunne WM, Nolte FS, Wilson ML. *Cumulative Techniques and Procedures in Clinical Microbiology, Blood Culture III*. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology Press, 1997.

Ernst DJ. *Blood Specimen Collection FAQs*. Ramsey, IN: Center for Phlebotomy Education, 2008.

Fischbach F, Dunning M. *A Manual of Laboratory & Diagnostic Tests,* 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009.

Harmening DM. *Clinical Hematology and Fundamentals of Hemostasis*. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis, 2009.

Joint Commission. *Comprehensive Accreditation Manual for Pathology and Clinical Laboratory Sciences*. Oakbrook Terrace, IL: JCAHO, 2002–2003.

Morris LD, Pont A, Lewis SM. Use of a new HemoCue system for measuring haemoglobin at low concentrations. *Clinical & Laboratory Haematology* 2001;23:91–96.

Pagana KD, Pagana TJ. *Mosby's Manual of Diagnostic and Laboratory Tests,* 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2002.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos:
  - Bleeding Time Test
  - Collecting a Blood Culture Specimen
  - Collecting Blood for Hemoglobin Determination
  - Finger Stick Glucose
  - Rapid Detection of Strep
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Robo-terms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Advance magazine for medical laboratory personnel:** http://laboratorian.advanceweb.com
- **Typenex Medical LLC:** www.typenex.com (video and guidelines)
- **Center for Phlebotomy Education:** www.phlebotomy.com
- **Genzyme Diagnostics:** www.osomtraining.com (procedureal training and printable certificate of completion)

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley *C. Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley *C. Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

CHAPTER
12

Computers and Specimen Handling and Processing

KEY TERMS

Drill yourself on key term meaning with WORKBOOK Matching Exercise 3-1.

accession number
aerosol
aliquot
bar code
central processing
CPU
centrifuge
cursor
data
DOT
enter key
FAA
hardware
HPC
icon
ID code
input
interface
LAN
LIS
menu
mnemonic
network
output
password
PDA
preanalytical
QNS
RAM
RFID
ROM
software
storage
terminal
USB drive

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Describe components and elements of a computer, identify general computer skills, and define associated computer terminology.
3. Trace the flow of specimens through the laboratory with an information management system.
4. Define how bar codes are used in healthcare and list information found on a bar code computer label.
5. Describe routine and special specimen handling procedures for laboratory specimens.
6. List time constraints and exceptions for delivery and processing of specimens.
7. Identify OSHA-required protective equipment worn when processing specimens.
8. Describe the steps involved in processing the different types of specimens and list the criteria for specimen rejection.

Overview

Today many aspects of patient care are connected through computerized networking, even in the smallest clinic or physician's office. The phlebotomist is involved in certain aspects of the laboratory computer information system as it tracks patient specimens from the time they are collected until the results are reported. This chapter assesses knowledge of computer components, general computer skills, and associated terminology. This chapter also evaluates knowledge of proper specimen handling and processing, including the ability to recognize sources of preanalytical error. A thorough understanding of handling and processing helps the phlebotomist avoid preanalytical errors that can render the most skillfully obtained specimen useless and helps ensure that results obtained on a specimen accurately reflect the status of the patient.

Computerization in Healthcare

Computers are an essential tool in healthcare. Various types of computer hardware and software are being used to manage **data** (information collected for analysis or computation), monitor patient vital signs, and most recently, aid in diagnosis. Consequently, computer literacy is a required skill in all areas of healthcare. To be considered "computer literate," an individual must be able to do the following:

1. Know basic computer terminology (Table 12-1)
2. Understand the computer and the functions it performs
3. Perform basic operations using computers
4. Demonstrate willingness to adapt to the changes computers bring to our lives

Computers range in size from large supercomputers to personal computers (PCs) with a CPU tower to very convenient, **hand-held PCs (HPCs)** and **personal digital assistants (PDAs)**. Hand-helds are ideal for patient identification using bar code systems and paperless collection of data because they can go anywhere the patient may be.

COMPUTER NETWORKS

A computer **network** is a group of computers that are all linked for the purpose of sharing resources, which offers healthcare organizations a great advantage for coordinating data, communicating more efficiently, and sharing hardware and software. In a computer network, individual computer stations are called *nodes.* The network interconnection allows all the computers to have access through a special node called a server to each other's information or to a large database of information on a mainframe at a remote site. The computers can be connected by coaxial cables, fiber optics, standard telephone lines, the Ethernet, and wireless radiowave connections. When limited to a certain geographical area, these systems are also known as **local area networks (LANs)**.

Networking can take the form of simple interoffice connections or complex systems between several organizations in different cities or across continents. A good example of a large and complex system is the Internet, in which computers all over the world can access multiple sites and unlimited information.

Handhelds, laptops, mobile phones, datacards, and routers allow any user to connect to the Internet from wherever they are located if there is a wireless network supporting that device's technology. This connectivity and the immediate access it provides speeds up processing, increases productivity, and reduces costs. Most industries use this networking because of the advantages it offers in the competitive atmosphere of business. This is true of the healthcare industry and is one of the reasons large managed care systems can grow and flourish.

TABLE 12-1 Common Computer Terminology

Term	Definition
Accession number	A unique number generated at the time the test request is entered into the computer
CPU	Central processing unit
Cursor	Flashing indicator on the monitor
Data	Information collected for analysis or computation
Hardware	Equipment used to process data
Icon	Image that signifies a computer application (program or document)
ID code	A unique code used to identify a person for purposes of tracking
Input	Data entered into the computer
LIS	Laboratory information system
Logging on	Entering as a user on the system via a password
Middleware	Third party vendor software
Mnemonic	Memory-aiding code
On-line	Computer is connected to the system and is operational
Output	Processed information generated by the computer
Password	Secret word or phrase used to enter the system
Peripherals	Additional devices, such as modem or printer, that work in conjunction with the computer
RAM	Random access memory; temporary storage of data in the memory of the CPU
ROM	Read-only memory; contains instruction for operation of the computer installed by the manufacturer
Software	Coded instructions required to control the hardware in the processing of data
Storage	A place for keeping data; outside the computer it is called secondary storage
Verify	To confirm or check for correctness of input

KEY POINT Computer networking makes sharing of information so easy that patient confidentiality can be violated. Congress took steps to eliminate confidentiality violation by enacting the HIPAA (see Chapter 1), which is designed to protect the privacy and security of patient information by standardizing the electronic transfer of data and providing guidelines for sharing protected health information (PHI). This Act affects everyone involved in healthcare: patients, physicians and other healthcare personnel, healthcare organizations, vendors, and insurance companies.

COMPUTER COMPONENTS

When operating any type of computer, the user will employ the three basic components of any system. These components provide a means to input information, a way to process information, and a method to output information.

Input

There are several ways to **input** or enter data into a computer. The most common way is to use a keyboard, much like a typewriter keyboard with additional keys for computer functions

Figure 12-1 Wireless keyboard and mouse.

(Fig. 12-1). Other methods of input include a light pen designed to read information on the computer screen; a "touchscreen" using a finger or pen for input; scanners programmed to read figures, letters, and bar codes; and a mouse (Fig. 12-1) or glidepad (a touch-sensitive pad) and direct transfer or downloading from another device such as a CD/DVD or other external memory device.

Process

After information has been input, it is processed through a component called the **central processing unit (CPU)**. The CPU is made up of many electrical components and microchips. It is the thinking part of the computer that does comparisons and calculations and makes decisions. When you enter new data, the information will be stored in memory until the processor can execute the command. Memory may be of two types: **random-access memory (RAM)** and **read-only memory (ROM)**. RAM (main memory) serves as temporary storage for data that will be lost when the computer is shut off. If the information needs to be kept for a later date, the operator must transfer it to secondary storage in the form of a hard drive, **Universal Serial Bus (USB)** drive (Fig. 12-2), floppy disk, or compact disk (CD). ROM storage, installed by the manufacturer, instructs the computer to carry out operations requested by the user.

Output

Output describes the processed information or data generated by the computer to be received by the user or someone in another location. Just as there are several ways to input information, there are several means by which processed data can be received. One of the most common ways is through a printer. Data printed on paper is called "hard copy." Other output devices could be the computer screen or other nonpermanent media, such as smartphones or the Apple-iPad, which display the data as it is entered and during processing.

ELEMENTS OF THE COMPUTER

Do the WORKBOOK exercise Matching 12-3 to see if you recognize the different computer elements.

Three elements make up computer systems. These elements are called hardware, software, and storage.

- **Hardware** is the equipment that is used to process data; it includes the CPU and peripherals (any computer device that is external to the CPU) used for the input or output of information. Examples of hardware peripherals are keyboards, computer screens, bar

Figure 12-2 Assortment of USB drives.

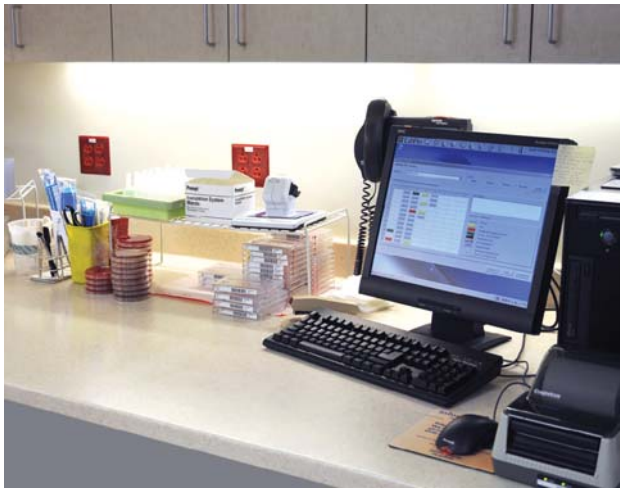


Figure 12-3 A computer terminal in the microbiology specimen-processing area of the laboratory.

code readers, scanners, PDAs, hand-helds, facsimile machines, printers, modems, and routers that are used to transfer data to and from other computers. A computer screen and keyboard combination is called a **"terminal"** (Fig. 12-3); these are necessary peripherals for most computers. Portable computers (laptops and hand-helds) have their display and keypad built into the device.

- **Software** is the programming (coded instructions) designed to operate the computer hardware in the processing of data. Two basic types exist: systems software and applications software. Systems software is the built-in, pre-installed basics of the computer. It controls the normal operation of the computer and is the operating system that communicates between the hardware and the applications. It may be stored on integrated circuits, for example, and is often called "firmware." Applications software refers to programs prepared by software companies or in-house programmers to perform specific tasks required by users. Software applications come in many different types: spreadsheets, communication systems, database systems, word processing, and graphics, for example. Packages that perform more than one application, such as word processing, spreadsheet, and database, are called integrated software. The advantage of integrating applications is that it allows the different functions to be merged easily in one document.

  A new type of application software referred to as "**middleware**" or third party vendor software is becoming increasingly important for POCT analyzers and the laboratory. Middleware programs accept data downloaded from POCT instruments and serve as an interface between the analyzers and the hospital information system (HIS). Through this software the test results can be entered into a patient's electronic chart, and a charge can be submitted to the hospital financial software system that will capture the billing. Other functions of middleware can include the following: data storage, report generation, operator competency tracking, instrument and interface monitoring, and even tracking of errors for quality control/improvement programs.
- **Storage** (preserving information) outside the CPU is necessary because RAM, as mentioned above, is limited temporary storage that will be lost when the computer is turned off. Storage outside the CPU is called secondary storage, which augments the CPU's internal hard drive memory. Examples of permanent secondary storage devices for documents and programs are floppy disks, external hard drives, zip drives, Universal Serial Bus (USB) drives, CDs, and DVDs.

LABORATORY INFORMATION SYSTEM (LIS)

A laboratory information system (LIS) is a customized software package designed to facilitate a variety of workflow models in the laboratory. The objectives of the LIS are to file results, accumulate statistics to determine workload, generate report forms, and monitor quality assurance and quality control in the laboratory. The advantages of using an LIS are improved

accuracy in testing, reduced clerical and billing errors, flexible delivery options for reports, and increased efficiency.

There are multiple vendors and types of laboratory information systems currently on the market. Those with more than 1,000 installation sites include Cerner Corporation/Cerner Citation/Cerner DHT, Misys, and Medical Information Technology, Inc. (Meditech).

Extensive research goes into selecting the right computer system for specific laboratory needs. After selecting a vendor, it can take several months to a few years to bring a system online (make it operational). Usually one or two people are put in charge of the system's daily operation; they are called "system managers." These individuals are responsible for training other personnel in the laboratory and keeping them updated as changes are made to the software. They must readily develop troubleshooting skills as they solve day-to-day problems that develop after the system is installed.

Intranets (networks within companies) connect multiple LIS systems, and the Internet (network outside companies) connects them to the world.

Each type of information system allows users to define their own parameters for terms and conditions that make the system unique to that facility. Several programs within the system allow the users to do specific tasks, seemingly at the same time, such as (1) admit patients, (2) request test orders, (3) print labels, (4) enter results, (5) inquire about results, and (6) generate reports.

ID Codes

Laboratory computer users are given a unique identifier, which is typically a combination of numbers and letters, called an **ID code.** The security associated with an ID code determines what system functions can be accessed. An ID code is also logged with every transaction on the system, allowing the system manager to identify the person performing each transaction and for the purpose of accruing workload. ID codes are not always confidential because it is not always possible for phlebotomists to verify their own collections. A data entry clerk may verify all collections and must have access to the list of ID codes so that he or she can associate the proper phlebotomist with each draw.

Passwords

Laboratory computer users also have a password. The password uniquely identifies that person and allows him or her to become a system user. Passwords must be kept strictly confidential because they enable access to the LIS.

Icons and Mnemonic Codes

Some laboratory information systems use **icons** or images (as in the Windows MS operating system for PCs) to request the appropriate program or function necessary to enter data. Other laboratory information systems may use a menu of **mnemonic** (memory-aiding) codes or an abbreviation for selecting a function.

For example, in the Cerner Millenium Laboratory Information System a phlebotomist would select the "dept order entry" icon. This requisition entry program can be called by many different names, but it is basically the same procedure for any of the systems. During this data entry phase, an **accession number** is given to each requested order. This number is generated by the LIS when the specimen request is entered into the computer and will be identified with the specimen as long as it is in the laboratory.

To create labels and collection lists for the phlebotomist to use in collecting the appropriate samples, it is necessary to select another icon to "label reprint" individual labels if not done at the time of order entry. The "collection list" icon can be used to print labels for specimen

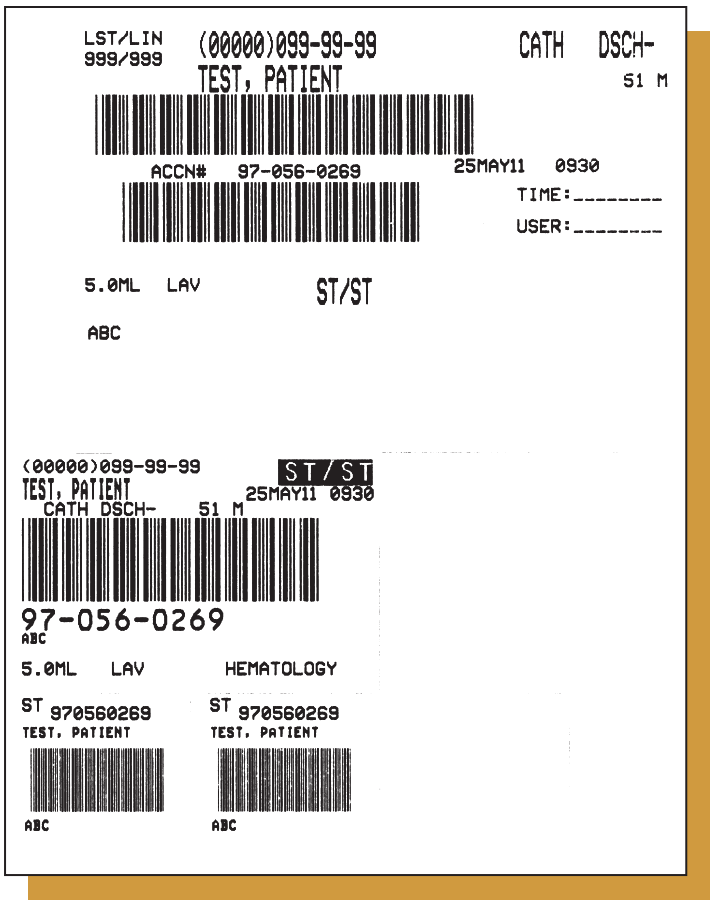


Figure 12-4 A computerized label generated when the requisition order is entered. (Cerner Corp., Kansas City, MO.)

collection. After collection has been accomplished, the phlebotomist returns to the laboratory and verifies the collection through another application, "specimen log-in." Other programs in the lab system that the phlebotomist might use are "order result viewer" to search for lab orders or results and "request a chart" to print or send a patient's report via fax.

A mnemonic code to identify the type and volume of tube required is always printed whenever a label is generated (Fig. 12-4). For example, if the phlebotomist knows that a complete blood count is ordered and the code on the label reads 5.0 mL LAV, he or she knows what tube type to choose and the amount of blood to draw. This demonstrates one of the benefits of computerized label generation; the label aids the phlebotomist in acquiring the proper specimen in a timely fashion. The steps an LIS uses for processing a typical specimen, from arrival in the lab through reporting of results, are shown in the flowchart in Figure 12-5.

Bar Codes

Many laboratory and POCT analyzers use bar code technology for specimen identification. A **bar code** is a parallel array of alternately spaced black bars and white spaces representing a code. The code may represent numbers or letters. Some of the uses of bar codes in healthcare include identification of patients (bar code ID bands), supply inventory, specimen identification, and pharmaceutical drug name, dose, and route. A bar code label, produced by the LIS on a bar code label printer as seen in Figure 12-6, is applied to collected specimens, making specimen processing in the laboratory more efficient. Hand-held systems are being used to read patient ID bar code bands and generate the labels used for specimen collection at the patient's bedside. One system that performs this function is the Patient Identification Check from Siemens Healthcare, Malvern, PA (Fig. 12-7). While at the patient's bedside, the phlebotomist uses a wireless hand-held scanner, which identifies the patient, displays the collection tubes needed and the order of draw, scans the specimen container and automatically

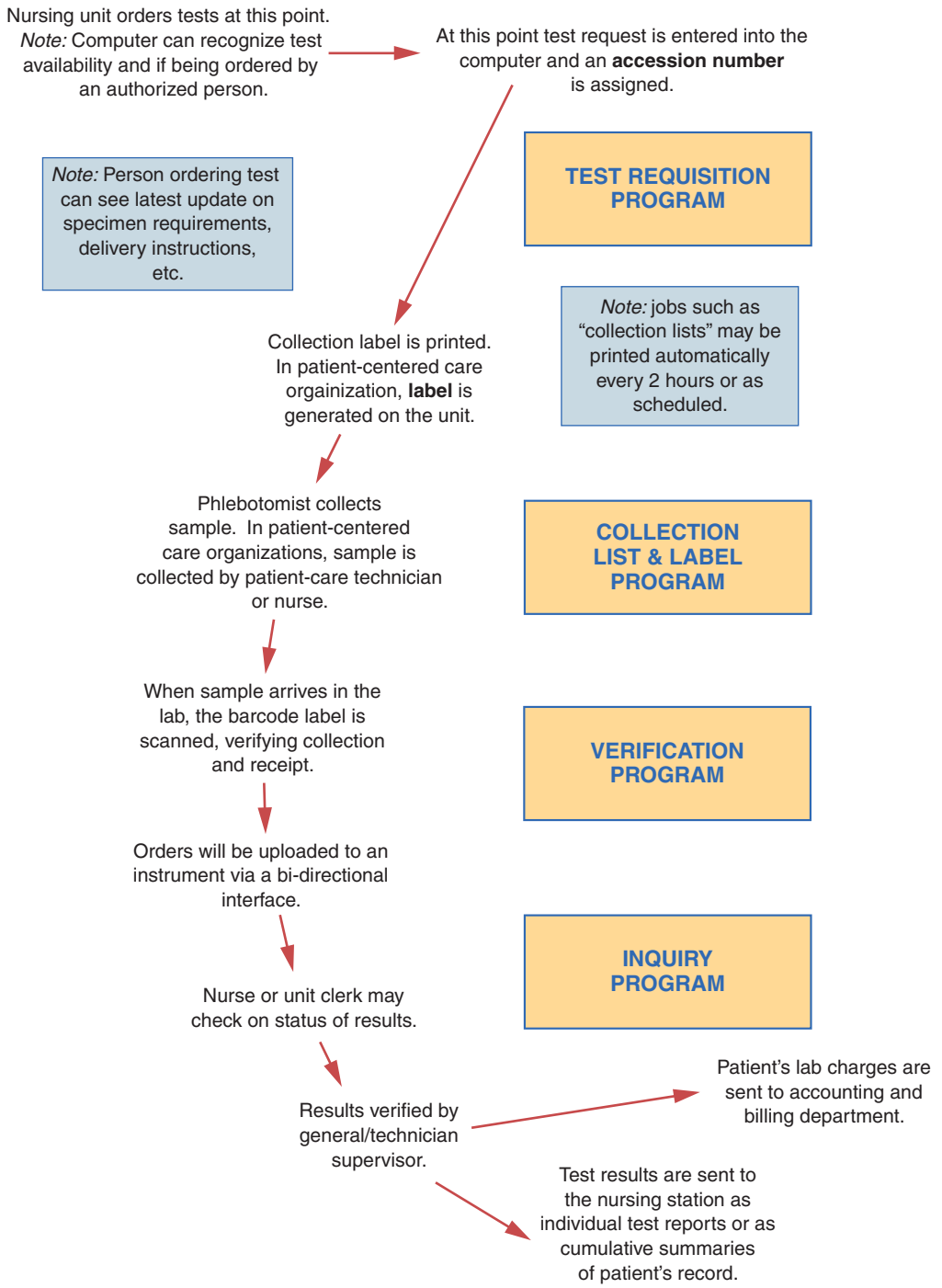

Nursing unit orders tests at this point. Note: Computer can recognize test availability and if being ordered by an authorized person.
At this point test request is entered into the computer and an accession number is assigned.
Note: Person ordering test can see latest update on specimen requirements, delivery instructions, etc.
TEST REQUISITION PROGRAM
Collection label is printed. In patient-centered care orgainization, label is generated on the unit.
Note: jobs such as "collection lists" may be printed automatically every 2 hours or as scheduled.
Phlebotomist collects sample. In patient-centered care organizations, sample is collected by patient-care technician or nurse.
COLLECTION LIST & LABEL PROGRAM
When sample arrives in the lab, the barcode label is scanned, verifying collection and receipt.
VERIFICATION PROGRAM
Orders will be uploaded to an instrument via a bi-directional interface.
Nurse or unit clerk may check on status of results.
INQUIRY PROGRAM
Results verified by general/technician supervisor.
Patient's lab charges are sent to accounting and billing department.
Test results are sent to the nursing station as individual test reports or as cumulative summaries of patient's record.

Figure 12-5 Example of a work flow chart.

prints the correct label including the actual time of collection, and identifies the person who is performing the phlebotomy.

Radio Frequency ID

Another form of identification using computer technology is radio frequency identification (RFID). This ID system is composed of a *reader* and a *tag* or *label*. The RFID tag can be applied to a product or person to identify and track using radio waves. A wireless RFID scanner can track more than one tag at a time and beyond the line of sight of the reader. In healthcare, it is used to monitor patients, and identify and track specimens, equipment, and records.

Figure 12-6 Bar code label printer at a nursing station.

Figure 12-7 Siemens Patient Identification Check. **A.** Scanning a wristband. **B.** Scanning a specimen tube. (Siemens Healthcare, Malvern, PA.)

Effective use of this wireless-based technology in healthcare delivery can positively impact patient care and safety without jeopardizing privacy concerns.

GENERAL LABORATORY COMPUTER SKILLS

Test your knowledge of these terms with Matching 12-2 in the WORKBOOK.

General skills that the phlebotomist must learn, regardless of what LIS is used, involve the following.

Logging on: A person who is allowed to access a computer system is given a username and **password.** The password uniquely identifies that person and allows him or her to become a system user. The process of entering a username and password to gain access to the system is called "logging on." When the log-on sequence is completed, a **menu** is displayed listing the options from which the user may choose. For security and authorization purposes, most systems are designed to allow users unique access to different menus or programs.

Cursor movement: After logging on, a flashing indicator on the screen, called the **cursor,** indicates the starting point for input. When entering patient information in an LIS, the cursor will automatically reset itself at the correct point for data input after the **Enter key** has been pressed.

Using icons: Access to documents and software programs can be initiated by using the mouse to click on a small representative image called an icon that opens a document or launches a software program.

Entering data: After necessary information has been input, the Enter key must be pressed for information to be processed. If an error in spelling or selection is made, it can easily be deleted by backspacing before pressing the Enter key. If the wrong information is entered, however, it is still possible to correct errors.

Correcting errors: This procedure is necessary to correct mistakes that are detected after the Enter key has been pressed. The procedure to delete errors is program-dependent and must be learned with each system. Some LIS programs use order verification, an additional step in the process, to allow a review of the information before it is accepted.

Verifying data: After all patient information has been entered, it will appear on the monitor screen as a complete order. At this point, the user can review the information again and can choose to modify, delete, or accept it. When all orders have been entered, the user can request an inquiry of the orders as another check.

Making order inquiries: Selecting "order inquiry" allows the user to retrieve any or all of the test orders associated with a patient.

Canceling orders: If, after entering an order, a user finds that it is incorrect, he or she can request that the computer delete or cancel it.

COMPUTERIZED ANALYZERS

Computers are such accurate processors of information at incredible speeds that computerized laboratory analyzers are considered more efficient and cost-effective than relying on manual methods. Most laboratory analyzers have sophisticated computer systems designed to manage patient data and **interface** (connect for the purpose of interaction) with the LIS and the main hospital intranet.

Major manufacturers of laboratory analyzers have the capability to connect their computer via the healthcare facility's internet with an analyzer in their customer's laboratory to monitor the instrument's status and to troubleshoot. This Web connection provides real-time intervention for those occasions when an analyzer malfunctions by decreasing down time and increasing efficiency.

INTERFACING

Today's healthcare facility may be totally integrated (connected) through networking of computers and a common software system. Most point-of-care analyzers used outside the main

laboratory can be interfaced with data management systems, which in turn connect to the LIS. This means, for example, that patient information can be acquired and downloaded from the nursing unit, accumulated in a central database, and shared with ancillary services and any outside agency involved in that particular patient's care. In the future, a totally integrated system will have an "electronic chart" and will make a paperless facility possible.

In the laboratory, multiple computers can connect to each other and share data. There are two types of interfaces used in laboratory information systems (LIS). One is a unidirectional interface, which means data only go one way, from the analyzer to the LIS computer. The second interface is bidirectional, meaning data can upload (transfer from analyzer to LIS) or download (transfer from LIS to analyzer) between two systems.

CONNECTIVITY INDUSTRY CONSORTIUM (CIC)

Computers and their ability to talk to each other are necessary components in today's healthcare settings. Because sophisticated testing is possible at the patient's side, the results need to be captured for QA purposes. To be used effectively, POC instruments must integrate with the institution's information system. This requirement has led to formation of the Connectivity Industry Consortium (CIC),which was established to ensure that *any* point-of-care analyzer could talk to *any* LIS. The standardization has made it possible for healthcare workers to be able to transfer POC test results into the patient's chart through interfacing between computers. A guideline for standardization was developed by POC analyzer manufacturers, LIS vendors, and healthcare providers that resulted in the CLSI Point-of-Care Connectivity, Approved Standard.

COMPUTERIZATION TRENDS

Current trends in healthcare indicate that clinical laboratory operations will continue to decentralize, and that POC testing will increase. The need for complete networking becomes even more apparent as remote laboratory testing facilities increase in numbers. Large reference laboratories, totally separate from the hospital, will need to download results from automated instruments into patient charts or centralized databases. Bar code label systems for the identification of patients and their samples, medications, and supplies will decrease the risk of human error.

With the further development of microchip technology in POC analyzers, testing of patient specimens is being moved from the traditional laboratory to anywhere the patient might be. This new technology is referred to as a "lab-on-a-chip." Additionally, researchers are using the computer's ability to collect and analyze massive amounts of medical data. Their goal is the creation of "artificial intelligence" that will further revolutionize medicine.

Specimen Handling

Answer the study questions in Chapter 12 of the EXAM REVIEW to test your knowledge of specimen handing.

As part of the computerization network that connects many aspects of patient care, the laboratory network tracks patient specimens from the time they are collected until the results are reported. The quality of those results, however, depends on proper handling of the specimen in the **preanalytical** (prior to analysis) phase, which includes all the steps taken before the actual testing of the sample. It has been estimated that 46% to 68% of all laboratory errors occur prior to analysis. Specimen handling is a critical part of this phase. Proper handling from the time a specimen is collected until the test is performed helps ensure that results obtained on the specimen accurately reflect the status of the patient. Improper handling is a preanalytical error (Box 12-1) that can render the most skillfully obtained specimen useless or affect the analyte (substance undergoing analysis) in a way that causes erroneous (invalid) or misleading test results, which in turn cause delayed or incorrect care for the patient.

KEY POINT Preanalytical errors are factors that alter test results that are introduced into the specimen before testing, including before, and during collection, and during transport, processing, and storage.

BOX 12-1 POSSIBLE SOURCES OF PREANALYTICAL ERROR

Before Collection
- Age of **patient**
- Altitude
- Dehydrated **patient**
- Duplicate **test orders**
- Exercise
- Gender of patient
- Inadequate fast
- Incomplete requisition
- Medications
- Patient stress
- Pregnancy
- Smoking
- Strenuous exercise
- Treatments (e.g., intravenous medications, radioisotopes)
- Wrong test ordered

At Time of Collection
- Misidentified patient
- Antiseptic not dry
- Expired tube
- Failure to invert additive tubes properly
- Faulty technique
- Improper vein selection
- Inadequate volume of blood
- Inappropriate use of plasma separator tube (PST) or serum separator tube (SST)
- Incorrect collection tube
- Incorrect needle position
- Incorrect needle size
- Mislabeled tube
- Mixing tubes too vigorously
- Nonsterile site preparation
- Patient position
- Prolonged tourniquet application
- Underfilled tube
- Wrong collection time

During Specimen Transport
- Agitation-induced hemolysis
- Delay in transporting
- Exposure to light
- Failure to follow temperature requirements
- Transport method (e.g., hand vs. pneumatic tube)

During Specimen Processing
- Contamination (e.g., dust or glove powder)
- Delay in processing or testing
- Delay in fluid separation from cells
- Evaporation
- Failure to centrifuge specimen according to test requirements
- Failure to separate fluid from cells
- Incomplete centrifugation
- Mislabeled aliquot
- Multiple centrifugations
- Rimming of clots

During Specimen Storage
- Exposure to light
- Temperature change outside defined limits

Unfortunately, it is not always easy to tell when a specimen has been handled improperly. Therefore, to ensure delivery of a quality specimen for analysis, it is imperative that all phlebotomists be adequately instructed in this area so that established policies and procedures are followed. In addition, to protect the phlebotomist and others from accidental exposure to potentially infectious substances, all specimens should be handled according to the standard precautions guidelines outlined in Chapter 3.

ROUTINE HANDLING

Mixing Tubes by Inversion

Additive tubes require from 3 to 10 gentle inversions (Fig. 12-8), depending on the type of tube and the manufacturer's instructions as soon as they are drawn. (See the tube guides in the back of the book for the tube inversion information from two major tube manufacturers.) The required number of inversions also depends on the type of additive (see Chapter 7, Additive Tubes). Gentle inversion helps to distribute the additive evenly while minimizing the chance of hemolysis. Vigorous mixing can cause hemolysis and should be avoided. Examples of tests that cannot be performed on hemolyzed specimens include potassium, magnesium, and most

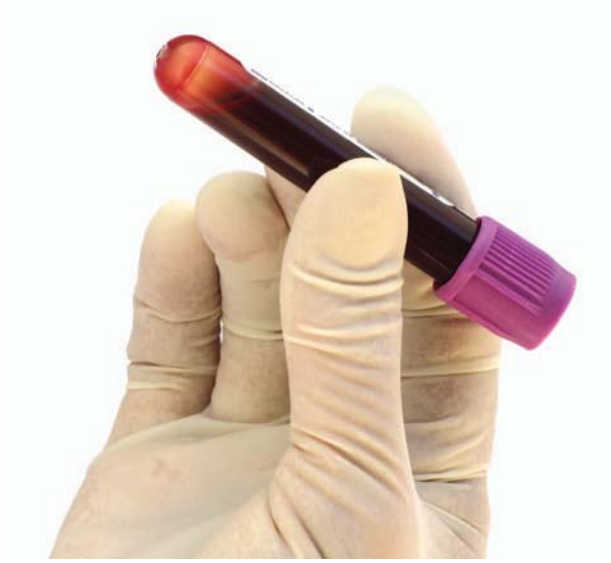


Figure 12-8 Inverting an anticoagulant tube to mix it.

enzyme tests. Inadequate mixing of anticoagulant tubes leads to microclot formation, which can cause erroneous test results, especially for hematology studies. Inadequate mixing of gel separation tubes may prevent the additive from functioning properly, and clotting may be incomplete. Nonadditive tubes do not require mixing.

Transporting Specimens

It is important to handle and transport blood specimens carefully. Rough handling and agitation can hemolyze specimens, activate platelets, and affect coagulation tests as well as break tubes. Tubes should be transported stopper up to reduce agitation, aid clot formation in serum tubes, and prevent contact of the tube contents with the tube stopper. Blood in contact with tube stoppers can be a source of specimen contamination and can contribute to **aerosol** (a fine mist of the specimen) formation during stopper removal.

Blood specimen tubes are typically placed in plastic bags for transportation to the laboratory. CLSI and OSHA guidelines require specimen transport bags to have a biohazard logo, a liquid-tight closure, and a slip pocket for paperwork. Nonblood specimens should be transported in leak-proof containers with adequately secured lids. All specimens transported through pneumatic tube systems should be protected from shock and sealed in zipper-type plastic bags to contain spills (Fig. 12-9). Specimens sent to off-site locations by courier or mail systems must be packaged and transported according to **Department of Transportation (DOT)** and the **Federal Aviation Administration (FAA)** regulations. In addition, special care should be taken to protect specimens from the effects of extreme heat or cold.

Figure 12-9 Specimen prepared for transport through pneumatic tube system.

Delivery Time Limits

All specimens should be transported to the laboratory without delay. Ideally, routine blood specimens should arrive at the laboratory within 45 minutes of collection. Specimens that require separation of the serum or plasma from the cells should be centrifuged within 1 hour of arrival in the lab.

KEY POINT CLSI guideline H18-A3 sets the maximum time limit for separating serum and plasma from the cells at 2 hours from time of collection unless evidence indicates that a longer contact time will not affect the accuracy of the test result. Less time is recommended for some tests, such as those for cortisol and potassium.

Find out how well you know other key points and cautions with WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 12-1.

Prompt delivery and separation minimize the effects of metabolic processes, such as glycolysis. Unless chemically prevented by an additive, such as sodium fluoride, glycolysis continues in a blood specimen, lowering glucose levels until the serum or plasma is physically separated from the cells. Cellular metabolism also affects other analytes, such as aldosterone, calcitonin, enzymes, and phosphorus.

KEY POINT Glycolysis by erythrocytes and leukocytes in blood specimens can falsely lower glucose values at a rate of up to 200 mg/L per hour.

Prompt delivery is easily achieved with an on-site lab, as in a hospital setting, but it is not always possible when specimens come to the lab from off-site locations, such as doctors' offices and nursing homes. Although specimens from these sites are typically picked up and transported to the testing site by a courier service on a regular basis, the time between collection and delivery can easily exceed 2 hours. Consequently, off-site locations often have a small processing area where blood specimens can be centrifuged (see Specimen Processing) and the serum or plasma separated and transferred to a suitable container for transport. Nonadditive and gel-barrier serum tubes, such as SSTs, must be completely clotted before centrifugation. Heparin gel-barrier tubes, such as PSTs, can be centrifuged right away. Specimens in gel barrier tubes do not require manual separation after they have been centrifuged, because the separator gel lodges between the fluid and the cells during centrifugation, becoming a physical barrier that prevents glycolysis for up to 24 hours (see Fig. 12-10).

Hematology test specimens drawn in lavender or purple stopper (EDTA) tubes and specimens for other tests performed on whole blood should never be centrifuged. Applicable

Figure 12-10 Serum gel tubes. *Right,* before being centrifuged. *Left,* after being centrifuged.

temperature requirements for all specimens should be maintained until they are turned over to the courier service.

Time Limit Exceptions

"STAT" or "medical emergency" specimens take priority over all other specimens and should be transported, processed, and tested immediately. Examples of other exceptions to time limits include the following:

- Blood smears made from EDTA specimens must be prepared within 1 hour of collection to preserve the integrity of the blood cells and prevent artifact formation due to prolonged contact with the anticoagulant.
- EDTA specimens for CBCs should be analyzed within 6 hours, but are generally stable for 24 hours at room temperature. CBC specimens collected in microcollection containers should be analyzed within 4 hours.
- EDTA specimens for erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) determinations must be tested within 4 hours if left at room temperature or within 12 hours if refrigerated.
- EDTA specimens for reticulocyte counts are stable up to 6 hours at room temperature and up to 72 hours if refrigerated.
- Glucose test specimens drawn in sodium fluoride tubes are stable for 24 hours at room temperature and up to 48 hours when refrigerated at 2°C to 8°C.
- Prothrombin time (PT) results on unrefrigerated and uncentrifuged specimens are reliable for up to 24 hours after collection. Partial thromboplastin time (PTT) test specimens require analysis within 4 hours of collection regardless of storage conditions.

Test your knowledge of special handling with WORKBOOK Labeling Activity 12-2.

SPECIAL HANDLING

When blood leaves the body it is exposed to the effects of temperature and light that can negatively affect analytes. Specimens for those significantly affected require special handling to protect them.

KEY POINT It is important to know the following temperatures related to specimen handling:

- Body temperature: 36.4°C–37.6°C(37°C average)
- Room temperature: 15°C–30°C
- Refrigerated temperature: 2°C–10°C
- Frozen temperature: –20°C or lower (some specimens require –70°C or lower)

Body Temperature Specimens

Some specimens will precipitate or agglutinate if allowed to cool below body temperature. These specimens need to be transported at or near the normal body temperature of 37°C. In addition, most of these specimens require collection in a tube that has been prewarmed to 37°C. Small, portable heat blocks that are kept in a 37°C incubator until needed are available for transporting body-temperature specimens. The heat blocks hold this temperature for approximately 15 minutes after removal from the incubator. Temperature-sensitive specimens that can withstand temperatures slightly higher than 37°C can be wrapped in an activated heel warmer for transport (Fig. 12-11).

Chilled Specimens

Some metabolic processes that can affect test results continue in the specimen after collection. Chilling the specimen slows down metabolic processes and protects analytes. Blood specimens that require chilling should be completely immersed in a slurry of crushed ice and water (Fig. 12-12) and either tested immediately or refrigerated upon arrival in the laboratory. Large cubes or chunks of ice without water added do not allow adequate cooling of the entire specimen. Contact with a solid piece of ice can freeze parts of the specimen, resulting in hemolysis and possible analyte breakdown. See Table 12-2 for examples of tests that require a chilled specimen.

Figure 12-11 Specimen wrapped in an activated heel warmer for transfer.

CAUTION: Some specimens are negatively affected by chilling. For example, potassium levels artificially increase if the specimen is chilled. When a potassium test is ordered with other analytes that require chilling, it should be collected in a separate tube.

Light-Sensitive Specimens

Some analytes are broken down by light, resulting in falsely decreased values. The most common of these is bilirubin, which can decrease by up to 50% after 1 hour of light exposure.

An easy way to protect a blood specimen from light is to wrap it in aluminum foil (Fig. 12-13). Light-blocking, amber-colored microcollection containers are available for collection of infant bilirubin specimens. Amber containers for urine specimen collection are also available. Light-blocking secondary specimen transport containers are available as well. Table 12-2 lists examples of specimens that require protection from light.

Specimen Processing

Some off-site drawing stations have processing areas where specimens are centrifuged and separated from the cells to protect analyte stability before being sent to the testing site. Most large laboratories have a specific area, commonly called **central processing** or triage (screening and prioritizing area), where specimens are received and prepared for testing. Here the specimens are identified, logged/accessioned, sorted by department and type of processing required, and evaluated for suitability for testing.

Figure 12-12 Specimen immersed in crushed ice and water slurry.

TABLE 12-2 Examples of Specimens That Require Special Handling

Keep at 37°C	Chill in Crushed Ice Slurry	Protect from Light
Cold agglutinin	Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)	Bilirubin
Cryofibrinogen	Acetone	Carotene
Cryoglobulins	Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) Ammonia Catecholamines Free fatty acids Gastrin Glucagon Homocysteine Lactic acid Parathyroid hormone (PTH) pH/blood gas (if indicated) Pyruvate Renin	Red cell folate Serum folate Vitamin B_2 Vitamin B_6 Vitamin B_{12} Vitamin C Urine porphyrins Urine porphobilinogen

CAUTION: OSHA regulations require those who process specimens to wear personal protective equipment (PPE), which includes gloves, fully closed fluid-resistant lab coats or aprons, and protective face gear, such as mask and goggles with side shields, or chin-length face shields.

SPECIMEN SUITABILITY

Suitable specimens are required for accurate laboratory results. Unsuitable specimens must be rejected for testing and new specimens obtained. The most frequently cited reason for rejection of chemistry specimens is hemolysis, followed by insufficient amount of specimen, or **QNS** (quantity not sufficient). The most frequent reason for rejection of hematology specimens is clotting. Some suitability requirements depend on the individual tests ordered. Some

Figure 12-13 Specimen wrapped in aluminum foil to protect it from light.

Test yourself on specimen rejection criteria with WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 12-3.

BOX 12-2 EXAMPLES OF SPECIMEN REJECTION CRITERIA

- Inadequate, inaccurate, or missing specimen identification (e.g., a urine specimen that is not labeled)
- Additive tubes containing an inadequate volume of blood (e.g., a partially filled coagulation tube)
- Hemolysis (e.g., a hemolyzed specimen intended for potassium determination)
- Wrong tube (e.g., a CBC specimen collected in a red top tube)
- Outdated tube (e.g., a CBC specimen collected in a tube that expired the week before)
- Improper handling (e.g., a lavender top tube with a CBC specimen that has clots in it due to improper mixing)
- Contaminated specimen (e.g., a urine specimen for culture and sensitivity in an unsterile container)
- Insufficient specimen, referred to as "quantity not sufficient" (QNS) for the test ordered (e.g., a specimen for an erythrocyte sedimentation rate submitted in a microtainer)
- Wrong collection time (e.g., a specimen for therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM) collected before the drug has been given)
- Exposure to light (e.g., bilirubin results can be 50% lower after 1 hour of exposure to light)
- Delay in testing (e.g., a specimen for a sedimentation rate in an EDTA tube is stable only for 4 hours at room temperature, and 12 hours if refrigerated, and sodium citrate specimens older than 4 hours will give incorrect PTT results)
- Delay or error in processing. Serum tubes that have not been spun within 2 hours or refrigeration of serum tubes before centrifugation will increase some analytes, such as potassium, creatinine, phosphorus, LDH, and decrease analytes, such as glucose, ionized calcium, and CO_2

rejection criteria, such as hemolysis, may not be identified until processing has begun or even completed. In the case of hematology specimens, hemolysis may not be noticed until after testing is complete and the specimen has separated while sitting in a specimen rack. Individual labs have specific policies concerning rejected specimens. Examples of specimen rejection criteria are listed in Box 12-2. Generally, rejected specimens are not discarded until the ordering physician or nursing unit has been notified.

Once suitability requirements are met, specimens that do not require further central processing (e.g., hematology, microbiology, urinalysis specimens) are promptly distributed to their testing areas where they may undergo more specific processing. Specimens for tests that require serum or plasma samples are centrifuged before distribution.

CENTRIFUGATION

A **centrifuge** (Fig. 12-14) is a machine that spins blood and other specimens at a high number of revolutions per minute (rpm). The centrifugal force created causes the cells and plasma or serum in blood specimens to separate (Fig. 12-15). Specimens for tests that require serum or plasma samples must be centrifuged.

Tubes Awaiting Centrifugation

Stoppers should remain on tubes awaiting centrifugation. Removing the stopper from a specimen can cause loss of CO_2 and an increase of pH, leading to inaccurate results for tests such as pH, CO_2, and acid phosphatase. In addition, leaving the stopper off exposes the specimen to evaporation and contamination. Sources of contamination can be as simple as a drop of sweat, which interferes with electrolyte results, or powder from gloves, which may interfere with calcium determinations (some powders contain calcium). Evaporation leads to inaccurate results because of concentration of analytes.

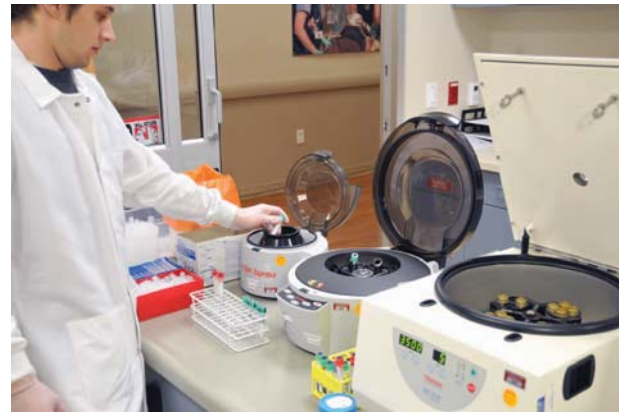


Figure 12-14 Medical technologist loading a centrifuge in a STAT lab in the ER.

KEY POINT Stoppers should also be left on tubes during centrifugation to prevent contamination, evaporation, **aerosol** (fine spray) formation, and pH changes.

View the Balancing a Centrifuge video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Centrifuge Operation

It is crucial that tubes be "balanced" in a centrifuge. That means equal-size tubes with equal volumes of specimen must be placed opposite one another in the centrifuge. An unbalanced centrifuge may break specimen tubes, ruining specimens and causing the contents to form aerosols. The lid to the centrifuge should remain closed during operation and should not be opened until the rotor has come to a complete stop. A properly functioning modern centrifuge will not allow the user to open the lid prematurely.

KEY POINT A specimen should never be centrifuged more than once. Repeated centrifugation can cause hemolysis and analyte deterioration and alter test results. In addition, once the serum or plasma has been removed, the volume ratio of plasma to cells changes.

Figure 12-15 Sodium citrate tubes. *Left,* after being centrifuged. *Right,* before being centrifuged.

Figure 12-16 Prothrombin specimen after centrifugation in a StatSpin Express.

CAUTION: Because a centrifuge generates heat during operation, specimens requiring chilling should be processed in a temperature-controlled refrigerated centrifuge.

Centrifuging Plasma Specimens

Specimens for tests performed on plasma that are collected in tubes containing anticoagulants may be centrifuged without delay. For example, Figure 12-16 shows a prothrombin time (prothrombin time or PT) specimen collected in a light-blue top sodium citrate tube that was immediately spun down using a StatSpin Express 2 centrifuge. Although most chemistry tests traditionally have been performed on serum, STAT chemistry tests are typically collected in green top heparin tubes to save time, because plasma specimens can be centrifuged right away as opposed to serum specimens that must clot first. Some laboratories use heparinized plasma instead of serum for many chemistry tests, simply to reduce turn-around time (TAT). PSTs or other heparin-containing gel tubes are available to maintain specimen stability after centrifugation.

CAUTION: There are different heparin formulations, and some of them cannot be used for certain tests. For example, lithium heparin cannot be used for lithium levels; ammonium heparin cannot be used for ammonia levels; and sodium heparin cannot be used for sodium levels.

Centrifuging Serum Specimens

Specimens for tests performed on serum must be completely clotted before they are centrifuged. If clotting is not complete when a specimen is centrifuged, latent fibrin formation (Fig. 12-17) may clot the serum and interfere with the performance of the test. Complete clotting normally takes 30 to 60 minutes at room temperature (22°C–25°C). Specimens from patients on anticoagulant medication, such as heparin or warfarin (i.e., Coumadin), specimens from patients with high white blood cell counts, and chilled specimens may take longer to clot. Serum separator tubes and other tubes containing clot activators usually clot within 30 minutes provided they are mixed properly immediately after collection. Thrombin tubes, such as the BD rapid serum tube (RST), clots in 5 minutes. There are also several commercially available clot activators that can be added to the tube after the specimen is drawn.

Stopper Removal

Some testing machines sample specimens directly through the tube stopper. Most of the time, however, the stopper has to be removed to obtain the serum or plasma needed for testing. Stoppers can be removed using commercially available stopper removal devices or by

Figure 12-17 Fibrin clot and hemolysis in a centrifuged serum gel tube.

use of robotics. If a removal device or robotic equipment, is not used, the processor should be wearing a full-length face shield or the tube should be held behind a splash shield when the stopper is removed. Either way, the stopper should be covered with a gauze or tissue to catch blood drops or aerosol that may be released as it is removed. Some tubes (e.g., Becton Dickinson Hemogard tubes and Greiner Bio-One Vacuette tubes) have stoppers designed to contain spray. Regardless of design, to prevent or minimize aerosols or blood spray, all tube stoppers should be pulled straight up and off (Fig. 12-18) and not "popped" off using a thumb roll technique.

ALIQUOT PREPARATION

Watch the Opening and Aliquoting a Specimen video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

An **aliquot** is a portion of a specimen used for testing. Aliquots of specimens are sometimes created when multiple tests are ordered on a single specimen and the tests are performed on different instruments or in different areas of the testing department. Aliquots are prepared by transferring a portion of the specimen into one or more tubes labeled with the same ID information as the specimen tube.

According to OSHA, "All procedures involving blood or potentially infectious materials shall be performed in such a manner as to minimize splashing, spraying, splattering, and generation of droplets of these substances." Consequently, disposable transfer pipettes should be used when transferring serum or plasma into aliquot tubes (Fig. 12-19).

Figure 12-18 Example of a Vacuette closure tube. (Manufacturer of tube: Greiner Bio-One International AG, Kremsmunster, Austria.)

Figure 12-19 A sample being transferred from the collection tube to an aliquot tube.

CAUTION: Pouring the serum or plasma into aliquot tubes is not recommended because it increases the possibility of aerosol formation or splashing.

Transfer of specimens into aliquot tubes has an inherent risk of error. Great care must be taken to match each specimen with the corresponding aliquot tube to avoid misidentified samples. Different types of specimens (e.g., serum and plasma) for separate tests on the same patient can also present problems. Serum and plasma are virtually indistinguishable once they have been transferred into the aliquot tubes, so it is important to match the specimen with both the aliquot tube of the requested test and the patient.

CAUTION: Never put serum and plasma, or plasma from specimens with different anticoagulants, in the same aliquot tube.

Each aliquot tube should be covered or capped as soon as it is filled. Some tests require the specimen to be refrigerated or frozen for analyte stability, especially if testing is to be delayed. It is important to consult the procedure manual for specific instructions.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **Which of the following should be removed from a list of computer peripherals?**
   a. Bar code reader
   b. Processor
   c. Modem
   d. Router

2. **Logging on to most computer systems requires the use of a/an:**
   a. accession number.
   b. bar code reader.
   c. modem.
   d. password.

3. **After arriving in the laboratory, all specimens are immediately:**
   a. centrifuged to stop glycolysis.
   b. logged in or accessioned.
   c. refrigerated until processed.
   d. uploaded to testing instruments.

4. **Which of the following would be omitted from a lab-generated computer label?**
   a. Collector's initials
   b. Patient diagnosis
   c. Patient identification
   d. Time of collection

5. **Bar coding in this area of healthcare is unlikely at the present time.**
   a. Bidirectional interfacing
   b. Drug administration
   c. Labeling and supply inventory
   d. Physical location of the patient

6. **Which of the following specimens should be protected from light?**
   a. BUN
   b. CBC
   c. Bilirubin
   d. Glucose

7. **Which of the following is a type of machine used to separate the serum or plasma from blood cells in the sample?**
   a. Cholestech
   b. Glucometer
   c. Hemostat
   d. StatSpin

8. **After obtaining a specimen for a cold agglutinin test, the blood must be transported:**
   a. as a "STAT" test.
   b. away from light.
   c. in ice slurry.
   d. at body temperature.

9. **Required PPE when processing specimens excludes:**
   a. chin-length face shields.
   b. disposable gloves.
   c. fluid-resistant lab coats.
   d. fluid-resistant shoe covers.

10. **Which of the following blood specimens should be transported in an ice slurry?**
    a. BUN and creatinine
    b. Cold agglutinin and bilirubin
    c. Glucose and electrolytes
    d. Homocysteine and rennin

11. **Perspiration contamination can falsely elevate:**
    a. amylase.
    b. calcium.
    c. chloride.
    d. magnesium.

12. **Which of the following specimens would be acceptable for testing?**
    a. CBC collected in a lavender-top tube
    b. Potassium specimen that is hemolyzed
    c. Protime specimen in a partially filled tube
    d. Specimen lacking an identification label

13. **According to CLSI guidelines, serum for most tests should be removed from the cells within:**
    a. 30 minutes.
    b. 60 minutes.
    c. 90 minutes.
    d. 120 minutes.

14. **Which of the following specimens can be centrifuged immediately?**
    a. Bilirubin collected in a red-top tube
    b. CBC collected in a lavender top
    c. Creatinine collected in an SST
    d. Electrolytes collected in a PST

Case Study

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 12-1 *Missing Results*

Nurse Susan collected blood for blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine tests on patient Mr. Jones in bed 201 at 9:30 AM, and sent the specimen to the lab. At 10:30, Susan calls the lab and states she is not able to find Mr. Jones' results in the computer. The technologist, Frank, tells Susan he does not have a specimen with that name on it; however, he did run a BUN and creatinine on patient Betty Smith in bed 202 drawn at 9:30 AM by Susan. Susan says there could not have been an error because she labeled the specimen with the only label she found on the bar-coded label printer at the time.

QUESTIONS

1. *What do you think has happened to Mr. Jones' specimen?*
2. *Why does the lab have results on Mrs. Smith?*
3. *What steps should Susan take to get the results on Mr. Jones?*
4. *What is to be done with the results on Mrs. Smith?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Bishop ML, Fody EP, Schoef LE. Clinical chemistry: principles, procedures, correlations (6th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.

Burtis CA, Ashwood ER, Bruns DE. Tietz, fundamentals of clinical chemistry (6th ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders; 2007.

Department of Transportation. Hazardous materials regulations; Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Parts 100–185; 2001.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, POCT01-A2. Point of care connectivity, approved standard (2nd ed.). Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2006.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H3-A6. Procedures for the collection of diagnostic blood specimens by venipuncture (6th ed.). Wayne, PA: CLSI; December 2007.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H4-A6. Procedures and devices for the collection of diagnostic capillary blood specimens by venipuncture, approved standard. (6th ed.). Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2008.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H18-A3. Procedures for the handling and processing of blood specimens, approved guideline. Wayne, PA: CLSI; 2004.

Fischbach, F., Dunning, M. A manual of laboratory and diagnostic tests (8th ed.). Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2009.

HIPAA, Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act. Federal Register; August 17, 2000.

Joint Commission. Comprehensive accreditation manual for laboratories and Point-of-Care testing (CAMLAB). Oakbrook Terrace, IL Joint Commission Resources (JCR); 2010.

LabCorp test menu: www.labcorp.com/wps/portal/provider/testmenu; accessed April 25, 2010.

McPherson RA, Pincus MR. Henry's clinical diagnosis and management of laboratory methods (21st ed.). Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders; 2007.

Occupational Safety and Health Administration. Occupational exposure to bloodborne pathogens: needlestick and other sharps injuries; final rule. 29 CFR 1910. Federal Register (January 18), 5318–5325; 2001.

Sonora Quest Laboratories. Reference manual; 2010.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos
  - Balancing a Centrifuge
  - Opening and Aliquoting a Specimen
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Clinical Laboratory Science Internet Resources:** http://loucaru.tripod.com/index-5.html
- **LabCorp (Laboratory Corporation of America):** https://www.labcorp.com/wps/portal/provider/testmenu
- **Quest Diagnostics test menu:** http://www.questdiagnostics.com/hcp/qtim/testMenuSearch.do

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase).
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review.* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase).

CHAPTER
13

Nonblood Specimens and Tests

KEY TERMS

Help learn these terms with WORKBOOK Matching Exercise 13-1.

AFP
amniotic fluid
buccal swab
C&S
C. difficile
catheterized
clean catch
CSF
expectorate
FOBT
gastric analysis
H. pylori
iontophoresis
midstream
NP
O&P
occult blood
pericardial fluid
peritoneal fluid
pleural fluid
serous fluid
sputum
suprapubic
sweat chloride
synovial fluid
24-hour urine
UA
UTI

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of the chapter.
2. Describe nonblood specimen labeling and handling.
3. Name and describe the various urine tests, specimen types, and collection and handling methods.
4. Identify and describe the types of nonblood specimens other than urine and explain why these specimens are tested.
5. Describe collection and handling procedures for nonblood specimens other than urine.
6. Identify tests performed on various nonblood specimens other than urine.

Overview

Although blood is the specimen of choice for many laboratory tests, various other body substances are also analyzed. The phlebotomist may be involved in obtaining the specimens (e.g., throat swab collection), test administration (e.g., sweat chloride collection), instruction (e.g., urine collection), processing (accessioning and preparing the specimen for testing), or merely labeling or transporting the specimens to the lab. This chapter addresses routine and special nonblood specimens and procedures, including the collection and handling of urine specimens and other nonblood body fluids and substances. A phlebotomist with a thorough understanding of all aspects of nonblood specimen collection helps ensure the quality of the specimens and the accuracy of test results.

Nonblood Specimen Labeling and Handling

Proper labeling helps avoid testing delays, which can compromise patient care. Nonblood specimens should be labeled with the same identifying information as blood specimens. In addition, since many body fuids are similar in appearance, labeling should include the type and/or source of the specimen. Because the lid is removed for testing, the label should be applied to the container, not the lid, so as to avoid misidentification. Follow facility protocol.

KEY POINT Phlebotomists are often asked to transport specimens to the lab that have been collected by other healthcare personnel. It is important for the phlebotomist to verify proper labeling before accepting a specimen for transport.

Nonblood specimens have various handling requirements. The phlebotomist must be familiar with these requirements to protect the integrity of the specimen and help ensure accurate test results. In addition, all body substances are potentially infectious, and standard precautions must be observed in handling them.

Nonblood Body-Fluid Specimens

Nonblood body fluids are liquid or semiliquid substances produced by the body and found in the intracellular and interstitial spaces and within various organs (e.g., the bladder) and body spaces (e.g., joints).

URINE

Urine, which has been studied since the very beginning of laboratory medicine, is the most frequently analyzed nonblood body fluid. It is readily available, easy to collect, and generally inexpensive to test; its analysis can provide information on many of the body's major metabolic functions. Analysis of urine can aid in monitoring wellness, the diagnosis and treatment of urinary tract infections, the detection and monitoring of metabolic disease, and determining the effectiveness or complications of therapy. Accurate results depend on collection method, container used, specimen transportation and handling, and timeliness of testing.

CAUTION: If urine specimens are not tested promptly, urine components can change. For example, cellular elements decompose, bilirubin breaks down to biliverdin, and bacteria multiply, leading to erroneous test results.

Inpatient urine specimen collection is typically handled by nursing personnel. Outpatient urine specimen collection is often handled by phlebotomists. The phlebotomist must be able to explain urine collection procedures without embarrassing the patient.

KEY POINT Verbal urine specimen collection instructions must be accompanied by written instructions, preferably with illustrations. In outpatient areas, written instructions are often posted on the wall in the restroom designated for patient urine collections.

The type of specimen preferred for many urine tests is the first urine voided (passed naturally from the bladder or urinated) in the morning, because it is the most concentrated. However, the type of urine specimen and method of collection vary depending on the type of test. The most common urine tests, types of specimens, and collection methods follow.

Common Urine Tests

Watch the Routine Urinalysis video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

Routine Urinalysis (UA)

A routine **urinalysis (UA)** is the most commonly requested urine test because it screens for urinary and systemic disorders. It may be ordered as part of a physical examination or at various times during hospitalization. A routine UA typically includes physical, chemical, and microscopic analysis of the urine specimen.

- Physical analysis involves macroscopic observation and notation of color, clarity, and odor, as well as measurements of volume and specific gravity (SG) or osmolality. (SG and osmolality indicate urine concentration.) Physical analysis can also help explain or confirm chemical and microscopic results.
- Chemical analysis can detect bacteria, bilirubin, blood (red blood cells and hemoglobin), glucose, ketones, leukocytes, nitrite, protein, and urobilinogen, and measure pH and specific gravity. Analysis is commonly performed using a plastic reagent strip (often called a dipstick) that contains pads impregnated with test reagents. Each test has its own pad. The strip is dipped into the urine and color reactions that take place on the pads are compared to a color chart, which is usually found on the label of the reagent strip container. Special timing, which is not the same for all tests, is involved in reading the results, which are reported in the manner indicated on the color chart. Results are typically reported using the terms *trace, 1+, 2+,* and so on to indicate the degree of a positive result, and *negative (neg)* or *(−)* when no reaction is noted. Machines are available that read the strips automatically. The strip is used once and then discarded.
- Microscopic analysis identifies urine components such as cells, crystals, and microorganisms by examining a sample of urine sediment under a microscope. To obtain the sediment, a measured portion of urine is centrifuged in a special plastic tube. After centrifugation, the supernatant, or top portion of the specimen, is discarded. A drop of the remaining sediment is placed either on a glass slide and covered with a small square of glass called a coverslip or placed in a special chamber. It is then examined under the microscope by a laboratory technologist or technician. There are also machines that perform this function.

A random specimen is acceptable for routine urinalysis. However, to avoid contamination of the specimen by genital secretions, pubic hair, and bacteria surrounding the urinary opening, the ideal procedure for collecting a specimen for routine urinalysis is referred to as **midstream** collection. (See "Urine Collection Methods," for regular voided and midstream collection methods).

Routine UA specimens should be collected in clear, dry, chemically clean containers with tight-fitting lids. If a culture and sensitivity (C&S) is also ordered on the specimen, the container should be sterile. Urine specimens should be transported to the lab promptly. Specimens that cannot be transported or analyzed promptly can be held at room temperature and protected from light for up to 2 hours. Specimens held longer should be refrigerated. Specimens that require both UA and C&S testing should be refrigerated if immediate processing is not possible. (Urinalysis is also discussed under "Point of Care Testing" in Chapter 11.)

Urine Culture and Sensitivity

A urine **culture and sensitivity (C&S)** test may be requested on a patient with symptoms of **urinary tract infection (UTI)**. The culture involves placing a measured portion of urine on a

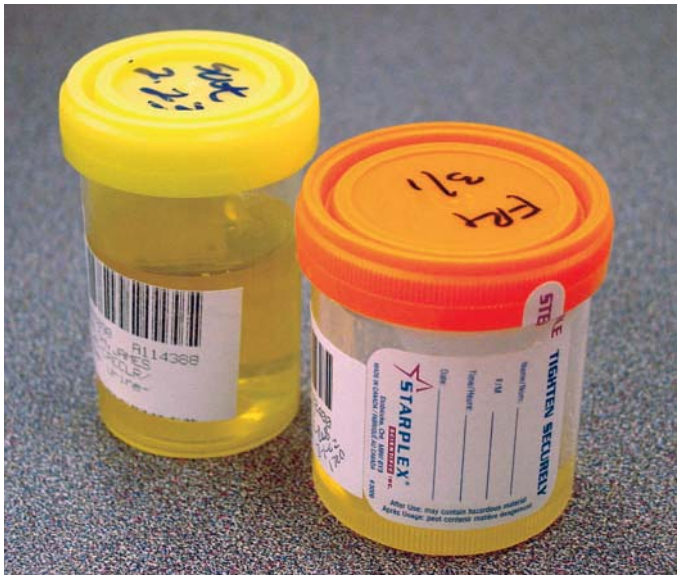


Figure 13-1 Urine specimens collected in sterile containers for C&S testing.

special nutrient medium that encourages the growth of microorganisms, incubating it for 18 to 24 hours, checking it for growth, and identifying any microorganisms that grow. If a microorganism is identified, a sensitivity or antibiotic susceptibility test is performed to determine which antibiotics will be effective against the microorganism. Urine for C&S testing must be collected in a sterile container (Fig. 13-1), following midstream **clean-catch** (see "Urine Collection Methods") procedures to ensure that the specimen is free of contaminating matter from the external genital areas.

CAUTION: Specimens for C&S and other microbiologic studies should be transported to the lab and processed immediately. If a delay in transportation or processing is unavoidable, the specimen should be refrigerated.

Urine Cytology Studies

Cytology studies on urine are performed to detect cancer, cytomegalovirus, and other viral and inflammatory diseases of the bladder and other structures of the urinary system. Cells from the lining of the urinary tract are readily shed into the urine, and a smear containing them can easily be prepared from urinary sediment or filtrate. The smear is stained by the Papanicolaou (PAP) method and examined under a microscope for the presence of abnormal cells. A fresh clean-catch specimen is required for the test. Ideally, the specimen should be examined as soon after collection as possible. If a delay is unavoidable, the specimen can be preserved by the addition of an equal volume of 50% alcohol. Follow facility protocol.

Urine Drug Screening

Urine drug screening is performed to detect illicit use of recreational drugs, use of anabolic steroids to enhance performance in sports, and unwarranted use of prescription drugs; it is also used to monitor therapeutic drug use in order to minimize withdrawal symptoms and to confirm a diagnosis of drug overdose. With the exception of alcohol, urine is preferred for drug screening, since many drugs can be detected in urine but not blood.

Screening tests are typically performed in groups based on drug classifications or families (see Chapter 11, Table 11-2). A random sample in a chemically clean, covered container is required for the test. Specimens containing blood cells or having a high or low urine pH (highly alkaline or highly acid) or a low specific gravity will yield erroneous results and will require recollection of the specimen. (For additional information, see "Forensic Specimens" in Chapter 11.)

Urine Glucose and Ketone Testing

Urine reagent test strips are also used to screen for diabetes and monitor glucose and ketone levels in diabetics. The body breaks down carbohydrates to supply itself with glucose. Ketones are created when the body breaks down fat for energy because the diet is deficient in carbohydrates or when the body does not metabolize glucose properly. The testing of urine ketone levels can be used to diagnose diabetic ketoacidosis and help differentiate between diabetic and nondiabetic coma. Results are read by comparing color changes on the test strip to a color chart.

Urine Pregnancy Testing

Pregnancy can be confirmed by testing urine for the presence of human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), a hormone produced by cells within the developing placenta, that appears in serum and urine approximately 8 to 10 days after conception, or fertilization. Although a random urine specimen can be used for testing, the first morning specimen is preferred because it is typically more concentrated and would therefore have the highest HCG concentration.

HCG also appears in the urine of patients with melanoma, tumors of the ovaries or testes, and certain types of cancer, including breast, lung, and kidney.

Other Urine Tests

Numerous chemistry tests—including electrophoresis, tests for heavy metals (e.g., copper and lead), myoglobin clearance, creatinine clearance, and porphyrins—can be performed on urine specimens. Many of these tests require a pooled timed specimen, such as a 24-hour collection.

Types of Urine Specimens

Random

Random urine specimens can be collected at any time. They are used primarily for routine urinalysis and screening tests. *Random* refers only to the timing of the specimen and not the method of collection.

First Morning/8-Hour Specimen

A first morning or 8-hour urine specimen (also called a first voided, overnight, or early morning specimen) is usually collected immediately upon awakening in the morning after approximately 8 hours of sleep. This type of specimen normally has a higher specific gravity, which means that it is more concentrated than a random specimen. For this reason, first morning specimens are often requested to confirm results of random specimens and specimens with low specific gravity.

Fasting

A fasting specimen is typically used for glucose monitoring. It differs from a first morning specimen in that the specimen is the second specimen voided after a period of fasting. This helps assure that the specimen will not be affected by food consumed prior to fasting.

Timed

Some tests require individual urine specimens collected at specific times. Others require the collection and pooling of urine throughout a specific time period. Some of the most frequently encountered timed urine tests are as follows.

Tolerance Test Specimen. Tolerance tests typically require collection of urine at specific times. The traditional standard glucose tolerance test (GTT) requires individual urine specimens collected serially at specific times that correspond with the timing of blood collection, such as fasting, 1/2 hour, 1 hour, and so on. Timing of the specimens is important in the interpretation of test results. For this reason, the specimens must be collected as close to the requested time

Figure 13-2 Two styles of 24-hour urine specimen collection containers.

as possible, and the label of the specimen should include the time of collection and the type of specimen (e.g., fasting, 1/2 hour).

2-Hour Postprandial Specimen. A 2-hour postprandial (PP) specimen is collected 2 hours after a meal and tested for glucose. It is primarily used to monitor the insulin therapy of patients with diabetes mellitus. The patient is instructed to void shortly before consuming a normal meal and to collect a specimen 2 hours later. Results are often compared with glucose results on fasting urine and fasting blood specimens.

Test your knowledge of 24-hour urine collection with WORKBOOK Skills Drill 13-3.

24-Hour Specimen. A **24-hour urine** specimen is collected to allow quantitative analysis of a urine analyte. Collection and pooling of all urine voided in the 24-hour period is critical. The best time to begin a 24-hour collection is when the patient wakes in the morning, typically between 6 and 8 A.M. Collection of the specimen requires a large, clean, preferably wide-mouth container capable of holding several liters (Fig. 13-2). A special collection device that fits over the toilet and looks somewhat like an upside-down hat is sometimes provided to the patient to make collection of the specimen easier. Some 24-hour specimens require the addition of a preservative prior to collection. Others, such as creatinine clearance, must be kept refrigerated throughout the collection period. Information on proper handling of the specimen can be obtained by consulting the laboratory procedure manual. The label of the specimen, in addition to standard patient identification, must state that the specimen is a 24-hour specimen, the type of preservative added to the container (if applicable), and any precautions associated with it, as some preservatives can burn the skin. The procedure for 24-hour urine collection is shown in Procedure 13-1.

KEY POINT A urine creatinine clearance test also requires collection of a blood creatinine specimen, which is ideally collected at the midpoint of urine collection (i.e., 12 hours into urine collection).

Double-Voided Specimen. A double-voided urine specimen is one that requires emptying the bladder and then waiting a specified amount of time (typically 30 minutes) before collecting the specimen. It is most commonly used to test urine for glucose and ketones. A fresh double-voided specimen is thought to more accurately reflect the blood concentration of the analyte tested, whereas a specimen that has been held in the bladder for an extended period may not.

PROCEDURE 13-1 24-Hour Urine Collection Procedure

PURPOSE: To provide instruction in how to properly collect a 24-hour urine specimen

EQUIPMENT: Requisition, specimen label, 24-hour urine container, preservative (if applicable), disposable ice chest (if required), copy of written instructions

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Void into toilet as usual upon awakening.	The bladder must be empty when timing starts. Urine voided is from the previous time period.
2. Note the time and date on the specimen label, place it on the container, and begin timing.	Timing (which should ideally start between 6 and 8 A.M.) is important. If urine is collected for a longer or shorter period, results will be inaccurate. The label should be affixed to the container, not the lid.
3. Collect all urine voided for the next 24 hours.	Results are based on the total amount of urine produced in 24 hours.
4. Refrigerate the specimen throughout the collection period if required.	Most specimens (except urate tests) require refrigeration to maintain analyte integrity. The specimen container should be kept cool in a disposable ice chest, placed in the bath tub, for example.
5. When a bowel movement is anticipated, collect the urine specimen before, not after it.	Prevents fecal contamination of the specimen.
6. Drink a normal amount of fluid unless instructed to do otherwise.	Prevents dehydration and facilitates specimen collection.
7. Void one last time at the end of the 24 hours.	This specimen must be added to the container.
8. Seal the container, place it in a portable cooler, and transport it to the laboratory ASAP.	Cooling and prompt delivery help protect the integrity of the specimen.

Urine Collection Methods

Regular Voided Specimen

A regular voided urine collection requires no special patient preparation and is collected by having the patient void (urinate) into a clean urine container.

Midstream Specimen

A **midstream** urine collection is performed to obtain a specimen that is free of genital secretions, pubic hair, and bacteria surrounding the urinary opening. To collect a midstream specimen, the patient voids the initial urine flow into the toilet. The urine flow is interrupted momentarily and then restarted, at which time a sufficient amount of urine is collected into a specimen container. The last of the urine flow is voided into the toilet.

Check out WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 13-3 to see if you know the rationale behind each step in the clean-catch procedure.

Midstream Clean-Catch Specimen

Midstream **clean-catch** urine is collected in a sterile container and yields a specimen that is suitable for microbial analysis or culture and sensitivity testing. Clean-catch procedures are necessary to ensure that the specimen is free of contaminating matter from the external genital areas. Special cleaning of the genital area is required before the specimen is collected. The cleaning methods vary somewhat depending upon whether the patient is male or female. A phlebotomist must be able to explain the proper procedure to both male and female patients. The clean-catch urine collection procedure for females is described in Procedure 13-2. The procedure for males is described in Procedure 13-3.

PROCEDURE 13-2 Clean-Catch Urine Collection Procedure for Women

PURPOSE: To instruct a female in how to properly collect a clean-catch urine specimen

EQUIPMENT: Requisition, specimen label, sterile urine container, special sterile antiseptic wipes, and copy of written instructions

Step	Rationale
1. Wash hands thoroughly.	Aids in infection control and helps avoid contamination of the site while cleaning.
2. Remove the lid of the container, being careful not to touch the inside of the cover or the container.	The lid and container must remain sterile for accurate interpretation of results.
3. Stand in a squatting position over the toilet.	Facilitates cleaning and downward flow of urine.
4. Separate the folds of skin around the urinary opening.	Allows proper cleaning of the area.
5. Cleanse the area on either side and around the opening with the special wipes, using a fresh wipe for each area and wiping from front to back. Discard used wipes in the trash.	Antiseptic solution in the wipe removes bacteria from area. Front-to-back motion carries bacteria away from the site.
6. While keeping the skin folds separated, void into the toilet for a few seconds.	Separation of the folds maintains site antisepsis. Voiding the first portion of urine into the toilet washes away the antiseptic and microbes remaining in the urinary opening.
7. Touching only the outside and without letting it touch the genital area, bring the urine container into the urine stream until a sufficient amount of urine (30–100 mL) is collected.	Bringing the urine container into the stream without touching the genital area helps ensure sterility of the specimen. An adequate amount of urine is needed to perform the test.
8. Void the remaining urine into the toilet.	Only 30–100 mL of urine is needed for the test.
9. Cover the specimen with the lid provided, touching only the *outside* surfaces of the lid and container.	The lid and container must remain sterile, and the specimen must be covered to maintain sterility and protect others from exposure to the contents.
10. Clean any urine off the outside of the container with an antiseptic wipe.	Aids in infection control.
11. Wash hands.	Aids in infection control.
12. Hand specimen to phlebotomist or place where instructed if already labeled.	Follow facility protocol.

Catheterized Specimen

A **catheterized** urine specimen is collected from a sterile catheter inserted through the urethra into the bladder. A catheterized specimen is collected when a patient is having trouble voiding or is already catheterized for other reasons. Catheterized specimens are sometimes collected on babies to obtain a specimen for C&S, on female patients to prevent vaginal contamination of the specimen, and on bedridden patients when serial specimen collections are needed.

Suprapubic Aspiration

Suprapubic collection of urine involves inserting a needle directly into the urinary bladder and aspirating (withdrawing by suction) the urine directly from the bladder into a sterile syringe.

PROCEDURE 13-3 Clean-Catch Urine Collection Procedure for Men

PURPOSE: To instruct a male in how to properly collect a clean-catch urine specimen

EQUIPMENT: Requisition, specimen label, sterile urine container, special sterile antiseptic wipes, and copy of written instructions

Step	Rationale
1. Wash hands thoroughly.	Aids in infection control and helps avoid contamination of the site while cleaning.
2. Remove the lid of the container, being careful not to touch the inside of the cover or the container.	The lid and container must remain sterile for accurate interpretation of results.
3. Wash the end of the penis with the special wipe (or soapy water), beginning at the urethral opening and working away from it in a circular motion (the foreskin of an uncircumcised male must first be retracted). Repeat the procedure with a clean wipe.	The foreskin must be retracted to allow thorough cleaning of the penis. Antiseptic solution in the wipe removes bacteria from the area. Wiping away from the urinary opening carries microbes away from the site.
4. Keeping the foreskin retracted, if applicable, void into the toilet for a few seconds.	Keeping the foreskin retracted maintains site antisepsis. Voiding the first portion of urine into the toilet washes away the antiseptic and microbes remaining in the urinary opening.
5. Touching only the outside and without letting it touch the penis, bring the urine container into the urine stream until a sufficient amount of urine (30–100 mL) is collected.	Bringing the urine container into the stream without touching the penis helps ensure sterility of the specimen. An adequate amount of urine is needed to perform the test.
6. Void the remaining urine into the toilet.	Only 30–100 mL of urine is needed for the test.
7. Cover the specimen with the lid provided, touching only the *outside* surfaces of the lid and container.	The lid and container must remain sterile, and the specimen must be covered to maintain sterility specimen must be covered to maintain sterility and protect others from exposure to the contents.
8. Clean any urine spilled on the outside of the container with an antiseptic wipe.	Aids in infection control.
9. Wash hands.	Aids in infection control.
10. Hand specimen to phlebotomist or place where instructed if already labeled.	Follow facility protocol.

The specimen is then transferred into a sterile urine container or tube. The procedure normally requires the use of local anesthesia and is performed by a physician. If the patient has a catheter, the specimen can be collected from the catheter by a nurse using a sterile needle and syringe. Suprapubic aspiration is used for samples for microbial analysis or cytology studies. It is sometimes used to obtain uncontaminated samples from infants and young children.

Pediatric Urine Collection

A plastic urine collection bag with hypoallergenic skin adhesive is used to collect a urine specimen from an infant or small child who is not yet potty trained. The patient's genital area is cleaned and dried before the bag is taped to the skin. The bag is placed around the vagina of a female and over the penis of a male. A diaper is placed over the collection bag. The patient is checked every 15 minutes until an adequate specimen is obtained. The bag is then removed, sealed, labeled, and sent to the lab as soon as possible. A 24-hour specimen can be obtained by using a special collection bag with a tube attached that allows the bag to be emptied periodically.

AMNIOTIC FLUID

Amniotic fluid is the clear, almost colorless to pale-yellow fluid that fills the membrane (amnion or amniotic sac) that surrounds and cushions a fetus in the uterus. It is preferably collected after 15 weeks of gestation (pregnancy) and is obtained by a physician using a procedure called transabdominal amniocentesis. The procedure, which is typically performed with ultrasound guidance, involves inserting a needle through the mother's abdominal wall into the uterus and aspirating approximately 10 mL of fluid from the amniotic sac.

Amniotic fluid can be analyzed to detect genetic disorders such as Down's syndrome, identify hemolytic disease resulting from blood incompatibility between the mother and fetus, and determine gestational age. However, the most common reasons for testing amniotic fluid are to detect problems in fetal development (particularly neural tube defects such as spina bifida) and assess fetal lung maturity.

Genetic disorders can be detected by chromosome studies done on fetal cells removed from the fluid, although the procedure has for the most part been replaced by studies on chorionic villi or placental tissue because it can be obtained earlier in the gestational period than amniotic fluid. Hemolytic disease can be detected by measuring bilirubin levels.

Although ultrasonography has become the accepted means of estimating gestational age, amniotic fluid creatinine levels have also been used to estimate gestational age because these levels are related to fetal muscle mass.

Problems in fetal development can be detected by measuring **alpha-fetoprotein (AFP)**, an antigen normally present in the human fetus that is also found in amniotic fluid and maternal serum. Abnormal AFP levels may indicate problems in fetal development such as neural tube defects or the potential for Down's syndrome. AFP testing is initially performed on maternal serum, and abnormal results are confirmed by amniotic fluid AFP testing. Because normal AFP levels are different in each week of gestation, it is important that the gestational age of the fetus be included on the specimen label.

AFP is present in the blood of males and nonpregnant females in certain pathological conditions.

Fetal lung maturity can be assessed by measuring the amniotic fluid levels of substances called phospholipids, which act as surfactants to keep the alveoli of the lungs inflated. Results are reported as a lecithin-to-sphingomyelin (L/S) ratio. Lungs are most likely to be immature if the L/S ratio is less than 2. Amniotic fluid testing to assess fetal lung maturity may be ordered on or near the patient's due date and is often ordered stat when the fetus is in distress.

Amniotic fluid is normally sterile and must be collected in a sterile container. The specimen should be protected from light to prevent breakdown of bilirubin and delivered to the laboratory ASAP. Specimens for chromosome analysis must be kept at room temperature. Specimens for some chemistry tests must be kept on ice. Follow laboratory protocol.

CEREBROSPINAL FLUID

Want to have some fun? See if you can unscramble a word from this section in Knowledge Drill 13-2 in the WORKBOOK.

Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) is a clear, colorless liquid that surrounds the brain and spinal cord. CSF has many of the same constituents as blood plasma. Specimens are obtained by a physician; most often through lumbar puncture (spinal tap). The primary reason for collecting CSF is to diagnose meningitis. It is also used to diagnose other disorders such as brain abscess, CNS cancer, and multiple sclerosis. Routine tests performed on spinal fluid include cell counts, chloride, glucose, and total protein. Other tests are performed if indicated. CSF is generally collected in three special sterile tubes numbered in order of collection. Laboratory protocol dictates which tests are to be performed on each particular tube unless the physician indicates otherwise. Normally, the first tube is used for chemistry and immunology tests, the second for microbiology studies, and the third for cell counts. CSF should be kept at room temperature, delivered to the lab stat, and analyzed immediately.

GASTRIC FLUID/GASTRIC ANALYSIS

Gastric fluid is stomach fluid. A **gastric analysis** examines stomach contents for abnormal substances and measures gastric acid concentration to evaluate stomach acid production. A basal gastric analysis involves aspirating a sample of gastric fluid by means of a tube passed through the mouth and throat (oropharynx) or nose and throat (nasopharynx) into the stomach after a period of fasting. This sample is tested to determine acidity prior to stimulation. After the basal sample has been collected, a gastric stimulant, most commonly histamine or pentagastrin, is administered intravenously and several more gastric samples are collected at timed intervals. All specimens are collected in sterile containers. The role of the phlebotomist in this procedure is to help label specimens and draw blood for serum gastrin (a hormone that stimulates gastric acid secretion) determinations.

NASOPHARYNGEAL SECRETIONS

The nasopharynx is comprised of the nasal cavity and pharynx. **Nasopharyngeal (NP)** secretions are cultured to detect the presence of microorganisms causing diphtheria, meningitis, pertussis (whooping cough), and pneumonia. NP specimens are collected using a sterile Dacron or cotton-tipped flexible wire swab. The swab is inserted gently into the nose and passed into the nasopharynx. There it is gently rotated, then carefully removed, placed in a sterile tube containing transport medium, labeled, and delivered to the lab.

SALIVA

Saliva (fluid secreted by glands in the mouth) is increasingly being used to monitor hormone levels and detect alcohol and drug abuse because it can be collected quickly and easily in a noninvasive manner. In addition, detection of drugs in saliva indicates recent drug use. Numerous kits are available for collecting and testing saliva specimens. Many are point-of-care tests. Saliva specimens for hormone tests, however, are typically frozen to ensure stability and sent to a laboratory for testing.

SEMEN

Semen (seminal fluid) is the sperm-containing thick yellowish-white fluid discharged during male ejaculation. It is analyzed to assess fertility or determine the effectiveness of sterilization following vasectomy. It is also sometimes examined for forensic (or legal) reasons (e.g., criminal sexual investigations). Semen specimens are collected in sterile or chemically clean containers and must be kept warm, protected from light, and delivered to the lab immediately.

KEY POINT A semen specimen should not be collected in a condom unless it is one specifically designed for specimen collection. Regular condoms often contain spermicides (substances that kill sperm) that invalidate test results.

SEROUS FLUID

Serous fluid is the pale-yellow, watery, serum-like fluid found between the double-layered membranes enclosing the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities. It lubricates the membranes and allows them to slide past one another with minimal friction. The fluid is normally present in small amounts, but volumes increase when inflammation or infection is present or when serum protein levels decrease. An increase in fluid volume is called an effusion.

Accumulation of excess serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity is called ascites (a-si' tez), and the fluid is referred to as ascitic fluid.

Serous fluids can be aspirated for testing purposes or when increased amounts are interfering with the normal function of associated organs. A physician performs the procedure. Fluid withdrawn for testing is typically collected in EDTA tubes if cell counts or smears are ordered, in heparin or sodium fluoride tubes for chemistry tests, in nonanticoagulant tubes for biochemical tests, and in sterile heparinized tubes for cultures. The type of fluid should be indicated on the specimen label. Serous fluids are identified according to the body cavity of origin as follows:

Do you know what the word elements in pericardial mean? Practice your word-building skills with WORKBOOK Skills Drill 13-2.

- **Pleural fluid:** aspirated from the pleural space, or cavity, surrounding the lungs
- **Peritoneal fluid:** aspirated from the abdominal cavity
- **Pericardial fluid:** aspirated from the pericardial cavity surrounding the heart

SPUTUM

Sputum is mucus or phlegm that is ejected from the trachea, bronchi, and lungs through deep coughing. Sputum specimens are sometimes collected in the diagnosis or monitoring of lower respiratory tract infections such as tuberculosis (TB), caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*.

KEY POINT The microbe that causes TB is called an acid-fast bacillus (AFB), and the sputum test for TB is often called an AFB culture.

First morning specimens are preferred, as secretions tend to collect in the lungs overnight and a larger volume of specimen can be produced. It is also best to collect the specimen at least 1 hour after a meal to minimize the risk that the patient will gag or vomit. The patient must first remove dentures if applicable, then rinse his or her mouth and gargle with water to minimize contamination with mouth flora and saliva. The patient is instructed to take three or four slow, deep breaths, inhaling to full capacity and exhaling fully, then to cough forcefully on the last breath and expectorate (cough up and expel sputum) into a special sterile container (Fig. 13-3). The process is repeated until a sufficient amount of sputum is obtained. A minimum of 3 to 5 mL is typically required for most tests.

KEY POINT The patient must cough up material from deep in the respiratory tract and not simply spit into the container.

Specimens are transported at room temperature and require immediate processing upon arrival in the laboratory to maintain specimen quality.

SWEAT

Sweat is analyzed for chloride content in the diagnosis of **cystic fibrosis**, predominantly in children and adolescents under the age of 20. Cystic fibrosis is a disorder of the exocrine glands that affects many body systems but primarily the lungs, upper respiratory tract, liver, and pancreas. Patients with cystic fibrosis have abnormally high levels (two to five times normal) of chloride in their sweat, which can be measured by the **sweat chloride** test. The test involves transporting pilocarpine (a sweat-stimulating drug) into the skin by means of electrical stimulation from electrodes placed on the skin, a process called **iontophoresis**. The forearm is the preferred site, but the leg or thigh may be used on infants or toddlers. Sweat is collected, weighed to determine its volume, and analyzed for chloride content. (The sweat chloride testing procedure is explained in Chapter 11 under "Point-of-Care Testing.")

Sweat specimens can also be used to detect illicit drug use. Sweat is collected on patches placed on the skin for extended periods of time and then tested for drugs.

Figure 13-3 A sputum specimen container.

SYNOVIAL FLUID

Synovial fluid is a clear, pale-yellow, viscous fluid that lubricates and decreases friction in movable joints. It normally occurs in small amounts but increases when inflammation is present. It can be tested to identify or differentiate arthritis, gout, and other inflammatory conditions. It is typically collected in three tubes: an EDTA or heparin tube for cell counts, identification of crystals, and smear preparation; a sterile tube for culture and sensitivity; and a nonadditive tube for macroscopic appearance, chemistry, and immunology tests and to observe clot formation.

Other Nonblood Specimens

BUCCAL SWABS

Collection of a **buccal** (cheek) **swab** is a less invasive, painless alternative to blood collection for obtaining cells for DNA analysis. The phlebotomist collects the sample by gently massaging the mouth on the inside of the cheek with a special swab. DNA is later extracted from cells on the swab.

BONE MARROW

Because it is the site of blood cell production, bone marrow is sometimes aspirated and examined to detect and identify blood diseases. A bone marrow biopsy may be performed at the same time. To obtain bone marrow, a physician inserts a special large-gauge needle into the bone marrow in the iliac crest (hip bone) or sternum (breastbone). Once the bone marrow is penetrated, a 10-mL or larger syringe is attached to the needle to aspirate 1.0 to 1.5 mL of specimen. A laboratory hematology technologist is typically present and makes special slides

from part of the first marrow aspirated. Additional syringes may be attached to collect marrow for other tests such as chromosome studies or bacterial cultures. Part of the first sample may be placed in an EDTA tube for other laboratory studies. Remaining aspirate is sometimes allowed to clot and placed in formalin or another suitable preservative and sent to histology for processing and examination. In an alternate method, blood and particles from the EDTA tube are filtered through a special paper. The filtered particles are then folded in the paper and placed in formalin. If a bone marrow biopsy is collected at the same time, the cylindrical core of material obtained is touched lightly to the surface of several clean slides before being placed in a special preservative solution. The slides are air-dried and later fixed with methanol and stained with Wright's stain in the hematology department. The biopsy specimen and several slides are sent to the histology department for processing and evaluation. The remaining slides including biopsy touch slides are sent to the hematology department for staining and evaluation under the microscope.

BREATH SAMPLES

Breath samples are collected and analyzed for hydrogen content in one type of lactose tolerance test and to detect the presence of *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*), a type of bacteria that secretes substances that damage the lining of the stomach and causes chronic gastritis, which can lead to peptic ulcer disease.

C-Urea Breath Test

A common test used to detect *H. pylori* is the **C-urea breath test (C-UBT)**. This test is based on the fact that *H. pylori* produces urease, an enzyme that breaks down urea but is not normally present in the stomach. To perform the test, a baseline breath sample is collected, after which the patient drinks a special substance that contains synthetic urea. The synthetic urea contains a form of carbon called carbon-13. If *H. pylori* organisms are present, the urease they produce will break down the synthetic urea and in the process release carbon dioxide (CO_2) that contain carbon-13. The CO_2 will be absorbed into the bloodstream and exhaled in the patient's breath. The patient breathes into a special Mylar balloon or other collection device at specified intervals. The breath specimens are analyzed for carbon-13 content. If carbon-13 is found in amounts higher than those in the baseline sample, *H. pylori* is present in the stomach.

Hydrogen Breath Test

The hydrogen breath test helps identify problems with the digestion of carbohydrates such as lactose (milk sugar) and fructose (fruit sugar) and is thought to be the most accurate lactose tolerance test. It can also be used to detect bacterial overgrowth in the small intestine. The principle behind the test is that hydrogen gas is produced when intestinal bacteria ferment carbohydrates such as lactose, fructose, or lactulose (used to detect bacterial overgrowth). Some of the hydrogen is absorbed into the bloodstream and transported to the lungs, where it is exhaled during normal breathing.

To prepare for the test, the patient must not have taken antibiotics for at least 2 weeks before the test and must avoid certain foods for 24 hours prior to the test. The patient must be fasting on the day of the test and is asked to refrain from vigorous exercise and smoking for 30 minutes prior to and during the test. On the day of the test, a baseline breath sample is taken by having the patient exhale into a special bag or device. Then the patient is given a drink that, depending on the type of test, contains a measured amount of lactose, fructose, or lactulose. Additional breath samples are collected at regular intervals, typically, every 30 minutes for up to 3 hours, depending on the amount of hydrogen detected in the samples. For those given lactose or fructose, increased hydrogen levels in the breath samples respectively indicate increased lactose or fructose in the intestinal tract, most likely as a result of metabolism. For those given lactulose, if bacterial overgrowth is present, increased hydrogen levels appear twice; the first time when the lactulose reaches bacteria in the small intestine and the second time when it reaches bacteria in the colon.

FECES (STOOL)

Examination of fecal specimens (feces or stool) is helpful in the evaluation of gastrointestinal disorders. Stool specimens can be evaluated for the presence of intestinal parasites and their eggs (**ova** and **parasites**, or **O&P**), checked for fat and urobilinogen content, cultured to detect the presence of pathogenic bacteria (e.g., *C. difficile* and *Salmonella*) and viruses, and tested for the presence of **occult** (hidden) **blood** using the **guaiac test.**

FYI

Clostridium difficile (C. difficile) *is a bacterium that can inhabit the intestinal tract and proliferate at the expense of normal bacteria in patients on antibiotic therapy. Although it is not commonly found in healthy adults, it is frequently found in hospitalized patients and is implicated as a causative agent of hospital-acquired diarrhea. Although cases are usually mild and subside when the antibiotic is discontinued, symptoms can persist and may become severe in some individuals.*

Stool specimens are normally collected in clean, dry, wide-mouthed containers that should be sealed and sent to the laboratory immediately after collection. Special containers with preservative are available for ova and parasite collection (Fig. 13-4). Preserved specimens can usually be kept at room temperature. Large gallon containers, similar to paint cans, are used for 24-, 48-, and 72-hour stool collections for fecal fat and urobilinogen; these specimens must normally be refrigerated throughout the collection period. Consult the facility procedure manual for test-specific collection and handling requirements.

Special test cards, such as Hematest (Miles Inc., Elkhart, IN) and Hemoccult (Smith-Kline Diagnostics, San Jose, CA), are often given to outpatients to collect stool specimens for **fecal occult blood testing (FOBT)**. The patient is usually instructed to follow a meat-free diet for 3 days prior to the test. Patients are then instructed to collect separate specimens for 3 successive days. Cards can be mailed in or brought to the lab after collection.

HAIR

Samples of hair are sometimes collected for trace and heavy metal analysis and the detection of drugs of abuse. Use of hair samples for drug testing is advantageous because hair is easy

Figure 13-4 Ova and parasite specimen containers.

Figure 13-5 A throat swab and transport tube.

to obtain and cannot easily be altered or tampered with. Hair shows evidence of chronic drug use rather than recent use. Although the use of hair for drug testing is on the rise, lack of standardization in this area has held up widespread acceptance.

View the Throat Swab Collection and Rapid Detection of Strep procedure videos at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

THROAT SWABS

Throat swab specimens are most often collected to aid in the diagnosis of streptococcal (strep) infections. Nursing staff usually collect throat culture specimens on inpatients. Phlebotomists commonly collect throat culture specimens on outpatients. A throat culture is typically collected using a special kit containing a sterile polyester-tipped swab in a covered transport tube containing transport medium (Fig. 13-5). The procedure for throat culture specimen collection is shown in Procedure 13-4. Throat swabs for rapid strep tests are collected in a similar manner.

TISSUE SPECIMENS

Tissue specimens from biopsies may also be sent to the laboratory for processing. (A biopsy is the removal of a tissue sample for examination.) Most tissue specimens arrive at the laboratory in formalin or another suitable solution and need only be accessioned and sent to the

PROCEDURE 13-4 Throat Culture Specimen Collection

PURPOSE: To provide instruction in how to properly collect a throat culture specimen

EQUIPMENT: Requisition, specimen label, sterile container with swab and transport medium

Step	Rationale
1. Wash hands and put on gloves. The phlebotomist may wish to wear a mask and goggles. Follow facility protocol.	Aids in infection control. Throat culture collection can cause the patient to have a gag reflex or cough.
2. Open container and remove swab in an aseptic manner.	Swab sterility must be maintained for accurate interpretation of results.
3. Stand back or to the side of the patient.	Helps avoid droplet contact if the patient coughs.
4. Instruct the patient to tilt back the head and open the mouth wide.	Allows adequate evaluation of the collection site and ease in specimen collection.

PROCEDURE 13-4 Throat Culture Specimen Collection (Continued)

Step	Rationale
5. Direct light onto the back of the throat using a small flashlight or other light source.	Illuminates areas of inflammation, ulceration, exudation, or capsule formation.
6. Depress the tongue with a tongue depressor and ask the patient to say "ah."	Depressing the tongue helps avoid touching other areas of the mouth and contaminating the sample during collection. Saying "ah" raises the uvula (soft tissue hanging from the back of the throat) out of the way.
7. Swab both tonsils, tonsilar crypts (crevasses), the back of the throat, and any areas of ulceration, exudation, or inflammation, being careful not to touch the swab to the lips, tongue, or uvula.	Standard protocol that ensures sampling of the problem area. Touching other areas of the mouth can contaminate the swab with microbes from the oral cavity and not the throat. Touching the uvula can cause a gag reflex.
8. Maintain tongue depressor position while removing the swab and then discard it.	Keeping the tongue depressor in place until the swab is removed prevents the tongue from contaminating the swab.
9. Place the swab back in the transport tube, embed in medium, and secure cover. (Follow instructions to crush ampule and release medium first if applicable.)	The transport medium keeps the microbes alive until they can be cultured in the laboratory.
10. Label specimen.	Prompt labeling is essential to ensure correct specimen identification.
11. Remove gloves and sanitize hands.	Proper glove removal and hand decontamination prevents the spread of infection.
12. Arrange transport or deliver to the laboratory as soon as possible.	Timely processing is necessary to prevent over growth of normal flora.

proper department. However, with more biopsies being performed in outpatient situations, a phlebotomist in specimen processing may encounter specimens that have not yet been put into the proper solution. It is important for the phlebotomist to check the procedure manual to determine the proper handling for any unfamiliar specimen. (For example, tissues for genetic analysis should *not* be put in formalin.) Improper handling can ruin a specimen from a procedure that is, in all probability, expensive, uncomfortable for the patient, and not easily repeated.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. Additional information typically required on a nonblood specimen label includes the:

a. billing code.
b. party to be charged.
c. physician.
d. specimen type.

2. Which type of urine specimen is used to detect UTI?

a. 2-hour
b. 24-hour
c. Clean catch
d. Midstream

3. **Which of the following statements describes proper 24-hour urine collection?**
   a. Collect the first morning specimen, start the timing, and collect all urine for the next 24 hours except the first specimen voided the following morning.
   b. Collect the first morning specimen, start the timing, and collect all urine for the next 24 hours including the first specimen voided the following morning.
   c. Discard the first morning specimen, start the timing, and collect all urine for the next 24 hours except the first specimen voided the following morning.
   d. Discard the first morning specimen, start the timing, and collect all urine for the next 24 hours including the first specimen voided the following morning.

4. **Which nonblood specimen is most frequently analyzed in the lab?**
   a. CSF
   b. Pleural fluid
   c. Synovial fluid
   d. Urine

5. **Which of the following fluids is associated with the lungs?**
   a. Gastric
   b. Peritoneal
   c. Pleural
   d. Synovial

6. **A procedure called iontophoresis is used in the collection of what specimen?**
   a. CSF
   b. Saliva
   c. Sweat
   d. Synovial fluid

7. **Saliva specimens can be used to detect:**
   a. alcohol.
   b. drugs.
   c. hormones.
   d. all of the above.

8. **Which test typically requires a refrigerated stool specimen?**
   a. Fecal fat
   b. Guaiac
   c. Occult blood
   d. Ova and parasites

9. **A breath test can be used to detect organisms that cause:**
   a. meningitis.
   b. peptic ulcers.
   c. tuberculosis.
   d. whooping cough.

10. **Which of the following is a type of serous fluid?**
    a. Amniotic fluid
    b. Pleural fluid
    c. Spinal fluid
    d. Synovial fluid

Case Study

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 13-1 *24-Hour Urine Specimen Collection*

A patient arrives at an outpatient lab with a 24-hour urine specimen. The specimen container is properly labeled and appears to hold a normal volume of urine. In speaking with the patient, however, the phlebotomist learns that the patient did not include the final morning specimen because he woke up several hours past the 24-hour collection deadline.

QUESTIONS

1. *Should the phlebotomist accept the specimen? Why or why not?*
2. *Should the specimen have been accepted if the patient had included the specimen that was several hours late? Why or why not?*
3. *What can be done to ensure that future 24-hour collections are handled properly?*

You've finished the chapter. Time for some fun. Check out the crossword in the WORKBOOK.

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

Bishop M, Fody P, Schoeff L. *Clinical Chemistry,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.

Burtis C, Ashwood E, Bruns D. *Tietz Fundamentals of Clinical Chemistry,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, GP-33-P. *Accuracy in Patient and Sample Identification. Proposed Guideline.* Wayne, PA: CLSI; May 2009.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, H56A. *Body Fluids Analysis for Cellular Composition: Approved Guideline Urinalysis,* vol. 26, no. 26. Wayne, PA: CLSI; June 2006.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, C-34-A3. *Sweat Testing: Sample Collection and Quantitative Chloride Analysis, Approved Guideline,* 3rd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI; December 2009.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, C-34-A3. *Toxicology and Drug Testing in the Clinical Laboratory; Approved Guideline,* 2nd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI; April 2007.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, GP16-A3. *Urinalysis, Approved Guideline,* 3rd ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI; February 2009.
Craven RE, Hirnle CJ. *Fundamentals of Nursing: Human Health and Function,* 5th ed. Phildelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2007.
Fischbach F, Dunning M. *A Manual of Laboratory & Diagnostic Tests,* 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.
Koneman E, Allen S, Janda W, et al. *Color Atlas and Textbook of Diagnostic Microbiology,* 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2005.
Mosby's Medical Dictionary. St. Louis: Elsevier; 2009.
Poutanen S. *Clostridium difficile*–associated diarrhea in adults. *CMAJ* 2004;171(1):51–58.
Stedman's Medical Dictionary for the Health Professions and Nursing, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2008.
Turgeon M. *Linne & Ringsrud's Clinical Laboratory Science: The Basics and Routine Techniques,* 5th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2006.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Videos:
  - Rapid Detection of Strep
  - Routine Urinalysis
  - Throat Swab Collection
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **Center for Phlebotomy Education:** http://www.phlebotomy.com/
- **Clinical Laboratory Science Internet Resources Website:** http://loucaru.tripod.com/index-5.html#Phlebotomy
- **LabCorp (Laboratory Corporation of America):** https://www.labcorp.com/wps/portal/provider/testmenu/

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials,* 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review,* 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

CHAPTER

14

Arterial Puncture Procedures

KEY TERMS

Do the Matching exercises in the WORKBOOK to gain familiarity with these terms.

abducted	brachial artery	L/M
ABGs	collateral circulation	radial artery
Allen test	femoral artery	steady state
arteriospasm	FiO_2	ulnar artery

OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this chapter, the reader should be able to:

1. Define the key terms and abbreviations listed at the beginning of this chapter.
2. State the primary reason for performing arterial punctures and identify the personnel who may be required to perform them.
3. Explain the purpose of collecting arterial blood gas (ABG) specimens and identify and describe commonly measured ABG parameters.
4. Identify the sites that can be used for arterial puncture, the criteria used for selection of the site, and the advantages and disadvantages of each site.
5. List equipment and supplies needed for arterial puncture.
6. Identify typical required and supplemental requisition information and describe patient assessment and preparation procedures, including the administration of local anesthetic, prior to drawing arterial blood gas specimens.
7. Explain the purpose of the modified Allen test, describe how it is performed, define what constitutes a positive or negative result, and give the procedure to follow for either result.
8. Describe the procedure for collecting radial arterial blood gas specimens and the role of the phlebotomist in other site collections.
9. List hazards and complications of arterial puncture, identify sampling errors that may affect the integrity of an arterial specimen, and describe the criteria for specimen rejection.

OVERVIEW

Arterial puncture is technically difficult and potentially more painful and hazardous than venipuncture. Consequently, arterial specimens are *not* normally used for routine blood tests, even though arterial blood composition is more consistent throughout the body than venous, which varies relative to the metabolic needs of the area it serves. The primary reason for arterial puncture is to obtain blood for arterial blood gas (ABG) tests, which evaluate respiratory function. Arterial blood is the best specimen for evaluating respiratory function because of its normally high oxygen content and consistency of composition. Capillary blood, which is similar to arterial blood in composition provided that the puncture site is warmed prior to specimen collection, is sometimes used to test blood gases in infants (see Chapter 10).

Those who collect ABG specimens must have a thorough understanding of all aspects of collection in order to ensure accurate results and the safety of the patient. This chapter addresses advantages and disadvantages of using various arterial puncture sites, radial ABG procedures, ABG analytes, and arterial puncture hazards, complications, sampling errors, and specimen rejection criteria.

In addition to direct puncture of an artery, ABG specimens can be collected from an indwelling arterial line using a needle-less blood sampling device such as the VAMP (see Chapter 9, Fig. 9-5) by personnel trained to do so.

ABGs

ABG evaluation is used in the diagnosis and management of respiratory disorders such as lung disease to provide information about a patient's oxygenation, ventilation (air entering and leaving the lungs), and acid–base balance and in the management of electrolyte and acid–base balance in patients with diabetes and other metabolic disorders. ABG specimens are very sensitive to the effects of preanalytical errors; therefore accurate patient assessment and proper specimen collection and handling are necessary to ensure accurate results.

KEY POINT For accurate results, an ABG specimen must not be exposed to air. Consequently, the specimen must be collected in an anaerobic manner, which must be maintained throughout the collection, handling, and testing process.

Most ABG testing instruments directly measure hydrogen ion activity (pH), partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($PaCO_2$), and partial pressure of oxygen (PaO_2). Other clinically useful analytes that may be measured include total hemoglobin (tHb), oxyhemoglobin saturation (O_2Hb), and saturation of abnormal hemoglobins such as carboxyhemoglobin (COHb) and methemoglobin (metHb). Values for plasma bicarbonate (HCO_3), base excess (or deficit), and oxygen (O_2) saturation can be determined by calculation.

Test yourself on these ranges with a WORKBOOK exercise.

See Table 14-1 for descriptions and normal ranges of commonly measured ABG analytes. Many instruments also measure other critical care analytes such as sodium, potassium, chloride, ionized calcium, and glucose on the same specimen.

Some references use the abbreviations PO_2 and PCO_2 instead of PaO_2 and $PaCO_2$. Although these abbreviations are interchangeable, the latter two are more specific, as they refer to the partial pressure of these gases in arterial blood.

TABLE 14-1 Commonly Measured Arterial Blood Gas (ABG) Analytes

Analyte	Normal Range	Description
pH	7.35–7.45	A measure of the acidity or alkalinity of the blood; used to identify a condition such as acidosis or alkalosis.
PaO_2	80–100 mm Hg	Partial pressure of oxygen in arterial blood. A measure of how much oxygen is dissolved in the blood. Indicates if ventilation is adequate. Decreased oxygen levels in the blood increase the respiration rate and vice versa.
$PaCO_2$	35–45 mm Hg	Partial pressure of carbon dioxide in arterial blood. A measure of how much carbon dioxide is dissolved in the blood. Evaluates lung function. Increased CO_2 levels in the blood increase the respiratory rate and vice versa. *Respiratory* disturbances alter $PaCO_2$ levels.
HCO_3	22–26 mEq/L	Bicarbonate. A measure of the amount of bicarbonate in the blood. Evaluates the bicarbonate buffer system of the kidneys. *Metabolic* and *respiratory* disturbances alter HCO_3 levels.
O_2 saturation	97%–100%	Oxygen saturation. The percent of oxygen bound to hemoglobin. Determines if hemoglobin is carrying the amount of oxygen it is capable of carrying.
Base excess (or deficit)	(−2)–(+2) mEq/L	A calculation of the nonrespiratory part of acid–base balance based on the $PaCO_2$, HCO_3, and hemoglobin.

Personnel Who Perform Arterial Puncture

Paramedical personnel (healthcare workers other than physicians) who may be required to perform arterial puncture include nurses, medical technologists and technicians, respiratory therapists, emergency medical technicians, and level II phlebotomists. Phlebotomists who collect arterial specimens must have extensive training involving theory, demonstration of technique, observation of the actual procedure, and performance of arterial puncture with supervision before performing arterial punctures on their own. Personnel who perform ABG testing are designated level I or level II depending on their formal education, training, and experience. Level II personnel supervise level 1 personnel and perform testing as well. For quality assurance purposes, individuals performing arterial puncture must undergo periodic evaluation. Those who do not meet acceptable standards must have remedial instruction and be re-evaluated before being allowed to collect arterial specimens independently.

Site-Selection Criteria

Several different sites can be used for arterial puncture. The criteria for site selection include:

- Presence of **collateral circulation,** which means that the site is supplied with blood from more than one artery, so that circulation can be maintained if one vessel is obstructed or damaged. Collateral circulation is the primary site-selection criterion. It can be evaluated using a portable ultrasound instrument (Fig. 14-1) or by performing a simple test called the modified Allen test.
- Artery accessibility and size. The more accessible and larger an artery is, the easier it is to palpate and puncture.

Figure 14-1 Sonosite M-Turbo® point-of-care ultrasound system displaying a brachial artery imaged with a high-frequency linear transducer. (Product photographs reprinted with permission from SonoSite; Sonosite M-Turbo® is a trademark owned by Sonosite, Inc.)

- Type of tissue surrounding the puncture site. The chosen artery should be in an area that poses little risk of injuring adjacent structures or tissue during puncture, helps fix or secure the artery to keep it from rolling, and allows adequate pressure to be applied to the artery after specimen collection.
- Absence of inflammation, irritation, edema, hematoma, lesion or a wound, an arteriovenous (AV) shunt in close proximity, or a recent arterial puncture at the site.

CAUTION: *Never* select a site in a limb with an AV shunt or fistula. It is a patient's lifeline for dialysis and should not be disturbed; also, venous and arterial blood mix together at the site.

Arterial Puncture Sites

See the arm labeling exercise in WORKBOOK Labeling Exercise 14-1.

THE RADIAL ARTERY

The first choice and most commonly used site for arterial puncture is the **radial artery,** located on the thumb side of the wrist (Fig. 14-2). Although smaller than arteries at other sites, it is easily accessible in most patients.

FYI *The radial pulse can be felt on the thumb side of the wrist approximately 1 inch above the wrist crease.*

Advantages

There are numerous advantages to using the radial artery to collect ABGs and other arterial specimens. For example:

- The biggest advantage of using the radial artery is the presence of good collateral circulation. Under normal circumstances, both the radial artery and the **ulnar artery** (see Fig. 14-2) supply the hand with blood. If the radial artery were accidentally damaged as a result of an arterial puncture, the ulnar artery would still supply the hand with blood. Consequently the ulnar artery is normally off limits for arterial specimen collection.

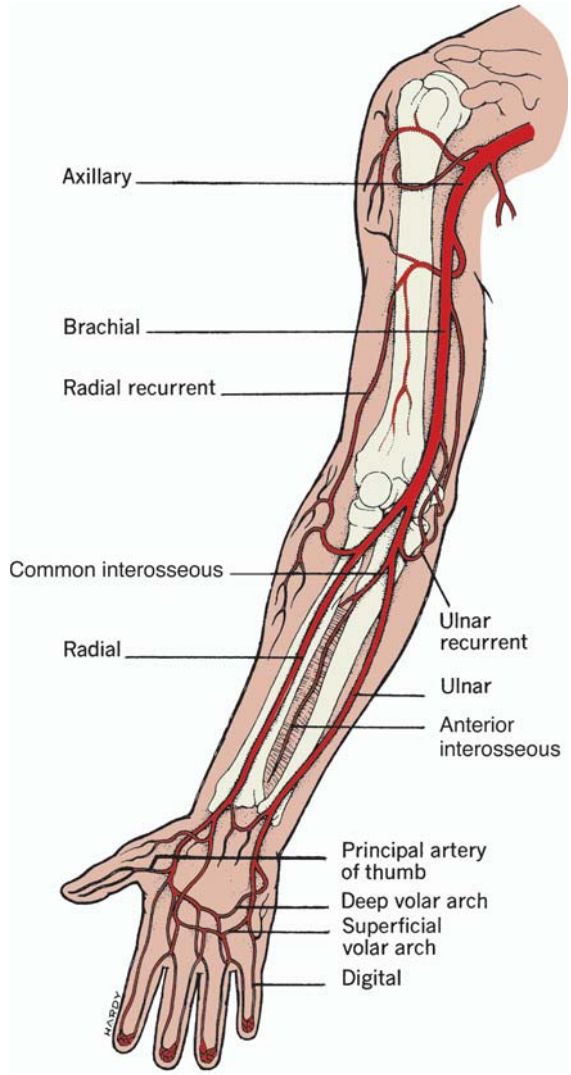


Figure 14-2 Arteries of the arm and hand.

KEY POINT Adequate circulation via the ulnar artery must be verified before puncturing the radial artery. If ulnar blood flow is weak or absent, the radial artery should not be punctured.

- It is generally easy to palpate because it lies fairly close to the surface of the skin.
- There is less chance of hematoma formation following specimen collection because it can easily be compressed over the ligaments and bones of the wrist.
- There is a reduced risk of accidentally puncturing a vein or damaging a nerve because no major veins or nerves are immediately adjacent to the radial artery.

The radial artery is named after the radial bone in the lateral aspect (thumb side) of the lower arm, and the ulnar artery is named after the ulna, the large bone in the lower arm on the side opposite the thumb.

Disadvantages

Disadvantages of using the radial artery for collecting ABG and other arterial specimens include:

- Considerable skill is required to puncture it successfully because of its small size.
- It may be difficult or impossible to locate on patients with hypovolemia (decreased blood volume) or low cardiac output.

THE BRACHIAL ARTERY

The **brachial artery** (Fig. 14-2) is the second choice for arterial puncture. It is located in the medial anterior aspect of the antecubital fossa near the attachment of the biceps muscle.

The brachial pulse can be felt just above the bend of the elbow on the inside of the arm approximately in line with the ring finger.

Advantages

Advantages of using the brachial artery to collect ABGs and other arterial specimens include:

- It is large and relatively easy to palpate and puncture.
- It is sometimes the preferred artery if a large volume of blood must be collected.
- It has adequate collateral circulation, although not as much as the radial artery.

Disadvantages

Disadvantages of using the brachial artery to collect ABGs and other arterial specimens include:

- It is deeper and can be harder to palpate than the radial artery.
- It lies close to the basilic vein, which could result in obtaining a venous sample by mistake.
- It also lies close to the median nerve, which, if accidentally hit by the needle, could cause the patient to experience extreme discomfort and possible nerve damage.
- Unlike the radial artery, there are no underlying ligaments or bone to support compression of the brachial artery, resulting in an increased risk of hematoma formation following the procedure. A hematoma in this area can cause compression injuries to the brachial artery and the median nerve.

Memory Jogger **The median cutaneous nerve lies medial to the brachial artery, which lies medial to the biceps tendon. The order from lateral to medial can be remembered by the mnemonic TAN, where T stands for tendon, A for artery, and N for nerve.**

KEY POINT According to CLSI, the brachial artery in children, especially infants, is not commonly used because it is harder to palpate and lacks collateral circulation.

See the leg labeling exercise in the WORKBOOK.

THE FEMORAL ARTERY

The **femoral artery** (Fig. 14-3) is the largest artery used for arterial puncture. It is located superficially in the groin, lateral to the pubic bone. Femoral puncture is performed primarily by physicians and specially trained emergency room personnel and is generally used only in emergency situations or when no other site is available.

Advantages

Advantages of using the femoral artery to collect ABGs and other arterial specimens include:

- It is large and easily palpated and punctured.
- It is sometimes the only site where arterial sampling is possible, especially on patients who are hypovolemic or have low cardiac output or during cardiac resuscitation.

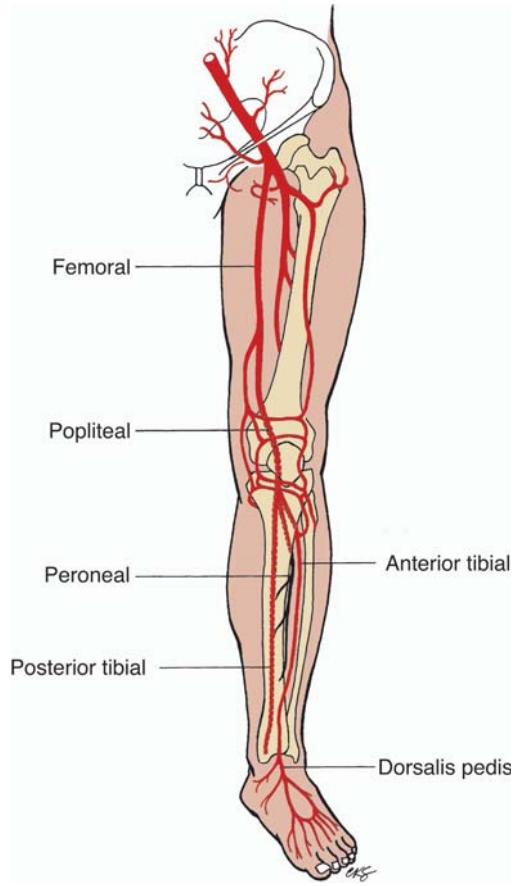


Figure 14-3 Arteries of the leg.

Disadvantages

Disadvantages of using the femoral artery to collect ABGs and other arterial specimens include:

- It has poor collateral circulation.
- It lies close to the femoral vein, which may be inadvertently punctured and result in the collection of a venous specimen instead of an arterial one.
- There is increased risk of infection and difficulty in achieving aseptic technique because of its location and the presence of pubic hair.
- There is the possibility of dislodging plaque buildup from the inner artery walls of older patients.
- The femoral artery requires extended monitoring for hematoma formation or hemorrhage after puncture.

OTHER SITES

Other sites where arterial specimens may be obtained include the scalp and umbilical arteries in infants and the dorsalis pedis arteries in adults. The phlebotomist is not normally trained to perform arterial punctures at these locations or to obtain specimens from cannulas, catheters, or other indwelling devices at these or any other locations.

ABG Specimen Collection

TEST REQUISITION

As with any other test, a physician's order is needed before ABG specimens are collected. In addition to normal patient identification information, specific information concerning conditions at

BOX 14-1 TYPICAL ABG REQUISITION INFORMATION

Required Information

- Patient's full name
- Medical record or identification number
- Age or date of birth
- Room number or other patient location
- Date and time of test collection
- Fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2) or flow rate in liters per minute (L/M)
- Body temperature
- Respiration rate
- Clinical indication for specimen collection (e.g., FiO_2 or mechanical ventilation change)
- Blood drawer's initials
- Requesting physician's name

Supplemental Information as Required by Institutional Policy or Regulatory Agencies

- Ventilation status (i.e., breathing spontaneously or mechanically supported)
- Method of ventilation (i.e., pressure support) or delivery (i.e., cannula or mask)
- Sampling site and type of procedure (i.e., arterial or capillary puncture or indwelling catheter)
- Patient activity and position
- Working diagnosis or ICD code

the time of collection—such as current body temperature, respiratory rate, ventilation status, and **fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO_2)**, which for room air is 0.21, or prescribed flow rate in **liters per minute (L/M)**—must be documented on the test requisition for meaningful interpretation of results. Required requisition information may vary according to regulatory requirements and institutional policy. Typical ABG requisition information is listed in Box 14-1.

EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

Personal Protective Equipment

Personal protective equipment (PPE) needed by the blood drawer when collecting arterial specimens includes a fluid-resistant lab coat, gown, or apron; gloves; and face protection because of the possibility of blood spray during arterial puncture.

Specimen Collection Equipment and Supplies

ABG specimen collection equipment (Fig. 14-4) includes a safety needle, special heparinized syringe, and cap or other device to plug or cover the syringe after specimen collection so as to maintain anaerobic conditions.

KEY POINT Needles for radial ABG collection are typically 22-gauge or smaller, as larger-diameter needles may be too large to access the artery. Although smaller needles (e.g., 25-gauge) lessen pain and the likelihood of **arteriospasm** and hematoma, they can increase the chance of producing bubbles during the draw and specimen hemolysis.

ABG syringes typically contain special filters that vent residual air and seal upon contact with blood, or they may have air bubble removal caps that provide a safe way to remove bubbles from the specimen. ABG equipment is commonly available in sterile prepackaged kits that contain a heparinized syringe, capping device, and safety needle. ABG collection equipment and supplies are listed in Box 14-2.

Figure 14-4 ABG equipment.

BOX 14-2 ABG COLLECTION EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

- **Antiseptic** such as isopropanol or chlorhexidine sponges or pads for site cleaning
- **Local anesthetic** to numb the site (optional); 1% lidocaine without epinephrine is recommended.
- **1- or 2-mL plastic syringe** with a 25- or 26-gauge ½- to ⅝-inch-long needle for administration of anesthetic solution (optional). Either the syringe or the needle should contain a safety device to prevent accidental needlesticks.
- **Sharp, short-bevel hypodermic needle** in 20- to 23-gauge or 25-gauge and ⅝ to 1½ inches in length, depending on the collection site, the size of the artery, and the amount of blood needed. Typically, a 22-gauge 1-inch needle is used for radial and brachial puncture and a 22-gauge 1½-inch needle for femoral puncture. The needle should have a safety feature to prevent accidental needlesticks or be used with a safety syringe or other collection device with a safety feature.
- **Special glass or plastic 1- to 5-mL self-filling syringe** or other collection device (prefilled with the appropriate amount and type of lyophilized heparin salt) selected according to the type of tests ordered, the method of analysis, and the amount of blood required. The syringe or other collection device should contain a safety feature to prevent accidental needlesticks or be used with a safety needle.
- **Luer-tip normal or bubble removal cap** or other suitable device to cover the end of the syringe after needle removal to maintain anaerobic conditions within the specimen.
- (When applicable**) Coolant** capable of maintaining the specimen at a temperature between 1°C and 5°C to slow the metabolism of white blood cells, which consume oxygen. (A container of crushed ice and water large enough to completely submerge the syringe barrel is typically used.)
- **2- by 2-inch gauze squares** or pads to hold pressure over the site until bleeding has stopped.
- **Self-adhering gauze bandage** to wrap the site after collection.
- **Identification and labeling materials** such as waterproof labels and indelible ink pens or markers.
- **Puncture-resistant sharps container** to dispose of used needles and syringes.

ABG specimens are collected in syringes rather than tubes because evacuated tube pressure can affect test results.

PATIENT PREPARATION

Identification and Explanation of Procedures

The blood drawer must properly identify the patient (see Chapter 8), explain the procedure, and obtain the patient's consent. The patient must be treated in a pleasant, professional, and reassuring manner to minimize apprehension or anxiety. Anxiety can lead to hyperventilation, breath-holding, or crying, which can compromise test results by lowering $PaCO_2$ and increasing pH.

KEY POINT The patient's anxiety can usually be minimized if the blood drawer is well organized and proceeds without delay.

Patient Preparation and Assessment

The patient must be relaxed and in a comfortable position. He or she should be lying in bed or seated comfortably in a chair for a minimum of 5 minutes or until breathing has stabilized. (Outpatients may take longer to stabilize.) Required collection conditions must be verified and documented on the requisition per institution policy. In addition, it should be determined whether or not the patient is on anticoagulant therapy. If an anesthetic is to be used, it should be confirmed that the patient is not allergic to it.

Steady State

Current body temperature, breathing pattern, and the concentration of oxygen inhaled affect the amount of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood. Consequently a patient should have been in a stable or **steady state** (i.e., no exercise, suctioning, or respirator changes) for at least 20 to 30 minutes before the blood gas specimen is obtained. This is especially important for patients with abnormal respiratory function, such as those with chronic lung disease. With the exception of certain emergency situations, ABG collection should not be performed until a steady state that meets required collection conditions has been achieved.

Do WORKBOOK Skills Drill 14-3 to reinforce your mastery of the steps of the Allen test procedure.

Modified Allen Test

It must be determined that the patient has collateral circulation before arterial puncture is performed. The modified **Allen test** is an easy way to assess collateral circulation before collecting a blood specimen from the radial artery. It is performed without the use of special equipment. If the test result is positive, arterial puncture can be performed on the radial artery. If the result is negative, arterial puncture should not be performed on that arm and the patient's nurse or physician should be notified of the problem. The procedure for the modified Allen test is described in Procedure 14-1.

Administration of Local Anesthetic

The advent of improved thin-walled needles has made the routine administration of anesthetic (a drug that dulls pain by causing loss of sensation) prior to arterial puncture unnecessary. However, it may be a reassuring option for some patients, especially children, who are fearful of the procedure. A fearful patient may respond by breath-holding, crying, or hyperventilating, all of which may affect blood gas results. In addition to minimizing or preventing such patient reactions, local anesthesia may also prevent vasoconstriction. The recommended local anesthetic for ABG collection is 1% lidocaine without epinephrine; however, it may cause prolonged bleeding in patients on anticoagulant therapy. Consequently a physician's order is generally required before anesthetic is used. The procedure for preparing and administering local anesthetic is described in Procedure 14-2.

Check out the Performing the Modified Allen Test video at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e.

PROCEDURE 14-1 Modified Allen Test

PURPOSE: To assess collateral circulation through the ulnar artery

EQUIPMENT: None

Step	Rationale/Explanation
1. Have the patient make a tight fist.	A tight fist partially blocks blood flow, causing temporary blanching until the hand is opened.
2. Use the middle and index fingers of both hands to apply pressure to the patient's wrist, compressing both the radial and ulnar arteries at the same time.	Pressure over both arteries is needed to obstruct blood flow, which is required to be able to assess blood return when pressure is released. Note: If the patient is unable to make a fist, the hand can be held above heart level for 30 to 60 seconds during steps 2 and 3.
3. While maintaining pressure, have the patient open the hand slowly. It should appear blanched or drained of color.	Blanched appearance of the hand verifies temporary blockage of both arteries. Note: The patient must not hyperextend the fingers when opening the hand, as this can cause decreased blood flow and misinterpretation of results.
4. Lower the patient's hand and release pressure on the ulnar artery only.	The ulnar artery is released while the radial is still obstructed to determine if it will be able to provide blood flow should the radial artery be injured during ABG collection.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 14-1 Modified Allen Test (Continued)

Step	Rationale/Explanation
5. Assess Results:	
Positive Allen test result: The hand flushes pink or returns to normal color within 15 seconds.	A positive test result indicates return of blood to the hand via the ulnar artery and the presence of collateral circulation. If the Allen test result is positive, proceed with ABG collection.
Negative Allen test result: The hand *does not* flush pink or return to normal color within 15 seconds.	A negative test result indicates inability of the ulnar artery to adequately supply blood to the hand and therefore the absence of collateral circulation. If the Allen test result is negative, the radial artery should not be used and another site must be selected.
6. Record results on the requisition.	Verification that the Allen test was performed.

PROCEDURE 14-2 Preparing and Administering Local Anesthetic

PURPOSE: Preparing and administering local anesthetic prior to arterial puncture

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, 25- to 26-gauge needle,* 1-mL syringe,* 1% epinephrine-free lidocaine, alcohol wipes, sharps container

*Either the needle or tube holder must have a safety feature to prevent needlesticks.

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Verify absence of allergy to anesthetic or its derivatives.	Allergy to lidocaine or its derivatives can cause a life-threatening reaction.
2. Sanitize hands and put on gloves.	Hand hygiene aids in infection control. Gloves provide a barrier to bloodborne pathogen exposure.
3. Attach the needle to the syringe.	A safety needle (or syringe with a safety device) must be used to reduce the chance of accidental needlestick.
4. Clean the stopper of the anesthetic bottle with an isopropyl alcohol wipe.	The stopper must be cleaned with an antiseptic to prevent contamination.

PROCEDURE 14-2 Preparing and Administering Local Anesthetic (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
5. Insert the needle through the bottle stopper and withdraw anesthetic.	0.25 to 0.5 mL of lidocaine is adequate for most adult applications.
6. Carefully replace the needle cap and leave the syringe in a horizontal position.	Protects sterility of the needle and prevents contamination and leakage of the anesthetic.
7. Clean and air-dry the site.	Cleaning the site with antiseptic helps avoid contaminating the patient with skin-surface bacteria picked up during needle entry. Letting the site dry naturally permits maximal antiseptic action, prevents contamination caused by wiping, and avoids stinging on needle entry from residual alcohol.
8. Insert the needle of the anesthetic syringe into the skin over the proposed arterial puncture site at an angle of approximately 10 degrees.	The anesthetic must be injected directly over the puncture site for optimal effect.
9. Pull back slightly on the plunger.	Verifies that a vein was not inadvertently penetrated. (If blood appears in the syringe, withdraw the needle, discard both needle and syringe, prepare a fresh needle and syringe, and repeat the procedure in a slightly different spot.)
10. Slowly expel the contents into the skin, forming a raised wheal.	Appearance of the wheal verifies proper application of the anesthetic.
11. Wait 1 to 2 minutes before proceeding with arterial puncture.	It takes 1 to 2 minutes for the anesthetic to take full effect. (The anesthetic wears off in 15 to 20 minutes.)
12. Note anesthetic application on the requisition.	Use of anesthetic must be documented on the requisition.

CAUTION: Some individuals are allergic to lidocaine and its derivatives, so the absence of allergy must be determined before it is used.

RADIAL ABG PROCEDURE

Puncture of the radial artery can be performed only if it is determined that there is collateral circulation provided by the ulnar artery and the site meets other selection criteria previously described. The major points of radial ABG procedure are explained as follows:

Position the Arm

Position the patient's arm out to the side, away from the body (**abducted**) with the palm facing up and the wrist supported. (A rolled towel placed under the wrist is typically used to provide support.) Ask the patient to extend the wrist at approximately a 30-degree angle to stretch and fix the tissue over the ligaments and bone of the wrist.

Locate the Artery

Use the index finger of your nondominant hand to locate the radial artery pulse proximal to the skin crease on the thumb side of the wrist. Palpate the artery to determine its size, direction, and depth.

CAUTION: *Never* use the thumb to palpate, as it has a pulse that can be misleading.

Clean the Site

Prepare the site by cleaning with alcohol or another suitable antiseptic. Allow the site to air dry, being careful not to touch it with any unsterile object.

Prepare Equipment

Attach the safety needle to the syringe if not preassembled and set the syringe plunger to the proper fill level if applicable. Put on gloves if they were not put on in step 6 and clean the gloved nondominant finger so that it does not contaminate the site when relocating the pulse before needle entry.

Insert the Needle

Pick up and hold the syringe or collection device in your dominant hand as if you were holding a dart. Uncap and inspect the needle for defects. (Discard and replace it if flawed.) Relocate the artery by placing the index finger of the opposite hand directly over the pulse. Warn the patient of imminent puncture and ask him or her to relax the wrist as much as possible while maintaining its extended position. Direct the needle away from the hand, facing into the arterial blood flow, and insert it bevel-up into the skin at a 30- to 45-degree angle (femoral puncture requires a 90-degree angle) approximately 5 to 10 millimeters distal to the index finger that is locating the pulse.

Advance the Needle into the Artery

Slowly advance the needle, directing it toward the pulse beneath the index finger. When the artery is pierced, a "flash" of blood will appear in the needle hub. When the flash appears, stop advancing the needle. Do not pull back on the syringe plunger. The blood will pump, or pulse, into the syringe under its own power unless a needle smaller than 23-gauge is used, in which case a gentle pull on the plunger may be required. Hold the syringe very steady until the desired amount of blood is collected. If the artery is missed, slowly withdraw the needle until the bevel is just under the skin before redirecting the needle into the artery.

CAUTION: *Do not* probe. Probing is painful and can cause hematoma or thrombus formation or damage the artery.

Withdraw the Needle and Apply Pressure

When the desired amount of blood has been obtained, withdraw the needle, immediately place a folded clean and dry gauze square over the site with one hand, and simultaneously activate the needle safety device with the other hand or place the needle in an approved needle removal safety device. Apply firm pressure to the puncture site for a minimum of 3 to 5 minutes. Longer application of pressure is required for patients on anticoagulant therapy.

CAUTION: *Never* allow the patient to apply the pressure. A patient may not apply it firmly enough. In addition, *do not* replace use of manual pressure for the required length of time with the application of a pressure bandage.

Remove Air, Cap Syringe, and Mix Specimen

While applying pressure to the site with one hand, use your free hand to remove the safety needle and discard it in a sharps container. Handle the specimen carefully to avoid introducing

air bubbles into it, as they can affect test results. If any air bubbles are present, immediately eject them from the specimen. If the equipment has an air bubble removal cap, follow manufacturer's instructions. Cap the syringe and gently but thoroughly mix the specimen by inversion or rotation to prevent clot formation. Label the specimen.

Testing with a POCT instrument (e.g., i-STAT®) is performed according to manufacturer's instructions immediately after air bubble removal. Results are typically recorded by the instrument and transmitted to the lab automatically.

Check the Site

After applying pressure for 3 to 5 minutes, check the site. The skin below the site should be normal in color and warm to the touch, with no evidence of bleeding or swelling. If bleeding, swelling, or bruising is noted, reapply pressure for an additional 2 minutes. Repeat this process if necessary until you are certain that bleeding has stopped.

CAUTION: *Never* leave the patient if the site is still bleeding. If bleeding does not stop within a reasonable time, notify the patient's nurse or physician.

If the site appears normal, wait 2 minutes and check it again. Then check the pulse distal to the site. If the pulse is absent or faint or the patient complains of numbness at the site, alert the patient's nurse or physician immediately, because a thrombus may be blocking blood flow. If the site appears normal and the pulse is normal, apply a pressure bandage and make a notation as to when the bandage may be removed.

Wrap-up Procedures

Make certain the specimen has been properly labeled before leaving the patient's bedside. Dispose of used equipment properly. Remove gloves and face protection and wash or decontaminate hands with sanitizer. Thank the patient. If ABG testing has already been performed by POCT instrumentation, verify that the results have been recorded and transmitted to the lab and omit the last step (transportation and handling).

Transportation and Handling

Transport the specimen according to laboratory protocol and deliver to the laboratory ASAP. According to CLSI, blood gas specimens collected in plastic ABG syringes can be transported at room temperature provided that the specimen will be analyzed within 30 minutes. If the patient has an elevated leukocyte or platelet count, the specimen should be analyzed within 5 minutes of collection. If a delay in analysis is expected beyond either of the above limits, the specimen should be collected in a glass syringe and cooled as soon as possible by placing it in ice slurry. Specimens for electrolyte testing in addition to ABG evaluation should not be cooled because cooling affects the diffusion of potassium (an electrolyte) in and out of the cells and makes potassium results unreliable. Such specimens should be transported and tested ASAP. The complete procedure for collection of radial ABGs is shown in Procedure 14-3.

KEY POINT WBCs and platelets in a blood specimen continue to consume oxygen. A high WBC or platelet count means that oxygen will be consumed at a higher rate than in a specimen with a normal WBC or platelet count. The rate of oxygen consumed depends upon handling temperature, length of time involved, and the amount of oxygen in the sample initially. Cooling slows down oxygen consumption by the cells.

PROCEDURE 14-3 Radial ABG Procedure

PURPOSE: To obtain an ABG specimen from the radial artery by syringe

EQUIPMENT: Gloves, antiseptic prep pads, heparinized blood gas syringe, cap and appropriate needle, gauze pads, self-adhesive bandaging material, permanent ink pen, coolant if applicable, sharps container

Step	Explanation/Rationale
1. Review and accession test request.	The requisition must be reviewed for completeness of information (see Chapter 8: "Venipuncture Procedure," step 1) and required collection conditions, such as oxygen delivery system, and FiO_2 or L/M.
2. Approach, identify, and prepare patient.	Correct approach to the patient, identification, and preparation are essential. (See Chapter 8: "Venipuncture Procedure," step 2.) Preparing the patient by explaining the procedure in a calm and reassuring manner encourages cooperation and reduces apprehension. (Hyperventilation due to anxiety, breath-holding, or crying can alter test results).
3. Check for sensitivities to latex and other substances.	Increasing numbers of individuals are allergic to latex, antiseptics, and other substances.
4. Assess steady state, verify collection requirements, and record required information.	Required collection conditions must be met and must not have changed for 20 to 30 minutes prior to collection. Test results can be meaningless or misinterpreted and patient care compromised if they have not been met. The patient's temperature, respiratory rate, and FiO_2 affect blood gas results and must be recorded along with other required information.
5. Sanitize hands and put on gloves.	Proper hand hygiene plays a major role in infection control, protecting the phlebotomist, patient, and others from contamination. Gloves provide a barrier to blood-borne pathogen exposure. Gloves may be put on at this point or later, depending on hospital protocol.
6. Assess collateral circulation.	Collateral circulation must be verified by either the modified Allen test, an ultrasonic flow indicator, or both. Proceed if result is positive; choose another site if negative.
7. Position arm and ask patient to extend wrist.	The arm should be abducted, with the palm up and the wrist extended approximately 30 degrees to stretch and fix the soft tissues over the firm ligaments and bone. (Avoid hyperextension, as it can eliminate a palpable pulse.)

PROCEDURE 14-3 Radial ABG Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
8. Locate the radial artery and clean the site.	The index finger is used to locate the radial pulse proximal to the skin crease on the thumb side of the wrist; palpate it to determine size, depth, and direction. An arterial puncture site is typically cleaned with alcohol or other suitable antiseptic and must not be touched again until the phlebotomist is ready to access the artery.
9. Administer local anesthetic (optional).	(See Procedure 14-2) Document anesthetic application on the requisition.
10. Prepare equipment and clean gloved nondominant finger.	Assemble ABG equipment and set the syringe plunger to the proper fill level if applicable. Gloves must be put on at this point if this has not already done, and the nondominant finger cleaned so that it does not contaminate the site when relocating the pulse before needle entry.
11. Pick up equipment and uncap and inspect needle.	The syringe is held in the dominant hand as if holding a dart. The needle must be inspected for defects and replaced if any are found.
12. Relocate radial artery and warn patient of imminent puncture.	The artery is relocated by placing the nondominant index finger directly over the pulse. The patient is warned to prevent a startle reflex and asked to relax the wrist to ensure smooth needle entry.
13. Insert the needle at a 30- to 45-degree angle, slowly direct it toward the pulse, and stop when a flash of blood appears.	A needle inserted at a 30- to 45-degree angle, 5 to 10 millimeters distal to the finger that is over the pulse; it should contact the artery directly under that finger. When the artery is entered, a flash of blood normally appears in the needle hub or syringe. Note: If a needle smaller than 23-gauge is used, it may be necessary to pull gently on the syringe plunger to obtain blood flow.
14. Allow the syringe to fill to proper level.	Blood will normally fill the syringe under its own power, which is an indication that the specimen is indeed arterial blood (see exception in step 13).
15. Place gauze, remove needle, activate safety feature, and apply pressure.	A clean folded gauze square is placed over the site so firm manual pressure can be applied by the phlebotomist immediately upon needle removal and for 3 to 5 minutes thereafter. The needle safety device must be activated as soon as possible to prevent an accidental needlestick.
16. Remove and discard syringe needle.	For safety reasons, the specimen must not be transported with the needle attached to the syringe. The needle must be removed and discarded in the sharps container with one hand while site pressure is applied with the other.

(continued)

PROCEDURE 14-3 Radial ABG Procedure (Continued)

Step	Explanation/Rationale
17. Expel air bubbles, cap syringe, mix and label specimen.	Air bubbles in the specimen can affect test results and must be expelled per manufacturer's instructions. The specimen must be capped to maintain anaerobic conditions, mixed thoroughly by inversion or rotating to prevent clotting, labeled with the required information, and if applicable, placed in coolant to protect analytes from the effects of cellular metabolism.
18. Check patient's arm and apply bandage.	The site is checked for swelling or bruising after pressure has been applied for 3 to 5 minutes. If the site is warm and appears normal, pressure is applied for 2 more minutes, after which the pulse is checked distal to the site to confirm normal blood flow. If pulse and site are normal, a pressure bandage is applied and the time at which it should be removed is noted. Note: If the pulse is weak or absent, the patient's nurse or physician must be notified immediately.
19. Dispose of used and contaminated materials, remove gloves, and sanitize hands.	Used and contaminated items must be disposed of per facility protocol. Gloves must be removed and hands sanitized as an infection-control precaution.
20. Thank patient and transport specimen to the lab ASAP.	Thanking the patient is courteous and professional behavior. Prompt delivery of the specimen to the lab protects specimen integrity.

ABG COLLECTION FROM OTHER SITES

Collection of ABGs from brachial, femoral, and other sites is similar to the procedure for radial ABGs. Because phlebotomists are not normally trained to collect specimens from these sites, specific procedures are not given in this text. Phlebotomists may, however, be asked to provide the equipment and assist in labeling and transporting specimens collected from these sites by others (e.g., an emergency room physician).

Hazards and Complications of Arterial Puncture

Quiz yourself on these important points by doing WORKBOOK Knowledge Drill 14-3.

There are hazards and complications associated with arterial puncture, as with any invasive procedure. Most can be avoided with proper technique, while some cannot be avoided. Complications or other adverse events observed by the blood drawer should be documented and reported to the patient's nurse or physician according to facility protocol. Examples of hazards and complications include the following:

ARTERIOSPASM

Pain or irritation caused by needle penetration of the artery muscle and even patient anxiety can cause a reflex (involuntary) contraction of the artery referred to as an **arteriospasm**.

The condition is transitory but may make it difficult to obtain a specimen. To help minimize the chance of arteriospasm, reassure the patient by fully explaining the procedure and its purpose and answering questions to help relieve patient anxiety.

ARTERY DAMAGE

Repeated punctures at the same site can damage the vessel, resulting in swelling, which can lead to partial or complete blockage of the vessel. In rare cases, repeated punctures have led to aneurysm of the artery.

DISCOMFORT

Some discomfort is generally associated with arterial puncture, even with use of a local anesthetic. Usually this is minor and temporary. Extreme pain during arterial puncture may indicate nerve involvement, in which case the procedure should be terminated.

INFECTION

Localized infection can result from improper site preparation, contamination of the site prior to specimen collection, or choosing a site where inflammation or infection is present. Careful site selection, proper antiseptic preparation of the site, and avoiding activities that can contaminate the site prior to specimen collection minimize the chance of infection.

HEMATOMA

Blood is under considerable pressure in arteries and initially more likely to leak from an arterial puncture site than a venipuncture site. Fortunately, arterial puncture sites tend to close more rapidly because of the elastic nature of the arterial wall. The probability of hematoma formation is greatest in older patients, because arterial elasticity normally decreases with age, and in patients receiving anticoagulant therapy. Multiple punctures to a single site also increase the chance of hematoma formation and should be avoided. Proper site selection, precise needle insertion, and adequate pressure applied by the phlebotomist following needle withdrawal are essential to minimize the risk of hematoma formation.

KEY POINT Needle size also plays a role in hematoma formation. The greater the needle diameter, the larger the puncture opening, the greater the chance of leakage, and the greater the need for precise needle insertion.

NUMBNESS

Numbness of the hand or wrist can be a sign of impaired circulation or nerve irritation or damage due to an error in technique, such as improper redirection of the needle when the artery is missed. Numbness must be addressed immediately by alerting the patient's nurse or physician.

THROMBUS FORMATION

Injury to the intima or inner wall of the artery can lead to thrombus or clot formation. A thrombus may grow until it blocks the entire lumen of the artery, obstructing blood flow and impairing circulation. A thrombus can also be the source of an embolus, which may cause a thrombus, clot, or embolism to appear in another area of the body. If thrombus formation is suspected, the patient's nurse or physician must be alerted immediately.

VASOVAGAL RESPONSE

A vasovagal response—faintness or loss of consciousness related to hypotension caused by a nervous system response (increased vagus nerve activity)—or abrupt pain or trauma can

occur during arterial puncture. If a patient feels faint or faints during arterial puncture, remove the needle immediately, activate the safety device, hold pressure over the site, and follow the syncope procedures discussed in Chapter 9.

Sampling Errors

A number of factors can affect the integrity of a blood gas sample and lead to erroneous results. These factors include the following:

AIR BUBBLES

Air bubbles must be immediately and completely expelled from the sample or oxygen from the air bubbles can diffuse into the sample, CO_2 can escape from the sample, and test results can be compromised.

KEY POINT Secure attachment of the needle to the syringe can help minimize the chance of air bubble production.

DELAY IN ANALYSIS

Blood cells continue to metabolize or consume oxygen and nutrients and to produce acids and carbon dioxide in the specimen at room temperature. If the specimen remains at room temperature for more than 30 minutes, the pH, blood gas, and glucose values will not accurately reflect the patient's status. Processing the specimen as soon as possible after it is obtained helps ensure the most accurate results. Optimal time of analysis is within 10 minutes of collection.

IMPROPER MIXING

Inadequate or delayed mixing of the sample can lead to clotting, making the sample unacceptable for testing. Undetected microclots can lead to erroneous results and ABG instrument malfunction.

IMPROPER SYRINGE

Use only syringes especially designed for ABG procedures. The use of regular plastic syringes will lead to erroneous values. Use of commercially available ABG kits can eliminate this source of error.

OBTAINING VENOUS BLOOD BY MISTAKE

Markedly inaccurate ABG values will result if a venous sample is obtained by mistake. Normal arterial blood is bright red in color. Venous blood is a darker bluish-red color. However, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish between arterial and venous blood in poorly ventilated patients because their arterial blood may appear as dark as venous blood. The best way to be certain that a specimen is arterial is if the blood pulses into the syringe. In some instances, such as low cardiac output, a specimen may have to be aspirated. In these cases it is hard to be certain that the specimen is truly arterial.

USE OF IMPROPER ANTICOAGULANT

Heparin is the accepted anticoagulant for blood gas specimens. Oxalates, EDTA, and citrates may alter results, especially pH. Use of commercially available ABG kits, which come with heparinized syringes, eliminates this problem.

BOX 14-3 TYPICAL CRITERIA FOR REJECTION OF ABG SPECIMEN

- Air bubbles in the specimen
- Clotted specimen
- Hemolysis of the specimen (if electrolytes are ordered)
- Improper or absent ID or other labeling requirements
- Improper transportation temperature
- Inadequate volume of specimen for the test (QNS)
- Prolonged delay in delivery to the lab
- Wrong type of syringe used

USE OF TOO MUCH OR TOO LITTLE HEPARIN

Too much heparin in the syringe can result in acidosis of the specimen and cause erroneous results. Too little heparin can result in clotting of the specimen. Use of commercially available kits containing preheparinized syringes can eliminate this source of error.

Criteria for ABG Specimen Rejection

ABG specimens that have been improperly collected, handled, or transported can produce erroneous results that can negatively affect patient care. Consequently specimens with obvious problems will be rejected by laboratory personnel. Examples of typical criteria used to reject ABG specimens for analysis are shown in Box 14-3.

STUDY AND REVIEW QUESTIONS

See the EXAM REVIEW for more study questions.

1. **The primary reason for performing arterial puncture is to:**
   a. determine hemoglobin levels.
   b. evaluate blood gases.
   c. measure potassium levels.
   d. obtain calcium values.

2. **The first-choice location for performing arterial puncture is the:**
   a. brachial artery.
   b. ulnar artery.
   c. femoral artery.
   d. radial artery.

3. **ABG supplies include:**
   a. 18-gauge needles.
   b. heparinized syringes.
   c. tourniquets.
   d. all of the above.

4. **Commonly measured ABG parameters include:**
   a. pH.
   b. $PaCO_2$.
   c. O_2 saturation.
   d. All of the above.

5. **A phlebotomist has a request to collect an ABG specimen while the patient is breathing room air. When the phlebotomist arrives to collect the specimen, the patient is still on a ventilator. What should the phlebotomist do?**
   a. Call the phlebotomy supervisor and ask how to proceed.
   b. Consult with the patient's nurse to determine what to do.
   c. Draw the specimen and note the ventilator setting on the requisition.
   d. Take the patient off the ventilator and draw the specimen.

6. **The purpose of the modified Allen test is to determine:**
   a. blood pressure in the ulnar artery.
   b. if collateral circulation is present.
   c. if the patient is absorbing oxygen.
   d. the clotting time of both arteries.

7. **Which of the following is an acceptable angle of needle insertion for radial ABGs?**
   a. 10 degrees
   b. 20 degrees
   c. 45 degrees
   d. 90 degrees

8. **Which of the following complications are associated with arterial puncture?**
   a. Arteriospasm
   b. Hematoma
   c. Infection
   d. All of the above

9. **Which of the following can cause erroneous ABG values?**
   a. The presence of air bubbles in the specimen
   b. Delay in analysis exceeding 30 minutes
   c. Inadequate mixing results in microclots
   d. All of the above

10. **Which of the following would cause you to suspect that a thrombus had formed in the artery while you were collecting an ABG?**
    a. A hematoma quickly forms at the site.
    b. The patient complains of extreme pain.
    c. The pulse distal to the site is very weak.
    d. All of the above.

Case Studies

Visit the WORKBOOK for more case studies.

CASE STUDY 14-1 *Complications of ABG Collection*

A phlebotomist has a requisition to collect an ABG specimen from a patient in the cardiac care unit (CCU). The phlebotomist identifies the patient and records the required requisition information. The patient has an IV in the left arm in the area of the wrist, so the phlebotomist chooses the right arm. The patient is having difficulty breathing and appears quite restless and agitated. The phlebotomist performs the modified Allen test. The result is positive. The phlebotomist attempts puncture of the radial artery. The patient moves his arm as the needle is inserted and it misses the artery. The phlebotomist redirects the needle several times and finally hits the artery. The blood pulses into the syringe but is dark reddish-blue in color. The phlebotomist completes the draw, removes the needle, holds pressure over the site, and at same time activates the needle safety device, removes the needle, and caps the syringe, being careful not to introduce air bubbles into it. After holding pressure for 5 minutes, the phlebotomist checks the pulse distal to the site. The pulse is barely discernible.

QUESTIONS

1. *What should the phlebotomist do next?*
2. *What might be affecting the pulse?*
3. *How might the patient have contributed to the problem?*
4. *How might the phlebotomist's technique have contributed to the problem?*
5. *Can the phlebotomist be certain that the specimen is arterial?*

Bibliography and Suggested Readings

American Association for Respiratory Care (AARC). *Clinical Practice Guidelines: Blood Gas Analysis and Hemoximetry: 2001 Revision & Update*. Irving, TX: AARC; 2001.

Bishop M, Fody E, Schoeff L. *Clinical Chemistry, Principles, Procedures, Correlations*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2010.

Burtis C, Ashwood E, Bruns D. *Tietz Fundamentals of Clinical Chemistry*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders; 2007.

Mason RJ, Broaddus VC, Murray JF, Nadel JA. *Murray and Nadel's Textbook of Respiratory Medicine*, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2005.

National Committee for Clinical Laboratory Standards, H11-A4. *Procedures for the Collection of Arterial Blood Specimens: Approved Standard*, 4th ed. Wayne, PA: CLSI/NCCLS; September 2004.

Wilkins RL, Stoller JK, Kacmarek RM. *Egan's Fundamentals of Respiratory Care*, 9th ed. St. Louis: Mosby; 2008.

MEDIA MENU

Online Ancillaries (at http://thepoint.lww.com/McCall5e)

- Video: Performing the Modified Allen Test
- Interactive exercises and games, including Look and Label, Word Building, Body Building, Roboterms, Crossword Puzzles, Quiz Show, and Concentration
- Audio flash cards and flash card generator
- Audio glossary

Internet Resources

- **The abg site:** http://www.the-abg-site.com/level1.htm
- **MedlinePlus:** http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/003855.htm

Other Resources

- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Student Workbook for Phlebotomy Essentials*, 5th ed. (available for separate purchase)
- McCall R, Tankersley C. *Phlebotomy Exam Review*, 4th ed. (available for separate purchase)

APPENDIX

A

Laboratory Tests

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Acid-fast bacillus culture (blood)	AFB	8–10 mL whole blood in Bactec® myco F lytic aerobic bottle (or equivalent), yellow-top SPS isolator tube, or green-top tube. Special cleaning for site and tube stopper.	M	Isolates and identifies *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.*
Acid phosphatase	Acid p'tase	Serum: Red-top tube or serum gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge, separate, and freeze serum immediately. Transport frozen.	C	Cancer of the prostate.
Alanine aminotransferase	ALT (SGPT)	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top (heparin) or lavender-top (EDTA) tube. Centrifuge and separate within 45 min of collection.	C	Evaluates hepatic disease.
Alcohol (blood)	ETOH	Serum: Gray sodium fluoride tube (preferred) or red top. Use nonalcohol antiseptic to clean site; do not open tube. Chain of custody required if for legal purposes.	C	Intoxication.
Aldosterone		Serum: Red-top tube; serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Lavender-top (EDTA) tube. Centrifuge, separate, and refrigerate serum. Patient upright and ambulatory 30 min prior to collection (preferred). Note posture at time of collection.	C	Overproduction of this hormone.
Alkaline phosphatase	ALP	Serum (preferred): Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top tube. Centrifuge and separate ASAP. 8- to 12-hr fast required.	C	Liver function.
Alpha-fetoprotein	AFP	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Avoid hemolysis; can be performed on amniotic fluid.	C	Fetal abnormalities, adult hepatic carcinoma, tumor marker.
Aluminum	Al	Serum (preferred): Trace element–free plain royal blue–top tube. Plasma: EDTA or heparin. Do not use gel-barrier tube. Avoid all sources of external contamination.	C	Trace metal contamination, dialysis complication.

(*continued*)

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Ammonia	NH3	Plasma. Lavender-top tube. (Some methods use green, no gel.) Place immediately in ice slurry. Centrifuge within 15 min without removing stopper; separate plasma and freeze in plastic vial.	C	Evaluates liver function. High levels in the blood lead to a problem know as hepatic encephalopathy.
Amylase		Serum: Red-top, serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green or lavender top. Centrifuge, separate, and refrigerate serum or plasma ASAP. Avoid hemolysis and lipemia.	C	Acute pancreatitis.
Antibody screen	Coombs' test, indirect	Whole blood: Pink- or lavender-top EDTA tube; special ID procedure.	I	Identifies any atypical antibodies present.
Antinuclear antibodies (screen or titer)	ANA	Serum: Red-top tube, refrigerate serum. Avoid hemolysis and lipemia.	S	Systemic lupus erythematosus and other autoimmune connective tissue diseases.
Anti-Rh antibody preparation		Serum: Red-top tube. Whole blood: Lavender- or pink-top EDTA tube. Special ID procedure.	I	Administered to Rh-negative mothers to prevent Rh immunization.
Antistreptolysin O test	ASO	Serum: Red-top tube. Perform test immediately or refrigerate or freeze serum.	S	Streptococcal infection.
Antithrombin III activity	AT-III	Plasma: Light blue–top tube. Centrifuge, separate, and immediately freeze plasma in plastic vial. Transport frozen.	CO	Clotting factor deficiency.
Aspartate aminotransferase	AST, GOT, SGOT	Serum (preferred): Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Heparin gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge for complete separation and refrigerate.	C	Acute and chronic liver disease.
Basic metabolic panel	BMP	Plasma (preferred): Green-top tube. Serum: Gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate unopened spun barrier tube. Separate within 45 min of venipuncture. 8- to 12-hr fast required.	C	A designated number of tests covering certain body systems.
Bilirubin, total and direct	Bili	Serum. Serum gel-barrier tube. Wrap in foil to protect from light. Spin and separate within 45 min. Refrigerate.	C	Increased with types of jaundice (i.e., obstructive, hepatic, or hemolytic; hepatitis or cirrhosis).
Blood culture	BC	Whole blood: Inoculate two blood culture bottles or SPS tubes: one anaerobic and one aerobic from two different sites. Do not refrigerate.	M	Isolates and identifies potentially pathogenic organisms causing bacteremia or septicemia.
Blood group & Rh type	ABO & Rh	Whole blood: Dedicated large lavender- or pink-top (EDTA) tube. Special ID procedure; hand label with special band.	I	Detection of ABO and Rh antigens on the red blood cells. Detects atypical antibodies for prenatal screen or crossmatch.

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Calcitonin		Serum: Plain red-top tube; fasting specimen. Allow to clot 1–4 hr in an ice bath or refrigerator. Centrifuge in chilled holder or refrigerated centrifuge, separate, and freeze immediately in plastic vial.	C	Evaluates suspected medullary carcinoma of the thyroid, characterized by hypersecretion of calcitonin.
Calcium, ionized	iCa2.	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top tube, immediately place "do not open" tape over the top. Centrifuge and refrigerate as is. Place a piece of tape over the top of tube and write "Do not open."	C	Bone cancer, nephritis, multiple myeloma.
Carbon monoxide (carboxy-hemoglobin)	CO level	Whole blood: Lavender- or green-top tube. Fill tube to optimum fill level. Refrigerate immediately. Submit original full unopened tube.	C	Carboxyhemoglobin intoxication.
Cancer antigen	Ca 125	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate; freeze if testing is delayed.	C	Tumor marker primarily for ovarian carcinoma.
Carcinoembryonic antigen	CEA	Serum: Red-top or serum gel barrier tube. Plasma: Green gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge, separate, and refrigerate.	C	Monitoring of patients with diagnosed malignancies; malignant or benign liver disease; indicator of tumors.
Carotene, beta	β-carotene	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Transport in amber plastic tube with amber stopper if available. Wrap in aluminum foil to protect from light. Separate ASAP. Freeze and protect from light.	C	Carotenemia.
Chlamydia antibodies		Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum collected using aseptic technique. Centrifuge and separate serum from clot within 4 hr of collection.	S	For trachoma, psittacosis, lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), and pneumonia.
Cholesterol and HDL ratio	Chol HDL	Serum (preferred): Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Sodium heparin green-top tube. Separate ASAP and refrigerate serum.	C	Evaluates risk of coronary heart disease (CHD).
Chromium	Cr level	Serum: Royal blue–top tube; no additive. Room temperature. Plasma: Royal blue–top EDTA tube. Separate and refrigerate immediately.	C	Associated with diabetes and aspartame toxicity.
Cold agglutinin titer		Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Must be kept warm, incubate at 37°C and allow it to clot at 37°C before separation. Store and ship at room temperature.	S	To diagnose viral and atypical pneumonia caused by *Mycoplasma pneumoniae.*
Complete blood count	CBC	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing; includes WBC, RBC, Hgb, Hct, indices, platelets, and diff.	H	Blood diseases.

(*continued*)

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Copper	Cu level	Serum: Royal blue–top tube, no additive, metal-free. Plasma: Royal blue– EDTA tube, metal-free. Separate and transfer to a plastic transport tube immediately.	C	Wilson's disease or nephritic syndrome.
Cord blood		Whole blood-EDTA tube serum: Plain red-top tube.	I	Group and type infant's blood to detect the presence of incompatibilities or to test mother for possible Rh immune globulin.
Cortisol, timed		Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum. Clearly note time drawn.	C	Cushing's syndrome.
Creatine kinase	CK	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum.	C	Muscular dystrophy and trauma to skeletal muscle.
Creatine kinase MB	CK-MB	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum.	C	Organ differentiation and to rule out myocardial infarction.
Creatinine	Creat	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube. Separate ASAP; refrigerate serum.	C	Kidney function.
C-reactive protein	CRP	Serum. Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate serum or plasma.	S	Chronic inflammation.
Cryoglobulin		Serum and plasma: Red-top tube and lavender-top tube. Draw in prewarmed tube and clot at 37°C. Separate from cells immediately	C	Associated with immunologic diseases (e.g., multiple myeloma or rheumatoid arthritis).
Cyclosporine		Whole blood: Lavender-top EDTA or green-top sodium heparin tube. Do not use gel-barrier tubes. Refrigerate. Note: Use same type of specimen each time analyte is measured.	C	Immunosuppressive drug for organ transplants.
Culture		Collect the appropriate fluid or tissue using culture swab transport media. Indicate location of culture on the requisition.	M	Identification of infective agent and appropriate antibiotic treatment.
Cytomegalovirus antibody	CMV	Serum. Plain red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge ASAP; refrigerate serum.	I	Screens donors and blood products for transplant programs.
D-dimer	D-D1	Plasma: Light blue–top tube. Test requires 1 mL frozen citrated plasma from a completely filled light blue tube. Separate and freeze plasma immediately in plastic vials. Transport frozen.	CO	DIC and thrombotic episodes such as pulmonary emboli.
Differential	Diff	Whole blood: Lavender-top EDTA tube. Make blood smear and stain with Wright's stain.	H	Classifying types of leukocytes, describing erythrocytes, and estimating platelets.
Direct antiglobulin test	DAT, Coombs test, direct	Whole blood: Lavender- or pink-top EDTA tube. Special ID procedure.	I	Detects antibodies attached to the patient's red blood cells.

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Disseminated intravascular coagulation panel	DIC panel vials; transport frozen	Light blue–top tube, completely filled. Centrifuge, separate, and freeze plasma immediately in plastic transfer tube.	CO	Distortion of the normal coagulation and fibrinolytic mechanisms.
Drug monitoring	NA	Plain red-top tube; no gel barrier. Centrifuge and separate within 1 hr and transfer to plastic transfer tube.	C	See individual drugs below.
Amikacin	(Amikin)		C	Broad-spectrum antibiotic.
Barbiturates	(Phenobarbital)		C	Anticonvulsant for seizures.
Carbamazepine	(Tegretol)		C	Mood-stabilizing drug in bipolar affective disorder.
Digoxin	(Lanoxin)		C	Heart stimulant.
Gentamicin			C	Broad-spectrum antibiotic.
Lithium			C	Medication for manic depression.
Phenytoin	(Dilantin)		C	Treatment of epilepsy.
Salicylates	(Aspirin)		C	Evaluation of therapy.
Theophylline	(Aminophylline)		C	Asthma medication.
Tobramycin			C	Broad-spectrum antibiotic.
Valproic acid	(Depakote)		C	Seizures and symptomatic epilepsy.
Vancomycin	(Vancocin)		C	Broad-spectrum antibiotic.
Electrolytes	Na, K, Cl, CO_2, lytes	Plasma (preferred): Heparin gel barrier tube. Serum: Red-top serum gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge within 30 min after drawing. Do not remove stopper. Avoid hemolysis and lipemia.	C	Fluid balance, cardiotoxicity, heart failure, edema.
Eosinophil	Eos	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Allergy studies.
Epstein–Barr virus panel	EBV	Serum: Red-top or gel-barrier tube. Store serum at 2–8°C.	S	Mononucleosis.
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate	ESR	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Indication of degree of inflammation.
Factor assays		Light blue–top tube. Invert 3–4 times; centrifuge, separate, and freeze plasma immediately in plastic vials. 1-mL aliquot for each factor.	CO	To detect coagulation factor deficiency.
Febrile agglutinin Panel		Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube, random serum specimen. Avoid gross hemolysis and lipemia.	S	Screens for *Salmonella, Francisella tularensis, Rickettsia,* and *Brucella* antibodies.

(*continued*)

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Ferritin		Serum: Plain red-top tube (preferred) or serum gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate serum.	C	Hemachromatosis, iron deficiency.
Fibrinogen		Plasma: Completely filled light blue–top tube. Invert 3–4 times; centrifuge 15 min, separate, and freeze immediately. Place in plastic vial and transport frozen.	CO	To investigate suspected bleeding disorders.
Fibrin split products/fibrin degradation product	FSP/FDP	Plasma. 1 light blue–top tube, completely filled. Invert 6 times; immediately centrifuge for 15 min, separate and freeze. Transport frozen.	CO	DIC and thrombotic episodes, valuable early diagnostic sign of increased rate of fibrin deposition.
Fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption	FTA-ABS	Serum: Plain red-top tube (preferred) or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum.	S	Syphilis.
Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase	GGT or GT	Serum (preferred): Red top or serum gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate serum. Spin and separate.	C	Assists in the diagnosis of liver problems; specific for hepatobiliary problems.
Gastrin		Serum. Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Separate serum from cells within 1 hr after collection; freeze serum. Overnight fasting is required.	C	Stomach disorders.
Glucose, fasting	FBS	Plasma: Gray-top sodium fluoride or heparin-gel tube. Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Separate from cells within 1 hr or use gray-top tube.	C	Diabetes, hypoglycemia.
Glucose tolerance	GTT	Plasma: Gray-top sodium fluoride tube. Multiple collections depending on length of test.		
Glycosylated hemoglobin	Hgb A1c	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube.	C	Monitoring of diabetes mellitus.
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase	G-6-PD	Whole blood: Two lavender-top tubes. Do not freeze.	C	Drug-induced anemias.
Gonorrhea screen	GC	Taken from the urethra in a male or the endocervical canal in a female.	M	Sexually transmitted disease.
Hematocrit	Hct	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Anemia.
Hemoglobin	Hgb	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Anemia.
Hemoglobin A1c (see glycosylated hemoglobin)				
Hemoglobin electrophoresis		Whole blood: Refrigerate lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	C	Hemoglobinopathies and thalassemia.

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Hepatitis B surface antibody	HBsAb	Serum: Plain red-top (preferred) or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum.	S	Determination of previous infection and immunity by hepatitis B.
Hepatitis B surface antigen	HBsAg	Serum: Plain red-top tube (preferred) or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum.	S	Diagnosis of acute or some chronic stages of infection and carrier status of hepatitis B.
Homocysteine	Hcy	EDTA plasma (preferred): Lavender-top tube. Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Place on ice immediately. Centrifuge and separate within 1 hr of draw. Refrigerate specimen.	C	Elevated levels indicate increased risk of atherosclerosis.
Human immunodeficiency virus antigen	HIV-1	Serum: Plain red-top or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum. Do not ship in glass tubes. Use code number in place of patient's name to protect patient confidentiality.	S	Screen for donated blood and plasma as an aid in the diagnosis of HIV-1 infection.
Human leukocyte antigen-B 27	HLA-B27	Whole blood: Yellow-top (ACD) tubes; unopened tube required. Do not freeze or refrigerate; ethnic origin must be included.	I	Tested for disease association, matching prior to organ transplantation, platelet transfusion; paternity and forensic evaluation.
Human chorionic gonadotropin	HCG	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate serum.	C	Pregnancy, testicular cancer.
Immunoglobulins	IgA IgG IgM	Serum. Plain red-top (preferred) or serum gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate.	C	Measurement of proteins. Capable of becoming antibodies, chronic liver disease, myeloma.
Indices	MCV, MCH, MCHC	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube; invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Indicates mean cell hemoglobin (MCH), hemoglobin concentration (MCHC), and volume (MCV).
Iron and total iron binding capacity	TIBC & Fe	Serum (preferred): Serum gel-barrier tube. Separate from cells within 1 hr of collection; refrigerate serum. Fasting morning specimen is preferred	C	Assist in differential diagnosis of anemia.
Lactic acid (blood lactate)	Lact	Plasma: Gray-top tube. Do not use a tourniquet. Draw blood from a stasis-free vein into a gray-top tube. Centrifuge and separate plasma within 15 min of collection.	C	Measurement of anaerobic glycolysis due to strenuous exercise; increased lactic acid can occur in liver disease.
Lactate dehydrogenase	LD	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Avoid hemolysis—do not freeze or refrigerate.	C	Cardiac injury and other muscle damage.
Lead	Pb	Whole blood: Royal blue EDTA or tan-top lead-free tube. Use of other evacuated tubes or transfer tubes may produce falsely elevated results due to contamination.	C	Screens for lead toxicity, which can lead to neurologic dysfunction and possible permanent brain damage.

(*continued*)

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Lipase		Serum (preferred): Red top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green top.	C	Used to distinguish between abdominal pain and that owing to acute pancreatitis.
Lipoprotein		Serum: Plain red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top gel-barrier tube. Refrigerate.	C	
High-density lipoprotein	HDL	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Patient must be fasting a minimum of 12 hr.		Evaluates lipid disorders and coronary artery disease risk.
Low-density lipoprotein	LDL	Serum: Red top or serum gel-barrier tube. Must be fasting a minimum of 12 hr		Evaluates lipid disorders and coronary artery disease risk.
Magnesium	Mg	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top gel-barrier tube. Separate from cells within 45 min. Maintain specimen at room temperature.	C	Mineral metabolism, kidney function.
Mononucleosis screen	Mono-test	Serum: Plain red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Lavender or pink-(EDTA) top tube. Refrigerate serum or plasma.	S	Infectious mononucleosis.
Partial thromboplastin time (Activated PTT)	PTT/APTT	Plasma: Light blue–top tube filled to stated tube volume. Invert 3–4 times immediately after drawing. Do not centrifuge or freeze if the sample will not be tested within 24 hr.	CO	Clotting factor deficiency, monitoring of heparin therapy.
Phosphorus	P, PO4	Serum preferred: Serum gel-barrier tube. Separate from cells within 45 min. Maintain specimen at room temperature.	C	Thyroid function, bone disorders, and kidney disease.
Plasminogen		Whole blood: Light blue top. Centrifuge, separate, and freeze plasma immediately in plastic vials. Transport frozen.	CO	Prevention of fibrin clot formation.
Platelet aggregation	Plt. agg	Whole blood: four 5-mL sodium citrate tubes and one 5-mL lavender- or pink-top EDTA tube. Invert 3–4 times. Do not centrifuge. Do not refrigerate. Notify the lab before collection. Specimen must be received within 1 hr of collection. Fasting required.	H	Hemostasis and thrombus formation.
Platelet count	Plt. ct	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Bleeding disorders.
Prostate-specific antigen, total and free	PSA	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube. Plasma: Green-top gel-barrier tube. Separate and freeze serum or plasma immediately in a plastic vial. Transport frozen.	C	Screen for the presence of prostate cancer, to monitor the progression of the disease and monitor the response to treatment for prostate cancer.
Prothrombin time	PT	Plasma: Light blue–top tube filled to stated tube volume. Invert 3–4 times immediately after drawing. Do not centrifuge or freeze if the sample is to be transported.	CO	Clotting factor deficiency, monitoring of warfarin therapy.

TABLE A-1 Alphabetical Listing of Laboratory Tests (*Continued*)

Test	Abbreviation	Sample/Specimen Considerations*	Dept.**	Clinical Correlation
Red cell count	RBC	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Anemia.
Reticulocyte count	Retic	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	Anemia.
Rheumatoid factor	RF	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum. Overnight fasting is preferred.	S	Arthritic conditions.
Rapid plasmin reagin	RPR	Serum: Plain red-top or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum. Hemolysis and lipemia may alter test results.	S	Syphilis.
Serum protein electrophoresis	SPEP or PEP	Serum: Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum.	C	Detection of abnormal protein.
Sputum screen		Sputum: True sputum, not saliva—early-morning sample.	M	Tuberculosis.
Streptococcus screen	strep	Submit culturette.	M	Strep throat.
Sweat chloride or electrolytes (iontophoresis)		Sweat: Collect sweat specimen by iontophoresis.	C	Cystic fibrosis.
Thyroid profile (comprehensive)	FTI, T3, T4, TSH	Serum: Serum gel-barrier or red-top tube. If red-top tube is used, transfer separated serum to plastic transport tube.	C	Hyper- or hypothyroid conditions.
Triglycerides		Serum (preferred): Red-top or serum gel-barrier tube; refrigerate serum. Strict fasting for 12–14 hr is required (water only).	C	Used to evaluate risk of coronary heart disease.
Vitamin B12 and folate		Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge, separate, and refrigerate. Protect from light.	C	Macrocytic anemia.
Urea nitrogen	BUN	Serum: Serum gel-barrier tube. Centrifuge for complete separation and refrigerate.	C	Kidney function.
Uric acid		Serum: Serum gel-barrier or red-top tube; must be separated within 45 min. Maintain specimen at room temperature.	C	Gout.
White cell count	WBC	Whole blood: Lavender-top tube. Invert gently 6–8 times immediately after drawing.	H	
Zinc (serum)	Zn	Serum: Nonadditive royal blue–top tube. Separate serum within 45 min and transfer to plastic transport tube.	C	Liver dysfunction.
Zinc (RBC)	ZNRBC	Whole blood: Royal blue–top EDTA tube. Refrigerate immediately; hemolysis unacceptable.	C	Screening test for lead poisoning and iron deficiency.

*Specimen requirements vary by test methodology and instrumentation. Follow the requirements of the specific testing facility.
**Test department codes: C = chemistry, CO = coagulation, H = hematology, I = immunohematology/blood bank, M = microbiology, S = serology/immunology.

APPENDIX

B

Laboratory Mathematics

The Metric System

The system of measurement used in the healthcare industry is the metric system, which derives its name from its fundamental unit of distance, the meter (M or m). In this system, the meter is the basic unit of linear measure, the gram (G or g) is the basic unit of weight, and the liter (L or l) is the basic unit of volume. The metric system is a decimal system (a system based on the number 10), in which units larger or smaller than the basic units are arrived at by multiplying or dividing by 10 or powers of 10.

In the metric system, prefixes added to the basic units indicate larger or smaller units. Prefixes are the same whether or not the units are meters, grams, or liters. Table B-1 shows prefixes commonly used in the medical laboratory. Basic metric units (meters, grams, liters) can be converted to larger units by moving the decimal point to the left according to the appropriate multiple. The multiple is the value of the exponent, which is a number indicating how many times the number is multiplied by itself. For example, a kilogram is 1,000, or $10 \times 10 \times 10$, or 10^3 g. The multiple, determined by the exponent, is 3.

EXAMPLE: Convert 100 grams to kilograms

From Table B-1 we determine that 1 kg is equal to 1,000, or 10^3 g. The multiple is 3. Therefore, to convert 100 grams to kilograms, move the decimal point three places to the left:

$$100 \text{ g} = 100.0 = 0.1 \text{ kg}$$

To convert basic metric units to smaller units, move the decimal point to the right according to the appropriate multiple.

EXAMPLE: Convert 100 g to mg

From Table B-1, we see that 1 mg is equal to 10^{-3} g. The multiple is minus 3. We therefore move the decimal point three spaces to the right:

$$100 \text{ g} = 100.00 = 100{,}000.00 \text{ mg}$$

Metric units other than basic units can be converted to larger units by moving the decimal point to the left according to the appropriate multiple, determined by subtracting the value of the exponent of the desired unit from the value of the exponent of the existing unit.

EXAMPLE: Convert 200 mg to kg

From Table B-1, we determine that 1 mg is 10^{-3} and 1 kg is 10^3. The desired unit is kilograms; therefore, we subtract -3 from 3 to determine the multiple:

$$3 - (-3) = 3 + 3 = 6$$

We are going from a smaller unit to a larger unit, so the decimal point moves to the left six spaces.

$$200 \text{ mg} = 000200.00 = 0.0002 \text{ kg}$$

Metric units other than basic units can be converted to smaller units by moving the decimal point to the right according to the appropriate multiple, determined by subtracting the value of the exponent of the desired unit from the value of the exponent of the existing unit.

EXAMPLE: Convert 25 cm to μm

From Table B-1, we determine that 1 cm is 10^{-2} and 1 μm is 10^{-6}. The desired unit is micrometers; therefore, we subtract -6 from -2 to determine the multiple:

$$-2 - (-6) = -2 + 6 = 4$$

We are going from a larger unit to a smaller unit, so the decimal point moves to the right four spaces.

$$25 \text{ cm} = 25.00 = 250{,}000.00 \text{ μm}$$

It is often necessary to convert the units of our English system to metric units. Table B-2 lists English units and their metric equivalents that are commonly encountered in the healthcare setting.

To convert from English units to metric units, multiply by the factor listed. Metric units can be converted back to English units by dividing by the same factor or multiplying by the factor in the metric conversion chart.

EXAMPLE: Convert 200 lb to kg

1 lb is equal to 0.454 kg

Therefore, multiply 200×0.454 to arrive at 90.8 kg

TABLE B-1 Commonly Used Measurement Prefixes

Multiple	Meter (m)	Gram (g)	Liter (l)	Prefix
Kilo- (k)	1,000 (10^3)	km	kg	kL
Deo- (d)	1/10 (10^{-1})	dm	dg	dL
Centi- (c)	1/100 (10^{-2})	cm	cg	cL
Milli- (m)	1/1,000 (10^{-3})	mm	mg	mL
Micro- (μ)	1/1,000,000 (10^{-6})	μm	μg	μL

Table B-3 shows the common equivalents for converting metric units to English units. To convert metric units to English units, multiply by the factor listed. To convert English units back to metric, divide by the same factor or multiply by the factor in the English unit conversion chart.

EXAMPLE: Convert 15 mL to tsp

1.0 mL is equal to ⅕ tsp

Therefore, multiply 15 × ⅕ to arrive at ¹⁵⁄₅

or 3 tsp (or 15 × 0.2 = 3.0 tsp)

Military Time

Most hospitals use military (or European) time, which is based on a clock with 24 numbers instead of 12 (Fig. B-1). Twenty-four-hour time eliminates the need for designating A.M. or P.M. Each time is expressed by four digits. The first two digits represent hours and the second two represent minutes. 1200 hours is noon and 2400 hours is midnight. One A.M. is 0100, 2 A.M. is 0200, and so on.

Noon is 1200; 1 P.M. is 1300

To convert regular (12-hour) time to 24-hour time, add 12 hours to the time from 1 P.M. on.

EXAMPLE: 1:00 P.M. becomes 1:00 + 12 hours = 1300 hours

5:30 P.M. becomes 5:30 + 12 hours = 1730 hours

To convert 24-hour time to 12-hour time, subtract 12 hours after 1 P.M.

EXAMPLE: 1300 hours becomes 1300 − 12 hours = 1:00 P.M.

Temperature Measurement

Two different temperature scales (Fig. B-2) are used in the healthcare setting. The Fahrenheit (F) scale is used to measure body temperature, whereas the Celsius (C) scale, also known as the centigrade scale, is used to measure temperatures in the laboratory.

- Fahrenheit: The freezing point of water is 32°F and the boiling point is 212°F. Normal body temperature expressed in Fahrenheit is 98.6°F.
- Celsius/centigrade: The freezing point of water is 0°C and the boiling point is 100°C. Normal body temperature expressed in the Celsius scale is 37°C.

TABLE B-2 English–Metric Equivalents

	English		Metric
Distance	Yard (yd) Inch (in)	= =	0.9 meters (m) 2.54 centimeters (cm)
Weight	Pound (lb) Ounce (oz)	= =	0.454 kilograms (kg) or 454 grams (g) 28 grams (g)
Volume	Quart (qt) Fluid ounce (fl oz) Tablespoon (tbsp) Teaspoon (tsp)	= = = =	0.95 liters (L) 30 milliliters (mL) 15 milliliters (mL) 5 milliliters (mL)

TABLE B-3 Metric–English Equivalents

	Metric		English
Distance	Meter (m) Centimeter (cm) Millimeter (mm)	= = =	3.3 feet/39.37 inches 0.4 inches 0.04 inches
Weight	Gram (g) Kilogram (kg)	= =	0.0022 pounds 2.2 pounds
Volume	Liter (L) Milliliter (mL) Milliliter (mL)	= = =	1.06 quarts 0.03 fluid ounces 0.20 or 1/5 tsp

Note: A milliliter (mL) is approximately equal to a cubic centimeter (cc), and the two terms are often used interchangeably.

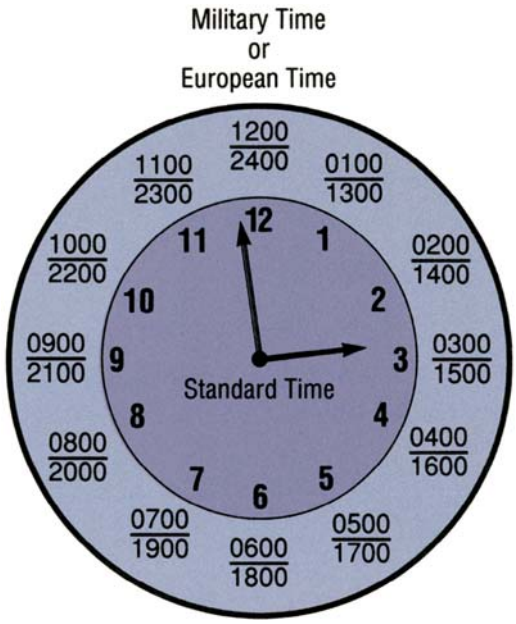


Figure B-1 Clock showing 24-hour (military) time.

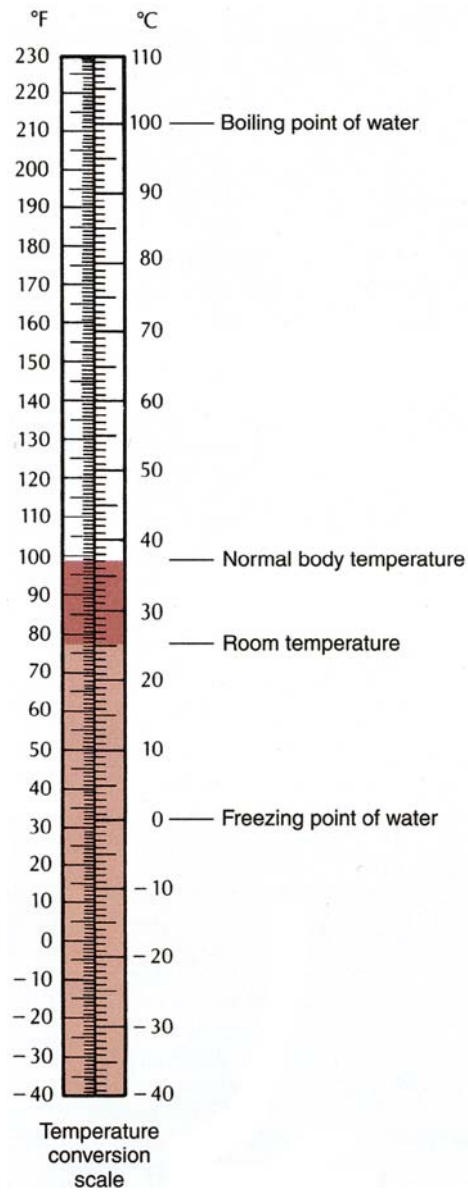


Figure B-2 Thermometer showing both Fahrenheit and Celsius degrees. (Courtesy of R. L. Memmler, B. J. Cohen, and D. L. Wood.)

The following formulas can be used to convert from one temperature scale to the other:

$$\text{Celsius temperature} = \tfrac{5}{9}\,(°F - 32)$$

$$\text{Fahrenheit temperature} = \tfrac{9}{5}\,(°C + 32)$$

Roman Numerals

In the Roman numeral system, letters represent numbers. Roman numerals may be encountered in procedure outlines, in physicians' orders or prescriptions, and in the identification of values or substances such as coagulation factors.

The basic Roman numeral system consists of the following seven capital (or lowercase) letters:

I	(i)	=	1	C	(c)	=	100
V	(v)	=	5	D	(d)	=	500
X	(x)	=	10	M	(m)	=	1,000
L	(l)	=	50				

GUIDELINES FOR INTERPRETING ROMAN NUMERALS

1. When numerals of the same value follow in sequence, the values should be added. There should never be more than three of the same numeral in a sequence.

   EXAMPLE: III = 1 + 1 + 1 = 3

   XX = 10 + 10 = 20

2. When a lower-value numeral precedes a numeral with a higher value, the lower value should be subtracted from the higher value. Numerals V, L, and D are never subtracted. No more than one lower-value number should precede a higher-value number.

   EXAMPLE: IV = 5 − 1 = 4

   IX = 10 − 1 = 9

3. When a numeral is followed by one or more numerals of lower value, the values should be added.

   EXAMPLE: XI = 10 + 1 = 11

   VII = 5 + 1 + 1 = 7

4. When a lower-value numeral comes between two higher-value numerals, it is subtracted from the numeral following it.

   EXAMPLE: XIX = 10 + 10 − 1 = 19

   XXIV = 10 + 10 + 5 − 1 = 24

5. Roman numerals are written from left to right in order of decreasing value (except for numerals that are to be subtracted from subsequent numerals).

   EXAMPLE: XXVII = 10 + 10 + 5 + 1 + 1 = 27

   MCMXCII = 1,000 + (1,000 − 100) + (100 − 10) + 1 + 1 = 1992

6. A line over a Roman numeral means multiply the numeral by 1,000.

   EXAMPLE: $\bar{V} = V \times 1{,}000 = 5{,}000$

Percentage

Percent means "per 100" and is represented by the symbol %. Two values are involved when a number is expressed as a percentage. They are the number itself and 100.

EXAMPLE: 10% means 10 per 100 or 10 parts in a total of 100 parts. To change a fraction to a percentage, multiply by 100 and add a percent sign to the result.

EXAMPLE: Change ¾ to a percentage

$$\tfrac{3}{4} \times \tfrac{100}{1} = \tfrac{300}{4} = 4\overline{)300}^{\,75} = 75\%$$

Dilutions

The concentration of laboratory reagents is often expressed as a percentage. For example, a solution of 70% isopropyl alcohol is used in skin cleansing before blood collection.

A 10% dilution of bleach (5.25% sodium hypochlorite) is used to disinfect countertops and other surfaces. A 10% dilution of bleach means that there are 10 parts of bleach in a solution containing a total of 100 parts. This dilution can also be expressed as a ratio, showing the relationship between the part of the solution and the total solution. A 10% solution is also a 1:10 (1 to 10) solution or one part bleach in a total of 10 parts solution. A dilution of 10 parts in a total of 100 parts is the same as 1 part in a total of 100 parts, or a 1:10 dilution. A 10% dilution of bleach can be prepared by adding 10 mL of bleach to 90 mL of water, resulting in a total of 100 mL of bleach solution. The same percentage dilution would result from adding 1 mL of bleach to 9 mL of water, 20 mL of bleach to 180 mL of water, and so on.

Blood Volume

Blood volume in adults is generally stated as 5.0 quarts or 4.75 liters (L). Because people come in different sizes,

common sense tells us that they should not all have 5 quarts of blood. Actual blood volume is based on weight. Blood volume can be calculated for any size person from infant to adult as long as the person's weight is known. If the volume is calculated for adults and infants, it is important to realize that the value is not exact because the calculation is based on averages.

KEY POINT CLSI lists the following blood volumes for infants and children:

Premature infants	115 mL/kg
Newborns	80–100 mL/kg
Infants and children	75–100 mL/kg

ADULT BLOOD VOLUME CALCULATION

Average adult blood volume is 70 mL per kg of weight.

EXAMPLE: Calculate the blood volume of a man who weighs 250 lb.

1. Change the weight in pounds to kilograms.
   Because 1 lb = 0.454 kg, you must multiply 250 lb by 0.454 to arrive at 113.5 kg.
2. Next, multiply the number of kilograms by 70 because there are 70 mL of blood for each kg of weight.

   $$113.5 \text{ kg} \times 70 \text{ mL/kg} = 7{,}945 \text{ mL}$$

3. Because blood volume is reported in liters rather than milliliters, divide the total number of mL by 1,000 (1 liter = 1,000 mL).

   Blood volume = 7,945 mL/1,000 mL = 7.945 L
   or 7.9 L (rounded)

CALCULATION OF INFANT BLOOD VOLUME

Estimating Blood Volume

When asked to collect a blood specimen from an infant, the phlebotomist must be able to make a quick mental estimate of the patient's blood volume in order to avoid causing harm. This can be accomplished by dividing the patient's weight in pounds by 2 to convert them to kilograms and multiplying the kilograms by 100 to get estimated blood volume. This estimate will always be higher than the true value. (The ability to convert pounds to kilograms is also needed in deciding how much of a glucose beverage to give a child during a GTT)

It is very important to be able to calculate the blood volume of an infant, especially if that infant is in an intensive care unit, where blood samples may be taken several times a day. A very small infant can become anemic if not monitored closely. Removal of more than 10% of an infant's blood volume in a short period of time can lead to serious consequences, such as iatrogenic anemia or cardiac arrest.

An average infant's blood volume is 100 mL per kg.

EXAMPLE: Calculate the blood volume of a baby that weighs 5.5 lb.

1. Change the weight from pounds to kilograms, using the same formula as for adults.

   $$5.5 \text{ lb} \times 0.454 = 2.5 \text{ kg}$$

2. Multiply 2.5 kg by 100 for total blood volume in milliliters.

   $$2.5 \text{ kg} \times 100 = 250 \text{ mL}$$

3. Change blood volume in mL/kg to liters.

   $$250 \text{ mL}/1{,}000 \text{ mL} = 0.25 \text{ L}$$

APPENDIX

C

Conversational Phrases in English and Spanish

Although English is our official language, a variety of other languages are spoken in the United States, and prominent among them is Spanish. The following English-to-Spanish table has been prepared to help healthcare workers develop a better rapport with patients who speak only Spanish by using the translated remarks or sentences when conversing with them. Before approaching the patient, you should say these basic phrases aloud several times to someone who can correct the pronunciation if necessary. This is important, because if said incorrectly, the meanings of the phrases could be changed enough to insult or bewilder the patient.

The first column of the table is the phrase or word in English. The second column lists the phrase or word in Spanish, and the third column offers a phonetic pronunciation. The syllable in each word to be accented is printed in italic type. Even if you are not proficient in English-to-Spanish, your Spanish-speaking patients will appreciate your efforts to converse in their language if only to say "por favor" and "gracias." If you find that you have difficulty pronouncing the words, you can write them down or point to the Spanish phrase in the textbook.

English Phrase/Word	Spanish Phrase/Word	Phonetic Pronunciation
Hello.	¡Hola	(ō -lah)
Good morning.	Buenos días.	(*bwā*-nos *dē*-ahs)
Good afternoon.	Buenas tardes.	(*bwā*-nahs *tahr*-dās)
Good evening.	Buenas noches.	(*bwā*-nahs *no*-chās)
My name is	Me llamo	(mā *yah*-mō)
I am from the laboratory.	Soy del laboratorio.	(soy dāl lah-bō-rah-tō-*rē*-ō)
I am here to take a blood sample.	Estoy aquí para tomarle una prueba de sangre.	(ās-*toy* ah-*kē pahr*-ah tō-*mahr*-lā *un*-ah prū-bah dā *sahn*-grā⁻)
May I see your wristband?	¿Me permite ver su identificación?	(mā pār-*mē*-tā vār sū ē-dān-tē-fē-cah-sē-*ōn*?)
Do you understand me?	¿Me entiende?	¿Me ayn-tee-*ayn*-day?
What is your name?	¿Como se llama?	(*cō* -mō sā *yah*-mah?)
How old are you?	¿Cuántos años tienes?	¿*Kwan*-tohs ahn-yos tee-*aynj*ays?
Speak slower.	Habla más despacio.	*Ah*-blah mahs days-*pah*-see-oh
It is necessary.	Es necessario.	Ays neh-say-*sah*-ree-oh.
Your doctor ordered this.	Su doctor ordeno.	(sū dōc-*tor* or *dā*-nō esto *ās*-to⁻)
Mr. or Sir	Señor	(sā-*nyor*)
Mrs. or Madame	Señora	(sā-*nyō* -rah)
Ms. or Miss	Señorita	(sā-nyō-*rē*-tah)

(*continued*)

English Phrase/Word	Spanish Phrase/Word	Phonetic Pronunciation
Okay.	Muy bien.	(*mū*-ē- byān)
Sit here.	Siéntese aquí.	(syān-*tā*-sā ah-*kē*)
You are the person I need.	Usted es la persona que necesito.	(ūs-*tēd* ās lah pār-*sōn*-ah)
Have you eaten?	¿Ha comido?	(ah cō-*mē*-dō)
I need . . .	Yo necesito	(kā na-sā-*sē*-tō)
I am going to . . .	Voy a . .	(voy ah)
I am going to put a tourniquet on your arm.	Le voy a poner un torniquete en el brazo.	(lā voy ah pō-*nār* ūn tor-n ē -*kā*-tā ān el *brah*-sō)
Please	Por favor	(por fah-*vor*)
Close your hand.	Cierra la mano.	(*syā*-rah lah *mah*-nō)
Make a fist.	Haga un puño.	(*hah*-ga ūn pun yo)
Open your hand.	Abra la mano.	(*ah*-brah lah *mah*-nō)
Straighten your arm.	Enderezca el brazo. OR Estire su brazo.	(en-dār-āz-kah el *brah*-sō) (ās-*te*—rā sū *brah*-sō)
Relax.	Relájese.	(rā-lah *hā*-sā)
It will hurt a little.	Le dolerá un poco.	(lā dō-lā-*rah* ūn *pō* -kō)
How do you feel?	¿Cómo se siente?	(¿Kob-moh say see-*ayn*-tay?)
It is important to . . .	Es importánte que . . .	(Ays eem-por-*tahn*-tay kay . . .)
You need to ask your doctor.	Necesita preguntarle a su doctor.	(nā-sā-*sē*-tah prā-gūn-*tahr*-lā ah sū dōc-*tor*)
Thank you.	¡Gracias!	(*grah*-syahs)
Have a good day.	Que le vaya bien.	(kā lā *vī*-yah byān)
Someone will be back in a few minutes.	Alguien regresará en un momento.	(ahl-*gwē*-ān rā-grā-sah-*rah* ān ūn mō-*mān*-tō)
I will get the nurse.	Buscaré a la enfermera.	(būs-cah-*rā* ah lah ām-fār-*mā*-rah)

Additional Phrases/Words	Spanish Phrase/Word	Phonetic Pronunciation
One	Uno	(*oo*-noh)
Two	Dos	(dohs)
Three	Tres	(trays)
Four	Cuatro	(*kwah*-troh)
Five	Cinco	(*sin*-koh)
Six	Seis	(says)
Seven	Siete	(see-*ay*-tay)
Eight	Ocho	(oh-choh)
The throat	La garganta	(lah gar-*gan*-tah)
Open your mouth.	Abra la boca.	(*Ah*-brah lah *boh*-kah)
Empty your bladder.	Orinar.	(Oh-ree-*narh)*
We need a urine specimen.	Es necesário una muestra de su orina.	(Ays nay-*say*-sar-ee-oh oo-nah mo*oay*-strah day oh-*ree*-nah)
You can only drink water.	Solo puede tomar agua.	(Soh-loh *pway*-day toh-mar *ah*-gwah)

APPENDIX

D

Work Restrictions for Healthcare Employees

TABLE D-1 Conditions Requiring Work Restrictions for Healthcare Employees

Condition	Work Restriction
Chickenpox (varicella)	Off work until 7 days after appearance of first eruption and lesions are dry and crusted.
Hepatitis A	Off work until cleared by a physician.
Hepatitis B	Off work until cleared by a physician.
Herpes zoster	May work if no patient contact.
Influenza	Work status determined by employee health department depending on work area.
Impetigo	Off work or no patient contact until crusts are gone.
Measles	Off work until rash is gone (minimum 4 days).
Mononucleosis	Off work until cleared by a physician.
MRSA (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*)	May work but no patient care until treatment is successful.
Pink eye (acute conjunctivitis)	Off work until treatment is successful.
Positive PPD test	May work depending upon evaluation and follow-up by employee health department.
Pregnancy	May work, but avoid contact with patients with rickettsial or viral infections, patients in isolation, and patients being treated with radioactive isotopes. Avoid areas with radioactive hazard symbol.
Tuberculosis (active)	Off work until treated and AFB smears are negative for 2 weeks.
Rubella (German measles)	Off work until rash is gone (minimum 5 days).
Salmonella	Varies depending on symptoms, treatment results, and employee health department evaluation.
Scabies	Off work until treated.
Shigella	Varies depending on symptoms, treatment results, and employee health department evaluation.
Strep throat (group A)	Off work until 24 hours after antibiotic therapy is started and symptoms are gone.
URI (upper respiratory infection)	Work status determined by employee health department.

APPENDIX

E

Answers to Study & Review Questions and Case Studies

Chapter 1

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. b	6. c	11. b
2. b	7. d	12. b
3. d	8. a	13. b
4. c	9. d	14. a
5. b	10. c	15. d

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 1-1 *Telephone Etiquette and Irate Caller*

1. Sally let the phone ring too many times, lost the caller when transferring the call, and kept the line open, allowing her conversation to be heard.
2. Leaving the line open. This allows the caller to hear conversations, which could violate HIPAA regulations if they should involve protected health information.
3. Sally should have prepared herself ahead of time by having the receptionist show her how to put callers on hold and transfer calls.
4. It is the laboratory administrator's responsibility to offer employees training in telephone etiquette.

CASE STUDY 1-2 *Phlebotomy and Protected Health Information*

1. The nurse indicated that Matt needed to be quiet because he was broadcasting the patient's personal information across the common area, allowing others to hear.
2. The phlebotomist had ignored the patient's right to privacy as stated in the policies of several different facilities (i.e., the American Medical Association's Patient Care Partnership document).
3. Not only are there policies provided to prevent wrongful disclosure, but protected health information (PHI) is closely regulated by HIPAA, a federal law whose primary purpose is to secure and regulate patient privacy.
4. Matt should have handled the conversation in private. He should have waited for the requisition from the nurse and gotten any needed information at that time.

Chapter 2

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. d	6. d	11. b
2. c	7. b	12. b
3. a	8. c	13. b
4. b	9. d	14. c
5. d	10. d	15. a

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 2-1 *Scope of Duty*

1. Although on the surface it seems like the proper thing to do, helping an inpatient walk to the bathroom is not within the phlebotomist's scope of duties and opens the phlebotomist up to liability issues, as illustrated by this case. It would have been better to have nursing personnel, who are properly trained in this area, assist the patient.
2. The hospital may have liability for the injury because of the liquid spilled on the floor that caused the patient to slip.
3. Vicarious liability and respondeat superior could come into play if a lawsuit is filed on behalf of the patient. However, it is also possible for the phlebotomist to be seen as individually liable because helping the patient is not a normal duty of a phlebotomist.

Chapter 3

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. c	5. a	9. b
2. d	6. b	10. a
3. a	7. c	11. d
4. a	8. d	12. d

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 3-1 *An Accident Waiting to Happen*

1. The first thing the phlebotomist should do is wash the blood off of her arm, washing the scratch site

thoroughly with soap and water for a minimum of 30 seconds.
2. The phlebotomist's actions that contributed to the accident included wearing heels and being in a hurry. It would have been better to wear appropriate shoes and change into heels just before going to lunch.
3. The phlebotomist should have had the scratch covered with a waterproof bandage.
4. The type of exposure she received can be classified as a parenteral exposure.

Chapter 4

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. a	5. b	9. d
2. c	6. a	10. b
3. c	7. c	
4. d	8. d	

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 4-1 *Lab Orders*

1. The blood culture specimens should be collected as soon as possible (ASAP). ASAP test orders have priority over routine collections. Facility protocol must be followed for exact time limits for collection.
2. The patient is in the emergency room (ER, also called the emergency department, or ED).
3. FUO stands for "fever of unknown origin." FUO indicates that the patient may have septicemia (or microorganisms in the blood), which can be detected by blood cultures.

CASE STUDY 4-2 *Misinterpreted Instructions*

1. The student apparently did not notice the decimal point in the written instructions and filled the syringe with 1 mL of antigen.
2. The amount of antigen should have been written as 0.1 mL
3. The phlebotomist should not have left the student alone. If she had watched her throughout the process, she would have caught the error.
4. The patient received approximately five times as much antigen as the standard dose. If the patient had been exposed to TB, he or she could have a severe reaction.

Chapter 5

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. b	5. d	9. a
2. d	6. b	10. b
3. c	7. c	
4. c	8. a	

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 5-1 *Body System Structures and Disorders*

1. The term for muscle pain is *myalgia.* Soreness of the tendons is most likely due to tendonitis (tendon inflammation).
2. The fluid-filled sac in the area of the elbow is called a bursa. Bursae help ease movement over and around areas subject to friction, such as prominent joint parts or where tendons pass over bone. Inflammation of the bursa is called bursitis.
3. The student's leg muscles and tendons are probably stressed from the long weekend runs. Bursitis of the elbow most likely resulted from the long periods of lying on the floor resting on her elbows.

CASE STUDY 5-2 *Body Systems, Disorders, Diagnostic Tests, and Directional Terms*

1. Glucose and insulin levels evaluate the endocrine system and the function of the pancreas, which is also an accessory organ of the digestive system.
2. The patient may be a diabetic who is either in insulin shock or diabetic coma.
3. The specimen was collected from the left arm, below the IV.

Chapter 6

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. a	6. a	11. a
2. c	7. c	12. a
3. c	8. b	13. b
4. a	9. b	14. d
5. c	10. d	15. c

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 6-1 *M-shaped Antecubital Veins*

1. The median vein is the first choice for venipuncture in the M-shaped pattern.
2. The median cephalic vein is the second choice for venipuncture in the M-shaped pattern.
3. The median basilic vein is the last choice for venipuncture in the M-shaped pattern.
4. It is the last choice because it lies near the anterior and posterior branches of the medial cutaneous nerve and the brachial artery.

CASE STUDY 6-2 *Blood Specimens*

1. The specimen was whole blood.
2. The part of the specimen that will be used for testing is the clear liquid called plasma, which was obtained by centrifuging the specimen.
3. A whole-blood specimen is collected in an anticoagulant tube. Blood collected in anticoagulant can be centrifuged right away to obtain plasma. The specimen was most likely whole blood because the processor was able to spin it right away, even though it had

been collected only 5 minutes before she received it. In addition, most stat chemistry tests are performed on heparinized plasma, so as to save the time it would take to obtain serum from a clotted specimen.

Chapter 7

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. d
2. a
3. d
4. b
5. b
6. a
7. d
8. c
9. b
10. b

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 7-1 *Proper Handling of Anticoagulant Tubes*

1. Clots in EDTA specimens can be caused by inadequate mixing, a delay in mixing, or a delay in transferring a specimen collected in a syringe.
2. The clot in the CBC specimen was most likely caused by the delay in mixing it.
3. Yes. The problem with the second lavender-top tube led to an even greater delay in mixing the specimen, which most likely contributed to the clotting problem.
4. No. If Chi had mixed the first lavender-top tube as soon as he removed it from the tube holder, before putting it down, the problem with the second tube would not have affected it.
5. Chi can prevent this from happening in the future by mixing all additive tubes as soon as they are removed from the tube holder.

CASE STUDY 7-2 *Order of Draw*

1. The green-top tube for the stat electrolytes is compromised.
2. The specimen is compromised because it was drawn after the EDTA tube and may be contaminated by carryover of EDTA. Sodium or potassium levels (depending on the type of EDTA) may be increased by EDTA contamination.
3. If the situation were to arise in the future, Jake could draw a few milliliters of blood into a plain discard tube to flush possible contamination from the needle before collecting the green-top tube. If he did not have a discard tube, he could use an SST or another green-top tube as the discard tube. Placing and removing a discard tube also helps remove residue on the outside of the needle. Jake should still indicate how the specimen was collected in case interference is suspected by lab personnel.

Chapter 8

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. c
2. d
3. b
4. b
5. b
6. b
7. a
8. a
9. d
10. a
11. d
12. c
13. a
14. b
15. b

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 8-1 *Patient Identification*

1. Jenny didn't ask the patient to verbally state her name and date of birth.
2. Jenny assumed that because the woman was the only one left in the waiting room, she was the correct patient.
3. The patient may have been someone with a standing order who forgot to check in with the receptionist.
4. Specimens from the real Jane Rogers can be drawn after a new requisition and labels have been created. The identity of the other patient may be discovered when a physician's office calls for results and there are none. The specimens of the unknown patient will have to be discarded, which is especially unfortunate because the patient was a difficult draw.

CASE STUDY 8-2 *Blood Draw Refusal*

1. The phlebotomists did not obtain parental permission personally or check with the child's nurse to see if parental permission had been given for the blood draw.
2. The phlebotomists made the assumption that because permission to draw a specimen from the child had been given previously, that it was all right to do so again this time. They also made the assumption that the child was not telling the truth.
3. A lawsuit alleging assault and battery could be filed by the parents.

Chapter 9

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. b
2. b
3. c
4. c
5. a
6. b
7. a
8. b
9. b
10. d

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 9-1 *Physiological Variables, Problem Sites, and Patient Complications*

1. Physiological variables associated with this collection site include the following: the patient is ill and may be dehydrated from vomiting, she is overweight, she has had a mastectomy on the left side, and she is normally a difficult draw. Charles will be limited to drawing from the right arm. He will most likely need to draw the specimen using a butterfly and the smallest tubes available. He should check the cephalic vein if he does not find another suitable antecubital vein. He may have to draw from a vein in

the right hand, and he may have to warm the site to enhance blood flow. Because it is a physician office laboratory, he should check with the patient's physician to see if it is advisable to offer the patient water, because she is probably dehydrated. Dehydration would make it even more difficult to find a vein.
2. Because the patient appears ill, she should be asked to lie down to prevent her from fainting during specimen collection. An emesis basin or wastebasket should be close at hand in case she vomits.
3. Charles should check the antecubital area of the right arm first, paying particular attention to the area of the cephalic vein if the median cubital vein is not palpable. If no suitable vein is found, he should check for a hand vein on the right arm, followed by veins on the right dorsal wrist and forearm. He should never consider using veins on the underside (ventral or palmar area) of the wrist or forearm.
4. If Charles is unable to find a proper venipuncture site, he should consider capillary puncture. Both the CBC and glucose specimens can easily be collected by capillary puncture. The site will have to be warmed to enhance blood flow because the patient may be dehydrated.

CASE STUDY 9-2 *Troubleshooting Failed Venipuncture*

1. Blood most likely spurted into the tube because although Sara thought the needle was in the vein, it may have been only partially in the vein, with a tiny portion of it sticking out of the skin. Therefore the tube quickly lost vacuum.
2. The hissing sound and the fact that the tube no longer filled with blood even after the needle was repositioned are clues that the tube has lost vacuum.
3. Sara must position the needle in the vein, making certain that no part of the needle is out of the skin; then she must replace the tube with a new one.

Chapter 10

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. b	5. d	9. b
2. d	6. a	10. d
3. d	7. d	11. b
4. c	8. b	12. c

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 10-1 *Capillary Puncture Procedure*

1. The phlebotomist tried to collect the specimen as it was running down the finger. A scooping or scraping motion during collection may have activated the platelets and caused them to clump. In addition, because the child was uncooperative, the specimen was not collected and mixed quickly, which may also have contributed to platelet clumping.
2. It appears that the phlebotomist started to collect the specimen without wiping away the first drop of blood. Consequently the hemolysis may have been caused by alcohol residue. Trying to collect the specimen as it ran down the finger may have resulted in scraping the blood from the skin, which can also cause hemolysis in the specimen.
3. Improper direction of puncture and the presence of alcohol residue may have contributed to the blood running down the finger instead of forming drops, making it hard to collect the specimen. The phlebotomist's inexperience with children may have contributed to the child being uncooperative. In addition, if the phlebotomist had been more experienced with capillary puncture in children, he may have held the child's hand differently and prevented the child from pulling away.

Chapter 11

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. a	5. c	9. d
2. b	6. c	10. b
3. a	7. c	11. b
4. b	8. c	12. b

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 11-1 *Performance of a Glucose Tolerance Test*

1. Mr. Smith should finish drinking the glucose drink within 5 minutes.
2. The timing for all of the GTT specimens begins when the patient finishes the glucose drink. The patient was given the drink at 0825. If he finishes it on time at 0830, the 1-hour specimen would be collected at 0930.
3. No. A level of 300 mg/dL at 30 minutes is abnormal according to the graph in Figure 11–12.
4. Normally, if a patient vomits within the first 30 minutes of a GTT, the test is discontinued and rescheduled. If the patient vomits after 45 minutes, the patient's physician should be consulted to determine if the test should be continued or not.

Chapter 12

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. b	6. c	11. c
2. d	7. d	12. a
3. b	8. d	13. d
4. c	9. d	14. d
5. d	10. d	

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 12-1 *Missing Results*

1. Nurse Susan may have used the label for Betty Smith on the specimens she collected from Mr. Jones.

2. The lab reports results according to the identification on the specimen, with the assumption that it is correctly labeled.
3. Nurse Susan will have to follow hospital protocol, which typically involves reprinting a lab slip and recollecting the specimen.
4. The results on Mrs. Smith will have to be removed from all records and the reason why they are being removed must be documented according to laboratory protocol.

Chapter 13

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. d	5. c	9. b
2. c	6. c	10. b
3. d	7. d	
4. d	8. a	

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 13-1 *24-hour Urine Specimen Collection*

1. No. The specimen is missing a critical portion of urine.
2. The phlebotomist should not accept the specimen without first consulting a supervisor. Whether or not the specimen will be accepted depends upon the type of test and individual lab policy and may require consultation with the patient's physician. If it is determined that the specimen will be accepted, the phlebotomist should note the discrepancy in collection time and identify the person who authorized acceptance on the requisition or by computer entry.
3. Patients should be given verbal and written instructions in 24-hour urine collection procedures and verbal feedback should be obtained to ensure that the patient has complete understanding of the procedure. Patients should be made aware of the importance of timing and reminded to set an alarm if necessary.

Chapter 14

ANSWERS TO STUDY & REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. b	5. b	9. d
2. d	6. b	10. c
3. b	7. c	
4. d	8. d	

ANSWERS TO CASE STUDIES

CASE STUDY 14-1 *ABG Collection Complications*

1. The phlebotomist should alert the patient's nurse to the problem.
2. A thrombus may be blocking blood flow and affecting the pulse.
3. The patient moving his arm very likely resulted in the phlebotomist missing the artery. In addition, the restless and agitated state of the patient may have contributed to an arteriospasm, which would have made it harder to hit the artery.
4. The phlebotomist should have made an attempt to calm the patient. In addition, he should have been prepared for movement by the patient, or he could have asked the patient's nurse to help steady the arm, since the patient was restless and agitated.
5. Although the specimen appears dark in color, the phlebotomist can be fairly certain that the specimen is arterial because it pulsed into the tube. It is probably dark in color because the patient has breathing difficulties.

APPENDIX

F

Tube Guides

BD Helping all people live healthy lives

BD Vacutainer® Venous Blood Collection
Tube Guide

For the full array of BD Vacutainer® Blood Collection Tubes, visit www.bd.com/vacutainer.
Many are available in a variety of sizes and draw volumes (for pediatric applications). Refer to our website for full descriptions.

BD Vacutainer® Tubes with BD Hemogard™ Closure	BD Vacutainer® Tubes with Conventional Stopper	Additive	Inversions at Blood Collection*	Laboratory Use	Your Lab's Draw Volume/Remarks
Gold	Red/ Gray	• Clot activator and gel for serum separation	5	For serum determinations in chemistry. May be used for routine blood donor screening and diagnostic testing of serum for infectious disease.** Tube inversions ensure mixing of clot activator with blood. Blood clotting time: 30 minutes.	
Light Green	Green/ Gray	• Lithium heparin and gel for plasma separation	8	For plasma determinations in chemistry. Tube inversions ensure mixing of anticoagulant (heparin) with blood to prevent clotting.	
Red	Red	• Silicone coated (glass) • Clot activator, Silicone coated (plastic)	0 5	For serum determinations in chemistry. May be used for routine blood donor screening and diagnostic testing of serum for infectious disease.** Tube inversions ensure mixing of clot activator with blood. Blood clotting time: 60 minutes.	
	Orange	• BD Vacutainer® Rapid Serum Tube • Thrombin-based clot activator	5 to 6	For stat serum determinations in chemistry. Tube inversions ensure mixing of clot activator with blood. Blood clotting time: 5 minutes.	
Orange		• Thrombin-based clot activator	8	For stat serum determinations in chemistry. Tube inversions ensure mixing of clot activator with blood. Blood clotting time: 5 minutes.	
Royal Blue		• Clot activator (plastic serum) • K_2EDTA (plastic)	8 8	For trace-element, toxicology, and nutritional-chemistry determinations. Special stopper formulation provides low levels of trace elements (see package insert). Tube inversions ensure mixing of either clot activator or anticoagulant (EDTA) with blood.	
Green	Green	• Sodium heparin • Lithium heparin	8 8	For plasma determinations in chemistry. Tube inversions ensure mixing of anticoagulant (heparin) with blood to prevent clotting.	
Gray	Gray	• Potassium oxalate/ sodium fluoride • Sodium fluoride/Na_2 EDTA • Sodium fluoride (serum tube)	8 8 8	For glucose determinations. Oxalate and EDTA anticoagulants will give plasma samples. Sodium fluoride is the antiglycolytic agent. Tube inversions ensure proper mixing of additive with blood.	
Tan		• K_2EDTA (plastic)	8	For lead determinations. This tube is certified to contain less than .01 µg/mL(ppm) lead. Tube inversions prevent clotting.	
	Yellow	• Sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS) • Acid citrate dextrose additives (ACD): **Solution A -** 22.0 g/L trisodium citrate, 8.0 g/L citric acid, 24.5 g/L dextrose **Solution B -** 13.2 g/L trisodium citrate, 4.8 g/L citric acid, 14.7 g/L dextrose	8 8 8	SPS for blood culture specimen collections in microbiology. ACD for use in blood bank studies, HLA phenotyping, and DNA and paternity testing. Tube inversions ensure mixing of anticoagulant with blood to prevent clotting.	

(*continued*)

BD Vacutainer® Tubes with BD Hemogard™ Closure	BD Vacutainer® Tubes with Conventional Stopper	Additive	Inversions at Blood Collection*	Laboratory Use	Your Lab's Draw Volume/Remarks
Lavender	Lavender	• Liquid K_3EDTA (glass) • Spray-coated K_2EDTA (plastic)	8 8	K_2EDTA and K_3EDTA for whole blood hematology determinations. K_2EDTA may be used for routine immunohematology testing, and blood donor screening.*** Tube inversions ensure mixing of anticoagulant (EDTA) with blood to prevent clotting.	
White		• BD Vacutainer® PPT™ Tube • K_2EDTA with gel	8	For use in molecular diagnostic test methods (such as, but not limited to, polymerase chain reaction [PCR] and/or branched DNA [bDNA] amplification techniques.) Tube inversions ensure mixing of anticoagulant (EDTA) with blood to prevent clotting.	
Pink	Pink	• Spray-coated K_2EDTA (plastic)	8	For whole blood hematology determinations. May be used for routine immunohematology testing and blood donor screening.*** Designed with special cross-match label for patient information required by the AABB. Tube inversions prevent clotting.	
Light Blue Clear	.ight lue	• Buffered sodium citrate 0.105 M (≈3.2%) glass 0.109 M (3.2%) plastic • Citrate, theophylline, adenosine, dipyridamole (CTAD)	3-4 3-4	For coagulation determinations. CTAD for selected platelet function assays and routine coagulation determination. Tube inversions ensure mixing of anticoagulant (citrate) to prevent clotting.	
Clear	New Red/ Light Gray	• None (plastic)	0	For use as a discard tube or secondary specimen tube.	

Note: BD Vacutainer® Tubes for pediatric and partial draw applications can be found on our website.

BD Diagnostics
Preanalytical Systems
1 Becton Drive
Franklin Lakes, NJ 07417 USA

BD Global Technical Services: 1.800.631.0174
BD Customer Service: 1.888.237.2762
www.bd.com/vacutainer

* Invert gently, do not shake
** The performance characteristics of these tubes have not been established for infectious disease testing in general; therefore, users must validate the use of these tubes for their specific assay-instrument/reagent system combinations and specimen storage conditions.
*** The performance characteristics of these tubes have not been established for immunohematology testing in general; therefore, users must validate the use of these tubes for their specific assay-instrument/reagent system combinations and specimen storage conditions.

BD, BD Logo and all other trademarks are property of Becton, Dickinson and Company. © 2010 BD

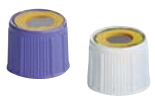
Printed in USA 1/10 VS5229-11

Reprinted with permission from Becton Dickinson.

VACUETTE® Tube Guide

Venous Blood Collection Tubes

greiner bio-one

Cap Color	Additive	Number of Inversions	Testing Disciplines	Comments
	No Additive	5-10	Discard tube Transport/Storage Immunohematology Viral Markers	
	Sodium Citrate 3.2% (0.109 M) 3.8% (0.129 M)	4	Coagulation	If a winged blood collection set is used AND the coagulation specimen is drawn first, a discard tube is recommended to be drawn prior to this tube to ensure the proper anticoagulant-to-blood ratio.
	Clot Activator	5-10	Chemistry Immunochemistry Immunohematology Viral Markers	For complete clotting, 30 minutes minimum clotting time is required. Incomplete or delayed mixing may result in delayed clotting.
	Clot Activator w/Gel	5-10	Chemistry Immunochemistry TDMs	For complete clotting, 30 minutes minimum clotting time is required. Incomplete or delayed mixing may result in delayed clotting.
	Lithium Heparin Lithium Heparin w/Gel Sodium Heparin	5-10	Chemistry Immunochemistry	
	K_3 EDTA K_2 EDTA	8-10	Hematology Immunohematology Molecular Diagnostics Viral Markers	
	K_2 EDTA Gel	8-10	Molecular Diagnostics	
	Potassium Oxalate/ Sodium Fluoride	5-10	Glycolytic Inhibitor Glucose and Lactate	
	Sodium Heparin No Additive	5-10	Trace Elements	

Ring Indicator

yellow - Gel Separation

black - Standard Draw

white - Pediatric Draw
see reverse

VACUETTE® Tube Guide

greiner bio-one

Pediatric or Small Volume Draw Tubes (2 ml or Less)

Cap Color	Additive	Number of Inversions	Testing Disciplines	Comments
	Clot Activator	5-10	Chemistry Immunochemistry Immunohematology Viral Markers	For complete clotting, 30 minutes minimum clotting time is required. Incomplete or delayed mixing may result in delayed clotting.
	Lithium Heparin Sodium Heparin	5-10	Chemistry Immunochemistry	
	Sodium Citrate 3.2% (0.109M) 3.8% (0.129M)	4	Coagulation	If a winged blood collection set is used AND the coagulation specimen is drawn first, a discard tube is recommended to be drawn prior to this tube to ensure the proper anticoagulant-to-blood ratio.
	Potassium Oxalate/ Sodium Fluoride	5-10	Glycolytic Inhibitor Glucose and Lactate	
	K_3 EDTA K_2 EDTA	8-10	Hematology Immunohematology Molecular Diagnostics Viral Markers	

Ring Indicator

white - Pediatric Draw

Reprinted with permission from Greiner.

Glossary

abdominal cavity: Body space between the diaphragm and the pelvis, which houses abdominal organs such as the stomach, liver, pancreas, gallbladder, spleen, and kidneys.

abducted: Away from the body; the position of the patient's arm for arterial blood gas collection.

ABGs: Arterial blood gases.

ABO blood group system: Four blood types, A, B, AB, and O, based on the presence or absence of two antigens identified as A and B.

accession number: A number generated by the laboratory information system (LIS) when the specimen request is entered into the computer.

accession: The process of recording in the order received.

acid citrate dextrose (ACD): An anticoagulant solution available in two formulations (solution A and solution B) for immunohematology tests such as DNA testing and human leukocyte antigen (HLA) phenotyping, which is used in paternity evaluation and to determine transplant compatibility.

acidosis: A dangerous condition in which the pH of the blood is abnormally low (acidic).

ACT: Activated clotting time.

activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT or PTT): Test used to evaluate the function of the intrinsic coagulation pathway and monitor heparin therapy.

additive: A substance (other than the tube stopper or coating) such as an anticoagulant, antiglycolytic agent, separator gel, preservative, or clot activator placed within a tube or collection container. An additive can be a liquid, powder, or spray-dried coating.

adipose: Denoting fat.

aerobic: With air.

aerosol: A fine mist of the specimen.

AFP: Alpha-fetoprotein.

agglutinate: To clump together; as in the antigen–antibody reaction between red blood cells of two different blood types.

agranulocytes: White blood cells (WBCs) that lack granules or have extremely fine granules that are not easy to see.

AHCCCS: Arizona Healthcare Cost Containment System.

airborne precautions: Precautions used in addition to standard precautions for patients known or suspected of being infected with microorganisms transmitted by airborne droplet nuclei.

airborne transmission: Transmission of disease by dispersal of evaporated droplet nuclei containing an infectious agent.

aliquot: A portion of a specimen used for testing.

alkalosis: A dangerous condition in which the pH of the blood is abnormally high (alkaline).

Allen test: A simple noninvasive test to assess collateral circulation before collecting a blood specimen from the radial artery.

alpha-fetoprotein (AFP): An antigen normally present in the human fetus that is also found in amniotic fluid and maternal serum. It is also present in certain pathological conditions in males and nonpregnant females.

alveoli: Tiny air sacs in the lungs where the exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide takes place.

amniotic fluid: Clear, almost colorless to pale-yellow fluid that fills the membrane (amnion or amniotic sac) surrounding and cushioning a fetus in the uterus.

anabolism: A constructive process by which the body converts simple compounds into complex substances needed to carry out the cellular activities of the body.

anaerobic: Without air.

analyte: A general term for a substance undergoing analysis.

anatomic position: The position of standing erect, arms at the side, with eyes and palms facing forward. In describing the direction or the location of a given point of the body, medical personnel normally refer to the body as if the patient were in the anatomic position, regardless of actual body position.

anatomy: The structure of an organism, or the science of the structural composition of living organisms. In humans, the structural composition of the body.

anchor: To secure firmly, as in holding a vein in place by pulling the skin taut with the thumb.

anemia: An abnormal reduction in the number of red blood cells (RBCs) in the circulating blood.

antecubital fossa: The area of the arm that is anterior to (in front of) and below the bend of the elbow, where the major veins for venipuncture are located.

antecubital veins: Major superficial veins located in the antecubital fossa.
anterior: Pertaining to or referring to the front of the body; also called ventral.
antibody: Protein substance manufactured by the body in response to a foreign protein or antigen and directed against it.
anticoagulant: A substance that prevents blood from clotting.
antigen: A substance that causes the formation of antibodies directed against it.
antiglycolytic agent: A substance that prevents glycolysis, the breakdown or metabolism of glucose (blood sugar) by blood cells—e.g., sodium fluoride.
antimicrobial removal device (ARD): Blood culture bottle containing a resin that removes antimicrobials (antibiotics) from a blood specimen.
antimicrobial therapy: Use of antibiotics to kill or inhibit the growth of microorganisms.
antiseptic: A substance that inhibits the growth of bacteria and is used to clean the skin.
aorta: The largest artery in the body, arising from the left ventricle of the heart; it is approximately 1 inch (2.5 cm) in diameter.
APC: Ambulatory patient classification.
ARD: Antimicrobial removal device.
armband/wristband: Two other names for an identification band or bracelet.
arrhythmia: Irregularity in the heart rate, rhythm, or beat.
arterial line (A-line or Art-line): A catheter that is placed in an artery. It is most commonly placed in a radial artery and is typically used to provide accurate and continuous measurement of a patient's blood pressure, to collect blood gas specimens and other blood specimens, and for the administration of drugs such as dopamine.
arterialized: Arterial composition of capillary blood has been increased by warming the site to increase blood flow.
arteries: Blood vessels that carry blood away from the heart.
arterioles: The smallest branches of arteries, which join with the capillaries.
arteriospasm: A reflex (involuntary) contraction of the artery that can be caused by pain or irritation during needle penetration of the artery muscle or that may result from a patient's anxiety during arterial puncture.
arteriovenous (AV) shunt: Surgical fusion or artificial connection of an artery and a vein. It is typically created to provide access for dialysis; includes AV fistula and graft.
ASAP: As soon as possible.
aseptic: Sterile or pathogen-free.
assault: An act or threat causing another to be in fear of immediate battery.
atria (singular, atrium): The upper receiving chambers on each side of the heart.
atrioventricular (AV) valves: The valves at the entrances to the ventricles.
autologous donation: Blood that is donated for one's own use.
avascular: Without blood or lymph vessels.
AV graft: Surgical connection of an artery and vein using a piece of vein or artificial tubing.
AV fistula: Permanent surgical fusion of an artery and vein that is typically created to provide access for dialysis.
AV shunt/fistula/graft: Permanent surgical fusion or artificial connection of an artery and vein that is typically created to provide access for dialysis.
axons: Threadlike fibers that carry messages away from the nerve cell body.
BAC: Blood alcohol concentration.
bacteremia: Bacteria in the blood.
bar code: A series of black stripes and white spaces of varying widths that correspond to letters and numbers.
barrel: A term for the cylindrical body of a syringe, which has graduated markings in either milliliters (mL) or cubic centimeters (cc).
basal state: The resting metabolic state of the body early in the morning after fasting for a minimum of 12 hours.
basilic vein: Large vein on the inner side of the antecubital area that is the last choice vein for venipuncture.
basophils (basos): Normally the least numerous WBCs, they release histamine and heparin, which enhance the inflammatory response; identified by their large dark blue–staining granules, which often obscure a typically S-shaped nucleus.
battery: Intentional harmful or offensive touching or use of force on a person without that person's consent or legal justification.
BBP: Bloodborne pathogen.
bedside manner: The behavior of a healthcare provider toward or as perceived by a patient.
bevel: The point of a needle that is cut on a slant for ease of skin entry.
bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-): An ion that plays a role in transporting carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the blood to the lungs and in regulating blood pH. HCO_3^- is formed in the red blood cells and plasma from CO_2.
bilirubin: A product of the breakdown of red blood cells.
biohazard: Short for biological hazard; anything potentially harmful to health.
biosafety: Term used to describe the safe handling of biologic substances that pose a risk to health.
bleeding time (BT): Test that measures the time required for blood to stop flowing from a standardized puncture on the inner surface of the forearm.
blood alcohol concentration (BAC): Concentration of alcohol in a person's blood used as a measurement of intoxication for legal or medical purposes.

blood film/smear: A drop of blood spread thinly on a microscope slide.
blood pressure: A measure of the force (pressure) exerted by the blood on the walls of blood vessels.
bloodborne pathogen (BBP): Term applied to infectious microorganisms in blood or other body fluids.
Bloodborne Pathogens (BBP) Standard: OSHA regulations designed to protect employees with potential occupational exposure to pathogens found in blood or other body fluids or substances.
BNP: B-type natriuretic peptide.
body cavities: Large, hollow spaces in the body that house the various organs.
body plane: A flat surface resulting from a real or imaginary cut through a body in the normal anatomic position.
body substance isolation (BSI): Infection control precautions that preceded standard precautions and differed from universal precautions by requiring glove use when contacting any moist body substance.
brachial artery: Artery located in the medial anterior aspect of the antecubital fossa near the insertion of the biceps muscle; the second choice for arterial puncture.
bradycardia: Slow heart rate; less than 60 beats per minute.
breach of confidentiality: Failure to keep privileged medical information private.
bronchi (singular, bronchus): Two airways that branch off of the lower end of the trachea and lead into the lungs; one branch into the left and another into the right lung.
BT: Bleeding time test.
B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP): Cardiac hormone produced by the heart in response to ventricular volume expansion and pressure overload.
buccal swabs: Swabs of material collected from the inside of the cheek.
buffy coat: The layer of WBCs and platelets that forms between the RBCs and plasma when anticoagulated blood settles or is centrifuged.
bursae (singular, bursa): Small synovial fluid–filled sacs in the vicinity of joints; they ease friction between joint parts or tendons and bone.
butterfly needle: Another term for a winged infusion set.
C&S: Culture and sensitivity.
calcaneus: Medical term for heel bone.
calcium (Ca): A mineral that is essential to the clotting process and also needed for proper bone and tooth formation, nerve conduction, and muscle contraction.
CAP: College of American Pathologists.
capillaries: Microscopic one-cell-thick vessels that connect the arterioles and venules, forming a bridge between the arterial and venous circulations.
carbaminohemoglobin: Carbon dioxide combined with hemoglobin.
cardiac cycle: One complete contraction and subsequent relaxation of the heart.
cardiac output: Volume of blood pumped by the heart in 1 minute, averaging 5 liters per minute.
cardiac troponin I (TnI): A protein specific to heart muscle.
cardiac troponin T (TnT): Heart muscle–specific protein; elevated longer than TnI.
carryover: Cross-contamination or transfer of additive from one tube to the next.
cartilage: A type of hard, nonvascular connective tissue.
case manager: The person who coordinates medical services on behalf of a patient.
catabolism: The process by which complex substances are broken down into simple ones, including the digestion of food.
catheterized: Term describing a urine specimen collected from a sterile catheter inserted through the urethra into the bladder.
causative agent: The pathogen responsible for causing an infection; also called the infectious agent.
CBGs: Capillary blood gases (CBGs); blood gas determinations performed on arterialized capillary specimens.
celite: An inert clay that enhances the coagulation process.
Celsius: A temperature scale on which the melting point is 0° and the boiling point is 100°. Normal body temperature expressed in Celsius is 37°; also known as the Centigrade scale.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC): The division of the U.S. Public Health Service charged with the investigation and control of disease with epidemic potential.
Centigrade: *see* Celsius.
central nervous system (CNS): The brain and spinal cord.
central processing: Screening and prioritizing area where specimens are received and prepared for testing.
central vascular access device (CVAD): Indwelling line; tubing inserted into a main vein or artery used primarily for administering fluids and medications, monitoring pressures, and drawing blood.
central venous catheter (CVC): A line inserted into a large vein such as the subclavian and advanced into the superior vena cava, proximal to the right atrium. The exit end is surgically tunneled under the skin to a site several inches away in the chest; also called central venous line.
centrifuge: A machine that spins the blood tubes at a high number of revolutions per minute.
cephalic vein: The second-choice antecubital vein for venipuncture, located in the lateral aspect of the antecubital fossa.
cerebrospinal fluid (CSF): Clear, colorless liquid that circulates within the cavities surrounding the brain and spinal cord; it has many of the same components as plasma.

certification: Evidence that an individual has mastered fundamental competencies in a particular technical area.

chain of custody: Special strict protocol for forensic specimens that requires detailed documentation tracking the specimen from the time it is collected until the results are reported.

chain of infection: A number of components or events that, when present in a series, lead to an infection.

chloride (Cl^-): Electrolyte responsible for maintaining cellular integrity by influencing osmotic pressure and acid–base and water balance.

chordae tendineae: Thin threads of tissue that attach the atrioventricular valves to the walls of the ventricles to help keep them from flipping back into the atria.

circadian: Biologic rhythms or variations having a 24-hour cycle.

circulatory system: System that consists of the cardiovascular system (heart, blood, and blood vessels) and the lymphatic system (lymph, lymph vessels, and nodes) and is the means by which oxygen and nutrients are carried to the cells and carbon dioxide and other wastes are carried away from them.

civil action: Legal actions in which the alleged injured party sues for monetary damages.

Cl^-: Chloride.

clay sealant: A type of sealer used for closing the end of a microhematocrit tube.

clean catch: Method of obtaining a urine sample so that it is free of contamination from the external genital area.

CLIA '88: Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988.

Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI): A global, nonprofit, standards-developing organization comprising representatives from the profession, industy, and government.

clot activator: A substance that enhances the coagulation process.

CLSI: Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute.

CMS: Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services.

coagulation cascade: Sequential activation of the coagulation factors.

coagulation: The blood-clotting process.

collateral circulation: An area supplied with blood from more than one artery so that circulation can be maintained if one vessel is obstructed.

combining form: A word root combined with a vowel.

combining vowel: A vowel (frequently an "o") that is added between two word roots or a word root and a suffix to make pronunciation easier.

common pathway: Coagulation pathway involving the conversion of prothrombin to thrombin, which splits fibrinogen into the fibrin that entraps blood cells and creates the fibrin clot.

communicable: Able to spread from person to person, as a disease.

communication barriers: Biases or personalized filters that are major obstructions to verbal communication.

compatibility: Ability to be mixed together with favorable results, as in blood transfusions.

competencies: Educational standards for phlebotomy programs.

concentric circles: Circles with a common center; starting from the center and moving outward in ever-widening arcs.

confidentiality: The ethical cornerstone of professional behavior; the practice of regarding information concerning a patient as privileged and not to be disclosed to anyone without the patient's authorization.

contact precautions: Precautions used in addition to standard precautions when a patient is known or suspected of being infected or colonized with epidemiologically important microorganisms that can be transmitted by direct contact with the patient or indirect contact with surfaces or patient-care items.

contact transmission: Transfer of an infectious agent to a susceptible host through direct or indirect contact. *See* **direct** and **indirect contact transmission**.

continuous quality improvement (CQI): An ongoing effort to improve the quality of service.

continuum of care: A holistic, coordinated system for healthcare services.

coronary arteries: Arteries that branch off of the aorta just beyond the aortic semilunar valve that deliver blood to the heart muscle.

CPD: Citrate-phosphate-dextrose, an additive used in collecting units of blood for transfusion. Citrate prevents clotting by chelating calcium, phosphate stabilizes pH, and dextrose provides cells with energy and helps keep them alive.

CPT: Current procedural terminology codes.

CPU: Central processing unit.

CQI: Continuous Quality Improvement.

cranial cavity: Body space that houses the brain.

criminal action: Legal recourse for offenses committed against the law that can lead to imprisonment of the offender.

CRP: C-reactive protein.

C-reactive protein (CRP): A β-globulin found in the blood that responds to inflammation and therefore can be used as a sensitive though nonspecific marker of systemic inflammation.

crossmatch: A test to determine suitability of mixing donor and recipient blood.

CSF: Cerebrospinal fluid.

culture and sensitivity (C&S): Microbiology test that includes placing a specimen on special nutrient media which encourages the growth of microorganisms, identifying any that grow, and then performing sensitivity/antibiotic susceptibility testing to identify antibiotics that will be effective against them.

C-urea breath test: A test used to detect *Helicobacter pylori* bacteria based on the fact that the bacteria produce urease, an enzyme that breaks down urea and is not normally present in the stomach.
cursor: Flashing indicator on the computer screen.
CVAD: Central vascular access device.
CVC: Central venous catheter.
cyanotic: Marked by cyanosis or a bluish color from lack of oxygen.
cystic fibrosis: Disorder of the exocrine glands that affects many body systems but primarily the lungs, upper respiratory tract, liver, and pancreas resulting in abnormally high levels (2 to 5 times normal) of chloride in the sweat.
data: Information collected for analysis or computation.
defendant: In a lawsuit, a person or persons against whom a complaint is filed.
delta check: Comparison of current results of a lab test with previous results for the same test on the same patient.
dendrites: Structures that carry messages to the nerve cell body.
deposition: A process in which one party questions another under oath while a court reporter records every word.
dermis: Corium or true skin; a layer composed of elastic and fibrous connective tissue.
diapedesis: Process by which WBCs slip through the walls of the capillaries into the tissues.
diaphragm: The dome-shaped muscle that separates the abdominal cavity from the thoracic cavity.
diastole: The relaxing phase of the cardiac cycle.
diastolic pressure: Pressure in the arteries during relaxation of the ventricles.
differential (diff): A test in which the number, type, and characteristics of blood cells are determined by examining a stained blood smear under a microscope.
direct-contact transmission: Transfer of an infectious agent to a susceptible host through close or intimate contact, such as touching or kissing.
directional terms: Medical terms that describe the relationship of an area or part of the body with respect to the rest of the body or body part.
discard tube: Also called a clear tube; a tube used to collect and discard approximately 5 mL of blood to prevent IV or tissue fluid contamination of a specimen.
discovery: Formal process in litigation that involves taking depositions and interrogating the parties involved.
disinfectant: Substance or solution used to remove or kill microorganisms on surfaces and instruments.
distal: Farthest from the center of the body, origin, or point of attachment.
diurnal: Happening daily.
DNAR: Do not attempt resuscitation.
DNR: Do not resuscitate.
"Do Not Use" list: A list of confusing (or potentially dangerous) abbreviations, symbols, and acronyms that must be included on this list by every organization accredited by the Joint Commission.
dorsal: Posterior or pertaining to the back.
dorsal cavities: Internal spaces located in the back of the body.
DOT: Department of Transportation.
DRGs: Diagnosis-related groups.
droplet precautions: Precautions used in addition to standard precautions for patients known or suspected of being infected with microorganisms transmitted by droplets (particles larger than 5 μm) generated when a patient talks, coughs, or sneezes and during certain procedures such as suctioning.
droplet transmission: Transfer of an infectious agent to the mucous membranes of the mouth, nose, or conjunctiva of the eyes via infectious droplets (particles 5 μm in diameter or larger) generated by talking, coughing, sneezing or during procedures such as suctioning.
drug screening: The practice of testing employees' or athletes' urine or blood to screen for illicit or illegal drugs.
due care: The level of care that a person of ordinary intelligence and good sense would exercise under the given circumstances.
edema: Swelling due to abnormal accumulation of fluid in the tissues.
EDTA: Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid, an anticoagulant that prevents coagulation by binding or chelating calcium; it is used for hematology studies because it preserves cell morphology and inhibits platelet clumping.
electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG): An actual record of the electrical currents corresponding to each event in heart muscle contraction.
electrolytes: Substances such as potassium or sodium that conduct electricity when dissolved in water.
EMLA: A eutectic (easily melted) mixture of local anesthetics.
endocardium: The thin inner layer of the heart.
endocrine glands: Glands that secrete hormones directly into the bloodstream.
endocrine: Refers to a gland that secretes directly into the bloodstream.
engineering controls: Devices such as sharps disposal containers and needles with safety features that isolate or remove a bloodborne pathogen hazard from the workplace.
"enter" key: Button on keyboard for data input.
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA): A federal agency that regulates the disposal of hazardous waste.
eosinophils (eos): WBCs that ingest and detoxify foreign protein, helping to turn off immune reactions; they increase with allergies and pinworm infestations and are identified by their beadlike, bright orange-red–staining granules.

EPA: Environmental Protection Agency.
epicardium: The thin outer layer of the heart
epidermis: The outermost and thinnest layer of the skin.
epiglottis: A thin, leaf-shaped structure that covers the entrance of the larynx during swallowing.
epithelial: Consisting of epithelium.
epithelium: The avascular layer of cells that forms the epidermis and the surface layer of mucous and serous membranes.
erythema: Redness.
erythrocytes: Red blood cells (RBCs); anuclear, disk-shaped blood cells whose main function is to carry oxygen from the lungs to the tissue cells and to transport carbon dioxide away from the cells to the lungs.
esophagus: The tube that carries food and liquid from the throat to the stomach.
ethanol: Ethyl or grain alcohol.
ETOH: Abbreviation for ethanol or blood alcohol.
evacuated tube system (ETS): A closed system in which the patient's blood flows directly into a collection tube through a needle inserted into a vein.
evacuated tube: Type of tube used in blood collection that has a premeasured vacuum and is color-coded to denote the additive inside.
exocrine glands: Glands that secrete substances through ducts.
expectorate: Spit; the act of forcibly ejecting saliva or other substances from the mouth
exsanguinate: To remove all blood.
exsanguination: Blood loss to a point where life cannot be sustained.
external respiration: Exchange of respiratory gases in the lungs.
external: On or near the surface of the body; superficial.
extrasystoles: Extra heartbeats before the normal beat.
extravascular: Outside the blood vessels.
extrinsic pathway: Coagulation pathway initiated by the release of thromboplastin from injured tissue.
FAA: Federal Aviation Administration.
fallopian tubes: Ducts that carry ova from the ovaries to the uterus.
FAN: Fastidious antimicrobial neutralization.
fastidious antimicrobial neutralization (FAN): Blood culture bottle that contains activated charcoal that neutralizes antibiotics in a blood specimen.
fasting: No food or drink except water for approximately 12 hours.
feather: Thinnest area of a properly made blood smear where a differential is performed.
fecal occult blood test: A test that detects hidden (occult) blood in stool (feces).
femoral artery: Large artery located superficially in the groin, lateral to the pubic bone; it is the largest artery used for arterial puncture.
fibrillations: Rapid, uncoordinated contractions.
fibrin degradation products (fibrin split products): Fragments remaining from the breakdown of fibrin.
fibrin: A filamentous protein formed by the action of thrombin on fibrinogen.
fibrinogen: Also called factor I; a protein found in plasma that is essential for the clotting of blood.
fibrinolysis: Stage 4 of hemostasis; a process that results in the removal or dissolution of a blood clot once healing has occurred.
FiO_2: Fractional inspired oxygen, as in oxygen therapy.
fire tetrahedron: The latest way of looking at the chemistry of fire, in which the chemical reaction that produces fire is added as a fourth component to the traditional fire triangle components of fuel, heat, and oxygen.
flanges: Extensions on the sides of an evacuated tube holder that aid in tube placement and removal.
flea: Small metal bar that is inserted into the tube after collection of a capillary blood gas specimen to aid in mixing the anticoagulant by means of a magnet.
FOBT: Fecal occult blood test.
fomites: Inanimate objects, such as countertops and computer keyboards, that can harbor material containing infectious agents.
forensic specimen: Specimen collected for legal reasons.
formed elements: Cellular portion of the blood.
fraud: Deceitful practice or false portrayal of facts by either words or conduct.
frontal plane: Divides the body vertically into front and back portions; also called coronal plane.
FUO: fever of unknown origin.
galactosemia: Inherited disorder caused by lack of the enzyme needed to convert the milk sugar galactose into glucose, which is needed by the body to produce energy.
gallbladder: Accessory organ to the digestive system.
gametes: Sex cells.
gastric analysis: A test that examines stomach contents for abnormal substances and measures gastric acid concentration to evaluate stomach acid production.
gastrointestinal (GI) tract: The passageway that extends from the mouth to the anus through the pharynx, esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines.
gatekeeper: Primary physician who serves as the patient's advocate and advises the patient on his or her healthcare needs.
gauge: A number that relates to the diameter of the lumen of a needle.
germ cells: Gametes or sex cells.
germicide: An agent that kills pathogenic microorganisms.
glomerulus: A tuft of capillaries that filter water and dissolved substances, including wastes, from the blood.
GLPs: Good Laboratory Practices.
glucose tolerance test (GTT): A test used to diagnose carbohydrate metabolism problems.

glycolysis: The breakdown or metabolism of glucose (blood sugar) by blood cells.

glycosylated hemoglobin: A substance that is increased in the RBCs of patients with diabetes mellitus and used as a retrospective index of glucose control over time.

gonads: Glands that manufacture and store gametes and produce hormones that regulate the reproductive process.

gram (g): The basic unit of weight in the metric system; approximately equal to a cubic centimeter or milliliter of water.

granulocytes: WBCs with easily visible granules.

great saphenous vein: The longest vein in the body, located in the leg.

GTT: Glucose tolerance test.

guaiac test: A test for hidden blood in feces; also called occult blood test.

HAI: Healthcare-associated infection

hardware: Computer equipment used to process data.

Hazard Communication (HazCom) Standard: The OSHA Standard that requires employers to maintain documentation on all hazardous chemicals.

HazCom: Abbreviation for the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard.

HBV: Hepatitis B virus; the virus that cause hepatitis B.

HCG: Human chorionic gonadotropin.

HCO_3^-: Bicarbonate ion.

HCV: Hepatitis C virus; the virus that cause hepatitis C.

HDN: Hemolytic disease of the newborn.

healthcare-associated infection: Applies to infections associated with healthcare delivery in any healthcare setting, including home care.

Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee: A federal organization established in 1991 that advises the CDC on updating guidelines regarding the prevention of nosocomial infection.

heart rate: Number of heartbeats per minute, which is normally around 72 beats per minute.

Helicobacter pylori (H. pylori): Bacterial species secreting substances that damage the lining of the stomach and cause chronic gastritis, which can lead to peptic ulcer disease.

hematocrit (Hct): Percentage by volume of red blood cells in whole blood.

hematoma: A swelling or mass of blood (often clotted) such as that caused by blood leaking from a blood vessel during or following venipuncture.

hematopoiesis: *see* **hemopoiesis.**

hemoconcentration: A decrease in the fluid content of the blood, with a subsequent increase in nonfilterable large molecule– or protein-based blood components such as red blood cells.

hemoglobin (Hgb or Hb): An iron-containing pigment in RBCs that enables them to transport oxygen and carbon dioxide and also gives them their red color.

hemolysis: Damage or destruction of RBCs and release of hemoglobin into the fluid portion of a specimen, causing the serum color to range from pink (slight hemolysis) to red (gross hemolysis).

hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN): Destruction of RBCs of an Rh-positive fetus by Rh antibodies produced by an Rh-negative mother, which cross the placenta into the fetal circulation.

hemolyzed: The condition of serum or plasma that contains hemoglobin from broken RBCs.

hemopoiesis: Production and development of blood cells and other formed elements, normally in the bone marrow.

hemostasis: Process by which the body stops the leakage of blood from the vascular system after injury; also known as the coagulation process.

hemostatic plug: Blood clot formed from blood cells and platelets trapped in a network of fibrin strands.

heparin: Anticoagulant that prevents clotting by inhibiting thrombin formation.

heparin lock: A catheter or cannula with a stopcock or cap and a diaphragm to provide access for administering medication or drawing blood.

heparin management test (HMT): A test used in monitoring high-dose heparin, needed in catheterization laboratories and during surgery.

HICPAC: Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee.

HIPAA: Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act.

histologic/histological: Pertaining to the microscopic structure of tissue.

HIV: human immunodeficiency virus.

HMOs: Health maintenance organizations.

HMT: Heparin management test.

homeostasis: The "steady state" (state of equilibrium or balance) of the internal environment of the body, which is maintained through feedback and regulation in response to internal and external changes.

hormones: Powerful chemical substances that affect many body processes.

hospice: A type of care for patients who are terminally ill.

HPC: handheld PC.

H. pylori: *Helicobacter pylori*.

hub: The end of the needle that attaches to the blood collection device; also the threaded end of a tube holder where the needle attaches.

human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG or hCG): Hormone that appears in both urine and serum beginning approximately 10 days after conception. HCG is the substance detected in pregnancy tests.

human immunodeficiency virus (HIV): The virus that causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).

hyperglycemia: A condition in which the level of sugar (glucose) in the blood is high, as in diabetes mellitus.

hyperkalemia: A high concentration of potassium in the blood.
hypersecretion: Secreting too much.
hypodermic needle: The type of needle used with the syringe system.
hypoglycemia: Condition in which the level of sugar (glucose) in the blood is low.
hypokalemia: A low concentration of potassium in the blood.
hypernatremia: A high level of sodium in the blood.
hyponatremia: A low level of sodium in the blood.
hypoxemia: A low level of oxygen in the blood
hyposecretion: Secreting too little.
hypothyroidism: A disorder characterized by insufficient levels of thyroid hormones.
iatrogenic: An adjective used to describe an adverse condition brought on by the effects of treatment.
iCa^{2+}: Ionized calcium.
ICD-9-CM: International Classification of Diseases, Ninth Revision, Clinical Modification.
icons: Images used to request the appropriate programs or functions on a computer.
icteric: A term meaning "marked by jaundice"; used to describe serum, plasma, or urine specimens that have an abnormal deep-yellow to yellow-brown color due to high bilirubin levels.
icterus: Also called jaundice; a condition characterized by a high bilirubin (a product of the breakdown of red blood cells) level in the blood, leading to deposits of yellow bile pigment in the skin, mucous membranes, and sclerae (whites of the eyes), giving the patient a yellow appearance.
ID band/bracelet: Identification band/bracelet.
ID card: Clinic-issued patient identification document.
ID code: Unique identification for users.
IDS: Integrated healthcare delivery system.
immune: Protected from or resistant to a particular disease or infection because of the development of antibody through vaccination or recovery from the disease.
implanted port: A small chamber attached to an indwelling line that is surgically implanted under the skin in the upper chest or arm.
indirect contact transmission: Transmission of an infectious agent that occurs when a susceptible host touches contaminated objects such as patient bed linens, clothing, or wound dressings.
indwelling line: Another name for central venous catheter (CVC).
infant respiratory distress syndrome (IRDS): A respiratory condition in a premature infant caused by a deficiency of surfactant, which causes the alveoli to collapse.
infection: Invasion of the body by a pathogenic microorganism, resulting in injurious effects or disease.
infectious agent: The pathogen responsible for causing an infection; also called the causative agent.
inferior: Beneath, lower, or away from the head; also called caudal.
inflammation: Tissue reaction to injury, such as redness or swelling.
informed consent: Implies voluntary and competent permission for a medical procedure, test, or medication.
input: To enter data into a computer.
INR: International normalized ratio.
integument: Covering or skin.
integumentary system: The skin and its appendages, including the hair and nails; also referred to as the largest organ of the body.
interatrial septum: The partition that separates the right and left atria.
interface: Connect for the purpose of interaction.
internal respiration: Exchange of respiratory gases between the blood and cells in the tissues.
internal/deep: Within or near the center of the body.
interstitial fluid: Fluid in the tissue spaces between the cells.
interventricular septum: The partition that separates the right and left ventricles.
intracellular fluid: Fluid within the cells.
intravascular: Within the blood vessels.
intravenous (IV) line: A catheter inserted in a vein to administer fluids and simply referred to as an IV.
intravenous (IV): Of, pertaining to, or within, a vein.
intrinsic pathway: Coagulation pathway involving coagulation factors circulating within the bloodstream.
invasion of privacy: Violation of one's right to be left alone.
ionized calcium (iCa^{2+}): Form of calcium used by the body for such critical functions as muscular contraction, cardiac function, transmission of nerve impulses, and blood clotting.
iontophoresis: Electrical stimulation from electrodes placed on the skin. Used in the production of sweat in the sweat chloride test.
isolation procedures: Procedures intended to separate patients with certain transmissible infections from contact with others.
jaundice: Also called icterus; a condition characterized by increased bilirubin (a product of the breakdown of red blood cells) in the blood, leading to the deposition of yellow bile pigment in the skin, mucous membranes, and sclerae (whites of the eyes), giving the patient a yellow appearance.
Joint Commission on the Accreditation of Healthcare Organizations (JCAHO): A voluntary, nongovernmental agency, presently referred to as the Joint Commission, charged with (among other things) establishing standards for the operation of healthcare facilities and services.
K^{+}: Potassium.
keratinized: Having become hardened.
kidneys: Organs that form and excrete urine.

kinesics: The study of nonverbal communication.
kinesic slip: When the verbal and nonverbal messages do not match.
lactate: A form of lactic acid that is used as a marker of the severity of metabolic acidosis and a patient's stress response.
LAN: Local area network.
lancet: A sterile, disposable, sharp-pointed or bladed instrument that either punctures or makes an incision in the skin to obtain capillary blood specimens for testing.
large intestine: Part of the digestive system where undigested food is stored, formed into feces, and eliminated; also where normal intestinal bacteria act on food residue to produce vitamin K and some of the B-complex vitamins.
larynx: The enlarged upper end of the trachea that houses the vocal cords, the ends of which mark the division between the upper and lower respiratory tract.
lateral: Toward the side.
leukocytes: White blood cells (WBCs); nucleus-containing blood cells whose main function is to combat infection and remove disintegrated tissue.
leukopenia: An abnormal decrease of WBCs in the circulating blood.
lipase: Digestive enzyme secreted by the pancreas.
lipemia: Increased lipid content in the blood.
lipemic: Describing serum or plasma that appears milky (cloudy white) or turbid due to high lipid content.
LIS: Laboratory information system.
liter: The basic unit of volume in the metric system, which is equivalent to 1000 mL.
liver: Accessory organ of the digestive system that stores glycogen, detoxifies harmful substances, secretes bile, and breaks down protein.
L/M: Liters per minute, as in oxygen therapy.
Lookback: Program that requires all components of a unit of blood to be traceable back to the donor and that also requires notification to all blood recipients when a donor for a blood product they have received has turned positive for a transmissible disease.
Luer adapter: In the Luer-Lok system, a device for connecting the syringe to the needle; when locked into place, it ensures a secure fit.
lumbar (spinal) puncture: Procedure in which a physician inserts a special needle into the spinal cavity to extract spinal fluid.
lumen: The inner space of a blood vessel or tube.
lungs: Organs that house the bronchial branches and the alveoli, where gas exchange takes place.
lymph: Lymphatic system fluid derived from excess tissue fluid; similar in composition to plasma. Also an abbreviation for lymphocyte.
lymph nodes: Structures of the lymphatic system that contain special tissue that traps and destroys both bacteria and foreign matter; lymph nodes also function in the production of lymphocytes.
lymphatic system: A system of vessels, nodes, and ducts that collect and filter excess tissue fluid, called lymph, and returns it to the venous system.
lymphocytes (lymphs): Normally the second most numerous WBCs and the most numerous agranulocytes. Two main types of lymphocytes are T lymphocytes and B lymphocytes.
lymphostasis: Obstruction or stoppage of normal lymph flow.
lysis: Rupturing, as in the bursting of red blood cells.
lyse: To kill or destroy, as in ruptured rs.
malpractice: A type of negligence committed by a professional.
mastectomy: Breast excision or removal.
material safety data sheet (MSDS): A written document containing general information as well as precautionary and emergency information for any product with a hazardous warning on the label.
MCOs: Managed care organizations.
medial: Toward the midline or middle.
median cubital vein: The preferred vein for venipuncture, located in the middle of the antecubital fossa.
median cutaneous nerve: A major motor and sensory nerve in the arm that lies along the path of the brachial artery and near the basilic vein.
Medicaid: A federal and state program that provides medical assistance for low-income Americans.
Medical Laboratory Scientist: A new ASCP designation for a person who generally has a bachelor's (BS) degree plus additional studies and experience in the clinical laboratory setting. As of October 23, 2009, all CLS (NCA) certificants who had an active credential with NCA were transferred to the ASCP and the NCA merged Board of Certification as MLS (ASCP).
medical terminology: Special vocabulary of the health professions.
Medicare: Federally funded program that provides healthcare to people over the age of 65 and to the disabled.
megakaryocyte: Large bone marrow cell from which platelets are derived.
melanin: Dark pigment that colors the skin and protects it from the sun. Also found in the hair and eyes.
meninges: Three layers of connective tissue that enclose the spinal cavity.
menu: A list of options from which the user may choose.
metabolism: The sum of all the physical and chemical reactions necessary to sustain life.
meter: The basic unit of linear measurement in the metric system; equal to 39.37 inches.
microbe: Short for microorganism; a microscopic organism or one that is not visible to the naked eye.
microclot: A tiny clot or thrombus that may not be visible to the naked eye.

microcollection containers: Small plastic tubes used to collect the tiny amounts of blood obtained from capillary punctures; also called capillary tubes and microtubes and sometimes referred to as "bullets" because of their size and shape.

microhematocrit tubes: Disposable, narrow-bore plastic or plastic-clad glass capillary tubes that fill by capillary action.

midsagittal plane: Divides the body vertically into equal right and left portions.

midstream: Term applied to urine collection in which the specimen is collected in the middle of urination rather than at the beginning or end.

military time: Also called European time; based on a clock with 24 numbers instead of 12, eliminating the need to designate A.M. or P.M.

mitosis: A type of cell duplication that involves DNA doubling and cell division.

MLS: Medical Laboratory Scientist.

mnemonic: Memory-aiding code or abbreviation, as used in LIS, for example.

modem: Device that enables a computer to transmit data over telephone or cable lines, for example.

monocytes (monos): Normally the largest WBCs and 1% to 7% of total WBCs, they are mononuclear phagocytic cells and among the first lines of defense in the inflammatory process.

motor or efferent nerves: Nerves that carry impulses away from the CNS.

MR number: Medical record number used for patient ID.

MSDS: Material Safety Data Sheet.

multisample needle: A type of needle that allows multiple tubes to be collected with a single venipuncture.

murmurs: Abnormal heart sounds, often due to faulty valve action.

myocardial infarction (MI): Heart attack or necrosis (death) of heart muscle from lack of oxygen.

myocardial ischemia: Condition resulting from an insufficient supply of blood to meet the oxygen needs of the heart muscle.

myocardium: The middle muscle layer of the heart.

Na^+: Sodium.

NAACLS: National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences.

nasopharyngeal (NP): A term referring to the nasal cavity and pharynx.

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): Federal agency that regulates disinfectant products and the disposal of hazardous waste, among other responsibilities associated with developing and enforcing regulations that implement environmental laws enacted by Congress.

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH): The federal agency responsible for conducting research and making recommendations for the prevention of work-related injury and illness.

National Patient Safety Goals: Part of the Joint Commission's overall CQI requirements for accredition.

needle phobia: Intense fear of needles.

Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act: Federal law that directed OSHA to revise the BBP standard in four key areas: the exposure control plan, selection of engineering and work practice controls with employee input, modification of engineering control definitions, and new record-keeping requirements.

needle sheath: Needle cap or cover.

negligence: Failure to exercise due care.

nephron: The microscopic functional unit of the kidneys.

network: A group of computers that are all linked for the purpose of sharing resources.

neuron: The fundamental working unit of the nervous system.

neutropenic: Pertaining to an abnormally small number of neutrophils in the blood.

neutrophils: Normally the most numerous WBC in adults, averaging 65% of the total WBC count, with granules that are fine in texture and stain lavender; also called polys, PMNs, or segs.

newborn/neonatal screening: The routine testing of newborns for the presence of certain metabolic and genetic (inherited) disorders, such as phenylketonuria.

NFPA: National Fire Protection Association.

NIDA: National Institute on Drug Abuse.

NIOSH: National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.

noninvasive: Not penetrating the skin.

NP: Nasopharyngeal.

NPO: Nothing by mouth (from Latin, *nulla per os*).

nosocomial infection: An infection acquired in a healthcare facility.

NSPGs: National Patient Safety Goals.

occlusion: Obstruction.

occult blood: Hidden blood. *See* **guaiac test.**

Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA): U.S. government agency that mandates and enforces safe working conditions for employees.

O&P: Ova and parasites; a test to detect the presence of intestinal parasites and their eggs in feces.

order of draw: A special sequence in tube collection that is intended to minimize additive carryover or cross-contamination problems.

OSHA: Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

osteochondritis: Inflammation of the bone and cartilage.

osteomyelitis: Inflammation of the bone marrow and adjacent bone.

output: Return of processed information or data to the user or to someone in another location.

ovum: Female gamete or sex cell.

oxalates: Anticoagulants that prevent clotting by precipitating calcium.

oxyhemoglobin: Oxygen combined with hemoglobin.

pacemaker: In the heart, the structure that generates the electrical impulse that initiates heart contraction. *See* **sinoatrial node.**

palmar: Concerning the palm of the hand.

palpate: Examine by feel or touch.

pancreas: An accessory organ to the digestive system that secretes hormones and produces digestive enzymes.

papillae (singular, papilla): Small elevations of the dermis that indent the bottom of the epidermis and give rise to the ridges and grooves that form fingerprints.

papillary dermis: The dermal layer adjoining the epidermis.

parenteral administration: Administration by any route other than the digestive tract.

partial pressure (P): The pressure exerted by one gas in a mixture of gases.

partial pressure of carbon dioxide (Pco_2): A measure of the pressure exerted by dissolved CO_2 in the blood.

partial pressure of oxygen (PO_2): A measure of the pressure exerted by dissolved O_2 in the blood plasma.

password: A secret code that uniquely identifies a person and allows him or her to become a system user.

patency: State of being freely open, as in the normal condition of a vein.

pathogenic: Capable of causing disease.

pathogens: Microbes capable of causing disease.

patient ID: The process of verifying a patient's identity.

patient sample: A portion of a patient specimen used to obtain information by means of a specific laboratory test. *See* specimen.

Pco_2: Partial pressure of carbon dioxide.

PDA: Personal digital assistant.

peak level: Drug level collected when the highest serum concentration of the drug is anticipated.

pelvic cavity: Body space that houses the reproductive organs.

percutaneous: Through the skin.

pericardial fluid: Fluid aspirated from the pericardial cavity that surrounds the heart.

pericardium: A thin, fluid-filled sac surrounding the heart.

peripheral nervous system: All the nerves that connect the CNS to every part of the body.

peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC): A line inserted into the peripheral venous system (veins of the extremities) and threaded into the central venous system (main veins leading to the heart). It does not require surgical insertion and is typically placed in an antecubital vein just above or below the antecubital fossa.

peritoneal fluid: Fluid aspirated from the abdominal cavity.

permucosal: Through mucous membranes.

personal protective equipment (PPE): Protective clothing and other protective items worn by an individual.

petechiae: Tiny, nonraised red spots that appear on a patient's skin upon tourniquet application. They are minute drops of blood that escape the capillaries and come to the surface of the skin below the tourniquet, most commonly as a result of capillary wall defects or platelet abnormalities.

pH: Abbreviation for potential hydrogen, a scale representing the relative acidity or alkalinity of a solution in which 7 is neutral, below 7 is acid, and above 7 is alkaline.

phagocytosis: Process in which a WBC surrounds, engulfs, and destroys a pathogen or foreign matter.

phalanges (singular, phalanx): Bones of the fingers or toes.

pharynx: A funnel-shaped passageway that receives food from the mouth and delivers it to the esophagus; it also receives air from the nose and carries it into the larynx.

phenylketonuria: Disorder that results from a defect in the enzyme that breaks down the amino acid phenylalanine, converting it into the amino acid tyrosine.

PHI: Protected health information.

phlebotomy: Incision into the vein for the purpose of drawing blood.

PHS: Public Health Service.

physiology: The function of an organism or the science of the functions of living organisms.

PICC: Peripherally inserted central catheter.

pilocarpine: A sweat-stimulating drug used in the sweat chloride test.

pituitary gland: Endocrine gland, under the control of the hypothalamus, which secretes hormones that control other glands; sometimes called the master gland.

PKU: Phenylketonuria.

plaintiff: Injured party in the litigation process.

plantar surface: The sole or bottom surface of the foot.

plasma: The top layer of clear liquid used for testing; also the fluid portion of the blood in the living body.

platelet adhesion: The adherence (or sticking) of platelets to an injured area.

platelet aggregation: The sticking of platelets to one another.

platelet plug formation: Stage 2 of hemostasis, in which platelets degranulate and stick to the site and each other, plugging the site of injury.

platelets: Cellular elements that play a role in blood clotting. *See* **thrombocytes.**

pleura (pleural, pleurae): Layer of thin membrane that encases the lungs.

pleural cavity/space: A small space between the layers of the pleurae of the lungs.

pleural fluid: Fluid aspirated from the pleural cavity surrounding the lungs.

plunger: A rodlike device that fits tightly into the barrel of a syringe and creates a vacuum when pulled back in the process of filling the syringe.

PMN: Polymorphonuclear.

PNS: Peripheral nervous system.

Po_2: Partial pressure of oxygen.

POCT: Point-of-care testing.

point-of-care testing: Alternate site testing (AST) or ancillary, bedside, or near-patient testing, often performed using portable or handheld instruments.
polycythemia: A disorder involving overproduction of red blood cells.
polymorphonuclear: Term used to describe a neutrophil whose nucleus is segmented (has multiple lobes).
posterior curvature: Medical term for the back of the heel.
posterior/dorsal: A term referring to the back.
postprandial: After a meal.
potassium (K^+): A mineral that is essential for normal muscle activity and the conduction of nerve impulses.
potassium oxalate: An anticoagulant commonly used with the antiglycolytic agent sodium fluoride.
PP: Postprandial.
PPD: Purified protein derivative. *See* **tuberculin test.**
PPE: Personal protective clothing.
PPOs: Preferred provider organizations.
PPS: Prospective payment system.
PPTs: Plasma preparation tubes.
preanalytical: Prior to analysis.
pre-examination: Prior to analysis; a term the International organization for Standardization (ISO) uses in place of preanalytical.
prefix: A word element that precedes a word root and modifies its meaning by adding information, such as presence or absence, location, number, or size.
Preop/postop: Before an operation or surgery (preoperative)/after an operation or surgery (postoperative).
primary care: Care by general physician who assumes ongoing responsibility for maintaining his or her patients' health.
primary hemostasis: The first two stages of the coagulation process, involving vasoconstriction and the formation of a platelet plug.
pronation: The condition of being prone, or the act of turning the body or body part face down.
prone: Lying face down.
protective isolation: Type of isolation in which protective measures are taken to keep healthcare workers and others from transmitting infection to a patient who is highly susceptible to infection.
prothrombin test (PT): A test used to evaluate the function of the extrinsic pathway and monitor coumarin therapy.
proxemics: The study of an individual's concept and use of space.
proximal: Nearest to the center of the body or point of attachment.
PSTs: Plasma separator tubes.
Public Health Service: One of the principal units under the Department of Health and Human Services, whose mission is to promote the protection and advancement of the nation's physical and mental health.
pulmonary circulation: The vascular pathway that carries blood from the heart to the lungs, where carbon dioxide is removed, and then returns oxygenated blood to the heart.
pulse: Rhythmic throbbing caused by the alternating contraction and expansion of an artery as a wave of blood passes through it.
pulse rate: Same as heart rate.
QA: Quality assurance.
QC: Quality control.
QI: Quality improvement.
QNS: Quantity not sufficient.
QSE: Quality system essentials.
quality indicators: Guides used as monitors of all areas of patient care.
radial artery: The artery located at the thumb side of the wrist, which is the first choice and most common site used for arterial puncture.
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID): A form of wireless-based technology for identification; it uses both a tag or label that can be applied to a product or person and a wireless scanner that can track the items or identify persons beyond the line of sight of the reader.
RAM: Random-access memory.
RBC: Red blood cell.
reference laboratories: Large independent laboratories that receive and test specimens from many different facilities.
reference ranges: Normal laboratory test values for healthy individuals.
reflux: The backflow of blood into a patient's vein from the collection tube during venipuncture.
requisition: The form on which test orders are entered and sent to the laboratory.
res ipsa loquitor: A Latin phrase meaning "the thing speaks for itself."
respondeat superior: A Latin phrase meaning "let the master respond." In other words, employers must answer for damages their employees cause within the scope of their practice.
reservoir: The source of an infectious microorganism.
resheathing devices: Equipment such as shields that cover a needle after use.
reticulocytes (retics): Immature RBCs in the bloodstream that contain remnants of material from the nuclear phase.
reverse isolation: Same as protective isolation.
RFID: Radio Frequency Identification.
Rh blood group system: Blood group based on the presence or absence of an RBC antigen called the D antigen, also known as Rh factor.
Rh factor: Antigen called the D antigen, which is the basis for the Rh blood group system.
Rh negative (Rh−): Rh blood type of an individual whose RBCs lack the D antigen.
Rh positive (Rh+): Rh blood type of an individual whose RBCs have the D antigen.

risk management: An internal process focused on identifying and minimizing situations that pose risk to patients and employees.
ROM: Read-only memory.
Router: A networking device that is customized to the tasks of routing and forwarding information through two or more network interfaces.
sagittal plane: The plane that divides the body vertically into right and left portions.
saline lock: A catheter or cannula that is often placed in a vein in the lower arm above the wrist to provide access for administering medication or drawing blood and that can be left in place for up to 48 hours. It is periodically flushed with saline or heparin to prevent clotting.
salivary glands: The glands that secrete saliva, which moistens food and contains enzymes that begin the digestion of starch.
sample: As defined by the CLSI, one or more parts taken from a system and intended to provide information on the sytem, often to serve as a basis for decision on the system or its production.
sclerosed: Hardened.
sebaceous glands: Oil-secreting glands in the skin.
secondary care: Care by a physician (specialist) who can perform out-of-the-ordinary procedures in outpatient facilities.
secondary hemostasis: Stages 3 and 4 of the coagulation process, which involve fibrin clot formation and the ultimate dissolution of the clot after healing has occurred, respectively.
semilunar valves: Valves at the exits of the ventricles that are crescent shaped, like the moon (Latin, *luna*).
sensory or afferent nerves: Nerves that carry impulses to the CNS.
septa (**singular, septum**)**:** Partitions consisting mostly of myocardium that separate the right and left chambers of the heart.
septicemia: Microorganisms or their toxins in the blood.
serous fluid: Pale-yellow, watery fluid found between the double-layered membranes that enclose the pleural, pericardial, and peritoneal cavities.
serum: Normally a clear pale-yellow fluid that can be separated from a clotted blood specimen and has the same composition as plasma except that it does not contain fibrinogen.
sex cells: Gametes.
shaft: The long cylindrical portion of a needle.
sharps container: A special puncture-resistant, leakproof, disposable container used to dispose of used needles, lancets, and other sharp objects.
short draw: An underfilled or partially filled tube.
Short-draw tubes: Tubes designed to be filled only partially without compromising test results.
shunt: a bypass of fluid to another fluid-containing system by forming a fistula, that is often done for dialysis.
silica: Glass particles used to enhance the coagulation process; a clot activator.
sinoatrial (SA) node: The structure that generates the electrical impulse that initiates heart contraction; also called the pacemaker.
skin antisepsis: Destruction of microorganisms on the skin.
small intestine: The longest part of the digestive tract where absorption of digested food, water, and minerals takes place.
sodium (Na^+): An extracellular ion in the blood plasma that helps maintain fluid balance.
sodium citrate: An anticoagulant that prevents clotting by binding calcium and is used for coagulation tests because it does the best job of preserving the coagulation factors.
sodium fluoride: An additive that preserves glucose and inhibits the growth of bacteria.
sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS): An anticoagulant used in blood culture collection that also reduces the action of a protein called complement, which destroys bacteria, slows down phagocytosis (ingestion of bacteria by leukocytes), and reduces the activity of certain antibiotics.
software: Programming or coded instruction required to control the hardware used in processing data.
solutes: Dissolved substances.
specimen (blood): As defined by the CLSI, the discrete portion of blood taken for examination, study, or analysis of one or more quantities or characteristics to determine the character of the whole. *See* **patient sample.**
spermatozoa: Male gametes or sex cells.
sphygmomanometer: Blood pressure cuff; a device used to measure blood pressure.
spinal cavity: Body space that houses the spinal cord.
sputum: Mucus or phlegm ejected from the trachea, bronchi, and lungs by deep coughing.
squamous: Scalelike.
SSTs: Serum separator tubes.
standard of care: The normal level of skill and care that a healthcare practitioner would be expected to practice to provide due care for patients.
standard precautions: Precautions intended to minimize the risk of infection transmission when caring for all patients regardless of their status. They apply to blood, *all* body fluids (including all secretions and excretions except sweat, whether or not they contain visible blood), nonintact skin, and mucous membranes.
statute of limitations: A law setting the length of time after an alleged injury in which the injured person is permitted to file a lawsuit.
stat: Immediately (from the Latin *statim,* meaning "immediately").

steady state: Stable condition required before obtaining blood gas specimens; that is, a condition in which there has been no exercise, suctioning, or respirator change for at least 20 to 30 minutes.
stomach: Organ of the digestive tract that mixes food with digestive juices and moves it into the small intestine.
storage: The preservation of data outside the CPU.
stratified: Arranged in layers.
stratum germinativum: Deepest layer of the epidermis; also called the stratum basale.
subcutaneous: Beneath the skin.
subcutaneous layer: A layer of connective and adipose (fat) tissue that connects the skin to the surface muscles.
sudoriferous glands: Sweat-secreting glands in the skin.
suffix: A word ending that comes after a word root and either changes or adds to the meaning of the word root.
superior: Higher, above, or toward the head; also called cranial.
supination: The condition of being supine or the act of turning the body or body part face up.
supine: Lying on the back with the face up.
Suprapubic aspiration: Term used to describe a way of obtaining a urine specimen by inserting a needle directly into the urinary bladder and aspirating (withdrawing by suction) the urine directly from the bladder into a sterile syringe.
surfactant: A substance that coats the walls of the alveoli, lowering the surface tension and helping to keep the alveoli inflated.
susceptible host: An individual who has little resistance to an infectious agent.
sweat chloride: A test that involves the stimulation of sweat production by electrical means and then collecting the sweat and measuring its chloride content to diagnose cystic fibrosis.
syncope (sin' ko-pe): Medical term for fainting—the loss of consciousness and postural tone that results from insufficient blood flow to the brain.
synovial fluid: Viscid (sticky), colorless fluid found in joint cavities.
syringe system: A sterile safety needle, a disposable plastic syringe, and a syringe transfer device.
syringe transfer device: A special piece of equipment used to safely transfer blood from a syringe into ETS tubes.
systemic circulation: The vascular pathway that carries oxygenated blood from the heart, along with nutrients, to all the cells of the body and then returns the blood to the heart, carrying carbon dioxide and other waste products of cellular metabolism.
systole: Contracting phase of the cardiac cycle.
systolic pressure: Pressure in the arteries during contraction of the ventricles.
tachycardia: Fast heart rate; over 100 beats per minute.
TAT: Turnaround time.
TDM: Therapeutic drug monitoring.
terminal: A computer screen and keyboard.
tertiary care: Highly complex care and therapy services from practitioners in a hospital or overnight facility.
TGC: Tight glycemic index.
therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM): Testing of drug levels at specific intervals to help establish a drug dosage, maintain the dosage at a therapeutic (beneficial) level, and avoid drug toxicity.
third-party payer: An insurance company or government program that pays for healthcare services on behalf of a patient.
thixotropic gel: An inert (nonreacting) synthetic gel substance in some ETS tubes (e.g., SSTs, PSTs, and PPTs) that forms a physical barrier between the cells and serum or plasma when the specimen is centrifuged.
thoracic cavity: Body space above the diaphragm that houses the heart and lungs.
threshold values: The level of acceptable practice beyond which quality patient care cannot be assured.
thrombin: An enzyme that converts fibrinogen into the fibrin necessary for clot formation.
thrombocytes: Medical term for platelets—cellular elements that play a role in the coagulation process and are the smallest of the formed elements.
thrombocytopenia: Decreased platelets.
thrombocytosis: Increased platelets.
thrombophlebitis: Inflammation of a vein, particularly in the lower extremities, along with thrombus formation.
thrombosed: Clotted—refers to a vessel that is affected by clotting.
tight glycemic index: Intensive insulin therapy that involves frequent monitoring of a patient's glucose level and administering insulin as required to keep glucose levels in a predetermined normal range and avoid hyperglycemia.
tissue thromboplastin: A substance present in tissue fluid that activates the extrinsic coagulation pathway and can interfere with coagulation tests when picked up by the needle during venipuncture.
TnI: Troponin I, a protein specific to heart muscle used in diagnosing an acute myocardial infarction (AMI) or heart attack
TnT: Troponin T, a protein specific to heart muscle used in diagnosing a heart attack and also to monitor the effectivenesss of thrombolytic therapy.
tort: A wrongful act other than breach of contract committed against one's person, property, reputation, or other legally protected right.
tourniquet: A device (typically a flat strip of stretchable material) applied to a limb prior to venipuncture to restrict venous flow, which distends the veins and makes them easier to find and pierce with a needle.
trace element–free tubes: Tubes made of materials that are as free of trace-element contamination as possible.
trachea: A tube that extends from the larynx into the upper part of the chest and carries air to the lungs.

transfusion reaction: An adverse reaction between donor cells and the recipient.

transmission-based precautions: Precautions used in addition to standard precautions for patients known or suspected to be infected or colonized with highly transmissible or epidemiologically significant pathogens.

transverse plane: The plane that divides the body horizontally into equal upper and lower portions.

trough level: Drug level collected when the lowest serum concentration of the drug is expected, usually immediately prior to administration of the next scheduled dose.

trypsin: Digestive enzyme.

tube additive: Any substance placed within a tube other than the tube stopper or the coating of the tube.

tube holder: A clear plastic disposable cylinder with a small threaded opening at one end (the hub) where the needle is screwed into it and a large opening at the other end where an evacuated collection tube is placed.

tuberculin (TB) test: Tuberculosis test; also called PPD test. *See* **PPD.**

tunica adventitia: The outer layer of a blood vessel, made up of connective tissue and thicker in arteries than veins; also called the tunica externa.

tunica intima: The inner layer or lining of a blood vessel; made up of a single layer of endothelial cells, a basement membrane, a connective tissue layer, and an elastic internal membrane; also called the tunica interna.

tunica media: The middle layer of a blood vessel, made up of smooth muscle tissue and some elastic fibers and much thicker in arteries than in veins.

twenty-four-hour urine: Pooled urine specimen collected over a period of 24 hours, usually beginning in the morning.

UA: Urinalysis.

ulnar artery: Artery located on the medial aspect or little-finger side of the wrist.

unique plural endings: Plural forms of medical terms that follow the rules of the Greek or Latin languages from which they originated.

universal precautions (UP): Precautions established by the CDC and adopted by OSHA to prevent patient-to-personnel transmission of infection from bodily fluids. Under UP, blood and certain bodily fluids of *all* individuals are considered potentially infectious.

ureters: Ducts (tubes) that carry urine from the kidneys to the urinary bladder.

urethra: The duct (tube) through which urine is voided from the urinary bladder.

urinalysis (UA): A laboratory test that typically includes macroscopic, physical, chemical, and microscopic analysis of a urine specimen.

urinary bladder: A muscular sac that serves as a reservoir for urine.

urinary tract infection (UTI): Ailment caused by the presence of microorganisms in one or more structures of the urinary system.

USB drive: Universal Serial Bus; a device used for storing information.

uterus: Muscular organ in the female pelvis in which a fetus develops during pregnancy.

UTI: Urinary tract infection.

vacuum: Negative pressure, or artificially created absence of air.

VAD: Vascular access device.

vasopressin: Antidiuretic hormone (ADH).

vasoconstriction: Stage 1 of hemostasis, in which a damaged vessel constricts (narrows) to decrease the flow of blood to an injured area.

vasovagal syncope: Sudden faintness or loss of consciousness due to a nervous system response to abrupt pain, stress, or trauma.

vector transmission: Transmission of an infectious agent by an insect, arthropod, or animal.

vehicle transmission: Transmission of an infectious agent through contaminated food, water, drugs, or the transfusion of blood.

veins: Blood vessels that return blood to the heart.

vena cava (plural, venae cavae): Either of two veins, the superior vena cava and inferior vena, that return blood to the heart and are the largest veins in the body.

venostasis: Trapping of blood in an extremity by the compression of veins.

venous stasis: Stagnation of normal blood flow.

ventral: To the front of the body.

ventral cavities: Internal spaces located in the front.

ventricles: The lower pumping or delivering chambers on each side of the heart.

venules: The smallest veins at the junction of the capillaries.

viability: Ability to stay alive.

vicarious liability: Liability imposed by law on one person for acts committed by another.

virulence: Degree to which a microbe is capable of causing disease.

WBC: White blood cell.

whole blood: Blood that is in the same form as when it circulated in the bloodstream.

whorls: Spiral pattern of the ridges and grooves that form a fingerprint.

winged infusion set: A $^{1}/_{2}$- to $^{3}/_{4}$-inch stainless steel needle permanently connected to a 5- to 12-inch length of tubing with either a Luer attachment for syringe use or a multisample Luer adapter for use with the evacuated tube; also called a butterfly needle.

word root: The part of a medical term that establishes its basic meaning and the foundation upon which the true meaning is built.

work practice controls: Practices that alter the manner in which a task is performed so as to reduce the likelihood of bloodborne pathogen exposure.

Index

Note: Page numbers in *italics* denote figures; those followed by a "t" denote tables

2-hour postprandial glucose, 372
2-hour postprandial specimen, 440
2-hour PP test, 372
3-way ID, 233
24-hour specimen, 440, 441

A

As soon as possible (ASAP), 508
AABB (*See* American Association of Blood Banks)
Abbott Precision XceedPro (PXP), 396, *396*
Abbreviations, medical, 112, 113t–116t
Abdominal cavity, 125, 507
Abducted, 467, 507
ABG (*See* Arterial blood gas)
ABL80 Flex, 392, *392*
ABO blood group system, 174–175, 507
Accession, 229, 507
Accession number, 416, 507
Accessioning test request, 229
AccuChek® Inform glucose meter, 394, *395*
AccuVein AV300, *199*
ACD (*See* Acid citrate dextrose)
Acid–base balance, of blood, 148–149
Acid citrate dextrose (ACD), 507
Acid phosphatase, 477t
Acid-fast bacilli, 31t, 446
Acid-fast bacillus (AFB) culture, 446, 477t
Acidosis, 148, 507
Acinetobacter baumannii, 68
Acromegaly, 140
Act (HIPAA), 513
ACT (*See* Activated clotting time)
ACTH (*See* Adrenocorticotropic hormone)
Activated clotting time (ACT), 384, 507
Activated partial thromboplastin time (APPT) test, 26t, *47*, 507
Active listening, 13
Acute myocardial infarction (AMI), 392
Addison's disease, 140
Additive contamination, 221t
Additive tubes, 207
  mixing by inversion, 422
Additives, 207, 507
  antiglycolytic agent, 218–219
  anticoagulants, 215–218
    special-use, 218
  clot activator, 219
  stopper color, 208
  thixotropic gel separator, 219–220
  trace element–free tubes, 220
ADH (*See* Antidiuretic hormone)
Adhesive allergy, 300
Adipose, 507
Adrenal disorders, 140
Adrenal gland, 139t
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 285, 290
AED (*See* Automated external defibrillator
Aerobic, 507
Aerobic blood culture bottle, 363
Aerosol, 507
AFB (*See* Acid-fast bacillus culture)
Afferent nerve, 137
AFP (*See* Alpha-fetoprotein)
Age, effects on blood components, 284
Agglutinate, 174, 507
Agglutination, 360
Agglutinins, 174
Agranulocytes, 172, 173, *173*, 507
AHA (*See* American Heart Association)
AHCCCS (*See* Arizona Healthcare Cost Containment System)
AICR (*See* American Institute for Cancer Research)
AIIRs (*See* Airborne infection isolation rooms)
Air bubbles, 474
Airborne, 82
Airborne infection isolation rooms (AIIRs), 67
Airborne precautions, 76, 507
Airborne transmission, 67, 507
Air-dry site, 330
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT), 28t, 477t
Alanine transferase (ALT), 393
Alcohol (ETOH), 380t, 477t
Aldosterone, 477t
Aldosteronism, 140
Aliquot, 507
Aliquot preparation, 431–432
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP), 28t, 287, 477t
Alkalosis, 148, 507
Allen test, 507
ALP (*See* Alkaline Phosphatase)
Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), 28t, 444, 477t, 507
ALT (*See* Alanine aminotransferase; Alanine transferase)
Alternate site testing (AST) (*See* Point-of-care testing)
Altitude, 285
Aluminum (Al), 477t
Alveoli, 149t, 150, 507
Amber-colored microcollection container, *342*
Ambulatory care and homebound services, 16
Ambulatory patient classification (APC), 19t, 508
American Association of Blood Banks (AABB), 234–235, 361
American Certification Agency (ACA), 8t
American College of Cardiology (ACC), 32
American Heart Association (AHA), 99
  chain of survival, 99
  CPR guidelines, 99
American Hospital Association (AHA), 10, 11, 32
American Institute for Cancer Research (AICR), 100
American Medical Technologists (AMT), 8t, 8

American Society for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (ASCLS), 8
American Society for Clinical Pathology (ASCP), 8t, 8, 10, 42
American Society for Microbiology (ASM), 363
AMI (*See* Acute myocardial infarction)
Amikacin, 481t
Ammonia (NH3), 285, 478t
Ammonia test, 28t
Amniotic fluid, 444, 507
Amphetamines, 380t
Amplification phase, 182–183
Amylase, 28t, 142, 478t
ANA (*See* Antinuclear antibody)
Anabolism, 126, 507
Anaerobic, 507
Anaerobic blood culture bottle, 363
Analyte, 507
Anatomy
  anatomical position, 122, 507
  body cavities, 123, *125*
  body directional terms, 123, 124t
  body organization, 126–128
  body plane, 122–123, 509
  body position, 122
  digestive system, 141–142, *143*
  endocrine system, 137–141
  integumentary system, 131–135, 514
  muscular system, 129–130, *131*
  nervous system, 135–137
  reproductive system, 143–144
  respiratory system, 146–150
  skeletal system, 128, 129
  urinary system, 144–146
Anchor, 507
Anchoring veins, 247–248, *248*
Anemia, 507
Anesthesiology, 22t
Aneurysm, 170
Angina pectoris, 160
Antecubital fossa, 166–167, 507
Antecubital veins, 167, 508
Anterior, 508
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 140, 521
Antibiotics, 376t
Antibody, 508
Antibody (Ab) screen test, 32t, 478t
Anticancer drugs, 376t
Anticoagulants, 26, 215, 508
  citrates, 216–217
  EDTA, 216
  heparin, 217–218
  memory joggers for, *215*
  oxalates, 218
  reflux of, 306–307
Antiepileptics, 376t
Antigens, 174, 508
Antiglycolytic agents, 218–219, 508
Anti-HIV test, 29t
Antimicrobial neutralization products, 371–372
Antimicrobial removal device (ARD), 371–372, 508
Antimicrobial therapy, 371, 508
Antinuclear antibody (ANA), 29t, 478t
Anti-Rh antibody preparation, 478t
Antiseptic, 463, 508
Antiseptic/sterile technique, 364
Antiseptics, 194–195
  allergy to, 301
  used in blood collection, 195
Antistreptolysin O (ASO) titer test, 29t, 478t
Antithrombin III activity (AT-III), 478t, *47*
Anus, 142
Aorta, 508
Aortic stenosis, 160
APC (*See* Ambulatory patient classification)
aphasia, 112
Appearance, 14
Applications software, 414
APTT (*See* Activated partial thromboplastin time)
ARD (*See* Antimicrobial removal device)
Arizona Health Care Cost Containment System (AHCCCS), 20, 507
Arm and hand veins, 169
Arm band, 233
Armband/wristband, 508
Arrector pili, 134t
Arrhythmia, 159, 508
Arsenic, *47*
Arterial blood gas (ABG), 169, 456, 457t, 507
  collection from other sites, 472
  equipment and supplies
    personal protective equipment (PPE), 462
    specimen collection equipment/supplies, 462–464
  patient preparation
    and assessment, 464
    administration of local anesthetic, 464, 466–467
    identification and explanation, of procedures, 464
    modified Allen test, 464, 465–466
    steady state, 464
  radial ABG procedure
    steps, 468–469
  specimen
    criteria for rejection, 475
  test requisition, 461–462
Arterial blood gases and chemistry panels, 389
Arterial line (A-line or Art-line), 293, 508
Arterial puncture, 455
  arterial blood gas (ABG), 456, 457t
    specimen collection, 461–472
    specimen rejection, 475
  hazards and complications, 472
    arteriospasm, 472–473
    artery damage, 473
    discomfort, 473
    hematoma, 473
    infection, 473
    numbness, 473
    thrombus formation, 473
    vasovagal response, 473–474
  personnel who perform, 457
  sampling errors, 474–475
  sites, 461
    brachial artery, 459f, 460
    femoral artery, 460–461
    radial artery, 458–459
    selection criteria, 457–458
Arterialized, 508
Arterialized specimen, 329
Arteries, 161, *162*, *165*, 169, 508
Arterioles, 508
Arteriosclerosis, 170
Arteriospasm, 462, 472–473, 508
Arteriovenous (AV) fistula, 293, 508
Arteriovenous (AV) graft, 293, 508
Arteriovenous (AV) shunt, 293, 508
Artery damage, 473
Arthritis, 130
  in geriatric patients, 275
Artificial intelligence, 421
ASAP (*See* As soon as possible)
Ascites, 445

Ascitic fluid, 445
Aseptic, 508
ASM (*See* American Society for Microbiology)
ASO (*See* Antistreptolysin O test)
Aspartate aminotransaminase (AST), 28t, *47*, 287, 478t
Aspergillus serology, *47*
Aspergillus test, 403
Assault, 55, 508
AST (*See* Aspartate aminotransaminase; Aspartate aminotransferase)
@AT-III (*See* Antithrombin III activity)
Atherosclerosis, 170
Atria (singular, atrium), 154, 508
Atrioventricular (AV) valves, 154, 508
Autologous donation, 362, 508
Automated external defibrillator (AED), 99
Autonomic nervous system, 135
AV valves (*See* Atrioventricular valves)
Avascular, 508
Avascular epidermis, 132
AVOXimeter, 391
  for blood gases, 391, *392*
Avulsion, 98
Axons, 136, 508

B

B lymphocytes, 173
B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), 28t, 138, 393, 509
BAC (*See* Blood alcohol concentration)
Back protection, 101
BacT/ALERT® blood culture, 370
BACTEC blood culture bottles, *364*
Bacteremia, 362, 508
Bacterial endocarditis, 160
Bandage, applying, 253, 332–333
Bandages, 196
Bar codes, 417, *419*, 508
Bar-code requisitions, 228, *228*
Barber–Surgeons, 4
Barbiturates, 380t, 481t
Barrel, 211, 508
Basal state, 284, 508
Basic Life Support (BLS), 99
Basic metabolic panel (BMP), 27t, 478t
Basilic vein, 167, 508
Basophils (basos), 172, 508
Battery, 55, 508
BBP (*See* Blood-borne pathogen)
BC (*See* Blood culture)
BD SAFETY-LOK™ syringe, *211*
BD SAFETYGLIDE™ hypodermic needle, *211*
BD tubes (*See* Becton Dickinson tubes)
BD Vacutainer® Passive Shielding Blood Collection Needle, 205, *206*
Becton Dickinson (BD) tubes, 219
Bedside manner, 232, 508
Benzodiazepines, 380t
Bevel, 200, 508
  against vein wall, 314
  completely through vein, 313–314
  partially into vein, 313
  partially out of skin, 313
  partially through vein, 313
Bicarbonate ion (HCO_3^-), 148, 390, 508
Bile, 142
Bilirubin, 30t, 342, 508
  total and direct, 478t
Bilirubin test, 28t
Billing codes, 19, 19t
Biohazard, 81, 508
  blood-borne pathogen (BBP)
    exposure routes, 86
    HBV and HDV, 83–84
    HCV, 84
    HIV, 85
    OSHA Standard for, 85
  body fluid spill cleanup, 88
  exposure control plan, 85–86
  exposure incident procedure, 87
  exposure routes, 82
    airborne, 82
    ingestion, 83
    nonintact skin, 83
    percutaneous, 83
    permucosal, 83
  surface decontamination, 88
  waste disposal, 88
Biohazard bags, 197, *198*
Biohazard symbol, 81
Biosafety, 81, 508
  biohazard waste disposal, 88
  biohazards (*See* Biohazards)
  blood-borne pathogen (BBP), 83–85
    exposure routes, 86
    OSHA Standard for, 85
  body fluid spills, cleanup of, 88
  exposure control plan, 85–86
  exposure incident procedure, 87
  surface decontamination, 88
Bleeding bowls, 4, *5*
Bleeding time (BT), 385–389, 508
Blood, 170
  composition, 170
    agranulocytes, 173, *173*
    erythrocytes, 171
    granulocytes, 172, *172*
    leukocytes, 171–172
    plasma, 171
    thrombocytes, 173
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 177
  specimens, 175
    plasma, 176
    serum, 175
    whole blood, 176
  type, 174–175
    ABO blood group system, 174–175
    compatibility test/cross-match, 175
    Rh blood-group system, 175
Blood, acid–base balance of, 148–149
Blood alcohol (ethanol) specimens, 378
  skin preparation, 378
  specimen requirements, 378
Blood alcohol concentration (BAC), 378, 508
Blood bank specimens, 358
  identification and labeling requirements, 358
  labeling requirements for, 358
  special identification systems, 358–360
  specimen requirements, 358
Blood bank/immunohematology, *27*, *29*, 32t
Blood collection additives, 213
  anticoagulants, 215
    citrates, 216–217
    EDTA, 216
    heparin, 217–218
    oxalates, 218
  antiglycolytic agents, 218–219
  clot activators, 219
  special-use anticoagulants, 218
    acid citrate dextrose (ACD), 218

Blood collection additives (*continued*)
citrate phosphate dextrose (CPD), 218
sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS), 218
thixotropic gel separator, 219–220
trace element–free tubes, 220
Blood collection equipment and supplies, 192
antiseptics, 194–195
bandages, 196
biohazard bags, 197
blood-drawing station, 192
disinfectants, 195
equipment carriers, 192
handheld carriers, 193
phlebotomy carts, 193–194
gauze pads/cotton balls, 196
gloves and glove liners, 194
hand sanitizers, 195–196
needle and sharps disposal containers, 197
pen, 197
phlebotomy chairs, 192
slides, 197
watch, 197
Blood culture (BC), 31t, 478t
Blood cultures, 362
collection procedure, 365
intermediate collection tube, 370
media inoculation methods, 369–370
skin antisepsis, 363
specimen requirements, 363
Blood disorders, 177
Blood donor collection, 360
autologous donation, 362
donor eligibility, 361
lookback program, 361–362
Blood drop, first
wiping away, 331
Blood film/smear, 509
preparation, 348–351
Blood flow, 166
establishing, 249–250
Blood gases (ABG) test, 28t
Blood group & Rh type (ABO & Rh), 478t
Blood pressure, 159–160, 509
Blood pressure cuff, 159
Blood sampling device, 293
Blood smear, thick, 352t
preparation of, 351–352
Blood spot collection, 345–346
Blood test, 30t
Blood thinners, 26
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN) test, 28t
Blood vessel structure, 163
layers, 163–164
lumen, 164
valves, 165
Blood-borne pathogen (BBP)
exposure routes, 86
HBV and HDV, 83–84
HCV, 84
HIV, 85
OSHA Standard for, 85
Blood-collection procedures, 277
equipment selection, 277
patient identification, 277
pressure, holding, 278
site, cleaning, 277
site selection, 277
tourniquet application, 277
venipuncture, performing, 278
Blood-drawing station, 192
Bloodborne pathogen (BBP), 508, 509
BLS (*See* Basic Life Support)
BMP (*See* Basic metabolic panel)
BNP (*See* B-type natriuretic peptide)
Body cavities, 123–125, *125*, 509
Body directional terms, 123, 124t
Body functions
homeostasis, 125
metabolism, 125–126
Body language, 13
Body organization, 126
cells, 126, *126*
structural components of, 127t
organs, 128
tissues, 127–128
Body planes, 122–123, *123*, 509
Body positions, 122
Body substance isolation (BSI), 76, 509
Body systems, 128
digestive system, 141–142, *141*
accessory organ functions, 142
accessory organs and structures, 142
disorders and diagnostic tests, 142
functions, 141
structures, 142
endocrine system, 137–141, *138*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 141
functions, 137
structures, 137–141
integumentary system, 131
disorders and diagnostic tests, 134
functions, 131
skin layers, 132–134
structures, 131
muscular system, 129, *131*, 130t
disorders and diagnostic tests, 130
functions, 129
structures, 130
nervous system, 135–137, *135*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 137
functions, 135
structures, 136–137
reproductive system, 142–144, *143*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 144
functions, 143
structures, 144
respiratory system, 146–150, *147*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 150
functions, 146–149
structures, 149–150
skeletal system, 128, *129*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 128
functions, 128
structures, 128
urinary system, 144–146, *145*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 145
functions, 144
structures, 145
Body temperature specimens, 425
Bone destruction, 140
Bone marrow, 447–448
test, 26t
Bone tumors, 130
Bones, 128
classification, by shape, 129t
Brachial artery
advantages, 460
disadvantages, 460

Brachial artery, 167, 509
Bradycardia, 159, 509
Breach of confidentiality, 55, 509
Breath samples
  C-urea breath test (C-UBT), 448
  hydrogen breath test, 448
Bronchi (singular, bronchus), 509
Bronchi, 149
Bronchioles, 149t
Bronchodilators, 376t
BSI (*See* Body substance isolation)
BT (*See* Bleeding time)
Buccal swabs, 447, 449
Buffy coat, 176, 509
Bullet, 320, 509
Burns, as injection sites, 291
Bursa, 128, 509
Bursitis, 130
Butterfly, 212–213
Butterfly needle, 246, 509
Butterfly procedure, 262

C

C&S (*See* Culture and sensitivity)
C-reactive protein (CRP), 28t, 29t, 393, 480t, 510
C-urea breath test (C-UBT), 448, 511
Calcaneus, 509
Calcitonin, 479t
Calcium (Ca), 509
  ionized, 479t
  testing, 28t
Cancer antigen, 479t
Cannabinoids, 380t
CAP (*See* College of American Pathologists)
Capillaries, 162, *165*, 479
Capillary blood gas (CBG), 323–324, 340, 479
Capillary puncture, 6
  capillary specimens, composition of, 324
  equipment, 319
    capillary blood gas (CBG) equipment, 323–324
    lancets/incision devices, 320
    laser lancets, 320
    microcollection containers, 320–322
    microhematocrit tubes and sealants, 322–323
    microscope slides, 324
    warming devices, 324
  indications for, 325
  order of draw, 326
  principles, 324
  procedures, 333–340
    blood film/smear preparation, 348–351
    capillary blood gases, 340
    neonatal bilirubin collection, 341–343
    newborn/neonatal screening (NBS), 343–348
    thick blood smear preparation, 351–352, 352t
  reference values, 325
  steps, 326–333
  tests that cannot be collected by, 325
Capillary specimens, composition of, 324
Carbamazepine, 481t
Carbaminohemoglobin, 148, 509
Carbon dioxide, 147, 148
Carbon monoxide (CO) level, 495t
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), 28t, 479t
Cardiac arteries, 156
Cardiac cycle, 157, 509
Cardiac drugs, 376t
Cardiac output, 159, 509
CARDIAC T Rapid Assay, 393
Cardiac troponin I (TnI), 392–393, 509
Cardiac troponin T (TnT), 392–393, 509
Cardiodiagnostics, 24t
Cardiology, 22t
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 99
Carotene, beta, 479t
Carryover/cross-contamination, 220–222, 509
Cartilage, 509
Cascade POC, 384, *384*
Case management, in managed care, 20–21
Case manager, 20–21, 509
Catabolism, 125, 509
Catheterized, 509
Catheterized urine specimen, 442
Causative agent, 65, 509
CBC (*See* Complete blood count)
CBG (*See* Capillary blood gas)
CDC (*See* Centers for Disease Control and Prevention)
CEA (*See* Carcinoembryonic antigen)
Celite, 509
Celite tubes, 219
Cells, 126, *126*
  structural components of, 127t
Celsius, 479
Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS), 19, 34, 42, 510
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), 64, 382, 509
Centigrade, 509
Central nervous system (CNS), 136, 509
Central processing, 509
Central processing unit (CPU), 414, 510
Central processing/triage, 426
Central vascular access device (CVAD), 297–299, 509
Central venous catheter (CVC), 298, *298*, 509
Central venous line, 298
Centrifugation, of specimen, 428
  aliquot preparation, 431–432
  centrifuge operation, 429
  centrifuging plasma specimens, 430
  centrifuging serum specimens, 430
  stopper removal, 430–431
  tubes awaiting, 428
Centrifuge, 509
Cephalic vein, 167, 509
Ceramic bleeding bowls, 4
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 26t, 136, 444, 509, 510
Certificate of Waiver (COW), 42
Certification, 510
  of phlebotomist, 7–8, 8t
Certified Phlebotomy Technician (CPT), 8t
Cervix, 144
CF (*See* Cystic fibrosis)
Chain of custody, 510
Chain of infection, 510
  breaking, 68–69
  entry pathway, 68
  exit pathway, 66
  infectious agent, 65
  means of transmission, 66–68
    airborne transmission, 67
    contact transmission, 67
    droplet transmission, 67–68
    vector transmission, 68
    vehicle transmission, 68
  reservoir, 66
  susceptible host, 68
Chain-of-custody form, 378, *379*

Chemical safety, 93
chemical spill procedures, 97
department of transportation labeling system, 94, 95t, 96
Hazard Communication (HazCom) Standard, 94
NFPA labeling system, 96–97
safety showers and eyewash stations, 97
Chemical spill procedures, 97
Chemistry tests, 26, *27*, 27t, 28t
CHF (*See* Congestive heart failure)
Children
venipuncture and, 271
Chilled specimens, 425
Chlamydia antibodies, 479t
Chloride (Cl^-), 510
Chloride, 390
Cholestech LDX analyzer, 393, *393*
Cholesterol (total) test, 28t
Cholesterol and HDL ratio (Chol HDL), 479t
Chordae tendineae, 510
Chromium (Cr), 479t
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 393
CIC (*See* Connectivity Industry Consortium)
Circadian, 510
Circulatory system, 153, 510
blood, 170
composition, 170–174
disorders and diagnostic tests, 177
specimens, 175–176
type, 174–175
coagulation factors and pathways, 177–180, 179t
heart, 154
and great vessels, *155*
chambers of, 156t
disorders and diagnostic tests, 160
electrical conduction system of, *158*
function, 157–160
layers of, 155t
structure, 154–157
valves, 156t
hemostasis, role of the liver in, 184
hemostatic disorders and diagnostic tests, 184, 184
hemostatic process in vivo, 181–183
lymphatic system, 184
disorders and diagnostic tests, 186
functions, 184–185
lymph flow, 185–186
structures, 185
thrombin, role of, 180
vascular system, 161
blood vessel structure, 163
flow of blood, 166
functions, 161
phlebotomy-related vascular anatomy, 166–169
structures, 161
vascular system disorders and diagnostic tests, 170
Citrate phosphate dextrose (CPD), 218, 510
Citrates, 215–217, 221t
Civil actions, 54, 55t, 510
CK (*See* Creatine kinase)
CK-MB (*See* Creatine kinase MB)
Clay sealant, 510
Clean and air-dry site, 330
Clean catch, 510
Clenching, fist, 240
Clergy, in patient's room, 231
CLIA '88 (*See* Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988)
CLIA-waived analyzers Clinitek Status Connect, 406
Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI), 42–43, 44, 469, 510
Clinical laboratory services, 23, 25–33
STAT labs, 32, *33*
reference laboratories, 32
traditional laboratories, 23, 25–32
blood bank/immunohematology, 27, 29, 32t
chemistry tests, 26, 27, 27t, 28t
coagulation tests, 23, 26, 26t
cytogenetics, 32
cytology, 30, 32
hematology test, 23, *25*, 25t, 26t
histology, 29–30
microbiology tests, 27, *31*, 31t
serology/immunology tests, 26, 29t
urinalysis (UA) tests, 27, 30, 30t
Clinical laboratory assistant (CLA), 34
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Advisory Committee (CLIAC), 42
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988 (CLIA '88), 34, 42, 381
Clinical laboratory personnel, 33–34
clinical laboratory assistant (CLA), 34
laboratory administrator/laboratory manager, 33
laboratory director/pathologist, 33
medical laboratory technician (MLT), 34
medical technologist (MT)/medical laboratory scientist (MLS), 33
other laboratory personnel, 34
phlebotomist, 34
technical supervisor, 33
Clinitek Advantus, 406
Clostridium difficile, 449
Clot activators, 219, 510
CLOtest, 31t
CLSI (*See* Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute)
CMS (*See* Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services)
CNS (*See* Central nervous system)
CoaguChek XS, 384–385, *385*
Coagulation, 174, 510
factors and pathways, 177–180, 179t
natural inhibitors of, 183t
problems in geriatric patients, 275
specimens, 372
tests, 23, 26, 26t
tubes, 207
Coagulation cascade, 510
Coagulation monitoring by POCT, 383
ACT test, 384
APTT/PTT test, 385
bleeding time, 385–389
platelet function, 385
PT/NR test, 384–385
Cocaine, 380t
Coccidioidomycosis (cocci) test, 403
Cold agglutinins, 29t, 479t
Collateral circulation, 457, 510
"Collection list" icon, 416
Collection manuals, 49–50, *50*
Collection priorities, 49
Collection procedure, 365
Collection tube, wrong/expired, 310
Collection unit, discarding, 252
College of American Pathologists (CAP), 42, 381, 509
Color coding, 208–209
Combining forms, 110, 510
Combining vowels, 110, 510
Committee, 513
Common pathway, 510
Communicable, 510
Communicable infections, 64–65

Communication
  active listening, 13
  barriers, 12
  components, 12–14
  defined, 12
  feedback loop, 12, *12*
  in healthcare, 15–16
  nonverbal communication, 13–14
  skills, 12–16
  telephone, 16, 17t
  verbal communication, 12–13
Communication barriers, 510
Compassion, 10
Compatibility, 360, 510
Compatibility testing, 32t, 175
Competencies, 43, 480
Complete blood count (CBC), 23, *25*, 479t
Comprehensive metabolic panel (CMP), 27t
Computer requisition with bar code, *228*, 229
Computerization in healthcare, 412
  common computer terminology, 412t
  components, of computer, 413
    input, 413
    output, 414
    process, 414
  computerized analyzers, 420
  Connectivity Industry Consortium (CIC), 421
  elements of computer, 414–415
  general laboratory computer skills, 418–420
  interfacing, 420
  laboratory information system (LIS), 415
    bar codes, 417, *419*
    icons and mnemonic codes, 416
    ID codes, 416
    passwords, 416
    radio frequency ID, 417
  networks, 413
  trends, 421
Concentric circles, 510
Confidential incident/occurrence reports, 52
Confidentiality, patient, 11–12, 510
Confirmation and respect
  healthcare communication and, 15
Congenital hypothyroidism, 140
Congestive heart failure (CHF), 160, 393
Connective tissue, 127
  supporting, 128
Connectivity Industry Consortium (CIC), 421
Contact precautions, 79, *81*, 510
Contact transmission, 67, 510
Contact-activation pathway, 180
Contaminated materials, dispose of, 253, 333
Continuing education for phlebotomist, 8
Continuing education units (CEUs), 8
Continuous quality improvement (CQI) program, 40, 41, 510
Continuum of care, 510
Control, healthcare communication and, 15
COPD (*See* Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease)
Copper (Cu), 480t
Cord blood, 480t
Corium (*See* Dermis)
Coronary (cardiac) veins, 157
Coronary arteries, 156, 510
Coronary circulation, 156–157
Cortisol, 285
  test, 28t
  timed, 480t
Corvac tubes, 219
CPD (*See* Citrate phosphate dextrose)
CPR (*See* Cardiopulmonary resuscitation)
CPT (*See* Current procedural terminology codes)
CPU (*See* Central processing unit)
CQI (*See* Continuous quality improvement)
Cranial cavity, 125, 510
Creatine kinase (CK), 28t, 288, 480t
Creatine kinase MB (CK-MB), 480t
Creatinine, 28t, 480t
Cretinism, 140
Criminal and civil actions, 54, 55t
Criminal action, 510
Crossmatch, 175, 510
CRP (*See* C-reactive protein)
Cryoglobulin, 480t
CSF (*See* Cerebrospinal fluid)
Culture, 480t
Culture and sensitivity (C&S) testing, 27, *31*, 31t, 509
Cupping, 5
Current procedural terminology (CPT) codes, 19, 510
Cursor, 511
Cursor movement, 420
Cushing's syndrome, 140
CVAD (*See* Central vascular access device)
CVC (*See* Central venous catheter*)*
Cyanotic, 511
Cyclosporine, 480t
Cystic fibrosis (CF), 344–345, 446, 511
Cytology, 30, 32
Cytomegalovirus antibody (CMV), 29t, 480t

D

D-dimer (D-D1), 26t, 480t
DAT (*See* Direct Access Testing; Direct antiglobulin test; Direct antihuman globulin test)
Data, 511
Data
  entering, 420
  inputting, 511
  verifying, 420
DCA Vantage A1c Analyzer, 397
Deep venous thrombosis (DVT), 184
Defendant, 59, 511
Dehydration, 285
Delivery time limits, 423–424
Delta checks, 49, 511
Dendrites, 136, 511
Department of Transportation (DOT), 511
  labeling system, 94, 95t, 96
  regulation, 423
Dependability, 10
Deposition, 59, 511
Dermatology, 22t
Dermis, 133, 511
Diabetes, in geriatric patients, 276
Diabetes insipidus, 140
Diabetes mellitus, 140
Diagnosis and billing codes, 19, 19t
Diagnosis-related groups (DRGs), 19t, 511
Diagnostic radiology services, 24t
Dialysis patients, 278
Diapedesis, 511
Diaphragm, 511
Diastole, 157, 511
Diastolic pressure, 160, 511
DIC (*See* Disseminated intravascular coagulation)
Diet, effects on blood components, 285–286
Diet restrictions, 237–238
Dietary services, 24t
DIFF-SAFE blood drop, 351, *351*

Differential (diff), 511
Differential, 480t
Differential white count (Diff) test, 25t
Digestive system, 141–142, *141*
  accessory organ functions, 142
  accessory organs and structures, 142
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 142
  functions, 141
  structures, 142
Digestive system disorders, 142
Digoxin, 481t
Direct Access Testing (DAT), 226
Direct antiglobulin test (DAT), 480t
Direct antihuman globulin test (DAT), 32t
Direct contact transmission, 67, 481
Direct inoculation369
Direct patient care, 24t
Directional terms, 123, 124t, 511
Discard tube, 511
Discovery, 59, 511
Disease- and organ-specific chemistry panels, 27t
Disinfectant, 511
Disinfectants, 195, 511
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 170, 184, 481t
Distal, 511
Diuretics, 287
Diurnal, 511
Diurnal/circadian variations, 287
Diversity, recognizing, 9
DNA histogram, 32
DNAR (*See* Do not attempt resuscitation)
DNR (*See* Do not resuscitate)
Do not attempt resuscitation (DNAR), 230, 511
Do not resuscitate (DNR), 230, 511
"Do Not Use" list of medical reports, 511
Documentation, 49–52, *50*
  collection manuals, 49–50, *50*
  Infection Control Procedure Manual, 52
  patient's record, 49
  procedure manual, 50, *51*
  QA forms, 52
    equipment check forms, 52
    internal reports, 52, *53*, *54*
  safety manual, 52
Donor eligibility, 361
Donor unit collection, principles of, 362
Door-to-balloon time (D2B), 32
Dorsal, 511
Dorsal cavities, 125, 511
DOT (*See* Department of Transportation)
Double-voided urine specimen, 440
Down's syndrome, 444
Dress codes, 14
DRGs (*See* Diagnosis-related groups)
Droplet precautions, 79, *80*, 511
Droplet transmission, 67–68, 511
Drug analysis test, 28t
Drug monitoring, 481t
Drug screening, 379–380, 511
Drug therapy, effects on blood components, 287–288
Due care, 56, 511
"Dupp", 159
DVT (*See* Deep venous thrombosis)
Dwarfism, 140

E

Early morning specimen, 439
ECC (*See* Emergency cardiovascular care)
ECG/EKG (*See* Electrocardiogram)
Edema, 291, 511
EDTA (*See* Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid)
Efferent nerve, 137
Eggs, 143
Electrical conduction system, 157
  pathway, 158t
Electrical safety, 88
  actions to take if electrical shock occurs, 89
  classes of fire, 90–91
  fire components, 90
  fire extinguishers, 91, *92*
  fire safety, 89–90
Electrocardiogram (ECG/EKG), 157–159, 511
Electroencephalograms (EEGs), 24t
Electrograph, 157
Electrolytes, 481t, 511
  test, 28t
Electroneurodiagnostic technology (ENT), 24t
Electronic QCs (EQCs), 381
Embolism, 170
Embolus, 170
Emergency cardiovascular care (ECC), 99
Emergency room (ER). *See also* STAT labs
  ID procedures, 234–235
Emergency services, 24t
EMLA (*See* Eutectic mixture of local anesthetics)
Empathy, healthcare communication and, 15
Employer liability, 56
End-stage renal disease (ESRD), 278
Endocardium, 154, 155t, 511
Endocrine, 511
  glands, 139t, 511
Endocrine system, 137–141, *138*
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 140, 141
  functions, 137
  structures, 137–141
Endocrinology, 22t
Endorphins, 101
Engineering controls
Engineering controls, 85, 511
"Enter" key, 511
Entitlement programs, 19
Entry pathway, 68
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), 88, 511
Environmental services, 24t
Enzyme precursors, 178–179
Eosinophils (eos), 172, 481t, 511
  count test, 26t
EPA (*See* Environmental Protection Agency)
Epicardium, 154, 155t, 512
Epidermis, 132, 512
Epididymis, 144
Epiglottis, 512
Epithelial, 512
  tissue, 127
Epithelium, 512
EPO (*See* Erythropoietin)
Epstein–Barr virus (EBV), 29t, 481t
EQCs (*See* Electronic QCs)
Equipment
  check forms, 52
  positioning for use, 247
  preparing, 330
Equipment carriers, 192
  handheld carriers, 193
  phlebotomy carts, 193–194
Equipment selection, 273
  and blood-collection procedures, 277
Errors, correcting, 420

Erythema, 512
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), 26t, 287, 481t
Erythrocytes, 171, 512
Erythropoietin (EPO), 138, 145
Esophagus, 142, 512
ESR (*See* Erythrocyte sedimentation rate)
ESRD (*See* End-stage renal disease)
Ethanol (ETOH), 512
Ethical behavior, 10
Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), 215, 216, 511
ETS (*See* Evacuated tube system)
Eutectic mixture of local anesthetics (EMLA), 272, 511
Evacuated tube system (ETS), 202, 512
  equipment preparation, 246
  multisample needles, 202–203, *201*
  needles, 202
  traditional components of, 203
  tube holders, 203–205
  tubes
    filling, removing, and mixing, 250–251
  venipuncture, 254–262
Evacuated tubes, 48, 205, *206*, 512
  additive tubes, 207
  color coding, 208–209
  expiration dates, 209
  nonadditive tubes, 208
  stoppers, 208
  vacuum, 206–207
Excessive bleeding, 301
Exercise, effects on blood components, 288
Exit pathway, 66
Exocrine glands, 131, 512
Expectorate, 512
Expert witnesses, 59
Expiration dates, 209
Exposure routes
  biohazard, 82
  blood-borne pathogen (BBP), 86
Expressed consent, 58
Exsanguinations, 5, 512
External, 512
External hemorrhage, first aid for, 98
External respiration, 146, 512
Extrasystoles, 159, 512
Extravascular, 512
Extrinsic pathway, 180, 512
Eyewash stations, 97

F

FAA (*See* Federal Aviation Administration)
Factor assays, 481t
Fainting, 301–303
Fallopian tubes, 144, 512
Family medicine, 22t
Family members, in patient's room, 231
FAN (*See* Fastidious antimicrobial neutralization)
Fastidious antimicrobial neutralization (FAN), 371–372, 512
Fasting, 512
Fasting specimen, 439
FDA (*See* Food and Drug Administration)
FDP test (*See* Fibrin degradation test)
Feather, 351, 512
Febrile agglutinins, 29t, 481t
Fecal occult blood test (FOBT), 449, 512
Feces specimen, 449
Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), 423, 512
Feedback, 12
Femoral artery, 460f, 512
  advantages, 460
  disadvantages, 461
Femoral puncture, 460
Ferritin, 482t
Fever, effects on hormones, 288
Fever of unknown origin (FUO), 363, 512
Fibrillations, 159, 512
Fibrin, 512
  clot, *431*
Fibrin degradation (FDP) test, 372
Fibrin degradation products (fibrin split products), 183, 512
Fibrin split products (FSP) test, 26t, 372, 482t
Fibrinogen, 26t, 482, 482t
Fibrinolysis, 177, 183, 512
Finger puncture, 330, *327*
  and heel puncture, 331
  lancets, *321*
  precautions, 327
FiO_2 (*See* Fraction of inspired oxygen)
Fire blankets, 89
Fire components, 90
Fire extinguishers, 91, *92*
Fire safety, 89–90
Fire tetrahedron, 90, *90*, 512
Fire triangle, 90
"Firmware", 414
First aid, 98
  cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 99
  emergency cardiovascular care (ECC), 99
  external hemorrhage, 98
  shock
    common symptoms, 98
    first aid for, 98
First morning/8-hour specimen, 439
First voided specimen, 439
Fist
  clenching, 240
  opening, 243–244, 249–250
  remaking, 247
Flanges, 512
Flea, 512
Fleams, 5, *5*
Flexiblood System, 359, 360f
Fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption (FTA-ABS), 29t, 482t
FOBT (*See* Fecal occult blood test)
Fomites, 512
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 194, 361
Forensic specimens, 378, 512
Formed elements, 170, 512
Fraction of inspired oxygen (FiO2), 462, 512
Fraud, 55, 512
Frontal (coronal) plane, 123, 512
FSP/FDP (*See* Fibrin split products/fibrin degradation product)
FTA-ABS (*See* Fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption)
Fungus culture and identification test, 31t
FUO (*See* Fever of unknown origin)

G

G-6-PD (*See* Glucose-6-phosphate dehydro genase)
Galactosemia (GALT), 343–344, 512
Gallbladder, 142, 512
GALT (*See* Galactosemia)
Gametes, 143, 512
Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT or GT), 28t, 482t
Gas exchange and transport, 147–148, *148*
Gastr, 110
Gastric analysis, 512
Gastric fluid/gastric analysis, 445
  nasopharyngeal secretions, 445
  saliva, 445

Gastric fluid/gastric analysis (*continued*)
semen, 445
serous fluid, 445–446
sputum, 446, *447*
sweat, 446
synovial fluid, 447
Gastrin, 482t
Gastroenterology, 22t, 111
Gastrointestinal (GI) tract, 142, 512
Gatekeeper, 512
Gauge, 201, 512
Gauze pads/cotton balls, 196
Gauze, placing, 332
GEM Premier 4000, 391, *391*
Gender, effects on blood components, 288
Gentamicin, 481t
Genzyme OSOM Ultra A test kit, 405
Geriatric venipuncture, 273
blood-collection procedures, 277
equipment selection, 277
patient identification, 277
pressure, holding, 278
site selection, 277
site, cleaning, 277
tourniquet application, 277
venipuncture, performing, 278
challenges, 273
arthritis, effects of, 275
coagulation problems, 275
diabetes, effects of, 276
hearing impairment, 274
mental impairment, 275
Parkinson's disease, effects of, 276
pulmonary function problems, 276
skin changes, 273–274
stroke, effects of, 276
visual impairment, 274–275
in wheelchairs patients, 276–277
safety issues, 276
Germ cells, 143, 512
Germicide, 512
Gerontology, 22t
GGT or GT (*See* Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase)
GI tract (*See* Gastrointestinal tract)
Gigantism, 140
Glomerulus, 145, 512
Gloves
and glove liners, 194
putting on, 246–247
removing, 253, 333
GLPs (*See* Good Laboratory Practices)
Glucose, 30t
fasting, 482t
(blood sugar) levels, 285
test, 28t, 394–396
Glucose tolerance test (GTT), 372, *373*, 439, 482t, 512
preparation and procedure, 373–375
Glucose-6-phosphate dehydro genase (G-6-PD), 482t
Glycemic control (TGC), 396
Glycolysis, 218, 513
Glycosylated hemoglobin (Hgb A1c), 396–397, 482t, 513
Goiter, 140
Gonads, 144, 513
Gonorrhea screen (GC), 482t
Good Laboratory Practices (GLPs), 42, 43, 512
Gout, 130
Gram (g), 513
Gram stain test, 31t
Granulocytes, 172, *172*, 513
Gray-top sodium fluoride tube, 378
Great saphenous veins, 162, 513
Greiner Bio-One Vacuette serum tubes, 219
GTT (*See* Glucose tolerance test)
Guaiac test, 449, 513
Guardians and pediatric venipuncture, 271

H

H-shaped antecubital veins, 167
H. pylori (*See Helicobacter pylori*)
HAI (*See* Healthcare-associated infection)
Hair, 134t, 449–450
follicles, 133, 134t
Hairy leukoplakia, 85
Hand hygiene
hand washing, 70–72
use of alcohol-based antiseptic hand cleaners, 70
Hand sanitizers, 195–196
Hand-held PCs (HPCs), 412, 513
Handheld carriers, 193
Handling instructions, special
observing, 332
Hands, sanitizing, 238, *238*, 253, 333
"Hard copy", 414
Hardware, 414, 513
Hazard Communication (HazCom) Standard, 513
labeling requirements, 94
material safety data sheets, 94
HBV (*See* Hepatitis B virus)
HCG (*See* Human chorionic gonadotropin)
HCO_3^- (*See* Bicarbonate ion)
HCT (*See* Hematocrit)
HCV (*See* Hepatitis C virus)
HDL (*See* High-density lipoprotein)
HDN (*See* Hemolytic disease of the newborn)
Health and Human Services (HHS), 18
Health information technology, 24t
Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPAA) of 1996, 11–12, 19
Health maintenance organizations (HMOs), 21, 513
Healthcare
communication
control and, 15
empathy and, 15
respect and confirmation, 15
trust and, 16
via telephone, 16, 17t
delivery of, 16–18
ambulatory care, 16
homebound services, 16
Public Health Service (PHS), 18, 18t
financing, 18–20
diagnosis and billing codes, 19, 19t
reimbursement, 19
third-party payers, 18–19
quality assurance in, 40–54. *See also* Quality assurance (QA)
setting
changes in, 20–21
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988 (CLIA '88), 34
clinical laboratory personnel, 33–34
healthcare delivery, 16–18
healthcare financing, 18–20
hospital services organization, 21–22, *23*, 24t
clinical laboratory (lab) services, 23, 25–33
Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee (HICPAC), 65, 382
Healthcare workers (HCWs), 11–12
Healthcare-associated infection (HAI), 65, 513

Hearing impairment, in geriatric patients, 274
Heart, 154
  attack, 157
  chambers of, 156t
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 160
  electrical conduction system of, *158*
  function, 157
    blood pressure, 159–160
    cardiac cycle, 157
    electrical conduction system, 157
    electrocardiogram (ECG), 157–159
    heart rate and cardiac output, 159
    heart sounds, origin of, 159
    pulse, 159
  and great vessels, *155*
  rate, 159, 513
  sounds, origin of, 159
  structure, 154
    chambers, 154
    coronary circulation, 156–157
    layers, 154
    septa, 156
    valves, 154
  valves, 156t
Heel puncture, 331
  and finger puncture, 331
  lancets, *321*
  precautions, 329
Helicobacter pylori (H. pylori), 448, 513
Helper T cells, 85
Hematest, 449
Hematocrit (Hct), 25t, 322, 397, 483, 482t
Hematology test, 22t, 23, *25*, 25t, 26t, 424
Hematoma, 291, *292*, 462, 473, 513
  formation, 304–305
Hematopoiesis, 128, 513
Hemoccult, 449
Hemoccult® II Sensa® occult blood collection cards, 399, *399*
Hemochromatosis, 377
Hemoconcentration, 307–308, 513
HemoCue Glucose 201 DM, 396
Hemocue HB 201+ Analyzer, 398, *398*
HemoCue Plasma/Low Hemoglobin analyzer, 362, *363*
Hemodialysis, *278*
Hemoglobin, 25t, 285, 398, 482t, 513
Hemoglobin A1c, 28t, 482t
Hemoglobin electrophoresis, 482t
Hemogram for complete blood count (CBC) assay, 23, 25t
Hemolysis, 308–309, 483
Hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN), 175, 341, 513
Hemolyzed, 513
Hemophilia, 184
Hemopoiesis, 128, 513
Hemorrhoids, 170
Hemostasis, 513
  process of, *178*
  role of liver in, 184
Hemostatic disorders and diagnostic tests, 184
Hemostatic plug, 177, 513
Hemostatic process in vivo, 181–183
  fibrinolysis, 183
  platelet plug formation, 182
  secondary hemostatic plug formation, 182
    amplification phase, 182–183
    propagation phase, 183
  vasoconstriction, 181
Heparin, 215, 217–218, 221t, 513
  lock, 513
  saline lock, 296, *296*
Heparin management test (HMT), 513
Heparinized plasma gel-barrier tubes, 219
Hepatic function panel A, 27t
Hepatitis
  B (HBV), 66
    exposure hazards, 84
    symptoms, 84
    vaccination, 84
  C (HCV)
    exposure hazards, 84
    symptoms, 84
  D (HDV), 84
Hepatitis B surface antibody (HBsAb), 483t
Hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), 29t, 483t
Hepatitis B virus (HBV), 513
Hepatitis C virus (HCV), 64, 513
Hgb/Hb (*See* Hemoglobin)
HICPAC (*See* Healthcare Infection Control Practices Advisory Committee)
High sensitivity (hs-CRP) test, 28t
High-density lipoprotein (HDL), 484t
  cholesterol, 289
HIPAA (*See* Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act)
Hippocrates, 4
Hirudo medicinalis, 5
Histologic/histological, 513
Histology, 29–30
Histoplasmosis (histo) test, 403
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), 64, 66, 513
  exposure hazards, 85
  symptoms of infection, 85
  consent, 58
  antigen (HIV-1), 483t
HLA phenotyping (*See* Human leukocyte antigen phenotyping)
HMOs (*See* Health maintenance organizations)
HMT (*See* Heparin management test)
Home care patients, 278
Homebound services and ambulatory care, 16
Homeostasis, 125, 513
Homocysteine (Hcy), 483t
Hormones, 137, 513
Hospice, 513
  patients, 278
Hospital services organization, 21–22, 24t
  organizational chart, *23*
HPCs (*See* Hand-held PCs)
Hs-CPR (high sensivity CRP), 393
Hub, 201, 513
Human anatomy and physiology, 121
  body cavities, 123–125, *125*
  body directional terms, 123, 124t
  body functions
    homeostasis, 125
    metabolism, 125–126
  body organization, 126
    cells, 126, *126*, 127t
    organs, 128
    tissues, 127–128
  body planes, 122–123, *123*
  body positions, 122
  body systems, 128
    digestive system, 141–142, *141*
    endocrine system, 137–141, *138*
    integumentary system, 131–135
    muscular system, 129–131, 130t, *131*
    nervous system, 135–137, *135*
    reproductive system, 142–144, *143*
    respiratory system, 146–150, *147*

Human anatomy and physiology (*continued*)
skeletal system, 128–129, *129*
urinary system, 144–146, *145*
Human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG/hCG), 29t, 399, 439, 483t, 513
Human immunodeficiency virus (*See* HIV)
Human leukocyte antigen (HLA) phenotyping, 218
Human leukocyte antigen-B 27 (HLA-B27), 483t
Humidity, effects on blood components, 290
Hydrogen breath test, 448
Hyperglycemia, 140, 373, 513
Hyperinsulinism, 140
Hyperkalemia, 390, 397, 514
Hypernatremia, 390, 514
Hypersecretion, 141, 514
Hyperthyroidism, 140
Hyperventilation, 148
Hypodermic needle, 200, 210, 514
Hypoglycemia, 140, 373, 514
Hypokalemia, 390, 514
Hyponatremia, 390, 514
Hyposecretion, 141, 514
Hypothyroidism, 140, 343, 514
Hypoxemia, 514

I

i-STAT® instrument, 391, *391*, 398
Iatrogenic, 514
anemia, 305
ICa_2^- (*See* Ionized calcium)
ICD-10-CM, 19t
ICD-10-PSC, 19, 19t
ICD-9-CM (*See* International Classification of Diseases, 9th rev., Clinical Modification)
Icons, 514
and mnemonic codes, 416
using, 420
Icon® 20 hCG, 399, *400*
Icteric, 514
Icterus, 514
ID
3-way ID, 233
discrepancies, 233
emergency room ID procedures, 234–235
missing ID, 234
outpatient ID, 236
ID band/bracelet, 514
of patient, 233
ID card, 514
ID code, 514
ID codes, 416
IDDM (*See* Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus)
Identification bracelets, checking, 233, *233*
IDS (*See* Integrated healthcare delivery system)
Immune, 514
Immuno suppressants, 376t
Immunoglobulins (IgA/IgG/IgM), 483t
Immunohematology, 27, 29, 32t
Immunology tests, 26, 29t
Implanted port, 299, *299*, 514
Implied consent, 58
Inadvertent arterial puncture, 305
Incident/occurrence reports, 52
Indices, 25t, 483t
Indirect contact transmission, 67, 514
Indwelling line, 514
Infant heel, 328, *328*, *329*
warmer, 324
Infant respiratory distress syndrome (IRDS), 514
Infection, 306, 514
communicable infections, 64–65
defined, 64
healthcare-associated infection (HAI), 65
nosocomial, 65
Infection control, 63
chain of infection
breaking, 68–69
entry pathway, 68
exit pathway, 66
infectious agent, 65
means of transmission, 66–68
reservoir, 66
susceptible host, 68
isolation procedures, 75
body substance isolation (BSI), 76
guideline for isolation precautions, 76–79, *80*, *81*
protective/reverse isolation, 75
traditional isolation systems, 75
universal precautions (UP), 76
methods
hand hygiene, 70–72
nursery and neonatal ICU infection-control technique, 75
personal protective equipment (PPE), 71–74
protective clothing, 74–75
programs, 69–70
Infection Control Procedure Manual, 52
Infectious agent, 65, 514
Infectious diseases, 22t
Inferior, 514
Inflammation, 514
Informed consent, 57, 514
Ingestion, as exposure routes, 83
Initiation phase, 182
Input, 413, 514
INR (*See* International normalized ratio)
Institute of Medicine (IOM), 117
Insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (IDDM), 140
Integrated healthcare delivery systems (IDSs), 21, 514
Integrity, phlebotomist with, 9
Integument, 514
Integumentary system, 131, 514
disorders and diagnostic tests, 134
functions, 131
skin layers, 132–134
appendages, 134t
cross-section of, *133*
dermis, 133
epidermis, 132
subcutaneous layer, 133
structures, 131
Intensive care units (ICUs), 24t
Interatrial septum, 156, 514
Interface, 420, 514
Intermediate antebrachial vein (*See* Median vein)
Intermediate basilic vein (*See* Median basilic vein)
Intermediate cephalic vein (*See* Median cephalic vein)
Intermediate collection tube, 370
Internal medicine, 22t
Internal respiration, 146, 514
Internal/deep, 514
International Association for Continuing Education and Training (IACET), 8
International Classification of Diseases, 10th rev., Clinical Modification (ICD-10-CM), 19t
International Classification of Diseases, 10th rev., Procedural Coding System (ICD-10-PSC), 19, 19t
International Classification of Diseases, 9th rev., Clinical Modification (ICD-9-CM), 19, 19t, 19t, 514

International normalized ratio (INR), 26t, 384, 514
Interstitial fluid, 324, 514
Interventricular septum, 156, 514
Intracellular fluid, 324, 514
Intramuscular injection, 288–289
Intravascular, 514
Intravenous (IV) line, 296–297, *296*, 514
Intrinsic pathway, 180, 514
Invasion of privacy, 514
Inversion, mixing tubes by, 422
IOM (*See* Institute of Medicine)
Ionized calcium (iCa_2^-), 514
Ionized calcium (iCa^{2+}), 390
Iontophoresis, 446, 514
IRDS (*See* Infant respiratory distress syndrome)
Iron and total iron binding capacity, 483t
Islets of Langerhans, 139t
Isolation procedures, 514
IV (*See* Intravenous)

J

Jaundice, 289, *289*, 514
  newborn infant with, *342*
JELCO Hypodermic Needle-Pro® safety needle, *211*
Joint Commission, 40–41, 69
  "do not use" list of medical terms, 112, 117, 117t, 118
  National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs), 41
  Patient Safety and Sentinel Events, 41
Joints, 128

K

K^+ (*See* Potassium)
Kaposi's sarcoma, 85
Keratinized, 132, 514
Ketones, 30t
Keyboard, wireless, *413*
Kidneys, 145, 514
  stones, 140
Kinesic slip, 13, 515
Kinesics, 13, *13*, 515

L

L/M (*See* Liters per minute)
L/S ratio (*See* Lecithin-to-sphingomyelin)
"Lab-on-a-chip", 421
Label tubes, 252–253
Labeling, 48
Laboratories. *See* Clinical laboratory (lab) services
Laboratory administrator/laboratory manager, 33
Laboratory director/pathologist, 33
Laboratory information system (LIS), 415, 420, 515
  bar codes, 417, *419*
  icons and mnemonic codes, 416
  ID codes, 416
  managers, 34
  passwords, 416
  radio frequency ID, 417
Lactate, 398, 515
Lactate dehydrogenase (LD), 29t, 287, 288, 483t
Lactic acid (blood lactate), 483t
Lactose tolerance testing, principles of, 375
LAN (*See* Local area network)
Lancet, 515
  discarding, 330
  incision devices, 320
LANs (*See* Local area networks)
Large intestine, 142, 515
Larynx, 149, 149t, 515
Laser lancets, 320
Lasette, 320
Lateral, 515
Latex allergy, 301
Latex sensitivity, 238
Latex-free tourniquets, *200*
Lawsuits, avoiding, 57
LD (*See* Lactate dehydrogenase)
LDH (*See* Lactate dehydrogenase)
LDL (*See* High-density lipoprotein)
Lead (Pb), 483t
Lecithin-to-sphingomyelin (L/S) ratio, 444
Leech jars, 5, *6*
Leeching, 5
Leg and foot veins, *169*
Leg, ankle, and foot veins, 169
Legal issues, 54–60
  avoiding lawsuits, 57
  legal cases involving phlebotomy procedures, 59–60
  litigation process, 59
  malpractice insurance, 57
  patient consent, 57–58
    consent for minors, 58
    expressed consent, 58
    HIV consent, 58
    implied consent, 58
    informed consent, 57
    refusal of consent, 58
  tort, 55–56
Leucopenia, 515
Leukocyte esterase, 30t
Leukocytes, 171–172, 173, 515
Licensure, 8
Light-sensitive specimens, 426
Lipase, 29t, 142, 485, 484t
Lipemia, 286, 515
Lipemic, 515
Lipid levels, 286
Lipoprotein, 484t
Lips, 142
LIS (*See* Laboratory information system)
Liter, 515
Liters per minute (L/M), 462, 515
Lithium, 481t
Litigation process, 59
Liver, 142, 515
Liver's role in hemostasis, 184
Local anesthetic, 463, 464
  preparing and administering, 466t–467t
Local area networks (LANs), 413, 515
"Logging on", 418
Long Robe surgeon, 4
Long-term care patients, 278
Lookback, 515
  program, 361–362
Low-density lipoprotein (LDL), 484t
"Lubb", 159
Luer adapter, 515
Luer-lock tip, 210
Lumbar (spinal) puncture, 136, 515
Lumen, 201, 515
Lungs, 149, 149t, 515
Lupus erythematosus (LE cells) test, 26t
Lymph, 515
  flow, 185–186
  node removal, 291–292
  nodes, 186, 515
Lymphatic system, 184, *185*, 515
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 186
  functions, 184–185

Lymphatic system (*continued*)
lymph flow, 185–186
structures, 185
Lymphocytes (lymphs), 173, 515
Lymphostasis, 515
Lyse, 174, 515
Lysis, 360, 515
"L" hold technique, 248

M
M-shaped antecubital veins, 168
Magnesium (Mg), 484t
Magnet, 324
Malaria, 351
Malpractice, 56, 515
insurance, 57
Managed care organizations (MCOs), 21, 515
Managed care systems, 20
case management, 20–21
medical specialties, 21, 22t
network service systems, 21
Manual requisition, 227
March of Dimes, 343, 344t
Mastectomy, 291–292, 515
Material safety data sheets (MSDSs), 94, 515
MCOs (*See* Managed care organizations)
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH) test, 25t
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC) test, 25t
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV) test, 25t
Means of transmission, 66
airborne transmission, 67
contact transmission, 67
droplet transmission, 67–68
vector transmission, 68
vehicle transmission, 68
Media inoculation methods, 369–370
direct inoculation369
syringe inoculation, 370
Medial, 485
Medial cutaneous nerve, 167
Median basilic vein, 168
Median cephalic vein, 168
Median cubital vein, 167, 515
Median cutaneous nerve, 515
Median vein, 168
Medicaid, 515
Medical laboratory scientist (MLS), 33, 515, 516
Medical laboratory technician (MLT), 34
Medical record (MR) number, 233, 516
Medical records, 49, 86
Medical specialties, in managed care, 21, 22t
Medical technologist (MT), 33
Medical terminology, 107, 515
abbreviations and symbols, 112, 113t–116t
combining vowels/forms, 110
JCAHO "do not use" list, 112, 117, 117t, 118
prefixes, 108, 110t
pronunciation, 112, 113t
suffixes, 109–110, 111t
unique plural endings, 112, 112t
word elements classification discrepancies, 111–112
word roots, 108, 109t
Medicare, 10, 515
Medicare and medicaid program comparison, 19, 20
Megakaryocyte, 174, 515
Melanin, 132, 515
Meninges, 136, 515
Mental impairment, in geriatric patients, 275
Menu, 515
Metabolism, 125–126, 515
Meter, 515
Methadone, 380t
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 200
MI (*See* Myocardial infarction)
Microbe, 515
Microbial contamination, 222
Microbiocidal activity, 70
Microbiology tests, 27, *31*, 31t
Microclot, 515
Microcollection containers, 320–322, 516
Microhematocrit tubes, 332, 516
and sealants, 322–323
Microscope slides, 324
Microtubes (*See* Microcollection containers)
Middleware programs, 415
Midsagittal (medial) plane, 123, 516
Midstream, 516
clean-catch specimen, 441, 442, 443
collection, 437
specimen, 441
Military time, 516
Minors, consent for, 58
Mitosis, 516
MLS (*See* Medical Laboratory Scientist)
Mnemonic, 516
codes, 416
Modem, 516
Modified Allen test, 457, 464, 465t–466t
Monocytes (monos), 173, 516
Mononucleosis screen, 484t
Motivation, 10
Motor nerve, 137
Motor neuron, *136*
Motor or efferent nerves, 516
Mouse, wireless, *413*
Mouth, 142
MR number (*See* Medical record number)
MRSA (*See* Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*)
MSDSs (*See* Material safety data sheets)
Multiple-test-panel monitoring by POCT, 390–392
Multisample needles, 200, 202–203, 516
Murmurs, 159, 516
Muscle spasms, 140
Muscle tissue, 128, *132*
Muscular system, 129, 130t, *131*
disorders and diagnostic tests, 130
functions, 129
structures, 130
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 403, 446
Myocardial infarction (MI), 157, 160, 516
Myocardial ischemia, 157, 160, 516
Myocardium, 154, 155t, 516
Myxedema, 140

N
N95 respirator, *67*, 74, 82
Na^+ (*See* Sodium)
NAACLS (*See* National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences)
Nails, 134t
Nasopharyngeal (NP), 516
secretions, 445
National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences (NAACLS), 7, 43
National Center for Competency Testing (NCCT), 8t
National Certified Phlebotomy (NCPT), 8t
National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), 90, 91, 516
labeling system, 96–97

National Healthcareer Association (NHA), 8t
National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH), 67, 516
National Institute on Aging (NIA), 273
National Institute on Drug Abuse (NIDA), 380, 516
National Patient Safety Goals (NPSGs), 41, 516
National standard and regulatory agencies, 40–43
  Clinical and Laboratory Standards Institute, 42–43
  Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments of 1988, 42
  College of American Pathologists, 42
  Joint Commission, 40–41
  National Accrediting Agency for Clinical Laboratory Sciences, 43
Nausea, 303
NBS (*See* Newborn/neonatal screening)
Near Miss/Occurrence Report Form, 52, *53*
Needle, 200, 201t
  gauge, 201
  length, 202
  multisample needles, 202–203, *201*
  safety features, 202
  phobia, 516
  sheath, 516
  inserting, 248–249, *249*
  inspect, 247
  uncapping, 247
  position, 311
    bevel against vein wall, 314
    bevel completely through vein, 313–314
    bevel partially into vein, 313
    bevel partially out of skin, 313
    bevel partially through vein, 313
    needle beside vein, 314
    needle not inserted far enough, 312–313
    undetermined needle position, 314
  removing, 251–252
  safety feature, 251–252
  and sharps disposal containers, 197
Needle and holder units, 205
  combination systems, 213
  evacuated tubes, 205
    additive tubes, 207
    color coding, 208–209
    expiration dates, 209
    nonadditive tubes, 208
    stoppers, 208
    vacuum, 206–207
  syringe system, 210
    syringe needles, 211
    syringe transfer device, 211–212
    syringes, 211
  winged infusion set, 212–213
Needlestick Safety and Prevention Act, 85, 516
Negative stress, 102
Negligence, 56, 59–60, 516
Neonatal bilirubin collection, 341–343
Neonates and other infants, identification of, 235–236
Nephrology, 22t
Nephron, 145, 516
Nerve injury, 306
Nerve tissue, 128
Nervous system, 135–137, *135*
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 137
  functions, 135
  structures, 136–137
    central nervous system (CNS), 136
    neurons, 136
    peripheral nervous system (PNS), 137
Network, 516
  service systems, 21
Neurology, 22t
Neurons, 136, 516
Neutropenic, 516
Neutrophils, 75, 172, 516
Newborn screening specimen collection equipment, *345*
Newborn/neonatal screening (NBS), 343–348, 516
NFPA (*See* National Fire Protection Association)
NIA (*See* National Institute on Aging)
NIDA (*See* National Institute on Drug Abuse)
NIDDM (*See* Non–insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus)
NIOSH (*See* National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health)
Nitrite, 30t
Non–English-speaking patients, identification of, 235
Non–insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus (NIDDM), 140
Nonadditive tubes, 208
Nonblood specimens and tests, 435
  body-fluid, 436
    amniotic fluid, 444
    cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 444
    urine, 436–444
  bone marrow, 447–448
  breath samples
    C-urea breath test (C-UBT), 448
    hydrogen breath test, 448
  buccal swabs, 447
  feces (stool), 449
  gastric fluid/gastric analysis, 445
    nasopharyngeal secretions, 445
    saliva, 445
    semen, 445
    serous fluid, 445–446
    sputum, 446, *447*
    sweat, 446
    synovial fluid, 447
  hair, 449–450
  labeling and handling, 436
  throat swabs, 450, *450*, 451
  tissue specimens, 450–451
Noninstrumented tests, 381
Nonintact skin, as exposure routes, 83
Noninvasive, 516
Nonverbal communication
  appearance, 14
  kinesics, 13, *13*
  proxemics, 14, 14t
  touch, 14
Nose, 149, 149t
Nosocomial infection, 65, 516
Nothing by mouth (NPO), 516
Nova Biomedical's StatStrip Lactate analyzer, 398
NP (*See* Nasopharyngeal)
NPO (*See* Nothing by mouth)
NSPGs (*See* National Patient Safety Goals)
Numbness, arterial puncture, 473
Nursery and neonatal ICU infection-control technique, 75
Nursing care, 24t
Nursing Services Manual, 46, *47*, 49

O

O&P (*See* Ova and parasites)
Obesity, challenges of phlebotomist in, 292
Obstetrics and gynecology, 22t
Occlusion, 516
Occult blood, 31t, 398–399, 516
Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), 69, 80, 381, 486
Occupational therapy (OT), 24t
Oncology, 22t

Ophthalmology, 22t
Opiates, 380t
Opportunist, 68
Oral glucose test (OGTT) (*See* Glucose tolerance test)
Order inquiries, making, 420
Order of draw, 220, 222t, 516
  capillary puncture and, 326
  carryover/cross-contamination, 220–222
  microbial contamination, 222
  tissue thromboplastin contamination, 222
Orders, canceling, 420
Organizations (JCAHO), 514
Organs, 128
Orthopedics, 22t
OSHA (*See* Occupational Safety and Health Administration)
Osmotic fragility test, 26t
Osteochrondritis, 130, 516
Osteomyelitis, 130, 516
Osteoporosis, 130
Otorhinolaryngology, 22t
Outcomes quality assurance, 46
Outpatient ID, 236
Output, 414, 516
Ova, 143
Ova and parasites (O&P), 31t, 449, 516
Ovaries, 139t, 144
Overnight specimen, 439
Ovum, 143, 516
Oxalates, 215, 218, 221t, 516
Oxygen, 147
Oxyhemoglobin, 148, 516

P

Pacemaker, 157
Pacemaker, 517
Packed cell volume (PVC), 322. (*See also* Hematocrit)
Pain
  during venipuncture, 303
  pediatric venipuncture and, 272
Palmar, 517
Palpate, 243, 517
Pancreas, 142, 517
Pancreatic disorders, 140
PAP method (*See* Papanicolaou method)
Pap smear, 32
Papanicolaou (PAP) method, 438
Papillae (singular, papilla), 133, 517
Papillary dermis, 133, 517
Parathyroid disorders, 140
Parathyroid gland, 139t
Parenteral administration, 517
Parenteral routes, 82
Parents and pediatric venipuncture, 271
Parkinson's disease, in geriatric patients, 276
Partial draw tubes, 207
Partial pressure (P), 148, 517
Partial pressure of carbon dioxide (Pco_2), 148, 517
Partial pressure of oxygen (PO2), 148, 517
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT), 385, 425, 484t
Partial-vacuum tubes, 310
Partially filled tubes, 309–310
Password, 416, 418, 517
Patency, 243, 517
Paternity/parentage testing, 375–376
Path of workflow, 45, 45t
Pathogenic, 517
Pathogens, 64, 517
Pathologist, 33
Patient
  approaching, 229–232
  bedside manner and, 232
  consent, 232
  entering room of, 231
  identifying self to, 231–232
  unavailable, 231
Patient Bill of Rights, 11
Patient care partnership, 11
Patient care services, 24t
Patient–client interaction, phlebotomist and, 8–12
Patient complications and conditions, 300
  adhesive allergy, 300
  antiseptic allergy, 301
  excessive bleeding, 301
  fainting, 301–303
  latex allergy, 301
  nausea and vomiting, 303
  pain, 303
  petechiae, 303, *304*
  seizures/convulsion, 304
Patient confidentiality, 11–12
Patient consent, 57–58
  consent for minors, 58
  expressed consent, 58
  HIV consent, 58
  implied consent, 58
  informed consent, 57
  refusal of consent, 58
Patient ID, 517
Patient identification (PI), 46, 232
  3-way ID, 233
  and blood-collection procedures, 277
  checking identification bracelets, 233
  emergency room ID procedures, 234–235
  ID discrepancies, 233
  missing ID, 234
  neonates and other infants, 235–236
  outpatient ID, 236
  sleeping patients, 234
  unconscious patients, 234
  verifying name and date of birth, 232, 233
  of young, mentally incompetent, or non–English-speaking patients, 235
Patient, positioning, 239, *239*, 326
Patient preparation
  addressing needle phobia, 237
  addressing objects in the patient's mouth, 237
  addressing patient inquiries, 236–237
  explaining the procedure, 236
  handling difficult patients, 237
  handling patient objections, 237
Patient preparation procedures, 46
Patient preparation requirements, 380
Patient Safety and Sentinel Events, 41
Patient sample, 517
Patient, thanking, 253, 333
Patients' rights, 10–11
Patient's arm, checking, 253
Patient's record, 49
Payment methods and diagnosis coding, 18–19, 19t
Pco_2 (*See* Partial pressure of carbon dioxide)
PDA (*See* Personal digital assistant)
Peak level, 517
Pediatric urine collection, 443
Pediatric venipuncture, 270
  challenges, 270–271
  child, dealing with, 271
  equipment selection, 273
  pain interventions, 272

parents/guardians, dealing with, 271
procedures, 273
selecting a method of restraint, 272–273
Pediatrics, 22t
Pediculus, 108
Pelvic cavity, 125, 517
Pen, 197
Penis, 144
Percutaneous, 517
Percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), 32
Percutaneous exposure routes, 83
Performance Improvement Plan documents, 52, *54*
Pericardial fluid, 446, 517
Pericarditis, 160
Pericardium, 154, 517
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 137, 517
Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC), 299, *300*, 517
Peritoneal fluid, 446, 517
Permucosal, 517
Permucosal exposure routes, 83
Personal digital assistant (PDA), 412, 517
Personal hygiene, 99–100
personal protective equipment (PPE), 71, 462, 517
gloves, 72–73
gowns, 73–74
lab coats, 74
masks, face shields, and goggles, 74
respirators, 74
Personal wellness, 99
back protection, 101
personal hygiene, 99–100
proper nutrition, 100
rest and exercise, 100–101
stress management, 102
Petechiae, 303, *304*
Petechiae, 517
pH, 30t
Phagocytosis, 172, 517
Phalanges (singular, phalanx), 517
Pharmacy, 24t
Pharynx, 142, 149, 149t, 517
phasia, 112
Phencyclidine, 380t
Phenylketonuria (PKU), 343, 517
Phenylketonuria, 517
Phenytoin, 481t
PHI (*See* Protected health information)
Phlebitis, 170
Phlebotomist, 34, 65, 93, 450
certification of, 7–8, 8t
communication skills and, 12–16
continuing education for, 8
licensure, 8
patient–client interaction, 8–12
with phlebotomy cart, *193*
professionalism, 9–10
role of, 6–7
Phlebotomy, 517
current practice of, 6–16
historical perspective on, 4–5
quality assurance in, 43–46
Phlebotomy carts, 193–194
Phlebotomy chairs, 192, *192*
Phlebotomy Technician (PBT), 8t
Phlebotomy-related vascular anatomy, 166
antecubital fossa, 166–167
arm and hand veins, 169
arteries, 169
H-shaped antecubital veins, 167
leg, ankle, and foot veins, 169
M-shaped antecubital veins, 168
Phospholipids, 444
Phosphorus (P), 484t
PHS (*See* Public Health Service)
Physical therapy (PT), 24t
Physicians, in patient's room, 231
Physiological variables, 284
age, 284
altitude, 285
dehydration, 285
diet, 285–286
diurnal/circadian variations, 287
drug therapy, 287–288
exercise, 288
fever, 288
gender, 288
intramuscular injection, 288–289
jaundice, 289, 289
position, 289
pregnancy, 290
smoking, 290
stress, 290
temperature and humidity, 290
Physiology, 517
PI (*See* Patient identification)
PICC (*See* Peripherally inserted central catheter*)*
Pilocarpine, 517
Pineal gland, 139t
Pituitary Disorders, 140
Pituitary gland, 137–138, 139t, 517
PKU (*See* Phenylketonuria)
Placenta, 141
Plaintiff, 59, 517
Plantar surface, 517
Plasma, 170, 171, 176, 207, 517
Plasma preparation tubes (PPTs), 518
Plasma separator tubes (PSTs), 220, 518
Plasma-preparation tubes (PPTs), 220
Plasminogen, 484t
Plasmodia, 351
Plastic caps, 324
Plastic Clad Microhematocrit tubes, *323*
Platelet adhesion, 182, 517
Platelet aggregation, 182, 484t, 517
Platelet count (Plt. ct), 25t, 484t
Platelet function, 385
Platelet plug, 177
Platelet plug formation, 182, 517
Platelets, 517 (*See also* Thrombocytes)
Pleura, 149, 517
Pleural cavity/space, 517
Pleural fluid, 446, 517
Pleural space/cavity, 149
Plunger, 211, 517
PMN (*See* Polymorphonuclear)
PNS (*See* Peripheral nervous system)
PO_2 (*See* Partial pressure of oxygen)
POC Cholestech LDX® instrument, 393
POCT (*See* Point-of-care testing)
Point-of-care testing (POCT), 6, 518
arterial blood gases, 389–390
B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP), 393
C-reactive protein (CRP), 393
cardiac troponin T and I, 392–393
coagulation monitoring by, 383
ACT test, 384
APTT/PTT test, 385
bleeding time, 385–389

Point-of-care testing (POCT) (*continued*)
platelet function, 385
PT/NR test, 384–385
electrolytes, 390
glucose testing, 394–396
glycemic control (TGC), 396
glycosylated hemoglobin, 396–397
hematocrit (Hct), 397
hemoglobin, 398
lactate, 398
multiple-test-panel monitoring by, 390–392
occult blood, 398–399
pregnancy testing, 399
quality and safety in, 381–383
skin tests, 403–404
strep testing, 405–406
urinalysis, 406
Polycythemia, 6, 377, 518
Polymorphonuclear (PMN), 172, 517, 518
Position, of patient, 239, *239*, 289, 326
Posterior curvature, 518
Posterior/dorsal, 518
Postprandial (PP), 372, 518
Potassium (K^+), 390, 518, 544
Potassium oxalate, 218, 518
Potential hydrogen (pH), 517
PP (*See* Postprandial)
PPD (*See* Purified protein derivative)
PPE (*See* Personal protective equipment)
PPOs (*See* Preferred provider organizations)
PPS (*See* Prospective payment system)
PPTs (*See* Plasma preparation tubes)
Preanalytical considerations, 283, 518
basal state, 284
patient complications and conditions, 300
adhesive allergy, 300
antiseptic allergy, 301
excessive bleeding, 301
fainting, 301–303
latex allergy, 301
nausea and vomiting, 303
pain, 303
petechiae, 303, *304*
seizures/convulsion, 304
physiological variables, 284
age, 284
altitude, 285
dehydration, 285
diet, 285–286
diurnal/circadian variations, 287
drug therapy, 287–288
exercise, 288
fever, 288
gender, 288
intramuscular injection, 288–289
jaundice, 289, *289*
position, 289
pregnancy, 290
smoking, 290
stress, 290
temperature and humidity, 290
problem sites
burns, scars, and tattoos, 291
damaged veins, 291
edema, 291
hematoma, 291, *292*
mastectomy, 291–292
obesity, 292
procedural error risks, 304
anticoagulant, reflux of, 306–307
hematoma formation, 304–305
iatrogenic anemia, 305
inadvertent arterial puncture, 305
infection, 306
nerve injury, 306
vein damage, 307
reference ranges/intervals, 284
specimen quality concerns, 307
hemoconcentration, 307–308
hemolysis, 308–309
partially filled tubes, 309–310
specimen contamination, 310
wrong/expired collection tube, 310
troubleshooting failed venipuncture, 311
collapsed vein, 314–315
needle position, 311–314, *312*
tube position, 311
tube vacuum, 315
vascular access devices (VADs) and sites, 293
arterial line, 293
arteriovenous shunt/fistula/graft, 293
blood sampling device, 293
central vascular access device (CVAD), 297–299
heparin/saline lock, 296, *296*
intravenous line, 296–297, *296*
previously active IV sites, 297
Preanalytical error, possible sources of, 422
Preanalytical phase, 421
Precision XceedPro (PXP), 396
Preferred provider organizations (PPOs), 21, 518
Prefixes, 518
medical, 108, 110t
metric system, 487, 488t
Pregnancy, effects on blood components, 290
Pregnancy testing, 399
Preliminary Denial of Accreditation (PDA), 40
Preop/postop, 518
Pressure, applying, 332
Pressure, holding
and blood-collection procedures, 277
Previously active IV sites, 297
Primary care, 18, 518
Primary hemostasis, 518
Primum non nocere, 10
Privacy, invasion of, 55
Procedural Coding System (PCS), 19
Procedural error risks, 304
anticoagulant, reflux of, 306–307
hematoma formation, 304–305
iatrogenic anemia, 305
inadvertent arterial puncture, 305
infection, 306
nerve injury, 306
vein damage, 307
Procedure manual, 50, *51*
Process, 414
quality assurance, 46
Professional services, 24t
Professionalism, 9–10
Proficiency testing, 42
Prompt delivery, 424
Pronation, 518
Prone, 122, 518
Pronunciation, of medical terms, 112, 113t
Propagation phase, 183
Proper nutrition, 100
Propoxyphene, 380t
Prospective payment system (PPS), 19t, 518

Prostate, 144
Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 29t, 484t
Protease inhibitors, 376t
Protected health information (PHI), 11, 517
Protected health information (PHI), 517
Protective isolation, 75, 518
Protein, 30t
Prothrombin time (PT), 26t, 425, 484t, 518
Protime (PT), 384
Proxemics, 14, 518
Proximal, 518
PSA (*See* Prostate-specific antigen)
PSTs (*See* Plasma separator tubes)
Psychiatric drugs, 376t
Psychiatry, 22t
PT (*See* Prothrombin time; Protime)
PT/NR test, 384–385
PTT (*See* Partial thromboplastin time)
Public Health Service (PHS), 18, 18t, 517, 518
Pulmonary circulation, 161, 518
Pulmonary function, in geriatric patients, 276
Pulmonary medicine, 22t
Pulse, 159, 518
Pulse rate, 518
Puncture devices, 47
Puncture/incision site, selecting, 326
  adults and older children, 326–328
  infants, 328–329
Purified protein derivative (PPD), 69, 518
PVC (*See* Packed cell volume)
PXP (*See* Abbott Precision XceedPro*)*

Q

QA (*See* Quality assurance)
QC (*See* Quality control)
QI (*See* Quality improvement)
QNS (*See* Quantity not sufficient)
QSE (*See* Quality system essentials)
Quality assessment
  phlebotomy areas subject to, 46–49
    patient preparation procedures, 46
    specimen collection procedures, 46–49
Quality assurance (QA), 518
  defined, 44
  documentation, 49–52, *50*
  forms, *44*, 52
    equipment check forms, 52
    internal reports, 52, *53*, *54*
  indicators, 44–45
  national standard and regulatory agencies, 40–43
  in phlebotomy, 43–46
    areas subject to quality assessment, 46–49
  process and outcomes, 46
  QC, defined, 46
  risk management, 52–54
  thresholds and data, 45–46
Quality control (QC), 518
  defined, 46
Quality improvement (QI), 518
Quality indicators, 488
Quality System Essentials (QSEs), 44–45, 45t, 518
Quality System Model for Health Care, 45
Quality-assurance (QA) manager, 34
Quantity not sufficient (QNS), 427, 518

R

Radial artery, 518
  advantages, 458–459
  disadvantages, 459
Radiation hazard symbol, 92–93, *93*
Radiation safety, 92–93
Radio frequency ID (RFID), 417
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID), 518
RAM (*See* Random-access memory)
Random-access memory (RAM), 414, 518
Rapid plasma reagin (RPR), 29t, 69, 485t
Rapid Serum Tube (RST), 219, *219*
RBC (*See* Red blood cell)
Read-only memory (ROM), 414, 519
Record, patient's, 49
Red blood cell (RBC), 284, 285, 485t, 518 (*See also* Erythrocytes)
Red blood cell count (RBC count) test, 25t
Red blood cell distribution width (RDW) test, 25t
Reference laboratories, 32, 518
Reference ranges/intervals, 284, 518
Reference values, 325
Reflux, 518
Refusal of consent, 58
Registered Phlebotomy Technician (RPT), 8t
Regular voided specimen, 441
Reimbursement, 19
Renal function panel, 27t
Renin level, 287
Rennin, 145
Reproductive system, 143, *143*
  disorders, 144
    and diagnostic tests, 144
  functions, 143
  structures, 144
Requisition, 518
  accessioning, 229
  computer, 227, *228*, 229
  manual, 227, *227*
  receipt of, 228, *229*
  reviewing, 229
  with bar code, 228, 228
Res ipsa loquitor, 56, 518
Reservoir, 518
Reservoir host, 66
Resheathing devices, 202, 518
Respect and confirmation
  healthcare communication and, 15
Respiration, 146
Respiratory system, 146–150, *147*
  disorders, 150
    and diagnostic tests, 150
  functions, 146–149
    acid–base balance, 148–149
    gas exchange and transport, 147–148, *148*
    respiration, 146
  structures, 149–150
    alveoli, 150
    lungs, 149
    respiratory tract, 149
Respiratory therapy (RT), 24t
Respiratory tract, 149
  major structures of, 149t
Respondeat superior, 56, 518
Rest and exercise, 100–101
Restraint, selecting a method of, 272–273
Reticulocyte (retic) count test, 26t, 485t
Reticulocytes (retics), 171, 518
Reverse isolation, 75, 518
RF (*See* Rheumatoid factor)
RFID (*See* Radio Frequency Identification)
Rh blood group system, 175, 518
Rh factor, 175, 518
Rh negative (Rh−), 175, 518

Rh positive (Rh+), 175, 518
Rheumatoid arthritis, 275
Rheumatoid factor (RF), 29t, 485t
Rheumatology, 22t
Rickets, 130
"The Right to Know Law", 94
Risk management, 52–54, 518
Roche Urisys 1100 Urine Analyzers, 406
ROM (*See* Read-only memory)
Router, 519
Routine handling, of specimen
  delivery time limits, 423–424
  mixing tubes by inversion, 422
  time limit exceptions, 425
  transporting specimens, 423
Routine urinalysis, 437
RPR (*See* Rapid plasma reagin)
RST (*See* Rapid Serum Tube)

S

S-Monovette® Blood Collection System, 213
SA (*See* Sinoatrial)
Safety, 80
  biosafety, 81
    BBP exposure routes, 86
    biohazard, 81
    biohazard exposure routes, 82–83
    biohazard waste disposal, 88
    blood-borne pathogen (BBP), 83–85
    body fluid spills, cleanup of, 88
    exposure control plan, 85–86
    exposure incident procedure, 87
    OSHA Standard for BBP, 85
    surface decontamination, 88
  chemical safety, 93
    chemical spill procedures, 97
    department of transportation labeling system, 94, 95t, 96
    Hazard Communication (HazCom) Standard, 94
    NFPA labeling system, 96–97
    safety showers and eyewash stations, 97
  electrical safety, 88
    actions to take if electrical shock occurs, 89
    classes of fire, 90–91
    fire components, 90
    fire extinguishers, 91, *92*
    fire safety, 89–90
  geriatric patients and, 276
  radiation safety, 92–93
Safety features, desirable characteristics of, 202
Safety manual, 52
Safety showers, 97
Safety-winged infusion sets, *214*
Sagittal plane, 123, 489
Salicylates, 481t
Saline lock, 296, *296*, 519
Saliva specimen, 445
Salivary glands, 142, 519
Sample, 489
Sampling errors, 474–475
Sanitizing hands, 238, *238*, 253, 333
Sarstedt S-Monovette® venous blood collection system, *214*
Scars, as injection sites, 291
Sciences (NAACLS), 516
Sclerosed, 519
Scrotum, 144
Sebaceous (oil) glands, 133, 134t, 519
Secondary care, 18, 519
Secondary hemostasis, 519
Secondary hemostatic plug formation, 182
  amplification phase, 182–183
  propagation phase, 183
Secondary storage, 415
Seizures/convulsion, 304
Self-confidence, phlebotomists, 9
Self-motivation, 10
Semen specimen, 445
Semilunar valves, 519
Seminal ducts, 144
Seminal vesicles, 144
Sensory nerve, 137
Sensory or afferent nerves, 519
Septa (singular, septum), 154, 156, 519
Septicemia, 362, 519
Serology/immunology tests, 26, 29t
Serous fluid, 445–446, 519
Serum, 175, 207, 519
Serum gel tubes, *424*
Serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT), 287
Serum hepatitis, 83
Serum protein electrophoresis (SPEP), 485t
Serum separator tubes (SSTs), 219, 519
Sex cells, 143, 519
SGOT (*See* Serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase)
Shaft, 201, 519
Sharps container, 519
Sharps injury log, 86
Sharps containers, 197
Shock
  common symptoms, 98
  first aid for, 98
Short draw, 519
Short draw tubes, 207
Short Robe surgeons, 4
Short-draw tubes, 519
Shunt, 519
Sickle cell screen test, 26t
Siemens Clinitek Advantus Analyzer urine strip reader, *30*
Signs, looking for, 229–231
Silica, 219, 221t, 519
Sinoatrial (SA) node, 157, 519
Site
  air-drying, 330
  cleaning, 330
  checking, 332–333
  cleaning
    and blood-collection procedures, 277
  puncturing, 330
  selection
    and blood-collection procedures, 277
  warming, 329–330
Situational decision rules, 40
Skeletal system, 128, *129*
  disorders, 130
    and diagnostic tests, 128
  functions, 128
  structures, 128
    bones, 128
    connective tissue, supporting, 128
    joints, 128
Skilled nursing facilities (SNFs), 21
Skin antisepsis, 363, 519
Skin, in geriatric patients, 273–274
Skin layers, 132, *133*
  appendages, 134t
  cross-section of, *133*
  dermis, 133
  epidermis, 132
  subcutaneous layer, 133

Skin tests, 403–404
Sleeping patients, identification of, 234
Slides, 197
Small intestine, 142, 519
Smoking, effects on blood components, 290
Sodium (Na^+), 390, 516, 519
Sodium citrate, 216, 519
Sodium citrate tubes, *429*
Sodium fluoride, 219, 221t, 519
Sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS), 218, 370, 519
SoftGUARD barrier hand cream, *194*
Software, 414, 519
Solutes, 519
Somatic nervous system, 135
Special handling instructions, observing, 253
Special handling, of specimen, 425
  body temperature specimens, 425
  chilled specimens, 425
  light-sensitive specimens, 426
  specimen processing, 426
Special identification systems, 358–360
Special procedures, 358
  2-hour postprandial glucose, 372
  antimicrobial neutralization products, 371–372
  blood bank specimens, 358
    identification and labeling requirements, 358
    special identification systems, 358–360
    specimen requirements, 358
  blood cultures, 362
    collection procedure, 365
    intermediate collection tube, 370
    media inoculation methods, 369–370
    skin antisepsis, 363
    specimen requirements, 363
  blood donor collection, 360
    autologous donation, 362
    donor eligibility, 361
    lookback program, 361–362
  coagulation specimens, 372
  glucose tolerance test (GTT), 372, 373
    preparation and procedure, 373–375
  lactose tolerance test, 375
  paternity/parentage testing, 375–376
  therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM), 376–377
  therapeutic phlebotomy, 377
  toxicology specimens, 378
    blood alcohol (ethanol) specimens, 378
    drug screening, 379–380
    forensic specimens, 378
  trace elements, 380–381
  type, screen, and cross-match, 360
Special-use anticoagulants, 218
  acid citrate dextrose (ACD), 218
  citrate phosphate dextrose (CPD), 218
  sodium polyanethol sulfonate (SPS), 218
Specimen (blood), 519
Specimen collection
  procedure for inability, 265–270
Specimen Collection Manual, 49
Specimen collection procedures
  collection priorities, 49
  delta checks, 49
  equipment, 47–48
    evacuated tubes, 48
    labeling, 48
    puncture devices, 47
  identification, 46
  technique, 48
Specimen collection requirements, 380
Specimen contamination, 310
Specimen handling, 421
  centrifugation, 428
    aliquot preparation, 431–432
    centrifuge operation, 429
    centrifuging plasma specimens, 430
    centrifuging serum specimens, 430
    stopper removal, 430–431
    tubes awaiting, 428
  routine handling
    delivery time limits, 423–424
    mixing tubes by inversion, 422
    time limit exceptions, 425
    transporting specimens, 423
  special handling, 425
    body temperature specimens, 425
    chilled specimens, 425
    light-sensitive specimens, 426
    specimen processing, 426
  specimen suitability, 427–428
Specimen, labeling, 332
Specimen processing, 426
Specimen quality concerns, 307
  hemoconcentration, 307–308
  hemolysis, 308–309
  partially filled tubes, 309–310
  specimen contamination, 310
  wrong/expired collection tube, 310
Specimen rejection criteria, 428
Specimen requirements, 358, 363
Specimen transportation, to lab, 333
SPEP (*See* Serum protein electrophoresis)
Sperm, 143
Spermatic cords, 144
Spermatozoa, 143, 519
Sphygmomanometer, 159, 519
Spill cleanup kit, *97*
Spinal cavity, 125, 519
SPS (*See* Sodium polyanethol sulfonate)
Sputum, 446, *447*, 519
Sputum screen, 485t
Squamous, 132, 519
SSTs (*See* Serum separator tubes)
Standard of care, 56, 519
Standard precautions, 76, *77*, 519
Stat, 519
STAT labs, 32, *33*
StatSpin Express, *430*
StatSpin® CritSpin microhematocrit, 397
StatSpin® CritSpin microhematocrit centrifuge, 397, *397*
StatStrip Lactate analyzer, 398, *399*
Statute of limitations, 56, 519
Steady state, 519
Steroids, 287
Stirrers, 324
Stomach, 142, 520
Stopper removal, 430–431
Stoppers, 208
Storage, 415, 520
Stratified, 132, 520
Stratum basale, 132
Stratum germinativum, 132, 520
Strep A Dipstick test kit, 405, *405*
Strep testing, 405–406
Streptococcus screen (strep), 485t
Stress, effects on blood components, 290
Stress management, 102
Stretchable latex strap tourniquets, 199
Stroke, in geriatric patients, 276

Subcutaneous, 520
Subcutaneous layer, 133, 520
Sudoriferous (sweat) glands, 133, 134t, 520
Suffix, 520
  medical, 109–110, 111t
Superior, 520
Supination, 520
Supine, 122, 520
Support services, 24t
Suprapubic aspiration, 520
Suprapubic specimen, 442–443
SureStep Flexx, 395
SureStep® Flexx glucose meter, *395*
Surfactant, 150, 520
Surgery, 24t
Surgicutt® automated bleeding time devices, 386, *386*
Susceptible host, 68, 520
Sweat chloride, 490, 485t
Sweat chloride test, 446
Sweat specimen, 446
Symbols, medical, 112, 113t–116t
Synchronization, 157
Syncope (sin' ko-pe), 520
Synovial fluid, 128, 447, 520
Syringe
  drawing, 250–251
  filling, 250–251
Syringe equipment, preparation of, 247
Syringe inoculation, 370
Syringe needles, 211
  discarding, 252
Syringe safety devices, *211*
Syringe system, 210, 520
  syringe needles, 211
  syringe transfer device, 211–212
  syringes, 211
Syringe system components, traditional, *210*
Syringe transfer device, 211–212, *212*, 268–270, 520
Syringe venipuncture procedure, 265, 265–268
Syringes, 211
System managers, 416
Systemic circulation, 161, 520
Systems software, 414
Systole, 157, 520
Systolic pressure, 160, 520

T

T lymphocytes, 173
T lymphs, 85
Tachycardia, 159, 520
TAT (*See* Turnaround time)
Tattoos, as injection sites, 291
TB test (*See* Tuberculin test)
TDM (*See* Therapeutic drug monitoring)
Technical supervisor, 33
Technique, phlebotomy, 48
Teeth, 142
Telephone communication, 16, 17t
Temperature, effects on blood components, 290
Terminal, 149t, 414, 520
Territorial zones, 14t
Tertiary care, 18, 520
Test requisition (*See* Requisition)
Test status designations, 230t
Testes, 139t, 144
TF (*See* Tissue factor)
TGC (*See* Tight glycemic control)
Theophylline, 481t
Therapeutic drug monitoring (TDM), 376–377, 520
Therapeutic phlebotomy, 377
Thiazide diuretics, 287
Thick blood smear preparation, 351–352, 352t
Third-party payer, 18–19, 520
Thixotropic gel, 520
Thixotropic gel separator, 219–220
Thoracic cavity, 125, 520
Threshold values, 45–46, 520
Thrill, 278, 293
Throat, 149
Throat swabs, 450, *450*, 451
Thrombin, 217, 520
  role of, 180
Thrombocytes, 173, 520
Thrombocytopenia, 184, 520
Thrombocytosis, 520
Thrombophlebitis, 108, 170, 520
Thromboplastin, 182
Thrombosed, 520
Thrombus, 170
Thrombus formation, 473
Thymus gland, 139t
Thyroid disorders, 140
Thyroid gland, 139t
Thyroid profile, 485t
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 287, 343
Tight glycemic control (TGC), 396
Tight glycemic index, 520
Time limit exceptions, 425
Timed (collect at specific time), 439
Tissue factor (TF), 182
Tissue factor pathway, 180
Tissue specimens, 450–451
Tissue thromboplastin, 520
Tissue thromboplastin contamination, 222
Tissues, 127–128
Tn I (*See* Troponin I)
Tn T (*See* Troponin T)
Tobramycin, 481t
Tolerance test specimen, 439–440
Tongue, 142
Tort, 55–56, 520
Total protein test, 29t
Touching, 14
Tourniquet, 198–200, 520
  reapplying, 247
Tourniquet application, 240
  and blood-collection procedures, 277
Tourniquet, releasing, 243–244, 249–250
Toxicology specimens, 378
  blood alcohol (ethanol) specimens, 378
  drug screening, 379–380
  forensic specimens, 378
Trace element–free tubes, 220, 520
Trace elements, 380–381
Trachea, 149, 149t, 520
Training records, 86
Transabdominal amniocentesis, 444
Transfer device, discarding, 252
Transfusion reaction, 174, 520
Transmission-based precautions, 76, 78t, 79, *80*, 521
Transporting specimen to lab, 254
Transporting specimens, 423
Transverse plane, 123, 521
Triage TOX Drug Screen device, 379
Triage® Cardiac Panel, 393
Triage® MeterPro, 393, *394*
Triglycerides, 286, 485t
Triglycerides test, 29t

Troponin I (Tn I), 520
Troponin T (Tn T), 520
Troponin-1 test, 29t
Troubleshooting failed venipuncture, 311
  collapsed vein, 314–315
  needle position, 311–314, *312*
  tube position, 311
  tube vacuum, 315
Trough level, 521
True skin (*See* Dermis)
Trust, healthcare communication and, 16
Trypsin, 142, 521
TSH (*See* Thyroid-stimulating hormone)
TSH level (*See* Thyroid-stimulating hormone level)
Tube additive, 491
Tube holder, 203–205, *204*, 521
  with needles attached, *205*
Tube position, 311
Tube vacuum, 315
Tuberculin (TB) test, 403–404, 521
Tubes awaiting centrifugation, 428
Tubes/containers, filling and mixing, 331–332
Tunica adventitia, 163, 521
Tunica intima, 164, 521
Tunica media, 163, 521
Turnaround times (TATs), 32, 520
Twenty-four-hour urine, 521
Type and crossmatch test, 32t
Type and Rh test, 32t

U

U.S. Department of Education, 43
UA (*See* Urinalysis)
UBS drive, 521
Ulnar artery, 458, 521
UltraFIT glove liners, *194*
Unconscious patients, identification of, 234
Unique plural endings, 112, 112t, 521
United Nations hazard classification numbers and symbols, 95t
Units, 360
Universal precautions (UP), 76, 521
UP (*See* Universal precautions)
Urea level, 285
Urea nitrogen, 485t
Ureters, 145, 521
Urethra, 144, 145, 521
Uric acid, 485t
Uric acid level, 285
Uric acid test, 29t
Urinalysis (UA), 406, 521
Urinalysis (UA) tests, 27, 30, 30t
Urinary bladder, 145, 521
Urinary system, *145*
  disorders and diagnostic tests, 145
  functions, 144
  structures, 145
Urinary tract infection (UTI), 65, 437, 521
Urine, 145, 436
  collection methods
    catheterized specimen, 442
    midstream clean-catch specimen, 441, 442, 443
    midstream specimen, 441
    pediatric urine collection, 443
    regular voided specimen, 441
    suprapubic specimen, 442–443
  common tests, 439
    routine urinalysis, 437
    urine culture and sensitivity (C&S), 437–438
    urine cytology studies, 438
    urine drug screening, 438–439
    urine pregnancy testing, 439
  specimen types
    2-hour postprandial specimen, 440
    24-hour specimen, 440, 441
    double-voided specimen, 440
    fasting specimen, 439
    first morning/8-hour specimen, 439
    timed, 439
    tolerance test specimen, 439–440
Urine culture and sensitivity (C&S), 437–438
Urine glucose and ketone testing, 439
Urobilinogen, 30t
Urology, 22t
USB drives, assortment of, *414*
Used materials, disposal of, 333
Username, 418
Uterus, 144, 521
UTI (*See* Urinary tract infection)

V

Vacuette sodium citrate tubes, 217, *217*
VACUETTE® VISIO PLUS needle, *204*
Vacuum, 206–207, 521
VAD (*See* Vascular access device)
Vagina, 144
Valproic acid, 481t
Vancomycin, 481t
Varicose veins, 170
Vas deferens, 144
Vascular access device (VAD), 293, 521
  arterial line, 293
  arteriovenous shunt/fistula/graft, 293
  blood sampling device, 293
  central vascular access device (CVAD), 297–299
  heparin/saline lock, 296, *296*
  intravenous line, 296–297, *296*
  previously active IV sites, 297
Vascular flow, representation of, *166*
Vascular system, 161
  blood vessel structure, 163
    layers, 163–164
    lumen, 164
    valves, 165
  disorders, 170
  flow of blood, 166
  functions
    pulmonary circulation, 161
    systemic circulation, 161
  phlebotomy-related vascular anatomy, 166
    antecubital fossa, 166–167
    arm and hand veins, 169
    arteries, 169
    H-shaped antecubital veins, 167
    leg, ankle, and foot veins, 169
    M-shaped antecubital veins, 168
  structures, 161
    arteries, 161, 162
    capillaries, 162
    veins, 161–162, *163*
  vascular system disorders and diagnostic tests, 170
Vasoconstriction, 181, 521
Vasopressin, 521
Vasovagal response, 473–474
Vasovagal syncope, 521
Vector transmission, 68, 521
Vein, 161–162, *163*, *165*, 521
  anchoring, 247–248, *248*
  collapsed, 314–315

Vein (*continued*)
damage in, 291, 307
selection of, 240, 243–244
Vein-locating devices, 198
Vena cava (plural, venae cavae), 521
Venae cavae, 162
Venesection technique, 4
Venipuncture, 6, 225
approaching the patient, 229–232
butterfly procedure, 262–264
dialysis patients, 278
diet restrictions, 237–238
ETS ventipuncture, 254–262
geriatric, 273–278
home care patients, 278
hospice patients, 278
latex sensitivity, 238
long-term care patients, 278
patient identification, 232–236
pediatric, 270–273
performing
and blood-collection procedures, 277
positioning the patient, 239, *239*
preparing the patient, 236–237
procedure for inability to collect specimen, 265–270
sanitizing hands, 238, *238*
steps, 226–254
syringe procedure, 265
test requisition, 226–228
accessioning, 229
receipt of, 228
reviewing, 229
tourniquet application and fist clenching, 240, 241–242
Venipuncture equipment, 198
evacuated tube system (ETS), 202
multisample needles, 202–203, *201*
tube holders, 203–205
needles, 200, 201t
gauge, 201
length, 202
safety features, 202
tourniquet, 198–200
vein-locating devices, 198
Venoscope II transilluminator device, *199*
Venostasis, 521
Venous stasis, 521
Ventipuncture
ETS, 254–262
pediatric (*See* Pediatric venipuncture)
syringe procedure, 265
Ventral, 521
Ventral cavities, 125, 521
Ventricles, 154, 521
Venules, 162, 521
Verbal communication, 12–13
feedback loop, *12*
Verbal test requests, 226
VerifyNow System Aspirin Assay, 385, *386*
VerifyNow® system, 385
Viability, 66, 521
Vicarious liability, 56, 521
Virulence, 66, 521
Visitors, in patient's room, 231
Visual impairment, in geriatric patients, 274–275
Vitamin B12 and folate, 29t, 485t
Voice box, 149
Vomiting, 303
Vulva, 144

W

Warming devices, 324
Warming the site, 329–330
Warning signs, 231, *231*
Watch, 197
WBC (*See* White blood cell)
Wheelchairs patients
geriatric patients in, 276–277
White blood cell (WBC), 284, 485t, 521 (*See also* Leukocytes)
White blood cell count (WBC count) test, 25t
Whole blood, 176, 521
Whorls, 521
Windpipe, 149
Winged infusion (butterfly) needles, 200
Winged infusion set (butterfly), 212–213, 246, 521
Word elements classification discrepancies, 111–112
Word root, 521
medical, 108, 109t
Word stem, 108
Work practice controls, 85, 521
Wrist band, 233

Z

Zinc (RBC) (ZnRBC), 485t
Zinc (serum) (Zn), 485t